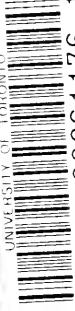


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361176 1



The Right Plesaunt and Goodly Historie
of
The Foure Sonnes of Amon.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. Nos. XLIV, XLV.

1884, 1885.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO. : LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PARTS X, XI.

The Right Plesant and Goodly Historie

of the

Four Sonnes of Aymon.

ENGLISH FROM THE FRENCH BY
WILLIAM CAXTON,

AND PRINTED BY HIM ABOUT 1489.

EDITED FROM

THE UNIQUE COPY, NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF EARL SPENCER,
with an Introduction,

BY

OCTAVIA RICHARDSON.

38078
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXV.

PR
III
EE
no 44 4E

Extra Series,
XLIV, XLV.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY

~~A
B
C
D
E
F~~

[Publicat
No. 11
THE

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART X.

The Right Plesant and Goodly Historie

of the

Four Sonnes of Aymon.

ENGLISH FROM THE FRENCH BY

WILLIAM CANTON,

AND PRINTED BY HIM ABOUT 1489.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY, NOW IN THE
POSSESSION OF EARL SPENCER,

BY

OCTAVIA RICHARDSON.

PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIV.

Extra Series.

XIV.

E. LAY AND SONS, CHAUVER PRESS, BUNGAY.

NOTICE.

THE length of this Romance has made necessary its publication in two parts. Part I, now issued, deals mainly with the adventures of the "Four Sons" in Ardennes, which is really the original idea of the story, and that portion which is connected solely with the Province of Champagne. The flight of the Sons to Gascoigne and their betrayal by King John are episodes which take place in the interior of France, and consequently have no further interest in Ardennes.

Part II, which will be issued as soon as it can be completed (and will contain an Introduction, Glossary, and Index), ranges over a wider area, as the adventures of the two principal characters, Reynawde and Mawgis, occur partly in the East.

The title of the work has been taken from Copland's edition of 1554. From the same source also have been supplied the sheets wanting in Earl Spencer's unique copy of Caxton's "Four Sons of Aymon," which is deficient in all before sig. B. It also wants D. 8. and L. 8.

The original is without folios, though they have been inserted in the present text.

I am greatly indebted to Dr. F. J. Furnivall, who has throughout assisted me in all difficulties connected with this work, and without whose kind encouragement I should never have attempted to edit this Romance for the "Early English Text Society."

O. RICHARDSON.

*10, Roland Gardens, South Kensington.
July, 1885.*

The right pleasaunt and goodly

Historie of the foure sonnes of Amon the which for the
excellent endyng of it, and for the notable prowes and great
vertues that were in them: is no les pleasaunt to
rede, then worthy to be knownen of
all estates bothe hyghe
and lowe.

¶



[Beginning of the four sones of Aymon,

taken

from Copland's edition (C. 12, i. 7),
British Museum, London, 1554.

The Prologue.

As the philosopher, in the fyrst booke of hys metaphysyque, sayth, *that* every man / naturally desireth to know / and to con newe thynges: And therfore have the Clerkes / & people / of great vnderstandynge desyred and concite to lerned sciences, and to know vertues of thinges. Some by Phylosophy, other by Poetrye, and other by Historyes / and cronyikes / of thynges passed. And vpon these three they have greatly laboured / in suche *that* thanked be God, by theyr good dylygence / and laboures, they have had greate knowledge by innumerable volumes of bookes, whiche have be made / and compyled by great studye and payne / vnto thys day. And bycause that above all thinges, the princes & lordes of hie estate and entendment / desyre to see thystoryes / of the ryght noble and hie vertues of the prodecessours / whiche ben digne, and worthy of remembraunce of perpetuall recommendation. Therefore, late at y^e request and commaundement of the ryght noble and vertus Erle Iohn, Erle of Oxeforde, my good synguler / and especial lorde, I reduced and translated out of Frenche, into our maternall and Englyshe tongue, the lyfe of one of his predecessoures, named Robert, Erle of Oxeforde, tofore sayd, *with*

Every man
desireth to know
new things.

By command of
Earl John of
Oxford

is this history
translated,

[diverse & many great myrales / whiche God shewed
for him as wel in his lyfe / as after his death, as it is
shewed all a longe in hys sayde booke. And also that
my sayd Lorde / desyret h to have other Hystories of olde 4
tyme / passed of vertues chyvalry, reduced in lykewyse
into our Englishe tongue: he late sent to me a booke
in Frenche, conteynyng thactes / and faytes of warre /
doone and made agaynst y^e great Emperour and king 8
of Fraunce, Charlemagne, by y^e .iiii. sonnes of Aymon,
otherwyse named in Frenche, 'Les quatre fylz Aymon.'
Whyche booke, accordyng to hys request, I have
endevorde me to accomplyshe / and to reduce it into 12
our englyshe, to my great coste / and charges, as in the
translatinge / as in enprynging of the same, hoppyng &
not doubtyng / but that hys good grace / shall rewarde
me in suche wise that I shall have cause to pray for his 16
good and prosperus welfare. And besechyng his said
noble good grace / to pardon me of y^e rude, and this
simple worke. For, accordyng to the cobby / whyche
he sent to me, I have folowed as nigh as I can, and 20
where as, as any defaute shall be founde, I submyt me
to the correction of them / that vnderstande the cronycle
& history, besethyng them to correcte it & amende
there / as they shall fynde faute. And I shall praye 24
almighty God for them that so doo, to rewarde them in
suche wyse, that after this shorte / and transytory lyfe,
we all may come to everlastyng lyfe in heven. Amen.

that God should
reward those who
correct and amend
it.

¶ Thus endeth the prologue: 28
Heere foloweth the Table of this presente booke.

Chap. I.

Who that wyl know the history of the foure
noble and worthy knyghtes / named the
foure sonnes of Aymon, wherof the fyrste was called 32
Reynawde, the seconde Alarde, the thyrde Guycharde,
and fourthe Rycharde, let hym first reade this presente
table folowyng / In whiche men shall fynde that thys

Names of the four
sons.

- [presente booke conteyneth .xxviii. chapytres, whiche spoken of many faire / and dyverse matters, whiche they that shall reade thys sayde chapytres, shall nowe
 4 see the history all alonge. And ye shall see in this fyrst chapytre howe, that after kynge Charlemagne / was come agayne / from the partyes of Lombardy, where he had had great and merveyllouse battaylles / agenste the
 8 sarasyns, he helde vpon whitsundaye, open courte / at Parys, where was a fayre felawshyp of Prynces / and Barons, as ye shall heare after alonge. And in the same chapitre / ye shall also see howe, the same daye /
 12 the duke Aymon of Ardeyne / broughte to the courte hys foure sonnes, that is to wit, Reynawde, Alarde, Guichard, and Richarde, and howe kynge Charlemagne / made them knyghtes wyth his owne handes ; also howe the
 16 duke Benes of Aigremounce / slewe Lohier, the eldest sonne of kyng Charlemain (the duke benes was vncle to the foure sonnes of Aymon) ; and after, how the duke Benes of aygremount / was slaine coming to
 20 Paris, by the commaundemente of kinge Charlemagne, after that he had appointed, for the death of his sonne. And also in this first chapitre / men shal nowe see many other faire matters, whiche were to longe for to be
 24 reherced / in this preambule of this present booke.
- T**he seconde Chapyster sheweth howe Gryllon of haultefelle, and Guenes, after that they had slayne the duke Benes of Aygremount, retourned to Parys,
 28 and recounted to kynge Charlemagne / the mortall treason that they had put to executyon ; wherof the kynge was ryghte glad ; and syn after he was ryghte sorye for it. For after that, the two bretherne of the
 32 duke Benes / made great warre agenst him, and so did Gerarde of Roussillon, and Dron, and Mawgys, the sonne of the duke Benes ; and after, they made peace and accorded togyther. But the kinge Charlemain
 36 accorded not with the foure sonnes of Aymon, nor to

Charlemagne holds open Court at Paris.


Duke Aymon brings to Court his four sons, who are made knights by Charlemagne.

Duke Benes of Aygremount is slain by command of Charlemagne ;

Chap. II.

his brethren therefore make war against the King.

Reynawde slays
the nephew of the
King.

[their cosin Mawgys.  Item howe Reynawde slew the newew of king Charlemagne with a chesse boorde, as they plaid togyther at the chesse, wherof the warre began, the whiche was so mortall / and lasted so longe, 4 that it bare a great dommage to the realme of Fraunce.

Chap. III.

Charlemagne be-
sieges the castle
of Mountenforde,

The thirde chapitre speaketh, how after that kynge Charlemagne hadde made all his barons to forsake the foure sonnes of aymon / He went and besyeged 8 them at mountenforde, where he was dyscomfyted two tymes ; but the castelle of Mountenforde was taken, after that, by treason. And after, howe Reynawde and his bretherne avenged them of the tray- 12 toures that betrayed theym, And after saved theym selfe wythin the forest of Ardeyne, Where theyr father found them / as he went from the syege / to warde his londe of Dordon. And howe, for to keep his othe that 16 he had made to kynge Charlemagne / He dyd assayle hys sonnes ; so that, of fyve hundred menne that they were, there abod on live with his sonnes but xvii. persones. But Reynawd and his brethern / had none 20 evil, but slew many of their fathers men.

and the four sons
escape to the
forest of Arden,

where their father
fights them for
his oath's sake to
Charlemagne.

Chap. IV.

The sons dwell in
Arden,

The fourth chapytte sheweth how, after that the olde Aimon / had discomfyted his chyl dren, they went and dwelled in the depest of the forest of Ardeyne, 24 and abode there / tyll that they were al counterfayte blacke / and roughe / as wilde beastes, for the greate hungre that they had suffred ; and after, they went to Dordon / for to see their father, that made them good 28 chere, and feasted them greatly. And gave them of hauoyre so muche / that they myghte well make war with agenst the king ; and howe Mawgis their cosyn arryved, whan that they should have departed, whiche 32 went with theym in to the realme of Gascoygne / with fyve hundred knightes. And whan theyr mother sawe them departe, she was for it full sorye.

and then go to
their father.

Mawgis joins
them,
and they go to
fight.

[**T**he fyfthe chaptre sheweth how, after that Reynawde / and hys brethern, with theyr cosyn mawgys, were departed from theyr mother / for to seeke their
4 adventure / they went so longe tyll they came to the realme of Gascoygne. And howe / goynge thitherwarde, they made manye evylles in Fraunce. And howe the kyng of Gascoygn, whan they were come there / dyd
8 receive them in his servise ryghte sweetly, in bourdeaux vpon Gyronde, by cause / that than this king of Gascoigne, that was called Yon, had warre agenst a kyng sarasin / that was entred into Gascoyne, that had to
12 name Portus, that helde Tholouse and all the londe aboute.

Chap. V.

The sons with Mawgis their cousin reach Gascoigne,

and are well received by King John.

The VI chapter speaketh how Reinawde / and his bretherne / dystressed bourgous, a sarasyn that had
16 dystroyed the realme of Gascoign, and had chased the kinge yon / to bordeaux vpon Gyronde, that durste not departe from thence, for feare of the sarasyns. And howe kyng Yon gave his sister Clare / vnto Reinawde /
20 to be hys wyfe, for the greate servyse / that he hadde doon to hym. And dyd doo make for hym the castell of Mountawban.

Chap. VI.

King John gives his sister in marriage to Reynawde, and also the castle of Mountawban.

The seventh chapitre speaketh how Charlemagne,
24 for a voyage that he made to saint Iames in Galyce, he knewe in his comynge agayne / howe Reynawde and his bretherne, that were his mortalle ennies, were in Gascoygne / with in a stronge castel, called Mountawban.
28 And how he sente worde to kinge Yon, that he shoulde delyver to hym Reynawde and hys bretherne. And yf he refused to doo thys, he shoulde come and besyege hym in hys londe / afore X or XII moneths were
32 passed; Wherof king Yon answered / that he shoulde not doo it. And howe, after that kyng Charlemagne / was returned to Parys, Rowlande, his newwes, arryved

Chap. VII.

Charlemagne sends word to John to deliver up Reynawde,

which he refuses to do.

Rowlande arrives
at Paris.

[at Parys, whiche the kyng made knyght. And after sente him for to reyse a siege afore Coloyne / that a sarasyn had besyged / that was called Estorfawde, the which was overcome by Rowland. And howe Rey- 4
nawde wan the crowne of Charlemagne / for his well rennyng / vpon hys baye horse at Parys.

Chap. VIII.

The .viii. chapitre speaketh / how Charlemagne went into Gascoygne / with his host, and besieged Reynawd 8
and his bretherne / within Mountawban ; and howe Reynawde wan the fyrst batail of the king, which Rowlande conduyted, with Olyver and the bishop Turpin ; wherof Charlemayne was so sore wrothe, that 12
he wende to have wexed mad for it / of the great shame that he had of it.

Reynawde defeats
Rowlande at
Mountawban.

Chap. IX.

The .ix. chapitre sheweth howe Reynawde / and his bretherne / were betrayed, and solde to king Charle- 16
magne by kinge Yon, that sent them in to the playne of Walcoloures / all vnarmed, but onelye of their swerdes, ryding vpon mulettes / clothed with mantelles of scarlate / furred with ermynes. From the whyche 20
walle / they escaped worthyllye, by the wyll of our lorde. But they were sore wounded. Of Charlemaines partye, abode there deade, Toulques of Moxillon, and many other barons, for whome the kyng was ryghte 24
sorye.

King John be-
trays the sons to
Charlemagne,

but they escape.

Chap. X.

The .x. chapitre speaketh howe, after that Goodard, the secretarye of kyng yon, had be-wrayed all the treason to Mawgys / that the kyng Yon had doone 28
to hys cosyns, whiche he knewe well, For he had seene kyng Charlemagnes lettres, and had wrytten answeere thervpon from kinge Yon, Mawgys brought to reynawde and hys / suche a succourses, that by his 32
wyt / they were kepte from death.

Mawgis saves
them from death.

The .xi. chapitre speaketh howe, by the succours that Mawgis broughte to reynawde / and to his bretherne / into the playne of Walcoloures, they discomfited kyng 4 charlemagnes folke ; wherof Ogier had manye reproches of rowlande / for some goodnes / and favoure / that he had shewed to reynawde / and his bretherne / at roche mountbron, and was therefore called traitoure, wherof a 8 great inconveniencie came therof afterwarde / afore king Charlemagne.

Chap. XI.

The sons by the help of Mawgis overcome the folk of Charlemagne.

The xii. chapitre sheweth howe, that after reynawde / and hys brethern / were whole of their woundes that they 12 had had in the playnes of Walcoloures, they returned to Mountawban. But whan kyng Yon / knewe of theyr comynge agayn, he fledde awaye, and made hymselfe to be shorne a monke in a monastery / that was within the 16 woode of the serpente ; where rowlande and Ogyer the Dane / founde him, and wohl have made him be hanged for the treason / that he had doone to reynawde / and to his brethern, yf Reynawde had not succoured hym.

Chap. XII.

The sons return to Mountawban.

King John is succoured by Reynawde.

The xiii. chapitre sheweth how, that after Reynawde had succoured kyng yon, was the same houre a merveyllouse battaylle / betweene / Reynawde and the frenshemen. For Rowlande was there sore beten, and 24 many other, wherof Ogyer was glad, by cause that Rowland had called hym traytoure. And also he knewe / that the foure sonnes of Aymon / were not for to be so lyghtelye overcomen, as men had sayde afore. And for 28 this cause / there had been a sore medle betweene Rowland and Ogyer,¹ yf it had not be the other barons that departed them ; and in this recountre Rycharde, the brother of Reynawde, abode for prisoner of Rowlande.

Chap. XIII.

Reynawde defeats Rowlande.

Richard remains a prisoner with Rowlande.

The .xiiii. chapitre sheweth how, after that Reynawde, Alarde, and Guycharde / were gone to warde 32

Chap. XIV.

¹ mais les autres baros les departirent, F. orig. 1480.

[Mountawban / after the battayle, and that they had made full greate sorowe for Rychard / theyr brother, which was in kinge Charlemagnes handes, The sayd Rychard / was delyvered by mawgys greate wysedome. 4

Chap. XV.

The sons with Mawgis capture the Golden Eagle from the King,

who threatens to abandon the crown.

The .xv. chapitre speaketh how, after that Reynawde and hys brethern / and Mawgys / had discomfyted Charlemagne, they came and overthrewe downe his pavilyon, and bare a waye with theym the Egle of golde / 8 that was there vpon the pavilion ; wherof kynge Charlemagne was sore an angred, in so muche that he wolde yeelde vp his crowne vnto his barons, sayinge / that he wolde be no more kynge, for they had fayled hym and 12 habandonned, for the foure sonnes of Aymon ; and sayde to them / that they should crown Reinawd, that he might be theyr king, for they loved him much more than they dyd hym. Than Olyver sayde to kinge 16 Charlemagne, that he should take againe the crown, and that he shoulde brynge to him Mawgys, that he had taken / whan he was aboute to pylle the pavylyon, for he abode alone. whan kynge Charlemagne hearde 20 the same, he tooke agayne his crowne, and was ryghte glad of the prise of mawgis.

Oliver relates his capture of Mawgis,

which reassures the King.

Chap. XVI.

Charlemagne wishes to hang Mawgis,

but he escapes,

and goes to Mountawban with the crown and sword of the King.

The .xvi. chapitre speaketh how the kynge Charlemagne / wolde doo hange Mawgys, Incontynente that 24 Olyver had take hym to him. But by the meane of the Douseperes of Fraunce, that at the requeste of Mawgys, pledgyd hym for one nyght onelye. He made so muche that he escaped, to the honoure / and 28 aequytaunce / of hys sureties / and of hym, and bare a waye with hym to Mountawban / the crowne and the swerde / of kynge Charlemagne / the same nyghte ; wherof kynge Charlemagne was full sory. And ther- 32 fore he sende worde to Reynawde / that he shoulde sende to hym agayne his crowne / and his swerde, and

[all that Mawgys had borne away with hym, and he shoulde grant hym his truce for two yeres. To the which thing Reynawde accorded hym; wherof happed
4 to hym, after that, many great evylles.

The .xvii. Chapytre sheweth how Reynawde faught with Rowland / which he overcame / by the wyl of god, And brought hym to mountawban, wherof kyng
8 Charlemagne was greatly wrothe. And also sheweth how Mawgys / brought king Charlemayne / into the castel of Mountawban / vpon bayarde all a slepe. And after tooke hym to Reinawd within his bed. And after
12 wente and arrayed hym selfe / in maner of an Hermyte / poorely clothed. And lefte all his kinnemen / and freendes, by cause that he wolde not let the peace of Reynawde / toward the kyng Charlemagne / for the
16 war had lasted to longe.

The .xviii. chapytre sheweth how, after that Mawgys had taken Charlemagne / in to the handes of Reinawde his good cosin, he went without leave in to a woode /
20 nyghe the ryver of Dordon, in to a hermitage, where he dyd dwelle as an Hermyte, lyvinge poorely, for to save his soule.

The .xix. chapitre sheweth howe the barons of Fraunce that were at Mountawban / made great sorowe by cause that they myghte not awake the kyng Charlemagne / that Mawgys by his crafte / had made to slepe, and broughte vnto Mountawban. But whan the
28 houre of the enchauntemente of Mawgys / was passed, kyng Charlemagne awaked. And whan he saw himselfe in Mountawban / he sware that he shoulde never make peace wyth Reynawde / as longe as that he were
32 prysoner. And so Reynawde dyd sende hym againe vpon his horse bayard, free and quite. Wherof he repented him sore afterwarde; for soone after this kyng

Chap. XVII.

Reynawde subdues Rowlande, and brings him to Mountawban,

and Mawgis also brings Charlemagne asleepe to the castle.

Chap. XVIII.

Mawgis dwells as a hermit.

Chap. XIX.

The hour of enchantment having passed, Charlemagne awakes,

and is set free by Reynawde,

whom he besieges
at Mountawban.

[Charlemagne made Mountawban to be besyged of so nyghe / that he famyshed Reynawd / and his bretherne, his wife, his children, and all the people / so that they dyed for hungre and thirst / the most parte. 4

Chap. XX.

The .xx. chapitre speaketh howe / after that Charle-
maine had besyged Mountawban of so nyghe / that he
dyd famysh all them that were wythin, knewe howe
Reynawde was gone / and had habandonned Mountaw- 8
ban, and was gone his waye, he and his bretherne, hys
wyfe and hys chylderne, by vnder the erthe, and were
gone to Ardeyne, where kynge Charlemagne went and
besyged them agayne. But afore that¹ he dyd set 12
his syege / Reynawde and hys bretherne yssued oute
agenst hym. Whereby manye one loste their lyfe /
of the one partie and of the other. And the duke
Richarde of Normandye was taken there / which was 16
one of the Douse peres of Fraunce / and a ryghte noble
and a worthy knyght, preu and hardy ; wherfore kynge
Charlemaine was ryghte sorye.

Reynawde escapeth
and goes to
Arden.

Charlemagne pur-
sues him,

and they fight.

Richarde of Nor-
mandy is taken
prisoner.

Chap. XXI.

The .xxi. chapitre sheweth how Mawgys, beyng in 20
his hermytage / came in his mynde a vysion, that he
hadde by nyghte in his slepe, for to goe see Reynawde
and his bretherne. Than in the mornynge he tooke
hys waye / and founde two marchauntes / the which 24
had been² robbed by seven theeves in a wood. Of the
whiche seven theeves / Mawgys slewe five of them
with his palster, and tooke again to the marchauntes
theyr marchaundyses / and all theyr havoyre. And 28
than he went forth his waye toward Mountawban / for
to see his cosyns and hys brethern.

Mawgys goes to
Mountawban.

Chap. XXII.

The .xxii. Chapter sheweth, how Reynawde wolde
have doon hange Richard / the duke of Normandye, 32

¹ Dordonne, F. orig. a. vi. back.

² had been : 'he had be,' in original.

[by cause he myghte not have peace with the kinge Charlemagne. And howe / whan the Douse peeres of Fraunce knewe this, they came to kyng Charlemagne, 4 and prayed hym to make peace with Reynawde / for to have agayne theyr felawe / the duke Rycharde of Normandye; to the whiche thyng, kyng Charlemagne answered, that he should not doo it; wherof they were 8 so sore an angred that they left him; but kyng Charlemaine dyd sende after theym / and sent theym worde that they shoulde returne agayne to hym, and that he shoulde make peace with Reynawde vnder this con- 12 dicyon / that Reinawd should goe beyonde the sea, beggyng his breade.

The peers entreat Charlemagne to make peace with Reynawde;

he consents on condition that Reynawde should go beyond the sea, begging his bread.

The .xxiii. Chapytre sheweth howe, after that Reynawde was departed from Ardeyne / for to make hys 16 vyage beyonde the sea, poorely clothed as a pylgrym, seekyng hys breade for goddes sake / Rycharde of Normandye tooke Bayarde, and brought with him Alard, Guychard, and Rycharde, bretherne to Reynawde / and presented theym to Charlemagne, the whiche 20 he receyved ryghte honourablye by good love, and after brake his syege, and departed for to goe to Parys. But whan he was in the citey of Lyege, vpon the 24 brydge over the ryver Mewsethe / made Bayard to be cast into the water with a mille stone at the necke of hym; but bayarde the horse escaped, and is yet a lyve in the forest of Ardeyne / as men sayen.

Chap. XXIII.

Reynawde goes away as a pilgrim;

his brethren are brought to the King.

Bayarde is cast into the water, but escapes.

The .xxiiii. Chapytre sheweth howe, that after Reynawde was departed from Ardeyne, from hys bretherne, from his wife / and fro hys chyldrene, for to goe beyonde the sea for to accomplyshe hys voyage to the 32 holy grave, he found in Constantynople / hys cosyn Mawgis, and went both together vnto afore Iherusalem, that a kyng sarasyn / whiche was admyral of percie,

Chap. XXIV.

Reynawde finds Mawgis at Constantinople, and they go together to Jerusalem.

[had taken by treason. but Reynawde and Mawgys dyd so muche wyth the folke of the lond, that the cytye was take agayne of the christen.

Chap. XXV.

Reynawde sends his sons to Paris to be made knights.

The .xxv. Chapytre sheweth how, that after Reynawde was come agayne from the holy londe, where he had doone mervayles, he sent Aimoner / and Yonnet, hys two sonnes / to kynge Charlemaine muche honourably, for to be made knightes of hys hande. For he 8 taughte theym well in armes, in all good maners, and tooke to theym fyve hundred good men / well horsed, for to conduyte them towarde the kyng at Parys.

Chap. XXVI.

The sons fight with the kinsfolk of Toulques of Moxyllon, and discomfit them.

The .xxvi. Chapytre sheweth how, after that kyng 12 Charlemagne had muche swetely receyved the chylden of Reynawde / and made theym knightes, they fought wyth ye sonnes of Toulques of Moxyllon / and discomfited theym in the feeld at Parys, whyche is called 16 the ylle of our lady. Bicause that they had charged theyr father of treason, bycause he had slaine theyr father / Toulques of Moxyllon, in the playnes of Walcolours. 20

Chap. XXVII.

The brethern of Reynawde mourn for him.

The .xxvii. chapitre conteineth how, *that* after Reynawde was gone from Mountawban in maner of a pilgrime / never to have returned agayne, after that he had dealed his goodes to his children, his brethern 24 and his sonne Aymanet / made great sorow whan they wyst that he was gone wythout theyr knowledge, all barefote, with a palster in his hande.

Chap. XXVIII.

Reynawde departs for Cologne, and there works as a labourer.

The .xxviii. chapitre sheweth how, after that Reynawde was departed fro Mountawban for to save his soule / he went to Coleine vpon the Rine, and founde that men builded the church of saynt Peter. And there came to hym a wyll / and a devocyon / for to serve 32

[the masons / that wrought there, for the love that he
 had to our lorde. But at the laste, the other labourers
 had so great envye at hym / of that he was more loved
 4 than they were of all the maysters, for the good service for jealousy the
 other workinen
 slay him,
 that he dyd / that they slew hym ; and after, they put
 hym in a sacke & caste hym into the water of the
 Ryne ; but by the wil of our lord, his corps appered
 8 above ye watir, making so many fayre myraclis, but for the mira-
 cles he wrought
 he is named a
 saint.
 healyng of sykenesses / so that he was named a saynte
 the daye of hys buryenge.

12 ¶ Here finyssheth the table, and consequently
 followeth the book heere after.

CHAPTER I.

Howe duke Aimon of Ardein brought to
 the courte his foure sonnes, that is to wit, Reynawde,
 16 Alarde, Guichard, and Richarde, and howe kynge
 Charlemagne / made theym knyghtes wyth his owne
 handes ; also howe the duke Benes of Aigremounte
 slewe Lohier, the eldest sonne of kynge Charlemain.
 20 the duke benes was uncle / to the foure sonnes of
 Aimon ; and after, how the duke Benes of aygremount
 was slaine coming to Paris, by the commaunde-
 mente of kinge Charlemagn / after that he
 24 had appointed, for the death of his
 sonne. And also in this first
 chapitre men shall now see
 many other faire matters,
 28 which were to longe for
 to be rehersed in the
 preamble of this
 present booke.

True we finde in the gestes & faites of the good kynge Charlemagne / that vpon a time at a feast of Penthecoste, the sayde kyng Charlemagne kept a ryght great and solempne 4 court at Parys, after that he was come againe fro the partyes of Lombardy / where he had had a ryght great and mervaylous batayle agenst the Sarasyns,¹ and suche folke as were oute of the beleve, 8 wherof the cheef of the sayde Sarasins was named Guithelym the sesne. The whiche the said kyng Charlemagne / by his prowesse and valyauntnes / had dyscomfyted & overcomen. At the which battaylle 12 and dyscomfyture, dyed greate noblenesses of kinges, princes, Dukes, Erles, barons, knyghtes, and squyers; as Salomon of bretayne / Huon, erle of Mauns, syr yves, syr yvoyre berenger, and Haton, syr Arnaulde of 16 Beaulande, syr Walleraunte of Bollon, and many valyaunte knyghtes. The Douse peres of Fraunce were come there / and many Almaynes, and Englyshemenne, Normans, Poeteuyns, Lombardes, and Barnyers. 20 And amonge other Dukes & princes, was come thyther the good and worthy duke Aymes of² Ardeyne. And in his felawshyp his foure³ sonnes, that is to wyt, Reynawde, Alarde, Guycharde, and Rycharde, that 24 were wonderfull fayre, wytty, great, mightye, and valyaunte, speecyally Reynawde / whiche was the greatest and the tallest manne that was founde at that tyme in al the worlde, for he had .xvi. feete of length and 28 more. Than at this assemble and feast stood the sayd kyng Charlemagne on his feete, amonge his prynces and barons, sayinge in this wyse, ‘barons, my bretherne and freendes, ye knowe howe I have conquered and gotten 32 so manye greate londes / by youre helpe and succours. So many of the Sarasins and misbelevers brought to

Charlemagne holds a solemn Court at Paris,

after his victories over the Saracens,

Many great nobles are here assembled,

amongst them, Aymon and his four sons.

The King addresses his barons.

¹ et mescreans, F. orig. b. i. ² Dordon, F. orig. b. i.

³ beauh, F. orig. b. i.

[death, & in my subieccion ; how but late agoe ye have
 seene by ye paynym Guetelym, whiche I have dys-
 comfyted & overcomen / and reduced to the christen
 4 faith. Not withstandynge we have loste there ryghte
 greate chevalry and noblenesse, and for faute of many
 of our vassaylles / and subjectes, that to vs dayneth not
 to come, howe be it that we had sent for theym, as
 8 the Duke Rycharde of Roussellon, the duke Dron of
 Nantuell / and the duke Benes of Aygremounte, that
 been all three bretherne Germayne. Wherof vnto you
 I complayne me and tell you, that yf it were not syr
 12 Salamon, that worthylye came to succoure vs / with
 .xxx. thousande fyghtynge menne, and syr Lambreyght
 bernyer, and syr Geffraye of Bourdelle, with walleraunte
 of Bullon, that bare our baner / we were alle dysecomfyted
 16 and lost, as ye all knowe well ; and this by the default
 of the said three bretherene, that dayned never to come
 to our sendynge, nor obey, and, above all, the duke
 Benes of Aygremounte. Ill be it that they be all oure
 20 lyege menne / that ever owen to me servyce and
 fydelytie. Now I shall sende hym worde that he
 come to serve me at this nexte somer with all his
 power. And in case that he shall be refusynge to
 24 obeye oure commaundementes / by saynt denys of
 fraunce, I shall sende for all my freendes and subjectes,
 and I shall goe besyege him at Aygremounte. And yf
 we can have him, I shall make hym to be shamefully
 28 hanged / and his sonne Mawgis to be slaine all quyeke,
 and shall do brenne his vncourteous wyfe ; and I shall
 sett all his londes in fyre.' Than the good duke
 Naymes of Bayyere / rose vp dyligently, and said to
 32 kynge Charlemagne in this wyse : 'Syr, me semeth
 that ye ought not to angre your selfe so sore ; and yf
 ye will beleve my counseyll, ye shal sende a messanger
 to the duke of Aygremount, which messanger shal be
 36 well and honourably accompanied. And he muste be

The King com-
 plains of his sub-
 jects' infidelity,

especially of Duke
 Benes of Aygre-
 mounte.

[sage / and prudent / for to shewe wel to the Duke of Aygremounte all,¹ that ye shal charge hym and after whan ye shall know hys answeere and his wyll; ye shall than aduise you what ye oughte for to doo.' ⁴ 'In good fayth,' sayde the kyng, 'ye counseylle me ryght well and wiselye.' Than thoughte Charlemagne what message he myght sende to him. And than he sayde all hygge afore them all, complayninge him- ⁸ selfe; 'who shall be he that shall doo thys message; and for doubte of deathe shall not leve nothyng vnsayd of hys message / to the duke benes,' but there was none of them all that aughte answered, for manye ¹² of them were of² Sybbe to hym / as the duke Aymon of³ Ardeyne, that was his brother Germayne.

To whom he sends
a message by

Thus were the foure brethern of one father and one mother. Than was kyng Charlemagne ryghte ¹⁶ wrothe and angrie, and sware by saynte denys / that the Duke benes should be wasted and destroyed; and no manne shoulde be in the worlde that shoulde keep him therfro. Than he called high his eldest sonne ²⁰ Lohier, saying in this maner, 'ye must doo this message, my dere sonne, and lede with you for your conduyt and suretye / an hundred knightes/ armed and honourably arrayed. And ye shall saye to the duke benes of ²⁴ Aygremounte, that yf he come not for to serve vs thys somer, aboute saynte Iohans daye nexte comynge, as I have saide afore / that I shall besyege Aygremounte, & shall dystroye all his lande; and he and⁴ his, I shall ²⁸ doo hange or slea al quycke, and his wyfe to be brente.' 'Syr,' sayd Lohier, 'al at your pleasure I shall doo. And wit *that* it shall not be taryed / for feare of death, but that I shal tel him al alonge all that ye have ³²

his son Lohier.

¹ ce que luy ordonneres, et puis quant aurez secu, F. orig. b. ii. back.

² du parente du ait benes daigremôt, F. orig. b. ii. back.

³ Dordon, F. orig.

⁴ son filz', F. orig. b. ii.

[charged me of. And I shall depart to morow in the mornynge, by the grace of God.]

4 **T**han should you have sene ye king weepe of pitie
for his sonne Lohier; for he repented him *that*
he had charged him / for to doo this message; but syn
that he had so sayd, he must doo it. And the morne
was come, Lohier & his noble companie / made them
8 redy, and after lept on horsbacke, and came afore y^e
kyng. Than sayd Lohier to the king, his father: 'Syr,
here I am redye and all my folke / for to fulfyll your
wyll.' 'Fayre somme,' sayd Charlemagne, 'I recom-
12 mend thee vnto god, that on ye crosse suffred death
and passion, and hym I besече to kepe and waraunt
thee / & all thy felawshyp from evyl / and from any
combraunce.' Than departed Lohier and his companie;
16 wherof after warde / the kyng made great lamentaeyon
for his sonne Lohier, and not wyth out a cause; for he
shal never see *him* quicke agayne, as ye shal vnderstand,
yf ye wyll herken it. Now go the gentill messangers
20 streyght towarde Aygreount, sore thretenynge the
duke Benes of Aygreount, saying / that they should
take the head from the body of hym / yf he doo
ought to them agaynst his devoyre. But it shall go all
24 other wyse with them; for it haped all contrary¹ to
theyr myndes and purpose¹ / wherof afterward / many
ladyes abode widowes withoute husbandes, & many
gentil women without a lover; and so many churches
28 destroyed, and so many landes brente / and wasted,
wherof it is yet pitie for to see. And thus, ridinge
& thretenynge Benes of Aygreount, a spy heard all
that they sayd, and came hastelye to Aygreount to
32 ward Benes / that was in his palays, and tolde hym
how messangers were coming vnto hym from kyng
Charlemagne, that sore thretened him, and that the
sonne of kyng Charlemagne was there in person.

Lohier with an
hundred knyghts
departs for
Aygreounte.

The King makes
great lamentation
for his son.

A spy overhears
the messengers of
Charlemagne on
their way to
Aygreounte,
and tells the
Duke Benes,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. b. ii.

[Than sayd the Duke to hys folke, wherof he had at that houre foi-son with him / in his palays, bicause of the feast of Penthecoste. 'Lordes,' sayde he, 'the kyng Charlemagne setteth lytle by me, that will that 4 I shal go serve him with all my power and my puyssance; and that wors is, he sendeth to me his eldest sonne for to tel me some message *that* threteneth me greatly; what counsell ye me therto, my bretherne & 8 freendes?' Than spake a good knyght, that was called syr Simon, & sayd: 'My lorde, I shall counsel you truly yf ye wyll herken and beleve me. Receyve honourably the messangers of the kyng Charlemagne / 12 for wel ye wote that he is your ryght-wyse lorde, and wit that who *that* warreth against hys soverayn Lorde, he doth agaynst god / & rayson / and have no regarde to your kynne, nor to thys, that your bretherne, Gyarde 16 of Roussyllon, and the duke of Nantuell, wolde not obey hym. For I advyse you wel that Charlemagn is myghty / and he shall distroye you of body and of goodes;¹ but yf that ye obey him, and yf ye amiablie 20 go to hym, he shall have mercy of you.' Than answered the duke, that thus he wolde not doo, and that the sayd knight gave him evill counsell. 'For yet,' sayd he, 'I am not so low brought but that I have three 24 brethern / that shall helpe to susteine / and beare out my ware agaynst Charlemagne, & also my foure newewes, the sonnes of my brother Aymes of Dordon, *that* ben full fayre knyghtes, worthy and well taught in faytes of 28 warre.' 'Alas,' sayd than ye duchesse, 'my good lorde, beleve your good counsell; for no man shall prayse you that ye make warre agaynst your right-wyse lorde / and wit it well that it is agaynst the com- 32 maundementes of God, & against all equitie. Wherefore, yf ye have misdoone any thing agaynst hym, doo so much *that* ye be accorded with him. And take

who is advised by Sir Simon to receive them honourably.

The Duke refuses Sir Simon's counsel.

The Duchesse also pleads with him,

¹ Si ne luy obeisses, F. orig. b. iii. back.

[none heed to your brethern / as syr Symon dothe
 counsell you, for never good may come therof, for to
 be evyl in favoure with his soverayne Lorde.' Than
 4 behelde the duke the duchesse in great wrathe, and
 bad her that she should holde her peace in ye devilles but in vain.
 name, & that she should never more speake to hym of
 this mater / for in certayne he should not do for the
 8 kyng Charlemagne the mountenaunce of a peny. So
 helde her peace y^c duchesse, & sayd that she should
 speake nomore to hym therof.

12 **G**reat was the noyse and the bruyte within the
 palayce of Aygremount, for some counselled the
 duke, that thus as the duchesse sayd he should doo ;
 and many other sayd nay. Than sayd the duke vnto
 them that counselled him naye, and that he should
 16 not accorde / nor make peace / with the kyng Charle-
 magne, that he could theym thanke. Muche longe
 they spake of this mater ; and the messengers of the
 kyng Charlemagne duryng the same / have riden so
 20 muche that they ben come to Aygremount. And the
 castell was set vpon a rocke ryght hye, and well en-
 vyroned with stronge walles / thyecke, highe, and wel
 garnyshed with great towres, so that for the strength
 24 and sytuacyon of the castell, it was imprenable, but
 only by famyshyng. Than sayd Lohier to ye lordes
 that were wyth hym : 'Lordes, nowe see what a for-
 tresse is there / what walles ! a ryver renneth at the
 28 foote of it ; I beleve verely that in al christendome
 is not her lyke. It can never betake by force, but yf it
 is by famysshyng.' Than spake a knight that was
 called Savary, and sayd to Lohier his lorde, 'syr,' sayde
 32 he / 'it semeth me (spekyng vnder correction) that
 my lorde, the kynge Charlemagne, your father, hath
 enterprised a great foly, whan he troweth to come¹ to

The Duke decides
 not to make peace
 with Charle-
 magne.

¹ a chief de ce duc, F. orig. b. iii. back.

[at an ende of this duke of Aygremount, for, in good sothe, he is right puissaunt; and I beleve that he shall make as mani men for to make the warre, as shall my lorde, your father / yf it cam there to that he 4 wolde make hym warre. It were a fayre thyng yf they myght be accorded together; ¹and, of my parte, I should counsell the same, yf it myght be doone.¹

Sir Savary counsels Lohier to accord with Duke Benes.

‘**B**ut well I wot, that yf your father had hym, al ye 8 golde in Paris should not kepe hym, but that he should do hange hym / or els slea him quycke. So beseeche I you, ryght deere syr, *that* ye speake humbly vnto the duke benes of Aygremount, for, in certayne, 12 he is ryght fyers / and outragious, & incontinent might have there a sore meddle betwene you and hym, wherof the losse should tourne vpon vs, for we ben to few folke.’ Than answered Lohier, and sayd to hym, 16 ‘that he sayd well and wysely; but alwayes,’ sayd he, ‘we doubt hym not of any thyng. We be here al redy an hundred knyghtes / well appoynted, and for sothe, yf he say vnto hys anye thyng vnto our dyspleasur, 20 he shal be the fyrst that shall repent and be sory for it.’ Than sayd the knight Savare al softly to hymself / that this were not wysely doone; ‘for wel I swere,’ said he, ‘vpon my fayth, that yf it hap you to say any thyng to 24 hym / that by any maner shall displease hym, he shall make you sorye, and shall wreke it vpon your bodye; and, happelye, we shall all be in a waye for to dy. Syr, advyse your selfe well / & wyll to procede prudently in 28 your message. For well I say vnto you that he is ryght cruell, and of greate worthynesse accomplysshed.’

The messengers reach the castle.

Thus, spekyng of one thyng and of other / rode so longe the messangers, that they ben come to the 32 gate of the castel, which was sone shet by the porter. Then knocked the sayd knyghtes, and the porter

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ed. 1480.

[answered to them, 'Lordes, what be you?' 'Freende,' answered Lohier / 'open to vs this gate presently, for we wyll speake to the Duke Benes of Aigremount from
4 the kinge Charlemayn.' 'Now abyde you a lytle, and hast you not,' sayd the porter, 'and I wyl goe speake redely to my lorde the Duke.' So went the sayde
8 porter into the halle / where he sawe the Duke his lorde. He kneeled incontynent afore him, & tolde him howe downe at the gate was a right great company of men of armes; and that they were well an hondred men or more, ryght well horsed, & well armed. 'And
12 with them is the eldest sonne of king charlemagne, *that* strongly threteneth you / and also your folke. My lorde,' sayde the porter, 'shall I open the gates vnto them?' 'Yea,' sayd ye duke, 'for I doubt them
16 nothyng, and we ben ynough for them; and many worthy knyghtes and esquyers / ben no where able for to defende vs all, were Charlemagne himself with them with his puissaunce.' So ran incontinent the
20 porter downe agayne / for to open vnto them the gate. Lohier & his felowes entred within, and mounted vp vnto the dongeon of the castell, where the duke was, that sayd to hys barons: 'Lordes, heere cometh the
24 eldest sonne of the kyng Charlemagne / for to tell me his message; but (bi *that* god *that* suffred death and passyon) yf he speake wysely to vs, he shal do as sage; and yf he sayth anything that shall dysplease vs,
28 we shall soone / & without delaye, take vengeaunce therof.' So was the duke Benes well accompanied, & nobly of wel two hondred knyghtes and more. Thys was in the moneth of May, that all creatures humain
32 ought wel for to reioyce them, and that folke pren and worthy in armes / taken hert and hardinesse / for to defende them self wel, and warre agaynst theyr enemyes. And this during, Lohier, the sonne of king charlemagne,
36 entred into the halle of the Palays of Aigremount

The porter announces their arrival to the Duke.

Lohier and his folk enter the castle.

The Duke Benes,
with his son
Mawgis, and all
his barons are
here assembled.

[ryght nobly armed, and his folke also, and saw the halle ryght well garnysshed of fayre folke rychelye arrayed. And the duke sittynge right proudlye amonge his barons / and the duchesse, hys wyfe, next by him ; 4 and before hym his sonne Mawgys, that was a great mayster of the science of Nigromancy, that played afore his father of his art of nigromancy, wherein the Lordes that were there tooke great pleasure ; and wit it well 8 that in all the worlde / was not a worthyer chrysten, nor more able, than was the sayd Mawgys, except onlye hys cosyu]

¹ **R**enawde, one of the sones of Aymon / wherof 12
² **R**specyally treateth now this historye / Thenne marched fourthe Lohier, & wente in the firste of alle, and after hym his folke by goode conduyte / And salued the duke Benes of Aygremounte in this wyse / 16 wherby moche grete euyH happed to³ hym at laste : 'That god that created the firmamente, and made alle thynges⁴ of noughte, for the people to susteyne / And in⁵ the crosse suffred deth and passyon for alle soules 20 to be redemed out of the peynes of helle, kepe and saue the / kynge Charlemayne, emperoure⁶ of Almayne and kynge of Fraunce, and all his noble lynce / and confounde the⁷ duke Benes of Aygremounte / My fader 24 the kynge by me expresslye sendeth to the⁷ worde, thou come Incontynente to Parys wyth fyue hundred knyghtes,⁸ for to doo to hym ryghte and rayson of thys,

Lohier delivers
his speech,

¹ B. iii.

² Here begins Caxton's print. [14 leaves are out of Lord Spencer's unique copy. It begins at Fol. iii. col. 3, l. 24 of Copland's edition of 1554.]

³ vnto, ed. 1554. Only a few collations are put, to show how slight are the changes of word in ed. 1554. The spelling varies somewhat.

⁴ thyng. ⁵ on.

⁶ creperour in *text orig.* Emperour, 1554.

⁷ thee.

⁸ pour le servir la ou il luy plaira toy employer, et aussi pour, F. orig. b. iiiii. omitted in Caxton.

that thou were not wyth hym in armes in the partyes
of Lombardye, for to fyghte ayenst the ennyes of the
crysten feyth. Where, by thy fawte, were ded there,
4 Bawdoyn, lorde of Melanke / Greffroy of BourdeHe /
and many other grete dukes, prynces, knyghtes, and
barons. And yf thou wylte not doo it / I telle the
duke Benes that the kyng shaHe come vpon the¹ wyth
8 an hundred thousande men of armes. Soo shalte thou
be take and brought in to Fraunce / And there thou
shalt be Iudged as a theef and a false tratour to² thy
souerayne lorde. for to be fleyen³ and hanged aH
12 quycke, thy wiffe brente, and thi children dystroyed
and banysshed. Do therefore this that I commaunde
the in the kynges behalve / for thou knowest weH that
thou arte his man, raysaH, and subgette':

and threatens
Duke Benes with
the wrath of
Charlemagne.

16 **W**Han the duke Benes of Aygremounte hadde
herde Lohier⁴ thus speke, Thenne,⁵ yf ye hadde
seen hym change⁶ his colour, pouff,⁷ blowe / as a man
cruell prowde and ⁸owterageouse, and sayd to Lohier in
20 this maner, 'I shal not goo to kyng Charlemayne,
nor noo thyng of his wylle I shaHe not fulfille / For
I holde nother casteHe ne fortresse of hym / But I shal
goo vppon him wyth alle my puyssaunce / and shaHe
24 dystroye aHe the londe of Fraunce vnto Parys' /
Thenne⁵ sayd Lohier vnto duke Benes of Aygremounte,
'Vassaylle,' sayd he, 'how darest thou answerre thus?
And yf the kyng knewe now that thou threteneste
28 hym thus as thou dooste, he sholde come Incontiente
vpon the,¹ and sholde vtterli dystroye the. WeH thou
knoweste that thou arte his liege man / and that thou
canne not saye ayenste hit / Comme then redeli, and
32 serue thy souerayne lorde, the kyng Charlemayne.
And byleue me, yf thou wyHe, saue thyne owne lyffe.

Duke Benes
refuses allegiance
to the King.

¹ thee. ² vnto. ³ slayne.

⁴ filz du roy Charlemagne, F. orig. b. iiii. baek.

⁵ Than. ⁶ changed. ⁷ pouffe &. ⁸ B. iii. back.

For yf thou doo it not, I make the¹ sure and certeyne /
 that yf he canne haue the by force, that he shalle make
 the¹ to be hanged there as the ayre and the wyndes
 wyth theyr grete blastes shaHe drye vppe the bones of 4
 the.¹ Whan the duke herde Lohyer speke to hym
 in this manere, he stode vppe anone vppon his feete,
 And sayd that to his eueH chere he came there for
 make to hym his message. Thenne² came fourthe a 8
 knyghte, named syre Water, that was a man of the
 duke of Aygremount, and sayd to the duke / 'My
 lorde! kepe, for goodys loue, that ye doo noo folie.
 lette Lohyer saye aHe his wyHe. For ye be neuer the 12
 worse for his sayenge. And as ye weH knowe, kyng
 Charlemayne is ryght puyssaunte, and soo moche, that
 there is nother castell, cyte, nor towne neuer soo
 stronge / that can holde ayenst hym / Goo then to hym 16
 by my counseyH. for ye be his man, his vassayH, and
 his subget / and of hym you holde your casteH of
 Aygremount, and aH your londes / And yf ye soo doo /
 ye shaHe doo as sage / and hit³ shaHe be your prouf- 20
 fyttte, and also of aHe your lande. And for to werre
 ayenste your ryghtewys lorde, noo thyng but euyH
 can come to you therof.⁷ Whan the duke had herde
 the wyse knyghte soo⁴ speke, He coude to hym ryghte 24
 goode thanke therefore; but alwayes aHe angry he sayd
 to hym, 'Holde your peas / For I shalle holde noo
 thyng of hym as longe that I shaHe maye⁵ here armes,
 and mounte a horsebake. I shaH sende for my dere 28
 bretherne, Gerarde of Roussyllon, and Dron of Nant-
 ueH⁶ / and Garnyer his sone. And thenne we shaHe
 goo vpon kyng Charlemayne / and yf I canne mete
 wyth hym in ony place, we shaH dystroye hym, and 32
 shaHe doo of hym that he troweth to doo of me / Wene
 ye that I am a cowarde⁷ / nay, by my feyth / For I

Sir Water en-
 treats the Duke
 to hear Lohier,

reminding him of
 his vassalage to
 Charlemaigne.

Benes bids him
 hold his peace,

and threatens to
 destroy the King.

¹ thee. ² Than. ³ B. iiii. ⁴ to. ⁵ be able.
⁶ Natuell. ⁷ cowarde, 1554. cowrade, Caxton.

sholde not take aH y^e golde in Parys / but that I sholde
 slee the messenger. EuyHe was to hym when he durste
 soo threten me' / And thenne¹ sayd Lohier, 'I nether
 4 prayse you nor doubte you not.' Whan the duke
 Benes of Aygremounte vnderstode Lohier, he wexed
 for grete wrathe as redde as ony fyre in his face / And
 beganne to ryse vppe and to caHe / 'Now, barons!
 8 vppon hym / brynge hym to me / For he shaHe neuer
 be warraunted² but that I shaHe make hym to deye
 shamefully.' And the barons durste not saye ayenst
 theyr lorde, but drewe aHe theyr swerdes, and Incon-
 12 tynente dyde renne vppon Charlemayns folke / And
 Lohier called his baner; & thenne¹ beganne he and
 his folke to deffende theym selfe sharply; And god
 knoweth how many heddles and armes were there cutte
 16 of that daye / For atte the same owre beganne a
 thyng / wherof afterwarde soo many ladyes and
 damoysselles were wythoute husbondes and wythoute
 louers / Soo many of children faderles, and soo many
 20 churches wasted and dystroyed that neuer syth were
 repayred. What shall ³I telle you more / wyte it
 that they fought therein⁴ soo longe wythin the halle
 of the palays, that the noyse wente thoroughe alle the
 24 towne. Thenne¹ sholde ye haue seen the bourgeys,
 marchauntes, and men of crafte, wyth axes, swerdes,
 and other wepyns / And came to the castelle warde
 aboute vii thousande men and more / But the entre of
 28 the palays of Aygremounte was narowe. And the
 frenshe men were wythin, that kepte theym weH, that
 they entred not in atte theyr ease. Alas! what ter-
 ryble and vnhappy a slaughter was there that daye /
 32 For the folke of kynge Charlemayne were but a fewe
 to the regarde of theym of the other parte / And as ye
 maye knowe, suche assemble was ryght euyH / Soo

He calls on his
 barons to slay
 Lohier.

The fight lasts
 so long that the
 citizens are
 aroused,

great slaughter
 ensues.

¹ than.

² wraunted.

³ B. iiii. back.

⁴ there.

deffended theym selfe moche nobly and valyauntly the
 folke of kynge Charlemayne / And soo moche that
 Lohier, seenge that he and his folke hadde the worse /
 he smote a knyghte by fore duke Benes of Aygremounte 4
 by suche a wyse that he ouerthrewe hym doun deed /
 ‘For the,’ sayd he, ‘goddys curse haue thou’ / And after-
 warde he sayd pyteously in waylynge hym selfe, ‘Lorde
 god, that wythin the holy wombe of the blessed vyr- 8
 gyne Marye toke thy herbowrynge, and suffred dethe
 and passion for to redeme mankynde / whylte deffende
 me this daye from shamefuH dethe and from tour-
 mente / For I wote weH / but yf that your hyghe 12
 dyuynyte socoure me this daye, I shaHe not see the
 kynge Charlemayne my fader nomore’ / Thenne the
 duke called highe vpon hym, saynge, ‘Lohier, soo helpe
 me god, this daye shalle be your laste’ / ‘It shaHe not 16
 be so,’ sayd Lohyer. ¹And wyth this he smote the
 duke vppon the hede; but his helme saued hym / And
 the stroke descended to the hele of hym, soo that the
 bloode ranne oute.² ‘By god,’ sayd Lohier, ‘ye shaH 20
 not escape’ / Then³ne came the duke Benes of Aygre-
 mounte to hym as woode and sore an angred / saynge, ‘I
 sholde prayse myselfe fuH lytyH yf I myghte not auenge
 me vppon the.’ Soo heued vppe the duke his branke 24
 of stele, and smote Lohier so harde vppon his bryghte
 helme that he cleued hym to the teeth / And Lohier
 felle deed afore hym / vpon the pauemente of the halle.
 Ha, god, what grete dommage hathe doon the duk 28
 Benes of Aygremounte, to haue thus slayne Lohier, the
 eldest sone of the grete kynge Charlemayne / For after-
 warde alle the oost of Fraunce was in moche grete and
 Innumerable tourmente therefore / and in ryght grete 32
 peyne contynuaH / And the duke hym selfe deyed ther-
 fore fuH soryly. That was the paymente that he hadde

The folk of
 Charlemagne are
 worsted by reason
 of their small
 number.

Lohier prays for
 succour,

but is slain by
 Duke Benes.

¹ Il prit son braedassier, F. orig. b. v.

² Parmi la salle.

³ B. v. folio of Caxton.

for it, as ye here after shaHe here yf peasibly ye wyH here me :

4 **N**OW is owtrageously slayne the good Lohyer, the eldest sone of kyng Charlemayne / And the duke Benes of Aygremounte, full of cruelnes, toke the hede from the body of hym. And after that the folke of the sayd Lohier, the sone of the grete kyng Charle-
8 mayne, sawe theyr lorde ded, thynke ye they made no grete deffence / Alwayes of a hundred that they were entred wythin the palays wyth theyr lorde Lohier, abode there on lyue but xx, wherof the duke incontinente made x of them to be slayne. And the other x
12 he reteyned alyue. and to them sayd / ‘ Yf ye wyH promyse and swere to me vpon your othe and feyth of knyghthode that ye shaH bere your lorde Lohyer to
16 his fader, the kyng Charlemayne, and saye to hym that I sende to hym his sone Lohyer in good arraye / and that in an euyH houre he dyde sende hym to me for to teHe me suche wordes : ¹I shaH lete you goo quyte
20 & sauf¹ / and to hym ye shaH saye, *that* for hym ²I shaHe not doo the mountenaunce of a peny / And that I shaHe goo vpon hym in this somer nexte comynge wyth³ forty thousande men / And that I shaH destroye
24 hym and aHe his lande / They aunswered, ‘ sire, we shaHe doo that. that shaHe playse you to commaunde vs’ / Thenne the duke dyde doo make redyly a byere / and made the corps of Lohier to be putte wythin the
28 sayd byere. And after he delyuerde hit to his x knyghtes that were lefte on lyue, and putte hit in a carte to drawe wyth two horses. And the duke conueyed them throughe the towne / And whan they
32 were in the feeldes / the ⁴x knyghtes byganne to wepe, and to make grete moone for theyr lorde Lohier, saynge / ‘ Alas, my lorde Lohier, what shaHe we nowe

Lohier's followers all slain except ten.

Duke Benes spares the lives of ten, on condition that they bear his defiance to Charlemagne.

The Duke delivers the body of Lohier to his ten followers, who have been spared.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. b. vi. back. ² B. v. back.

³ trente, F. orig. b. vi. back. ⁴ omitted, F. orig. b. vi.

saye for you to the k[y]nge¹ your fader, that soo grete sorowe shaHe haue / whan he shaHe knowe your crueHe deth. We may weH be in certeyne that he shaHe make vs aHe deye' / Thus wepynge and makyng e theyr mone 4 for the loue of theyr lorde Lothyer / They roode on theyr waye streyghte to Parys /

¶ But now we shaHe here leue to speke of the messagers, and shaHe telle you of the kyng e ²Charle- 8 mayne that was atte Parys,²

CHarlemayne, that was atte Parys wyth a grete multitude of lordes that were there assembled. And there vpon a daye kyng e Charlemayne sayd vnto his 12 lordys and barons / 'Lordes, I am moche wrothe and sory of my sone Lohyer, that I haue sente to Aygre- mounte / and I feere me sore that they haue taken debate wyth the duke Benes of Aygre- mounte, whiche 16 is felle and crueH, and I doubte me leste he hathe slayne my sone Lohyer / But by my crowne, yf he haue soo doone, or ony thyng that turneth to dysplaysure or domage to my sayd sone / I shaH go vpon ³hym 20 with a hundred thousande men, & shaHe make him to be hanged at a gybet' / 'Syre,' sayd the goode duke Aymes of dordon, 'I shall commende you ryghte sore yf he hathe offended agaynst you, that ye make punysson 24 thereof and wrek on hym grete vengauce. He ys your liege man, and oughte to serue / prayse / and honoure you, and to holde atte hys londe of you / Alwayes yf he hathe trespassed ayenst you in ony 28 manere / I am ryghte sory for hit. And yf ye haue a cause to be wrothe wyth hym, I haue here my foure sones ; that is, to wytte, Reynawde, Alarde, Guycharde, and Rycharde, that ben ryghte valyaunte, as ye, syre, 32 weHe knowe, whiche shaHe be trusty and true to you' / 'Aymon,' sayd the kyng e Charlemayne, 'I conne you

They take Lohier's body back to Paris.

Charlemagne at Paris, mentions to his barons his anxiety for the safety of Lohier.

Aymon offers Charlemagne his services and those of his four sons.

¹ Kunge *in text*. ²—² omitted, F. orig. b. vi.

³ B. vi.

grete thanke of the offre that now ye haue doon to me.

And it is my wylle that ye make theym to come hether presentely, to the ende that I make theym knyghtes /

Charlemagne bids
Aymon present
his sons,
that he may
knight them.

4 And I shaHe gyue to theym castelles, towres, and townes, and cytees ynoughe' / Thenne sente the duke Aymes incontynente for his children, and made theym to come afore kyng Charlemayne. And whan the

8 kyng Charlemayne sawe theym, they playded hym moche. And Reynawde was the firste that spake, and sayd, 'Syre, if it playse you for to make vs knyghtes /

They are pre-
sented to him.

we shaH be euer redy for to serue you and your noble lordeshyppe' / Thenne the kyng Charlemayne called his stywarde, and sayd to hym, 'Bryng to me the armes that were the kyng Cedres, whiche I haue wyth my handes slayne in batayHe byfore Pampelune. And I

16 shaHe gyue theym to the gentyHe Reynawde / as to hym that is as I were, the mooste valyaunte of aHe. And of other goode armes I shaHe gyue to the other three bretherne' / Soo broughte there the stywarde

20 the armes, that were fuH fayre and ryche; and ¹thenne were armed the foure gentyH bretherne, children to the goode Aymes of Dordonne / and Ogyer of Denmark, that was of their kynne, dyde on theyr spores to the

Reynawde and his
three brothers
knighted.

24 newe knyghte Reynawde. And the kyng Charle- mayne girde hym his swerde / And then he doubde hym to a knyghte, sayenge, 'God encrease in the² goodnes / honoure / and worthynes.' And thenne

28 mounted Reynawde on horsebacke vpon Bayarde / that was suche a horse that neuer was his like in alle the worlde, nor neuer shaHe be, excepte BusifaH, the horse of the grete kyng Alexandre; for as to haue ronne

Reynawde's won-
derful horse
Bayarde.

32 ³ xxx myle togyder wolde neuer haue sweted. The sayde Bayarde, this horse, was growen in the Isle of Brouscan / and Mawgis, the sone of the duke Benes of Aygremounte, hadde gyuen hit to his cosin Reynawde /

¹ B. vi. back.

² thee.

³ dix lieux F. orig. ed. 1480.

that after made the kynge Charlemayne full of wrothe and sory. As ye shaH nowe nere hereafter.

REynawde was a horsbak wyth a shelde paynted hanginge att his necke / and thwerled his swerde 4 by grete fyersnesse. And wytte weH that he was a fayr knyghte, vounderfull grete and weH founded. and of hym was a fayr sighte / for well he semed one of the most valyaunte knyghtes that men coude fynde in alle 8 the worlde. And the barons that were there, sayd / 'Ha, god, what a fayre knyghte is he / neuer was, nor shaH be, seen soo fayer a man of armes as Reynawde / god encrease to hym honoure and worthinesse, goode- 12 nesse and pryse!' And after, were moche honourabli and worthyly arayed and armed, the other three bretherne of Reynawde / and syth lyghte alle on horsebacke vnder saynte Vyctor, nyghe Parys / Thenne 16 made the kynge Charlemayne to sette vppe in the grounde a poste ¹ayenste whiche he made the newe knyghtes to assaye theym selfe / They Iousted moche worthyly / but Reynawde / iousted beste vpon hys 20 horse bayarde / And ryght weH lyked and were agreable to Charlemayne, the fayttes of the valyaunt knyghte Reynawde, to whom the kyng sayd, 'reynawde, from hens forth ye shaH come wyth vs in bataylle.' And 24 Reynawde answerde hym in thys manre / 'Syre, god yelde it you an hundred thousande tymes / and I promytte yow in goode feyth to obeye and serue you truly / nor neuer ye shaH fynde my selfe in noo 28 forfaytte, But yf it come of you.'

THemperoure Charlemayne, after the ioustyng doon, returned to his palays in Parys / Thenne he resoned wyth his prynces and barons / And there were 32 the duke Naymes of bauyres, Oger the dane / and the archebysshop Turpyn / and sayd to theym in this wyse / 'Barons,' sayd he, 'I canne not merueylle me to

¹ B. vii.

They joust at St. Vyctor, near Paris.

moche of Lohier, my eldeste sone, that taryeth soo longe in hys message. I haue grete fere that some inconuenyence be happed vnto him. I dremed this
 4 nighte in my slepe, that the thonder bolte felle vpon my sone Lohier¹ / and thenne came the duke Benes of Aygremounte vpon him, and smote his hede of / But by my berde, yf he haue doo soo, whiles he lyueth he
 8 shaH neuer accorde wyth me / nor I shaH neuer haue ioye atte my herte; for it is he that I loue best in this worlde.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'I byleue not suche thynges, nor to suche dremes ye shalle not gyue
 12 noo credence' / 'Alwayes,' sayd the kyng, 'yf he haue doon soo / I shaH neuer leuer hym the value of a peny / for I shaH sende for the normans, the bernyggers, the flamynges / the champenoys / the almayns, y^e
 16 banyers, & for englishemen; so shaH I goo vpon hym, & shaH vtterly dystro²ye hym' / And Naymes sayd euer to hym, that he sholde not fraye hym selfe of noo thyng tyll that he knewe the certente. And as they
 20 spoke this, there came rydyng a messenger vpon a horse faueH, sore, seke and wery, and also sore wounded to the deth. He came to Parys afore the palays, where kyng Charlemyne was at the wyndowes. And whan
 24 he sawe come the messenger, he came doun lyghtely ³from the palays haHe to the gate / and wyth hym, Naymes of Bauyre and Ogyer the dane / And whan the messenger sawe the kyng, he salued hym fuH softe, as
 28 that he was ryght sory and sore wounded, and that wyth peyne myghte speke / And sayd in this manere / 'grete folye ye dyde, whan ye dyde sende my lorde, your sone, for to aske trybute and obeyssaunce of the
 32 duke Benes of Aygremounte, the whiche trybute your sone asked hym shamfuHy. But the duke, whiche is sore felle and crueH, whan he herde speke my sayd

Charlemagne tells his barons how he has dremed that the Duke Benes has slain Lohier.

Duke Naymes bids him put no credence in the dream.

The King threatens Duke Benes with death if the dream is true.

A messenger rides up as they are speaking.

¹ si que il estoit tout pasme, F. orig. b. vii. ² B. vii. back.

³ en bas du palays, F. orig. b. vii.

The messenger
announces the
fight at Aygre-
mount,

lorde, your sone / he commaunded to a meyne of
knyghtes that were there, that he sholde be take, and
that he sholde neuer retourne ayen to yow for to
recounte hys message, nor what answeere he hadde 4
founde. To the whiche takynge, the medlee was grete
and crueH / soo that your dere sone Lohier was ded
there. And the duke Beynes of Aygreounte kyllled

and the death of
Lohier.

hym and alle your folke, excepte me and ix other, 8
that conduyite and brynge your sone in a byere. And
I myselfe am sore hurte, as ye maye see.' And thenne
the messenger coude speke nomore / but felle down in a
swoune, of the grete gryeffe and sore that he felte, 12
bycause of his woundes / And whan the kynge hadde
herde these wordes / he felle down vpon the grounde

The King's grief.

for the grete sorow that he toke therof, and wrange his
handes / and pulled his berde / and tare alle his heres, 16
saynge, 'Ha, god that made heuen and erthe, ye haue
brough^tte me in grete sorowe and tournament irre-
couerable, that neuer shaH ceasse wyth me / so requyre
I to you the deth humbly / For neuer more desire I not 20
to lyue' / The goode duke of Bayre began to recom-
forte hym / saynge, 'For goddis loue, syre, tourmente
not your selfe / but haue goode herte, and hope in god
and recomforte your folke' / And this wolde saye the 24
duke Naymes for theym that he sawe wepe there

Duke Bayre
comforts the
King.

for theyr kynnesmen and frendes that were ded wyth
Loñyer. 'And do,' saye he to the kyng, 'late your sone
be worshyfully buried atte saynte Germayne of the 28
medowes / And thenne ye shaH goo vpon the duke
Benes of Aygreount, wyth aHe your noble power and
grete puyssaunee / and shaH dystroye hym and alle his
lordes atte your playsure.' Thenne the kynge Charle- 32
mayne recomforted hym selfe / and weH he knewe that
Naymes counseyllled hym truly and lawfully / Thenne
sayd the kynge / 'barons, make you redy / and we

Duke Naymes
advises him to
bury Lohier at
St. Germayne,
and then march
against Duke
Benes.

shall goo ayenste my dere sone Lohier' / And inconty-
 nente aH the prynces and barons made theym selfe
 redy for to do the commaundement of the kynge / And
 4 whan they were goon two myle oute of Parys, they
 mette wyth the corps / And were there wyth the
 kynge, Naymes / Ogger, Sampson of bourgoyne, and
 many other grete lordes / Thenne sayde the kyng
 8 Charlemayne whan he sawe the body of his dere sone
 Lohier / 'Alas, how shamefully am I treated' / he
 descended from his horse a foote, and toke vppe the
 clothe that was vppon the byere, and byhelde his sone
 12 Lohier. Thenne sawe he the hede that was smytten
 of from the body, and the face that was¹ aHe to hewen /
 'Ha, god,' sayd he / 'how well may I be madde now
 aHe quyeke. WeH I oughte to hate that duke Benes
 16 of Aygremounte, that thus hathe murdered my sone' /
 he thenne kyssed his childe aHe bloody² fuH often,
 and sayd in this wyse / 'Ha, fayre sone, ye were a
 taHe man and a gentyH knyghte; now praye I the
 20 puyssaunte god of glorye, that he take your soule thys
 daye, yf it be his plesure, into his royaume of paradyse' /
 Grete sorowe made the kynge Charlemayne for the deth
 of his sone Lohier; But alwayes reecomforted hym the
 24 goode duk naymes. And thenne Ogger the dane, and
 sampson of Bourgoyn, ³toke hym vnder the armes,³
 and ledde hym vnto saynte Germayne of the medewes.
 And there the body of Lohier was buryed and en-
 28 noynted wyth balme, as it apperteyneth to alle the
 sones of kynges. Thus was he putte in his graue: god
 haue of his soule mercy!

Two miles outside
 Paris they meet
 the body of
 Lohier.

The burial of
 Lohier at St.
 Germaine.

32 **W**E shaHe leue here to speke of the goode kynge
 Charlemayne, that was moche sory of his sone
 Lohier / as ye haue herde / and shaH teH you of the
 goode duke Aymon, of Renawde his sone / and of hys

¹ tout detrauche. F. orig. t. viii. ¹ B. viii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. b. viii.

thre bretherne that were at Parys / 'My chyldren,'
 sayd Aymon, 'ye knowe how the kyng Charlemayne
 is moche wroth, and not wythoute a cause, by cause
 that my broder, your vncle, hath slayne Lohier his 4
 sone. And I wote weH that he shaH go vpon hym wyth
 all his puyssaunce / but verely we shaH not goo wyth
 hym / But rather shaHe we goo to Dordonne, and yf
 the kyng make werre ayenste hym / we shaH helpe 8
 hym wyth aH our powre / Soo lyghted anone on horse-
 bak the goode duke Aymon and the foure knyghtes his
 children, and bayted noo where tyH they came to
 Laon / and from thens they rode soo long tyH they 12
 came to Dordonne. And whan the lady sawe her
 lorde and her foure children, she was ryght gladd, and
 wente agaynste theym for to welcome theym, and asked
 after tydynges, and yf Reynawde and his other chy- 16
 dren were made knyghtes / Thenne the goode duk
 answered 'ye'; ¹and after, she asked whi they were
 departed for the kynges courte.² And thenne he
 rehersed vnto her worde by worde how his broder, the 20
 duke Benes, had slayne Lohier, the sone of the kyng
 Charlemayn / wherof the goode lady Margerye was
 wouderfuH wroth and sory; for weH she knew that
 this deth of Lohier was the totalle dystrectyon of the 24
 duke Aymon her husbonde, of herselfe, and of her
 children, and of theyr londe. She herde Reynawde
 her eldest sone, that thretened Charlemayne the grete
 kyng / thenne sayd to hym the lady his moder / 'My 28
 sone Reynawde, I praye the vnderstande me a lityH /
 Loue thy souerayne and thy natureH lorde / and drede
 hym aboue aH thynges; but bere hym honour and
 reuerence / and god shaH reward the for it / and ye, my 32
 lorde Aymon, I am moche merueylled of you, that are
 departed from Charlemayne wythoute leue of hym,
 that hath doon to you soo moche goode and soo grete

Aymon and his
 sons in fear go to
 Dordonne.

Aymon relates to
 his wife the death
 of Lohier.

Reynawde's
 mother counsels
 him to obey and
 reverence his
 King.

¹ C. i. ² dauecqs le roy Charlemaigne, F. orig. b. viii.

worship, and hathe gyuen to your sones soo noble and
 soo ryche armes, and hathe made theym knyghtes wyth
 his owne handes / more grete honoure he myghte not
 4 doo to you nor to your chyldren' / 'Lady,' sayd the
 duke, 'we be thus departed from kynge Charlemayne
 by cause that my broder hathe slayne his sone, as
 I haue tolde you afore' / 'Ha, go-1,' sayd the lady,
 8 'that of the vyrgyn was borne in bedeleyrn, how hath
 y^e euyl thys daye surmounted y^e goode / For goddys
 loue, my lorde,' sayde the lady, 'medlee not wyth aſſe,
 for ye shaſſe see this nexte somer that the kynge shaſſe
 12 goo vpon your broder / and by my counseyH serue the
 kynge, your ryght-wys lorde, nor faylle hym not for
 noo thyng / For yf ye doo otherwyse, ye shaſſ be vntrue
 and false towarde your souerayne and natureH lorde.'
 16 'Lady,' sayd the duke, 'by god omnypotente I wolde
 leuer haue loste my castell & the halfe of my londe /
 than that my broder shokle haue ¹slayne Lohier. Now
 the wyll of god be doon therin, and none otherwyse.'
 20 **T**O speke of the good duke Aymon of Dordonne,
 and of his wiff the duchesse, and of theyr sones /
 we shaſſ here leue, and shall retourne to speke of the
 kynge Charlemayne that was come again to Parys /
 24 makyngre grete sorow for his son Lohier. There had
 you seen many a gowne torne and broken / many a
 hande wrongen, and many heres of the hede pulled, soo
 that it was pyte & wonder for to see. ²' Alas, my dere
 28 sone,' sayd kynge Charlemayne² / 'he that hath slayn
 the soo crueHy, loued me but lityH. I shaſſ neuer be in
 quyete nor in rest tyH that I haue take vengeance of
 thy deth.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke Bauyere, 'haue mercy
 32 of your selfe / For it behoueth not to soo grete a
 prince as ye be, for to make soo grete sorowe as ye
 doo' / And in the meane while came a messenger afore

She upbraids
 Aymon for
 leaving Paris,

and bids him
 serve his King.

¹ C. i. back.

²⁻² et le roy demenoit le roy qui . . . F. orig. c. i.

A messenger informs the King of the departure of Aymon and his sons to Dordonne.

the kyng / whiche shewed to hym how Aymon / the duke of Dordonne, & his foure sones, were go on in to theyr countree / wherof the kyng was sore an angred & wrothe, And sware god and saynt Denys, that afore 4 he sholde deye, that Aymon and his chyldren sholde abyefull sore for it, and that the duke Benes of Aygre-mount¹ shold not kepe theym therfro. The dyner was redy, & they wysshe their handes, and were sette at 8 dyner / but wyte it that the kyng dyde ete but lityll / as he that was in grete malencolye; and y^e fayr Salamon serued that daye afore hym the coppe / & grete people was there. After dyner, themperoure 12 charlemayne dyde reyson wyth his barons, & sayd to theym: 'lorde[s],' sayde he, 'y^e duke Benes of Aygre-mounte hath doon to me grete outrage, that soo shamfuilly hath slayne my sone lohier / But, & it playse 16 god, I shall go wreke it vpon hym this nexte somer, & I shaH dystroye aH his londe; and yf I maye take hym, I shall not leue hym, ²for the duke Aymon that shamfuilly is goon from me / nor for his foure sones 20 that I haue made knyghtes, wherof I me repente sore, but that I shaH make [t]hem to be hangid' / 'Syre,' sayd thenne the duke Naymes, 'now here what I shall saye to you / your sone is ded by grete vnhappe, and weH 24 in an euyll oure was he put to deth, for neuer dethe was so sore solde ne so dere boughte as this shaH be / So sende now for your folke thrughe aH your londes, & thenne from hens towarde Aygre-mount take your 28 waye. And yf ye may take the duke Benes / lete the deth of your sone lohier be to hym full dere solde.'

Duke Naymes counsels the King to summon his folk and marche against Duke Benes.

'Naymes,' sayd the kyng, 'ye be a good man / 32 sage, curtois, & valyaunt. euyll thus shaH I doo / for weH wyselli ye haue counseyllid me' / Thenne gaaf he leue to many of his barons and gentyll men

¹ ne ses freres ne ses eſſas, F. orig. c. i.

² C. ii.

that were in his courte at that tyme, and tolde theym
 that eche of theym sholde goo in to his countree for to
 make theymselfe redy, and that they sholde come ayen
 4 to hym the nexte somer. Soo was it doon as the kynge
 had commaunded. And thus wente the barons & the
 gentyHmen ¹from the courte into their countrey,¹ and
 by theym were tydynges broughte thurgh aH the londes
 8 vnto Rome / That kynge / Charlemayne made a grete
 assemble of men of armes, soo that the renomme therof
 floughe vnto the duke Benes of Aygremountes court /
 whiche of that other parte dyd sende for his kynsmen
 12 & frendes / & in espeeçaH he sente for his bredern
 Gerarde of roussyllon and Dron of nantueH / soo that
 they were whan they came togider weH foure score
 thousande fyghtyng men & moo / and as fayre folke as
 16 eucere were seen / whiche thenne sayd 'I byleue, yf the
 kynge besege the casteHe that the worsse shaHe re-
 tourne vnto hym' / Thenne sayd the duke Benes of
 Aygremounte to Gerarde of Rous²sillon, 'Broder,' sayd
 20 he, 'be not dyssmayd / for I hope to hurte the kynge
 soo sore yf he come vppon vs, that he shaH be wery of
 his bargayn / but lete vs goo fourth towarde Troye ³in
 cHampayne,³ and / there we shall fyghte wyth the
 24 kyng vygorously / for weH I wote that god shaH helpe
 vs ayenste hym' / This was atte the begynnyng of the
 moneth of Maye, and Charlemayne was at Parys / that
 abode after his men that sholde come for to goo wyth
 28 a grete puyssaunce vpon the duke Benes of Aygre-
 mounte. And bode not longe, that Rycharde of Nor-
 mandy cam to the kyng with xxx thousande fyghtyng
 men. And of a nother side, came to hym the erle
 32 Guy, that hadde wyth hym a ryght noble and a grete
 company of goode men. And⁴ after hym came Sala-
 mon of bretayne, and the erle Huon; and of all sides

The King allows
 many of his
 barons to go to
 their own lands
 till the summer.

Duke Benes,
 hearing of the
 intended invasion,

summones his
 kinsmen Gerarde
 of Roussyllon and
 Dron of Nantuell
 to his aid.

Duke Benes sets
 out with his army
 to Troyes.

Richard of Nor-
 mandy and Earl
 Guy and others
 join the King at
 Paris with large
 forces.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. c. ii. back. ² C. ii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. c. ii. ⁴ Amd *in text*.

ye sholde haue seen come to the kynge Charlemayne, Poeteuyns, Gascoyns, Normans, Flemynges, Bernyers, & Bourgoyns / and so many other grete lordes that it was grete wonder for to see / whiche come all, & lodged 4 theym selfe in y^e medowes of saynte Germaine.

THenne whan the kynge Charlemayne knewe that his folke was aff arryued, he had of yt grete Loye / and incontynente made his bataylles to departe / for to go to 8 his enterpryse ; and made of Rycharde of Normandy, of Walleran of bryllon, of Guydellon of banyere, of Yzacar of Nemours, of Oger the dane / and of Esconf the sone of Oedon, wyth theym xl thousande men, his forewarde / 12 There sholde ye haue seen a ryght noble companye, and many hardy men. They departed from nyghe Parys / and putte theym selfe to the waye streyghte towarde Aygremounte. And they thus rydyng after many 16 dayes Iourney, whiche I canne not telle, came there streyghte to Ogyer the dane, that was ¹in the forewarde, a messenger sore hastily rydyng / that asked to whom was this noble companye / And he answered to 20 hym, that they were kynge Charlemaynes folke. Thenne sayd, ²Syr, the messenger,² that he wolde weH speke wyth hym. Thenne went Oger the dane, and shewed hym to the kynge / And assoone as the messenger sawe hym, 24 he made hym due reuerence / and the kyng gaaf hym ayen his salute / and hym demaunded what he was and fro whens he come. And the messenger tolde hym that he was of Troye / and that vnto hym he was sent 28 from Aubrey, the lorde of Troye, that was his liege man,³ whiche besoughte hym humbli for soeoures, for the duk Benes of Aygremounte, and his two brederne, Gerarde of Roussyllon and Dron of nantuel, and wyth 32 them an hundred thousande fyghtyng men, had beseged

They set out for Aygremount.

After many days marching a messenger rides forward and asks whither the army is bound.

The messenger, brought before the King,

says he comes from Aubrey of Troyes to ask for aid against Duke Benes.

¹ C. iii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. c. ii.

³ car il tenoit de luy Troye, F. orig. c. ii.

hym wythin Troye; and that yf he come not to helpe hym, he muste yelde vp the towne, and also the fayre towre that Julyus Cesar dyde buylde there.

4 **W**Han Charlemayne the emperour vnderstode that
Troye was beseged by the duke Benes and his
bretherne / he was full sory for hit. And he swore
thenne by saynt Denys of Fraunce, that he sholde goo
8 there wyth his army, and that yf he myghte holde the
duke of Aygremounte, he sholde make hym deye a
shamfull deth. Soo called he the duke Naymes of
Bauyere / Goodebew of Fryse / and the duk walleran,
12 and sayd to theym, ‘Barons, ye vnderstond what this
messenger sayth / lete vs ryde hastely towarde Troy or
it be take.’ And they answered to hym ryght gladly
that they wolde doo it soo / Soo dyde they rydde a
16 goode paas till that they came nyghe Troye / And fyrste
of alle came the forewarde wyth the Oryflame / of the
whiche were gouernours Oger the Dane / Rycharde of
Normandye: and ¹the duke Walleran / and [with] theym
20 fourty² thousande men / and the messenger of Troye that
conduytted theym / And whan they were comen soo
nyghe that they sawe Troye afore theym, a messenger
came to Gerarde of Roussyllon that was afore Troye /
24 saynge to hym that the kyng Charlemayne came vpon
theym, for to socoure Aubrey wyth a ryght grete and
puyssaunte companye / Thenne sayd Gerarde to his
bretherne / That is to wyte, duke Benes of Aygre-
28 mounte and the erle Dron of NantueH, ‘that it were
goode that they sholde goo ayenste kynge Charlemayne
wyth all theyr puyssaunce, and that eche of theym
sholde preue hym selfe a goode man’ / They dyde soo
32 as they hadde deuysed, and Gerarde of Roussyllon was
the fyrste in the forewarde; and they roode soo longe
tyH that the one partye sawe the other. Thenne sayd
Oger the Dane to Rycharde of Normandye, whan he

The King marches
to succour Aubrey
at Troyes.

A messenger is
sent to announce
to Gerarde of
Roussyllon the
approach of the
army.

Gerarde and his
men ride forward.

¹ C. iii. back.

² trente, F. orig. c. ii.

sawe come Gerarde of Roussyllon / 'See,' sayd he, 'how Gerarde of Roussyllon weneth for to fare fowH wyth vs. But now lete vs thynke for to diffende vs weH, soo moche that the worshypppe abyde to the kynge Charle- 4 mayne / and to vs' / And thenne they lete renne theyr horses from one parte and from the other / And Gerarde of Roussyllon went and smote an Almayn wyth his spere soo moche, that he made it to entre thourghe the 8 body of hym, whiche felle anone deed to the grounde. And Gerarde toke his baner and cryed wyth an highe voys / 'Roussillon, Roussyllon!' ¹

The battle begins, **T**Henne beganne the bataylle sore strong, felle, and 12 crueH. And when Oger the dane sawe thus his folke deye, he was woode and mad wyth hit / Soo wente he, and smote a knyghte named Ponson by suche a wyse, that he putte his spere thourghe the body of hym, 16 whiche felle down ²deed afore him. And whan Gerarde hadde seen the same, he wente and smote one of Ogyers men / soo that aHe deed he cast hym afore hym / ³And thenne he sayd, ³ 'Ye haue this for your maysters sake, 20 Ogyer' / Moche grete and merueyllouse was the stoure, and the bataiH soo fyers. For there sholde ye haue seen soo many of shekles perced and clouen / and soo many a haubergeon broken / and salettes and helmes 24 vnboled and sore beten / and soo many men henge vpon thother deed, that aH the erthe was couered wyth the blood of the deed men, and of theym that were hurte there, soo that it was a grete pyte for to see. 28 And thenne came the duke Benes of Aygremounte, that spored hys horse terryble, and wente and smote Enguerran, lord of Peronne and of saynte Quynntyne, soo harde, that he ouerthrewe hym deed afore hym, and 32 thenne sayd, 'Now goo, goddys curse haue thou!' and cryed wyth an highe voys, 'Aygremounte' / And thenne

Duke Benes slays Enguerran, Lord of Peronne.

¹ omitted, F. orig. c. iii. back. ² C. iii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. c. iii. back.

came to him his brother, the duke of Nantueff, wyth
 all his folke, and they wente all togyder vpon Charle-
 maynes folke. And of the other parte came wyth grete
 4 puyssaunce Almayns, Poeteuyns, and Lombardes also,
 that were of the parte of kyng Charlemayne / So medled
 theymselſ the one partye among the other / And there
 was moche harde and horryble assemble / For there
 8 were slayne many myghty and worthy knyghtes of
 bothe sydes / And Rycharde of Normandye shewed weff
 there his grete prowesse and worthynes / for he wente
 and smote a knyghte that Gerarde of Roussyllon loued
 12 moche, by suche a streyngthe that he ouerthrewe hym
 deed from his horse to the erthe afore the sayd
 Gerarde / whiche thenne sayd / ‘ Now am I weff sory
 and wrothe for hym that now ys deed, that I loued
 16 soo sore. Certes, I shaſſ neuer haue Ioye atte my herte
 but that I be a¹uenged therof shortely.’ Thenne toke
 Gerarde of Roussyllon his baner in his fyste / but his
 broder of Nantueff came² anone to hym and sayd,
 20 ‘ Broder, I counseyſe you that ye tourne agayn / for
 here cometh Charlemayne wyth his folke, and weff I
 telle you, that yf we abyde hym / the losse shaſſe torne
 vpon vs.’ And whyle they were spekyng thus, Wal-
 24 leron of Bollon smote the newew of Gerarde of Rous-
 sillon soo that he foyned atte hym wyth his swerde
 thurgh the body of hym, and felle down deed to the
 erthe. Thenne trowed Gerarde to haue goon oute of
 28 his wytte / and sente³ anone for the duke Benes his
 broder, that he sholde come soone to socoure hym /
 And he dyde soo as preu and valyaunte that he was.
 And of the other side assembled there the kynge and
 32 his folke. ¶ Soo shaſſ you now here of a thying mer-
 ueyllouse, of soo grete a noblesse, that at the same feelde
 were cruehly slayne / This was in the moneth of Maye,

The prowess of
 Richard of Nor-
 mandy.

Walleron of
 Bollon kills
 Gerarde's nephew.

Gerarde sends to
 Duke Benes for
 aid.

¹ C. iiii. back.

² *Promptement*, F. orig. c. iii.
querir, F. orig. c. iii.

vpon a mornynge, that kyng Charlemayne dide assemble
 his folke wyth the folke of the duke of Aygremounte
 and of his bretherne / to the whiche assemble ye sholde
 haue seen many fayr harneyses shynynge, for the sonne 4
 that fayr and clere was that daye, the whiche assemblee
 was wonderfuH stronge / For there were so many feet
 and hedes smytten of, and so many good horses slayne,
 1 and tho ther ranne thurgh the medowes, wherof the 8
 maysters leye deed vpon the grasse.¹ And wyte it for
 trouth, that there were deed that same daye of the one
 side and of the other, more than xl² thousande men.
 Ha, god, what slaughter! there was moche grete noblesse 12
 deed. The duk Benes, sore angred, went and smote
 sire Walter, lorde of Pyerelee, in his shelde, soo that
 his spere wente thorgh the body of hym, and felle
 down deed afore hym. Thenne cryed he wyth an highe 16
 voys, 'his banere, ³Aygremounte!'

Duke Benes kills
 Sir Walter, Lord
 of Pyerelee.

GRete was the presse / and the bataylle fyers and
 merueyllouse. And there shewed Rycharde of
 Normandy moche worthyly his grete hardynes / For 20
 he Iousted ayenste the duke of Aygremounte soo that
 he perced his sheelde, and dyde hurte hym ryght sore /
 And sayd to hym / 'By god, ye shaH not this daye
 escape dethe. It was an euyH daye for you whan ye 24
 dyde slee my lorde Lohyer' / And wyth that, he dyd
 drawe oute his swerde / And smote the duke agayne
 vpon his helme / in suche a wyse that yf it hadde not
 be the coyffe of stele that made his stroke to slyde / 28
 the sayd benes hadde be deed that houre. And the
 stroke felle down vpon the horse, and cutte the horse in
 two, as thoughe hit had be noo thyng; and thus felle
 the horse deed vnder his mayster / Thenne was the 32
 duke Benes sore abashed whan he thus founde hym-

Richard of Nor-
 mandy jousts
 against Duke
 Benes.

Duke Benes' horse
 is killed.

¹⁻¹ et les autres courir parmi les prez dont les maistres
 gisoiet mors par dessus l'erbe.

² lx, in F. orig. c. iii.

³ C. v.

selfe a grounde / But he stode vpe on his feete
 redyly, as he that was preu and valyaunte, holdyng hys
 swerde in his hande / And wente and smote a knyghte
 4 named sire Symon, soo that he kylled hym sterke deed
 in the place / And themme he called wyth an hohe
 voys / Aygremounte his baner. Thenne came to hym
 his two bretherne / the duke of Roussyllon and of
 8 NantueH / And of the side of kyng Charlemayne
 came Ogyer, Naymes, Walleran of Bollon, Huon lorde
 of Mauns, the erle Salamon, Leon of Fryse, the arche-
 byshop Turpyu, and Escouf the sone of Oedon / And
 12 themme sholde ye haue seen there, at that assemble,
 moche grete and merueyllouse noblesse of knyghtes that
 leye deed vpon the erthe, the one vpon the other, that
 it was a pyetous sighte to be-holde.

He fights Sir
 Symon on foot
 and kills him.

16 **T**HO this inhumayn occysion was come themperoure
 Charlemayn,¹ cryeng, ‘barons, yf they escape vs,
 we shal ²neuer haue honoure’ / and thenne he bare
 vpe his spere to the reest, and wente and smote in to
 20 the shelde of Gerarde of roussyllon, so that he ouer-
 threwe bothe horse and man to the grounde / And
 there hadde be his last daye, yf hit hadde not be the
 duke Benes and Dron, his bretherne / that moche
 24 worthyly, and wyth grete deligence, socoured hym.
 Of that other partye, came Ogyer the Dane, vpon
 his goode horse Broyforte, that smote a knyghte of
 the folke of Gerarde, duke of Roussyllon, called sire
 28 Foulquet, soo that he cloue hym to the teeth, and felle
 doun deed to the erth. And whan Gerarde of Roussillon
 sawe thus his knyghte slayne, he called to god and to
 our lady, sayng, ‘WeH haue I this day loste my fayr
 32 and goode knyghte.’ And the duke of Aygremounte
 was sore abashed, and prayed god also full pyetously
 that it wolde playse hym to kepe hym from deth, and
 from fallyng into the handes of Charlemayne. Nyghe

Charlemagne
 overthrows
 Gerarde,

but Duke Benes
 and Dron save
 him.

Duke Benes prays
 that his life may
 be spared.

¹ de France, F. orig. c. iv. back.

² C. v. back.

The battle ceases
at sundown.

Gerarde counsels
a renewal of the
fight on the
morrow.

Duke Nantuell
counsels that
Duke Benes
should make
amends to Charle-
magne for the
death of Lohier.

was the sonne vnder, and it was weH aboute complyn
tyme / and the fyghters of the one parte and of the
other were wery and sore chauffed / And soo wyth-
drewē the thre bretherne abacke to their tentes wyth 4
moche wrathe / and in espeyaH Gerarde of Roussyllon,
that hadde loste that daye Aymanoy his cosyn, and a
hundred other of the beste Knyghtes of his company /
And he sayd in this wyse / ‘ An euyH houre it was 8
whan the sone of Charlemyne was slayne’ / Thenne
came to hym the duke Benes of Aygremounte bledynge,
as he that was horribly wounded / And whan Gerarde
sawe hym / he began to sighe tenderly, saynge / ‘ Fayr 12
brother, are ye wounded to dethe?’ ‘ Nay,’ sayd he,
‘ I shaH soone be hole.’ Thenne swore Gerarde the
duke of Roussyllon, that to morowe atte the sonne
rysynge / He sholde begynne agayne the batayHe 16
ayenste kynge Charlemyne and his ¹folke, wherfore
xxx thousande shaH lose theyr lyues. ‘ Alas, for god,
nay,’ sayd his broder, the duke NantueH. ‘ But yf ye
wyH doo my counseyH we shaH sende xxx. of the 20
wysest knyghtes that we haue, vnto kyng Charlemyne,
and by our sayd knyghtes we shaH doo hym to wyte,
and shewe humbli that he haue pyte and mercy of vs,
and that the duke Benes our brother shaH amende hym 24
the deth of his sone Lohier, euen soo as it shaH be
aduysed by the prynces and barons of his felaushyp
and of ours / and ye knowe weH aH redy that we ben
his liege men, and that for to werre ayenste hym we 28
doo crueH falshed / And yet more it is / that yf he had
lost aH his folke that he² hath here wyth hym / or euer
that it were a moneth passed he sholde haue recouered
twys as many / soo maye we no thyng doo ayenst 32
hym / And therefore maye we noo thyng doo ayenst
hym; and therefore I praye you, my brethern, that ye

¹ C. vi. back.

² qu'il amene sur nous, F. orig. c. iiiii.

weH doo thus' / And to hym answered his two brethern
 that they wolde doo it / syn that he counseyllled theym
 soo; And concluded togyder that they sholde sende
 4 thyther as soone as it were daye. They made that
 nyghte good watche vnto the mornyng / and thenne
 they made redy theyr messagers for to sende to the
 kyng Charlemayne. And whan they were redy /
 8 Gerarde of roussyllon sayd to theym / 'Lordes, saye
 weH to kynge Charlemayne that we be sore dysplaysed
 of the deth of his sone Lohier, and that our brother,
 the duke Benes, repenteth hymselfe of it fuH sore, &
 12 that yf it playse hym to haue mercy of vs, that we
 shaH go and serue hym where it shaH playse hym
 to sende vs, wyth x thousande fyghtyng men / And
 also ye shaH saye to Naymes of bauyere, that we
 16 praye hym that we he wyH employe hymselfe to-
 ward the kynge Charlemayne, that this accorde maye
 be hadde.'

Duke Nantuell's
 advice is taken.

Messengers sent
 to offer allegiance
 to the King.

20 **A**fter that the messagers hadde weH aHe alonge
 vnderstande what they sholde saye to the kynge
 Charlemayne from the thre bretherne dukes / They
 lyghted on horsebacke eche of theym / berynge
 braunches of olyue tree in their handes, In token of
 24 peas / And ceased not to ryde tyl that they were
 come afore the tente of the kynge Charlemayne /
 Thenne spake oue of theym, whiche was named Steuyn /
 that salued the kynge in this manere /

28 'Syre, I praye² our lorde that of his grace gyue
 you goode lyfe and longe / And wyte, syre, that the
 duke Gerarde of Roussyllon, & the duke Benes of Ay-
 gremount, and Dron of NantueH, ben comen hider, the
 32 whiche crye you mercy / and byseche you ryght humbly
 that it playse you to pardone theym the dethe of your

The messengers
 deliver their
 message to the
 King, stating
 Gerarde, and
 Duke Benes, and
 Dron of Nantuell
 offer their allegi-
 ance to him.

¹ C. vi. back.

² celluy dieu q' forma noz pere et mere adam, et eue
 createur de toutes choses. benoise vous roy Charlemagne, F.
 orig. c. v. back.

some Lohyer / of the whiche they are wrothe and sory.
 And the duke of Aygremounte lete you wyte by vs /
 that yf hyt be your playsure to doo soo, that he and his
 bretherne shaHe be your liegemen,¹ And shalle come to 4
 serue you wyth x thousande fyghtyng men in aHe that
 shaHe be your playsure to employe theym / Syre, for
 godys sake, haue remembraunce that god forgaffe his
 dethe to Longys, that crueHy stycked hym to the 8
 herte;² wherfore, syre, playse it you to pardone theym,
 and take theym to your goode grate. And of this
 right humbly they beseche you.'

WHan the kyng Charlemayne hadde thus herde 12
 speke the messagers of the thre bretherne /
 He frompeled his forhede, and knytted his browes, and
 loked ful angrely / And atte that owre he answered to
 theym noo thyng / And thenne soone after he beganne 16
 to speke in this manere: 'By my feyth, Sir Steuyn,'
 sayd he, 'weH had the duke Benes lost his wyttes
 whan he soo shamfuHy slewe ³my dere sone Lohier,
*the*⁴ whiche I loued soo tenderly. Now, is he my 20
 man? wyH he or not?' 'Syre,' sayd Steuyn, 'I am
 certeyne that he shaHe doo to you aHe rayson to the
 dyrectyon of your goode counseyHe' / Then sayde the
 kyng, 'of this we shaHe counseyHe vs' / And wyth- 24
 drewe hym a lityH a side / and called to hym duke
 Naymes, Ogyer the dane / sire Salamon, Huon of
 Mauns, Walleron of Boullon / Odet of Langres, and
 Leon of Fryse, and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, here ben 28
 the messagers of the duke Benes & of his brethern,
 that sende me worde that they wyH come to serue me
 where my wylle shaH be, wyth x thousande goode
 fyghtyng men / yf we wyH pardonne theym the 32
 dethe of my sone Lohier; And they shaH be oure

The King takes
 counsel with his
 lords.

¹ Et luz et ses freres Gerart de Roussyllon et
 Dron de Natuel les quelz vous viedrot servir.

² de sa lauce, F. orig. e. v. ³ C. vii.

⁴ we *in text*.

vassaylles and treue liege men ; And of vs they shaHe
holde theyr londes and theyr lordeshyppes' / 'Syre,'
answered the duke Naymes, 'in this is noo thyng but
4 weH. Soo counseyll I you that ye parloune them /
For¹ they be moche valyaunte / and of grete renoune ;
wherfore pardoune them, yf it playse you.'

Duke Naymes
counsels the King
to accept their
allegiance.

THenne by the counseyHe of the duke Naymes of
8 Bauyere, the kyng dyde pardoune the thre
bretherne, and called to hym the thre² knyghtes / and
sayd to them / how he pardouned the thre dukes the
dethe of his sone Lohier / by suche a condycyon that
12 the duke Benes of Aygremounte sholde come for to
serue hym atte the feste of saynte Iohn³ nexte comynge
wyth ten thousande fyghtynge men weH arrayed.
'And ye shaHe telle to them, that they surely come
16 now to me for to take of them theyr othe and feyth,
that they shaHe from hens fourthe / obeye and serue
me truly ; And that of me they shaHe holde aHe their
landes.' Thenne departed the knyghtes from afore
20 kyng Charlemayn, & cam ayen to the dukes, and
shewed to them how they⁴ had sped of their message
wyth the kyng, wherof the thre bretherne thanked
moche humbly oure lorde / Thenne sayde the duke
24 Rycharde⁵ of Roussillon, 'it is rayson that we take
of⁶ oure goode gownes, and goo to the kyng naked,
and erie hym mercy of this that we haue thus offended
ayenst his highe puyssaunce and lordeshyppe' / And
28 the other two bretherne answered that weH they oughte
to doo soo / Soo toke the noble knyghtes theyr clothes
of,⁶ and alle naked, bare fote, and in poure estate, de-
parted from theyr lodges / And well foure thousande
32 knyghtes wyth them, aHe bare fote & in theyr shertes,
and in suche estate as were theyr maysters. In thys

The King pardons
the three Dukes,

on condition that
Duke Benes
should serue him
with ten thousand
men at the feast
of St. John.

The messengers
return and an-
nounce the King's
decision.

The Dukes and
many knights go
before the King
naked and bare-
footed to offer
their allegiance.

¹ car les troys ducs, F. orig. c. v. ² omitted, F. orig. c. v.

³ baptiste, F. orig. c. v. ⁴ C. vii. back,

⁵ Girart de Roussillon a ses freres, c. v. F. orig. ⁶ off.

wyse they came to fore the kynge Charlemayne, And wyte weH that in ryght grete humylite were sette the thre bretherne for to haue peas and accorde wyth the kynge Charlemayne, that was wrothe to theym, spee- 4
 affy to the duke of Aygremounte / as more playnly ye shaHe here hereafter.

WHan kynge Charlemayne sawe thus come the thre bretherne wyth theyr barons and knyghtes, 8
 he called to hym the duke Naymes and many other barons / and sayd to theym / 'Canne not ye telle me what folke ye see yonder commynge?' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'it is duk Benes of Aygremounte 12
 wyth his folke / that come for to requyre you of mercy' / This hangynge, the duke Benes of Aygre-
 mounte came afore the kynge, and caste hym selfe vpon his knee / and sayd to hym in this wyse / 'Syre, for god 16
 I crye you mercy; we ben here comen by your commaundement / Yf I haue sleyne your dere¹ sone by my foly, I now (as your man) yelde me and my bretherne also, Gerarde of roussillon & Dron of nantuel, & wyH 20
 be your liege men & serue you wyth aH our pussaunce where your plaisur ²shaHe be to sette vs vnto / and neuer dayes of our lyues we shaH faylle you / but yf it be longe of you' / 24

Benes asks the King's pardon for the death of Lohier.

Thenne when the kyng sawe theym thus come humbli towarde his presence in theyr shertes, and barefoote, & had herde this that the duke of Aygre-
 mounte had sayd to hym / he had of them right grete 28
 pyte / and pardouned theym the deth of his sone Lohier, & aH his euyH wyH / Thenne shold ye haue seen from one parte and from the other, kysse and colle eche other theyr kynsmen / and some wepte for 32
 ioye, & thother for pyte.

Charlemagne has pity for him, and grants his request.

THenne were pleased the barons wyth the kyng Charlemayn by the counseyH of the good duke

¹ omitted, F. orig. e. vi. back. ² C. viii.

Naymes. the~~ne~~ sware and promysed the thre brethern
 good fidelite ¹to the kynge Charlemayne¹ / and that
 they sholde serue hym at aH tymes that he sholde calle
 4 for theym / Soo toke they a glade leue from kynge
 Charlemayne; but the kyng charged the duke Benes of
 Aygremount that he sholde come to serue hym at the
 feste of seynt Iohn nexte comyng / And thenne
 8 returned kyng charlemayne towarde Parys / and the
 bretherne wente ayen right glad, eche of theym towarde
 his place / for weH they trowed to haue accorde the
 duke Benes of Aygremounte theyr broder towarde
 12 Charlemayne / But other wyse it wente, & fuH lityH
 was worthe their accorde, for soone after deyed therof
 the duke Benes of Aygremounte by trason, and vnder
 the sauconduyt of the kynge Charlemayne, as ye²
 16 shaH vnderstonde yf ye wylle here me. ¶ Ye shaH
 wyte that a lityl afore the feste of saynt Iohn baptiste
 that the kyng Charlemayne helde a grete court in
 Paris, & the duke Benes forgate not to goo thyder
 20 as he had promysed / soo departed he fro Aygremounte
 wyth two hundred knyghtes, and toke his way for to
 come to Paris towarde the ³kyng for to serue hym
 where he wolde put hym vnto. Now shaH ye here
 24 how the kynge, beyng in Parys / came towarde hym
 the erle Guenes his neuewe, Aoyfoulquet of moryllon,
 Hardres and Berenger, whiche tolde hym how the duk
 Benes came for to serue hym wyth weH two hundred
 28 knyghtes / saynge by this maner / ‘Syr, how maye ye
 loue nor weH be serued of hym that soo crueHy hath
 slayne your sone, oure cosin / yf your playsure were we
 sholde well auenge you of hym / For in goode soothe
 32 we sholde slee hym.’ ‘Guenes,’ sayd y^e kyng, ‘it were
 traision, for we haue gyuen to hym tryewes. Always
 doo wyth it your wyH, so that the synne tourne not

Duke Benes
swears fidelity to
the King.

At the feast of St.
John, Benes goes
towards Paris.

Earl Guenes, the
nephew of the
King, announces
the approach of
Duke Benes,

and begs leave to
slay him

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. c. vi. back. ² ye ye *in text*.

³ C. viii. back.

vpon me, and kepe you. For in certeyn the duke of
 Aygremounte is ryght myghty, and of grete kynred /
 and weH ye myghte happe to haue a doo, yf ye fulfille
 in this your owne entente.' 'Syre,' answered Guenes, 4
 'care ye not therfore / for there nys soo ryche a man in
 aH the worlde that durste vndertake ony thyng ayenste
 me and my linage.' 'Syre,' sayd Guenelon, 'tomorowe
 erly we shaH departe wyth foure thousande fyghtyng 8
 men / and take noo care for it / For we shaH delyuer
 this worlde of hym.' 'Certes,' sayd the kyng, 'it were
 trayson' / 'Care not therfor,' sayd Guenes, 'he slewe
 weH your sone Lohier by trayson, whiche was my 12
 kynnesman, And therfore I wyH be auenged and¹ I can.
 'Now doo you therein,' sayd the kynge, 'protestyng
 alwayes that I am not therto consentyng.'

Although protest-
 ing, the King
 gives his sanction
 to the traitor
 Guenes.

WHan the mornyng came, departed weH erly from 16
 Parys the sayd Guenelon and his felawes, and
 wyth theym weH foure thousande fyghtyng men / And
 neuer they taryed tyll that they came in the Valey of
 Soyssons / And there they recounted the duke Benes 20
 wyth his pyssaunce; and whan the duk Benes sawe
 theym² come, he sayd to his³ folke, 'Lordes, I trowe
 that yender be som folke of the kingis, that retourne
 ayen from the court' / 'It is noo force⁴,' sayd one of his 24
 knyghtes. 'I wote not what it maye be,' sayd the
 duke / 'For the kynge Charlemayne is sore vengable
 for to auenge hymselfe / And also he hath wyth hym a
 lynage of folke, the whiche be felle and cruell / Is it 28
 Guenes, foulques of Moryllon, and certeyn other of his
 court / And in trouthe, to nyghte in my slepe I dremed
 that a gryffon came oute of the heuens, that perced my
 shelde and aH myn armes, soo that his nayles stacke in 32
 to my lyuer and my mylte / and aH my men were
 therof in grete tourmente / and they aH were eten wyth

In the valley of
 Soissons they
 encounter the
 Duke and his
 knights.

On their approach
 Benes relates his
 fears of treachery
 on the part of
 Charlemagne.

¹ if. ² vit venir si noble copaignie, F. orig. c. vi.

³ D. i.

⁴ matter.

bores and of lions, and noone of theym scaped but one
 alone / And also me semed that oute of my mouth
 yssued a white douve' / Thenne sayd one of hys
 4 knyghtes that it was aH but weH / and that for cause
 of this dreame he oughte not to dysmaye hymselfe / 'I
 wote not,' sayd the duke, 'what god shaH sende me,
 but of this my herte dredeth' / Soo commaunded the
 8 duk Benes that every man shold arme hymselfe. And
 his knyghtes answered, that right gladly they wolde soo
 doo. Soo beganne eueriche of theym to seke his armes
 and habylmentes / Here shaHe you here of the harde
 12 hewing, and of a thyng heuy to be recounted, of the
 grete slaughter that made the traytour Guenellon of the
 goode duke Benes of Aygremounte.

The Duke com-
 mands every man
 to arm himself.

T[h]E erle Guenes rode wyth grete force, that was
 16 wonderfuH strong & fyers, and weH accompanied.
 Thenne wente and mette wyth the duk Benes first,
 Foulquet of Moryllon, the whiche sayd to hym that he
 hadde doon ylle for to slee Lohyer the sone eldest
 20 of the kyng Charlemayne / but or euer the euyne came
 he sholde haue a sory rewarde for it. Whan the duke
 vnderstode hym, he merueylled hym ¹selfe moche, and
 sayd / 'Ha god, how myght one kepe hym frome
 24 traytours / Alas, I helde the kyng Charlemayne for a
 true prynce / and I see now the contrary; but afore
 that I deye, I shaH selle my deth ful dere' / Thenne
 wente they and fought, the one partye ayenst the other,
 28 moche angrely. In so moche that Guenes smotte byfore
 the duke, hys cosyn Reyner, soo that he ouerthrewe
 hym down deed to the erth afore his feete; and after, he
 cryed wyth an hie voys / 'smyte on, knyghtes, for he
 32 slewe my good cosin Lohier / The duk Benes of Aygre-
 mount dayned not accorde wyth me / but now I shaHe
 selle it hym fuH dere.' So ranne Guenes & his folke
 vpon the duke Benes of Aygremounte / and the duke

The Duke bewails
 the treachery of
 Charlemaigne.

¹ D. i. back.

Guenes slays a knight, called Sir Fawcon.

Duke Benes weeps for the absence of Mawgis, and

the four sons.

The battle rages fiercely.

ryght worthili deffended hym selfe, & smote a knyghte named sire Fawcon, so that he shoued his swerde in to the body of hym, and he felle deed afore hym. And after this the duke Benes of Aygreount toke hym 4 selfe for to wepe strongly / and wysshed moche after his two bretherne, and also after his neuewes. ‘Alas,’ sayd he, ‘dere sone Mawgys! where be you now, that ye be not here for to socoure me / for wel I wote, yf ye 8 wyst this enterprise, ye sholde well socoure me / Ha, my dere broder, the duke of Dordonne & of NantueH, 1 & Gerarde of Roussyllon,¹ weH I know that ye shaH neuer see me alyue / Alas, that ye knowe not the false 12 enterpryse of Charlemayne and of the erle Guenellon / that soo crueHy and by grete trayson shaHe this daye make me Inhumaynly for to deye. WeH I wote that ryght worthily ye sholde come helpe me. Ha, my dere 16 neuewes, Reynawde, Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde, soo moche nede I haue this daye of you. Ha, my dere neuew Reynawde, worthy knyghte / as thou arte / yf hit playse to god of hys benygne grace / that thou 20 myghte know the greuous tourmente and the sorowfuH matyere to the whi²che by trayson I am this day lynered / well I wote that by the³ I sholde haue socours / for in aH the worlde ys not thy peere of 24 beaulte, of goodnesse, of prowesse, and of worthynesse / Now maye not this daye socoure me aH my noble and worthy lynage / but that crueHy, and vnder the sauf-conduyt of Charlemayne, I shaH deye pyteously.’ 28

FYers was the batayH, and ryght harde to endure, but well ye maye wyte that the duke of Aygreounte myghte not resiste ayenste soo many folke; for he hadde not wyth hym but two hundred knyghtes / 32 and the⁴ other were moo than four thousande: thus were they cuyH matched / Thenne sholde ye haue seen

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. c. vii. ² D. ii. ³ thee.

⁴ traictres, F. orig. c. vii.

that daye soo moche braynes in the feelde / soo many
 feete and hedes smytten of / that it was a pyteouse
 thyng to beholde / After came yet ayen Guenes, that
 4 smote Toyusselyne of Bloye soo that he casted hym
 ded to the erth / and he made sone to go backe the
 duk Benes folke of Aygremounte / Thenne was sore
 abashed the duke of Aygremounte / the whiche knewe
 8 weH that wythoute dethe he myghte not escape. Soo
 wente he, and smote one of Guenes folke soo grete a
 stroke, that he ouerthrewe hym deed / for noon other-
 wyse he coude doo / but deffende hymselfe as weH as
 12 he coude for to lengthe his lyffe / Ha, god, what a grete
 dommage it was to haue thus shamfully betrayed hym /
 for after, many chirches, many townes and castelles
 were therfore sette in a fyre¹ / and soo many grete nobles
 16 fuH pyetously broughte to deth / Soo moche sped the
 traytour Guenes ayenst the goode duke of Aygremounte,
 that the folke of the duke were weke and almoste gon /
 For, of the two hundred that he hadde broughte, he
 20 hadde noo moo wyth hym but² fourthi / ‘Barons,’ sayd
 the duke Benes of Aygremounte, ‘ye see that we ben
 almoste ³aH deed, yf we deffende vs not wyth grete
 herte and worthynes / and for goddis loue lete euery
 24 of vs be worthe thre as longe as we shaH now be alyue.
 For ye see, that here pyetously we muste departe and
 breke felowshyp.’ Thenne wente the duke agayn, and
 smote a knyghte named syre Helye, soo that he mad
 28 hym to faHe deed to the erthe. And thenne cryed
 wyth an hyghe voyce / ‘Smyte well, barons.’ The valey
 was fayre, and sounded of the noyse⁴ that was made
 there / And atte that oure, one named Gryffoon of
 32 Hautefelle / wente and smote the dukes horse in to the
 breste wyth his spere, soo that he ouerthrewe hym

Benes defends
 himself valiantly,

but of his two
 hundred folk only
 forty remain
 alive.

Gryffoon of
 Hautefelle kills
 the Duke's horse.

¹ et en flambe, F. orig. c. viii. back.

² cinquante, F. orig. c. viii. back. ³ D. ii. back.

⁴ des coups quilz donnoient sur les heaulmes, F. orig. c. viii. back.

vnder the horse / And the duke anoone arose¹ vppon his feete, and toke his swerde, wenyng to smyte the sayd Gryffon ; but the stroke felle vppon the horse, soo that he cutted hym asonder, as yt hadde ben noo thyng. 4

WHan the duke Benes of Aygreounte sawe hym selfe thus on foote he knewe weH that it was doon² of hym / but weH he sware that his dethe he sholde selle righte dere. But sodaynly came there vpon 8 hym the erle Guenes, that satte vppon a goode courser, the whiche smote the duke Benes of Aygreounte wyth his spere suche a stroke, that he shoued hym thorughe and thorughe his body, and thus fell down deed the 12 duke Benes of Aygreounte / And thenne the duke Gryffon, the fader of the sayd Guenes, cam to the duke Benes of Aygreounte that laye deed vppon the sande / and shoued his swerde in to his foundemente.³ 16 Thenne sayd the duke Gryffon, ‘ Now haste you thi rewarde, for my lorde Lohyers⁴ deeth that thou late slew shamefully wythin thy palays. Now is the goode and worthy duke Benes of Aygreounte deceassed, god of his 20 soule haue mercy ’ / And the traytour Guenellon and the ⁵lorde of Haultefelle, ⁶that lyghted vpon a goode horse,⁶ wente after the duke of Ayyreountes⁷ folke ⁸that fledde,⁸ whiche were but x. a lyue of two hundred, and 24 yet these x. were soone ouertaken. And thenne the traytores made them to swere and promytte that the body of the late duke, their mayster, they sholde bere to Aygreounte / lyke that he hadde doo brynge the 28 body of Lohier to Parys in a byere. And the sayd knyghtes promysed them for to doo so. So toke they the corps from the other bodies deed, wherof was there grete number, and put hym in a byere / and thenne 32

Duke Benes fights on foot,

but is slain by Earl Guenes.

Guenellon pursues the folk of Duke Benes, and slays all but ten.

The ten knights carry the body of Benes to Aygreounte.

¹ moult vaillammēt. F. orig. c. viii. ² doon = all up with.

³ si luy est lame du corps despartie. F. orig. c. viii. back.

⁴ que tu as na gueres occis villainement. F. orig. c. viii. back.

⁵ D. iii. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. F. orig. c. viii. back.

⁷ Benes. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted. F. orig.

wente on their waye wyth aH / And whan they were
 goon a lityH ferder / god knoweth what sorowe and
 lamentacyon¹ that they made for the dethe of theyr
 4 mayster, sayeng, ‘Ha, god, goode duke that soo worthy
 was, how now we are sory for the / Certaynly full
 cuyH hath doon kyng Charlemayne, that vnder hys
 saufconduytte hath made the to be slayn in traizon’ /
 8 These soroufull knyghtes went thus makynge theyr
 mone, berynge the body of the duke Benes, their
 mayster, vpon a byere that two horses² bare, whiche
 corps neuer stauched of bledynge by the space of viii
 12 myles. And how many dayes Iourney that thyse
 knyghtes were wyth the body of theyr mayster by the
 waye, I can not teHe you / but they wente soo longe
 that they cam nygh Aigremounte / and approached soo
 16 moche that the tydynges cam to the towne, and to the
 duchesse, that her lorde hadde ben thus traytoursly
 slayne. Soo oughte not be asked of the grete sorow
 that the duchesse and her sone Mawgys made / They
 20 yssued after oute of the towne wyth theym of the
 chirehe, and wente ayenste the corps / Nor also oughte
 not to be asked yf there were made that daye grete
 wepynges and lamentacyons. For whan the duchesse
 24 saw her lorde / and the ³woundes that he hadde in hys
 body, more than thre tymes she felle down in a swoone
 vppon hym / and in thys wyse they bare the corps to
 the chieff chyrehe / and the bysshop of the towne dyde
 28 the seruyse, and thenne he was putte in his grane, and
 was ryght reuerently buried. Thenne sayd hys sone
 Mawgys, ‘Good lorde, what a domnage is this, of suche
 a worthy lorde, to haue be thus slayne cruefly by
 32 trayson ; but and yf I lyue longe, Charlemayne & the
 traytourses that this haue doon, shaft abyge for it full
 derely’ / His lady moder he recomforted, and sayd to

Tidings reach the
 duchess that her
 lord is slain.

The duchess
 swoonis.

¹ et pitieux pleurs firent les ditz chevaliers. F. orig. c. viii.

² pallefroys, F. orig. c. viii.

³ D. iii. back.

Mawgis comforts his mother, and vows vengeance on Charlemagne with the help of the four sons.

her / 'My dere moder, haue a lytyH pacyence ; for myn vncles, Gerarde of Roussyllon, Dron of NantueH / and my cosins, Reynaude, Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde shaH helpe me wel for to auenge the dethe of my lorde 4 my fader.' Now shaH we leue here to speke of theym of Aygremounte, that ben in grete lamentacyon and wepynges for the dethe of theyr lorde / and shaH retourne to teHe of the traytours Gryffon and of Guenes 8 his sone, that wyth theyr folke were goon ayen to Parys.

CHAPTER II.

¶ How Gryffon of Haultefelle and Guenellon after that they hadde slayne the duke Benes 12 of Aygremounte they returned to Parys, and recounted to the kynge Charlemayne the mortalle trayson that they hadde comysed and doon / wherof the kynge Charle- 16 mayne was glad / but afterwarde he was full wrothe and sory for it. For, after the duke of Aygremountes dethe, his two bretherne, Gerarde of Roussyllon and Dron of 20 Nantuell, werred sore agaynste hym¹ wyth their neuewe Mawgys / and thenne they made peas and accorded togyder. But the kyng Charlemayne apoynted not wyth the 24 foure sones of Aymon, nor to Mawgys theyr cosin / ¶ Item, sheweth also the same ²chapytre, how Reynawde slewe the neuewe of kynge Charlemayne wyth a ches borde, 28 as they were playnge togyder at the chesses / wherof the werre began / the whiche was

¹ et aussi Mawgis son filz, F. orig. b. i. back.

² D. liii.

sore mortall / as ye shall now here here
after, and lasted soo longe that it dyde grete
dommage to the royaume of Fraunce.

4

¶ Capytulum¹ / iiiii.

YE shaH now here & vnderstande from the hens-
fourthon a terryble and a pyetous songe, yf ye
therafter liste to herken / This was atte the
8 feste of Penthecoste after the holy thursdaye / that the
kyng Charlemayne helde a grete courte in Parys / after
that he hadde accorded wyth the bretherne of the sayd
duke Benes of Aygremounte / And to the sayd feste
12 came WyHiam the Englysse, Walleran of Bullon, xv /
kynges and xxx dukes, and well lx erles were there
atte that daye, for to crowne Charlemayne / and also
was come there the duke Aymon of Dordonne, wyth
16 his foure² sones, that is to wyte, Reynawde, Alarde,
Rycharde, and Guycharde / to the whiche Aymon the
kinge sayd / ‘Aymon,’ sayd he, ‘I loue you and your
children weH. And wyte that I wiH make of the
20 fayre Reynawde, my stywarde / and the other shaH
serue me for to bere my faucons and goo³ wyth me.
‘Syre,’ sayd the good Aymon / ‘I thanke you moche
of the grete worshippe that ye doo to me and to my
24 chyldren / and wyt that they shaH serue you truly as
your liege men. But weH I telle you, good kynge,
that ye mysprysed sore whan my brother the duk
Benes of Aygremounte, vnder your saufeconduyt, and
28 in treyson, ye made thus shamfully deye / And beleue
that it greueth me full sore att herte / and yf we
doubted not you soo moche, Certes, vengeance we
sholde take therof / but sith that my broder Gerarde
32 hath pardoned it to you : I forgyue it you also.’
‘Aymon,’ sayd the kynge, ‘ye knowe better than that

At the feast of
Pentecost Charle-
magne and all his
barons are assem-
bled at Paris,

also Aymon and
his four sons.

Charlemagne
offers to make
Reynawde his
steward.
Aymon thanks
him,

but complains of
his treason
towards Duke
Benes.

¹ chap. ii. ca. iiiii. in Caxton. ² beaulx, F. orig. b. i. back.

³ en gibier avecques moy, F. orig. b. i. back. ⁴ D. iiiii. back.

The King cites the death of Lohier as his excuse.

The four sons come before the King.

Reynawde confesses his hatred to the King.

Charlemagne's anger is roused,

and he tells Reynawde to go out of his sight.

All the assembly go to hear mass,

ye saye ; for ye knowe weH the offence that your broder hadde doon to me, for to haue slayne soo crueHy Lohier my eldeste sone, that I loued soo moche. Now sette the one agaynste the other, and lete be spoken nomore 4 therof' / 'Nomore we shall,' sayd duke Aymon / 'but weH I praye god to haue mercy of his soule, for he was a ryght worthy knyghte' / Thenne cam fourthe Reynawde, Alard, Guycharde, and Rycharde, whiche 8 raysoned wyth the kynge / saynge in this maner / 'Syr,' sayd Reynawde, 'the fayreste of aH knyghtes, and moost experte in faytes of knyghthode¹ / ye haue made me, and my bretherne that ben now here afore 12 you, knyghtes / but wyte it for veray certeyn, that we loue you not, and that we haue towarde you a grete and a mortalle hate, for the dethe of oure vncler the duke Benes of Aygremounte / of the whiche dethe ye 16 haue not accorded wyth vs' / Whan the kynge vnderstode Reynawde, he loked grymly and fyersly in his vysage for grete wrath, and becam blacke as a cole / and smote his forhede for anger. And after sayde to 20 Reynawde / 'Thou yonge boye, voyde oute of my presence / for I swere the, by saynte Symon, and yf it were not the companye of the barons that be here, I sholde make y^e to be put in suche a pryson that thou 24 sholdeste not see nother hande nor foote that thou hast.' 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'it were not rayson / but sith that it is soo ferre come that ye wyH not here vs, we shaH kepe our peas.' 28

Thus lefte the foure sones of Aymon the debate, and spake nomore to the kynge Charlemayne for that tyme of thys matere / Fayr was the courte, and the daye was fuH fayr and bryght / and fayr was the 32 company, as of xv. kynges / xxx dukes & lx erles / They wente to the chirche ²for to here the fayr messe that was song ; & moche riche was the offeryng / And

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. b. i. ² D. v.

1 whan they had herde the messe,¹ they cam ayen to the
 palays, and asked after water for to wasse their handes ;
 and the dyner was redy, soo they wasshed & set theym
 4 down to dyner / And the xv kynges were aff set, excepte
 the kyng Salamon, that serued that daye wyth the
 duke Godfraye / But Reynawde, at this dyner myghte
 not ete / bycause that the kyng Charlemayne had
 8 rebuked hym soo shamfuHy / 'Ha,' sayd Ryynewde to
 hym selfe / ' alas, how shaH I conne doo soo moche,
 that I maye auenge myselfe of Charlemayn, for the
 deth of my vncl, *that* so moche was beloued / whiche
 12 traytorsly & shamfuHy hath he slayn ; & yf I take
 no vengauce of it I shaH wexe mad.' In this wyse
 sorowed y^e good renowde, & his bredern recumforted
 hym. The barons cam out after dyner for to plaie &
 16 sporte himself ; and berthelot, the newew of Charle-
 mayn, called reynawde for to playe² with him / wherof
 grewe a gret myscheef / for afterwarde many a good
 knyghte deied therfor, & many a fayr chylde was
 20 faderles, as here after ye shaH here / if ye herken well.

and then sit down
to dinner.

Reynawde must
not eat, because
of the King's
rebuke.

Berthelot, the
nephew of Charle-
magne, calls Rey-
newde to play
chess with him.

NOW was set Berthelot & the worthi reynawde for to
 playe at the ches, whiche were of yuori / wherof
 y^e borde was of golde massy / & so long they playd
 24 that debate feH bytwene them two, bi suche maner that
 berthelot called renaude 'hoursone' / & toke vp his
 hande, & smot reynawde in the vysage, so that the
 blood feH to the grounde / And whan reynawde sawe
 28 hymself thus shamfuHy outraged, he was right wrothe
 & sore angred, & sware by god, hym shold yH betyd ;
 therfor thenne toke reynaude y^e ches borde,³ & smote
 berthelot vpon his hede so harde, *that* he cloued hym
 32 to the teeth / and thus berthelot feH down deed to y^e
 grounde afore hym / so began y^e erie at *that* hour sore

They quarrel,

and Reynawde
slays Berthelot
with the ches
board.

¹-1 omitted, F. orig. b. i.

² jouer aux esches, F. orig. b. ii. back.

³ q' dor massis estoit, F. orig. b. ii. back.

strong in the¹ palays, that Reynawde, the sone of
 Aymon, hadde slayne Berthelot, the neuwe of Kyng
 Charle²mayne. Whan the kyng vnderstode thys, he
 wente nyghe out of his wytte / and called of heyghe, 4
 ‘Barons! kepe weH that Reynawde scape not / for, by
 saynte Denys of Fraunee, he shaH not escape quycke yf
 we maye holde hym; for he hath slayne oure neuwe
 Berthelot.’ Thenne ranne soone the knyghtes vpon 8
 Reynawde / and his kynsmen deffended hym nobly /
 and thus was there grete stryffe, and many heres pulled /
 and many gownes toren; for suche a fraye was there
 neuer seen, as that daye was in the palays of Parys / 12
 Many strokes gaaff there Mawgys, the cosin of Rey-
 nawde / and sone to the duke Benes of Aygremounte /
 And while that this fraye was in the palays, Reinawde
 and his thre bretherne and their cosin Mawgys escaped 16
 redyly oute of the palays, and came to theyr horses
 that soone were made redy. Soo lighted they on
 horsebacke, and rode soone oute of Parys, and fledde
 streyghte to Dordonne, towarde their lady moder. 20

AND whan the emperour Charlemayne wyst that
 Reynawde and his bretherne³ were goon oute of
 Paris, he made to be redy, weH two thousande knyghtes
 for to folowe theym / Nowe kepe theym, our lorde, 24
 that in the crosse suffred passyon; for yf the kyng
 holde theym, they shaH deye wythoute remysson. But
 Reynawde, on hym is noo care, for he was vppon his
 horse Bayarde, that gooeth as the wynde. Soo taryed 28
 not the foure bretherne and theyr cosin, tyll that they
 came to Sawmore: and they bayted their horses of
 Alarde, Rycharde, and Guycharde / Thenne beganne
 Reynawde to make sorowe, sayenge / ‘Fayr god, that 32
 suffred dethe and passyon, kepe thys daye my brethern
 and my cosin from the dethe, and from combraunee,

Charlemagne
 commands his
 barons to slay
 Reynawde.

His kinsmen
 defend him,

and escape on
 horseback to
 Dordonne.

The King sends
 his knights to
 follow them.

¹ la salle du palys. F. orig. b. ii. back. ² D. v. back.

³ et Maugis, F. orig. b. ii.

and from faHyng in the handes of Charlemayne the
 crueH! And of ¹thother' parte, chassed theym the
 frenshemen, brochyng wyth y^e spore ²as fast as theyr
 4 horses myght renne² / somoche *that* a knyghte that was
 better horsed than the other were, ouertake Renawde,
 and sayd to hym, 'ye shaH abyde, ye vntrue knyghte, and
 I shaH bryng you to kyng Charlemayne' / And whan
 8 Reynawde herde hym, he tourned Bayarde³ ayenste
 hym, and smote the knyghte wyth his spere in his
 shelde, and rought hym wyth soo grete a myghte, that
 sterke deed he ouerthrew hym. Soo scaped Reynawde
 12 the knyghtes horse, and toke hym to his broder Alarde,
 that lyghted anone vpon the backe of hym / And after
 that he was vpon this goode horse, he wente & smote a
 nother knyghte wyth his swerde, so that he made hym
 16 faH aH deed afore hym / and so betoke this knyghtes
 horse to his broder Guycharde, that thanked hym
 moche for it / And a nother knyght of the kyng Charle-
 mayne came to theym / 'Glotons,' sayd the knyght,
 20 'ye shaH come to the kyng, that shaH make you aH to
 be hangd' / 'Ha, by my feyth,' sayd Reynawde, 'thou
 shalte lie,' and wyth this, Reynawde tok vp his swerde
 & gaaf hym suche a stroke that he ouerthrew hym ded
 24 at the gronde / Thenne toke Reynawde the hors by y^e
 reyne, & gaaf him to his broder Richarde, that grete
 nede had of it. Now be the thre brethern newe horsed,
 & Reynawde is vpon bayarde, & his cosin Magis, that
 28 he loued so weH, behinde hym / now they goo. god
 wyH lede theym & kepe theym from euyH / and
 Charlemayne pursued after theym / but for noughte he
 traueyllled; for they were neuer the rather⁴ taken for
 32 hym / Thenne was the sonne goon vnder, & the nyghte
 beganne to come / and the foure brethern & their
 cosyu were come into the towne of Soysson.

Reynawde kills
 one of the King's
 knights.

Reynawde slays
 three knights,
 and gives their
 horses to his
 three brethren.

¹ D. vi. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. b. ii.

³ omitted, F. orig. b. ii. ⁴ Sooner.

SO moche rode Reynawde by nyght & by day vpon bayard, that bare hym and mawgis his cosin,¹ that they came to dordon. ² There they mette wyth the duchesse, theyr moder / that ranne for to kysse theym ⁴ and colle theym / and sin³ asked what thei had doon of theyr fader, and yf they were departed from the courte with wrathe. ‘Lady,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘ye / for I haue slayne Berthelot, the newew of kyng Charlemayne / The ⁸ reyson why I dyde soo / was by cause he called me ‘houre sone,’ and gaaff me wyth his fyst vpon my vysage, soo that the bloode ran oute of it’ / And whan the lady vnderstode hym, she felle down aH in a swoune, and Rey- ¹² nawde toke her vppe redely / And whan the goode lady was come ayen to her selfe, she sayd ⁴ to Reynawde⁴ / ‘Fayr sone, how durst ye doo this that ye haue doon / for I promytte you ye shaH ones repente for it. And ¹⁶ your fader shaH be dystroyed therefore, and caste oute of his landes ; and yf ye scape on lyue, it shaH be grete merueyHe. Soo praye I you, aH my chyldren, that ye flee awaye ; but take afore aH my tresour ; for yf your ²⁰ fader come agayn from the courte, he shaH wyH yelde you to the kyng Charlemayne.’ ‘Lady,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘wene ye that our fader is so crueH and soo wrothe wyth vs, that he wolde take and delyuer vs in ²⁴ to the handes⁵ of the kyng Charlemayne / that is our grete enmye mortalle.’

REynawde, his thre bretherne, and Mawgys, wolde make noone other soiourmynge, but toke soo ²⁸ moche of the haouyre and treysour of theyr fader and moder, that they hadde Inoughe of hit / and thenne toke theyr leue of theyr lady moder / wherof there was grete pyte atte the departyng ; for the children wepte ³²

They reach Dordon, and

Reynawde relates to the duchess how he slew Berthelot.

The duchess is sore grieved,

and begs them to take all her treasure, and fly for fear of Charlemagne.

The knights take leave of their mother with much sorrow.

¹ Peu lon trouveroit aujourduy de tieulx cheualx par le mōde. Et tant ont cheuauche, F. orig. b. iii. back, omitted in Caxton. ² D. vi. back. ³ after.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. b. iii. back.

⁵ de nostre ennemy mortel, F. orig. b. iii. back.

tenderly, and the moder also of thother side, whan she sawe that her chyldren that thus went fro her, and wyst not yf she sholde euer see them ayen. So departed the
 4 newe knyghtes wyth their cosyn magys, & issued out of the towne, and entred in to y^e grete forest of Ardeyne,
 [1streyght through the valeye of Feyry, and rode so much / that they came upon the ryuer of Muse, and
 8 there they chose a faire grounde where they made to be buylded a faire castell / upon a fayre roche muche stronge, & at the foote of it passed the saide riuer of Muse. And whan that the castell was made up, they
 12 called it Mountaynford, & as I trow there was not suche another of strengthe fro the said place unto Mountpeller.

They enter the forest of Arden,

and build there a castle which they call Mountaynford.

FOR it was closed *with* great walles / & enuyronned
 16 rounde about *with* dyches sore deep, & well garnished ²with all maner of vittailles / & of all thinges benedeful to be had in a fortres; ² now doubte the newe knyghtes nothings Charlemayn, yf he wrought not by treason. Charlemayn was at paris much angry for ye
 20 deth of his newew Berthelot, ³ ²the which Reinawd had slayne playing at the chesse / as it is sayde; ² so made he to come afore hym the duke Aymon of dordonne / the father of the foure knyghtes, and made hym to
 24 swere that he shoulde neuer gyue no help to his children, and that they shoulde neuer be the better of a peny by hym, & in what place that he shoulde them fynde, he should take *them* / and shoulde bringe them
 28 to him, the which Aymon durste not saie ayenst hym, but sware that he should doo so; whereof afterwarde he was sore repreued. And after that he had sworn thus / he departed oute of Parys / all wroth & angrye
 32 of this / that he muste chase thus his children, and came to Dordon. And whan the duches saw him / she

Charlemagne commands Aymon to war against his children, because of the death of Berthelot.

Aymon dare not refuse,

and goes in search of his sons towards Dordon.

¹ One sheet lost from Caxton, supplied from Copland's ed. 1554, in B. Mus. Fol. xvi.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. d. iii.

³ D. iii, Copland.

Aymon asks the
duchess where the
sons have gone.

began to weep full sore; and the duke knewe wel
what she yeelde. ‘Lady,’ said the duke, ‘where be
my sonnes gone?’ ‘Syr,’ sayde the ladye, ‘I cannot
telle whether they are drawen, but why suffred you 4
that oure sonne Reynawde slewe Berthelot, the neuewe
of kynge Charlemaine.’ ‘ladye,’ said he, ‘I coude not
doo therto, & wit that oure sonne Reynawde is of so
greate a strength / that neuer syth the incarnation of 8
oure lorde / was not seen so stronge¹ a knyghte as he
is; Nor all the assemble that than was in the pallays
at Parys / myghte not keep him, but that he slewe
berthelot afore all the lordes that were there.’ And 12
afore this our saide sonne Reynawde demaunded of
kinge Charlemagne ryght and reason to be doone to
him of the deathe of my brother, his uncle the duke
Benes of Aygremount, wherupon the king ful sham- 16
fullye and outerageouslye answered to our said sonne,
wherfore Reinawd was wrothe and sore angred, and ye
cause why Reynawde slewe Berthelot was for to aueng
him of the king Charlemaine; Not withstandynge that 20
Berthelot had Iniuryed oure sayde sonne ful sore at
the playe of the chesse, And also he smote hym fyrste
outrageously that the bloud came out of his face, so
Reinawd for his great and hardy courage / might not 24
suffre this by no wise; And therefore the king hathe
made me swere / that yf I can take my chyldren / that
I shal brynge them to hym at Parys, and that no helpe
they shal neuer haue of me nor succours, nor that 28
they shall not be the better a peny of all my hauoure,
wherof I am wrothe and full sorye.’

Aymon excuses
his conduct
towards his sons,
because of his
oath to the king.

WE shall leaue heere to speake of the duke Aymon
and of the duchesse / that ben ryght sory for 32
theyr children; And shal shew you how the worthye
kynge Charlemain made to seeke after the foure sonnes
of Aymon thoroughe all his realme, but he myght not

¹ ne se vaillant cheualier, F. orig. d. iv. back.

know nor understande no tidinges of them ; tyll that
 at last came to hym a messenger that recounted to hym
 howe he had founde them / in the forest of Ardeyne ;
 4 In which they had edyfyed a fayre castell & sore
 stronge. And whan the kyng understoode these
 tydinges / he sent worde incontinente to all his folke
 of armes that they should make ready themself, the
 8 whiche dyd so without delaye.^{1]}

CHAPTER III.

²¶ How, after that kyng Charlemayne hadde
³made the duke Aymon to forsake hys
 12 sones,³ he wente and beseged theym atte
 Mountaynforde / where he was d[i]scomy-
 fyted two tymes / But the castell of Moun-
 16 taynforde was taken by trayson. And
 how Reynawde and his bretherne auenged
 theym selfe of the traytours that had
 bytrayed theym ; and how they saued
 theym selfe after that, wythin the forest
 20 of Ardeyne, where theyr fader fonde theym
 as he wente fro the siege towarde his
 countrey / And how for to kepe his othe
 that he had made to kyng Charlemayn,
 24 he dyde assaylle his sones, soo that of
 v / hundred men that they were, abode
 alyue with his sones but xvij. persones /
 but Reynawde and his bretherne had noo
 28 hurte of theyr bodyes / how be it that they
 slewe many of theyr faders men.

Capytulum iii.

¹ Caxton begins again. ² D. vii.

³⁻³ suivre a tous ses barons les quatre filz Aymon et mesime-
 ment au duc Aymon leur pere, F. orig. b. iv. back.

NOw sayth the historye, that sithe the tyme of the
 kyng Alexandre, was none suche herde as this
 same is / And therfor, fayr lordes, playse you to
 here & vnderstande how it befell of the four sones of 4
 Aymon, that were enmyes of the emperour Charle-
 mayne, kyng of Fraunce. For the same tyme kyng
 Charlemayne had banysshed theym oute of the royaume
 of fraunce, and made all his barons, bothe yonge & 8
 olde, to seke after theym / And also made theym swere
 that they sholde neuer helpe nor comferte theym by
 noo maner of wyse. And the same othe had made
 wyth many other, the olde duke Aymon theyr fader, 12
 as ye haue herde afore / wherof he was full sory
 afterwarde. It happed thenne that the kyng Charle-
 mayne helde a grete courte in Parys¹ / And as this
 courte was assembled, where all the barons of fraunce 16
 were togyder / a messenger cam there bifore y^e kyng²
 charlmayn, & kneled afore him & sayd / ‘ Sir, I bryng
 you ³tydynges of that ye dyde sende me for ; wyte, syr,
 that I come from the grete forest of Ardeyne, where I 20
 haue founde the foure sones of Aymon, that dwelle
 there wythin a strong casteH, well sette vpon a rocke ;
 and yf ye wyH fynde theim and be auenged of theym,
 wite that ye maye weH ynoughe doo so, as I beleue for 24
 certeyn / Whan Charlemayne vnderstode this messenger,
 he began to merueyle hym selfe sore / and called his
 barons, and sayd to theym, ‘ Fayr lordes, whan it is soo
 that ye be here, it apperteyneth not that I sholde sende 28
 for you at your places. Soo I praye you and requyre,
 as to my liege men, that ye helpe me to be auenged of
 the foure sones of Aymon, that soo grete damage
 haue doon to me, as ye knowe well.’⁴ 32

Charlemagne
 sends his barons,
 both young and
 old, to seek after
 the sons of
 Aymon.

A messenger
 arrives with
 tidings,

that the sons are
 in Arden.

Charlemagne calls
 on his lords to
 avenge the death
 of Berthelot.

¹ moult plainiere, F. orig. b. iv.

² l'empereur, F. orig. b. iv.

³ D. vii. back.

⁴ Et quant Il eust ce dit Il se leua empiedz, d. iiii. F. orig.,
 omitted in Caxton.

WHan the barons vnderstode the prayer that the
 4 emperour Charlemayne made to theym / they
 answered wyth one voyce: 'Syre, we shaft doo your
 8 commaundemente wythoute doubte / gyue vs leue, yf
 it playse you, that we maye goo in to our countreys for
 to make vs redy of harneys and of horses,' the whiche
 thyng the kyng graunted theym. And so departed aH
 12 the barons from the courte, and wente in to their
 countreys / The whiche aboode not long, that they came
 ayen to Parys, aH arrayed and redy for to werre wyth
 16 theyr armye / And whan the kyng Charlemayne sawe
 theym, he receyued theym gladly. And Incontynente
 wythoute ony tarieng he departed oute of Parys / and
 wente wyth all hys oost at Mountlyon, a towne of
 hys, and there he laye that nyggt. And at the
 20 morowe, as sone as the day appyered, the kyng Charle-
 mayne departed from Montlyon, and wete on his way
 1 wyth his ooste¹ / And ordeyned the forewarde to the
 erle Guy of Mountpeller, that wolde moche grete
 24 harme to Reynawde. And whan they had sette theym
 selfe in the ²waye / the emperour Charlemayne called
 to hym his goode vasselles,³ Renyer, Guyon of aube-
 forde, the erle Garner, Gefray, Langon, Oger the dane,
 28 Rycharde of Normandy, and the duke Naymes of
 Bauiere / and sayd vnto theym alle, 'Lordes, ye
 know well what ye haue to do / I pray you that
 ye kepe weH your selfe from Reynawde, and goo not
 to nyghe, but abyde aH togyder in suche a strong place
 that we may haue noo dommage / and let goode
 whatehe be made euery nyghte / for my herte gyueth
 me that we shall dweHe there longe.'

The barons go
into the country
to prepare for war.

They return to
Paris,

and Charlemagne
leads them to
Mountlyon.

The King charges
his vassals
to be cautious how
they approach
Reynawde.

THenne sayd the duke Naymes of Bauiere, 'Sire,⁴
 we shall doo soo.' Thenne made they the
 tronpettes to be blowen, and aH the ooste they made

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. d. v. ² E. i. ³ et, F. orig. d. v.

⁴ vous dictes bien, F. orig. d. v.

They reach the castle of Mountaynforde, which the four sons and Mawgis had built.

to come togyder / And thus they rode soo moche that they cam to Myleyne, otherwyse called Aspes / And whan they were comen there, they saw the casteH of Mountaynforde, that Reynawde and his brothern 4 and theyr cosin Mawgys had doo make / Euyn atte that owre that kynge Charlemayne and his oost were come to Aspes, the thre brethern of Reynawde were comyng fro the chasse oute of the woode of Ardeyne / 8 and Rycharde, y^e yongest, bare a ryght riche home, both fayr and good, the whiche Reynawde loued fuH dere. And in their felawshyp myghte be weH xx knyghtes and no moo. And as they retorned to Mon- 12 tainforde, Rycharde behelde and sawe ouer the riner of Muse, thoost of the kyng Charlemayne,¹ wherof he began to be sore merueyelled / and called Guycharde his broder, & sayd to hym / 'Fayr broder, what folke 16 maye be they that I see yonder. I herde saye the other daye of a messenger, that tolde it to our broder Reynawde / that the emperour came for to besege vs wythin our castell.' 20

Richard calls his brother Guycharde to view the host of Charlemagne approach.

ANd after, whan Guycharde vnderstode his broder, he ² behelde ouer the ryuer, and sawe the forewarde that Guyon conduted / and whan Guycharde³ sawe them, he smote his horse wyth the spores / He & 24 his folke went ayenst Guyon, & sayd to him / 'Fair sir, what are thise folke?' 'Sire,' sayd Guyon, 'thise ben the folke of themperour Charlemayn, that goeth to Ardeyn for to besege a castell that the foure sones 28 of Aymon haue do⁴ made there; for their strengthe, they trayneyHe vs moche, god gyue them euyH rest' / 'Certes,' sayd Guycharde,³ 'I am a sauldier with Reynawde / & I conne you nother thanke nor grace of 32 that that ye saye / for I am holden to deffende theym at my power' / and with this he spored his horse &

Guycharde and his folk approach Earl Guyon, who commands the vanguard of the King.

¹ de france, orig. d. v. ² E. i. back.

³ Richart, F. orig. d. v. ⁴ do = cause to be.

smote the sayd Guyon¹ through his shelde so harle that
he ouerthrewe hym deed to the grounde / And thenne

They fight, and
Guycharde slays
the Earl.

he toke the horse of the sayd Guyon,¹ & toke hym

4 to one of his esquyers, and assembled aH the knyghtes
togider of one parte & of y^e other / They of fraunce

cried 'Mountioye saynt denys!' and the brethern of
Reynawde cried 'Mounteinforde' / Thenne sholde ye

8 haue seen a feH batayH & ryght crueH, the one ayenste
the other, sheldes broken & helmes broken, som deed,

The battle then
begins to rage
fiercely.

& some sore wounded, soo moche that it was grete pyte
to see. What shall I telle you? more, all the folke of

12 Guyon¹ that made the forwarde, were there slayne /

This hangyng, cam a squier to the kyng, & shewed
hym how his forewarde was vtterly dystroied / and

that Guycharde,² the broder of Reynawde, had slayne

16 the erle Guyon.¹

'**O** god,' sayd thenne themperour Charlemayne,
'haue I now lost Guyon?'¹ of hym it is grete
dommage / Now wote I not from hensforth on, how I

Charlemagne
grieues for the
death of Guyon,

20 sholde wyn, sith that I haue loste the forwarde' / and

thenne he called Oger the dane, & sayd to hym, 'Oger,
goo to the socours, you & Naymes, for guycharde bereth

and calls on Oger
and Naymes to
defend his folk.

wyth him aH my hauoyr, & hath slayn aH my fol³ke.'

24 Thenne oger the dane abode not, but lighted on hors-

backe, he and the duke Naymes, wyth weH thre
hundred knyghtes weH armed & weH arayed, & went

They pursue Guy-
charde, but too
late, for he and
all his men are
safe within the
castle.

after Guycharde⁴ / but their labour was nought worthe

28 to them / for guycharde & his men were aH redy
wythin Mountainforde, wyth aH the hauoyr that they

had wonne. Whan Reynawde sawe his broder com⁵
wyth so grete hauoyre, he wente ayenst hym, & kissed

32 theym aH / and thenne he sayd to Guycharde, 'Fayr
broder, where haue ye taken so grete hauoyre that ye

¹ Reynier, F. orig. d. v. ² Richart, F. orig. d. v.

³ E. ii. ⁴ Richart, F. orig. d. vi.

⁵ a si grans gens, F. orig. d. vi.

bryng here.' 'Sire,' sayd Guycharde, 'I shaH teHe you tidynges wherof ye shall be gretly merueyelled / Now wyte, that kyng Charlemayn commeth for to besege you wyth aH his oost, & hath so grete chyualrie 4 wyth him that it is wounder for to see / My bredern,¹ I com fro the chasse out of the wood of ardeyn, and we haue recounted the forwarde of Charlemayne, that therle Guy conduyeted; there fought we togyder wyth 8 them / but, god by thanked, & my men / myn ennyes were discomfyted & ouerthrowen.² One parte we haue slayne, & thother fled awaye; soo haue we brought their hauoyr that ye se here. And there is deed,³ therle 12 Guy & many other grete lordes, & aH their men' / Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'I ought to loue derly / whan ye can werre so weH that ye haue ouerthrowen your ennyes at y^e firste comyng on' / and thenne he called 16 aH his brethern & his folke, & sayd to theym / 'Fayr lordes, now is the tyme come *that* eueriche of vs must prene hymselfe a good man / wherfore I praye you *that* euery man force hymself to do worthyly his deuoyr, 20 *that* your worship & the oures be kepte / & that men maye not wyte⁴ vs noo cowardnes, & lete vs ⁵doo knowe⁵ our prouesses to kyng Charlemayn, so that he hold vs not for feble & mysehaut' / Whan reynawde had 24 spoke to his bredern & to his folke / they answered to hym in this maner, 'My lorde, haue no ⁶doubte of none of vs; but be sure that we shall neuer fayH you for⁷ the hewyng of our limmes as long as we shaH lyue.' 28 And whan reynawde vnderstode the good wyll⁸ of his folke, & namly⁹ of his brethern / he began again to speke to theym, & sayd / 'Lete y^e gate be shette, & drawe vp the brydge / and soo goo we to the 32 wyndowes, for to see this folke *that* com ayenste vs.'

Guycharde relates to Reynawde his victory

Reynawde charges his folk to prove themselves good knights.

They swear fidelity.

¹ et moy, F. orig. d. vi. ² omitted, F. orig. d. vi.

³ le conte regnier, F. orig. d. vi. ⁴ blame.

⁵⁻⁵ cause to be known. ⁶ E. ii. back. ⁷ so far as.

⁸ de ses freres, F. orig. d. vi. ⁹ specially.

And the^{me} they wente there, as reynawde sayd; & whan thei loked out of y^e wyndowes, they sawe oger the dane comynge wyth a thousande men wyth hym /
 4 whiche, whan he sawe that Guycharde was entred in to y^e casteH, he returned ayen, & sayd to the kyng how it was / and the^{me} he sayd / ‘Syr, I lete you wyte *that* the castell of mownteynforde is the fairest & the strong-
 8 est that euer ye sawe / for it is set vpon a hie roche of harde stone / and weH I tette you, for certeyn, *that* it shall not be taken so lightly as men wene, for suche folke doo kepe it, *that* well and worthlily shaH deffende it.’

Oger and his men return to Charlemagne and tell him how strong and fair the castle is.

12 **W**Han the^mperour Charlemayne herde speke oger the dane, he was of it so wroth that he wente nyghe oute of his wytte / & sware god that he sholde neuer retorne in to fraunce but *that* Ryynawde were
 16 take; & that yf he maye haue hym, aH the worlde shaH not saue hym, but *that* he shaH make hym to be hanged, & his broder Guycharde to be drawn at horsis taylles. ‘Sire,’ sayd oger, ‘weH ye ought to doo
 20 so / for they haue trauaylled you full often, & haue gyuen you grete labour & peyne’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd foulques of morillon, ‘haue no doubt, for shortly we shaH auenge you of theym. Make to be cried incontynente
 24 *that* your oost goo lodge lightly about mountenforde’ / ‘Certes,’ said the kyng, ‘ye saye well’; & the^{me} he made trompetes to be blowen of a heygthe, for to assemble togyder aH his men of armes / and com-
 28 maunded that aH the casteH of mountenforde sholde be emyronned rounde aboute wyth folke, & that eue’ry baron sholde do pyghte there his paulyon; and they dyd so as the kyng had commaunded / Now wyH I
 32 shew to you how noble the casteH was set. ²The sayd castell was closed & sett vpon a hie roche; & of the one side of it was betyng a grete riuer, called Muse / and of the other side it had eyn at handle a grete wood full

The King swears to avenge himself on Reynawde,

and to have him hanged.

He commands his men to surround the castle.

¹ E. iii.

² Car il estoit, F. orig. b. iv.

playsant; of a nother side it¹ hath a fayr playne, & of that other side a full fayr medowe, grete & playsaunt to be holde / ¶ Whan the folke of the kyng Charle-mayn were all lodged, themperour lighted on horsbak 4 wyth a few felawship for to see the strength of the casteH / & whan he had well byholden it, & seen at his ease, he began to saye in hymself / 'ha god, how is this casteH closed & set in a strong place! god, how 8 thise knyghtes knew weH the craft of werre, not wyth-standyng that they ben but yong folke / ²Fayr lordes, thynke for to werre weH / for we haue somewhat more to do thenne I wende.' Whan the pauyHyons & the 12 tentes of y^e kyngis were dressed vp, he made to be set a charbokeH right riche all hie vpon his tente, whiche stone full preeyons was shynyng as a torche *that* brenneth, & wyth the same a grete appeH of fyne 16 golde, of grete value / and whan the sayd tentes wer all spred & hanged, themperour entred wythin, & made the duke naymes to be armed, & charged hym *that* no man of werr so hardy for to light on horsbak of 20 eyhht dayes, but it were for to sporte hymself / For I wyH do knowe thurgh all y^e royame, that men bryng to vs vytaylles in grete habundance, afore that the casteH of mountenforde be by vs assaylled / and make my 24 chapel to be appareylled, to thende *that* we praye god that he wyH helpe vs to be auenged of the foure sones of Aymon / the whiche we shaH famysshe, or euer it be a moneth / For they shaH not come haue no vytaylles 28 from wythoute ³by no waye.' Thenne sayd the duk Naymes to the kyng, ⁴'Syr, ye maye do better, yf it be your playsur; sende a messenger to Reynawde, for to tell hym that he yelde to you Guycharde his broder, 32 & ye shall quyte hym all his londe / and yf he yelde

On the King's tent is set a precious carbuncle, which shines like a torch, and with it a golden apple.

Duke Naymes counsels Charlemagne to send a messenger to Reynawde to ask him to yield up his brother Guycharde.

¹ les plenez, F. orig. b. vi.

² Lors dist a ses gens, F. orig. d. vii.

³ omitted, F. orig. b. vii. ⁴ E. iii. back.

hym to you / make hym to be byheded anone / &
 yf that reynawde refuse for to do this, he maye well be
 sure that werre shall not leue him as long as he shaH
 4 be alyue' / Thenne answered Charlemayn, 'Ye saye
 well & ryght wysely / but certenly I wote not where
 to fynde a messenger to whom I myghte well trust.'
 'Sire,' sayd the duk naymes, 'yf it playse you / ogyer &
 8 I shall do this message' / 'It playse me well,' sayd the
 kyng, ' & ryght grete thanke I shaH comne you for it /
 for ye neuer fayHed me at a nede' / Thenne wente
 naymes & oger, & made theim redy. And whan they
 12 were redy, they toke in their handes braunches of olyue
 tree for to shewe that they were messagers / & so went
 they both togyder wythout ony other company. And
 whan Alays, that kept watche, sawe the two knyghtes
 16 come, he wente & asked theym what they were that
 cam there. 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'we ben
 messagers of the kyng Charlemayn, that hath sent vs
 heder for to speke wyth reynawde, the sone of Aymon' /
 20 and incontynent the sayd alais wente to his lord, and
 tolde hym, how at the gate were two messagers of the
 kyng Charlemayn, that wolde speke wyth hym /
 Reynawde commaunded forthwyth that the gate sholde
 24 be opened to theym, & that the drawe brydge sholde
 be lete down, for he wolde see the messagers & speke
 wyth theym / Thenne were the two barons let in,
 & were brought afore Reynawde; and whan reynawde
 28 sawe them, he salued theym curtoysly, and after that
 they had salued eche other / they set theym aH¹
 ther vpon a benche / And thenne began the duk
 Naymes to speke, & sayd thus / 'Reynawde,' sayd he,
 32 'themperour Charlemayn of fraunce lete you wyte by
 vs / that ye senle to hym Guy²charde³ your broder,
 for to make of hym his playsur and his wyH; and yf

Charlemagne con-
 sents, and sends
 Oger and Naymes
 to the castle.

They come before
 Reynawde and
 state their re-
 quest.

¹ tous trois, F. orig. d. vii. ² Fol. E. iiii.

³ Richart, F. orig. d. vii.

ye wyH not do soo, Charlemayn defyeth you, & sayth that neuer he shaH leue you, vnto the tyme that he shalle haue take you aH / And whan he shaH haue you¹ / he shaH make you aH to be drawn & hanged, 4 and deye an euyH deth wyth grete shame.'

WHan Reynawde vnderstode thise wordes, he wexed aH red for angre / and thenne he sayd to the duk Naymes, 'By the feyth that I owe to 8 aH my frendes / yf it were not *that* I loue you / I sholde make you both to be hewen aH to peces; and ye haue weH deserued it / for you, naymes,² are my nyghe kynsman / and as me semeth, ye oughte weH to helpe 12 & defende me ayenst aH men / And ye now counseyH me to my grete dyshonour & ayenst myn honeste. TeH to Charlemayn, that he shaH not haue Guychard³ my broder / and that he leue his thretenyng, & doo the 16 worste that he can / for we shaH not do for hym nor for his thretenynges the mountenaunce of a peny / And goo ye to teHe hym in my behalue / that a fore that he take vs / he shaH haue a greter nede of helpe than he 20 wenethe / Now voyde from our sighte lightely oute of our palays, for to see you thus here greureth me to sore.' Whan the duke Naymes & Ogyer vnderstode Reynawde / they made noo lenger dweHyng, but 24 departed incontynente wythoute ony more spekyng / and are come to Charlemaigne, & recounted to hym aH this that Reynawde had sayd.

WHan theemperour Charlemaigne vnderstode this 28 answeere, he was so sore an angred that he went almost oute of his wytte / & thenne he commaunded that the casteH sholde be assaylled / to the whiche they saw but thre gates, wherof, was set 32 afore the masters gate, therle Renyer⁴ & foulques of

Reynawde in
great anger re-
fuses them, and
defies the King.

The messengers
depart and re-
count all they
have said to the
King.

¹ Il vous sera tous pendre, F. orig. d. vii.

² omitted, F. orig. d. vii. ³ Richart, orig. d. viii.

⁴ le conte Guy, F. orig. d. viii.

moryllon, therle of Neuers, & ogyer the dane / And
 1 afore the seconde gate was the duk of bourgoyne &
 therle of alphas; and afore the iii gate was the olde
 4 Aymon, the fader of reynawde, that was com to Charle-
 mayn for to werre ayenst his sones, as thother / Now
 weneth the emperour to haue beseged weH reynawde &
 his bredern; but, & god kepe reynawde in good helth,
 8 Charlemayne shaH lese there more than he shaH
 wyne / Reynawde & his brethern were suche knyghtes,
 & so sage, that they deffended weH their casteH ayenst
 charlemayn / alwayes it was beseged wyth so grete
 12 nombre of folke, as I haue sayd afore, that it was
 merueyHe to see / For there were bretons, flemynges,
 maunsealx, originers, englysshe, bourgoyns, the bauyers,
 & the frenchemen / but Reinawde made one thyng
 16 that torned hym to a grete worshyp, for he sayd to
 his folke, 'Fayr lordes, I praye you that ye moun-
 te not vpon your horses tyH that ye here the trompetes
 blowe, for I see weH that Charlemayns folke ben
 20 ryght sore traueylled; and now whyle they ben thus
 veri / it were no worship to vs for to renne theym
 vpon / but whan they shaH be a lityH eased of their
 verynes, we shaH thenne make dyligently & worthyli
 24 our first yssue vpon them. And I praye you, &
 requyre you aH in generall, that euery man shewe
 thenne his prowesse & strengthe' / And wyte it that
 in the casteH of mountenforde was a fawcebraye vpon a
 28 roche, thurgh the y^e whiche reynawde & his bredern wente
 oute vnder couerte at aH tymes that they wolde, wyth-
 out daunger.²

32 **W**Han reynawde saw *that* it was tyme for to goo
 out vpon theyr ennyes, he called to hym
 Sampson of bourdelois / this was a knyght, a trusty
 man, *that* was com there for to helpe reynawde and his

¹ Fol. E. iiii. back.

² quant Ilz vouloient aler en gibier, F. orig. d. viii.

Charlemagne sets
 his most trusty
 knights before
 each of the castle
 gates;
 at the third gate
 was Aymon the
 father of Rey-
 nawde.

bredern, and had wyth hym an hundred knyghtes /
 reynawde said to hym / 'Syr, it is now tyme that our
 enmyes knowe what we ben / for yf we tarre lon¹ger,
 the kyng Charlemayne myghte² wyte vs of cowardnes.' 4
 And whan he had sayd these wordes, he cam to his
 brother guycharde,³ & sayd to hym / 'Fayr brother
 guichard,⁴ leue not for to be alwayes bolde and hardy as
 longe that I am man on lyue, for I loue you as moche as 8
 I doo my owne body, and it is rayson that I do so / for
 ye & I are brethern,⁵ bothe of fader & of moder⁵ / And
 also I beleue that ye be the best knyghte of my lynage.'
 And then he taketh hym bytwene his armes, and kisseth 12
 hym by grete loue / and whan he had doon thus, he
 sayd / 'Broder, make the trompettes to blowe vp of
 heygth, and let vs make rely ourselfe for to yssue out,
 for to showe to Charlemayne what folke that we ben / 16
 yf god wyll that we myghte take the erle of Estampes,
 I sholde be therof right gladde / for it is the man /
 among all oure enmyes, that worste dooth to vs, that
 more hath hurted vs ; haply he shall not scape vs / for 20
 he is alwayes in the forwarde / whan these wordes were
 fynysshed, all the foure brethern, and all theym of their
 companye arrayed them selfe and yssued oute of the
 casteH atte the fawcebraye, wythout to make any noyse 24
 nor crye / and soo go vpon the oost of Charlemayne
 by soo grete wrathe that it was merueyH, and beganne
 to make soo grete dystrectyon of folke, and to caste
 bothe tentes & paubyons agrounde, that it was woun- 28
 der & pite for to see / and who had seen the^{ne} reyn-
 awde⁵ the worthy knyght,⁵ vpon his horse bayarde, &
 the faittes of armes that he made⁵ vpon his enmyes,⁵
 sholde haue grete merueyH for to loke vpon hym ; for 32
 that man that he recounted,⁶ myght weH saye that he was

Reynawde has the
trumpets blown,

and when his
men are arrayed,
they issue out of
the castle,

and make great
havoc among the
folk of Charle-
magne.

¹ Fol. E. v.

² accuse.

³ omitted, F. orig. b. viii.

⁴ Richart, F. orig. d. viii.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. d. viii.

⁶ met.

born in an enyH houre / for to saye y^e trouthe, reinawd
 smote no knyght so *that* his strokes cam right / but that
 he eleued hym as lightly as they hadde not ben armed,
 4 & whan y^e folke of charlemayn saw their *emnyes*, they
 ranne *incontynent* to their herneis; & whan thei were
 armed, they ranne vpon Reynawde ¹& his folke. And
 thenne began the batayH so crueH that it was pite for
 8 to see / for ye sholde haue seen many speres broken,
 and sheldes bresten & clouen asondre / and many a
 goode haubergen vnmayled / ²corsettes & flancardes aH
 to-brosten & sore beten,² and so many a goodly man
 12 and noble knyghtes deyeng fuH miserably vpon the
 erthe / Whan the olde Aymon herde the crye, he
 mounted on horsebacke alsso, sone as he myghte, he
 & his folke, and com to the batayH ayenste his sones /
 16 and whan Reynawde apperceyued there his fader / he
 was right sory for it / and sayd to his bredern / ‘see,
 here is a grete merueyHe / for here is our fader / and
 by my counseyH we shaH make hym roume; for I
 20 wolde not for nothyng that none of vs sholde sette
 vpon hym.’ And then they torned at another side of
 the batayH / but Aymon, theyr fader, cam there ayenst
 them, & began to sette sore hande vpon theym &
 24 theyr folke / and whan Reynawde sawe that his fader
 leyd sore vpon theym, & bare theym grete *dommage* of
 theyr men / he sayd to hym aH angred / ‘Ha, fader,
 what doo you / certeynly ye doo grete synne / for ye
 28 sholde helpe defende & kepe vs, and ye do to vs worse
 than thother doo; now I see weH that ye loue vs sore
 lityH, & that ye be dysplaysed that we ben so pru³ &
 so good men of armes ayenst Charlemayn / for yf ye
 32 haue forbanysshed vs / weH we know it, & that we
 shaH neuer haue no thyng of your herytage / and we
 haue made this lith casteH for to kepe our selfe therin /

The battle rages
fiercely.

Aymon pursues
the four sons,
and does much
evil to their folk.

¹ Fol. E. v. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. d. viii.

³ valiant.

and yet ye come heder for to helpe it to be dystroyed :
 it is no faders work, but it is operacyon of the deuyH.
 Yf ye wyll doo vs noo good / at lest do vs no harme ;
 for I swere you, vpon all sayntes *that* yf ye com ony 4
 ferder ayenst vs¹ I shaH forbere you no lenger / but I
 shaH gyve you wyth my swerd suche a stroke, *that* ye
 shall haue no leiser for to repente you of ²the folie that
 ye doo' / Whan Aymon vnderstode the wordes of his 8
 sone Reynawde,³ he toke therof so grete angre at his
 herte, that it laked lytil but that he feH down in a
 swoune to the erthe / for he knew weH that Reynawde
 tolde hym trouthe ; but he coude do none otherwyse, 12
 for feere of Charlemayn, but alwayes he wythdrewe
 hymselfe abacke, and suffered his sones to passe by
 hym⁴ harmles atte that tyme / the whiche wente and
 dommaged ryght sore the folke of kyng Charlemayne.⁵ 16

DUrynge the tyme that Reynawde spake thus to
 his fader Aymon, cam Charlemayn and Aulbery,
 Ogyer & the erle Henry, and Fougues of MoryHon.
 And whan Reynawde sawe theym come, he made his 20
 trompettes to be blowen for to brynge his folke togyder
 agen ; and when they were assembled of one parte and
 of the other / a knyghte of Charlemayn, that was called
 Thiery, made his horse to renne ayenste the folke of 24
 Reynawde / and when Alarde saw hym com he spored
 his horse, and cam ayenst hym, and smote hym so harde
 in his shelde, that he shoued a grete hauberke *that* he
 bare, thrughe his body of hym, soo that the sayd Tyery 28
 fel deed down to therth / and whan kyng Charlemayn
 saw falle deed his knyght thyerry, he was therefore so
 sore an angred, that almost he loste his wytte & his
 vnderstandyng / Thenne begamme he to crye wyth a hie 32
 voys, ⁶sayenge in thys manere⁶ / ' Lordes and barons,

¹ et se ne seray plus honteux, F. orig. e. i. ² Fol. E. vi.

³ omitted, F. orig. e. i. ⁴ outre part celle fois, F. orig. e. i.

⁵ tout que cestoit merueilles, F. orig. e. i.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig. e. i.

Reynawde threat-
 ens to slay his
 father if he will
 not leave them.

Aymon with-
 draws, and lets
 his sons pass him
 without harm.

delyuer you for to auenge me of thise glotons that leden our folke so cursedly. See that that they ben weH punysshed & sharply' / whan the olde aymon
 4 herde Charlemyan speke thus, for doubte to be blamed he spored his horse, and wente & smote one of his sones knyghtes *that* was named amaney so crueHy wyth his braunk of stele, *that* he smote his hede clene of¹ fro y^e
 8 sholders of hym / 'fader,' cryed ²Reynawde to hym, 'ye do yll when so crueHy ye slee my men, but by the feyth that I owe to³ god, yf I trowed not to hurte therby my honour, I shold take therof cruel vengeance
 12 of you.' And thenne sayd ayen the valyaunt Reynawde / 'ha, lady moder, how shold ye be sori yf ye knewe the grete werkes & the grete harme that our fader doeth to vs this daye.'

Charlemagne calls on his barons to deliver him,

and Aymon slays one of his son's knights.

16 **W**Han Foulques of Moryllon sawe that the folke of Reynawde mayntened theymselfe so worthily ayenst theym, he began to crye, 'Syr empercure & kyng, what meaneth this / I beleue that ye be forgotten / sende for many of yore folke, & commaunde
 20 theym that they take incontynent y^e traytours that now feyne themselfe ayenst your enemyes, and wythout delaye make them to be hanged & slayen aH quyk.'
 24 When the frensmen vnderstode this that foulques sayd to Charlemyan / they made none other abydyng / but spored their horses, & smote vpon the folke of Reynawde soo harde, *that* they made them to recule bak, wolde
 28 they or not / when alarde sawe his folke goo bak / he was ryght sory for it, and toke his swerde, & began wyth his folke to make so grete a fors of armes, that the frenshemen were all abashed of it / What shaH I
 32 teHe you more of this batayH / wyte it, that it was so mereueyllous & crueH, that it was pyte for to see, for euey one made the worste that he coude / the one ayenst thother. And wyte, that the foure sones of

The Frenchmen fight valiantly, and make their enemies recoil;

¹ off. ² Fol. E. vi. back. ³ a saint pol, F. orig. e. i.

but the sons' feats
of arms are so
wonderful that
they cannot be
overcome.

Aymon made so grete occysion of men & of horses,
that none durst come afore theym / but none myght
compare wyth Reynawde for to do weH; for he made
there so grete merueyH of armes, *that* the frensmen durst 4
not com forth for fere of hym; for to saye the trouth,
Reynawde smote no stroke a ryght, but that he slewe
hym wherupon it lighted. What wyH ye *that* I telle
you more / wyte that, in this batayH, kynsmen nor 8
parents ¹spared not eche other, for they slewe the one
thother, as *domm* bestes / There sholde ye haue seen
comyng thurgh the batayH the kyng Yon of saynt
Omars, that rode vpon a good horse that ranne well / 12
& ayenst hym cam a knyght called guyon / & Yon
smote guyon suche a stroke *that* he ouerthrewe bothe
hors & man to therth / and whan Reynawde sawe this,
he was right wroth for it. And *thenne* he toke his 16
baner, & sayd to his folke / 'doo so moche *that* I haue
that good horse; for yf he goth awaye, I shaH neuer
haue Ioye at my hert, for I wyH that he kepe felow-
ship to bayarde.' And whan rycharde² his broder, that 20
was so worthy a knyght and so gentyH, vnderstode his
broder that so spake / he made no tarryeng, but spored
his horse, & smote yon of seynt Omars so harde, that
his shelde nor his harneys myght not kepe / but that 24
he shoued his glayue thurgh the brest, & ouerthrewe
hym deed to therth / and *thenne* Rycharde³ toke the
hors by the brydeH, & led him to reynawde, & sayd to
hym, 'sire, we haue the horse *that* ye haue called after 28
so sore / now may you light vpon hym when it playse
you.' 'Broder,' seyde reynawde, 'gramercy of this pre-
sent / for weH ye haue serued me therof / now haue
we two horses to whom we may trust weH vpon.' 32
'Now light atons⁴ upon hym,' sayde reinawde / & whan
rycharde² vnderstode the *commandement* of his broder /

King John over-
throws a knight
called Guyon;

but is slain by
Richard, who

brings his horse
to Reynawde.

¹ Fol. E. vii. ² Guichart, F. orig. e. ii.

³ il, F. orig. e. ii. ⁴ at once.

he lighted lightly vpon the horse, and toke his owne
for to kepe to a good knyght /

4 **A** Nd whan reynawde cam agen to the batayH, he
sawe yet his fader / & whan he sawe hym, he
was ryght sory for it so that he lost almost his wyt for
the same, and cam & sayd to hym by a mauer of
reproche, ‘By my fayth, fader, ye are gretly to blame,
8 ye myght well kepe your selfe that ye com not so often
to see vs / and for to doo vs harne / we wyll shewe to
you that ye be oure fader / not goode ¹but euyH; for
ye shewe to vs harde frenshyp & a sowre loue. At
12 crystmasse and at ester, men ought to go vysit and see
his good frende, for to feste hym and to do hym goode,
& ete wyth hym whan the dyner is redy; but this ye
do not; for ye com to see vs in a hote werre / & wyth
16 the poynt of y^e swerde ye chere vs / it is no loue of a
natureiH fader, but it is rigoure of a stepfader ² / themne
answered the duk aymon, ‘I wil *that* ye kepe your
selfe well, for yf Charlemayn can take you, aH the
20 worlde shall not kepe you / but that he wyH fleye &
hange you, ³or otherwyse make you to deye a shamfuH
deth ³ / ‘Fader,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘lete that alone, &
come & helpe vs / so shaH the kyng be dyscomfyted.’
24 ‘go forth ! glotton, goddis curse haue thou,’ sayd Aymon
³to his sone reynawde ³ / ‘For I am to olde for to do
trayson’ / ‘Fader,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘lityH ye loue vs, I
see it weH, but kepe your selfe weH / for I shaH shew
28 you whether I can do any thyng wyth the spere and of
the swerde;’ and whan he had that sayd, he spored
bayarde, & wente & smote a squyer *that* was called
guyner, so that he ouerthrewe hym deed from his horse
32 to the grounde / Whan Charlemeyn saw his esquier
deed, he spored his courser wyth an angry chere, & had
in his hande a staffe of yron. for he wolde parte y^e

Reynawde again
rebukes his father,
whom he meets in
the battle.

Aymon threatens
Reynawde with
the wrath of
Charlemagne,

and says he will
not be traitor to
the King.

: ¹ Fol. E. vii. back. ² Ribauld, F. orig. e. ii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. e. ii.

batail a sonder; by cause he sawe well that his folke had the worse, and that they myght not resiste ayenst the grete strokes of reynawde in no wyse, for it was merueyllouse for to see the grete fayttes of armes that 4 he made there / for he ouerthrewe down dede bothe horses & men ¹by grete strength /¹

Charlemagne wills that his men depart from the battle.

Charlemayn is come to the frensshe men / & commaunded theym for to wythdrawe theym selfe / 8 for it was tyme for to departe fro the batayll. & as they wolde haue goon awaye, cam there thurgh the batayll Berarde the bourgoynier, & smote Simon of bremoys so fiersly that he fell down deed to the ²grounde; when 12 the foure sones of Aymon sawe Symon deed, they were ryght sory for hym, And spored their horses wyth the spores, & cam at that side, & brake the preese for to auenge Symons dethe. and wyte it, when Reynawde 16 was com there, it was knowen ryght weH / for he wyth his swerde brought to deth weH iij hundred knyghtes of the best men that kyng Charlemayne had in his companye. Wherof the kyng was ryght sory ³& sore 20 an angred³ / this hangyng, Alarde wente thurgh the presse; so cam he, & iousted ayenst therle of Estampes / & for his shelde he lette not / but he shoued his spere thurgh the body of hym. and thus was by hym 24 slayne the sayd erle / whan Reynawde sawe that stroke, he cam to alarde his brother, and kyssed hym vpon his helme, and bowed hym selfe towarde hym & sayd / 'Fayr broder, blessed be the wombe that bare the / for 28 ye haue auenged vs of the gretest foo that we had, and whan he had sayd this word, he made his trompettes to be blowen, for to call his men togyder.

Reynawde slays three hundred knights with his own sword.

Alarde slays the Earl of Estampes.

Whan themperour Charlemayne sawe this grete 32 dommage that the foure sones of Aymon dyd to hym, he cryed with a hie voys / 'Lordes & barons,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. e. ii. ² Fol. E. viii.
³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. e. iii.

wythdrawe your selfe abacke / for our enmyes¹ be to good knyghtes for vs / now is this to vs grete dishonour & grete myshappe ; lete vs retorne ayen to our
 4 paullyyons, I praye you. For I swere vpon aH sayntes, that ther casteH shaH neuer be taken but by famysshing, for they ben ouer good knyghtes, preu & wyse, & well aduysed of the werre.' Whan the barons of Charle-
 8 mayn herde his commaundemente, they sayd to hym, 'Sire, we shall do your wyH,' and as they wolde haue departed / came Reynawde sporyng his horse, & his brethern, & wente & smote vpon the folke of the em-
 12 perour soo sharply, that he departed theym so well / that they must nedes flee, and take theyr² paullyyons / and soo bode wyth theym prysoners, Anthony Guyne-
 16 for no man myght endure ayenste Reynawde and his bretherne / And whan Reynawde sawe the dyscomfyture, & the folke of the emperour that fledde, he made his trompettes to be blowen for to wythdrawe his folke.
 20 And whan they were assembled, Reynawde³ and his bretherne³ retorned gladely into theyr⁴ castell / and was alwayes the hyndermost man for to kepe hys folke the better, that led prisoners afore. Thenne cam Aymon
 24 theyr fader afresshe vpon theym, and began to make theym grete combraunce / and whan Reynawde saw his fader, he wende to haue wexed madd for angre. soo retorned he Bayarde, and smote the horse of his fader
 28 soo harde that he fell down deed to the erth / For as to his fader, he wolde not touche / and whan Aymon sawe hymself a grounde, he rose vp quyckely vpon his feete, and toke his swerde in his hande / and began ryght
 32 well to deffende hymselfe. But his deffence shokle haue ben but lytyH worth to hym / for his chyldren sholde haue take hym for their prysoner, yf it hadde

Charlemagne orders his men to withdraw ;

the barons obey his command.

Reynawde puts the folk of the Emperor to flight,

and takes prisoner Anthony Guyne-
mault, the Earle of Neners, and Thiery of Normandy.

Reynawde assembles his men and returns to his castle.

Aymon attacks Reynawde, and is overthrown.

¹ enemy's in text. ² Fol. E. viii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. e. iii.

⁴ son, F. orig. e. iii.

Ogyer the Dane
succours him.

not be Ogyer the Dane that came and socoured hym.
And thenne sayd to hym, the sayd Oger / 'Syr, what
semeth you of your chyldren / they be right cheualrouse
and hardy, as ye may see and knowe.' 4

Aymon pursues
his children.

WHan Aymon was horsed agayn, he pursuyd his
chyldren as a man wrothe and oute of his
wyte / and sayd to his folke / 'Now goo we after the
glotons! for yf they lyue long they shafl doo vs harme 8
and dommage soo grete *that* wyth peyne it shafl be
reserued.' Whan Reynawde saw his fader that folowed
theym so sharply / he torned bayarde, and wente and
smote amonge the thyckest of his faders folke, & be- 12
ganne to hurte theym so sore wyth the helpe of his
bredern, ²that he putte theym to flight, magre their
teeth / for they myghte no lenger endure the grete
magre³ that Reynawde bare to theym / for to say the 16
trouth, noo harneys was naughte worthe ayenst the
swerde of Reynawde. For he cleued all that he
roughte.

Reynawde turns
back and smites
his father's folk
till they are put
to flight.

⁴[W]han the emperoure Charlemayne saw this hie 20
prouesse that Reynawde made / he blessed hym selfe
of the grete meruayfl that he had thereof / and soo
stronge he spored his horse, that he wente ayenste Rey-
nawde, and thenne he said to hym / 'Reynawde, I for- 24
bede you that ye goo no ferther.' Whan Reynawde
sawe the kyng he made to hym reuerence, and thenne
wyth drewe hymselfe abacke / and sayd to his men /
'lete vs goo fourth, for here cometh the kyng. I wolde 28
not for noo thyng in this worlde that ony of you sholde
laye hande vpon hym' / Whan the folke of Reynawde
vnderstode thise Wordes, they putte their swerdes in
their sheethes, and wente agen to theyr castell, right 32
gladde of theyr fayne aventure that was happed to
theym that daye. And whan they were wythin theyr

Reynawde will
not let his men
lay hands upon
Charlemagne.

They return to
their castle of
MOUNTENFORDE.

¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. F. i.

³ dommaige, F. orig. e. iii. ⁴ the 2 line W is omitted.

castell of Mountenforde, they made the brydge for to be drawen up / and wente & unarmed them, and fonde the souper redy, and soo they sette theym selfe atte the
4 table / And there was a grete many of prysoners / And when they had ete / Reynawde cam to his broder, & thanked hym moche wyth all his herte of that he hadde slayne the erle of Estampes.

8 **A**nd whan the emperour Charlemagne saw that Reynawde was wythin his castell, he lighted down from his horse in to his tente / and sware god, that he sholde never departe thens unto the tyme that
12 he sholde have the foure sonnes of Aymon, or that the castell were take / What shall I telle you more ; the emperour Charlemagn laye well ¹ XIV ² monethes at sege afore the castell of mountenforde, and there was no
16 weke but they had a batayll or a scarmyssh; and I tell you that Reynawde was not so sore beseged, but that he wente to chasse in woodes & in ryvers as often as hym playsed / And dyverse tymes it happed
20 that Reynawde spake wyth the frenshemen of traytte, the one to thother / sayeng thus to theym : ‘Fayr lordes, I praye you that ye speke to themperour Charlemayn, & telle hym that he shall never take
24 us by no force, for our castell is right strong & well garnysshed / But knowe the kyng one thyng / that whiche he maye have by goodnes / he nede not make by force. He maye have the castell, & us also, yf
28 it playse hym, in suche maner as I shall telle you / Whan I shall put in his hande the castell of Mountenforde, my brethern and my selfe, our goodes & bagage sauff, and that the werre take an ende, that hath
32 lasted so longe / ³he may be well content.’³ ‘Reynarde,’ sayd Ogyer the dane, ‘ye saye well & wysely ; and I promytte you I shall shewe the same to the kyng, as

Charlemagne swears he will never depart till he has taken the four sons of Aymon.

Charlemagne besieges the castle of Mountenforde for fourteen months.

Reynawde offers to give up his castle if he may have his life and his goods safe.

¹ Fol. F. ii. back.

² XIII F. orig. e. iii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. e. iv.

ye haue sayd / And yf ye wyll beleve my counselle / I ensure you I shall telle hym that he doo so, for ye are not folke for to be sette lityll by thus / nor for to be fro the court / for yf the kyng had you nyghe hym, he 4 should be the better for it.'

All thus as Reynarde & Oger spake togyder / there came Foulques of morylloy, that cryed to Reynaud, 'vassell, ye be but a foole. for certes I have 8 herde your wordes well. Ye shall leve us, mountenforde, for it is not your herytage, & your hedes in like Wyse' / 'Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye have reprevd me full often. I knowe well alle the harme *that* 12 themperour Charlemayne wyll to me / is by cause I have slayne Berthelot his newew wyth a ches borde / of whom god have mercy / Certes I coude not doo therto ; but I was full ¹sory for it, god wote it. / It is 16 trouth whan we playd togyder, we hade some wordes, by the whiche, wythoute ony worde, he gaaff me suche a stroke upon my face that the bloode ranne me doune atte the grounde / And whan I sawe myselve soo 20 arayed / I myghte not be so softe that I coude endure the grete owtrage that he hadde doon to me wythoute a cause / Soo deffended I my selfe to my power / for who letteth hym self to be slayne, his soule shall never 24 have pardonne / And thou knoweste well, Foulques, that² I dyde, was in my defendynge. But to this muste be made shorte wordes / and yf it playse you / ye shall telle to the kyng Charlemayn, that he taketh 28 us to mercy, and that we maye be frendes. And yf ye doo this ye shall doo your honoure. For assone maye ye be slayn there as a nother' / 'By god,' sayd Foulques, 'all this is noughte worthe to you / for ye shall deye 32 therfor, ye and your brederen' / 'Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye threten to moche / It apperteyneth not

Foulques of Morylloy will not accept Reynawde's terms of peace.

Reynawde excuses his conduct,

and asks Charlemagne to be friends with him again.

Foulques refuses,

¹ Fol. F. ii.

² what.

to you for to threten knyghtes so moche that ben
 better than you. And yf ye haue ony thyng upon
 your herte, doo it wythout any more wordes / For
 4 I tell you well that ye purchace your dethe' / And
 whan Reynawde hadde sayd thyse wordes / they
 wente agen to theyr pavyllions. And thus abode the
 ooste unto thenne wythoute any fyghtyng. But the
 8 frenshmen came agen, wolde they or not; wherfore the
 kynge Charlemayn was wrothe.

and they retire to
 their pavillions.

Thenne the emperour Charlemagne sente for men
 thorughe all his londe / And whan they were all
 12 come he¹ sayd to theym / 'Syres, I complayne me to
 you of the foure sonnes of Aymon, that hathe my londe
 dystroyed and wasted. And Mounteynfourde is soo
 stronge, that by strengthe it canne never be taken / but
 16 by famysshynge. Now telle me what I oughte to
 doo / For I shall doo therin your counseyll' / ¹Whan
 the barons herde the complaynte that the kyng made
 to theym of the foure sones of Aymon / there was
 20 none soo hardy that durste saye a worde, but the duke
 Naymes of Bavyere, that sayd to the kynge / 'Syre
 emperour, if ye wyll have goode counseylle, I shalle
 gyve you goode, yf ye wyll byleve me. Let us retourne
 24 into highe Fraunce, for we be to nyghe the wynter for
 to make werre / And whan the newe tyme shall be
 come, ye shall mow come agen to laye your siege afore
 Mounteynforde. For I doo you to wyte that Reynaude
 28 is not sore pressed, but that he gooth in woodes and in
 ryvers atte all tymes that he wyll. And a man that
 maye goo oute and in atte his wyll, is not over sore
 byseged / And of the other parte, Reynawde and his
 32 brethern are suche knyghtes that they shall not be
 lygthly over come. This is my counseyll, syre / Who
 knoweth a better, lete hym telle.'

Charlemagne
 sends for more
 men to help him.

Charlemagne asks
 counsel of his
 barons.

Naymes of Bavy-
 ere advises the
 Emperor to return
 to Fraunce till the
 winter is past.

¹ Le roy, orig. e. v. back.

² Fol. F. iii. back.

Hernyer of Seveyne promises to take Reynawde and his brethren prisoners, if the King will cede to him the castle.

Thenne spake Hernyer of Seveyne, and to hym sayd, 'Syre,¹ I shall gyve you a better counseyll yf ye wyll beleve me / gyve me the castell and alle the havoyr that is wythin, and the lordeshyp fyve myles 4 aboute it, and I shall yelde to you Reynawde and all his brethern for prysoners afore a moneth com to an ende. And thenne shall we go in to France, for to see oure wyves and children.' 'Hernyer,' sayd the kynge / 8 'ye have sayd well and wysely, yf ye maye doo this that ye have sayd / I graunte to you the castell, and all that ye have asked wyth the same' / 'Syre,' sayd Hernyer, 'I thanke you for it an hundred thousande 12 tymes. And I promytte you I shall delyver unto you Reynawde and his bredern as your prysoners, or ever a moneth be passed' / But knowe you, that Hernyer dyde mysse of his enterpryse, for he kepte not covenante to 16 the kyng as he had promysed hym, for Reynawde toke hym,² and made hym to be hewen all in peces; and³ made all they that were wyth hym whan he mathe trayson to be hanged & slayne, as more playnly ye 20 shall understonde / yf ye liste to herken.

Hernyer prepares knights to go upon the mountain without noise.

Hernyor of Sayne made noon other taryeng / but he sayd to kyng Charlemayn in this maner / 'Syr, commaude ye Guyon of Bourgyne *that* he doo put 24 in arraye a thousande knyghtes well armed / and that to morowe, afore the daye, he goo upon the montagne fayr & softly wythout noyse⁴ / And I shall put hym wythin the castell shortly' / Whan he had sayd this / 28 he wente into his tente / and made hymselfe to be armed / And whan he was armed, he lighted a horsebacke / and rode to the gate of the castell,⁵ and sayd to them *that* kepte warde / 'Alas, for god, fayr lordes, 32

¹ droit empereur, F. orig. e. v. back.

² luy couppa la teste a peu de temps, F. orig. e. v.

³ Car il en mourut luy et toutes ses gens, F. orig. e. v.

⁴ et bruyt, F. orig.

⁵ de mountenfort, F. orig.

have mercy of me ; yf it playse you lete me com inne,
 or elles I am but deed / for the emperour Charlemayn
 maketh to folowe & seke me alle about, for to make
 4 me deye, by cause I have sayd to hym moche good
 of Reynawde ; and also I telle you well, that I shall
 shewe to Reynawde a thyng wherof he shall be ryght
 glad, ¹yf his playsur is to here me.¹

8 **W**hen they that were above upon the gate, herde
 hym speke thus / they wythout long taryenge
 lete goo down ye drawe brydgc, & made hym come in,
 and dysarmed hym, and dyde to hym grete honoure /
 12 But the false traytour rewarded them full ylle for it
 after that / This hangynge, Charlemagne comaunded
 Guyon to make hym redy, and a thousande knyghtes
 wyth hym / And sente them upon the hylle, wythoute
 16 makynge of ouy bruyt, tyll that the daye were come.
 And wyte, that Guynon hadde wyth hym of the beste
 knyghtes of Charlemagne.

²**N**ow is Hernyer the traytour wythin the castell of
 20 Mounteynfourle, to whom men made goode
 chere ; and whan Reynawde wyste that a knyghte
 of Charlemagne was come / He sayd that he wolde
 speke wyth hym / And soo he was broughte afore
 24 hym / And whan he saw hym, he sayd to hym / ‘ What
 be you, fayre knyghte, that are come hyder?’ / And he
 answered, ‘ Syre, my name ys Hernyer of Saveyne /
 and I have angered kynge Charlemagne for the love of
 28 you / And for this cause I am come hyther, praynge
 that ye have me for recommaunded / For I wote not
 wether to goo now.’ ‘ Goode frende,’ sayd Reynawde /
 ‘ sythe that ye saye that ye be oure frende, ye be ryght
 32 wellcome to me ; for of suche goodes that god hathe
 sente me, ye shall not faylle / Now telle me, I praye
 you, how doothe the ooste of the emperoure? Have

Hernyer begs
 Reynawde to let
 him into the
 castle, because
 Charlemagne
 would slay him.

After a parley
 they let the
 traitor into the
 castle.

Charlemagne
 sends Guyon and
 a thousand
 knyghts upon the
 hill without noise.

Hernyer tells
 Reynawde that he
 has angered
 Charlemagne,
 and begs for
 shelter.

¹ omitted, F. orig. e. v.
² Fol. F. iii.

He tells Reynawde that Charlemagne will retire within forty days.

Reynawde is comforted,

and they all sup gladly.

When all are asleep Hernyer arms himself,

lets down the drawbridge, and slays the watch.

He opens the gates,

they any grete plente of vytayles?' / 'Syre,' sayd
 Hernyer, 'they ben scarce wyth theym. But I telle
 you for veraye certen, that they shall goo theyr wayes
 wythin this fourthy dayes / For noone of the barons 4
 wyll no lenger abyde there. Wherefore the kyng
 Charlemagne is sore an-angred wyth theym / And I
 promytte you, yf the ooste wente awaye ye myghte
 hurte theym ryghte sore / and gete moche goode, yf ye 8
 wyll sette thenne upon the taylle of theym.' 'Frende,'
 sayd Reynawde, 'ye have comforted me well / yf it is
 soo as ye saye / For yf the kyng be ones overthrowen,
 he shall not come a nother tyme upon us wyth soo 12
 goode a wylle / as he dooth now.' And Reynawde
 hadde hym wyth hym to hys brethern, that made to
 him good chere;¹ and whan the soper was redy Rey-
 nawde and his bretherne sette theym down to theyr 16
 mete, and sopped gladly. And in theyr companye was
 the traytour Hernyer / to whom they made good chere.
 After souper ²[all the knyghtes wente to slepe, for they
 were wery of bearing of theyr harneys, and they had 20
 not ceased to fyght all that day. And wit / that Hernier
 was well and honestly brought to bed, for Reynawde
 had so commaunded. And whan all the knyghtes
 were fast aslepe, Hernier, as the false Iudas, slepte 24
 not. But he rose and tooke hys harneys, and armed
 hymselfe. And whan he was well armed at his ease,
 he came to the drawebridge, and cut the cordes / that
 kept it vp, and let the drawbrydge go downe; and 28
 than he went vpon the walles, where he found him
 that made the watche, and slew him. And whan he
 had doone this, he came to the gate / and opened it, for
 he had taken the keyes / from hym that he had slayne, 32
 whyche had them in his kepyng.

¹ et luy demandoient comment se portoit lost de Charle-
 maigne, oltre chose ne fut alors, F. orig. e. vi. back.

² Two sheets lost from Caxton, supplied from Copland's
 ed. 1554 in B. Mus., Fol. xxv.

Than whan Guyon of Bourgoyne saw the gate open,
 he made no taryng, but came and entred into the
 castell, and al hys folke with hym, and began to kylle
 4 and slea all them that they found.

Guyon enters,
 and slays all he
 can find.

Now shall ye heare of the fayre adventure, how
 that Reynawde & his brethern / were saved from
 this mortall slawghter. Wyt, that whan the yemen of
 8 the stable had supped, thei were dronke, and went to
 theyr bed; & whan they were a slepe, the horse of
 Alarde / that was somewhat proude, began to make noyse
 agaynst the other. And Alarde and Richarde heard
 12 the noyse of the horses; they rose vp, and saw y^e doore
 of the halle open, and perceyved out of it the harneys
 that glystered agaynst the moone, that shone full
 bryght.

The horse of
 Alarde wakes the
 brothers Alarde
 and Richard.

Than went they to the bedde where they had brought
 the false Hernyer / whyche they found not there,
 wherof they were ryght sore abasshed. And than was
 Reynawde awaked, and asked 'who was there that¹
 20 maketh thys noyse? Let our knyghtes take theyr rest,
 that have so sore travayled all the day; it is evyl doone
 for to go thus stampyng at this houre.' Than cryed
 Alarde to Reinawde, and sayd, 'Fayre brother, we ben
 24 betrayed! / for Hernyer, that false knyght, hath put the
 folke of Charlemagne / within thys castell, the whiche
 kyll and slea your folke, and put them to a greate
 marter.' Whan Reynawde vnderstode this, he made
 28 no taryng, but he arose and armed hymself quickly,
 and cried vnto his brethern / and to his men, 'Now, my
 freendes, let us beare our selfe worthly; we had never so
 great need.' And wyt, that Reynawde had with hym
 32 but .xxx knyghtes within the dongeon of that fortresse,
 for all the other were within y^e base courte, whiche
 was as it had ben a lytle towne well peopled, where as
 Guyon of Bourgoyne & his folke slew them.

They cry to Rey-
 nawde that Her-
 nyer has betrayed
 the castle.

Reynawde pre-
 pares to defend
 himself right well.

¹ qui ales a ceste heure, F. orig. e. vi.

This hanging: Reynawde & his brethern / had armed themselfe right wel, hopynge for to defende theymselfe well.

Reynawde defends the gate.

Than came Hernyer the traytour, steryng aboute 4 through the maystres strete, & with him well an hundred knightes. Than sayd Reinawde to hys brethern, 'fayre Lordes, come forth! for yf god helpe vs not, we are all lost.' & than Reynawde and his 8 bretherne / came to the gate, & defended so well / *that* none durst passe but he was slayne; what shall I tell you more? the base courte began to be sore moved, and the crye was so great, for al them of the dongeon 12 defended themselfe valyantlye. Whan the folke of the Emperour Charlemagne / sawe that they that were within the dongeon defended themselfe so well, they set y^e base court in a fire, and began to brenne and pul 16 down the houses, and al that they founde. And y^e fyre was soone so great that it tooke the dongeon of the castell.

Charlemagne sets the dungeon on fire.

Whan Reynawde saw that he was so taken wyth 20 fyre, he was sore angred, and sayd to hys brethern, 'what shall we doo here? for yf we tary any lenger, we shall all be brent or taken, and yf it were not the fyre / that thus warreth agaynst vs, I make 24 myne avowe to god, that we should yet caste this folke out of thys castell; but syn that the fyre is in it, we cannot kepe it no lenger.' And than he sayd to his bretherne, 'come all after me'; & they went to the 28 fausebray, that was allwayes open, and yssued out, he & his bretherne, & his folke with them; and whan they were out / than were they more abashed than they were afore, for they wyst not whether to goe.' 32

Reynawde and his brethren issue out of the castle,

Now heare how they dyd as worthy knightes: for whan they saw the castell brenne, they entred wythin a pyt that was there vnder the erthe / for feare

[of the fyre, & set the dore vpon them, & there they began to defend themselves so strongly, that none entred therein / but he lost anon hys head. And whan Hernyer
 4 the traytour was aware of ye same, he tooke his folke with him, & came to ye pyt and began to assayle Reynawde sharply, and his brethern, and al they that were therin with them; & wyt it, that there, at thentre
 8 of the sayd pyt, were made great faytes of armes, for they of within defended themselves so wel / *that* none myght come in / ¹but he were dead anon.¹ ¶ Whyle that the foure sonnes of Aymon / were in ye pyt vnder
 12 therth, they hearde the crye that his men made, the whiche Hernyer made to be slayne. Than began Reynawde to sai to his brethern, ‘Lordes, let vs go succour our folke, for, and they should thus dye, it were to
 16 vs a great blame.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd hys bretherne, ‘goe in goddes name, whan it please you.’ And whan they were come out of the pitte, the batayle began to be there ful terryble; for ye should have seen Reynawde
 20 & his brethern / gyve there great strokes and manye. For Reynawde smote so merveyllouse strokes wyth hys swerd Flamberge, the whyche did cut all that he rought. For Reynawde was all wrothe, and for great angre he
 24 habandoned and Ieoparded both lyfe and gooddes.

And therefore he bare greate hurte and harme to hys enemyes, for he had cast hys sheelde over his backe, and helde his swerde Flamberge / wyth both his
 28 handes, & made so great destruction of the folke of Charlemagne, that the place was al full of bloud. And whan Reynawde saw that they enemyes were sore abashed, and that they durste not abyde him / he sayd
 32 to his brethern, ‘It was to vs great cowardnes to hyde vs so.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd Alarde, ‘ye say trouthe.’ Than sayd Reynawde, ‘My lordes, my brethern, let vs to doo well. For traitours ben good to overcom; they shall

and enter into a pit, where they defend themselves strongly.

They leave the pit to succour their men.

Reynawde makes great destruction of the folk of Charlemagne.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. e. vii.

[not now endure longe agaynst vs.' And whan he had sayde these wordes, he came to y^e gate of y^e castel, and the fyre was a lytle quenched. and maugre al his enemyes, he shet the gate of that doungeon / and had 4 vp the drawbridge of the sayde castel. And whan he had doone this, he came agayne to the batayle, & found his brethern, that slewe and beate downe so many knyghtes, ¹and barre themselfe so worthelye¹ / that it 8 was marvayle for to see; for they smote no stroke but they slew a man.

Reynawde finds the fire a little quenched, he shuts the gate of the doungeon, and has up the drawbridge of the castle.

Than was Hernyer the traytour in the medle within the doungeon, wherof Reynawde had locked the 12 gate / and drawn the bridge; and the good Reynawde sawe that he was safe of the hoste of Charlemagne, and began to put hymselfe in the medle so sharpelye, that he dyd so muche / he and hys brethern, that of y^e 16 folke of Charlemagne that were wythin the doungeon, abode of them alive but Hernier / and .xii.² other; and whan Reynawde saw that they were all dead, he and hys bretherne and hys folke tooke Hernyer] ³and the 20 XII other / And thenne Reynawde dyde doo make a gybette upon one of the hygheste towres / And there he made to be hanged the XII men / And made Hernyer to be bound hys foure⁴ membres, that is to wyte / feete 24 and handes, to foure horses taylles / And soo he was drawnen all quyck, and quartered in foure peeces / as a traytoure oughte to be doon unto. And when Hernyer was deed, Reynawde dyde doo make a grete fyre / And 28 made hym to be caste therin / And as he was altogyder brente, he made the ashes of hym to be cast in the ayere to the wynde / And there ye maye see how the

Reynawde kills the folk of Charlemagne in the doungeon, and takes Hernier alive.

Hernyer is drawn and quartered,

his body burnt, and his ashes cast to the wind.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. e. vii.

² [xi] F. orig. ³ Caxton begins again, Fol. F. vi.

⁴ a la cue dung cheual. Et puis fist tous montes Ilz frapperent des esperons, et les cheualx est oient fors et couraigeux, et commencerent a courir lunge a lautre la parmy la rue, tant que en pru de temps Ilz leurent tout des membre, F. orig. e. viii. back.

traytours ¹that wolde be-traye Reynawde,¹ were deed
and slayne. For they were punysshed as they had
deserved.

4 **T**henne whan kynge Charlemagne wyste that his
folke were thus deed, and that he sholde not
have Reynawde nor his brethern, he was sore angry
therefore, and sayd to hymself / ‘Ha, goode god lorde,
8 how am I evyll dealed wyth all, by this foure knyghtes
brethern. I dyde my selfe grete harme / whan ever I
made theym knyghtes / And it is often sayd / That
men make often a rodde² for theym selfe; and that
12 I maye well now take to me / for theyr uncle slewe
my sone Lohier / and Reynawde my nevewe Berthelot,
³that I loved so derely.³ And yet now he has hanged
my men, and many of theym slayne⁴ / Well I myghte
16 calle myselfe unhappy whan I, that am the moste
puysant of the worlde / canne not avenge me of the
foure symple knyghtes / I shall never departe from
hens tyll that I be avenged, or elles they shall overcom
20 me / and all my armye.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd Foulques of
Morylloy, ‘ye have a goode cause why, and Reynawde
is a foole that he fereth you not. For yf he hadde
doubted you, he shold not have hanged your men / but
24 he has doon so in dispyte of you.’ thenne sayd y^e
duk naimes of bavyere, ⁵‘hadde ye beleved me, ye
sholde not have loste your men. Ye wolde beleve
Hernyer / It is happed of it as ye see. Now beholde
28 your folke that ben shaken wyth the wynde’ /

Whan the emperour Charlemagne understode this
that the duke of Naymes sayd to hym / He
knewe that he sayd trouthe, and wyste not what he
32 sholde saye to it, but loked down all a shamed. This

Charlemagne is
angry that his
folk are thus slain.

Naymes of Bavy-
ere says that the
King should not
have beleved
Hernyer.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. c. viii. back.

² dont son est bactu, F. orig. e. viii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ en grant marture et tourment, F. orig. c. viii.

⁵ Fol. F. vii.

hangynge, Reynawde and his bredern are goon upon the walles, and loked about theym, & sawe that the basse-courte of the castell brenned there as their wytaylles were / Thenne began Reynawde to saye to his bredern / 4
 ‘Fayr lordes, the thyng gooeth well, sithe that we ben scaped, thanked be god, from soo peryllous and harde adventure / I laked lityll but *that* we were all deed by false trayson / but the worste that I see is, that we have 8
 loste our store of vytaylles, so that we have noo thyng to lyve upon. And me semeth that yf we dwelle ony lenger here wythin, we doo not wysely ; but yf it seme you goode it is tyme that we departe hens’ / ‘Broder,’ 12
 sayd Alarde, ‘ye speke well & wysely / and we shall doo as ye have sayd : for as longe as the liffe is in oure bodyes, we shall not leve you’ / Whan the foure bredern were togyder accorded for to departe thens, they trussed 16
 all their harneys / and taryed tyll that it was nyghte, and thenne they armed theym selfe / and lighted on horsebacke / And when they were redy / Reynawde sayd to theym / ‘Lordes, how many men ben we’ / ‘We ben,’ 20
 answered a lorde, ‘well V hundred’ / ‘It is ynoughe,’ sayd Reynawde / ‘But wote ye what we shall do? Lete us kepe ourselfe always to gyder, wythoute makyng of ony affraye, & so goo thrughe y^e londe of almayn¹ / & 24
 yf y^e folke of charlemagn hap to assaile us / thinke to defende ourselfe well, & smyte harde vpon theym, ²so that we have to oure worshyp the better of theym’ / Whan it was tyme to lighte on horsebacke, Reynawde 28
 mounted vpon bayarde, and the other also lyghted vpon theyr horses. And whan thei were all horsed, they opened the gate and wente oute atte theyr leysers wyth-
 oute making any noyse : and whan they were all yssued 32
 oute, Reynawde behelde and sawe the castell that brente. Wherof he toke grete pyte, and sayd, ‘Ha, god ! goode castell ! it is grete dommage that ye be thus dystroyed

Reynawde says he must leave the castle, for they have no victuals.

The four sons go out of the castle in the night without any noise.

¹ sans faire noise, F. orig. e. viii. ² Fol. F. vii. back.

and wasted / goddys curse have he that betrayed this
 goode castell. It is ago seven yere *that* ye were made
 fyrste. Alas! we have hadde therin soo moche goode,
 4 and soo mykyll worshyp, and now we leve you mawgre
 vs./ Certes ye were my truste after my brethern / And
 whan I muste lese you, there is none so sory for it as I
 am' / And as he spake thyse wordes, the teres felle
 8 down from his eyen / And he was soo taken wyth grete
 hevynes, that almoste he felle doune in a swoune / soo
 moche of sorowe he had atte his herte.

Reynawde grieves
 to leave his castle,

12 **A**nd whan Alarde sawe Reynawde so full of sorowe,
 he cam to hym and sayd / ' By my feyth, broder,
 ye be to blame to saie soo. Ye be not the man that
 shall com to myschyef, for all the knyghtes that ben
 a lyve are not worthe you; and therefore I praye you
 16 that ye wyll comforte yourselfe / for I swere you vpon
 all halowes, that a fore two yere be passed, ye shall have
 a castell that shall be worthe suche foure as this is /
 But now lete vs putte ourselfe to the way, for we have
 20 noo nede to tary' / ' Broder,' sayd Reynawde, ' I have
 founde ever in you goode counseyll / Now goo we
 thenne oure waye / and take you and Guycharde the
 forewarde, and I and Rycharde shalle come behynde' /
 24 ' Syre,' sayde Alarde, ' all shall be doon as ye saye' /
 And thenne toke Alarde his broder Guycharde wyth
 hym, and went afore wyth a C. ¹knyghtes wyth theym /
 and hadde forthe their caryage in the myddes of theym /
 28 And Reynawde and Rycharde cam after wyth the
 residue of theyr folke / But they coude never make
 nor passe soo softly / but that the folke of the ooste
²of the emperour² overtoke theym.

but Alarde con-
 soles him.

As they pass, the
 folk of the Em-
 peror hear them.

32 **T**henne whan Charlemagne knewe that Reynawde
 came, he was moche wrothe, and made his com-
 maundement that every man sholde be armed. And
 thenne the ooste began to moeve, and wente incontinently

¹ Fol. F. viii. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. f. i. back.

The host of Charlemagne advance against the four sons.

nente and armed theym selfe. Whan Alarde and Guycharde, that went afore, saw that they myghte not passe / but that they muste medle / they spored theyr horses / and ranne vpon Charlemayns folke soo sharpely 4 that they were all an-angred wyth it, for they overthrewe two knyghtes to the grounde, and incontynente¹ was there grete a doo / And whan Reynawde sawe that the ooste moeved / he called to hym XX. knyghtes, 8 and bad theym take and lede forthe the caryage afore oute of the ooste, and he sholde goo helpe his bredern / 'Syre,' sayd they, 'we shall doo your commaundement' / And² thenne Reynawde spored bayarde and 12 entred among the thyckest, and began there to make soo grete merveylls of armes that all the folke of charlemagne wondred vpon / for he & his brederne overthrewe there deed soo many knyghtes, that noone 16 durste come afore theym but that he was slayne.

Reynawde and his brethern overthrow all who come before them.

What shall I telle you / wyte it that the folke of kynge Charlemagne was so discomfyted, for by cause that it was nyghte,³ and myghte not well see what 20 nombre of folke the foure bretherne were³ / that Reynawde and his companye passed, mawgre theym of the ooste / And also I tell you for certeyn that Reynawde and his bredern dyde soo grete harme to the folke of 24 Charlemagne *that* he was sory for it many dayes after. ⁴Whan Reynawde was passed, he fonde his sommeres and his caryage / and his knyghtes that conduytte theym / wherof he was gladde / Thenne he sayd to his 28 brethern / 'Syres, goo on your waye' / and they dyde his commaundement / And Reynawde wyth his broder Richarde⁵ abode byhynde / And whan Charlemagne wyste that Reynawde wente awaye, he was gladde, by 32 cause he hadde lefte the castell ⁶of Mounteynforde⁶ /

The sons pass through in spite of the host of Charlemagne.

¹ entre eulx et leurs gens. F. orig. f. i.

² quant Renault eut ce fait, il, F. orig. f. i.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. ⁴ Fol. F. viii. back.

⁵ Guichart, F. orig. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig.

And Incontynente he made hym to be followed / and
also all the oost was redyly armed / And whan they
were well arrayed, they toke theyr waye after the foure
4 sones ¹of Aymon.¹

Now ben the foure knyghtes bretherne² ryght sory
of that they have thus left theyr fayr castell of
Mounteynforde / And wyte it that Charlemagne fol-
8 lowed theym well of nyghe / and sayd that / it sholde
hurte hym sore but yf he myghte take theym / But
Reynawde the worthy knyghte is not abashed / but
he taketh all his folke, and setteth theym afore hym,
12 and sayd³ to his broder Alarde / 'Goode broder Alarde,⁴
take kepe of this folke betwene you & Guycharde /
and yf the folke of Charlemagne assaylle vs, we shall
deffende us well' / 'Syr,' sayd Alarde, 'as ye have
16 sayd, soo shall it be doon' / And thenne they saw come
Charlemagne and Oger the dane, duke Names of
bauyere, Foulgues of Morylloy, & many other, & whan
Charlemagne *that* cam afore well horsed, saw reynawde
20 & his folke, he cried to theym and sayd, 'Soo helpe me
god, glotons, ye be now deed! thys is the daye that
I shall make you all foure to be all hanged' / 'Syre,'
answered Reynawde, 'it shall not be so as ye wene, and
24 it playse god; for *that* god gyve me ⁵lyffe and ⁵helth,
and to my horse bayarde,⁶ the pursuette shall sore dere
be boughte, that ye nowe do' / And whan he had sayd
the same, he tor⁷ned bayarde agenst Charlemagne for to
28 smyte hym / for he wende well to have slayne hym
wythoute ony fawte / The kyng Charlemagne was in
daunger to deye, yf Reynawde had raughte hym / But
Dampe hughe wente bytwene the kyng and Reynawde
32 that cam wyth his spere in the reest, willynge for to

The King follows
the four brethren.

Reynawde sets his
men in array
against the folk of
Charlemagne.

Reynawde would
have slain Charle-
magne, but
Dampe Hughe
comes between
them.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Aymon, F. orig. f. i.

³ a Alard, F. orig. f. ii. back. ⁴ omitted, F. orig.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

⁶ sera compare et chier vendua ma mort, F. orig. f. ii. back.

⁷ Fol. G. i.

Reynawde slays
Hughe, and goes
after his brethern.

doo grete harme / And at his comyng, he smote dampe
hughe thurgh the shekle so harde, that he perced his
herte wyth the yron of his spere, and soo he fell down
deed afore the kyng / And whan Reynawde had gyven 4
that stroke, he wente his waye after his brethern.

Whan Charlemagne¹ sawe hughe fall deed, he cryed
with an high voys / 'Now after, lordes, after /
for yf thyse glotons scape vs, I shall never be mery' / 8
And Reynawde cam agen to hys folke, and sayd to
theym / 'Lordes, doubte you not aslonge as I am a
lyve, but be all assured, and soo ryde on hardely² & in
good arraye.' What shall I telle you more / Wyte it 12
that XXIV³ myle lasted the chasse, and there was
never a myle but that they iusted togyder / and many
knyghtes were there overthrowen & slayn / But Rey-
nawde & hys folke bare theym selfe soo manly, that 16
they loste⁴ but thre of theyr felawshyp at that tyme /
but they rode so long tyll they cam to the ryver. The
kyng called to hym his barons, and said to theym /
'Lordes, lete alone the chasse! it were folie from hens- 20
forth for to followe theym. For I see that all our
horses maye no more. Lete theym go to a hundred
thousand devils! for yf Reynawde wroughte wyth
wyteche craft, he coude doo nomore than he dooth. 24
Late vs thynk for to lodge us here nyghe the ryver /
for the contrey is goode and playsaunte as me semeth.
'Syre,' sayd the barons / 'lete it be doon as ye have
commaunded.' Thenne they unladed theyr sommeres, 28
and pyghte there theyr pavyllions / and whan they
were sette⁵ up, the kyng made hym to be dysarmed.
And in the meane while the souper was made redy
lightly; for of all the daye y^e kyng had nother eten 32
nor dronken / nor none of his felawshyp / And Rey-

The King tells his
barons to give up
the pursuit of the
brothers.

¹ vit ce coup, F. orig. ² et sans desroy, F. orig. f. ii. back.

³ XIII lieux, F. orig. f. ii. back.

⁴ ne perdirent riens, F. orig. f. ii. back. ⁵ Fol. G. i. back.

nawde was passed over the ryver, he & his bredern & his folke, sauff & sounde, where as they wolde be hi the grace of our lorle / and whan Reynawde & his
 4 bredern saw that the chasse was ceassed and lefte, they wente all softly; and whan they had goon ferre from the oost of kynge Charlemagne, they fonde a fountayne fayr & clere / and aboute that fountayne was moche
 8 fayr grasse & thyeke / Whan reynawde sawe the place was soo playsaunt, he sayd to his folke, ' here is a fayr grounde for to lodge us, & for our horses.' ' Syr,' sayd Alarde, ' ye saye trouth.' And thenne they vnladed
 12 theyr somers¹ & theyr cartes¹ / and wyte it, the horse were mery; but the poure knyghtes were evyll lodged / for they had there noo mete nor no drynke, but clere water / But wyte it, that Reynawde nor none of his
 16 knyghtes dysarmed theym not, but made good watche all the nyghte, one after another / And whan they sawe the day com / Reynawde made his harneys to be trussed, and they lighted on horsbacke, and toke their
 20 waye through the² grete forest of Arleyne / and whan they had rydden longe, they lighted down afore another fountayne, that they had watched the nyghte afore, sholde rest themselfe there.

24 **N**ow myght well saye Charlemagne, that he can never hurte the foure sones of Aymon / And wyte, that he was lodged vpon the ryver, where he abode / whan he wolde no more folowe after Rey-
 28 nawde / And whan the daye was clere / he sayd to the duke of Naymes / ' What thynke ye what we ought to doo?' / ' Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, ' yf ye wyll beleve me, we shall tourne backe agayne / for to goo ony
 32³ farther this waye, it were but a foli; for this wood is to thyke, and the ryver over moche perillouse / and also

Reynawde finds his pursuers have ceased,

and enamps near a clear fountain.

His knights watch all night in their armour.

Duke Naymes says it is folly to go after the four sons any further.

¹—¹ omitted, F. orig. f. ii.

² une forest grant et espesse moult des nōmable, F. orig. f. ii

³ Fol. G. ii.

Reynawde & his bredern are suche knyghtes that they ben not for to be lightly overthrowen.' And while the kyng and the duke spake to gyder / there cam many knyghtes to hym ; and whan Charlemagne sawe theym / 4 he called Vydelon, Renyer, Oger the dane, & sayd to theym / 'Lordes, I wyll that ye com agen to Parys wyth me.' And when they vnderstode this, they were glad, & sayd to the kyng / 'Syr, it is the best coun- 8 seyll that ye can doo' / and after that they were so accorded / Charlemagne made to be cryed, that everi man sholde retorne agen in to his country / and that they shold kepe it well, & that he prayed theym so to 12 doo / 'Syr,' sayd the barons, 'we shall do your commaundement' / and when all was sayd, they made thooste to descende & take their waye / and the kyng went streyghte to Parys, & the barons in their coun- 16 treys. And whan Charlemagne was come to parys, he called afore hym his barons, & to theym sayd / 'fayr lordes, I am the most unhappy kyng of y^e worlde, whan I have no power to avenge my self of the foure 20 sones of Aymon ; and they lede me, as ye knowe / I wene they shall retorne in to their countrey or to their castell / & it be so, I wyll that we goo there agen for to leye sege there' / 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'that 24 sha'll they not do, for they are in Ardeyne ; and ye knowe that the foreste is soo grete, that they shall fynde some cheuysaunce' / 'That myghte well be,' sayd the kyng Charlemagne / 'but whersomever they goo / evyll 28 waye myghte they fynde' / And when he had sayd thys, he tourned towarde Ogyer / and sayd to hym / 'Take Gerarde, Foulgues the almayne, and Dron of Mondydier, and gyve leve to the frenshmen and to the other / 32 'Syr,' sayd Ogyer, 'well shall be doon your commaundemente.' ¹And thenne wente Ogyer to Foulgues, to Gerarde / and to Dron / and tolde theym

Charlemagne orders all his men to return to their own lands.

The King goes straight to Paris.

The King grieves that he has no power to avenge himself on the four sons.

¹ Fol. G. ii, back.

that / that Charlemagne had commaunded / And after
 came to the frenshmen / and tolde to the other
 knyghtes / and gaaff theym leve / And whan the
 4 kynges folke hadde leve, every man wente to hys
 country / not the ryght waye / but traversynge the
 mountaynes. And thus as Aymon wente traversynge
 the lande towarde his country, it happed to hym soo
 8 that he came by the fountayne where his sones dwelled.

Aymon in passing
 to his own lands
 meets his sons.

Whan Aymon sawe hys chyldren / he was abasshed, and
 ryght sory for it / And thenne he sayd to his barons,
 ‘Lordes, counseyll me, I praye you, what I oughte to
 12 doo agenst my children / for, and I assayle theym / and
 that they ben slayn or taken, I shall never have Ioye /
 and yf I lete theym goo / I shall be forsworne to
 Charlemagne’ / Whan his barons herde hym speke
 16 soo / there was never one that answered any worde /
 And whan Aymon saw that he was counseyllled of noo
 man / he sayd agayn to theym, ‘Syth it is soo that ye
 wyll gyve me noo counseylle / I shall doo after my
 20 owne wyll / for god forbede that it be layd unto me,
 that I have founde theym here, and have not foughte
 wyth theym / but well I telle you, that it is for my
 synne that I have founde them here. But from hens-
 24 forthe it shall be doon therin as it playseth ¹god and ¹
 fortune.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd Esmenfray, ‘yf ye assaylle your
 chyldren, ye do not amys / for ye sware it to the kyng
 Charlemagne / Kepe, syr Aymon, that ye be not for-
 28 sworne / for a man of your age shoulde rather deye than
 he sholde doo ony treyson.’ ‘Goode frende, ye saye
 well,’ sayd Aymon / ‘and I shall soo doo that I shalle
 not be blamed’ / And thenne he called two of his
 32 knyghtes, and sayd to theym / ‘Goo toward Reynawde
 and his bretherne, and defye theym in my behalve.’
 ‘Syre,’ sayd the ²knyghtes, ‘it is a harde thyng for to be
 doon / but sith it playse you, we shall doo as ye have

Duke Aymon
 sends two knyghts
 to defy Reynawde
 and his brethren.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. f. iii.

² Fol. G. iii.

commaunded.' And thenne they went to warde Reynawde, that was sore abasshed / for he knewe well that they were of his faders folke. Werof he was full sory for it / and after he sayd to his bredern / 'Lordes, now 4 arme yourselfe / for a man that is well garnysshed is not of lighte overthrowe / And of the other side, I knowe soo moche the hardenes of my fader, that he shall not feyne to be fyght us.' 'Broder,' sayd Rycharde, 'ye 8 saye trouthe' / This hangying, came the two knyghtes afore hym, and whan Reynawde sawe theym come nyghe hym, he wente agenst theym, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, what ye be, and what wynde dryveth you 12 hyther' / Thenne spake one of the knyghtes, and sayd to Reynawde / 'Syre, we ben knyghtes of my lorde, your fader, that sendeth to you by vs a defyaunce.' 'Lordes,' sayd Reynawde, 'I wyst it well ¹assone as I 16 dyde see yow of ferre¹ / but goo agayn and telle to our fader, that it will playse hym to gyve vs triews / for he shall not do well for to befyghte vs that are his natureyll chylidren.' 'Syre,' sayd the knyghte, 'of folie 20 ye speke / but thynke to defende your selfe well, for he shalle assayll you withoute doubte' / Whan they hadde sayd these wordes, they retourned agayne for to reherse to Aymon their message, and how they had 24 defyed his children / Whan the olde Aymon understode theym, he made none other tarienge, but spored his horse wyth the spores, and ran the formeste vpon / vpon his sones. And whan Reynawde saw his fader 28 come, he come agenst hym and sayd, 'Ha, fader, what doo you / we have none soo grete a foo as ye be to vs / and I have grete merveylle that ye come alwayes vpon us. Ye doo yll and grete synne for to doo soo. Atte 32 the leste, yf ye wyll bi noo wyse helpe vs / be not to us contrary ne enmye, ²yf it ³playse you'² / 'Thou theeff!'

Reynawde asks his father to grant them a truce.

Reynawde does not wish to fight his father,

¹ ¹ omitted, F. orig. f. iii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. iv. back. ³ Fol. G. iii. back.

sayd Aymon, 'ye shall never doo goode, sythe that ye
 begynne to preche. Goo to the wode! soo shall ye be
 come wyld bestes / evyll daye gyve you, god; for ye
 4 ben not worth an hanfull of strawe. Now thynke to
 defende yourselfe; for yf ye ben taken, ye shall be
 putte to a grete tourmente.' 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde,
 'ye doo vs wronge / I shalle defende me, sythe that I
 8 maye none other wyse doo / for yf I sholde lette my-
 selfe to be slayne, my soule solde be putte to peyne and
 tourmente' / Whan Aymon saw that, he broughte his
 speere in the reeste, and putte hymselfe amonge his
 12 chyldren / lyke as they hadde ben strangers / And
 whan Reynawde sawe that, he cryed to his men, and
 sayd / 'here is none other, but doo well now. Lordes,
 thynke to smyte well / for nede compelleth vs therto' /
 16 And whan he hadde sayd that worde / he spored his
 horse wyth his spores / and putte hym selfe in the
 thyckest, and beganne to make soo grete effortes of
 armes, that all the folke of his fader merveyllid of it
 20 gretely.

but Aymon at-
 tacks him.

What shall I saye? the bataylle beganne so felle
 and cruell / that pyte it was to see / For you
 sholde have seen, gyve and receyve, grete and horryble
 24 strokes of the one parte and of the other. And many
 knyghtes and horses deye / many sheeldes brosten, and
 many white harneys broken / So many hedes smytten
 of, and soo many legges and armes broken, and sore
 28 hurte. And thynke that this bataylle was sore stronge,
 and well helden of the one syde and of the other / But
 to saye the trouthe, Reynawde must loose atte that
 tyme / for his fader had thre¹ tymes as many folke as
 32 he hadde / For of fyve hundred men that abode wyth
 Reynawde ²after his castell was take / which were wyth
 hym atte thys bataylle,² were lefte on lyve / what

The battle begins

Both sides fight
 bravely, but Rey-
 nawde is beaten
 for want of more
 men.

¹ beaucoup plus gens, F. orig. f. iv.

²-2 omitted, F. orig. f. iv.

hurte and sounde, but fyfthly persones / But ¹I telle you well for certeyne, that Reynawde and his bretherne dyde soo grete harme to the folke of their fader / that they slewe well halfe of theym. But atte laste ⁴ Reynawde must loose, and flee away towarde the mountaynes / And Aymon chassed hym as well as he coude / for he wende well to have taken theym / And whan Reynawde sawe theymselfe vpon the toppe of ⁸ the mountayne, he sayd to hys bretherne / 'lete vs not departe from hens / for this is a goode place for to deffende' / Wyte that there was grete scarmysshynge and Iustyngge / made / and many a knyghte deed and ¹² sore wounded. And there was slayne vnder Alarde, his goode horse / And whan Alarde sawe hym selfe a grounde, he lepte on his feete ryght quyekely, and toke his swerde in his hande, and beganne to deffende ¹⁶ well hys bones / And whan Rycharde sawe his broder Alarde a fote, he torned towarde hym for to come helpe and socoure hym / And Aymon and his folke came there for to take hym. Soo beganne the bataylle ²⁰ yet agen more cruell than it hadde be afore. And wyte that Alarde sholde have ben taken there / yf it had not ben the noble and worthy knyghte Reynawde that came to helpe hym. And whan he was come ²⁴ there, he smote Bayarde wyth his spores / and wente in to the grettest preesse / soo that he overthrewe Aymon his fader down to the erthe / and after, he sayd to hym, 'Fader, ye have pledged my broder Alarde, ²⁸ for ye be now sette a foote as he is' / Thenne was Aymon sore angry, that he loste almoste his wyttes / And Reynawde sette his hande to his swerde / and beganne for to departe the preesse in such a wyse / ³² that he broughte his brother Alarde oute of the preesse. And after sayd to hym, 'Fayre brother, lepe behynde me ²vpon Bayarde;² for to abyde here ony

The four sons flee towards the mountains, followed by Aymon.

Reynawde determines to defend the mountain.

Alarde is unhorsed.

Richard saves his brother Alarde from the folk of Aymon.

Reynawde overthrows his father Aymon,

and brings Alarde out of the press and puts him on Bayard.

¹ Fol. G. iv. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. f. iv.

lenger, it were foly' / Whan Alarde vnderstode ¹his
 brother Reynawde, he was ryght glad, for he was so
 very that he myghte no more / and soo he mounted
 4 vpon bayarde behinde hys brother Reynawde. And
 whan Bayarde wyst hymselfe lade wyth two knyghtes,
 he strengthed hym selfe so strongly / that it semed to
 Reynawde that he was more ioyouse ²& more mery² than
 8 he had be of all the daye / Now wyt it, that Reynawde
 made fouer ioustes vpon his horse bayarde, wyth his
 brother Alarde behynde hym. Wherof he slewe foure
 knyghtes ²of the folke of Charlemagne, that were come
 12 wyth his fader Aymon / And all thus Reynawde toke
 Alarde oute of his enemyes handes, mawgre theyr
 teeth, and bare hym selfe ryght worthily the same
 daye / as here after ye shall mow more playnly vnder-
 16 stande.²

He slays four
 knyghts of Charle-
 magne,

Now ben the foure sones of Aymon recreaunte &
 almost very / but onely Reynawde, that never
 was the weker for no thyng that he dyd in armes /
 20 For as he went, he torded hym selfe at every pas that
 he made, and rebuked & kepte his enemyes abacke wyth
 his harde strokes that he gaaff to theym / soo that his
 folke wente afore hym all atte ther ease and leyser /
 24 And whan he sawe that his folke were well ferre from
 theyr enemyes / he spored bayarde, and cam to his
 folke, hys brother Alarde behynde hym, as lightly as
 bayarde had be wythoute ony bridyll, and no saddle
 28 vpon hym / for this horse was suche *that* he was never
 very / And thus as Reynawde wente awaye, than cam
 and followed after hym Esmenfray / that was one of
 the most worthy knyghtes of Charlemagn, and was
 32 vpon a horse ryght good and blacke, that Charlemagne
 had gyven to hym / And whan he was nygh Reynawde,
 he cryed to theym, 'Soo helpe me god,³ ye ben deed or

and keeps his
 enemies back,
 while his own
 men retreat.

Esmenfray fol-
 lows after Rey-
 nawde.

¹ Fol. G. iv. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. f. iv.

³ gloutons, F. orig. f. v. back.

Reynawde slays
him,

and gives his
horse to Alarde.

Alarde begins the
battle again,

and twenty of the
knights of Aymon
are slain.

A little river saves
the four sons from
the folk of
Aymon.

taken surely / I shall bryng you to Charlemagne' / And
anone wente and smote Reynawd¹ in his sheelde /
Wherof Reynawde was moche angry; and Reynawde
smote hym agen in suche a wyse, & wyth so grete a⁴
strengthe / that nether for his sheelde nor for his goode
armures of stele, he was not kepte / but that Reynawde
overthrowe hym sterke deed to the grounde / And
whan this knyghte was deed / Reynawde toke his⁸
horse by the bridyll, & sayd to Alarde his broder,
'Holde, fayr broder, lighte vpon this blacke horse,
whiche is good / for I gyve hym to you' /

And whan Alarde sawe the fayr present that his¹²
brother Reynawde had doon to hym / he was as
glad of y^e same as thoughe he had wonne Parys / And
thenne he made none other taryeng, but that / he
lighted down from bayarde, and mounted vpon² Esmen-¹⁶
frays blacke horse, that hys broder had gyven hym /
and smote hym wyth the spores, & wente & iousted
agenste a knyghte of his faders folk that was called
Anfray, so harde that he overthrewe hym deed to²⁰
therthe. And shortly to speke, after that Alarde was
in thys wyse sette agen on horsebacke, began the
batayll of a freshe, sore harde & fell, in soo moche that
at that owre were slayne XX of the best knyghtes that²⁴
Aymon had wyth hym. Whan Aymon sawe this, he
was sore angry for it, and cryed to his folke, 'Ha
lordes, yf they scape you, I shall never have ioie / for
they have slayne Esmenfray, the good knyght that kyng²⁸
Charlemagne had gyven to me.' / Whan the folke of
Aymon understode these wordes, and the wyll of their
lorde / thenne they dyd renne vpon Alarde so moche,
that they made hym to leve the place by force. And yf³²
it had not be the passage of a lityll ryver, that eased &
holpe theym gretly, Reynawde & his brethern had had
moche to doo. But I telle you wythout fawte, that

¹ Fol. G. v. ² le moreau, F. orig. f. v.

Reynawde & his brethern made so grete occysion
of the folk of their fader, *that* it was pyte for to
¹ beholde, for there deyed well of theym XXV at the
⁴ passage of *the* ryver; and yf reynawde had had wyth
hym a L knyghtes more than he had at the passage /
he sholde have dyscomfyted his fader & all his folke /
but for fawte of men, Reynawde must forsake *the* place,
⁸ & myght not save wyth hym but XIIIII knyghtes of
his owne / Now see how sorowfull² was *the* batayll / for
of V hundred knyghtes that Reynawde had wyth hym
there / abode wyth hym alyve but XIIIII / and ye may
¹² wel wye that the olde Aymon had dommagd his
children right sore / but that they passed over the
ryver. For as it is sayd / they had lost all theyr men,
wherof they were full sory & wrothe. /

Reynawde loses
all but fourteen
knights in the
battle.

¹⁶ **N**ow hath Reynawde so fewe folke, that he wote no
more what to do / but he myght not doo³ therto.
Wherof the teeres fell down contynuelly from his eyen /
and in lyke wyse wepte Aymon hys fader at *that* other
²⁰ side, as thistory doth tell. And whan he had wepte
ynough / he sayd in this maner / 'Ha, fair sone, prue
and worthy, how sory am I / for I am thocccasion of
your harme & ⁴ dommage / Now shall ye all goo as
²⁴ exyled / for ye have noughte to lyve vpon, & I can
not helpe you by ony wyse / Wherof I ensure you I
am gretly dysplayed⁵ & sory for it.⁵ The devyll take
his soule that first began the striff! & soo shall he.'
²⁸ Whan he had made his mone & lamentacyons longe
ynough, he made incontynent all the deed bodyes to
be taken for to be buried / And they that were hurte /
he made to be brought wyth hym as well as he coude /
³² And made the body of Esmenfray to be put vpon
a litter / & toke on his way towarde Ardeyne / where
he bode but a nyght; and in the mornyng he made

Aymon and Rey-
nawde both grieve
at the loss of their
men.

Aymon takes the
body of Esmen-
fray with him to
Paris.

¹ Fol. G, v. back. ² et piteuse, F. orig. f. v. ³ add.
⁴ grant, F. orig. f. v. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. f. v.

the litter to be borne vpon two¹ horses, & went agen to Paris, & cam afore Charlemagn & said to hym / ‘Sir, whan I wente now late towarde my countrey,² wyte that as I was ³on my waye, I fonde my children / and ⁴fyve hundred knyghtes wyth theym in the forest of Ardeyn, and ⁵for thacqytauunse of myn othe,⁵ I dyd sende to theym my dyffyaunce / and wolde have taken theym / for to have brought theym to you as prysoners / ⁸but I myghte not / for they ben sore doubted / And that I assaylled theym, it hath cost me sore dere / for thei have borne vnto me soo grete harme & dompage that it cannot be estemed ; and I slewe all theyr folke ¹²excepte XII⁶ persones, that ben scaped wyth theym / but they have slayne your knyghte Esmenfray, but at the last they wente awaye dyscomfyted ⁵and overthrowen⁵ / And they sholde have ben taken, if it had ¹⁶not be a ryver that they passed over / wherby they were saved’ / Whan Charlemagn vnderstode these wordes / he was ryght sore an angred / soo moche that he lost almoste his wyte. And thenne he sayd to olde Aymon ²⁰in angre / ‘By god, Aymon, ye escuse yourselfe falsly / for never raven ete his yonge byrdes / To a nother ye shall make this to beleve, but not to me.’ Whan the olde Aymon vnderstode the kyng that speke thus, he ²⁴sayd to hym / ‘Syr Emperour, wyte that I do telle you is trouthe / and I doo shewe it to the ende that my trouthe be knowen / & for none other cause / Soo bryng afore me your reliques ⁵& hallowes,⁵ that I shall ²⁸swere vpon the sayntes that ben in hevyn / that it was as I have recounted & sayd to you / and yf it playse you, ye shall beleve me / and yf ye wille not / ye maye chuse therof’ / ‘Aymon,’ sayd Charlemagne, ‘I knowe ³²

He gives the King an account of the battle.

Charlemagne will not believe that Aymon fought against his own sons.

¹ deux mulletz. F. orig. f. vi. back.

² par vostre commandement, F. orig. f. vi. back.

³ Fol. G. vi. ⁴ a tout cent, F. orig. f. vi. back.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted. F. orig. f. vi. back.

⁶ XIII. F. orig.

well your hert, for yf it went all at your wyll, your
 sones sholde be lordes of all fraunce / and of all my
 empyre' / 'Sire,' sayd amon, 'ye be wroth of som other
 4 thynge, wherof I may not do therto; and yf ye have
 any knyght in your courte that wyll make good this
 that it playse you for to saye / I shall prove it on hym,
 wyth my body, *that* he lieth falsely. But ever¹more
 8 ye have be suche, that ye never loved a true knyghte /
 but flaterers and lyers, wherof many evylles been
 happed, & shall happe' / And thenne Aymon came
 down from the palays, and lighted vppon his horse
 12 and wente agen to his countrey / Wythout ony leve
 that he toke of the kyng. And he rood soo longe oo
 daye after a nother, that he came to Ardeyne / And
 there he fonde the duchesse his wyff, that came agenste
 16 hym, and receyved hym wyth a glad chere / and asked
 hym how he had doon.

Charlemagne is
 angry with
 Aymon,

who leaves the
 palace and goes to
 his own country.

Thenne sayd the duke Aymon / 'Full evyll have I
 doon / For I founde my foure sones in the wood of
 20 Ardeyne / and soo I assaylled theym cruelly / Wenying
 to me for to have taken theym / whiche I coulde not
 doo / but I slewe and dyscomfyted all theyr folke /
 And they have doon to me soo grete harme of my
 24 folke / and soo many they have slayne of theym, that
 I knowe not the numbere. And I telle you for veraye
 certeyn, but yf it had not ben the prowes and grete
 worthynes of oure sone Reynawde / I had taken
 28 Alarde / For my men had slayne his horse / and had
 broughte hym so lowe that he myghte no more goo /
 But reynawde his broder came vpon us, and brake vs
 so scre that he broughte Alarde out of the preese,
 32 mawgre us and our folke, and made hym sitte behynde
 hym vpon Bayarde / And I telle you *that* Reynawde
 fought soo sore, that never lyon nor noo bore foughte
 soo strongly agenste ony other best / as he dyde fyghte

Aymon tells his
 wife how he at-
 tacked his sons,

and nearly cap-
 tured Alard,

but the prowes
 of Reynawde
 delivered him,

¹ Fol. G. vi. back.

and how Esmen-
fray was slain.

agenst our men / for at everi paas that he made
forwarde, he torded hymself agenst vs wyth Alarde
behynde hym, *that* made vs so gretly abashed that we
myght not bere nor abyde his grete strokes / & at this 4
tornyng *that* he thus made / he slewe Esmenfray, a
knyght of Charlemagnes, whiche he loved moche ;
& whan he had slayn hym, he toke his horse, & gaaf
hym to ¹alarde, and made hym to goo doun fro Bayarde / 8
and lighted a none vpon the horse of Esmenfray.
And thus they wente from vs, wolde we or not / And
I wente agen to Parys towarde Charlemagne / and
shewed to hym / how the thyng was com / and 12
how Esmenfray was slayne / Wherof I trowed not to
have hadde blame ; but he blamed me ryght gretly for
it. But sith that, he is my hevvy lorde, wythoute a
lawfull cause / I shall make hym wrothe and sory 16
afore sxx² monethes com atte an ende.'

The duchess
blames Aymon
for having fought
against their own
sons.

'**Y**e have doon evyll,' sayd the lady / 'that ye have
thus sore dommagd oure chylidren. Ye sholde
deffende theym agenste all men / and ye doo to theym 20
the worste that ye canne! be they not your sones
naturell, commen of your owne flesshe? For sooth, my
lorde, ye ought well to bere yourselfe better towarde
theym than ye doo / for never soo ryche a bourdeyne 24
was borne in the wombe of a lady: blessed be the
hour that they were begoten & norysshed / And soo
helpe me god, my lorde, as I wolde that your chylidren
and myn hadde taken you prysoner / to the ende that 28
ye sholde yelde to theym agayne all that they have
lost by you / And I thanke god ryght highli that
Charlemagne is wrothe wyth you / for evyll to doo
maye noo goode come of. Ye assaylled your chylidren 32
agenst god and agenst all ryghtwysness / And yf harme
is come to you therfore / thanked be god' / Thenne
sayd Aymon, 'Lady, you saye me ryght, for I have

¹ Fol. G. vii.

² six F. orig.

doun grete wrong / And I promytte you that I never
 dyde thyng / wherof I repente me so sore, as I doo of
 this / ¹But truste me, I shall kepe me a nother tyme to

The Duke owns
 he has done
 wrong,
 and repents of his
 conduct.

4 doo theym any harme' /

But here leveh the historye to speke of Charle-
 magne and of the duke Aymon, & of the duchesse
 his wyff / and retorneth to speke of Reynawde and of
 8 his bredern / that are in the wodes of Ardeyne.²

Here the history
 leaves Aymon to
 speak of Rey-
 nawde and his
 brethren.

CHAPTER IV.

³How after that the olde Aymon hadde dys-
 comfyted his chyldren / They wente and
 dwelled in the depeste of the foreste of
 12 Ardeyne soo longe that they were all
 countrefayte blacke and roughe as bestes,
 for the grete hongre that they had endured.
 After they went to Ardeyne to see their
 16 moder, that fested ⁴and chered⁴ theym
 gretly / and gaaf to theym soo grete goode
 that they mighte well enterteyne theymselwe
⁴and their astate thervpon⁴ agenst Charle-
 20 magn / And how Mawgys their cosin
 arryved whan they wolde departe, which
 wente wyth theym in to the royame of
 Gascoyn wyth fyve huzdred knyghtes /
 24 And of the sorowe that their lady modre
 made atte their departyng.

Capytulum IIII.

Ine this party the tale sayth / that after Reynaude
 28 had slayn Esmenfray, & gyven his horse to his

¹ mais je vous prometz ma chiere Dame, F. orig. f. vii. back.

² en Ardeyne, F. orig. F. vii. back.

³ Fol. G. vii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

The sons pass the river, and go into the forest of Arden.

They are in great distress for want of food, and dare not go into towns or castles for victuals.

All their folk die except Reynawde and his brethern.

Their horses nearly die of hunger, except Bayarde, who thrives on roots.

broder Alarde, they passed over the ryver, & wente in to the forest of Ardeyn, sore depe in it, by cause they wolde not be aperceyved. And whan they had ben there a lityll while, they began to kepe the wayes / and 4
 1all they that cam foreby theym, & that bare ony vytaylles, they were dystressed by theym,¹ and therof they lived / for they durst not goo to no townes nor to castelles for to bye ony vitayles; and therefore they 8
 suffred grete nede & grete disease, for thei hadde nother mete nor drinke / but water. For the most parte they ete flesshe withoute ony brede / And knowe, that for cause of this grete suffraunse that they endured 12
 thus, and also of the grete colde that they had for by cause of the snowes that were there, theyr folke began to dye / And abode nomoo lyve, but Reynawde and his thre brethern. And this was by cause of the grete 16
 strengthe that was in their bodyes. /

For noo travaylle myghte not hynder theym / ²And wyte, that they hadde but eche of theym foure an horse / that is to wyte, Bayarde and the thre other / 20
 But they have nother ootes nor other corne for to gyve theym / ³but they eete onoly suche as they myghte fynde in the foreste, of rotes and leves.³ And for this cause theyr horses were so lene, that wyth peyne myghte 24
 they stonde / sauff Bayarde, that was fatte and in good plighte, for he coude better fede and lyve wyth rotes / than the other sholde have doon wyth heye and otes / And wyte it well, that the foure sones of Aymon lyved 28
 there this liffe soo longe, that every man that passed there as they were & kepte theym selfe / escaped not / but he was other slayne or dystressed ⁴of suche vytaylles as he hadde,⁴ soo that all the countrey aboute theym 32

¹ tous ceulx q portoient viures estoient destroussey, F. orig. f. vii.

² Fol. G. viii.

³⁻³ fors que de racines de ble, F. orig. F. vii.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

was sore wasted by theym that it was merveylle / And
atte the laste, the foure¹ knyghtes were soo sore apayred,

The sore plight of
the four knyghts,

4 knowe theym / For theyr harneys was all rousty, and
theyr sadylles and brydelles all roten, soo that they
hadde made theyr reynes wyth cordes / And theymselfe
were become all blacke. And it was no merveylle, for
8 they wered alwayes theyr cote of mayle all rousty vpon
theyr doubelettes / ²and hadde nother sherte nor
Iacket / but they were all roten.

whose harness
becomes rusty,

and they them-
selves all black.

12 **W**hat shall I telle you more? Wyte that Rey-
nawde was doubted and fered soo sore, that it
was merveylle / For nyghe there as Reynawde haunted,
was no man that durste abyde there / but onely wythin
the fortresses. For whan Reynawde was mounted vpon
16 Bayarde, and his thre brethern upon there other thre
horses / ³all theyr ryche & power was wyth theym /
and yet they wasted and dystroyed all the countrey all
aboute theym / And soo the foure powre knyghtes
20 were soo sore dysfygured / that who had seen theym
sholde not have knowe theym / For they were ⁴as
roughe as beres that ben famysshed, & were sore lene,
that every body had of it pyte.

They waste all the
country round
them,

and yet they are
nearly famished.

24 **A**nd whan Reynawde sawe hymselfe soo pooreli
arayed, he called to hym his bredern, and sayd /
'Lordes, I merveylle myselfe moche that we take not
some good counseyll what we have to doo; and me
28 semeth that we ben become yll / and that slougthe is
amonge vs. For yf we were suche as I trowed / we
sholde not suffre the martyrdome *that* we endure; and
that we have endured soo long agoo, now knowe I

Reynawde asks
counsel of his
brethren what
they shall do,

¹ omitted, F. orig.

² et aussi leurs auquectons estoient tous pourries, F. orig.
f. vii.

³ tout le monde les suqoit et si pastoient le pays, F. orig. f.
viii. back.

⁴ Fol. G. viii. back.

that we ben but lityll worthe, to have lette reste our
 enmyes as we have. But one thyng I consider / we
 have but fewe horses¹ and lityll harneys / and no
 money at all, and yet we ben in suche a plyght that 4
 we ben more like bestes than folke / Soo praye I you
 all in generall, that ye wille tell me what we oughte to
 doo for the best / for I telle you for veraye certeyn, that
 I had moche lever deye as a knyghte, than for to deye 8
 here for hunger and for dysease.'

and says he would rather die as a knight, than of hunger or disease in the forest.

Whan Alarde herde Reynawde speke thus, he
 sayd / 'Broder, soo helpe me god / It is long
 sith I dyde take hede to that ye saye now / but I fered 12
 me full sore to telle you therof, lest ye wolde have ben
 dysplaysed wyth me for it / but sith that ye have opened
 the wordes / yf ye wyll byleve me / I shall gyve you
 good counseyll as me seemeth / Syr, we have suffred 16
 here grete poverte a long tyme / & we maye not goo in
 to no countrey but we shall be take / For as ye knowe
 all the barons of fraunce / and namly,² our fader and
 all our kynsmen haten vs dedly. And yf ye wyll 20
 beleve me / we shall goo streyghte to Ardeyne, towarde
 our moder / for she shall not faylle vs; and there we
 shall sojourne a lityll / And whan we shall have
 sojourned / we shall take wyth vs som company, and 24
 shalle go serve some grete lorde / Where we ³shall get
 som goode. For ye be not suche a man but that ye
 shall yet ones have grete plente of goodes; for I knowe
 no man in erthe that of worthynes & of strengthe maye 28
 compare to you' / 'Broder,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye
 well and wysely, and I promyt you I shall doo soo' /
 Whan the two other knyghtes herde the counseylle
 that Alarde theyr breder had gyven to Reynawde / they 32
 began to saye / 'Broder Alarde, we knowe well that

Alard counsels him that they should go straight to their mother at Arden, and there sojourn a while.

Reynawde consents willingly,

¹ ne harnoys ne monnoye, F. orig. f. viii. back.

² specially.

³ Fol. H. i.

ye gyve goode counseyll ¹to our broder Reynawde¹ / and also the other
 Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'Sith that this counseyll two knights,
 semeth to you goode, we shall doo it to nyghte' /
 4 Soo moche abode the foure sones of Aymon; that the
 nyghte came. and whan it was come, they lighted on They depart that
 horsebacke, & put theymselfe to the waye soo well night,
 clothed & arrayed, as I have tolde you above, and in
 8 suche wyse that theyr flesshe was seen naked in many
 places of theyr bodyes / And so longe they rode by and ride on till
 nyghte & by daye, that they came there as they were they approach the
 borne, *that* was nyghe the cyte of Ardeyne / and whan city.
 12 they were soo nyghe the cyte that they myght well see
 it / they loked vpon it; and thenne they remembred
 the grete ryches wherfrom they were caste & banysshed /
 and of the grete poverte that they had suffred longe² /
 16 And as they approached nyghe the cyte, Reynawde
 sayd to his brethern, 'We have doon evyll that we Reynawde is
 have not taken surete of our fader, for ye knowe well sorry that they
 that he is soo cruell, that yf he maye take vs he shall have not taken
 20 yelde vs prysoners to Charlemagne.' 'Broder,' sayd surety of their
 Richarde, 'ye saye well; but my herte gyveth me not father.
 that our fader wolde doo as ye have sayd. And yf he
 so dyde, yet have I lever deye afore Ardeyne, than for
 24 grete dysease and hungre in the foreste. Late vs ryde
 surely, for I tell you that no body shall knowe vs.
 And of thother parte, yf we can sette our feete wythin
 Ardeyne / we shall be sauff ynough / for we be well
 28 beloved / and my lady, ³our moder, sholde never suffre
 that men doo to vs any harme ne dysplaysure.'
 'Certes, fayr brother,' ⁴sayd Reynawde,⁴ 'ye have
 sayd ryghte well and wysely / and moche ye
 32 have recomforte me. Now late vs ryde in a good
 hour.' And whan he had sayd thise wordes / they

¹⁻¹ a Reynault. F. orig.

² Ils sont tant dolent que peu sen faillit, quilz ne tomberent pasmez a terre. F. orig. f. viii.

³ Fol. H. i. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

Richard assures him that their lady mother will protect them.

They enter the
chief street of
Arden.

The people do
not know them,

and ask to what
country they
belong.

They reach the
palace,
and leave their
horses to three
knights, who
have lately joined
their company.

The sons enter
the hall,
where they find
no one to whom
they can speak.

The Duchess
comes from her
chamber,
but does not
recognise her
sons,

entred soone after wythin Ardeyne / and thei rode
thrughe the maysters strete, that they were not knowen
of noo body. And they went streyghte to the castell
wythoute ony taryeng / And wyte, that whan they 4
passed thurghe the stretes, the folke that behelde
theym marueylled moche of theym. For they wyst
not what folke they were, and sayd the one to
thother / 'See, what folke ben thyse / I trowe that they 8
ben not of our lawe / nor of our beleve' / Thenne they
asked theym / 'What ben ye, lordes, that are soo
countrefayt / are ye paynemes / or of what countrey
ben ye?' 'Syres,' answered Reynawde, 'ye enquere 12
over moche; see ye not what folke we ben.' And
whan they were com to the palays, they lighted doun a
fote / and toke theyr horses to kepe to ¹their knyghtes
that were com of late in their felawshyp / And thenne 16
the foure brethern wente vp to the hall, and met wyth
noo bodi / For the olde Aymon theyr fader was a
hawkyng vppon the ryver / and the duchesse ²theyr
moder² was in her chambre, where she was contynnely 20
pencyfull & sory by cause that she myghte not here
noo tydynges of her children. Whan the foure brethern
were entred wythin the hall, they fonde noo man to
whom they sholde speke / wherof they were sore 24
merveyllid /

And / they sette themselfe doun / the one here /
and the other there / And abode thus a longe
while that noo body ³[came] there / and whan they 28
hadde taryed longe ynough, [then]ne came the duchesse
theyr moder oute of her chambre, [and] she loked
a longe the halle, Where⁴ she saw her son[nes thus]³
coun⁵trefayte, whyche she knewe not / But merveyllid 32

¹ a troys cheualliers. F. orig. g. i. baek.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³⁻³ [] from ed. 1554 corrected, as there was a piece cut out
of Caxton.

⁴ et elle veoir, F. orig. g. i.

⁵ Fol. H. ii.

- herselfe gretly what folke they were / And whan
 Alarde sawe his lady moder com / he sayd to his broder
 Reynawde and to his other brethern, 'yonder is our
 4 moder that we sore desire for to see. Late vs goo agens
 her, yf it playse you / and tell her our grete penurye
 and our nede' / 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'we shall
 doo soo ; but we shall tary tyll she speke to vs or not.'¹
 8 And taryed thus the foure brethern tyll that theyr
 moder was com to theym. And whan she sawe theym
 so blacke and soo hidous / and pryncypally Reynawde,
 that was so grete & soo roughe, she toke soo grete fere
 12 of them that she wolde have goon agen in to her
 chambre / But anon she assured herselfe, and sayd to
 theym, 'god save you, lordes / What be you, ne of
 what nacyon / are ye crysten or paynymes / or folke *that*
 16 doth penaunce? Wyll ye not have some almesse, or
 some clothyng for to cover your body wyth / For I see
 ye have grete nede of it / and yf ye wyll have it, for
 goddys sake I shall gyve it you gladly, to the ende he
 20 have mercy on my children, And that wyll kepe theym
 from ylle combraunce and fro pareyll, For it is wele
 seven yeres that I dyd not see theym.' And whan the
 duchesse hadde sayd this, she toke so grete pyte to
 24 remembre her children that she beganne to wepe sore
 tenderly. And whan she hadde wepte a longe while,
 she sayd soo highe that her children vnderstode it,
 'Ha, good god! when shall the daye come that I shall
 28 see my chyldren / Alas, goode lorde, how fayne wolde
 I see theym! Was there e[ver²] lady that bare soo
 ryche a bourden as I have / And that [were²] of it soo
 dysecomforted as I am ?
 32 **A**nd whan Reynawde sawe his lady moder soo
 so[ro]w[ful]l and sory, He hadde of hit grete
 pyte / And [the] teeres began to come atte his

and is frightened
by their rough
appearance.

She asks them
whether they are
Christians or
Pagans,
and out of pity
offers them
clothing.

The Duchess
weeps when she
thinks of her
absent sons.

Reynawde has
so much pity for
her, that he
weeps.

¹ pour veoir se elle nous congnoistra ou non, F. orig. g. i.

² From ed. 1554. A piece cut out of the Caxton.

eyen / And wolde dyscovere ¹hymselfe / ²But whan
 the duchesse behelde well his visage and his byhavoyr /
 and maner² / her blode ranne vppe to her face / and
 hevered wythin her body / and beganne to shake full 4
 faste, soo that almoste she felle down in a swoune to
 the erthe, And was a grete while that she myghte not
 speke, her herte was soo close and soo sore pressed /
 and all her colour loste and goon / And whan she was 8
 come agen to herselfe, she dyde caste her sighte agayn
 vpon Reynawde, and knewe hym ryght well by a
 wounde that he hadde in his face, whiche was doon to
 hym of a fall / whan he was in his tendre age / Thenne 12
 she sayd to hym, as gladde as any moder may be,
 ‘Reynawde, my sone / whos peere is not amonge all
 the knyghtes of the worlde / How see I you soo sore
 appayred and chaunged? Where is goon your grete 16
 beaulte / Why, my sone, doo ye hyde you towarde me /
 that loveth you more than my selfe’ / And while that
 she sayd thyse wordes, she loked aboute her / and knewe
 her children / and anone she went towarde theym wyth 20
 her armes spred abrode³ / for to colle and kysse theym,
 sore wepyng for grete pyte that they were soo sore
 apayred of theyr beaulte. And soo longe she kyssed
 one and thenne a nother / that at laste she felle down 24
 in a swoune / And Reynawde toke her vp in his armes /
 where she abode a good while. And Reynawde and
 his bretherne ceassed not from weppyng, for grete
 pyte that they hadde of theyr moder. 28

And whan the duchesse was come agen to herselfe,
 she toke her chyldren, and made theym sitte
 down by her / And sayd to theym, ‘How is it that I
 see you thus poure and dysfygured? Why is it that 32
 ye have wyth you no knyghtes / nor none other com-
 pany / Where have ye ben, that have endured so grete

¹ Fol. H. ii. back. ²⁻² mais la duchesse le regarde, F. orig. g. i.

³ comme forcennée, F. orig. g. i.

The Duchess
recognises him
by a scar in his
face,

and embraces all
her children.

poverté and soo grete dysease' / ¹Whan ²the duchesse
 spake thus to her children, she dyd wepe styll sore
 tendrely / and fowndered all in teeres³ / holdyng her
⁴sone Reynawde bytwene her armes / and kyssed hym
 full swety / 'Lady,' sayd Reynawde, 'we have wyth
 vs but thre knyghtes, that kepe our horses yonder wyth-
 oute / For our fader hathe slayn all our knyghtes and
⁸all our folke. And also he sholde have slayne vs, if it
 hadde not be our lorde that kepte vs therfro thorough
 his pyte and mercy / Sore harde parentage dyd he
 shewe to vs, our naturell fader' / Whan the duchesse
¹²vnderstode thise wordes, she was ryght sory for it, And
 called to her one of her servauntes, and sayd to hym /
 'Goo and make my sones horses to be in to a good
 stable / And that they be well tended. And bryng
¹⁶hither the thre knyghtes that kepe the horses wythoute /
 For I wyll see theym.' 'madame,' sayd her squyer,
 'it shall be doon Incontynente' / And thenne he wente
 to the thre knyghtes / and sayd to theym that the
²⁰duchesse wolde see theym, Which incontynente dyde
 as the lady hadde commaunded, and cam vp to the
 palays, where as Reynawde taryed for theym. 'Lordes,'
 sayd the duchesse to theym, 'ye be ryght welcome' /
²⁴'Madame,' sayd the knyghtes, 'god gyve ³you goode
 lyffe and longe,³ and Ioye of your chilydren / For they
 ben the beste⁴ and the moste worthy of all the worlde' /
 This hangynge, came there a yoman / that sayd to the
²⁸duchesse / 'Madame, yf it playse you to sitte atte the
 table, the meete is redy.' The lady toke Reynawde and
 the other wyth her / and ledde theym to dyner, & made
 theym sitte down all afore her / And theyr thre knyghtes
³²⁵atte the lyfte syde of her⁵ / There made goode chere
 the foure sones of Aymon, and ete at theyr ease and atte

She weeps for
pity at her sons'
woeful plight.

Reynawde relates
to her how Duke
Aymon slew all
their folk.

The Duchess
sends for the
three knights
who wait outside,

and welcomes
them kindly.

A yeoman an-
nounces that the
dinner is ready,

the duchess leads
her sons to the
table,
and also the
three knights.

¹ Saiches que quant la duchesse, F. orig. g. ii. back.

² Fol. II. iii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ meilleurs du monde, F. orig. g. ii.

⁵⁻⁵ aupres d'elle, F. orig. g. ii.

theyr owne wyll / For it was longe syth that they hadde
 ony goode mele, Where they myghte take ¹theyr naturell
 foode ²atte theyr ease / And as they were atte the table,
 Thenne came theyr fader Aymon from hawkyng and ⁴
 huntynge / whiche hadde taken foure hertes and two
 wylde bores, ³and dyverse pertryches and feysauntes ³ /
 Whan Aymon sawe theym / he knewe theym not /
 and he sayd to the duchesse / ‘Lady, what are thyse ⁸
 folke that ben thus countrefayte’ / Whan the duchesse
 vnderstode her husbande, she was sore agaste / and
 beganne to wepe, and sayd / ‘Syre, thyse ben your
 chylidren and myn / that ye have traveylled so moche, ¹²
 and sore hunted as wylde bestes, The whiche have
 dwelled longe tyme in the foreste of Ardeyne⁴ / Where
 as they have ben sore tourned, as ye now maye see.
 Now are they come to me, by cause I am ryght gladd ¹⁶
 whan I see theym / For to you they ben not come, for
 they knowe well that ye love theym not. But I praye
 you for god, that for the love of me ye wyll lodge theym
 thys nyghte, For they shall departe to morowe erly. ²⁰
 And I wote not yf ever I shall see theym / wherfore of
 this I beseche you ryght humbly.’

Duke Aymon
 arrives from
 hawking and
 hunting,

and enquires of
 his wife who are
 these men.

The Duchess
 tells him they
 are his sons,

and implores
 him to lodge
 them that night.

Aymon, in great
 anger, curses his
 children because
 they have neither
 folk nor money.

Reynawde ex-
 cuses himself

Thenne whan Aymon vnderstode thyse wordes, he
 shoke all for angre, And tourned hymselfe to- ²⁴
 ward his sones / and made to theym evyll chere, and
 sayd to theym, ‘Glotton, goddys curse have you / ⁵For
 ye ben not worthe a strawe, For ye have nother folke
 nor money, nor noo prysoner that myghte paye to you ²⁸
 a grete havoyr.’ ‘Fader,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘by the
 feyth that I owe to you, yf your londe is in peas / the

¹ ung seule repas, F. orig. g. ii. ² Fol. H. iii. back.

³⁻³ omitted. le quil entra en sa salle et trouva ses enfans
 qui memgeoient, et la duchesse leur mere qui les servoit, F.
 orig. g. ii.

⁴ la grant forest la ou ilz sont aussi devenuz comme veoir
 pourres, F. orig. g. ii.

⁵ Car vous ne valles riens, et comme garcons de neant
 estes, F. orig. g. ii.

other ben not soo / For ye myghte goo ¹six score myles that ye sholde not fynde nother ryche man nor poure.

because of the state of the country,

4 **B**ut that they kepe theymselfe wythin fortresses and in castelles / But ye doo grete wronge for to doo vs the worst that ye canne; ye toke fyrste frome vs our goode castell of Mountenforde / And after that ye hadde assaylled vs in the ²wode of Ardeyne, and slewe 8 all oure folke / so that of ³fyve hundred knyghtes that I had, ye lefte a lyve with me but enlevyn / Wherof VIII ben deed, and thye thre that ye see here are abyden a lyve / Now beholde well, fader, and thynke 12 how ye bare your selfe towarde vs / But sith it is thus that ye oughte to vs noo goode wyll, and that ye maye not see vs, Make vs the hedes to be smytten of / And soo shall you be beloved of Charlemagne / And hated of 16 God / and of all men.'

and blames his father for his cruel treatment of them.

And whan the olde Aymon vnderstode Reynawde thus speke, he knewe well he sayd trouthe / and beganne to fyghte sore atte his herte / And thenne he 20 sayd to his children / 'Myschaunt, your ledernes and slouth hath overcomen you. Ye were never my chyl-dren / For if ye were suche as men wene / ye sholde not have suffred the grete poverte that ye have endured soo 24 longe / But ye shulde have goon wyne vpon your en-myes / for to mayntene your selfe honestly / and make good werre to Charlemagne thorough all his londe. But ye are becom myschaunte; and therefore I telle you 28 that ye gete noo thyng of me / Now thenne, voyde oute soone my palays, and ⁴goo begge where ye wyll atte a nother place.'⁴ 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye that / that an evyll and an vnkynde fader oughte to 32 saye / For I telle you for veraye certeyne, that we have slayne soo many theves & brygauntes that I canne not

The Duke tells his sons to depart, and beg their bread where they will.

¹ quatre vings lieux, F. orig.

² Fol. H. iv. ³ cent cheualliers, F. orig.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. g. iii.

number theym, Wherof I fele my selfe in grete synne /
But for god we requyre you that you, wyll helpe vs to
recovere our londes of Charlemagne.

And yf ye wyll not do so, gyve to vs of your goodes, 4
& we shall goo ferre from you' / 'I wyll not,'
sayd Aymon. 'Fader,' sayd Reynawde, 'here I see
well your evyll wyll. I and my bretherne have doon
soo moche, that we ben comen in to your place / that 8
we sholde fare the better for it ; but I see well¹ ye wyll
caste vs therfro wyth grete afray. And I swere to you,
by the feyth that I owe to my lady moder, that yf I
muste nedes departe fro you in suche a maner, ye shall 12
abye it full dere, yf ye cast vs thus oute of your londe.
For I have lever deye here by you / than to deye for
hungre / Syth that it maye be none other wyse.'

Reynawde's anger
is roused against
his father,

and he draws his
sword,

but Alard inter-
feres,

and begs him to
remember that
Aymon is their
lord.

Thenne whan Reynawde sawe that his fader was 16
soo harde herted agenst hym & his brethern / he
wexed red for angre / and began to chaung colour, and
drewe his swerde halfe oute of the sheeth / And whan
Alarde sawe his brother Reynawde chaunge colour, he 20
knewe well that he was wrothe / so ranne he & called
hym, sayng, 'ha, fayr brother / for goddys love, angre
not yourselfe so sore to our fader, for he is our lorde /
And therefore, where² it is ryghte or wronge, he maye 24
saye to vs as yt playseth hym / and we oughte to doo
nis commaundement / And yf he is cruell towarde vs /
we oughte to be humble & playsaunte³ towarde hym /
Soo kepe your selfe for goddys love that ye sette not 28
hande vpon hym / For it were agenst the commaunde-
ment of god' / 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'it lacketh
but lityll that I wexe madde all quycke / Whan I see
afore me hym that sholde helpe vs, defende & love vs 32
as his chyl dren, and gyve vs his good counseyll to vs /
and towarde all men. And he dooth all contrary the
same / He hath made peas wyth Charlemagne for

¹ Fol. II. iv. back. ² whether. ³ omitted, F. orig.

to dystroye and undoo vs / I saw never so cruell a
 man agenste his sones. For he chasseth & putteth vs
 away from hym full shamefully / as though we were
 4 strangers or sarrasins / I sholde not conne telle the
 harme and grete hurte that he hath doon to vs / nor
 the grete poverte that we have suffred for hym / I
 wolde never have doo so to hym / for rather I wolde
 8 have lete me be slayn all quyeke / But and yf I can
 ever go ¹from hens, I certyfyte you that I shall angre
 hym, and shall so waste his londe that it shall doo hym
 but lytyll prouffyte, soo that it shall be spoken of it
 12 perpetuelly.'

Reynawde
 threatens to waste
 all his father's
 land when he
 goes hence.

And whan Aymon herde Reynawde speke thus, his
 herte wexed softe, & began to wepe full sore /
 and sayd, 'Ha, god, how I am sory that I maye not
 16 enioye the goode that god hath gyven to me largely /
 there sholde be no man in the worlde soo happy as I
 were / yf my chyldren had theyr peas with kynge
 Charlemagne. For I am sure that the kynge Pyramus
 20 ²of Troye² had never better men to his chyldren, nor
 more valyaunte ²ne prue,² than I have. Ha, evyll herte,
 thou sholdest not take hede to none other agenst thy
 chyldren, But sholdest helpe theym & kepe theym
 24 agenste all men, wherfore I ought well to hate the /
 evyll herte; thou hast made me hate that I oughte to
 love as myn owne selfe' / and whan he had thus spoken
 to hymselfe / he sayd to Reynawde, 'Fayr sone, ye are
 28 ryght worthy and sage / For never Hector of Troye was
 worthe thou, ³Nor in all the worlde is not founde your
 matche, And therefore I oughte well to doo your wyll' /
 Whan the duke Aymon had sayd this worde, he spake
 32 ⁴to his wyff the duchesse, and sayd / 'Lady, I goo
 yonder wythout, for I wyll not be forsworn agenst the

The Duke relents
 when he hears his
 son's defiance,

and says he will
 go forth because
 of his vow to
 Charlemagne,

¹ Fol. H. v. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Il na cheuallier au monde qui te vaille, F. orig. G. iii.

⁴ a la duchesse, F. orig. g. iii.

but the Duchess may give to the sons all that they will take of his treasure.

kyng charlemagne. Ye have wythin golde & sylver ynough / and mani horses and moche harneys / palfreys & sommers / Now gyve to my chyldren all that they will take.' And whan he hadde sayd thus / he 4 toke his men wyth hym and wente his waye.

Reynawde thanks his father, and promises to go from Arden early next morning.

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'we oughte to thanke you moche of that ye have now sayd. And we shall goo hens to morowe erly ¹wyth goddys grace¹ / To the 8 ende that ye ben not evyll at ease; and yf it playse you, we shall ²abyde for thys nyghte for to comforte our moder, ³that hathe be so yll at ease for the love of vs³ / And I promytte you, fader, we sholde not have come 12 yet, but it had be for her sake' / 'Reinawde, fayr sone,' sayd the duk,⁴ 'you are full of grete wyt / wyte that whan berthelot⁵ was deed, I durst not shewe me afore the kyng Charlemagn / by cause he sayd he had lever 16 have lost the halfe of his royaume / & thretened me for to hange or brenne and dystroye all my londe / and I dyd so moche by the counseyll of my frendes, that I made myn a-poyntement, and that I was oute of all 20 blame / And ye have not considered the othes that Charlemagn made me doo agenst you / as agenste all other that helde wyth you / and I am sore dysplaysed of that I fonde you in the wodes of Ardeyn as I dyd / 24 But I was forced of myn honour to do as I dyd, for to be in peas wyth kyng Charlemagne / Your moder hath not forsworn you / & therefore she maye gyve you of our goodis at her wyll.' And whan the duke had sayd 28 thise wordes, he yssued oute of his palays, and wente to the woode.

Aymon excuses his conduct to his children, because of his fear of the King,

and issues out of his palace.

After whan the free duchesse herde that, that the duke Aymon gaaff her leve to doo wyth his 32 goodes at her wyll, she called her chyldren, and sayd

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig

² Fol. H. v. back.

³⁻³ pour lamour de nous a cause quelle nous auoit perduz, F. orig. G. iv. back.

⁴ aymon, F. orig.

⁵ artus, F. orig.

to them, 'Fayr chyldren, now be you sure, that sin
 your fader is¹ not wythin, ye shall be well tended vpon,
 and shall have all the chere that I can doo to you'² /
 4 And thenne she dyde doo make the bayns redy, and
 made them all to bayne honestly / And wyte, that in
 theyr bayne were many a swete herbe / And whan they
 were well elene, the good lady³ made bryng lynnyn &
 8 other clothes for to change, & to eche of them a man-
 telle of fyne scarlet furred with hermyns / and whan
 she had them well apareilled / she led them in a
 chambre where their⁴ faders tresour was, and shewed it
 12 to her chyldren. Whan reynaud sawe so riche⁵ a tresur /
 he began to laughe, & sayd, 'lady moder, gramercy of
 so fayre a yefte as here is / For it mystreth me well' /
 & thenne he toke of that tresour at hys wyll. And
 16 incontynente he sent messagers thoroughe all the coun-
 trey, for to gete hym sawdours² of the beste men of
 werre.² Wherof many one cam gladly to hym / the
 whiche Reynawde payed for an hole yere. What shall
 20 I tell you more? Reynawde and hys brethern laye that
 nyghte wythin the castell of ther sayd fader. And the
 nexste mornynge after, or it was daye, they departed. &
 had wyth them V hundred men well horsed² & well
 24 arayed² / And whan Reynawde and his brethern had
 take leve of theyr lady moder the duchesse, she sayd
 to them / 'Fayr sones, I wyll that ye draw towarde
 Spayn, for it is a plentuouse countrey.' And as they
 28 wolde have departed / thenne cam Mawgis theyr cosyn,
 that cam oute of Fraunce, Where he had ben long tyme.

After whan Mawgys was lighted / from his horse,
 he ranne to Reynawde / his armes spred abroad,
 32 and began to kysse hym / and⁶ whan he had soo doon /

The Duchess
 attends to the
 comfort of her
 sons,

and clothes them
 in rich apparel.

Reynawde takes
 at his will of the
 rich treasure of
 his father,
 and sends mes-
 sengers through
 the country to
 procure him
 soldiers.

As the Sons are
 departing,
 Mawgis arrives,

¹ est hors de seans, F. orig. ² omitted, F. orig.

³ leur mere, F. orig. g. vii. baek.

⁴ ou le tresoir estoif, et le monstrases enfans car pour
 aultre nestoit il amasse, F. orig. g. iv. ⁵ Fol. H. vi.

⁶ quant il eut baise il basse ses aultre freres, F. orig. g. iv.

he kyssed his other thre brethern¹ / and thenne he sayd
to theym / 'Ha, fayr cosyns, I am ryght glad to see
you / And thanked be our lorde that he hath broughte
me in to this coste.' 'Cosin,' sayd Reynawde, 'where
4 have you ben so longe, that we had never tydynges of
yçu' / 'Cosyn,' sayd Mawgys, 'I come from the grete
eyte of Parys, Where I have stolen thre horses laden
wyth golde; and here they ben / the whiche Charle- 8
magne wende for to have hydde well. And I gyve
you the halfe of it / for I myghte not bestowe theym
better than to you' / 'Cosin,' sayd Reynawde, 'god
thanke you.' And whan he had sayd soo ¹he wente 12
oute of Ardeyne wyth his bretherne & his folke / and
fonde his fader, *that* cam fro *the* wode; & whan
Reynawde sawe his fader, he made hym reverence, &
bowed hymself to hym; & aymon ²sayd to theym / 16
'fayr sones, now ben ye well garnysed & honestly
arrayed. I praye you that ye doo soo in Fraunce /
that men speke of your prowes / And ye, my other
children / I commaunde you that ye obeye Reynawde / 20
and kepe hym above all thyng. For as longe as he shall
lyve, ye oughte not to be a ferde of noo harme.'

Thenne sayd Alarde, 'syre, we shall doo your com-
maundement / and we praye you for goddys love 24
³*that* ye wyll be evermore our good fader' / 'I wyll
be soo, my chyldren,' ⁴sayd Aymon.⁴ And thenne
Reynawde toke leve of his fader and of his moder,
⁴*that* conveyd theym oute of the towne.⁴ But the good 28
lady fell down in a swoune whan she sawe departe her
chyldren. And all the towne began to make suche a
sorowe that it was grete pyte⁵ / And Reynawde & his

and relates how
he has stolen
three horses laden
with gold from
Charlemagne,
half of which he
presents to
Reynawde.

The Sons, with
Mawgis, depart
from Arden,
and find Aymon
coming from the
wood.

They take leave
of their father
and mother,

to the great
sorrow of all the
people.

¹ il monte a cheval et sortit hors dardeyne, F. orig. g. iv.

² Fol. H. vi. back.

³ que nous vous soions pour recommaudez, F. orig. g. iv.

⁴⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

⁵ a veoir, F. orig. g. v. back.

brethern wente on theyr waye / ¹And whan the duchesse
 cam to herselfe ¹/ and sawe heyr chyldren departe / She
 began to saye, 'Ha, poure herte myn! Why brekest
 4 not thou / alas, yf I hadde deyed longe agoo, my soule
 were the better at ease / I am not a moder / but a
 stepmoder / ²Alas, I see my ryche burden go to exyle /
 and yet I can not wythholde theym or helpe theym
 8 *that* they abyde wyth me' / Thus as the duchesse made
 her mone to her wymen / Aymon cam & toke her
 bytwene his armes, and recomforted her / and sayd to
 her / 'Lady, dyscomforte not yourselfe so moche, for
 12 my hert gyveth me that we shall yet see theym in
 grete prosperyte & honour / and grete Ioye & gladenes
 ye shall ones have of theym in short tyme.' Shortly
 to speke, the good Aymon recomforted so moche the
 16 duchesse *that* she left her sorowe & wente agen to the
 palays wyth the duk Aymon. I leve here to speke of
 the duk Aymon and of the duchesse hys wyf, & retourne
 to speke of Reynawde & of hys brethern.³

The Duchess grieves at the loss of her children,

but is comforted by the Duke.

20 CHAPTER V.

How after that reynawde, his brethern, &
 his cosin maugys ⁴were departed oute of
 Dordoune from theyr moder, For to seke
 24 their adventure, ⁵they roode soo longe that
 they came in to the royaume of Gascoyn /
 ¶ And how by the waye thei made grete
 harme ⁶to the royaume of Fraunce⁶ / And
 28 how the kynge of Gascoyn retheyned theym
 in his servyse.⁷ ¶ Capitul[*u*]m V.

¹⁻¹ vif ses filz qui sen aloient, elle commence a crier et a dire, F. orig. g. v. back. ² quant je voy, F. orig.

³ les hardiz cheualliers, F. orig. g. v. back.

⁴ Fol. H. vii.

⁵ Ils alerent tout par leur journees, F. orig. g. v. back.

⁶⁻⁶ en france, F. orig. ⁷ moult doucement, F. orig.

Now sayth the tale, that after that Reynawde,
 Alarde, Guycharde, and Rycharde, and Mawgys
 theyr eosyn, were yssued oute of Ardeyn wyth all theyr
 fellowshyp, that was well of VI hundred men / Well 4
 mounted and arrayed / they wente and passed thorughe
 Byheuse, and wasted all Fraunce / ¹And passed thorughe
 the countre of Gastynoy's / and so forthe to Orleauce /
 where they wente over the ryver of Loyre ¹ / And wasted 8
 all the londe vnto Poyters / And whan they were come
 to Poyters / they herde tydynges of the kyng Yon of
 Gascoyn, that was a puyssaunte prynee, was assaylled
 of *the* sarrasins / And whan Mawgys herde thyse 12
 wordes, he cam to Reynawde, and said to hym /
 'Cosin, the kyng Yon of gascoyn is a prynee of grete
 renomnee and of grete power / goo we to hym & serve
 hym, and suche servyse we shall mowe doo to hym / 16
²that Charlemagne shall not mow hynder vs by noo
 wayes' / 'Cosyn,' sayd Reynawde, 'lete vs themne go
 there, sin that it semeth to you good' / And whan they
 were hereto accorded, they toke theyr waye towarde 20
 Gascoyn / and rode so longe by theyr iourneys that
 they cam to Bordews, a fayr cyte / Where they fonde
 kyng Yon wyth a grete company of knyghtes / and
 whan they were donn from ther horses, Reynawde sayd 24
 to his folke, 'go we lodge vs' / 'cosin,' sayd mawgys,
 'we shall not do so, but we shall speke streight wyth
 kyng yon; & yf he reteyneth vs, in a good hour be
 it; & if he do not so / we shall serve borgoyns ³*the* 28
 sarrasin, whiche is ryght prue & sage, & hath all redy
 conquested almoste all *the* londe of kyng Yon / as
 Tholouse, Montpellier, Lyetary, and saynt Gyle Tara-
 soon / & Arles; & yf we faylle here / we shall not 32
 faylle there' / 'Cosin,' sayd Reynawde, 'you speke

The Sons, with
 Mawgis and vi.
 hundred men,
 waste all France;

and come to
 Poitiers,
 where they hear
 now King John is
 assailed by the
 Saracens.

Mawgis advises
 Reynawde to join
 King John against
 his enemies;

they therefore
 hasten to Bor-
 deaux,
 where they find
 the King.

¹⁻¹ et passerent parmy gastinois et orleans et passerent la riviere de loyre. F. orig.

² que charlemaigne ne nous prendra jamais, F. orig. g. v.

³ Fol. H. vii, back.

well and wysely, and we shall do as ye have sayd.
 And thenne Reynawde toke wyth hym L. knyghtes,
 and his thre brethern, and Mawgys; and toke of his
 4 armes, and clothed hym selfe honestly & rychely /
 And whan he was well arrayed / he wente to kyng
 Yons courte vpon a lytyll nagge. And whan he rode
 thorughe Bordews, all the peple ranne for to see hym /
 8 by cause he was soo grete and soo well made / and soo
 fayr wyth all, and also his thre brethern, but they
 were not all eveyn soo grete. And whan they were
 come to the gate ¹of the kynges place,¹ Reynawde
 12 lighted on foote / and wente vp to the palays, and
 founde the kyng atte the counseyll / ²And whan the
 stywarde sawe Reynawde soo fayr a man / and soo
 goodly, and soo many folke wyth hym / he came hym
 16 agenste, and sayd to hym, 'My lorde, ye be ryght
 welcom.' And Reynawde answered to hym / 'god
 gyve you good adventure! Now telle, and playse you,
 where is the kyng?' / 'My lorde,' sayd the stywarde /
 20 'he holdeth now his counseyll / For Bourgons the
 sarasyn is entred in hys londe, and hath doon to hym
 grete harm / For he hath brente townes and castelles,
 abbeyes, hospytalles, ¹chirehes¹ / and all other³ monas-
 24 teryes / and now he is parforce wythin Tholouse ¹wyth
 a grete puyssaunce.'¹ 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde / 'This
 borgoyns ys of grete power as me semeth, and after
 that men sayen.' Thus as Reynawde and the stywarde
 28 spake togyder, came kyng You ¹oute of the counseyll
 chambre.¹ And whan Reynawde sawe hym⁴ / he toke
 his brethern & his cosin mawgys wyth hym, & went
 ageust the kyng, whiche Reynawde salued ⁵ryght
 32 humbly, and sayd to hym / 'Syr, I am com to you fro
 a ferre londe⁶ wyth my thre brethern & my cosin, that

The Sons and
 Mawgis ride to
 the palace;

all the people of
 Bordeaux marvel
 at the beauty of
 Reynawde.

The steward of
 the palace wel-
 comes Reynawde
 gladly;

they talk until
 the arrival of
 King Joim from
 the counsel
 chamber.

Reynawde salutes
 the King,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² mais, F. orig. g. v. ³ orther, Text orig.

⁴ il se dresse et prent ses freres, F. orig. g. vi. back.

⁵ Fol. H. viii.

⁶ et suis cheualliers moy et mes freres, F. orig.

and offers him
the services of
his folk.

King John
receives his offer
graciously,

but enquires
whose folk they
are.

Reynawde reveals
to him their
history,

and how Charle-
magne had cast
them out of
France,

and how they
seek for a lord
whom they can
serve.

The King rejoices
when he hears
they are the sons
of Aymon,

ye see here, for to doo you servyse, and our folke, yf it
playse you; and we shall serve you in suche a maner
that we wyll have nothyng of you. But & our
servyse be agreable vnto you, Ye shall promyse me as 4
1 a kyng, yf it be your playsur¹ / that ye shall be my
warrault & helpe agenst all other.' 'Good frende,'
sayd the kyng Yon, 'ye be ryght welcom to me / And
where ye saye ye be come for to serve me / ²I thanke 8
you for it wyth all my hert² / but I wyll fyrst knowe
what folke ye ben. For ye myghte be suche that I
sholde defende you, or that I sholde be your enmye.'
'Syr,' sayd Reynaude, 'syth that it playse you to 12
knowe what we ben / I shall tell it to you / Wyte that
my name is Reynawde, and am sone eldest to the duk
Aymon of Ardeyn, and thise thre knyghtes ben my
bredern: here is Alarde, Guycharde, & Rycharde³ / 16
and here is Mawgis our cosin, one of the beste
knyghtes of the worlde, & most wyse. Charlemagne
hath caste vs out of Fraunce / and hath dysherytet
vs / And our fader hath dysavowed vs for the love of 20
hym / and for this cause, sir, we goo seke about after
a lorde that is good & true, that sholde helpe vs to
deffende agenst Charlemagne / and we shall serve hym
well & truly.' 24

Whan kyng Yon herde this *that* Reynawde sayd /
he was ryght gladde of it that they were the
foure sones of Aymon, the beste knyghtes of all the
worlde, & mooste doubted / and Mawgys, that was the 28
moost subtyll of the worlde / that were com for to
serve hym. He wolde not have been so gladde yf
men hadde gyven to hym alle Parys; For he wyste that
yf ever he sholde fynyshe his werre / It sholde be by 32
theyr meane / Thenne he loked vppe towarde heven /

1-1 comme roy que vous etes, F. orig.

2-2 Je vous mercie humblement, F. orig.

3 le combactant, F. orig. g. vi. back.

And thanked our lorde of the comyng of thyse¹ worthy
 knyghtes. And thenne he sayd to theym, 'Lordes, ye
 are reteyned of me / For ye ben not the men that
 4 ought to be refused : I promitte you truly, and in feyth
 of a kynge / that I shall defende you wyth all my
 power agenste all men. Ye are dyssheryted, and I also ;
 therefore it is well rayson that we be togyder, and that
 8 the one helpe the other of all his power.' 'Syr,' sayd
 Reynawde, 'we thanke you a thousande tymes / & I
 promyse you that we shall deye in your servyse, or
 elles your londe shall be recovered agayne' / The kyng
 12 called his stywarde,² and sayd to hym, and commaunded²
 that Reynawde & his felawshyp sholde be well lodged.
 Incontynente the stywarde toke Reynawde by the
 hande, and fulfilled the commaundement of the kynge.
 16 Now are the³ foure³ sones of Aymon acoynted wyth the
 kynge Yon³ of Gascoyn³ / whiche wente to have doo
 well / but he repented hym soone after / ¶ But here
 we leve to speke of kyng Yon⁴ / and of the foure sones
 20 of Aymon / and retorne to speke of Burgoyns, that
 were at Tholouse, the whiche he had take by force of
 armes.

and willingly
 retains them in
 his service.

Reynawde thanks
 him,
 and promises to
 serve him well.

The Sons are
 therefore well
 lodged by the
 King.

CHAPTER VI.

¶ How Reynawde / his bredern, & Mawgys,
 24 dystroyed Borgons the sarasin / that had
 dystroyed the royame of Gascoyn, & chassed
 the kyng Yon vnto Bordews vpon Gyronde,
 that durste not goo thens for feere of the
 28 sarasins / And after, how kyng Yon gaaff
 my lady Clare, his suster, to Reynawde, for
 to be hys wyff, for the grete servyse that

¹ Fol. H. viii. back.
³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

²⁻² et luy commanda, F. orig.

⁴ de gascongne, F. orig. g. vi.

he hadde doon to hym / And how he made
for hym the castell of Mountawban.

¶ Capytulum VI.

In this party showeth the historye, that after Bour- 4
goyns hadde taken Tholouse / he made a grete¹
parliamente to his folke / And sayd to theym / ‘Lordes,
ye knowe well / That whan the yron is well hoote, hit
werketh the better / ²Thys worde I have sayd afore 8
your lorde³shyppes for to gyve you to knowe that we
oughte to doo. And therefore me semeth that we oughte
to ryde nowe towarde Bourdews while the corne is in
the eere / For our horses shall have mete ynoughe.’ 12
‘Syre,’ sayd his folke / ‘ye speke well and wysely;
lete it be doon as ye have devysed.’⁴ & whan the
morow cam / Bourgons departed out of tholouse
wyth well XX thousande knyghtes well armed, And 16
ceased not for to ryde tyll that they cam afore
Bourdews in IX dayes. And he sat all his folk in a
bushement wythin a grete wode that was nyghe⁵ / and
abode there wyth theym, excepte foure hundred men, 20
that wente to the cyte, wastynge and brenynge all the
countrey vnto the cyte of Bordews / And whan the
daye watche that was vpon the gate of the cyte sawe
the sarasyns com / he cryed wyth an highe voys / 24
‘Arme you, knyghtes! for here ben the paynyns, that
com for to hurte you.’ Whan the cyte vnderstode
this, she began to be sore moeved.

Thenne whan Reynawde sawe that it was tyme to 28
take his harneys on, he sayd to hys bredern,
‘Goo make you all redy / and make our trompettes to

¹ omitted, F. orig.

² que quant il est froit, F. orig. g. vi. ³ Fol. I. i.

⁴ faictes que soyes demain prest comme pour mourir, F. orig. g. vi.

⁵ prez de la cite manda bien quatre cens sarazins, des myeux montez pour courir, et ceulx aloient tout ardant et gastant tout le pays au pres de la cite, F. orig.

Bourgoyns, chief
of the Saracens,
addresses his
people,

and departs from
Toulouse with
xx. thousand
knights;
he arrives at
Bordeaux,
and sets his folk
in ambush in a
wood.

be blowen, that all our folke put theym selfe in arnes.'
 Incontynent made his brethern his commaundement /
 And whan they were all armed / Reynawde mounted
 4 vpon bayarde / and cam to kynge Yon, and sayd to
 hym / 'Syr, be not abassed of noo thyng, but be sure
 that god shall helpe vs this daye / Myselfe, my
 brethern / and all our folke, we goo afore. And make
 8 your folke to be redy incontynente, for my herte
 gyveth me that this cursed sarasin shall be this daye
 dyscomfyted / and overcome wyth the helpe of god' /
 'Frende,' sayd the kyng, 'god be wyth you / and
 12 I shall doo that ye telle me.' ¹And thus Reynawde
 wente out of Bordews,¹ the formest of all his folke,
 agenst ²the sarrasins, vpon hys horse Bayarde / the
 shelde atte his necke / and his swerde in his hande /
 16 and ranne fyersly vpon his ennys, and incontynent
 smote a paynym thurgh hys shelde, so that he over-
 threwe hym deed to the grounde; and forthwyth he
 cast a nother / god wote he helde well his swerde, For
 20 he hewe the sarrasins³ as they had ben wythoute
 harneys. And shortly to speke, after that Reynawde
 & his folke were assembled, the paynymes myght not
 endure / For Reynawde and his brethern slewe them
 24 as bestes, soo that they muste nedes flee towarde their
 bushement / And whan borgons sawe his folke⁴ come
 thus, he yssued oute of the wode ⁵wyth his companye,⁵
 and made bussynes & hornes to be blouen / and came
 28 for to socoure his men. And whan Reynawde sawe so
 grete nombre of folke ⁵comynge oute of the wode,⁵ he
 was sore merveyllled, and tourned hymselfe towarde
 his brethern, & sayd to theym / 'Lordes, kepe that ye
 32 be not dysmayed / for we shall gete a grete worshyp
 this daye; and I praye you that every man paiforeeth

Reynawde calls
on his folk to arm
themselves,

and promises
success to the
King.

Reynawde rides
forth on Bayard
foremost against
the Saracens.

The Sons fight
valiantly.

Bourgoyns comes
from the wood
with a great
company,

1-1 Quant Renault ent dit ses parolles il sen issit hors de
bourdeaulx, F. orig. g. vii. back. ² Fol. I. i. back.

³ si legerement. F. orig. ⁴ si desconfitz, F. orig.

6-5 omitted, F. orig. g. vii. back.

hym selfe to doo well' / 'brother,' sayd Rycharde /
 'we shall never be dysmayd as long as ye be vpon
 bayarde' / 'Broder,' sayd Reynawde, 'doo as goode
 men / for yf ye wyll parforce yourselfe a lityll, this 4
 paynymes shall not holde afore vs' / Thus as Reynawde
 spake to his brethern / they sawe Borgons com, the
 spere in his reest, and smote a man of Reynawde
 by suche a strength that he shoued his spere thourghe 8
 and thourghe his body / soo that he fell douz deed to
 the erthe. Whan Alarde sawe that, he was wroth,
 and spored hys horse, & ran vpon a paynym so harde
 that he felled hym sterke deed afore hym / And 12
 shortly to speke, there was never seen suche a dystresse
 of folke / as Reynawde, his brethern, and Mawgys ¹his
 cosin,¹ made wyth soo fewe folke as they were, agenst
 Borgons the sarrasin / 16

and slays a man
 of Reynawde.

King John comes
 to the succour of
 Reynawde,

Thenne whan the kyng Yon, that cam to the
 socours of Reynawde, sawe the grete faytes of
 armes that he & his brethern made / and how hardly
 they dyd set vpon & overthrewe all that they recounted 20
 afore theym / he blessed hymselfe of the merveyll that
 he had of theym / And thenne he sayd to his folke,
 'goo we socoure thise worthy knyghtes / for it is tyme
 longe agoo' / and whan kyng Yon had sayd thise 24
 wordes, he spored his horse, & put hymself amonge the
 thykeest, & began to doo well; and dyd so moche that
 he brake the grete preesses / and cam where Reynawde /
 was / and whan Reynawde sawe the kyng Yon, he sayd 28
 to hym, 'Syr, be sure and certeyn that the sarrasins are
 dy[s]comfyted' / thenne sayd the kyng, 'Reynawde,
 I am well assured that god shall doo me grace thugh
 your highe prowesse; blessed be the hour that ye were 32
 borne / and cam in to thyse marches' / To speke
 shortly, y^e bataylles were assembled of one parte & of
 thother; but whan Borgons sawe the gret harme that

and gives him
 great praise for
 his prowesse.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. I. ii.

Reynawde bare to him of his folke, he sayd to hys
 men / 'we ben overcome by the prowes of these five
 knyghtes. Late vs goo backe agen / for it is tyme' /
 4 and whan he had sayd thyse wordes / he & his folke
 began to flee / And whan Reynawde sawe Borgons,
 that fled / he smote bayarde wyth the spores & ranne
 after hym, & sayd to hymselfe, that Borgons sholde
 8 abyde there, or elles it sholde cost hym his liif /
 1 Wythin a short whyle Reynawde was ferre from his
 brethern / and ferre from his felawshyp, so that they
 wyst not whiche waye he drew / Whan Alarde sawe
 12 that he wyst not where Reynawde was drawe / he sayd
 to hymselfe, 'Ha, god! whiche waye is my brother
 drawe to *that* I am not wyth hym?' and thenne cam
 there kyng Yon, that sayd to theym / 'Lordes &
 16 knyghtes / well ye knowe, gramerey god that it ys not
 wysdome for to chasse overmoche ²his enmyes, for
 often tymes cometh there a grete *dommage* / lete vs
 wythdrawe vs, I praye you.' 'Syr,' sayd Alarde,
 20 'what saye ye / we have lost reynawde our broder, &
 wote not where he is, nor if he is deed or taken.'
 Whan kyng Yon vnderstode this worde, he was full
 sory & wrothe / and they wente & sought among y^e
 24 deed that laye vpon the feelde. And whan alarde
 sawe he coude not be founde, he made grete sorowe
 wyth guycharde, rycharde, & Mawgys also. And whan
 the folke of Reynawde saw that he was not founde,
 28 they began to make so grete sorow that it was a pyte to
 see.

Bourgoyns and
 his folk fly from
 the battle,

pursued by Rey-
 nawde.

Alarde, in great
 fear for his
 brother, tells

his grief to the
 King,

and they all
 search for him
 among the dead.

'**A**las,' sayd Alarde, 'what shall I doo? I departed
 fro my londe poure & exyled / but I dyd not
 32 care for it / for I wente wyth the beste knyght of the
 worlde, & trowed by the prowes of hym to have
 recovered honour & havoyre, myselfe & my brethern /
 and now I have lost hym thorough my defawte!

The poor knights
 make great sor-
 row for their
 brother.

¹ Que vous diray je plus, F. orig. g. vii. ² Fol. I, ii. back.

Alas, myschaunt! what shall we doo frohens forth?
 For the erthe shall not mow susteyne vs no more / But
 that it shall fowndre vnder our feete' / and whan the
 kyng Yon sawe the grete sorowe that the poure 4
 knyghtes made for theyr brother, he sayd to theym,
 'Lordes & knyghtes, what is this that ye doo? sith
 that he is not deed, it oughte to suffyse you / For yf
 he be take, ye shall have hym agen, & shold cost me 8
 all that I have in the worlde / And also we have soo
 many of theym prysoners / that Borgons shall not doo
 hym noo harme for no thyng.' 'Syre,' sayd alarde,
 'lete vs goo after, for goddys sake / lete vs wyte where 12
 he is becom.' 'Frende,' sayd y^e kyng, 'I wyll doo so
 gladly.' and thenne they spored theyr horses, & went
 as fast as theyr horses myghte renne / and wyte that
 alarde, guycharde, rycharde, & mawgys, rode a good 16
 pase, so moche that it semed that therthe sholde have
 cloven a sondre vnder theym / ¶ Now wyll I tell you
 of Reynawde, ¹that went after borgons so fast as yf the
 tempest had chassed hym; and he was goon so ferre 20
 wyt^hin a shorte while, that it is wonder for to here
 tell, for there was no best that wente afore bayarde his
 horse / and whan reynawde had overtaken borgons / he
 cryed vpon hym as hie as he myght do, 'Certes, 24
 borgons, thy horse maye no more, I see it well / and
 therefore flee no ferder / but turne thyself towarde me;
 for yf thou deyed fleeng *thou* sholdest be shamed' /
 whan borgons herde reynawde speke thus to hym, he 28
 returned incoztynent. And whan he sawe reynade, he
 knewe well that it was the good knyghte that had
 dy[s]comfyted all his folke, & sayd to hym / 'Syre
 knyght / goo backe agen, & marre not your horse about 32
 noughte; for yf ye lese hym, ye shall never recover
 suche a nother.' & this he sayd for to abasshe the

King John tries
to comfort them.

Alard implores
the King that
they should all
ride in search of
Reynawde.

Reynawde mean-
time has ridden so
far that he over-
takes Bourgoyns,

and cries to him
to hold fast.

¹ Fol. I. iii.

good knyght reynawde / for he durste not iouste wyth
 hym by cause of the grete prowes *that* he had seen in
 hym. But reynawde was not the man that sholde be
 4 made a ferde wyth wordes / ¹And thenne reynawde
 said agen to hym¹ / ‘borgons, thys worde mystre not to
 you for to saye, for ye must nedes defende yourselfe’ /
 And thenne he spored incontynent bayarde / & whan
 8 borgon saw that he myght not be delyvered of reynawde
 but by iustynge / he spored his horse & ranne vpon
 reynawde as harde as he myght, and smote reynawde
 so sharply that the spere went in peces. reynawd fell
 12 not / but smote borgons suche a stroke that he over-
 threwe both horse and man to the grounde, & wounded
 borgons in hys brest full sore / And whan borgons
 sawe hymselfe atte the grounde, he rose vp lightly,
 16 & toke his swerde in his hande / and cast his shelde
 vpon his hede / and whan reynawde perceyved the
 stroke *that* he had gyven hym in his brest, he cryed to
 hym, & sayd / ‘Certes it shall not be reproched to me
 20 that ye fyghte me a fote, & I on horsbacke’ / and
 wyth this he lighted down from bayarde, and drewe
 oute his swerde² & went ³agenst borgons, and borgons
 agenst hym / and there began a sharpe batayll. and
 24 whan the horse of the pagnym felte hym selfe from hys
 mayster, he began to renne away ⁴over the feldes;⁴ &
 whan bayarde sawe hym renne away / he went after
 & overtoke hym soone ynough / and thenne he toke
 28 hym by the mane ⁴wyth his teeth,⁴ and drew hym
 wyth so grete myght that he broughte hym agen to his
 mayster, in the same place where the two ⁴worthy⁴
 knyghtes fought togyder / and reynawde gaaf a stroke
 32 to borgons wyth his swerde vpon his shelde, & all *that*
 the sworde roughthe he cut through, the flesshe, & well

Bourgoyns turns
 towards Rey-
 nawde,
 and they fight;

the Saracen is
 unhorsed.

Reynawde dis-
 mounts from
 Bayard,
 and fights on foot.

¹⁻¹ si luy dist, F. orig. g. viii.

² hors du fonteau, F. orig. g. viii. ³ Fol. I. iii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

He wounds Bourgoyns so greatly an hundred mayles of his flankardes, and made hym a grete wounde in to the hauche.

Thenne whan borgons the sarasyn sawe the wonderfull strengthe of reynawde, & the grete strokes 4 that he gaaf to hym / he was sore afrayed, & fered leste he sholde deye; & so he wythdrew he himself abacke,¹ & sayd to reynawde, 'Ha gentyll knyght, I praye the for the love that you haste to thy god, that *thou* gyve 8 me trewes / and I shall make the lord & sire of all *that* I have in this worlde' / 'certes,' sayd reynawde, 'I wyll not do so / for I have promysed to kyng Yon that I shall helpe hym agenst all men / and he in likewyse 12 hath promysed me; but & yf ye wyll make your selfe crysten, I shall do it gladly.' 'Syr,' sayd borgons, 'I wyll yelde me to you; for to no better knyght than ye be I can not yelde myselfe / yf ye wyll save my liff & 16 my membres' / 'Borgons,' sayd Reynawde, 'yf ye wyll yelde you to me, ye shall have no more harme than I shall' / 'wyll ye promyse me this?' sayd borgons / 'ye,' sayd reynawde. 'now holde my swerde,' sayd 20 borgons / '& I put my selfe all togyder in your hande.' And reynawde tooke his swerde, & assured hym that he shold not deye / and they two went togyder for to take theyr horses / and whan they had theym, they 24 light²ed vpon, and toke theyr waye towarde Bordews / and as they cam agen, they met wyth kyng Yon, that cam, & his folke, rennyng agenst hym as fast as they myght. Whan reynawde sawe the kyng / he thanked 28 hym moche that he was comyng after hym, & presented to hym borgons, that he had thus taken & conquered, as I have rehersed to you, & sayd to hym, 'Noble kyng of gasecoyn, I beseche you that borgons 32 have no harme / for I have assured hym.' 'Good frende,' sayd kyng Yon, 'nomore he shall / but all honour for the love of you / & I praye to god that I

He wounds Bourgoyns so greatly

that he begs for a truce,

and finally yields himself a prisoner.

They both remount, and take their way to Bordeaux; they meet King John,

and Reynawde delivers Bourgoyns to him.

¹ ung peu, F. orig. h. i. back.

² Fol. I. iv.

maye do no thyng that is agenst your wyll' / And
 whan alarde, guycharde, richarde, & mawgys sawe
 reynawd, that brought borgons prysoner, they were
 4 never so glad, for thei wende to have lost hym / so
 ranne they & kyssed hym full swetly, & made hym
 grete feste & grete honour / For they had ben in grete
 sorow for the love of hym.
 8 ' **B**rother,' sayd Alarde, 'in to a grete sorowe ¹&
 hevynes¹ ye had brought vs this daye, for we
 wonde that ye had be take; but sith that ye have
 taken borgons, the werre is doon / and blessed be
 12 the hour that ye were borne, & the pappes that ye
 souked' / and whan they were well fested, they
 toke on their waye towarde bordews / where they led
 borgons as a prysoner / And whan the kyng yon was
 16 at bordews, he lighted down, and toke wyth hym
 reynawde & his brethern by the hande, & mawgis also,
 & wente vp to the palays, and founde his folke, that
 made grete fest / and he² called them to hym, & sayd,
 20 'Lordes,³ bere honour and worshyp more to this knyght
 than to me / for I am kynge of Gascoyn by theyr
 worthines & grete prowes; for yf they had not ben, I
 had be deed & overthrowen; blessed be the good lorde
 24 that dyd put in their myndes for to com into this
 coste, For they have quyted my londe, & have set all
 my royame in peas' / To speke shortly, the kyng made
 4 the buty to be dealed, Wherof the most party he made
 28 to be gyven to reynawde & his brethern. And rey-
 nawde wolde take no thyng of it / but gaff it all to his
 folke / and whan y^e kinge sawe the grete largenes of
 reynawde, he loved hym more than he dyd afore / &
 32 thenne he sayd that he wolde make reynawde lorde
 over hym / and of all his londe /

The brethren
and Mawgis re-
joice greatly when
they see Rey-
nawde again.

King John takes
the Sons and
Mawgis,
and leads them to
the palace,
where they make
a great feast;

and declares his
love for Rey-
nawde.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² le roy yon, F. orig. h. i.

³ faictes honneur a ses cheualliers, F. orig.

⁴ Fol. I. iv. back.

The King has a fair sister,

who enquires of a knight, who won chief honour in the battle.

The knight replies that Reynawde is the best knight in the world;

at these words the damsel is very glad.

Bourgoyns begs King John to accept his ransom,

to which the King assents;

The kyng yon had a suster, the whiche was a ryght fayre damoyzell / whan she herde speke so moche good by reynawd, she called to her a knyghte that was called water, and sayd to hym / 'tell by your feyth / 4 who had the pryce of the batayll.' 'madame,' sayd water, 'I shall tell it you wyth a good wyll. Now wyte that reynawde is the best knyght of all his brethern, & of all the worlde, for he toke borgons the 8 sarrasin by force / wherby he hath brought the werre at an ende.' Whan the pucell vnderstode this worde she was right glad, & dyde thanke our lorde for it wyth all her hert. And y^e kyng & his knyghtes 12 ceassed not to make ioye for the victory that god had sente to theym thurgh the grete prowes of the valyaunt reynawd / Whan borgons sawe hymselfe in pryson, he sente worde to kyng yon that he sholde 16 come speke wyth hym / And as sone that kyng yon wyst of it, he wente to hym / and whan borgons sawe hym, he salued hym, & after sayd to hym, 'Syr,¹ I am your prysoner, & also the moste party of my folke ; 20 and yf it playse you, ye shall put me to raunsome, and my men also, & I shall gyve you X. horses laden wyth golde, for me & for mi folke' / 'Borgons,' sayd the kyng, 'I shall doo it wyth a goode wyll, yf reynawde 24 counseyll me so, & noo otherwyse I wyll not doo' / And thenne the kyng yon sente for reynawde, ²& for his brethern,² & all his other barons / And whan they were come, he helde his counseyll how he sholde doo for 28 the delyveraunce of borgons. Reynawde & his barons counseyllled the kynge ³that he sholde put Borgons to raunsome and whan the kynge sawe that his barons counseyled hym the same, he made borgons to be 32 called / and made his delyveraunce to be signyfyed vnto hym / And thus was borgons delyverde, & wente

¹ roy yon, F. orig. h. i. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Fol. I, v.

wyth his folke into his countrey, and yelded Tholouse
agayn to kyng Yon, & sente to¹ hym X. sommers all
laden wyth fyne golde, as he had promysed to hym /

and Bourgoyns
and his folk go
into the country.

4 And incontynent *that* the kyng Yon had received
theym he gaaff them to reynawde & to his brethern ;
but reynawde dyd as a worthy knyghte / For not a
peny he wolde take of it, nor his brethern also.

8 **I**t happed vpon a daye that Reynawde and his
brethern wente in a forest that was not ferre
thens / and toke foure wyld bestes / And as they

The Sons go into
the forest,

12 were comynge homwarde, they founde themselfe vpon
the ryver of gyronde / and as they wente, Alarde
loked over the ryver, & sawe a hyghe montayn, & all
highe to the toppe of it was a fayr roche / And whan

and find them-
selves on the river
Gironde.

16 Alarde sawe soo fayr a grounde and so stronge, he
tourned hymselfe towarde Reynawde, and sayd to
hym / ²‘Brother, yonder vpon that highe mountayne is
a fayr grounde and a stronge, I beleve that there hath
ben somtyme a castell. And yf we myghte doo soo

Alarde sees a fair
rock on the top of
a high mountain,

20 moche to buylde there ³a stronge place³ for ourselve,
Charlemagne sholde never take vs there / And yf
ye wyll beleve me, ye shall aske it of kyng Yon.

which he points
out to Reynawde
as a site where
they might build
a castle,

And yf he gyveth it to you, Lete vs doo make there a

and counsels him
to ask the King
for leave to build
thereon.

24 ⁴‘stronge castell.’⁴ ‘Cosyn,’ sayd Mawgys to Reynawde,
‘Alarde gyveth you good counseyll, And I praye you
that ye wyll doo soo as he hath sayd’ / ‘Cosyn,’ sayd
Reynawde, ‘I shall doo it, syth that ye counseyll me
28 soo’ / And whan they were accorded to the same /
⁵they entred into a barge, & wente over Gyrounde /
And whan they came a londe / they ceassed never tyll
that they came afore the kyng⁵ / And presented hym

¹ au roy Yon, F. orig. h. ii. back. ² beau frere, F. orig.

³⁻³ ung chastel, F. orig. h. ii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ ung forteresse. F. orig. h. ii. back.

⁵⁻⁵ Ils se mirent dedens gironde et passerent oultre et ne
finerent de chevaucher tant quilz sont venuz devant le roy,
F. orig.

the bestes¹ ²that they hadde taken. And whan the kyng sawe theym he receyved theym curtoyusly, For he loved theym moche / And thenne the kyng embraced Reynawde in his armes. 4

The morowe nexte, after that the kyng hadde herde masse / Reynawde toke the kyng and drewe hym a lityll atte oo side / and sayd to hym, 'Syre, we have served you longe well and truly.' 'Certes,' sayd 8 the kyng, 'ye saye trouthe / and therefore I am holde to rewarde you well for it. Now loke yf I have in all my londe, cytes, townes, or castelles, or other thyng that ye wyll have, For ye shall have it Incontynente.' 12 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'I thanke you moche of your goode wyll. But here my wordes, yf it playse you' / 'saye on hardely,' sayd the kyng / 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'I and my bretherne were the other daye com- 16 ynge fro the chase / and as we came alonge by the syde of Gyronde and of Dordonne, and namely betwene thyse two ryveres / I sawe a mountayne sore hyghe ; And yf it playse you, I wolde well buylde therevpon a castell 20 after my playsure / Wherfore, syre, and it playse you, ³ye shall graunte to me this gyfte³ / for all the servyse that ever I dyde to you.' Whan the kyng vnderstode thys worde, he was ryght gladde of it, and sayd to 24 Reynawde / 'I ryght gladly graunt this to you. And wyth the same, ye shall have of me X thousande marke every yere for to maynten your astate' / 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'gramercy' / and caste hym selfe to his feete. 28 And the kyng yon toke hym vp ⁴anone curtoyusly,⁴ & kyssed hym for grete love ; & after, he sayd vnto hym / 'Noble knyght, I promyse you I shall make you a ryche man, ⁵yf god spare me liffe.'⁵ 'sir,' sayd reynawde, 'god yelde you, & we shall serve you truly' /

Reynawde tells the King how he and his brethren would build a castle on the mountain,

should it please him to grant them this gift.

John gives his consent willingly.

¹ saulvaiges, F. orig. ² Fol. I. v. back.

³⁻³ vous le me donnez, F. orig. h. ii.

⁴⁻⁴ incontinent, F. orig. h. ii.

⁵⁻⁵ si je viz longuement, F. orig.

1 & thus they departed fro eche other.¹ The nexte daye,
 after whan the kyng was rysen oute of his bed, he
 made reynawde to com ² afore hym / And after he toke
 4 XX. knyghtes wyth hym, and no more, and toke his
 barge vpon gyronde, and passed over the ryver, ¹ rey-
 nawd & his brethern wyth hym¹ / and thei dyde so
 inoche that they cam vpon the roche³ / and whan they
 8 sawe *the* place so fayr & so playsaunt, the kyng was
 merveyll of it, & reynawde was ryght glad / For the
 grete strenghte that the place had / for yf he myght
 doo so moche to buylde there a castell, he sholde not
 12 doubt Charlemagne of a peny, nor none other persone
 of the worlde, whan vytaylles were in it, for vpon the
 highest of the montayn spronge oute a fayre fountayne,
 & plenteous ynoughe for X. thousande persones. Whan
 16 the knyghtes that were wyth the kyng sawe the place
 so fayr & so playsaunt, & so strong wythall, they were
 gretly abasshed / a knyght themne toke the kyng,
 & had hym a lityll aside, & tolde hym / 'Sir, what is
 20 this that ye wyll doo / wyll ye have a lorde above you?
 wyll ye doo make here a fortressse / I tell you vpon my
 feyth, that yf reynawde set here a castell, he shall fere
 you lityll, nother you nor all other barons of gasecoyn /
 24 for reynawde is suche a knyght as ye knowe, & also his
 brethern & their cosin mawgys / and also they be
 strangers / and soone they shall here you grete harme
 yf they wyll; doo to hym some other good, yf ye wyll
 28 beleve me, and lete this alone, For over grete harme
 myghte come to you therof.'

and the next day
 goes with the
 Sons and xx.
 knights to see
 the place.

One of the
 knyghts remon-
 strates with John
 for giving Rey-
 nawde so strong
 a position,

saying he will do
 evil unto him in
 future.

Thenne whan kyng yon vnderstode suche wordes, he
 becam all abasshed of it, for he wyste well that
 32 the knyghte sayd trouth / and lityll it lacked that the
 werke of the castell cam not forthe. he began to
 thynke a lityll; & after, he sayd that he had promysed

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. I. vi.

³ et monterent au dessus, F. orig. h. ii.

The King will not withdraw his promise to Reynawde,

it to reynawde / ¹and thus he sayd to the knyght¹ that the castell sholde be made; so called he reynawde, and sayd to hym / 'My good frende, where will ye that the castell be made' / ²'sir,' sayd reynaude, 'I 4 wyll yf it playse you *that* it be ³set here in the same place vpon the roche.'² 'Certes,' sayd the kyng, 'I gyve it to you / Now hast you to see that it be made & buylded vp ¹as ye thynke best¹ / and thenne ye shall 8 doubte nother me nor my folke'⁴ / 'sire,' sayd reynawd, 'lete be thise wordes, for it is no nede to speke therof / for I certyfyte you as a true knyght, that I had moche lever deye an evyll deth amonge *the* turkes / than that 12 I sholde thinke treyson vpon you nor vpon no other / Syre, I am & have be take hederto, & holde for a true knyght / god gyve me grace that I doo not from hens forth, wherby I sholde other wyse be taken⁵ / sire, 16 thinke you by cause I am enmye to charlemagn, my soverayn lord / that I sholde be therfore a traytour, & that I have doon agenst hym som treyson; wyt that whan I slewe berthelot his newew, alas, I dyd it in my 20 defence / for he drewe first blode vpon me wythoute reyson or cause why. But I swere to you vpon my feyth, *that* yf ony man doo ony wronge vnto you / I shall avenge you therof after my power; but & yf 24 ye have ony suspectyon vpon me, gyve me it not' / 'Good frende reynawde,' sayd the kyng, 'I dyd but iape wyth you, for I know well your trouthe, & wel ye have shewed it vnto me; ¹god thanke you¹ / and 28 therfore I have graunted it vnto you / and yet I doo. And I wyll that ye be lorde above me, and of my londe.'

who swears, as a true knight, that he will never prove traitor to him.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

²⁻² Sire je veul quil soit asses ici si vous plaist, F. orig. h. iii. back.

³ Fol. I. vi. back.

⁴ mais je ne euide mye que vous me vueillez querroyer moy ne mes barons de mon pays, F. orig.

⁵ pour desloyal, F. orig.

And whan reynawde vnderstode the curtoysie & the
 goodnes of the kynge / he thanked hym ryght
 moche / and he sent thurgh all the londe / and made
 4 com all the maysters masons, & carpenters, & many other
 crafty men in suche werke / so moche that they were
 well two¹ hundred, beside the labourers / and whan all
 his stuff was redy, he made theym to buylde there a
 8 strong castell / wherof y^e grete hall was first made, & after
 many chambres, & thence the grete towre. And whan
 y^e doungeon was well closed, reynawde made after, all
 y^e castell to be closed rounde about wyth double walles,
 12 hie & thick, ²of harde stones, & many toures vpon, that
 it fered no sawtyng of no side of it; & made to this
 castell foure gates, & no more; & also he made y^e
 portcolisse, fawesebrayes, & barbicanes well defensable,
 16 so that it myght be no better / whan y^e castell was
 accomplysshed / reynawde & his brethern were therof
 right glade / for it semed theym that they were assured
 from their ennyes / And whan kynge Yon knewe that
 20 the castell was accomplysshed & full made, he went to
 see it / And whan reynawde wyst that the kyng cam /
 he went agenst hym, ³& welcomed hym full honestly,³
 & made hym goo vp to the grete toure of the fortres,
 24 by cause he shold see the compas of the castell rounde
 aboute at his ease / for, fro the grete toure, men myght
 see all. The kyng behelde well the fayr werke, that
 was so playsaunt & so strong wythall, & the fayr
 28 fountayne that was in y^e myddes of it / And thenne he
 called reynawde, & sayd to hym, 'Good frende rey-
 nawde, how shall this castell be called / for me semeth
 it ought well to have a noble name, for the grete
 32 beaute wherof it is garnyshed' / 'sire,' sayd reynawde,
 'it hath no name yet / and yf it playse you ye shall
 gyve it a name as it shall like you best' / 'certes,'

Reynawde sends
 for all the best
 men in the land
 to build the
 castle,

which is enclosed
 with double walls,
 and many towers
 thereon of great
 strength.

The King beholds
 the fair work,

¹ deux cens et cinquante, F. orig. h. iii.

² Fol. I. vii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

which he wills should be called Montalban; and sends word through his land that all who will dwell therein shall be free of duties for x. years.

So many people enter the town, that Montalban is well garnished.

The barons are envious of Reynawde, and counsel the King against him.

John assures them of the fidelity of Reynawde.

sayd the kyng, 'the place is praty and fayr / and I wyll that it be called Montalban' / and thenne the kyng made to be knowen through all his londe, *that* who wold come dwelle & enhabyte in the sayd castell, ⁴ ¹whiche was as grete as a towne¹ / he sholde be free of all maner of duytes the space of X yeres.

Thenne whan the folke of the cuntrye knewe the fredome of the castell / ye sholde have see come ⁸ there / knyghtes, gentylnen, burgeys, yonge & olde / yomen, ²& folke of all maner of craftes² / so *that* this castell was pepled of all maner of folke / that in all y^e cuntrye was no towne so wel pepled / for there ¹² dwelled V hundred burgeys, all ryche men; & ³there were well L. taverners, ⁴and XVC. men of crafte, beside other folke⁴ / And shortly to speke, montalban was so well garnysshed, and so riche wythin a lityll ¹⁶ while, that it was grete merveill for to see / and wyte it, that the kyng yon loved reynawde wyth so good a love, for by cause of the grete worthyness of hym, that he gaaf to hym valery & all the lordshype, that was ²⁰ worthe a thousande marke of good rente well set / whan the barons sawe that the kyng loved reynawde soo well, they were wroth for it, ¹& had enuye vpon hym; ¹ and thei cam to y^e kyng & sayd to hym, 'sir, ²⁴ take well good hede what ye doo / for montalban is ryght stronge, & so is reynawde suche a knyght, that none better is not in all the remenaunt of the worlde / and yf it happe by ony wyse that he be an ²⁸ angred vpon you, he shall mowe lightly bere to you & to all your folke over grete *dommage*.' 'Lordes,' sayd the kyng, 'ye saye trouth / but reynawde ⁵is so gentyll & so courtoys of hymself⁵ that he shall never ³²

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. h. iv. back.

²⁻² clers, villains et sergens, F. orig. ³ Fol. I. vii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ et cent hommes des glise, et y auoit bien plus de cenq cens hommes de mestier, F. orig. h. iv. back.

⁵⁻⁵ a si gentil cuer, F. orig. h. iv. back.

thy nke vpon no treyson nor to no shame in no maner
of wyse.' 'sire,' sayd thenne an olde knyght, that
stode before the kyng, 'yf ye wyll beleve me, I shall
4 tell you how ye shall alwayes be lorle & mayster
above reynawde all the tyme of your liff.' 'Frende,'
sayd the kyng, 'tell me this I praye you.' 'Syr,' sayd
the knyght, 'gyve hym your suster to his wyfe, so
8 shall he be well maryed, for reynawde is well a noble
gentyman of all foure sides. And therby ye shall be
assured that he shall never be angry ne wrothe wyth
you' / 'frende,' sayd kyng Yon, 'ye gyve me good
12 counseyll / and I shall doo it as ye have counseyllid
me / but I praye you that ye purchace this matere.'
'sire,' sayd the olde knyght, 'sith that I knowe your
wil in this behalfe / I shall doo my best for to bryng
16 the matere to a conclusion effectuell' / after these
wordes thus sayd, the kyng returned agen to Bordews
wyth ioye, devysynge wyth y^e olde knyght of the
matier wherof they had spoken togyder.¹

An old knight
advises John to
give his sister to
Reynawde for his
wyfe, so accord
may always exist
between them.

The King agrees,

and returns to
Bordeaux with
joy, devising how
the matter shall
be speedily
settled.

20 **T**he first daye of the moneth of Maye, reynawde
went from his castelle of Montalban, to bordews
for to see kyng Yon, & toke alarde his broder wyth
hym / And whan the kyng Yon wyst of it, he cam to
24 hym agenst, and receyved reynawde wyth grete ioye,
and kyssed hym full swetely / And after, the kyng
toke hym by y^e hande, & went vp togyder to y^e hall of
the palays, ²and so forth to the chambre of parente,
28 whiche was hanged right rychely;³ and thenne the
kyng called for the chesse / for to playe at it wyth
reynawde. And as they were playing togyder, there
cam in the olde knyght, that had charge of the kyng
32 for to make the maryage of reynawde & of the kyngys
suster, whiche knyghte was called godefraye of molyns /
and whan he was come afore the kyng, he sayd,

¹ de la meetre a effect, F. orig. h. iv.

² Fol. I. viii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

The old knight relates to the King and Reynawde a wonderful dream he had that night.

A doctor called Bernard expounds the dream,

and says it portends the marriage of Reynawde and the King's sister.

‘Here, Lordes, what I wyll tell you / To nyghte, as I was in my bed a slepe / me semed that I sawe Reynawde, the sone of Aymon, that was set hyghe in a chayre, & all the peple of this royaume enclined theymself byfore hym. And the kyng gaaf to hym a sperhawke, mewed full fayr & good. & me semed also that thenne came a grete bore¹ out of the wodes,¹ that made an horryble noyse, so that no body durst not approache nyghe hym / thre men assaylled hym /² but they coude not hurt hym, & passed by theym.² And whan Reynawde sawe that, he lighted vpon bayarde, & cam agenste hym, & faughte wyth hym, & hurted hym sore / and thenne I woke out of my slepe’ / and whan the olde knyghte had sayd so / thenne rose a doctour, that was called bernarde, the whyche was ryght wyse & a grete clerke, & sayd / ‘fayr lordes, yf ye liste to herken, I shall expowne and declare vnto you the signyfycasion of this dreme / Wyt it that the chaier where Reynawde sat, betokeneth the castell that he hath buylded / & the peple *that* bowed themself towarde hym, signyfyeth the folke *that* are come dwelle³ there / And the yefte that the kyng gaaf to hym, betokeneth that the kyng yon shall gyve hym his suster to his wyff / *that* wylde bore signyfyeth some grete prynee, crysten or pagnym, *that* shall come to assayll / kyng Yon / and the same is the sygnifycacyon of the dreme of Godfray ; and I, indygne for to speke / sholde counseyll that the maryage sholde be doon of Reynawde & of the suster of kyng yon. For they shall be thus bothe ryght well⁴ & rychely⁴ weded’ / And thenne the kyng answered, ‘thou hast spoken well & wysely.’ Whan the clerke had declared the betokenyng of the dreme of tholde knyght Godfray, the kyng yon sayd that, touchynge this maryage, the thyng was

¹⁻¹ devers gironde, F. orig. h. iv.

²⁻² mais il passa tout aultre, F. orig. h. iv.

³ Fol. I. viii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

well agreable vnto hym. And whan reynawde vnder-
 stode this worde, he sayd to the kyng / 'sir, granerery of
 your fayr yefte that ye doo to me / but & yf it playse
 4 you, ye shall have a lityll pacyence vnto the tyme that
 I have counseyllid wyth my brethern & my cosin
 Mawgys' / 'Broder,' sayd alarde, 'ye have sayd yll.
 What refuse you of the kyng so grete a yeft as he
 8 gyveth you now; yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall fulfill
 y^e kinges wyll incontinente / for to me & to my
 brethern it shall playse well / And whan the kyng gaaff
 you not his suster / but a simple damoysell, yet oughte
 12 you to beleve hym & doo after his wyll' / 'brother,'
 sayd reynawde / 'it is not the firste tyme *that* ye have
 gyven to me good counseyll & true / and I promyse you
 I shall doo it, sith that ye doo counseyll me so' / and
 16 thenne reynawde tordned hymself towarde the kyng, &
 sayd to hym / 'Sir, I am all togyder redy to doo all
 that¹ ye wyll' / and thenne reynawde rose vp, and the
 kyng toke hym by the hande / and made his suster to
 20 be affyauced vnto hym.

King John
 answers that the
 marriage is agree-
 able to him.

Reynawde with
 courtesy accepts,
 and is affianced
 to the King's
 sister.

Thenne whan the maryage was made accorded, and
 made sure of the one parte / & of thother, the
 kyng Yon cam² to the chamber of his suster / and fonde
 24 her besi aboute a penoucell of a spere / that she made
 full fayr for the knyghte Reynawde, but she durst not
 tell it. The kyng salued her as sone as that he sawe her /
 and the noble mayd rose vp anone agenst her brother,
 28 & made him due reverence ryght manerly. 'Fayr
 suster,' sayd the kyng, 'I have doo marye you well &
 highly.' whan the pucell vnderstode hym / she began
 to chaunge her colour, & bowed her body to hym, and
 32 sayd no worde of a longe whyle / And whan she had
 the power for to speke, she sayd to the kyng her
 broder / 'Syr, to whom have you gyven me?' 'Fayr

John goes to his
 sister's chamber,

and announces
 the news to her.

¹ vostre vouloir et commandement, F. orig. h. v. back.

² Fol. K. i.

She is joyful
when she hears
that Reynawde
has been chosen
for her husband.

suster,' sayd the kyng, 'I have gyven you vnto the best knyghte of the worlde. It is Reynawde / the sone of Aymon, the noble knyght & valyaunt' / Whan the noble damoyseil vnderstode that it was to Reynawde 4 to whom her brother had maryed her, she was ryght glad of it / For she loved Reynawde of a grete love, and sayd to y^e kyng / ¹'Syr, I wyll doo wyth all my veraye herte your comaundemente & your wyll'¹ / 8 Thenne the kyng toke her by the hande and broughte her to the palays, and sayd to Reynawde afore all his barons, 'Holde here, worthy knyghte² Reynawde, I gyve you my suster to your wyff & spouse.' 'Syr,' sayd 12 Reynawde, 'a thousande gramereys of so fayr a yefte *that* ye gyve to me presently,³ For it apperteyneth not so grete a yefte to so poure a knyghte as I am' / Thenne toke Reynawde the pucell, & fyaunced her / and sware. 16 And the kyng wolde make no taryenge therat, but toke the pucelle by the hande / and broughte her to the chyrehe well honourably. And the bysshop of Bordews wedded theym / and whan Reynawde had his wyff 20 espoused / ⁴he sente for his brethern and for his cosin Mawgys, that were at ⁵Mountalban, the whiche made grete Ioye / and made all mountalban for to be hanged wyth ryche tapyssery / And ⁶thezne they mounted their 24 horses all covered wyth sendall, and wente to Bordews / and met wyth Reynawde and his wyff by the waye, ⁷where as grete ioustynge was made afore the ladyes⁷ / And after the ioustynge was doon, they came all to 28 Montalban / and whan they were com there, the ioye began to be grete in the castell, as god had descended there / For to saye trouth .vij dayes lasted the feste, and many grete yeftes were presented and gyven to the 32

Reynawde and
the damsel are
married by the
Bishop of
Bordeaux.

After much feast-
ing, they come to
Montalban.

¹⁻¹ Sire je vueil ce que vous plaist, F. orig. h. v. back.

² omitted, F. orig. ³ a present, F. orig. h. v. back.

⁴ il la mena a ses freres et a son cousin mawgis, F. orig. h. v.

⁵ au chastel de Montauban, F. orig. h. v. ⁶ Fol. K, i. back.

⁷⁻⁷ la ou lout faisoit moult belle joustes, F. orig. h. v.

lady / And whan the feste had endured as longe as I
 tell you / The kynge Yon wente agen to Bordews, right
 glad of the mariage / that he had made of Reynawde
 4 and of his suster. For he thoughte well that Reynawde
 sholde helpe hym agenste all men : and he sayd trouthe /
 For after that the maryage was ones made, there was
 noo baron in all Gascoyn that durste loke vppe, and
 8 yet there were some that wolde not¹ doo their devoyre
 to the kynge / but Reynawde made theym well come
 forth for to doo the kyngis comaundement accordynge
 to theyr ligeaunce, wolde they or not. For Reynawde
 12 was both loved and doubted thurgh all y^e londe
 of Gascoyn / ¶ But now levethe here the history to
 speke of Reynawde and of his bretherne & of Mawgys,
 And retorneth to speke of Charlemagne, *that* wente to
 16 saynt Iames in Galyee for to doo penaunce for his
 synnes.

King John is glad
of the marriage,

as Reynawde will
now accord with
him against his
enemies.

CHAPTER VII.

¶ How the kynge Charlemagne made a vyage
 to saynte Iames in Galice / And how at his
 20 comyng agen he knew how Reynawde and
 his bredern were in the royaume of gascoyn
 in a right strong castell called Montalban /
 And how Charlemagne sente worde to kynge
 24 Yon of Gascoyn that he sholde yelde to hym
 his enmyes ; ²that is to wyte, Reynawde,
 Alarde, Guycharde, & Rycharde, the sones
 of Aymon,² and in caas that he wolde not,
 28 he sholde com besege hym in ³his lande afore
 X monethes came atte an ende. Wherof
 the kynge Yon answered that he wolde doo

¹ nat, in text orig.

²⁻² cest assauoir regnault et ses freres, F. orig. h. v.

³ Fol. K, ii.

noo thyng for hym in this behalve / And
 how after that the kyng Charlemagne was
 retorneth to Parys ¹wyth his felawshyp¹ /
 Rowlande, his newew, arryved at Parys, the 4
 whiche the kyng made knyghte / and after
 he sente hym to reyse a sege afore Coleyn,
 that a sarrasyn had beseged that was called
 Escoufrawde, y^e whiche Rowlande con- 8
 quered / And after sheweth how Reynawde
 won² the crowne of kyng Charlemagne /
 for the goode rennyng that his horse
 bayarde made at Parys. ¶ Capitul[u]m vij. 12

Charlemagne goes
 on a pilgrimage to
 Saint James in
 Galicia.
 Duke Naymes and
 Ogier the Dane
 accompany him.

Nowe sheweth the history that Charlemagne was at
 Parys, and cam to hym a devoeyon for to goo
 in pylgrymage to saynt Iames in Gales. And soo he
 departed oute of Parys, and toke in his company Oger 16
 the dane & the duk Naymes of bavyre, and many
 other barons and grete lordes / Whan they were vpon
 theyr waye, they dyde soo moche by there iourneys that
 they cam to saynt Iames in Galyce. And whan they 20
 were arryved there / The kyng wente streyght to the
 chirche, & offred afore the aulter ten marke of fyne
 golde. And whan he had offred and doon his devo-
 cyons / he toke on his waye agayne, and came ¹wyth his 24
 felawshyp¹ to Bordews / And in his comyng thider, he
 loked over the ryver of gyronde, ¹not ferre thens¹ / And
 sawe the castelle of Mountalban, that was vpon a roche,
 soo fayr & so well made, & so well shette wyth fayr 28
 wallis, & thyeke in the forme, as I have tolde you
 afore / And whan Charlemagne sawe it, he behelde
 well vpon it a longe while, and thenne sayd, ‘Ha, good
 lord, yonder is a fayr castell, stronge and well set / 1 32

Charlemagne, in
 passing Bordeaux,
 sees the castle of
 Montalban,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² wan, in text orig.

see well that the kyng Yon¹ hath made it of late / for
 it semeth yet to be all new ; and it can be none other
²wyse, sith that he hath buylded it in suche a strong
 4 place / but that he thynke to make werre to some
 body.' And thenne he called to hym a knyghte of the
 londe, & sayd to hym / 'tell me how ye calle that
 castell.' 'Syr,' sayd the knyghte, 'the name is Mount-
 8 alban' / He had grete luste to speke / for yf he had
 keped his peas there had ben none other thyng of it /
 But he sayd suche wordes that afterwarde bare grete
 harme to hym selfe and to many other. For he tolde
 12 to the emperour that reynawde and his brethern, the
 sones of Aymon, had do make that castell / and was
 called Mountalban / And how the kyng Yyon had
 gyven to Reynawde his suster to his wyf.

and inquires of a
 knight the name
 of the castle.

The knight tells
 the Emperor how
 it belongs to the
 four Sons,
 and how Rey-
 nawde has
 married John's
 sister.

16 **W**han Charlemagne vnderstode thyse wordes, he
 was ryght angry for it and wrothe, And wyste
 not what he sholde saye / and helde hym selfe a grete
 whyle that he spake not / and whan he had mused a
 20 lityll / he sayd to his folke / 'fayre lordes, I shall telle
 you a wonder ; For I have founde my enemyes in this
 londe, that ben the foure sones of Aymon. Now vp,
 Ogyer, and you, duke Naymes / lighte on horsebacke
 24 incontynente, and seke so moche kyng Yon that ye
 fynde hym, and telle hym in my behalve that he yelde
 to me agen the foure sones of Aymon, that ben myn
 enemyes, the whyche he hath wythdrawen and borne
 28 oute agenste me. And *that* he fynde me knyghtes for
 to brynge theym only into my londe / for I am de-
 libered, sith that I have fonde theym, for to hange
 theym or fleye theym quycke. And yf he wyll not do
 32 soo / defye you hym on my behalfe, And telle hym that
 wythin this thre or foure monethes I shall be wythin
 his londe of Gascoyn wyth all my ooste / and I shall
 destroye and overthrowe all his townes and castelles,

Charlemagne, in
 wrath, sends
 Ogyer to tell King
 John to yield to
 him the four
 Sons,

or he will destroy
 all his land.

¹ de gascogne, F. orig. h. vi. back. ² Fol. K. ii. back.

and yf I maye take hym, I shall punyssh him wyth-
 oute any mercy' / 'Syr,' sayd Ogyer, 'we shall doo
 your commaundemente, but we shall ¹take wyth vs
 Lances and Hostes, the whyche ben prue and sage' / 4
 and Charlemagne sayd that he was contente; and incontynente they wente on theyr waye, And wente aboute
 for to vnderstode where kynge Yon was / And soo
 longe they asked after hym, that they founde hym atte 8
 Montalban, evyn atte the foote of the roche / For the
 kynge Yon wente agen Bourdews, and Reynawde con-
 veyed hym. When Ogyer sawe Reynawde and the
 kynge Yon, he knew theym well / And incontynente 12
 he salued the kynge / and sayd to hym / 'Syre, god
 gyve you good liffe and longe' / And the kynge rendered
 to hym his salute, and after sayd to hym, 'Of whens
 be you?' ²'syre,' said Ogyer, 'We ben of the swete 16
 Fraunce / And also we be sente vnto you / And we are
 of Charlemagne folke. Now here vs, yf it playse you.'
³'Syr,' sayd the kynge, 'ye be ryght welcome. Now
 telle on what ye wyll saye' / ⁴'Sire,' sayd Ogyer, 'the 20
 emperour Charlemagne sendeth to you worde by vs,
 that ye yelde agen vnto hym his ennyes y^e whiche ye
 have wythdrawen in to your landes, and that ye sende
 to hym a hundred of your men for to conduytte and 24
 brynge theym wyth hym vnto Fraunce. And yf ye re-
 fuse to doo this / ⁵We, by his commaundemente, deffye
 you of his behalve⁵ / And wythin thyse thre monethes
 he shall be in Gascoyn / and shall take all your londes, 28
 and shall besege you wythin the cyte of Bordews /
 And yf he take you, he shall punyssh you in your
 body. Now have we sayd our message, And yf it
 playse you, ye shall gyve us an answer.' 32

King John and
 Reynawde are
 together at Mont-
 alban when
 Ogyer arrives
 at the castle.

Ogyer delivers his
 message from the
 Emperor.

¹ Fol. K. iii. ² beau sire, F. orig. h. vi.

³ seigneurs, F. orig. h. vi. ⁴ doux roy Yon. F. orig. h. vi.

⁵⁻⁵ Il vous deffie de sa part, F. orig. h. vi.

‘Ogyer,’ sayd the kynge / ‘It is well trouth that I
 have reteyned the foure sones of Aymon, whiche
 ben worthy knyghtes ; and soo have I reteyned theym,
 4 by cause they ben prue and valyaunte in armes, and
 also that they have ¹holpen and socoured me atte my
 grete nede / For I was dysherited ²and vndoon for ever²
 yf they had not ben / And for the grete goode that they
 8 have doon to me, I have gyven my suster germayne
 to Reynawde for his wyff / And therefore I sholde be to
 cruell, and eke well myschaunte, yf I sholde now take
 theym in to the handes of theyr enemyes mortalle, syth
 12 that they have doon to me soo good servyse³ / I have
 lever for to be dyshereted, and deye an evyll deth, than
 to yelde theym, or suffre that they have ony harme nor
 shame to my power / For nanly the kynge Charle-
 16 magne sholde thenne holde me for a foole and well
 nyce / And therefore, Ogyer, yf it playse you, ye shall
 telle the emperour from my behalve, that I shal forsake
 firste all my londe and my royame, than I sholde
 20 deliver theym in his handes / And this is myn
 answe’re /

King John
 declares that he
 will forsake his
 kingdom sooner
 than yield up the
 Sons to Charle-
 magne.

Thenne whan the kynge had sayd thus, Reynawde
 T spake after and sayd, ‘Ogyer, I merveyll grety
 24 of the kynge Charlemagne, that wyll not leve vs in
 peas / He caste vs oute of Fraunce poure and dys-
 heryted, wherof I am ashamed / and as ye knowe, I
 wolde be reformed wyth rayson to the sayenge of his
 28 barons ; but it playseth hym not / And soo he casted
 vs oute of Mountenfourde shamfully / so that we wyste
 not where we sholde go / And yet it suffyseth hym
 not, but he wyll cast vs oute of the londe of Gascoyn,
 32 wherof he dooth grete synne. For yet am I redy for
 to doo his wyll in rayson and ryght / And I telle you
 well, that yf he refuce this by hys pryde, I wyll well

Reynawde com-
 plains of the
 injustice of the
 Emperor,

¹ Fol. K. iii. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ et loyualment, F. orig. h. vii. back.

that he knowe that / I and my brethern are not suche
 that shall be taken as lyghtly as he weneth. And I
 promyse you, that or ever he hathe vs / I shall make
 hym more than ten tymes angry and wrothe / For this 4
 that ¹he dooth / he dooth it but of pryde / Ogyer, I wyll
 well that kynge Charlemagne knowe, that the kyng
²Yon of Gascoyn hath gyven to vs leve to buylde a
 castell that hath to name Montalban / the whiche is 8
 stronge and imprenable, and yet I have knyghtes wyth
 me that shall not faylle me at my nede. And tell to
 kynge Charlemagne that sith I can not have noo peas
 nor accorde wyth hym, *that* I shall doo to hym all the 12
 dommage and harme that shalle be to me possyble for
 to doo.'

and says he shall
 do to him all the
 harm that he can.

Ogyer rebukes
 Reynawde for
 these words,

and says he will
 be sorry when
 all the host of
 Charlemagne
 assail him.

'**R**eynawde,' sayd Ogyer, 'ye speke not wysely;
 wene ye to abasshe vs wyth wordes / ye shall 16
 not so; but whan ye shall see the oost and the grete
 power of Charlemagne togyder, ye shall be sore abashed,
 and atte the ende ye shall be full wrothe and sorry /
³Ye knowe well that the emperour Charlemagne made 20
 you knyghte, and ye slewe his newew Berthelot / and
 therefore thynke not to fynde peas towarde hym / And
 ye wene to be assured by cause the kynge Yon hath
 made you to close a castell / but well I wyll that he 24
 knowe that he shall repente for it full sore / For afore
 two monethes be paste we shall be in the myddes of
 his londe, and shall dystroye all his royame / And we
 shall brenne bothe castelles and townes.' 'Ogyer,' 28
 sayd Reynawd, 'I swere to you on my feyth, that
 whan kynge Charlemagne ⁴shall be wyth his oost in
 this londe,⁴ he shall wyshe hym selfe soone agayne in
 Fraunce wyth his folke. And whan ye shall see the 32
 harde ioustyng and sharpe werre that I and my brethern
 shall make agenste hym / he and ye shall be sore

¹ le roy, F. orig. h. vii. back. ² Fol. K. iv. ³ Regnault, F. orig.

⁴⁻⁴ sera retourne en gascoigne, F. orig. h. vii.

abasshed of it; and some of you speketh now hyc, that
 whan the dede shall come to preeff, he shall be full
 lowe' / 'Reynawde,' sayd then Ogger, 'I wyll hide no
 4 thyng from you / The kyng Charlemagne hath so grete
 a power / and is delibered for to besege Bordews / and
 yf he maye take you, he shall punyssh you cruelly /
 now doo as ye wyll. I have tolde you all ¹my message,
 8 and I goo agen to kyng Charlemagne' / whan he had sayd
 these wordes, he retorned towarde kyng Charlemagne,
 & shewed vnto hym what kyng Yon & reynawde had
 sayd / And whan the kyng vnderstode² the same / he
 12 shoke all for angre, & sayd / 'now shall it be seen how
 kyng Yon & Reynawde shall defende Gascoyn agenst
 me' / And thenne went forth charlemagne & passel
 the ryver of gyronde, and rode soo longe that he cam
 16 to Paris; and the daye after, he called all his barons
 that they sholde com to him. And whan they were all
 com / the kyng helde hys counseyll, & sayd to them,
 'Lordes, I have sent for you to telle you the grete
 20 shame that the kyng Yon of gascoyn dooth to me.
 For he holdeth the foure sones of Aymon, ³my mortell
 enmyes,³ in dyspyte of me, and ye knowe what *dommage*
 they have doon to me / for they slew my newew
 24 Berthelot / I dyd banyssh them oute of Fraunce;
 thenne made they the castell of Mountenforde wythin
 my londe / and I chassed them oute of it. Now ben
 they in Gascoyn wyth the kyng Yon, that sayth he
 28 shall deffende them agenste me, and he has gyven
 his suster to Reynawde / wherfore I praye you all that
 ye wyll helpe me that I be avenged.'

Ogger returns
 to the Emperor,
 and gives him
 the message from
 John and Rey-
 nawde.

Charlemagne
 holds a counsel of
 all his barons at
 Paris,

and asks their
 aid in taking
 vengeance on
 King John.

32 **A**nd whan Charlemagn had sayd this, there was
 none of the barons that answered to hym ony
 worde, for they were wery of the werre. that they had

¹ Fol. K. iv. back.

² ses paroles que le roy Yon et Regnault luy mandoient,
 F. orig. h. vii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. h. vii.

made soo long agenste Reynawde / ¹And Charlemagne
 sawe that no body answered to hym no thinge / he
 called to hym the duke naymes & ogier the dane / and
 the erle Guydellon / and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, 4
 what counseylle doo you gyve to me in this matere?'
 'Sir,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'yf ye wyll beleve me,
 I shall gyve you goode counseyll / Suffre your ooste to
 reste this fyve yeres / By cause that your folke is wery 8
 of the werre / so shall they reste theym selfe a lityll /
 And whan thei shall be fresshe / thenne ²shall ye mow
 make werre atte your wyll / for every man shall thenne
 com to it wyth good wyll.' And whan the emperour 12
 vnderstode this counseyll he was sore an angred for it,
 that he wente almost oute of his wyt. And as he
 wolde have sayd agenst the duke Naymes, there cam
 a yonge gentilman of grete beaulte / and broughte in 16
 his company XXX. fayr sqyers, well arrayed.³ this
 yonglynge cam to the palays, & wente vp / and whan
 he cam afore the emperour, he made his obeysaunce to
 hym full courtoysly. 'Frende,' sayd the kyng, 'ye be 20
 ryght welcom; what wynde brought you hider, & what
 be you' / 'sire,' sayd the squyer, 'I am called Row-
 lande of bretayn, & I am the sone of your suster and
 of the duke Myllon.'

24

Thenne whan Charlemagne vnderstode Rowlande
 slyke thus, he was right glad of hym, & toke
 hym by the hande & kyssed hym many tymes, & sayd
 to hym, 'ye be ryght welcom / I wyll that ye be made 28
 a knyghte to morow in y^e mornyng, & ye shall
 assaye yourself vpon Reynawde, the sone of Aymon.'
 'Syr,' sayd Rowlande, 'I shall doo your commaunde-
 ment, & I promyse you / Reynawde shall not be spared 32

Duke Naymes
 asks Charlemagne
 to grant the host
 peace for 5 years,
 as they are all
 weary of war.

The Emperor is
 about to reply in
 anger, when a
 young gentleman
 enters the palace,

and salutes him,

saying he is his
 nephew Roland.

Charlemagne
 receives him with
 joy,

and says he shall
 knight him,
 and send him to
 assail the four
 Sons.

¹ Et quant Charlemagne, F. orig. h. viii. back.

² Fol. K. v.

³ et vit le damoiseil emmy la court du palays et montre
 contremont les degrez. Et quant il fut au palays il sen vint
 devant l'empireur charlemagne. F. orig. h. viii. back.

of me, and he shall not here awaye no thyng of yours.
 He slewe my cosyn Berthelot, wherof I am right sory /
 and therefore I shall avenge his dethe, yf I maye by ony
 4 manere / or elles Reynawde shall slee me' / And in the
 mornyng the kynge Charlemagne dowbed his nevewe
 rowlande to a knyghte, wyth moche ioye and wyth
 grete honoure. and as the feste was a doynge / there
 8 came a messenger that sayd to the emperour, ¹' Most hie
 & moste puyssaunt prynce¹ / your men of Cologne
 recomende them ryght humbly to your gooale grace,
 And they doo you to wyte that the sarrasyns have
 12 ²besegeed them, And have hurte them ryght sore / For
 they have brente and dystroyed alle the contree / wher-
 fore they beseche you ryght humbly, that ye com for to
 helpe and socoure them yf it be your playsure / Or
 16 elles they are but deed / and vtterly dystroyed.'

Roland says he shall willingly avenge the death of Berthelot.

A messenger arrives from Cologne,

and tells the Emperor that the Saracens besiege their city,

and they cry for succour.

And whan the emperour vnderstode thyse tydynges
 he bowed his [head] towarde the erthe, and be-
 ganne to thynke a lityll / And whan Rowlande sawe
 20 his vncler that mused thus in hym selfe / he sayd vnto
 hym / ³' Wherof be ye soo dysmayed / Gyve me some
 parte of your men, And I shall goo reyse the sege of
 Cologne' / And whan the emperour herde Rowlande
 24 speke soo, he was ryght gladde of it, and embraced
 and kyssed hym full swetly, and sayd to hym / ' Fayr
 nevew / blessyd be the hour that ever ye were borne /
 For I knowe for certeyn that ye shalle kepe me fro
 28 peyne and traveylle, and in you shall be my rest and
 my comforte / And I wylle that ye goc there' / And
 thenne he gaaff hym XV. thousande men of armes well
 horsed ⁴& well arrayed⁴ / And whan they were well
 32 appareylled / Rowlande lighted vpon his horse and
 sayd to his vncler ⁴the kyng⁴ / ' Syre, I commende you
 to god.' ' Fayr nevewe,' sayd Charlemagne, ' I have

Roland volunteers to raise the siege at Cologne,

and takes with him xx. thousand men well armed.

¹⁻¹ Droit emperour, F. orig. h. viii. ² Fol. K. v. back.

³ Sire, F. orig. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

taken to you my men in your kepyng / I praye you
 that ye wyll kepe them well / and doo so moche that
 ye gete worshyp / and god be wyth you'¹ / 'sire,' sayd
 Rowlande, 'be not dysmayed, for at my retorn,² yf it⁴
 playse god,² ye shall knowe how that we have doo.'
 And whan he had sayd this worde / he toke leve of
 nis vncl / and wente on his waye wyth his folke /
 and they rode so longe by theyr Iourneys that they⁸
 came to cologne all by nyghte / and put theyr busshe-
 ment nyghe the oost / And as thei were nyghe the
 oost they met wyth certen sarrasins that cam³ agayn
 wyth a grete proye of oxen and shepe, and of men and¹²
 of wymen that were theyr prysoners / And made them
 suffre grete martyrdome /

They arrive at
Cologne,

and meet certain
Saracens carrying
away prisoners
and cattle.

Whan the frenshemen sawe theyr enmyes / They
 sayd in this maner / 'Lordes, our lorde hath¹⁶
 sente vs hyther. Here ben the traytours sarrasyns /
⁴that soo sore we have desired for to fyghte wyth
 theym⁴ / Now shall it be seen what we shall doo to theym /
 Putte vs amonge theym / for atte this hour they shall²⁰
 be overthrowen' / Whan they hadde spoken ynoughe,
 they made none other taryenge / but spored their
 horses and ranne vpon the sarrasyns by grete streynghte,
 Soo that in a lityll while they had theym dyscom-²⁴
 fyted soo sharpely, that they slewe theym all, And re-
 covered all the prysoners and the bestes. ¶ And
 shortly to speke, Whan the ooste of the pagnymes
 herde the noyse of the frenshemen⁵ they moved theym²⁸
 selfe / and lighted vpon their horses / and vpon the
 frenshemen. And whan the frenshe men sawe theym
 come, they wente agayne to their busshemente aswell
 as they coude /⁶ And beganne to chasse theym. 32

The French fall
upon them,

and slay them,
recovering all the
prisoners and
cattle.

The host of the
pagans fly,
pursued by the
folk of Charle-
magne.

¹ amen, F. orig. h. viii. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. h. viii.

³ Fol. K. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ que tant avons defirez, F. orig. I. i. back.

⁵ incontinent, F. orig.

⁶ et les sarazins, F. orig. I. i. back.

Whan Rowlande sawe that it was tyme to set
 vppon / he yssued oute of his busschement
 wyth his folke, and wente and smote vpon the sarra-
 4 syns so harde that he casted to the erthe a grete parte
 of theym. ¶ And to speke shortely, the bataylle be-
 ganne soo cruell and soo fell that it was ¹pyte to see /
 For ye sholde have seen soo many speres broken / and
 8 soo many sheeldes in two / and so many sarrasyns
 liynge deed on the grounde, soo that wyth peyne men
 myght go by fore the deed men that laye so thyeck one
 vpon thoder / & Rowlande spored his horse wyth y^e
 12 spores, & went & smote² a sarrasin that was a kyng &
 the chyef of y^e sarrasins oost, with so grete myght *that*
 he overthrew him to erthe, ³but he slewe hym not of
 that stroke / but taryed vpon hym, & gaaff to hym
 16 suche a stroke wyth his swerde vpon hys helme, ⁴that
 he made hym all a stonyed.⁴ And whan Rowlande
 sawe hym so evyll arayed, he bowed hymselfe, and toke
 hym for his prysoner, and dyd set hym agen vpon his
 20 horse & brought hym wyth hym. and whan the sar-
 rasins sawe their lorde taken, & sawe y^e woundre of
 armes that Rowlande made, & of the frenshmen / they
 putte theymselve to flighte full shamfully. And whan
 24 Rowlande sawe the sarrasins flee thus, he cryed wyth a
 highe voys / ‘Lordes, goo after theym / for they flee
 all / and yf they scape vs / it shall be to vs a grete
 blame towarde myn vncle the kyng Charlemagne, and
 28 we shall beholden for cowardes / wherfore I praye you
 lete not one escape, for ye shall have theym lightly,
 sith that I holde in my handes theyr kyng’ / Whan
 the frenshemen herde Rowlande speke thus, they sayd,
 32 ‘free knyghte, be not dysmayed of no thyng / for we
 make noo doubte that none of theym shall scape, but

Roland over-
 throws the chief
 of the Saracens,

and takes him
 prisoner;

the rest of his
 folk fly shame-
 fully.

¹ grant pitie, F. orig.

² moult cruellement, F. orig. I. i. back. ³ Fol. K. vi. back.

⁴—⁴ quil luy fist chauceler les dens en la gorge, F. orig.
 I. i. back.

The chief, whose name is Escorfaude, entreats Roland not to slay his men,

but to grant them a truce,

and promises that he and all his folk shall submit to the Emperor.

The truce is granted, and the French with Escorfaude, return to Paris.

Roland delivers the Saracen king to Charlemagne.

they shall be taken or slayn' / 'Lordes,' sayd thene
 the kyng sarrasin that Rowlande had taken, that had
 to name Escorfaude / 'They ben all myn / I praye you
 that ye kille theym not, for they ben all ynoughe 4
 dyscomfyted / sith that ye have taken me, but gyve
 theym tryews. And have me to kyng Charlemagne,
 yf it playse you / And yf ye maye doo so moche that
 Charlemagne pardonne me the grete offence that I have 8
 doon to hym, I shall holde from hensforthe all my
 herytage of hym, and yet all my lignage shall be obeys-
 saunte vnto his wyll, & of this ye maye beleve me.'
 'By my hede,' sayd rowlande / 'ye speke curtoysly' / 12
 '& by my feyth,' sayd Naymes, 'Escorfaude sayth
 well, & we shall do so' / they gaaf tryews to y^e sarasins,
 & toke their way agen to charlemagn, & brought escor-
 faude wyth them, & so longe thei rode *that* they cam 16
 to paris / and ¹whan the kyng Charlemagne knewe
 that his newewe Rowlande was come agayne to Parys,
 and that he had dyscomfyted the sarrasins, and broughte
 prysoner wyth hym kyng Escorfaude, he was ryght 20
 gladde of it / And anone he mounted on horsbacke,
 and came agenste his newewe Rowlande / And whan
 Rowlande sawe hym, he lighted down from his horse /
 and wente & caste hym selfe to the feete of kyng 24
 Charlemagne ²his vncle.² And anone he made hym
 to ryse vp / and kyssed hym swetly / And thenne Rou-
 lande sayd to hym, 'Syre, here I deliver vnto you the
 kyng Escorfaude *that* we have taken. He hathe tolde 28
 vs that he shall make hym selfe a crysten man / And
 that he and his lygnage shall holde theyr londes of
 you / yf ye wyll pardonne hym youre ylle wyll' /
 'Newewe,' sayd the kyng Charlemagne, 'there ys noo 32
 truste in hym / And therefore I wyll kepe me from hym.'
 Thenne commaunded the emperour that / Escorfaude
 sholde be broughte to pryson / and he sholde be well

¹ Fol. K. vii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

kepte, And that he sholde have all his wyll of mete
 and drynke / And after, whan Escorlawde was put in
 pryson / The kynge Charlemagne dyde calle to hym
 4 the duke Naymes, and sayd to hym, 'What thynke
 you by my newew Rowlande? What dyde he whan
 the batayll was assembled' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke
 Naymes, 'of Rowlande nedeth not to speke. For ever /
 8 sith that god was borne of the vyrgyne Marye, suche a
 knyghte was not seen / For he alone hathe overcomen
 the sarrasines¹ by his grete prowes / And yf he hadde
 a horse that myght bere hym whan he were armed / I
 12 swere by my feyth that ye sholde never have enmye /
 but that he sholde brynge hym to your mercy by force
 of armes /²Soo moche he is prue and valyaunte.² The
 kynge Charlemagne sware by his hede that he was
 16 ryght gladde therof / 'But tell me,' sayd he to³the
 duke Naymes / 'where myght men fynde suche a good
 horse as ye speke of' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke, 'yf ye
 wyll beleve me / I shall gyve you goode counseyll /
 20 Make to be cryed wyth a trompette vpon Mounte mar-
 tyr, that ye wyll see renne all the horses of your ooste.
 And he that shall renne beste, shall wyinne your crowne
 of golde, And fyve hundred marke of fyne silver, and
 24 a hundred rolles of silke / And all thus ye shall mowe
 know the beste horse of your royaume / And whan ye
 shall have seen hym / bye hym / & gyve hym to your
 newew Rowlande / And after, gyve leve to all your
 28 barons vnto the feste of saynt Iohn the baptyste nexte
 comynge' / 'Duk Naymes,' sayd the emperour Charle-
 magne, 'ye gyve me goode counseyll / And I shall do
 thus as ye have devysed.' Thenne the kynge made
 32 to be cryed vpon Mounte marter evyn thus as duk
 Naymes had devysed / And dyde make the lystes for
 the horses to renne in / And whan this was doon, he

The Emperor
 demands of Duke
 Naymes how
 Roland behaved
 in the battle.

Naymes declares
 that there is not
 his equal in
 prowess,

but that he
 lacketh a horse
 to bear him well.

Naymes counsels
 the Emperor to
 proclaim a race
 between all the
 horses of his
 host,
 the prize to be his
 crown of gold,
 and 500 marks of
 silver,
 and 100 rolls of
 silk,
 and the best horse
 to be bought for
 Roland.

¹ et desconfits par sa prouesse, F. orig. I. ii. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. I. ii. back.

³ Fol. K. vii. back.

made his crowne to be set atte the ende of the listes /
 and also the fyve hundred marke of sylver, and the
 hundred rolles of sylke / And this hangynge, a yoman
 wente to his countrey in gascoyn / and as he passed 4
 thrughe Montallan, he recounted to Reynawde & to
 Mawgys all the thyng that men wolde doo at Parys,
 And how Rowlande was come to the courte / And how
 he had dyscomfyted Escorfawde the kyng sarrasin, and 8
 how y^e kyng Charlemagn wolde have the best horse of
 all his royame for to gyve hym to Rowlande, and
 shewed the sayd yoman the pryce that the kyng had
 set. And also how the emperour Charlemagne gadred 12
 his ooste for to come to mountalban, And how the
 course of the horses sholde be made atte saynt Iohns
 tyme nexte comynge.

A yeoman goes to
 Gascogne,

and tells Rey-
 nawde all the
 tidings from
 Paris,

and the price that
 Charlemagne had
 placed on the
 best horse.

¹ **T**henne whan reynawde vnderstode thys worde, he 16
 began to laugh, & after sayd to maugis, ‘cosin,
 by all hallowes of god, Charlemagn ne shall see the beste
 tome of the worlde, but he shall not knowe that I shall
 have hys crowne. For I wyll go there vpon Bayarde, 20
 to see how he shall prove hym selfe atte thys tyme’ /
 ‘Syre,’ sayd Mawgys, ‘ye shall not doo so yet; but yf
 ye wyll goo there, suffre that I bere you company / soo
 shall you be more sure / and have with vs knyghtes 24
 well armed.’ ‘Gladly,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘syth that ye
 wyll soo.’ Whan it was tyme for to meve towarde
 Parys / Reynawde called to hym Alarde, Guycharde,
 and Rycharde ²his bretherne,² and ²Mawgys² his cosyn, 28
 and sayd vnto theym / ‘It is tyme that we goo to
 Parys / Take knyghtes chosen, and putte our selfe in
 the waye.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd his bretherne, ‘your com-
 maundemente shall be doon’ / And whan they were 32
 all appareylled / Reynawde came to his wyff, and sayd
 to her, ‘Lady, I praye you that ye doo kepe well my
 castell / and I shall come soone agen’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd

Reynawde de-
 clares his inten-
 tion of running
 Bayard before
 the King.

The Sons, with
 Mawgis and some
 chosen knyghts,
 set out for Paris.

¹ Fol. K. viii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. I. ii.

she, 'commaunde knyghtes that they ben not oute of
the waye / & I promyse you, yf the kyng Yon my
broder cam hym selfe, he sholde not come inne / nor
4 none other, vnto the tyme that ye be come agen / Now
goo god be wyth you' / Thenne toke Reynawde leve
of hys wyff / and sette hym selfe towarde the waye,
& his folke, and went to Parys. And whan they were
8 come to Orleauce, and hadde passed the ryver of Loyre,
men asked theym of whens they were. And Mawgys,
that spake for theym all, answered, 'Lordes, we ben
Bournoys, that go to Parys for to assaye our horses for
12 to wyinne the pryce *that* the kyng hath set vpon, yf god
wyll so consente.' Thenne by fayre wordes they passed
forth, & so longe they rode that thei came to Melym
but they entred not wythin the towne, but ¹lodged
16 theymself in a grete valey, and there they sojourned
them selfe & theyr horses foure dayes.

When they reach
Orleans, men
ask them from
whence they
came.

Mawgis replies,
they are Bour-
noys, and are
going to Paris
to run their
horses there.

Thenne whan cam the evyn of saynt Iohn, Rey-
nawd called Mawgis, & sayd to hym, 'What shall
20 we doo? to morowe shall be the courses of the horses /
wherfore I saye *that* it is covenable that we goo lye to
nyghte at Parys' / 'Cosin,' sayd / Mawgys, 'ye saye well
²and wysely.² Now lete me doo a lityll & playse you.'
24 Thenne toke Mawgis an herbe, & stamped it vpon a
stone wyth the pomell of his swerde / and tempered it
wyth water, and rubbed bayarde therwyth, soo that
anone he becam all white, in suche wyse that they that
28 had seen hym before, knewe hym not / and after he
enoynted Reynawde wyth an noyntement that he bare
alwayes wyth hym, & incontynent he becam to the age
of ³XX. yeres / And whan he had thus atorned Rey-
32 nawde and his horse / he toke hym, & broughte hym
afore ⁴his brethern and afore the other knyghtes,⁴ &

Mawgis takes a
herb,

and rubs Bayard
with it, so that
he becomes quite
white;

and also anoints
Reynawde with
an ointment,
which makes him
look like a youth.

¹ Fol. K. viii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. I. iii. back.

³ quinze ans, F. orig. I. iii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ les autres cheualliers freres de Regnault, F. orig. I. iii.
back.

sayd to theym / 'Lordes, telle me how thynke you; have I not well transfygured hym / shall not they maye com agen and not be knowen? Beholde bayarde, how he is wexen whyte, he shall lese the pryce for age.' 4

Thenne when the barons sawe reynawde & bayarde so torned / they began to laughe, & were gretly merveyllled how Mawgys had thus dysfygured theym / Whan Mawgys had transfygured reynawde & bayarde, 8 and hymselfe also, Reynawde mounted vpon bayarde, & mawgys vpon morell, and toke leve of their folke / But reynawde atte his departyng sayd to his bretherne / 'have no feere for me, For I shall not be knowen, yf god 12 wyll' / ¹Thenne wente Reynawde on his waye; and his folke wepte for hym,¹ for Reynawd wente in such a place where he had many enmyes / For yf Charlemagne had come take hym, all the golde of the worlde had 16 ²not saved hym / but he sholde have caused hym to be hanged / And whan they departed, Alarde sayd to Mawgys / 'I praye you for god that ye have my broder Reynawde for recomended / for yf it were not 20 for the truste that I have to you, I sholde not suffre that he sholde goo to Parys, for all the golde of spayne.' And thenne Reynawde and mawgys wente on theyr way. Now shall I leve a lityll to speke of theym, 24 And shall retourne to the kyng Charlemayn, that was at Parys wyth his folke.

Charlemagne sawe his barons that were all com / and thenne he called the duke Naymes, Ogger 28 the dane, and Foulques of moryllon, and sayd to theym / 'Lordes, I praye you that ye take an hundred knyghtes well armed, & goo towarde the waye of Orleaus / and beware that none goo by, but that ye 32 knowe theyr names, & that they ben well advysed / for

Reynawde and Mawgys take leve of their folk with much sorrow.

Alarde charges Mawgys that he should preserve Reynawde from all evil.

Charlemagne commands Naymes, Ozier and Foulques, that they take an hundred knights, and keep the way from Orleans, so that none may pass without their knowledge.

¹⁻¹ Lors se mist a la wye tout en plourant et ses gens plourient aussi, F. orig. I. iii. back.

² Fol. L. i.

I doubte me sore of Reynawde that he shall come /¹ for
 he weneth well hymselfe to be over subtyll¹ / and yf it
 cam in his hede, he sholde come soone hytherwarde' /
 4 'Syre,' sayd the barons, 'we shall doo gladly your
 commaundemente; & yf reynawde be soo folisshe that
 he come hitherwarde, he shall not scape vs / but he
 shall be deed or taken, & broughte a fore you' / And
 8 thenne they toke leve of kyng Charlemagne, & wente to
 make theym rely in theyr horses / and after mounted
 on horse backe wyth an hundred knyghtes well armed,
 and rode the waye towarde Orleauce / and arrested
 12 them selfe in the myddes of the waye, foure myles oute
 of Parys; and there they were a longe while that noc
 body passed by, and endured grete hungre and thurst.
 And whan the duke Naymes sawe that they were there
 16 for noughte, he sayd to Ogÿer, 'Syre ogÿer, by my
 feyth the kyng Charlemagn maketh vs lyke fooles / and
 holdeth vs for nyce & musardes, ²that he maketh vs to
 tari here aboute noughte.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'ye saye
 20 trouth / And god confounde me yf I tary ony lenger' /
 And whan they wolde have comyn agayn aback, the dake
 Naymes ³sawe com a ferre³ Reynawde and Mawgys /
 Thenne sayd Naymes to Foulques of moryilon / 'yonder
 24 I see comyng two men on horsbacke.' And whan
 Foulques sawe theym / he cryed wyth a highe voys /
 'by my feyth, here cometh reynaude / Now can he not
 scape by no maner / but he shall be hanged' / 'By my
 28 feyth,' sayd the duke naymes, 'ye saye trouth / For the
 horse that cometh afore is moche like Bayarde, the
 horse of Reynawde, yf he were of a nother colour' /
 Whan foulques vnderstode thise wordes, he sette hande
 32 to his swerde, and cam agenste Reynawde ryght nere;

The barons
 remain four miles
 out of Paris,
 where they suffer
 much hunger and
 thirst.

Duke Naymes
 sees Reynawde
 and Mawgis
 approach,

and marvels that
 the horse is so
 like Bayard,
 save for his
 colour.

¹⁻¹ Car vous scaues bien comment il est outrecuideux,
 F. orig. l. iii.

² Fol. l. i. back.

³⁻³ regarde au long chemiu et vit venir Reynault, F. orig.
 l. iii.

and whan he was well nyghe theym / he behelde
 theym / And whan he sawe that it was not Reynawde,
 he was all abasshed, & drewe hym selfe abacke. And
 Reynawde and Mawgys rode forthe their wayes. And 4
 whan the duke Naymes sawe *that* they cam forth / he
 wente agenste theym, and called Mawgis, and sayd to
 hym, 'What ben ye / and whether goo ye?' 'Sire,'
 sayd Mawgys, 'I am borne of Peron / & my name is 8
 Iousser.' 'Frende,' sayd the duke naymes, 'can not ye
 telle me noothyng of reynawde the sone of Aymon, the
 worthy knyghte?' 'Ye,' sayd Mawgys, 'by my feyth /
 he hath ryden wyth vs two dayes, and he is not passed 12
 two myles behynde vs' / At that howr Reynawde spake
 not / thenne sayd naymes, 'what is he that is wyth
 you, that holdeth hym soo styll, and that sayth no
 worde / I beleve that he hath some evyll thoughte' / 16
 'sire,' sayd Mawgis, 'it is my sone / and he can not
 speke no frenshe / For he hath be norissed in the
 grete Bretayn' / Whan the duke naymes vnderstode
 this / he sayd to Reynawde / 'tell me, vassall, knowest 20
 thou noo tidynges of Reynawde, the sone ¹ of Aymon?'
 and Reynawde answered to hym in this wyse: ² 'By
 my feyth, noo poynte frenshe, graunt Bretayne horse, a
 Parys cloyth ganera my.' ³ And contrefaytted thus his 24
 langage / by cause the duke Naymes sholde not knowe
 hym.

Thenne whan the duke Naymes herde Reynawde
 speke thus evyll / he began to laughe / And after 28
 sayd to hym agayn / 'a hundred devylles have well
 taught the to speke so good frenshe. ³ Vassayll, I wote
 not what you sayste, *thou* arte more like a foole than a
 bysshop.' And soo naymes lete hym in peas / And 32

Naymes demands
 of them what men
 they are.

Mawgis answers
 that his name is
 Iousser,
 and that he was
 born in Peron;

and that Rey-
 nawde is his son,
 and cannot talk
 French.

Naymes lets
 them go in peace,

¹ Fol. L. ii.

²⁻² ymy seay poin francoys en bretant, parler cheval a paris, couronne roy non draps horniz gaigner my, F. orig. I. iv. back.

³ Sire, F. orig. I. iv. back.

thenne Reynawde and Mawgys rode so longe that they
 cam to Parys, ¹tyme ynoughe for to doo their enter-
 pryse¹ / And atte the entre of the towne / they mette
 4 wyth an evyll rybawde / to whom god gyve yll ad-
 venture, For he knewe Reynawde / ¹And as sone as
 he sawe hym,¹ he beganne to crye wyth a highe voys,
 ‘here come Reynawde y^e sone of Aymon.’ Whan the
 8 folke vnderstode the crye / they wente that waye. And
 whan the yll¹ rybawde sawe com so many folke / he was
 yet more hardy than he was afore, and wente afore the
 other / and toke Reynawde by the brydell of Bayarde /
 12 And whan Bayarde sawe that / he lifted his forfote and
 smote the Rybawde vpon the breste / that he braste the
 herte in hys bely / and casted hym all deed to the erth /
 And whan the peple sawe the stroke / they beganne all
 16 to laughe / And Bayarde wente forthe, and Mawgys,
 after that they were not knowen, And passed thoroughe
 the towne to the olde market / And whan they were
 comen there afore the lodges / they founde all the
 20 Innes full / wherof reynawde was merveylled. And
 soo they lighted att a cordueners house / that was of
 the devylles syde / For by hym was almoste Reynawde
 and Mawgys taken / and delyvered to Charlemagne,
 24 that hys bretherne sholde not have ²holpen hym
 of noo thyng. Whan they were lighted and lodged
 where it is sayd / And that theyr horses were well
 dressed, Mawgys dyde doo make a bedde for Reynawde,
 28 and toke a threde of sylke / and cered it well, and
 came to bayarde, and bounde hym the mowes of the
 feete there wyth all well streyghte. And the ooste
 behelde well this / and after sayd to hym / ‘Why have
 32 you thus bounde this horse / he shall not conne well
 goo / But telle me, what knyghte is he that oweth the
 horse / For yf he hadde of age more than he hath
 I sholde wene to knowe hym / For he is moche like

and they arrive at Paris.

In the town a rascal recognises Reynawde, and cries out that here is the son of Aymon.

He seizes Bayard by the bridle;

the horse kills him with his fore foot.

Reynawde and Mawgis alight at the house of a shoemaker.

Mawgis binds the feet of Bayard with silk,

¹-1 omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. L. ii. baek.

Reynawd the sone of Aymon.' 'Syre,' sayd Mawgys,
 'I have bounde this horse thus by cause he wyll fyghte /
 and the yoman that rydeth vpon hym is my sone /
 and tells the host that he who rides
 on him is his son. Nowe have I telled you that that ye have asked me.' 4
 'Certes,' answered the ooste, 'your sone is a fayre
 felawe / but I / beleve ye moeke me.' ¶ Now here a
 grete mysadventure that happed to Reynawde & to
 mawgys. For thus as mawgys spake wyth his ooste, he 8
 named reynawde. 'Ha, syre,' sayd thenne the ooste,
 'Ye have sayd ynoughe / ye nede not for to hyde
 it ony more. It ys Reynawde, wythoute ony doubte,
 that slewe Berthelot, the nevewe of the kyng, wyth a 12
 chesse borde / I shall telle it to the kyng afore that I
 slepe.'

The host recog-
 nises Reynawde,
 and says he will
 tell the Emperor
 that the son of
 Aymon is here.

And whan Reynawde vnderstode this / he shooke
 alle for angre, And rose from his place, and toke 16
 his swerde, and sayd, 'Hooste, ye have myssayed, For
 I never sawe Reynawde / nor I wote not what he is' /
 'Holde your peas,' sayd the ooste, 'I knowe you well /
 By my hede, ye are Reynawde the sone of Aymon' / 20
 And whan he hadde sayd thyse wordes, he wente oute
 of his howse / And whan Reynawde sawe that / he
 wente a goode paas after hys oost, And smote hym soo
 grete a stroke wyth his swerde vppon his ¹hede, that he 24
 clove hym vnto the teeth. And whan mawgys sawe
 this, he was right sory for it / and sayd to Reynawde /
 'What have you doon / have you loste your wytte? ²but
 yf god thynke vppon vs, ²we ben loste and ashamed.' 28
 'I can not doo therto,' sayd Reynawde / 'But how
 somever it gooth, he hath his rewarde.' And thenne
 mawgys cam forthwyth to the stable, and saddled
 Bayarde, And made Reynawde to mounte vpon hym / 32
 And after hymselfe lighted vppon morell / and wente
 oute of the lodges. And whan the wyffe and the

Reynawde in
 anger slays the
 host,

and he and
 Mawgis mount
 their horses,

¹ Fol. L. iii.

² si dieu ne pence de nous, F. orig. I. iv.

chyl dren of the ooste sawe thys that Reynawde hadde
doon / they beganne to crye. But Reynawde and
mawgys were soone oute of theyr waye, soo that none
4 wyste where that they were become / And wente and
put theymselfe amouge the other in the preesse / and
they were never knowen. But bayarde wente halt-
yngge / and wente to the gate of saynte Martyne / and
8 there they bode all the nyghte. And whan it was
daye, they wente wyth the other to the chirche, where
the kynge herde hys¹ masse. And whan the servyse
was doon, the kynge came oute of the chirche / and
12 mounted vpon his horse / and all the other barons
wyth hym, and came vpon the ryver of Sayne in to
the melowe. And Reynawde & Mawgys wente wyth
theym / but bayarde wente ryghte sore haltynge.
16 And whan the kynge was come there / he commaunded
that his crowne sholde be sette atte the ende of the
lystes, And the fyve hundred marke of sylver, And also
the C clothes of sylke / And incontynente the duke
20 Naymes and Ogyer dyde as the kynge hadde com-
maunded. And whan all was appareylled / Thenne
sholde ye have seen knyghtes lepe a horse backe, For
every man trowed to have goten the pryce. And the
24 kynge commaunded to the duke Naymes and Oger,
to Guydelon of ²Bourgogne, and to Rycharde of Nor-
mandy, that they sholde take a hundred knyghtes well
armed, and that they sholde kepe well the feest, that
28 noo noyse nor noo stryffe were there made / and that
none sholde wronge thother / And they dyde his
commaundement. And thenne the knyghtes that
sholde renne, beganne to beholde Reynawde, that was
32 mounted vpon haltynge Bayarde³ / And soo they began
to laugh and seorne wyth hym, And sayd ¹in Iape¹ the

and mix them-
selves hastily
with the other
riders.

Charlemagne
with his barons
go into the
meadow,
where Reynawde
and Mawgis
follow.

All the knyghts
mount their
horses.

The Emperor
commands that
no noise and
strife shall take
place among the
knyghts.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. I. v. back. ² Fol. L. iii. back.

³ qui clochoit si fort comme je vous ay compte, F. orig. I. v. back.

The knights ridicule Reynawde because Bayard goes so lame,

one to the other / 'this felawe shall wyinne the pryce
And the crowne of golde' / and sayd, 'beware that his
fote smyte you not.' and the other sayd, 'he shall
wyinne the devylle' / And a nother knyghte sayd to **4**
Reynawde / 'ye have well doon, swete knyghte, for to
have broughte your¹ horse here / And yf god destyneth
hym, he shall wyinne the pryse this daye' / Reynawde
vnderstode full well the grete wordes that men sayd to **8**
him, wherof his herte swelled hyghe / that yf it had
not be for doute to have loste the pryce / he wolde
have begonne the stryffe. And therefore he held his
peas / and made nother noyse nor worde agenste it ² / **12**

for which the
Emperor is
wrath,

and commands
that they cease
their laughter.

Thenne whan themperour vnderstode y^e grete wordes
that the knyghtes sayd to Reynawde / he was
wroth for it, And he sayd soo hyghe that it was well
herde of all, 'I commaunde you, vpon peyne of my **16**
grace, that ye saye noo shame nor yll worde to noo
maner of knyghte; For yf ye doo, ye shall angre me
sore.' But Reynawde cared not moche of that it was
sayd to hym / Whan the duke Naymes and ogier sawe **20**
that it was tyme for to renne / they made to sowne the
trompettes. Thenne every man putted hymselfe for to
renne / And whan Mawgys sawe that every man ranne,
he lyghted on foote, and vnbounde the foote of **24**
Bayarde. But or ever he was vnbounde / the other
were well ferre; ³and whan Reynawde sawe that it was
tyme for to renne after thother, he spored his horse /
and sayd, 'Bayarde / we ben ferre behynde, ye myghte **28**
well abyde / For yf ye be not soone afore ye shall be
blamed.' whan bayarde herde ⁴his mayster⁴ speke thus,
he vnderstode hym as well as thoughe he had ben a
man / Thenne he grylled his nostrelles, and bare his **32**

The trumpets
sound,
and all the horses
set off.

Mawgis unbinds
Bayard's foot,

¹ bon cheval, F. orig. I. v. back.

² Car il ne luy chaloit de tout ce que ilz luy disoient, F. orig. I. v. back.

³ Fol. L. iv.

⁴⁻⁴ Reynault, F. orig. I. v.

hede vp, and made a longe neeke / and toke his cours
 so faste that it semed the erthe sholde have sonken
 vnder hym / and wythin a whyle he was passed all the
 4 other horses ¹a ferre way,¹ so *that* men coude not see
 hym for duste that he reysed. And whan they that toke
 hede to the courses, sawe Bayarde reme thus, they were
 gretly abashed wyth all, and sayd the one to thother,
 8 'beholde that whyte horse ²renneth faste & lighte² /
 and but late he halted sore / he is the best of all
 thother that ben here' /

and he surpasses
 all the other
 horses in speed.

12 **A**nd whan themperour sawe this / he called to hym
 Rycharde of Normandy / and sayd to hym,
 'sawe ye ever so many good horses togyder as here ben
 now? but the whyte passeth theym all / god, how is
 he well lik bayarde, the horse of Reynawde / yf he had
 16 the heres of bayarde / I sholde saye that it were he
 hymself, and he that sitteth vpon hym is also lighte &
 prue.'

20 **T**hus wyte it, that Reynawde hath doo soo moche
 that bayarde hath overronne all thother horses.
 And whan he was at the ende of the listes / he toke
 the crowne & put it on his arme / and the silver & the
 clothe he lefte alone / for he dayned not to take theym.
 24 And whan he had taken y^e crowne, he returned agen to-
 warde the kyng Charlemagne ³al fayra and softe paas³ /
 whan the kyng sawe hym com towarde hym / he sayd
 to hym all laughyng, 'Frende, abyde a litil I praye
 28 you / for yf ye wyll have my crowne, ye shall have it ;
 & I shall gyve you for your horse so gret havoyr *that*
 ye shall never be poure.' 'By god,' sayd Reynawde,
 'thise wordes shall ⁴nought awaylle you ; now have I
 32 well begyled you / for I go doo marchandyse elles
 where, & I holde you for a chylde / I have soo often

Bayard finishes
 the course,

and Reynawde
 takes the crown,

and returns to
 Charlemagne.

¹⁻¹ si grandement, F. orig. I. v.

²⁻² Il va roidement, F. orig. I. v.

³⁻³ tout le beau petit pas, F. orig. i. v. ⁴ Fol. L. iv. back.

He discloses
himself,
and tells the
Emperor he may
look elsewhere
for a horse for
Roland;

and with this
he departs on
Bayard.

The Emperor
in great wrath,
commands his
knights to follow
Reynawde.

Charlemagne and
his knights ar-
rive at the river
Seine,
and see Reynawde
on the other side;
the King begs
for his crown.

angred you, & of your men I have so many slayn / I am
Reynawd, that bereth awaye your crowne! seke elles
where for a nother horse that ye shall gyve to Rowlande
for to overcom bayarde / for ye shall not have bayarde 4
nor also your crowne' / And assone that he had sayd
this / he spored bayarde wyth his spores, & went so fast
away that it semed that the tempest had chassed hym /
And whan y^e kyng charlemayn vnderstode this that 8
reynawde had sayd to hym, he was wode angry for it,
that he wyste not ¹ what he shokde doo, so that he myght
not of a grete while speke a worde¹ / And whan he had
recovered his speche, he began to crye wyth a highe 12
voys / 'now after, lordes, after / for it is my enmye
reynawde, the sone of aymon'² / And whan the knyghtes
herde thus erie the kyng charlemayn, they spored their
horses wyth the spores, & wente after reynawde; but 16
theyr goynge avaylled them noughte, For baiarde was
ferre from them wythin a while, soo that they wyste
not where he was becom. and reynawde cam to sayn,
& passed over it all atte his ease wyth swymmynge / for 20
bayarde was well wonte therto / and also he had passed
it afore wyth more grete hast / & whan reynawd³ was
thus passed the ryver of sayne / he lighted from
bayarde at the banke of hit.³ This hangyng,⁴ the kyng 24
Charlemagn & his knyghtes that folowed after hym
came to the ryver side⁴ / and began to calle Reynaude,
& sayd to hym, ⁵ 'Ha, true manson,⁵ yelde me my
crowne agen, & I shall gyve the ten tymes as moche as 28
it is worthe / and I shall gyve the tryews two yeres /
soo that thiself & thy brethern shall mow goo in arde /
yn to se your moder / the whiche desireth sore to see

1-1 quil devoit faire dung grant pisse, F. orig. I. vi. back.

2 ung fier et dur courage, F. orig. I. vi. back.

3-3 fut outre, il ce descend a la rive, F. orig. I. vi. back.

4-4 Charlemaigne arriva de lautre quartier qui luy courroit
apres, F. orig. I. vi. back.

5-5 a filz de proudomme, F. orig. I. vi. back.

- you / and there is no knyghte in my londe¹ that shall
saye contrary to ²it.' 'by god,' said reynawde, 'as for
thyse wordes avaylle you nothyng / for ye shall never
4 have agen your crowne. I shall selle it, & pay my
knyghtes wyth all / and the charboncle *that* thus shineth
shall be set hie vpon my pavyllion, to thende *that* they
that shall go to saynt Iames in Galis maye see it the
8 better / and ye shall be blamed of your knyghtes that
ye have loste your crowne bi the horse bayarde.' Whan
charlemayn herde hym speke thus, he wyste not what
he sholde saye for angre, and kept hymself styll like as
12 he had ben deed. and whan reinawd had sayd so, he
mounted agen vpon bayarde, & put hym selfe to the
waye, but not the right waye / but rode thurgh a
lityll pathe whiche he had passed afore tyme /
- 16 **N**ow shall I telle you of mawgys, how he dyde for
to com out of Parys, *that* was mounted vpon his
horse morell. Whan he wyst that reynawde was
passed sayn / he yssued out of Parys, ³& passed the
20 ryver over the brydge³ as soone as he myght. and
whan he was without / ⁴he began to loke after rey-
nawde; & as he rode, he loked a traverse, & sawe
Reynawde /⁴ so called he after hym as hie as he coude /
24 'cosin, thynke to ryde fast, for to tary here no good
shall com to vs' / 'Cosyn,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye
well, & we shall doo so' / And so they toke their waye
towarde myllon / and whan alarde saw his broder com
28 & mawgis, he sayd to his folke, 'Lordes, we maye well
com oute of our bushement / For I see com my
brother Reynawde & Mawgys.' 'alas,' sayd Rycharde,
'I see theym com wyth grete hast; I fere me moche
32 that men chace theym / now lighte we all on horsbacke,

Reynawde says he
shall never give
it up,

but shall put the
carbuncle that is
in it, over his
pavilion.

He mounts
Bayard again,
and rides away.

Mawgis leaves
Paris on his black
horse,

and finds Rey-
nawde on the
way.

They arrive at
Melun,

¹ si hardi, F. orig.

² Fol. L. v.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. I. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ Il commença a crier. Et aussi comme il sen aloit, il regarda a travers et vit Reynault venir, F. orig. I. vi.

& yf they have mystre of vs, Lete vs goo helpe & socoure theym' / And they answered all, 'we ben all redy' / and whan they came out of their ¹bushemente, there cam Reynawde and Mawgys, that sayd to theym / 4
²'lordes, thynke to make hast / For the longe taryeng myght doo to vs harme, by cause that I bryng wyth me the crowne ³of Charlemagne,³ the whiche bayarde hath made me wyzne by his prowes.' and whan alarde ⁸vnderstode his brother speke thus, he was so gretly in ioye that he wyste not what he sholde say, but colled & kyssed his broder Reynawde wyth grete ioye. And thenne incontinente they put theymselfe to the waye / 12
 & so long thei rode that they cam to orleauce, & passed the ryver of loyre wyth all diligence / and after they made so moche bi their iorneyes, that they cam to montalban ³hole & glad, thanked be god³ / 16

Thenne whan they were at Mountalban, the lady came theym agenste, & receyved them ryght gladly / and made theym ryght grete chere / and all the folke of the castell were right glad of the comynge of 20
 Reynawde & of his bretherne / and asked hym how he had doon in his vyage.⁴ 'Lordes,' sayd Reynawde, 'well, god gramercy, I was knowen of myn oost, the whiche wolde have betrayed & acused me, but I solde 24
 it to hym full dere, for I cloof his hede to the teeth / & went oute of his hous by nyght, & put vs in the presse of thother ; but ye wyst never folke so well scorned as we were / for y^e folke of charlemagne 28
 mocked me & bayarde, wherof y^e kyng was angry / and thus they lefte me in peas. And whan ⁵the trompettes⁵ began to blowe for to begynne the cours / they that shold ronne, departed incontinente, and I bode behynde 32
 well the shotte of a bowe. And I tell you well for

¹ kushemente in Caxton. ² Fol. L. v. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. I. vi.

⁴ pour quoy il estoit ale a paris, F. orig. I. vii. back.

⁵⁻⁵ la trompette, F. orig.

where they meet
the other three
sons.

They all ride to
Orleans,

and from thence
to Montalban.

All the folk of
the castle are
joyful at the
coming of the
Sons and Mawgis.

Reynawde relates
to them all his
adventures,

certeyn, there were well twenty thowsande horses.
 And whan I sawe me behynde / I sayd to Bayarde that
 it sholde be grete shame to hym yf he abode behynde.
 4 But, god gramercy, and bayarde, I over ranne them all,
 And bare away the pryce / ¹and of it I have broughte
 wyth me the crowne of Charlemagne, wherof he ys full
 8 sori' / whan they of mountalban vnderstode these
 wordes, they were right glad / But here I leve to speke
 of reynawd & of his brethern, & retorne to speke of the
 kyng charlemagn, that was at parys, right sori for his
 crowne that he hadde loste.

and how he won
 the crown of
 Charlemagne.

CHAPTER VIII.

12 ¶ How the kyng Charlemagne went in to
 Gascoyn with² his oost / And how he
 beseged reynawde & his brethern wythin
 y^e castle of Montalban. And how rey-
 16 nawde wan the fyrst batayll of the kyng,
 the whiche Rowlande condnytted, & Olyver
 & the bysshop Turpyn.³

¶ Capitulum viij.

20 **I**n this party sheweth the history, that whan rey-
 nawde⁴ had wonne the crowne of kyng charlemagne,
 the kyng abode all wrothe & sore an angred / and he
 called all his barons, & sayd to theym / 'Lordes, I
 24 praye you *that* ye counseille me how I shall⁵ maye
 avenge me of reynawde the sone of Aymon / For
 ye knowe how he hath angred me / I promyse you, but
 that I maye have my crowne agen, I shall wexe madde
 28 all quycke; for my corage telleth me that he shall do
 breke it, & he shall put the carbonele that is theron

Charlemagne
 demants of his
 barons how he
 may regain his
 crown from
 Reynawde.

¹ Fol. L. vi. ² tout son ost, F. orig. I. vii. back.

³ dont le roy Charlemaigne cuida enraiger tout vif de honte
 quil en eust, F. orig. I. vii. back.

⁴ le filz aymon, F. orig.

⁵ be able.

vpon his pavyllion / by cause the folke that goo to saynt
 Iames shall see it, ¹to my grete vitupere & shame.¹
 ‘Syr,’ sayd rowlande, ‘if ye wyll avenge you well of
 reynawd / goo we vpon hym and we shall exyle & 4
 distroye hym & his londe, and if the kyng Yon of Gas-
 coyn maye be taken soo make iustyce of hym in sucho
 wyse that it maye be remembred perpetuelly’ / ‘Nevew,’
 sayd the kyng, ‘ye saye well and wysely, & it shall be 8
 doon as ye have advysed me / & I promyse you that I
 shall never have ioye tyl *that* I be avenged at my wyll.’
 ‘Sir,’ sayd y^e duke naymes, ‘leve this angre in peas /
 ye know how reynawd is your emnye, & prayseth you 12
 no thing / but & ye wyll, I shall gyve ²you suche
 counseill *that* reynawde shall be brought to dystruccion,
 & his brethern & mawgys also / syr, doo *that* your
 barons be redy atte candelmas nexte comynge / and 16
 that every one of theym make good provysion of
 vitaylle for vij yere / and thenne abyde so longe afore
 Montalban tyll that ye take them / and after, ye shall
 avenge your selfe at your wyll vpon theym’ / 20

Naymes counsels
 him to wait until
 next Candelmas,

and then besiege
 Montalban,
 and avenge him-
 self on the Sons.

Thenne whan the kyng Charlemagn vnderstode the
 good counseyll that the duke Naymes had gyven
 vnto hym / he lifte vp his hede & sayd, ‘Naymes, it is
 not the fyrste good counseyll that ye have gyven to 24
 me / and I wyll that it be doon as ye saye.’ And
 thenne the kyng Charlemagne dyd doo make his
 lettres, and sent theym thurgh all his empyre. In the
 whiche lettres was conteyned, *that* every man that was 28
 acustomed to bere armes ³and to goo to the werre,³
 sholde come to hym at the feest of candelmas nexte
 folowyng, well garnysshed of vytaylle for the space of
 VII yeres, for to abyde att sege afore Montalban / 32
 whan the barons knewe the kynges wyll / every man

Charlemagne ac-
 cepts the counsel
 of Naymes,

and sends letters
 through all his
 land summoning
 men for war.

¹⁻¹ et quil me soit reproche de tous ceulx qui la verront,
 F. orig. I. vii.

² Fol. L. vi. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. I. vii.

made hymself redy as well as he cowde, & cam to
 Parys, and presented them to kyng Charlemagne &
 to his nevewe Rowlande. and bycause of the grete
 4 nombre of folke that were come there / they myght not
 lodge alle wythin Parys / but they lodged wythoute the
 towne, vpon the ryver of Sayne / Whan the kyng sawe
 that all his barons were com / he made theym all to
 8 com byfore hym, & sayd to theym / ‘ Lordes, ye all
 know right wel, at the leste the most party of you / how
 I have overcom & subdued xl kynges ¹in my dayes¹ /
 the whiche are all to me obeysaunt / except the kyng
 12 Yon of gascoyn, *that* hath wythdrawe in his londe my
 enmyes mortall, *that* ben the foure sones of aymon. ye
 knowe wel y^e grete dishonour² thei have doon to me /
³wherof I me *complayne* vnto you, & praye you &
 16 *commaunde* you, *that* ye come wyth me in to ⁴gascoyn,
 for to helpe me that I be avenged of the grete harme &
 shame ⁵that thyse foure sones of Aymon doo to me ¹⁵
 For by your ooth / ye ben all beholden therunto.’

So many toke
 arrive at Paris
 that they have to
 lodge outside the
 town on the river
 Seine.

20 **T**henne sayd the erle of Nantuell / ‘ Syre, we shall
 not goo there at this tyme.⁶ Ye knowe well that
 we ben come oute of Spayne but late / wherof we ben
 yet all wery. And also in this felowship ben many
 24 prynces and barons that have not ben yet in theyr
 countrey, nor seen theyr wyves and chyldeyn, and ye
 wyll that we goo in to Gascoyne vpon the kyng Yon /
 and vpon the foure sones of Aymon. And I telle you,
 28 that the two woundes that I receyved in Spayne ben not
 yet hoole / and therefore we maye not goo ⁷in to Gas-
 coyne at thys tyme⁷ / But ⁷yf it playse you,⁷ ye shall
 doo as a good kyng and a sage / and shall shewe that

The Earle of
 Nantuell begs
 Charlemagne to
 grant his soldiers
 rest, as they are
 all weary,
 and to let the
 barons go into
 the countrey to
 see their wives
 and chyldeyn,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. I. vii. ² et dommaige, F. orig.

³ tous les jours dont a vous me complains, F. orig. I. viii. back.

⁴ Fol. L. vii.

⁵⁻⁵ le quel est moult grant, F. orig. I. viii. back.

⁶ car nous ne pouvons, F. orig. I. viii. back.

⁷⁻⁷ omitted, F. orig. I. viii. back.

until next Whitsuntide.

The King in great anger, says he will only take the young men with him, and leave behind those who are faint-hearted;

and the land of Gascoigne shall be divided amongst them.

A spy of Reynawde's overhears the King, and departs for Montalban to tell his tidings.

ye love your folke / For ye oughte to kepe theym as
 your selfe / Wythdrawe your ooste vnto whytsontyde
 nexte comyng / & gyve leve to alle your barons to goo
 to theyr places for to rest theym a while. And whan 4
 the tyme shall be come, ¹and that your playsure is
 to calle theym / They shall be all freshe and redy to
 fulfyll your commaundement wyth all dilygence.¹
 Whan the kyng vnderstode thyse wordes he was wroth, 8
 and sware by saynte Denys of Fraunce / saynge in this
 maner: 'Yf I sholde be dysherytet, I sholde goo now
 in to Gascoyne / and I shall take wyth me alle the
 yonge folke of my ooste, the whyche I shall putte in 12
 good arraye honestly / and I shall gyve theym all that
 they shall nede / thoughe ye shold abyde behynde,
 as weke men and feynte.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke
 Naymes, 'ye saye well; For this yonge men shall be 16
 ryghte glad for to assaye themselfe.' 'Therefore wyll
 I do it,' sayd kyng charlemagn, ' & so shall y^e kyng
 Yon be destroyed; & whan I shall have reynawde &
 his bretherne / and Mawgys the ²theff taken, I shall 20
 departe the londe of gascoyn to this yonge knyghtes for
 theyr herytage.' This hangynge, that the kyng Charle-
 magne sayd thyse wordes / a spye that longed to
 Reynawde was in this companye, that vnderstode alle 24
 that sayd ys / And whan the spye hadde herde all
 togyder well, he put hym selfe to the waye, And dyde
 soo moche by his Iourneys, that he came to Moun-
 talban, where he founde Reynaude, his bretherne, and 28
 Mawgys / And Incontynente that Reynawde sawe
 hym / he demaunded of hym, 'what tydynges brynge
 you from Parys and from the courte of kyng
 Charlemagne' / 'My lorde,' sayd the spye / 'Wyte it 32
 that kyng Charlemagne is gretely wrothe wyth kyng

¹⁻¹ Ilz vendront de bon gre et de bon vouloir pour aler en Gascongne auecques vous ou la ou vous les voulores mener, F. orig. I. viii. back.

² Fol. L. vii. back.

Yon, and agenste you / & agenst your bretherne / and
 agenst mawgys / He hath sent for all his subjectes
 in his empyre / but none wolde have comen wyth hym
 4 'in to Gascoyn¹ / And thenne he sware ¹seynte Denys
 that he sholde come in to thyse partyes¹ / and sholde
 brynge wyth hym none other but all younge knyghtes /
 To the whyche he shall gyve all Gascoyn / And sayth
 8 that he shall besege Mountalban / and shalle doo to be
 caste down the grete towre / and shall sette all Gascoyn
 in a fyre and flamme.' Thenne² sayd Reynawde to his
 folke / 'be not discouraged of no thyng, For I shall see
 12 how Rowlande and Olyvere shall bere theym selfe
 agenste me and my bretherne.' And thenne wente
 Reynawde in to the halle / And founde his bretherne
 and Mawgys wyth hys knyghtes, and sayd to theym /
 16 'Lordes, I brynge you tydynges / Now wyte that the
 kynge Charlemagn cometh to besege vs / and bryngeth
 wyth hym all the puyssaunce of fraunce / Now lete vs
 thynke to receyve hym well / for he shall have more to
 20 do than he weneth' / 'broder,' sayd alarde, 'have no
 doubte / for they shall be well receyved / for as long *that*
 we shall ³lyve, and shall see you ryde vpon Bayarde, we
 shall not faylle you / nor we shall not be a ferde to be
 24 take / nor ylle handled; For no man a lyve is worthe
 you / nother of goodnes nor of prowes' /

This hangynge, Charlemagne was advysed and
 thoughte vpon the counseyll that the duke of
 28 Nantuell hadde gyven to hym / And after, he called
 hys folke, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, I gyve you leve,
 and lete you wyte that atte Ester I shall holde my
 counseyll generall / ¹and it playse god¹ / Now kepe
 32 that ye faylle not to come thenne, well appareylled and
 redy. For I wolde not leve for noo thyng / but that I
 sholde goo see the kynge Yon. And yf he yelde me

The spy tells
 Reynawde how
 the Emperor is
 coming to besiege
 his castle,

and how he will
 give all Gascoyne
 to his young
 knights.

Reynawde relates
 to his brethren
 and Mawgis how
 Charlemagne
 would besiege
 them.

Charlemagne
 gives leave to his
 folk to rest until
 Easter,

when he bids
 them come appa-
 relled for war.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. I. viii. ² He Dieu, F. orig.

³ Fol. L. viii.

not the foure sones of Aymon / I shall doo to hym
 wythoute doubte soo moche shame, that I shall make
 his berde to be cutte harde by the chynne. And also
 I shall take the crowne ¹of Gascoyn¹ from hys hede / 4
 and I shall make hym come a foote after me, beggyng
 his brede.' And whan he had sayd thyse wordes /
 The barons toke leve of Charlemagne / and wente in to
 theyr countreys / But atte theyr departyng / Charle- 8
 magne sayd to theym / 'Lordes, remembre well your
 selfe, that ye come atte the terme that I have sette /
 For I swere vnto you, that thoos that shall not come /
 yf I ever come agen from Gascoyn, ²they shall repente 12
 full sore.'² Shortly to speke, Rycharde wente in to hys
 duchye of normandy, Salamon in to bretayn / Godfroy
 in to auynon, Hughe the olde & Dyssers in to spayne,
 and Bertons in to almayn / And all the other, everyche 16
 in to hys owne countrey /

The barons depart
 for their homes,

Whan it was tyme for to come agen to the courte
 at y^e terme *that* charlemagne had set / every
 man made hymself redy as well as he coude / for to 20
 com to y^e court, as thei were expressly charged they
 sholde doo / First came there Ry^{ch}[arde of Normandye,
 and brought wyth hym manye a noble knyght, and
 presented hym selfe to fore the kynge Charlemagne, 24
 evyn at saynt Denys. After, came Salamon of Bretayne,
 and brought *with* him of hys barons a fayre companye,
 and presented hymselfe to the kynge at saynt Denys.
 After, came Dyssyers of Spayne, which brought with 28
 him well X thousand knyghtes wel armed and well
 garnysshed of vytayles, For in all the hoste ⁴of Charle-
 magne⁴ was none so well arayed as they were of all

and return again
 to the court at
 the appointed
 time.

¹-1 de son chief, F. orig. K. i. back.

²-2 Il ne sera jamais jour quilz ne se plaignent de ma venue, F. orig. K. i. back.

³ Two pages lost from Caxton. The following part is taken from the 1554 edition of *The Foure Sonnes of Aymon*.

⁴-1 omitted, F. orig. K. i. back.

[thynges, And presented him self in this maner at saynt Denys vnto the kynge Charlemagne. Than came Godfray the erle of Avynyon, and brought with him
 4 all his power, and a fayre company, and foysen of vytayle, And presented hym and hys folke to the king Charlemagne. And after, came Ponthus out of Almayne, & brought wyth hym a fayre companye ¹of men of
 8 armes.¹ For he had wyth him them of Illande and of Armony, ²and wel three thousand archers,² the whych for no doubt of death wolde never flee from bataylle, And presented hym selfe and hys felowshyp to the
 12 kyng charlemagne, the whyche he receyved ryght honourably. Than after came the good bisshop Turpin, and broughte wyth hym a fayre company, and well encwred to the warre, and presented hymself to the
 16 kyng Charlemagne, that was ryght glad of hys comyng, for the bysshop was a good true man. And y^e king Charlemagne trusted mucche to hym for his great fydeltie, and also for the great prowes that was in
 20 hym.

Bishop Turpin, with a good company, presents himself to the Emperor.

Al the great Lordes that helde theyr landes of the kyng Charlemagne, came to Parys, & presented theymselfe and theyr men to y^e kyng Charlemagne,
 24 that receyved theym with great Ioye, and was glad to see aboute hym so fayre a companye ³of good men of warre;³ but I tel you, that whan the hoste was assembled at Parys, there was so great a derth that it was
 28 great pitie, for the rasour of whete was solde for forty shelynges and twenty pence; and yf the kyng had taried there any *lenger*, there should have ben so greate a derth that all the small people had ben all dead for
 32 hungre. But the kyng Charlemagne began for to make hys mustres, for to know how much people that he

The host, when assembled at Paris, is so great that there is a sore dearth of provisions.

1-1 omitted, F. orig. K. i. back.

2-2 et bien milles bon archiers, F. orig. K. i. back.

3-3 que chescun avoit amenee, F. orig. K. i.

Charlemagne
numbers his
troops,

[had. And whan the mustres were made, they found that they were well .XXX. thousande knyghtes that had theyr fyrst berdes, besyde the olde knyghtes that were well an hundred thousand. And whan that this 4 was doone, the Emperour Charlemayne called Rowland, ¹his nevew,¹ afore him, and sayde to him, ‘Fayre nevew. I recomende to you myne hoste, and I praye you that ye wyll conduyte it by good maner.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd 8 Rouland, ‘I shal doo therin my devoyre after my power.’ Than made to be take to hym the oryflambe, and departed out of Parys; and they dyd so muche by smal journeis, that they came to Bloye; and than 12 Charlemagne made to be cryed, that all the vytaylers of the land should goe wyth vitayle after the hoste. And yf that they brought that were worth a peny, they should have two for it. 16

and gives the
command of them
to Roland.

The great army
reach Montalban.

² And whan that thys greate armye was come to Bloy, they passed over Gyronde, and wente afore the great castell of Mountawban.² And they lodged themselves there rounde about the place. And then the 20 Frenche men began to say the one to the other, ‘by myne othe, there is a fayre castel and a stronge, and but yf wee get some other parte, heere shall we wyne but a lytle.’ 24

And whan the batayles were ordeyned rounde aboute Mountawban, Rowlande began for to say to the kyng Charlemagne, ‘Syr, me semeth that wee should nowe gyve a sawte to Mountawban.’ And the kyng 28 answered, ‘I wyll] ³not that my folke have ony domage; but firste I wyll knowe yf the castell wyll holde or yelde vp / For yf he wyll be given vp / I

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. K. i.

²⁻² Et cependant les nefes passerent aultre gironde qui passerent larmee. Et quant ilz furent oultre, ilz mirent les batailles en ordonnance, et puis sen vont a montawban, F. orig. K. i.

³ Continuation from Caxton, Fol. M. i. back.

wolde not that ony bataylle shold be doon to it / And
 thenne incontyent he sente a knyghte mounted vpon
 a mewle all vnarmed / the whiche came to the gate of
 4 the castell / and whan they that kept the gate sawe that
 it was a messenger, they open to hym the gate, and the
 knyghte entered in / And as he was come in / he fonde
 the stywarde with a hundred men, that wente aboute
 8 vrsitynge the watches & the wardes. Incontyente the
 knyghte salued hym, and the stywarde rendred hym
 agen his salute, & sayd to hym, 'What be ye, gentyl-
 man / and what seke you here wythin? I praye you
 12 telle me what folke are yonder wythoute, soo fayr a
 company' / 'Sire,' sayd the knyghte, 'they ben the
 folke of the emperour Charlemagne, that is come for
 to besege the castell of Montalban / And I am one of
 16 his knyghtes, that am com here for to speke wyth
 Reynawde from the kyng Charlemagne.' Thenne the
 styward toke the knyght by the hande, and ledde hym
 byfore Reynawde the sone of aymon / And whan the
 20 knyghte sawe Reynawde, he made reverence to hym /
 and after sayd to hym, 'Reynawde, the emperour
 Charlemagne sendeth to you worde by me, that yf you
 wyl yelde your selfe to his merci / and gyve to hym
 24 your brother Richarde, to doo his wyll of hym / he
 shall have merci of you / And yf ye wyll not doo soo /
 he shall doo sawte your castell / And yf he maye take
 you by force, he shall make you to be hanged / or deie
 28 a cruel dethe' /

The Emperor
 sends a messenger
 to the castle to
 ask if the Sons
 will yield without
 a battle.

The messenger
 tells Reynawde
 how the Emperor
 wills that they
 should yield
 themselves to his
 mercy,
 and deliver to him
 Richard.

Thenne whan Reynawde vnderstode these tidynges
 that Charlemagne sente to hym, he beganne to
 smyle, and sayd, 'Frende, goo telle the kyng that I
 32 am not the man that shall doo ony trayson / For if I
 sholde doo it / he hym self sholde ¹blame me for it.
 But and yf it playse hym, my brethern, mawgis / and
 my selfe, ben at his commaundement / and we shal gyve

Reynawde says
 he will not com-
 mit treason,

¹ Fol. M. ii.

but will yield to
the King if he
will grant them
truce.

our selfe to hym as to our soverayne lord / our lyves
sauffe, and our membres / and we shall yelde to hym
the castel all atte his wyll / And telle the kyng that
he shall doo well & wysely to take suche fyve knyghtes 4
as we ben. And yf Charlemagne refuseth this / I have
myn hope soo faste to our lorde god, that we shall not
set moche by the kyng / nor of his grete ooste.' The
messenger vnderstode well the answeare that Reynawde 8
had doon to hym, and incontynente he retourned to
Charlemagn / and shewed vnto hym all that Reinawd
had sayd, worde bi worde¹ / whan the emperour vnder-
stode the wordes ²of Reynawde² / he beganne to thynke 12
a goode while / for he knewe that Reynawde sayd but
well. And thenne he sente for the duke Naymes and
Ogier the dane, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, Reynawde
sendeth me worde *that* he shall doo no thyng after 16
my wyll. And for this cause I wyll that y^e castell be
assaylled forthwyth' / 'Sire,' sayd the duke Naymes,
'me semeth, as I have vnderstonde, that Reynawde
offreth to you fair / and yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall 20
take hym to merci ³wyth his brethern.³ For ye knowe
well *that* they ben folke that maye doo to you good
servyse. And yf Reynawde be ones in peas wyth you,
ye shall be the better beloved, and more dred therefore. 24
But sith that your wyll can not accorde to the same we
maye not doo thereto / To assaylle the castell I coun-
seylle it not; For ye see that the castell is fair and
right stronge / And Reynawde hath wyth hym a good 28
company of good men / and he / & his brethern, and
mawgis, ben suche knyghtes as ye knowe. yf ye doo
assaille the castell, they shall yssue oute at the fauce
posternes / and shal doo to you soo grete a *dommage* of 32
your folke, that ye shall be ⁴wrothe⁵ for it / but and yf

Charlemagne
determines to
besiege the
castle.

Duke Naymes
counsels him to
accord with the
Sons;

¹ Sans riens faillir, orig. K. ii.

²⁻² que Reynault luy mandoit, F. orig. K. ii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. K. ii. ⁴ Fol. M. ii, back.

⁵ et dolant F. orig. K. ii.

ye wyll beleve my counseyll, ye shall besege the castell
nyghe that no man shall maye com out nor entre in but
he shall be take, and thus ye shall now have the castell
4 by famysshing / For by no sawte ye shall not have it.'

but, if he will not do so, he must take the castle by famishing.

Charlemagne vnderstode well thise wordes, and knew
well that the duke Naymes spake well & wysely,
& sayd to hym / 'I wyll that it be doon thus as ye
8 have devysed it.' And thenne he made crie thurgh
all his oost, that every man sholde lodge hym selfe
evyn nyghe by the castell ;¹ and he hymself comaunded
that his pavyllion sholde be pighte as nyghe the gate
12 as cowde be doon / After this was cryed, ye sholde
have seen wythin a lityll while moo than X thousande
pavyllions round aboute ²the castell² of Mountalban.
whan thooste was all lodged, Rowlande departed oute
16 of the oost well wyth two thousand knyghtes well
armed & well horsed, & all yonge men of pryme berde /
³whiche were very frenshe, borne of the douce fraunce /³
and went atte the other syde of Mountalban in a place
20 whiche is called Balencon, Where was a ryver grete
and depe / in the whiche was fishe ynoughe⁴ / and there
he dyd pyteche his pavylyon. And soo full he was of
grete pride / that he had sette the dragon above vpon his
24 pavylion, and dyd doo make the lodgys of his felawes
rounde aboute hym / And they were in suche a groundo
where as they myghte see from thens the wodes and
the ryvers and all the contrey, and Mountalban that
28 was vpon the grete roche wel closed / and behelde the
two grete⁵ rivers, that is to wyte, Gyronde and Dor-
donne / that envyronned Mountalban.

The King agrees to this,

and more than X thousand pavillions are set round the castle.

Roland, with two thousand knyghts, pitches his tent at Balencon.

32 **R**owlande sawe the place soo stronge, that he mer-
veylled gretely, and sayd to his folke, 'Lordes,

¹ le plus que lon pourra, F. orig. K. ii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. K. ii.

³⁻³ de la droicte france, F. orig. K. iii. back.

⁴ a grant foison, F. orig. K. iii. back. ⁵ omitted, F. orig.

⁶ Fol. M. iii.

I merveylle me sore of this castell / And I merveylle
 not yf the foure sones of Aymon make werre agenst
 myn vnele Charlemagne, ¹syth that they have soo goode
 & soo stronge a place for to wythdrawe theymselfe; ¹ 4
 For I promyse you that Mountalban shall never be
 taken of vs' / 'Ye saye not well,' sayd Olyver / 'For
 we toke well by force Lezonne / ²and also we overthrewe
 down the grete towre and the dongeon of Sernoble² / 8
 wherof I saye that we shall well have Mountalban. And
 yf Reynawde and his brethern come not and yelde
 theym selfe, they shall be in daunger of deth' / 'I
 promyse you,' sayd Rowlande, 'that they shall doo noo 12
 thyng of that ye saye. For I promyse you that the
 gentyll Reynawde shall make vs soo sore a ferde, that
 the moste hardy wolde be atte Parys. Reynawde is
 prue and corageus / and his brethern in lyke wyse. 16
 And also they have wythin the castell many noble
 and worthy knyghtes / wherfore I saye, and I am of
 oppynyon / that as longe as they have vytaylle, they
 shall never be taken.' Whan the pavyllion of Rowlande 20
 was dressed and pyghte vp / Rowlande behelde the
 ryver, and sawe that it was full of birdes. thenne he
 sayd to the bysshop Turpyn and to the other barons /
 'See how we are lodged in a goode place. Late vs goo 24
 in these ryvers to lete flee our fawcones.' 'Sire,' sayd
³the bysshop³ Turpyn, 'goo in the name of god' /
 Thenne lighted Rowlande on horse backe, & toke wyth
 hym well xxx. knyghtes / and noo moo / And they toke 28
 their hawkes, and rode the moost parte of theym vpon
 mewles, all vnarmed sauff their swerdes / and came and
 sported theym alonge the river side, and toke many
 birdes vpon the water / In soo grete quantyte that they 32
 laded a horse wythall. ⁴the bisshop turpyn and ogyer

Roland tells
 Oliver that he
 does not believe
 the castle will be
 taken.

Roland beholds
 the river,
 which is full of
 birds;

and sets forth
 with XXX thou-
 sand knights to
 hawk thereon.

¹⁻¹ puis quilz ont si bon retraiet, F. orig. K. iii. back.

²⁻² et si abactismes de noble la grant tour et le donion, F. orig. K. iii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. K. iii. back. ⁴ Fol. M. iii. back.

went not there, but abode behinde for to kepe the
 oost / and they were before the tentes, wher they made
 two auneient knyghtes to recou^ute & telle how the
 4 grete Troy was taken and dystroyed / this hangyng, was
 a spye in the ooste of kyng charlemagne that longed
 vnto Reynawde, the whiche he had sent there for to
 knowe what they wrought / and how they dyd, & all
 8 the faytte of Rowlande. And incontynente the spye
 departed out of the ooste and wente to Reynawde / and
 shewed to hym how Olyver & Rowlande were goon to
 sportyng^e ¹wyth their hawkes vpon the ryver¹ / and
 12 with them thyrty of the beste of the oost /

A spy informs
 Reynawde how
 Roland and
 Oliver have gone
 upon the river.

Whan the spye had recounted thise tydynges to
 reynawd / he was of it right glad / Thenne he
 called his brethern & Mawgys his cosin / and tolde
 16 them how Rowlande and Olyver and XXX. of the
 beste barons of Charlemagne were goon to hawkyng
 vpon the ryvers in the plane of Balancon / ‘What
 oughte we to doo?’ sayd Reynawde. ‘Cosin,’ sayd
 20 Mawgys, ‘we may well kyll them yf we wyl, For
 they ben well proude and folyshe / Remembre ye not
 wele that a messager told you a moneth agoo that
 Charlemayne had lefte all olde knyghtes of his royame /
 24 and had taken of the yonge / And that he had departed
 al Gascoyne to the yonge bachelers of Fraunce / And
 by this boban, Roulande and Olyver ben mounted in
 to so grete pride / that they trowe in all the worlde is
 28 noo man ¹that dare assaylle them nor¹loke vpon them
 angrely / But and yf ye wyll beleve me, I shall well tell
 you suche a thyng that shall make them wrothe and
 sory.’ And thenne Reynawde made sowne his horne,
 32 the whiche men never herde sowned But that it was
 nede / For whan men herde it / every man ranne to his
 armes for to arme hym. And incontynente, Rey²nawde
 and his bretherne and Mawgys made them selfe to

Mawgis advises
 Reynawde to
 attack the host of
 Charlemagne.

¹-1 omitted, F. orig. k. iii.

² Fol. M. iv.

be armed. And whan they were all armed and well appareylled, Reynawde lighted vpon Bayarde, his good hors, and spored hym wyth his spores, soo that he made hym to lepe well thyrty foote of length / 'Ha, 4 goode horse,' sayd Reynawde / 'how ye make your selfe to be beloved / And how well I mystre you this daye / Lete vs goo assaylle these vnhappy folke of the kyunge Charlemagne of Fraunce / And make we by 8 suche a manere that we nede not to retourne twyse / And therof I praye you all' /

They issue forth
with *IV* thousand men,
and arrive at Balencon.
Bishop Turpin, who is left with the King's host,

And whan Reynawde sawe that his folke was well appareylled / he wente oute wyth his men atte a 12 fawce posterne / that they of the ooste coude not see theym / And they were well in his companye a bouthe forester conduytted theym thorough the thyckest of 16 the forest / And reynawde sayd to the foster, 'brynge me thou in to the ooste of Rowlande wythoute faylle' / the foster answerde to hym that he wolde do it gladly / Thenne broughte he theym streyghte to Balencon. 20 And whan Reynawde sawe the payllions, he shewed theym to his folke / to whom he sayd / 'Lordes, beholde what fayr gayne we have fonde here, yf we dare sette vpon theym' / 'Syr,' sayd his men / 'lete vs 24 goo to it hardly / For we durste well assaylle the devylle / whan ye be wyth vs' / ¶ Now shall I telle you of the bysshop Turpy, that was abyden to kepe the ooste / wherof he had grete fere, be cause he wyste 28 well againste whom he had a doo / And had a grete suspectyon, And heved vppe his hede / and sawe thre ravens and the dawes flee aboute vpon the fortresse. And from thens they toke their flighte ¹over Rowlandes 32 pavylyon,¹ And made grete noyse; And soo was he a ferde. For he wende that it hadde ²ben some evyll

¹⁻¹ pardessus la fortresse, F. orig. k. iv. back.

² Fol. M. iv. back.

- token / and he behelde towarde the woodes, that were grete / and sawe anone his ennyes / wherof he was sore frayed, that almoste he was beside hym selfe /
- 4 Thenne he called Ogyer the dane, and sayd to hym, 'Free knyghte, for godys love goo arme yourself / and lete our folke be armed / for here comyn our ennyes. Now ben well Rowlande & Olyver goon for noughte,
- 8 that are goon to the chasse, and have lefte theyr ooste thus in grete daunger. I beleve that they shall not faylle / but they shall repente of it' / Whan Ogyer herde Turpyn speke in thys maner, he was wrothe ;
- 12 soo went he in to his pavyllion, and made hym to be armed incontynente for to moeve the ooste / And whan the frenshe men herde the trompettes blowe, they put theym selfe in ordenaunce nobly. This hangynge,
- 16 Ogyer was armed, and mounted vpon his horse brayforde, & fonde that a grete parte of them was armed and all redy / Thenne Oger sayd to theym / 'Lordes, thinke to defende you well / for we ben assaylled.'
- 20 **R**eynawd was abasshed whan he sawe the ooste that moved soo / and sayd to his folke / 'Lordes, we ben dyscovered / nevertheles, lete vs goo to it and assaylle theym.' thei answered that they were all redy
- 24 to doo so. And whan Reynawde vnderstode thysse wordes, he sayd to Mawgys / 'Fayr cosin, take a thousande knyghtes, And abyde here wythin this wood / And yf ye see that we nede of helpe / come
- 28 thenne and socoure vs.' 'Gladly,' sayd mawgis, 'your commaundement shall be doon' / And whan reynawde had sayd soo, he spored bayarde wyth his spores, and wente in to the ooste, and passed the playne of
- 32 Balancon ; and the firste that he recounted, it was Emery the erle of Nycoll / and smote hym soo *that* he shoved his spere thorughe the body of hym, and felle deed to therth / Thenne sayd reynawde,¹ 'ye shall abie

perceives his enemies approach ;

he calls Ogyer the Dane,

and commands the Frenchmen to arm themselves.

Reynawde tells Mawgis to abide in the wood with his men, until the Sons want succour ;

he sets spurs to Bayard,

and recounts Earl Emery, whom he slays.

¹ par saint Nycholas, F. orig. k. i.

the bargayn, ¹false gloton / Ye dyde a grete folye Whan
 ye came ever in to Gascoyne' / And whan he had sayd
 thus, he sette his hande to his swerde, And beganne to
 make soo grete occysion of knyghtes that noone canne 4
 telle it / And whan Reynawde sawe his enmyes soo
 strongly abasshed, he beganne to saye, 'Where is
 Rowlande and Olyvere, that soo sore hath thretened me
 and my folke, And sayen that we ben traytours / But 8
 and they sayen soo afore me / I sholde shewe to theym
 that they sayen not well nor trouthe' / whan the
 bysshop Turpyn vnderstode this that Reynawde sayd /
 He sayd to Reynawde / 'Ye nother saye well nor 12
 trouthe.' And thenne he spored his horse wyth the
 spores / and wente agenste Reynawde / an gaaff eche
 other soo grete strokes thourghe theyr sheeldes that
 they brake bothe theyr speres all in peces / But nother 16
 of theym felle down / And whan Reynawde hadde
 broken his sperre / he sette the hande to his swerde,
 and gaaffe soo² grete a stroke wyth it to the bysshope
 Turpyn vpon his helme, that he made bothe the man 20
 and the horse to rele sore / And whan Reynawde sawe
 the bysshop in that plyghte / he sayd to hym / 'Fader,
 be ye the same Turpyn that prayseth your selfe soo
 sore? By my fayth, me semeth it were better for you 24
 to be in some church to synge some masse, than for to
 be here, wenyng to greve me.'

Thenne whan the bysshop Turpyn vnderstode the
 reproche that Reynaude made to hym / he 28
 trowed wel to have goon oute of his mynde for it,
 And sette hande to his swerde / and wente vpon
 Reynawde. And thenne was the ooste moeved of one
 partye and of the ³other. Shortely to speke, there were 32
 soo many speres broken, soo many a knyghte over-
 thrownen / and soo many horses deed, that it was grete
 pyte for to see. There was Ogyer the Dane, that

¹ Fol. M. v. ² sooo, *orig.* ³ Fol. M. v. back.

Bishop Turpin
 rides against
 Reynawde;

they fight
 furiously.

hadde his shelde afore his breste, And his swerde
 in his hande, & sat vpon Brayforde; the whiche smote
 Rycharde, the brother of Reynawde, soo grete a stroke
 4 that his horse felle down to the erthe¹ / Whan Rycharde
 saw hym selfe a gronde / he rose vppe agayne
 quyckely / as a knyghte pru and valyant / And toke
 his swerde in hys hande. And Ogyer passed beyonde
 8 for to folow his course, And beganne to crye the
 baner ‘saynte Denys.’ Whan Reynawde sawe his
 brother Rycharde cast on gronde / he was wrothe for
 it / Soo spored he his horse Bayarde, and wente
 12 agenste Ogyer the dane / and Ogyer agenste hym / and
 gaaff eche other grete strokes vpon theyr sheldes /
 Reynawde smote Ogyer by soo grete force that the
 horses gyrthe nor the poytrell myghte not helpe, But
 16 that Ogyer muste falle down, ²sadell and all,² to the
 gronde /

Ogyer, on his horse Brayford, overthrows Richard.

Reynawde sees his brother on the ground, and goes after Ogyer,

whom he throws off his horse;

Whan Reynawde sawe Ogyer atte the erthe, he
 toke Brayforde by the brydell / and sayd to
 20 Ogyer / ‘Ye have doon evyll for to have cast down my
 brother afore me / Ye knowe that ye be of my lynage /
 and my cosin nyghe; ye sholde helpe and defiende vs
 agenste all men / And ye doo worse than the other /
 24 Wherof I saye it is no dede of a cosin, but of an
 enmye. Neverthelesse, take your horse agayne, vpon
 suche condycyon that ye shall doo to me a playsure at
 a nother tyme if I have nede / the whiche thyng god
 28 forbede.’ ‘cosin,’ sayd oger, ‘ye speke as a good man;
 and I promyse you that if I faylle of this that ye saye,
 god punyssh me for it’ / Rey³nawd yelded hym agayn
 his horse / & helde the styrop to Ogyer, ⁴whan he
 32 lyghted agayne vppon his horse Brayforde.⁴ And wyte
 it that Ogyer syth dyde moche for Reynawde, and

he complains of Ogyer's infidelity to him as a kinsman,

but gives him his horse again,

and helps him to remount.

¹ si que la coyffe de sou heaulme tomba en la fablonniere, F. orig. k. v. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. k. v. back. ³ Fol. M. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ pour monter dessus, F. orig. k. v. back.

yelded hym agen his rewarde at the roche Mountbron,
 wherof he was rebuked of Charlemagne shamfully /
 Whan Ogyer was set on his horse agen / he set hande
 to his swerde, and entred amonge the thyckeste of the 4
 gascoynes / and began to hew them so sore that he
 made them all to flee afore hym / Whan maugys sawe
 that all the bataylles were thus medled togyder / he
 cam ¹out of the wood,¹ and cam to balancon, and put 8
 hym selfe and his folke amonge the gretest prees,
 and fights so valiantly that
 2 & began to cleve and hewe so harde, hedes, legges,
 & armes,² that none durste abyde longe afore hym /
 And thenne the frenshemen were so sore and weri that 12
 they myght no more, & were all dyscomfyted at the
 the Frenchmen are all discom-
 fit at the
 passage of the
 river;
 passage of the ryver³ / whan they dyd put theymselfe to
 flyghte. And the gascoyns chased them alle betyng
 a long myle / and after retorned to thooste / and toke 16
 all the havoyr that they fonde there / And mawgis
 he captures the
 golden dragon of
 Roland, and
 much treasure,
 and returns to
 Montalban
 rejoicing.
 cam to y^e pavyllion of Rowlande, & toke the dragon ⁴of
 golde⁴ that was set vpon the sayd pavyllion; and they
 passed thourghe Balancon / and soo retorned to 20
 Montalban wyth grete Ioye. And whan they were
 come there, they dysarmed them selfe, and ete right
 well / For they hadde well myster therof. Whan they
 had eten at theyr ease / Reynawde made brynge y^e boty 24
 afore hym / And after dealed it among his folke, And
 kepte to hym not one penny / Whan Reynawde hadde
 thus departed all this goodes, Mawgys wente vpon the
 grete towre of Mountalban / And dyd sette the dragon 28
 of Rowlande vpon the same / soo that the folke of the
 oost of both ⁵sydes of the castell myght see it.⁵ And
 whan Charle⁶mayne sawe the sayd dragon vpon the
 Mawgis sets the
 dragon on the
 great tower of the
 castle,
 so that the hosts
 on both sides of
 the castle may
 see it.

1-1 hors de son embuschement, F. orig. K. v. back.

2-2 omitted, F. orig. k. v. back.

3 moult oultraigeusement, F. orig. k. v. back.

4-4 omitted, F. orig. k. v. back.

5-5 que lost dune part et daultre le pouvient veoir, F. orig.
 k. v. back. ⁶ Fol. M. vi. back.

towre of Montalban / He wende that Rowlande ¹his
 newewe¹ had taken mountalban by force / but the thyng
 went well otherwyse, For of reynawde and his bretherne
 4 had discomfyted all the folk of Rowlande, and had
 brought wyth theym ¹all theyr havoyre, and ¹the dragon
 of the sayd Rowlande they had set vpon the towre of
 mountalban.

CHAPTER IX.

8 ¶ How Reynawde and his brethern were
 betrayed & solde to the kyng Charlemagne
 by the kyng Yon of Gascoyn, *that* sent
 them in the playne of Valcours all wyth-
 12 out armes but theyr swerdes / and were
 mouzted vpon mewles / & were clothed
 wyth mantelles of scarlet, furret wyth
 ermyne / Fro the whiche they escaped by
 16 the wyll of god / but they suffred moche
 peyne & grete traveylle / for they were
 gretly hurt & sore wounded. But of the
 kyng charlemagne party abode there deed
 20 Foulques of Moryllon, & many other barons
 and worthy knyghtes, wherof the kyng
 charlemayn was wrothe and sory.

¶ Capitulum IX.

24 **N**ow must we telle of Rowlande & of Olyver, that
 came agen fro hawkyng vpon the ryvers wyth
 their felawes, & besemyng they were right glad *that*
 they had so well chassed & taken a grete *quantityte* of
 28 birdes / & thus as they cam agen / they met wyth
 damp Rambault, the free knyght / *that* tolde them by

Roland and
 Oliver return
 from hawking
 on the river,

and meet with the
 knight Rambault,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. k. v.

who upbraids
Roland for
forsaking his
host,

and tells him how
the Sons have
discomfited all
his folk.

Roland in great
sorrow seeks
counsel of Turpin,
Ogier, and
Richard of Nor-
mandy,

and asks leave of
the Bishop to go
into the Holy
Land, and fight
no more against
Christian men.

Turpin consoles
Roland,

and promises
him victory over
Reynawde.

a grete angre / 'Ye have taken many birdes ; see *that* ye
be good marchautes, & selle your praye well, for I
promyse you ye shall never selle your chasse and hauk-
yng so dere as it hath coste you / And yf ye have taken 4
byrdes / I lete you wyte that Reynawde & his bredern
have taken knyghtes and horses / and whan ye see
your dra^gon vpon the grete² towre of Montalban / ye
oughte wel to be themne glad, and thanke moche therof 8
the foure sones of Aymon. For all thoo that seen it
set there of an heyghth, they wene that ye have gotten
the castell by force' / Whan rowlande understode thise
wordes, it lacked lityll that he wente oute of his 12
mynde / he lighted down from his mewle, And sette
him selfe vpon a stone / and beganne to thynke & muse
sore. And soo dyd Olyver in lyke wyse / And whan
Rowlande had thoughte yuonghe / He called to hym 16
the bysshop Turpyn, Ogier the dane, and Richarde of
Normandy, and sayd to theym, 'For god, fayr lordes,
what counseyll gyve you me vpon this dede / For
I dare never more fynde myselfe before my vnele, the 20
king Charlemagne ; for I fere me to sore of evyl
reporte / and *that* men tell of me otherwyse than the
trouthe' / And he sayd to the bysshop Turpyn /
'for goddis love, good fader in god, gyve me leve to 24
departe / for I wolde goo in to the holy londe to see
the sepulture of our lorde, for to werre there agenste the
sarrasins / For sith this mysshape is thus come to me,
I wyll no more bere armes agenste cristen men' / 28
'Sire,' sayd the bysshop Turpyn, 'be not dismayed for
no thyng / For this is but an vse of werre / suche a
thyng befalleth often to many one / I promyse you
that ye shall have, or thre dayes ben paste, as many of 32
the folke of Reynawde as he hath of yours' / 'Sire,'
sayd Rowlande, 'ye gyve me good corage, and I
promyse you that to your prudence I shall arreste

¹ Fol. M. vii.

² omitted, F. orig. k. vi. back.

myselfe.' Whan Rowlande had said thise wordes / the
 bysshop Turpyn and Ogier dyd so moche that they
 made hym lighte a horsbacke / and they wente togylde
 4 all towarde charlemagne. & wite *that* after rowlande,
 cam moo than a hundred yonge gentylnen all a fote,
 bi cause thei had lost their horses. & whan they were
 come to thoste of charlemagne, they ¹wente streyghte
 8 to the payyllion of the duke Naymes / and whan
 Rowlande entred wythin, he was ashamed / and abode
 there two dayes that he cam not oute, and durst not
 goo to the courte, nor loke no man in the face, But
 12 helde hym selfe ²in the sayd payyllion,² as a man all
 abashed of the grete sorow that he had at his herte³ /
 Whan Rowlande and Olyver was thus abyden in the
 duke Naymes tente, This hangyng, Turpyn cam to-
 16 warde kyng Charlemagne in his tente / where he
 entred wythin, and saluted the kyng ryght honourably /
 and the emperour rendred to hym his salute / and after
 sayd to hym, 'Damp bysshop, ye be welcom' / 'Syre,'
 20 sayd Turpyn / 'god be your keper; and I beseche you
 to pardonne me / yf I telle you ony thyng that shall
 dysplayse you.' 'Now telle hardly,' sayd the kyng,
 'what ye wylle / For nothyng that ye canne telle can
 24 not dysplayse me.' 'Syre,' sayd the byshop Turpyn,
 'Wyte that the foure sones of Aymon have dyscomfited
 vs, And have taken wyth theym all that we had in
 our tentes, bothe horses & harneys / and all our
 28 payyllions / and namly the dragon of Rowlande, beside
 a grete many of prisoners⁴ / And they have slayne
 the moste party of our folke' /

They all mount
 their horses,
 and go towards
 the host of
 Charlemagne.

Roland is in
 such grief that he
 dare look no man
 in the face.

Turpin enters
 the tent of the
 Emperor,

and relates to
 him how the four
 Sons have de-
 feated his folk,

and taken the
 dragon,
 and many pris-
 oners.

32 **T**henne whan the emperour vnderstode this that
 Turpyn had tolde hym, he was a long while as a
 mañ al forened / And thenne he sware saynte Denys

¹ Fol. M. vii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. K. vi.

³ et ne disoit mot du monde, F. orig. k. vi.

⁴ quilz en out amene a montauban, F. orig. k. vi.

Charlemagne
summons all his
lords and barons,

and shows them
how all the
knights of Ro-
land have been
discomfited by
the Sons;

and asks his
barons how he
may take the
Castle of Mont-
alban.

by grete angre. And sayd / 'Now have ye fonde that
ye went tellynge; & the grete pride that ye had, ye
have well founde' / At this hour he dyd sende through
all his oost by expresse wordes, that every lord and 4
baron sholde come incontynent¹ afore hym in his tente,
for he wolde kepe parlyamente wyth them / whan y^e
prynces knew y^e *commaundement* of y^e kynge, ye shold
have seen them com wyth gret hast towarde y^e kynge / 8
& whan they wer al ²assembled wythin the kynges
pavyllion / he stode vpon his feete, & sayd to theym
in this maner / 'Lordes, I have sent for you for to
shewe vnto you that to vs is happed of newe. Now 12
wyte that the foure sones of Aymon have dyscomfited
all our knyghtes that Rowlande my newew had wyth
hym at balencon / wherof I am right wroth & sori. for
I wolde I had lost a greter thyng, and that this were 16
not happed; but a thyng that can not be amended, must
be suffred & borne as well as men may / I requyre &
beseche you all, my lordes and frendes, vpon the
oother *that* ye have made to me, that ye wyll counseyll 20
me truly how I shall be ruled in this mater, and how
I might have this castell of Montalban' / Whan the
kyng had thus spoken, there was none so hardy that
ever durste saye one worde, but only the duke naymes 24
of bayer, the prue and wyse knyght. 'Syre,' sayd
the duke Naymes, 'ye aske counseyll for to besege
montalban. But no man that hath ony rayson in his
hede ought not to counseyll you the same / for whi the 28
daunger is there grete, be cause that Guynarde the lorde
of Berne knoweth of it, and so doothe Godfray the
lord of Poycy, that are good knyghtes, & sore dred for
their worthynes, and also the kyng yon³ that is at 32
tholose the whiche shall come all to helpe & socoure
reynawd / by cause they be of his aliaunce / And also

¹ omitted, F. orig. k. vi.

² Fol. M. viii.

³ de Gascongne, F. orig. k. vii. back.

they know that he is one of the beste knyghtes of the
 worlde / And they knowe well also that Reynawde
 gyveth to vs moche to doo. And soo I telle you, yf
 4 they sette theym selfe togyder, they shall gyve you
 ynoughe to doo, And shall maye here to you a grete
 dommage. ¶ But and ye wyll have goode counseyll
 and beleve me, I shall gyve it to you truly / Syre,
 8 sende worde to kyng yon / that he wythdrawe not nor
 kepe your ennyes ¹wythin his londe, but that he yelde
 theym in to your handes, for to doo wyth theym your
 playsur and your commaundement. And yf he wyll
 12 not doo soo, ye shall distroye all his londe, and no
 mercy ye shall have vpon hym.' 'Naymes,' sayd the
 kyng, 'now gyve you me good counseyll / and I wyll
 that ye have sayd be doon incontynente' / Thenne the
 16 kyng made com an heraulde of his, and sayd to hym /
 'Now goo lightly to Tholouse / and telle kyng Yon on
 my behalve / that I am entred in to Gasecoyn accom-
 20 panied of y^e twelve douspyers of Fraunce, with a hun-
 dred thousande fyghtyng men / and wyth Rowlande &
 Olyver / and telle hym that, by saynt Denys of Fraunce,
 yf he yelde me not my ennyes, that ben the foure sones
 of Aymon / that I shall waste and dystroye all his
 24 londe / nor to hym shall abyde nother cite nor castell /
 but it shalle be overthrowen to the erthe / and yf I
 can take hym / I shall take from hym his crowne / soo
 shall he be called kyng overthrowen' / 'Sire,' said the
 28 heraulde, 'your commaundement I shall do wythout
 varienge of one worde / ²evyn as your good grace
 playseth to comaunde me'² / and thus departed the
 herawde ²from the oost of Charlemagne² / and toke his
 32 waye towarde Tholouse / There he fonde the kyng
 Yon of Gasecoyn in his palays / wyth a ryght fayr
 company / And assone that he sawe the kyng / he
 knewe hym well / so made he thenne to him the rever-

Naymes counsels
 the Emperor to
 send word to
 King John that
 he deliver to him
 the four Sons,

or his lands shall
 be wasted,
 and no mercy
 shown to him.

The King sends a
 herald forthwith
 to King John.

The herald ar-
 rives,
 and finds King
 John with a fair
 company in his
 palace;

¹ Fol. M. viii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. k. vii.

he delivers his message.

ence / and sayd to hym in the emperours behalve the thyng^e worde by worde,¹ wherof he was sente there.

And whan the kyng Yon vnderstode the herawde that spake soo / he bowed his hede toward the 4 erthe, and began to thynke a longe while / and sayd not a worde / And whan he had thus longe mused ynoughe / he sayd to the messenger: 'Good frende, ye must tari² here a seven nyght,² I praye you / and thenne 8³ I shall telle you my wyll / and what I pur⁴pose to doo'³ / 'Sire,' sayd the herawde, 'I shall abide wyth a good will, sith that it playse you' / Thenne wente the kyng Yon in to his chambre, & eyghte erles wyth hym, 12 and commaunded that the dores sholde be well shet / and thenne they set theym all vpon a benche. And whan they were all set, the kinge Yon toke the worde & sayd in this maner / 'Lordes, I besече & require, 16 vpon the feyth that ye owe to me, that ye gyve me good counseill to thonour⁵ of me / not at my will, but bi rayson / Now wite it that y^e kyng Charlemagne⁶ is entred wyth in my londe with the xij peres of Fraunce, 20 & Rowlande & Olyver, wyth a hundred thousande men. And he sendeth to me worde, but yf I deliver vnto hym the foure sones of Aymon, he shall not leve me nother cyte nor towne / but he shall cast all to therthe,⁷ 24 & shall take the crowne fro my hed / and so shal I be called a kyng overthrowen / My fader helde never noo thyng of hym, & no more shall I / it is better to dey wyth grete worship than to lyve in grete shame.' 28

Thenne whan the kyng Yon had thus spoken, there rose vp a knyght named godfray, that was neveve to kyng yon, and sayd to hym, 'Sire, I merveille me

¹ sans point varier en riens, F. orig. k. vii.

²⁻² par l'espace de huit jours, F. orig. k. vii.

³⁻³ et puis vous respondray ma volente que direz au roy Charlemaigne, F. orig. k. vii. ⁴ Fol. N. i.

⁵ thonour, *orig.* ⁶ le roy de francee, F. orig. k. vii.

⁷ Et si a jure que si je suis prins, quil me otera ma couronne, F. orig. K. vii.

King John desires him to remain seven nights, and then he will tell him his answer.

King John consults his barons as to his reply to the Emperor.

A knight called Godfrey rebukes the King for

that ye aske counseyll for to betraye suche knyghtes as
 ben the foure sonnes of Aymon / Reynaude is your
 man & your earnall frende¹ / ye knowe what good he
 4 hath doon to you & to your londe / It is not longe
 agoo that he dyscomfyted Marcyll the puyssaunt sarra-
 syn, & chassed hym well foure myle / and smote of his
 hede, & presented it to you / and ye have promysed
 8 & sworne to hym that ye shall defende & kepe hym
 agenste all men. Myn vnele, yf ye thynke to faill
 hym, & wyll not holde that ye have promysed to hym /
 lete hym & his brethern goo oute of your londe in to
 12 som other countrey to seke their adventure / And haply
 they shall serve some lord that shall doo to ²theym
 more goode than ye wyll doo. And also I praye you,
 my dere lorde and vnele, ³as moche as I can,³ that ye
 16 wyll doo noo thyng that torneth you to blame, nor to
 dishonour, nor that can be east by maner of reproche
 towarde your frendes.' Thenne spake the olde erle of
 Ansom, and sayd, 'Sire, we wyll that we gyve you
 20 counseyle / yf ye wylle doo that we shall counseyle
 you, ye shall doo well for your selfe.' 'Now saye on
 hardely,' sayd the kyng, 'that semeth you best to be
 doon, for I wyll doo as ye shall counseyle me' / 'Sire,'
 24 sayd the erle, 'ye have well herde saye / and soo it
 was trouth, that Benes slewe the erle Lohier; wherfore
 Charlemagne sente for hym and made his hede to be
 smytyn of at Parys⁴ / And at that tyme Reynawde &
 28 his brethern were veri yonge; and of theym was none
 meneyon made / And afterwarde whan they were grete,
 the kyng wolde amende it vnto theym. For the
 thyng toucheth theym, but they had the herte so fell
 32 that they wolde take none amendes, and lasted their

his want of
 fidelity to the
 Sons in asking
 counsel for their
 betrayal,

and urges him to
 let the Sons
 depart from his
 land, and find
 some other lord
 to serve.

The Earl of
 Ansom argues in
 favour of peace
 with Charle-
 magne,

¹ car vous luy aues donne vostre seur a fenme devant vos
 barons et amys, F. orig. k. viii. back.

² Fol. N. i. back. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. k. viii. back.

⁴ par male intencion. Et puis en prist acordance a benes
 daigrement, F. orig. k. viii. back.

hate longe / wherof ever sith hath come grete harmes
 and evylles / For Reinawde slewe Berthelot, the newewe
 of the kyng, wyth a chesboorde / Sire, I knowe not
 why I sholde hide any thyng fro your knowlege / 4
 ye knowe well that Charlemagne is soo myghty a kyng
 that he never vndertoke werre, but he came to his
 above of it / Wherfore I doo gyve you counseille that
 ye yelde Reynawde & his brethern and Mawgis ¹to the 8
 kyng Charlemagne; ¹ and thus shall ye be deliverd of
 a grete thoughte, and of grete daunger' / And after
 this spake the erle of Mobandes, and sayd / 'syre, yf
 ye wyll doo this that the erle of Ansom counseilleth 12
 you, ye & we shall be traytours / For Reynawde is
 your man / and so moche ye have loved hym that ye
 have gyven hym your suster to his wyf / And whan he
 cam in thise marches / he came not like a knave / but 16
 he cam ²to you as a noble knyght, pru and worthy /
 For he brought in his felawshyp foure thowsande men
 well armed & well horsed / ³and sayd to you afore vs
 all, or ever he toke of his spores, that he had werre 20
 wyth kyng Charlemagne / Netheles ye receyved hym
 wyth goode herte / and after made of hym at your
 wyll. And for you he conquered many bataylles /
 and dyde so moche that he delyvered you from the 24
 handes of your enmyes / And therefore, syre, I telle
 you that ye be not worthy to calle yourselfe,⁴ ne to
 bere the crowne vpon your hede, yf for fere of deth
 ye betraye suche knyghtes as are the four sones of 28
 Aymon; For ye have not yet loste nother castell nor
 towne: and if ye doo it otherwyse / ye shall be taken
 and holden for a traytour.'⁵ After spake Anthony the
 olde erle / and sayd to the kyng / 'Syre, beleve not 32
 this counseille / for suche counseille he gyveth you

and advises King John to deliver the Sons into the Emperor's hands.

Earl Mobandes says they will be traitors to follow Ansom's counsel,

because of Reynawde's fidelity to him,

and that John will be a traitor to deliver such a man to Charlemagne.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. k. viii. back.

² Fol. N. ii.

³ Et quant il vint a vous il vois dist, F. orig. k. vii.

⁴ roy, F. orig. k.

⁵ et mys ou nombre de Judas, F. orig. k. viii.

- now, wherof ye shall be betrayed at the laste. For I knowe better thentente of Reynawde than any man that is here: Ye muste vnderstonde, syre, that Reynawde was sone to a man that had but one towne, and was soo prowde that he dayned to serve nor obeye his lorde the kynge of Fraunce; but slewe Berthelot by his grete pryde and owtrage / Wherfore kynge Charlemagne chassed hym oute of the royaume of Fraunce. Now it is happed soo that he is in Gascoyn, and ye have gyven to hym grete landes; and by cause he hath your suster to his wyffe / he is become soo prowde that none maye dure afore hym / And he setteth not a peny nother by you nor by your courte / Wherfore I swere to you by the hede that I bere / yf he may by ony wyse, he shall take the lyffe from you / for to have all the royaume to hymselfe. Wherfore I advyse to you by ryghtwys counseyll, that ye yelde hym and his bretherne to Charlemagne / And ye shall doo as a wyse¹ kyng; and so shall you pease the grete wrath of kyng Charlemagne of Fraunce' / After spake the duke Guymarde of Bayonne, and sayd² to the kyng² / 'Sire,³ I tell you that the erle Anthony lieth falsly / and gyveth you evyll counseyll / For Reynawde is sone to the duke Aymon of Ardeyne, whiche is of right grete lynage / And Charlemagne made to slee the duke Benes of Aygremounte, their vncle, by grete wronge / and Reynawde toke therof vengeaunce vpon Berthelot by good rayson / and that more is, it was his body deffendynge / wherof I telle you that noo kyng is not worthy to bere any crowne nor to have honoure, that wyll doo trayson for thretynge of a nother lorde' / And after spake Humarde an olde knyghte, and sayd / 'By god,⁴ Guymarde, I beleve that ye have lost your
- Earl Anthony says he knows Reynawde better than any man,
and recounts how he slew Berthelot,
and how his pride has since arisen, having married John's sister,
and how he will take the King's realm if John does not yield him to the Emperor.
Duke Guymarde says that Earl Anthony lies falsely,
and defends Reynawde.
Humarde, an old knight, tells Guymarde that he has

¹ Fol. N. ii. back. 2-2 omitted, F. orig.

³ roy de gascoyne, F. orig. l. i. back.

⁴ dampes Guymart, F. orig. l. i. back.

lost his wit to
counsel thus the
King.

wytte / to counseyll the kynge Yon for to bere oute
Reynawde agenst ¹the grete kynge¹ Charlemagne, for
to make all the londe of Gascoyn for to be dystroyed /
Wherof ye sholde care but lityll / yf the royaume were **4**
wasted, and the kynge broughte to shame / soo that ye
had lawde and praysyng.' Thenne sayd Guymarde,
'Thou liest falsly / and yf we two were in a nother
place than here, I sholde shewe the that thou were an **8**
olde dooterd and a foole / For I wolde not counseyll
the kynge Yon / but all thyng that concerneth his
honour / and profyte also of his royaume.'

Guymarde defies
him in anger.

Earl Hector says
that Guymarde is
wrong,

After spake one named syr Hector / an aneyente **12**
erle, and sayd to the kynge / 'Sire, ye aske
counseyll of suche that canne not counseyl theymselfe /
For it is all other wyse than Guymarde sayth / And I
ensure you, that yf ye lose in this matere / he shall **16**
lese therby noo thyng. Sire, ye knowe that Reinawde
is a knyght good ynouge. But by his grete pryde /
he hath made werre wyth Charlemagne / For he slewe
Berthelot his newewe by his owtrage. ²now he is come **20**
in Gascoyne / and ye have gyven hym your suster in
mariage. Wherof ye dyde grete folie / and ye made
hym the castel of Mountalban vpon the strengest
grounde that is wythin your royaume / Now is come **24**
the kyng Charlemagne that hath beseged him ; wherfore
I counseyll you *that* ye accorde wyth the kynge Charle-
magne, and delyver yourselfe of Reynawde assone as
ye maye. For it is better that ye lese foure knyghtes **28**
than all your royaume. take fro hym your suster, and
gyve her to a nother that is a gretter gentilman than
is Reynawde / and that have no suche *enmyes* as is
Charlemagne / & fynde some meanes to yelde Rey- **32**
nawde & his brethern to Charlemagne. And this ye
shall well ³may doo wythoute blame, yf ye wyll doo

and condemns
Reynawde for
fighting against
Charlemagne ;

he advises John
to take his sister
away,

and yield up the
Sons without fail.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. N. iii.

³ well may = be able.

that I shall counseyll you.' 'Frende,' sayd the kynge
yon / 'I am redy to doo that whiche ye shal counseille
me,¹ above all other that ben here' /

4 **T**henne whan the kynge yon of Gascoyn sawe that
ye^e mooste party of his counseille accorded to that
he sholde yelde Reynawde and his brethern to kyng
Charlemagne, he beganne to wepe right tenderly / and
8 sayd in hymself, that no body cowde bere it. 'Bi god,
Reynawde, I am sore charged for you / now shall de-
parte my love fro you. For ye shall lese the body /
and I shall lese therby the love of god and of his
12 moder. For I shall never fynde mercy in hym / for
to betraye suche a knyghte as ye be' / But I telle you
that god shewed that daye for Reynawde a fayr myracle.
for the chambre where the counseille was kepte that
16 was all white / chaunged colour and becam all blacke
as a cole: 'Lordes,' sayd the kynge Yon, 'I see well
that I muste yelde the foure sones of Aymon. syth *that*
the moost parte of you accordeth therto. And I shall
20 doo it / syth that ye counseille me soo / But I wote
well that my soule shall never have therof noo par-
donne: And ²shall be therefore taken all my lyffe as a
Iudas.' and thenne they lefte the counseille, and
24 wente out of the chambre. And whan the kynge was
come out of the chambre: he sette hym down vpon a
benche, and beganne to thynke sore / And as he was in
this thoughte / he beganne to wepe sore for grete pyte
28 that he had / And whan he had thoughte and wepte
ynoughe / he called his secretary, and sayd to hym:
'Come forth, syre Peter / and write a letter from me
to the kinge Charlemagne, as I shall telle you: It is
32 that I sende hym salutacyon wyth goode love / And yf
he wyll leve me my londe in peas, I promyse hym that
a-fore ten dayes ben paste / I shall delyver vnto hym

John weeps when
he finds that most
of his barons
counsel him to
yield up the Sons.

The chamber
where they hold
counsel, turns
black from white,
when Reynawde's
doom is fixed.

The king, after
much sorrow,
calls his secretary,
and tells him to
write to Charle-
magne,

¹ Car je voy et congnois que vous me donnez bon conseil,
F. orig. l. i. ² Fol. N. iii. back.

and says he will
send the Sons to
Vancouleurs,
clothed in scarlet
upon mules, so
that men shall
know them.

the foure sones of Aymon, and he shall fynde theym
in the playne of Valecolours / clothed wyth scarlette /
furred wyth ermynes, and ridynge vpon mewles /
beryng in theyr handes flowres and roses for a token / 4
bycause that men shall better knowe theym. And I
shall make them to be accompanied of eyghte erles of
my royaume / & yf they scape from hym, that he blame
me not for it.' Thenne sayd the secretare, 'Sire, your 8
commaundemente shall be doon.' ¹the whiche toke
anone penne and ynk^{le}, and wrote the lettres / worde
for worde, as the kyng had devysed to hym. And
whan they were writen and sealed. the kyng called 12
his stywarde, and sayd to hym / 'Now make you redy
on horsbacke / and goo to the sege of Mountalban /
and recommede me to kyng Charlemagne: and gyve
hym thise lettres / And telle hym, yf he wyll quyte 16
my londe / I shall doo this that is of reason, and none
otherwyse.' 'Syre,' sayd the stywarde, 'I shall gladly
doo your commaundemente / doubte not of it.' Thenne
wente the stywarde in his house, and made hym redy 20
on horsbacke, and rode out of Tholouse, and toke the
herawde of Charlemagne wyth hym / And whan ²they
were come to Mountalban, thei fonde the emperour in
his paylyon / where the stywarde lyghted down / and 24
wente wythin / and saluted the kyng Charlemagne
fro the kyng Yon of Gascoyn / and presented hym
the lettres fro his behalve, and sayd to hym; 'Ryght
myghty emperour, the kyng Yon sendeth you worde 28
by me / that yf ye wyll ensure his londe, he shall
fulfille the tenoure of this lettre / and otherwyse he
wyll not.'

The Steward
departs for
Montalban,

where he finds the
Emperour in his
pavilion,

and presents
him with the
letters.

Whan charlemagne vnderstode thise tydynges, he 32
was right gladde / he toke the lettre of the
messenger / And called Rowlande to hym, and Olyver /

¹⁻¹ Et lors sen entra en sa chambre . . . F. orig. l. ii. back.

² Fol. N. iv.

the bysshop Turpyn / the duke Naymes / Ogyer the
dane / and the xii peres ¹of Fraunce¹ / and sayd to
them / 'Fayre lordes, be not dysplayed: goo out of
4 this pavyllion / for I wyl! talke with this messenger
pryvely.' 'Syre,' sayd they all, 'wyth a goode wylle' /
And than they wente all oute of the pavyllion / and
whan they were all goon / Charlemagne opened the
8 lettres, and red them all alonge / And he fonde therein
that whiche he mooste desyred in this worlde / that
was the trayson as it was ordeyned / Whan Charle-
magne had red the lettre, he myghte be noo gladder
12 than he was. And of the grete Ioye that he had of it /
he beganne to smyle / 'Syre,' sayd the stywarde, 'yf
ye see ought in the lettre that playseth you not / blame
not me for it / ²For I knowe not yet what it is.'²
16 Thenne sayd Charlemagne to the stywarde / 'Your
lorde, the kyng Yon, speketh full curtesly / and yf he
doo that he dooth me to wyte / he shall be well my
goode frende / And soo shall I doo to hym grete wor-
20 shyp, and shall make hym a grete man / and also I shall
defende hym agenst all men.' 'Syre,' sayd the sty-
warde, 'of this that ye saye / ye shall gyve me suretyes
if it playse you.' Thenne sayd Charlemagne, 'I wyl
24 doo soo ³gladly / This I swere vpon the sone of the
vyrgyn Mary, and also vpon saynte Deuys of Fraunce,
whos man I am.' 'Syre, ye have sayd all ynoughe,'
answered the messenger of kyng Yon / 'And noon other
28 surety I aske of you.'

Charlemagne
with joy calls his
barons,
and tells them to
leave him while
he confers with
the messenger.

The Emperor
receives John's
message gladly,

and says he will
give him worship,
and make him a
great man;

this he swears by
the Virgin and
St. Denis of
France.

He calls then his
chamberlain,

and dictates to
him a letter for
King John.

Thenne Charlemagne called hys chambrelayne, and
sayd to hym / 'Make a lettre to kyng Yon of
Gascoyne in my behalve / as I shall devyse it vnto
32 you. Wryte that I sende hym salutacyon and goode
love / And that yf he dooth for me as he sayth, I shall
encrease his royaume wyth fourtene goode castelles /

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig. l. i. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. l. ii.
³ Fol. N. iv. back.

and therof I gyve hym for surete our lorde and saynte Denys of Fraunce / and *that* I sende hym four mauntelles of scarlette furred wyth ermynes, for to clothe wythall the traytours, whan they shall goo to the 4 playne of Valcolours. And there they shall be hanged, yf god wyll. And I wyll not that ony other have harme, but oonly the foure sones of Aymon' / 'Syre,' sayd the chambrelayne / 'your commaundement shall 8 be well doon' / and thenne he made the lettres as themperour had devysed hym. And whan he had made theym, the emperour Charlemagne sealed theym / and after he called the messenger afore his presence, and 12 sayd to hym / 'Holde these lettres, and take theym to kyng Yon from me, and recomende me moche to hym.' And thenne he dyde gyve hym x marke of golde / and a ryng that he toke of ¹ his fynger / wherof 16 the messenger thanked hym moche humbly, and incontynente lyghted on horsback.² And whan he was arryved, he salved the kyng yon of Gascoyn from kyng Charlemagnes behalve. And toke hym the 20 lettres and the mauntelles, ³as Charlemagne had commaunded hym.³

The Emperor gives the letters and scarlet mantels for the Sons to the messenger, and also X marks and a ring.

Thenne whan the messenger of the kyng yon was goon / Charlemagne made come afore hym Foull- 24 ques of moryllon and Ogyer the dane / and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, I have sente for you / For I wyll that ye knowe a lytyll of my secretes. But I telle you, vpon your feythe that none other shall knowe the 28 same, but oonly we, vs thre, unto the tyme that the dede be accomplysshed.' 'Sire,' sayd Ogyer, 'yf ye thynke that we sholde dyscovere your secrete, telle it vs not / And yf ye truste vs, declare hardely your 32 playsur.' 'Certes,' sayd the emperour to Ogyer, 'ye be well worthy to knowe all. For I knowe you for a

Charlemagne then calls his barons again to tell them the news,

¹ off. ² et sen va vers thoulouse. F. orig. l. ii.
³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. ⁴ Fol. N. v.

goode and a trusty knyghte.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogyer,
 'your goode gramerey. But I telle you that I wyll
 not knowe noo thyng therof / but that ye take firste
 4 myn othe theropon' / 'Lordes,' sayd Charlemagne / 'I
 take it, Now shall ye goo to the playne of Valcolours
 wyth thre hundred knyghtes well armed / and whan
 ye shall come there, ye shall fynde the foure sones of
 8 Aymon / And thus I commaunde you, that ye brynge
 theym to me other deed or quycke.' 'Syre,' sayd
 Ogyer, 'I sawe theym never but armed: How shall we
 knowe theym' / 'Ogyer,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye shall
 12 well may knowe theym / For eche of them shall be
 clothed wyth a mauntell of scarlette furred wyth
 ermynes / and shall bere roses in theyr haudes.' 'Sire,'
 sayd Ogyer, 'that is a goode token / and we shall do
 16 your commaundement.' They made none other taryeng,
 but departed from the ooste ¹of the kynge Charlemagne¹
 as pryvely as they myghte doo / And rode to the playne
 of Valcolours / and put theym selfe in a busschement
 20 wythin a woode all of serpyn trees / vnto the tyme that
 the foure sones of Aymon came to the playne of Valco-
 loures / Ha, god! why knewe not Reynawde and his
 bretherne this ²mortalle trayson, for they wolde not
 24 have come there³ vpon mewles. / But they sholde have
 come there vpon goode horses, and well armed, as prue
 and worthy knyghtes that they were / But, and god
 had not remedyed it / this Reynawde and his brethern
 28 sholde have ben soone taken in a lityl space / for they
 were in daunger of deth. Whan Ogyer the dane and
 Foulques of Moryllon were in theyr bushemente /
 Foulques called his folke and sayd to theym: 'Fayr
 32 lordes, I oughte well to hate Reynawde / for he slewe
 myn vncler by grete wronge / Now am I come to the
 poynte that I shall be avenged on hym / and I shall

and commaunds
Ogier to go to
Vaucouleurs with
three hundred
knyghts,

and bring to him
the Sons, either
dead or alive;

and says he shall
know them by
their clothes of
scarlet, and the
flowers they will
bear in their
hands.

Ogier sets forth,

and puts his men
in ambush at
Vaucouleurs.

Foulques of
Moryllon is also
there, and begs

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. l. iii. back. ² Fol. N. v. back.

³ comme bricons, F. orig. l. iii. back.

his knights to
prove their love
for him by slaying
all the four Sons.

telle you now. Now wyte it that the kynge Yon of Gascoyn hath betrayed them;¹ and they shall come hider anone, all vnarmed sauf their swerdes / ²And therefore² I praye you all that ye thynke to smyte well ⁴vpon them / thenne shall I knowe who loveth me beste. Doo soo that none of them scape / and ye shall be well, my goode frendes. And I shall love you well.'

King John
receives his lett
from Charle-
magne.

Now shall we telle you of the kynge Yon that was ⁸at Tholouse: whan he had receyved the lettres of the kynge Charlemagne, he called to hym his secretary Godras, and sayd to hym, 'Loke what this lettre sayeth:' And the clerke brake incontynente the seale, ¹²and behelde the tenoure of the lettre / and founde how Reynawde & his brethern sholde be betrayed / and lyvered to dethe / And whan the clerke had redde the letre, he begaunne to wepe sore tenderly; and yf it had ¹⁶not be for doubte of the kyng, he wolde gladly have vttered it. And whan kynge Yon sawe his secretary wepe, he sayd thus to hym: 'kepe well vpon your lyf *that* ye hide no thyng fro me, but telle me all that the ²⁰lettre conteyneth, and what the kynge Charlemagne wryteth ³to me.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Godras / 'It is a sore thyng for to reherce' / 'Now lightly,' ⁴sayd the kynge Yon:⁴ 'telle me what the kynge Charlemagne ²⁴sendeth me.' 'Syre,' sayd Godras, 'I shall telle it you gladly' / And thenne he begaunne to shewe to kynge Yon how Charlemagne sende hym worde / that yf he wolde doo as he had wryten vnto hym, he sholde en- ²⁸creace his power of fourtene goode castelles more than he had.

and signifes their
meaning to the
King.

For the surete wherof, he swereth it vnto you vpon ³²our lord god / and saynte Denys of Fraunee, ⁴his ³²patrone⁴ / And he sendeth you four mauntelles of

¹ et les doit remectre a charlemaigne . . . F. orig. l. iii.

²⁻² Et pourtant quant ilz viendront . . . F. orig. l. iii.

³ Fol. N. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

scarlette furred wyth ermynes / that ye shall gyve to
 the foure sones of Aymon for to were theym / And
 thus they shall be knowen. For Charlemagne wyll not
 4 that none take ony harme / but oonly the foure sones
 of Aymon / And he doth you to wyte, that his folke
 are wythin a busschement wythin a woode by the playn
 of Valecolours / that is to wyte, Foulques of Moryllon
 8 and Ogyer the Dane, wyth thre hundred men well
 horsed and well armed, that abyden there the foure
 sones of Aymon / ye whiche ye sholde lyver in to theyr
 handes.' Whan the kynge Yon vnderstode the tenoure
 12 of the lettre, He made haste for to fulfille his promyse /
 And Incontynente he lyghted on horsbacke : and toke
 in his company a hundred men well arrayed / and toke
 his waye towarde Mountalban. And as soone as he
 16 myghte / he came / and entred wythin atte the gate
 fletcher. And whan he was wythin, he made his folke
 to lodge theym in the borow / And he wente up to the
 palays, as he was wounte to doo whan he came there.
 20 Thenne whan hys suster, the wyffe of Reynawde, wyste
 of the comynge of the kynge yon her brother / she
 came agenst hym & toke hym by the hande, & wolde
 have kissed hym as she ¹ was accustomed to do whan he
 24 cam there, but the kyng, full of evyll trayson, tourned
 his face a syde / And sayd he had the tooth ache, and
 wolde not speke wyth her but lityll / But he sayd that
 men sholde make hym a bedde redy / For he wolde
 28 reste hymselfe a lityll² / and whan he was layd, he
 beganne sore to thynke, and sayd to hym selfe, 'Ha,
 goode lorde / what have I wroughte agenste the beste
 knyghtes of the worlde that I have betrayed soo
 32 falsely / Now shall they be honged to morowe wythoute
 fawte. I praye god to have merey and pyte vpon
 theym / now may I well say that I shall be lykened to

King John, after
 hearing the letter,

sets forth immedi-
 ately for Mont-
 alban with a
 hundred men ;

he enters the
 palace, but will
 not embrace his
 sister, because of
 his treasonable
 purpose,

saying he has a
 toothache, and
 will rest awhile.

¹ Fol. N. vi. back.

² pour myeulx couvrir sa trahison, F. orig. l. iv. back.

Iudas from hens forthe. And I shall have loste the love of god / and of his moder / and also myn honour. But I muste nedes doo it, syth I have promysed it soo / And the wyll of my barons is suche / for thus they 4 have counseyllled and have made me doo it. ¹Wherof I am full sore dysplaysed.¹

Reynawde and his brethren return from hunting,

and ask whose folk are in the castle.

A Yeoman says they are King John's men.

Alle thus as the kyng yon thought in the grete 8 treyson that was thus machyned vpon the four 8 sones of Aymon / there came in Reynawde from huntynge / and all hys bretherne wyth hym, and had taken foure wyld bores sore grete / and whan Reynawde was wythin Mountalban / he herde the noyse of the horses, 12 and wende that it had ben straunge knyghtes that were come vnto hym to take wages. ²And thenne he² asked of a yoman, what folke were thees strangeres that were come in wythoute leve / 'Syre,' sayd the yoman, 'they 16 ben the folke of kyng yon, that is come wythin for to speke wyth you of some materes / But me seemeth by his folke that he is not well atte ease of his persone.'³

Reynawde sends for his horn,

and sounds it in welcome for his lord the King.

⁴**T**henne sayd ⁵the goode⁵ Reynawde / 'Ha, god / 20 why hath my lorde traveyllled hym selfe soo moche for to come hyder, For I wolde wyth a goode wyll have goon to hym' / And after, whan he had that sayd, he called to hym a servaunte of his, and sayd to hym / 24 'Goo fette me my horne Boudyere / For I wyll make feest and Ioye for the comynge of my soverayne lorde.' and Incontynente it was broughte to hym / And Reynawde toke it / and sayd to his bretherne / 28 'Now take eche of you his owne, and lete vs make feeste for the love of kyng Yon.'⁶ Thenne they toke eche of theym his horne, and beganne to sowne all foure at ons ryght hyghe. And made so grete noyse 32

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. l. iv. back.

²⁻² Reynault, F. orig.

³ Car il semble a le veoir qu'il soit mal dispose, F. orig. l. iv.

⁴ Fol. N. vii.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

⁶ Sire dirent ilz nous le ferons tres volentiers, F. orig. l. iv.

that the castell sowned of it.¹ For they made so grete
 Loye for the love of the kynge Yon, that it was
 merveyll. Whan the kynge Yon herde the trompettes,
 4 that thus sowned soo sore ²that the chambre where as
 he laye shoke of it,² he arose vp from the bed and came
 to the wyndowe / and sayd to hymselfe / ‘Ha, what
 evyl have I wroughte agenste thyse knyghtes! Alas,
 8 how make ye Loye agenste soo grete a combraunce, the
 whiche I have purchaced to you / I have betrayed you
 right falsely / as a wycked and vntrewe kynge that I
 am / For a man that betrayeth his frende, oughte never
 12 to have honoure, nother in this worlde nor in the
 other / but oughte to be loste bothe body and soule /
 For he has forsaken god, and hath gyven hym selfe to
 the devyll.’ And whan he had sayd that / he retorned
 16 agayne vpon his bedde, sore vexed atte the herte, and
 evyll at ease more than ony man myghte be. Thenne
 Reynawde and his brethern came vp to the palays,
 where they founde the kyng yon. & whan he sawe
 20 theym com, he rose agenst theym, and toke theym the
 hande, and sayd to Reynawde / ‘Be ³not merveyllled
 that I have not embraced nor kyssed you, for I am sore
 laden wyth grete evyll / And it is well⁴ fourtene dayes
 24 goon that I cowde nother ete nor drynke ⁵ony thyng
 that dyde me goode.’⁵ Thenne sayd Reynawde, ‘syre,
 ye be in a good place, where ye shall be tended vpon
 right well with goddis grace. And I and my bretherne
 28 shall serve you to our power’ / ‘Gramercy,’ sayd the
 kynge Yon / Thenne called he his stywarde, and sayd
 to hym, ‘Goo and brynge me the mantelles of scarlette
 fured wyth ermynes / that I have doon make for my
 32 dere frendes.’ Incontynente the stywarde dyde the

John hears the
 noise,

and goes to the
 window;
 he reproaches
 himself for his
 evil intent against
 these knights.

The Sons come
 into the palace
 and find the
 King,

who excuses him-
 self from kissing
 them,

saying he has
 neither eaten nor
 drunk for 14
 days;

he sends for the
 scarlet mantels,

¹ si que lon cuidoit que le clocher de la chapelle saint Nycholas en deust tomber par terre, F. orig. l. iv.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. ³ Fol. N. vii. back.

⁴ quinze jours, F. orig. l. iv.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. l. iv.

and puts them on
the Sons,
praying them to
wear them for
love of him.

commaundement of kynge yon. And assone that he
was come agayne, the kynge made the foure bredern to
putt the four mantelles vpon theym, and prayed theym
to were theym for his love. 'Sire,' sayd Alarde, 'this 4
is a gladd presente / And we shall were theym for the
love of you, wyth veri goode wyll' / Alas, yf they had
knowen how the thyng was broughte aboute / they
sholde not have borne theym, but they sholde have 8
doon all other wyse. Alas, and what sorowfulle
harne they had of this, that they were thus clothed.
For that were the tokens & reconyssaunce wherof they
were in daungeur of deth, yf god had not holpen theym 12
of his pyte and mercy. And whan the foure sones of
Aymon had theyr mantelles on / the kynge Yon
belelde theym / and had of theym grete pyte, and
beganne to wepe. There was his stywarde, that the 16
trayson well wyste / that sayd not one worde for fere
of the kynge Yon / And whan the mete was redy /
Reynawde prayed moche the kynge that he wolde etc.
For he made hym to be served right well. Whan 20
they had eten, the kynge Yon rose vpon his feete /
and toke Reynawde by the hande, and sayd to hym,
'My fayre broder & my goode frende / I wyll telle
a counseyll that ye know not / Now ¹wyte that I 24
have ben atte Mountbenden, and I have spoken wyth
kynge Charlemagne, the whiche charged me of treyson /
by cause that I kepe you in my royaume / wherof I
have presented my gage afore all his company ; and no 28
man was there soo hardy that durste speke agenste
that, that I sayd. After this we had many wordes
togyder / emonge whiche we spake of goode accorde
and of peas / wherof at the last the kyng Charlemagne 32
was contente for my love for to make peas wyth you /
in the maner that foloweth. That is to wyte, that
tomorowe erly ye shall goo to the playne of Valcoloures,

John takes Rey-
nawde by the
hand,

and relates to
him how he has
interviewed
Charlemagne in
their behalf,

and obtained his
consent to make
peace, if the Sons
will go to Vaucou-
leurs unarmed,

¹ Fol. N. viii.

ye and your brethern, all vnarmed but of your swerdes /
 mounted vpon your mewles / and clothed wyth the
 mantelles that I have gyven to you ; and that ye shall
 4 bere in your handes roses and floures. and I shalle
 sende wyth you eyghte of myn erles, for to goo more
 honourable / the whiche ben all of my lynage / And
 there ye shall fynde the kynge Charlemagne / and the
 8 duke Naymes of bavyere / and Ogger the dane, and all
 the xii peres of Fraunce / and there charlemagne shall
 gyve you suerte. And ye shall doo to hym reverence
 in suche manere that ye shall caste yourselfe to his
 12 feete, and there he shall pardonne you / and he shall
 gyve you agayne all your londes entierly.'

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'Sire, for god, mercy ; For
 I have grete doubte of the kynge Charlemagne,
 16 by cause he hateth us to deth, as ye knowe / and
 I promyse you, yf he holdeth vs, he shall make vs to
 deye a shamfull dethe.' 'Goode frende,' sayd the
 traytour kyng Yon, 'have noo doubte atte all ; For he
 20 hath sworne vnto me vpon his feyth afore all hys
 baronye' / 'Syre,' answerde Reynawde, 'we shall doo
 your commaundementes.' 'Ha god,' sayde Alarde /
 'What saye you, brother / ye knowe well that ¹Charle-
 24 magne hathe made his othe many tymes, that yf he
 maye take vs ones by ony maner of meane, he shall
 bryng vs to a shamfull dethe. Now I mervylle me
 gretly of you, fayr broder / how ye wyll accorde for to
 28 goo put yourselfe and vs into his handes all vnarmed,
 as a poure myschaunte / Never have god mercy vpon
 my soule yf I goo there wythoute myn armes, nor
 wythout to be as it apperteyneth !' 'broder,' sayd
 32 Reynaude, 'ye saye not wele / God forbede that I
 sholde mystruste my lorde, the kynge Yon, of ony
 thyng *that* he telleth me.' And thenne he tourned
 hym towarde the kynge Yon, and sayd to hym / 'Sire,

clothed in scarlet,
upon mules ;

and says they
will find there
Charlemagne,
Ozier, and Duke
Naymes.

Reynawde eon-
sents to do the
command of
the King.
Alard upbraids
his brother for
trusting Charle-
magne,

and says he will
not go.

¹ Fol. N. viii. back.

Reynawde tells
John he shall go
there to-morrow
without fail,

and then goes to
the chamber of
his lady,

and tells her all
King John has
said, and how
they will make
peace with the
Emperor.

The lady enquires
where the treaty
shall be made.

wythoute ony fawte we shall be there to morowe erly
in the mornynge, What soever happeth of it.' 'Fayre
lordes,' sayd Reynawde, 'god hath holpen vs well, that
we have peas wyth the kynge Charlemagne, to whom 4
we have made soo longe tyme so mortall a werre; but
syth that my lorde, the kynge Yon, hath made this
peas, I am contente to doo to hym as moche reverence
as to me is possible / For I am delibered to goo naked 8
in my smalle lynen clothes to the mount saynte
Mychaell.' And whan Reynawde had sayd this worde,
he toke leve of kynge Yon; and wente in to the
chambre of the fayr lady his wyff, and fonde there his 12
1 other two brethern,¹ that were wyth her / And whan
the lady sawe her husbonde com / she came agenst
hym,² and toke hym betwyx bothe her arnes by grete
love,² & kyssed hym / 'Lady,' sayd Reynawde, 'I 16
oughte well to love you by grete rayson / For your
broder, the kynge Yon, hath traveyled hymselfe ryght
sore for me; and hath ben sore blamed atte the courte
of charlemagne for me, but he hath doon soo moche, 20
blessed be god, that he hath made my peas wyth the
kynge Charlemagne; And that Rowlande and Olyver,
nor all the twelve peres of Fraunce myghte never make,
³he hath graunted vs agen all our loudes / And all thus 24
we shall be riche / and shall lyve all our liffe in rest
& peas / and so shall we mowe helpe / and gyve the
havoyre that we have, to the powre knyghtes that have
served vs all their liff⁴ truly and well.'⁴ 28

Thenne sayd the lady, 'I thanke god gretly therof
with all my herte / But telle me where the
concordauns shall be made, and hide it not from me, if
it playse you' / 'Ladi,' sayd Reynawde, 'I shall telle 32
it you wythout ony fawte / Wyte that tomorowe we

¹⁻¹ tous ses freres, F. orig. l. v.

²⁻² et leembrasse par grant amour, F. orig. l. v.

³ Fol. O. i. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

muste ride to the playne of Valcoloures, and there the
 peas shall be made; but I and my brethern muste goo
 thedir wythoute armes but oonly our swerdes, and
 4 vpon mewles / berynge roses in our handes / And
 there we shall fynde the duke Naymes of bayyere, &
 Ogier the dane, and all the xii. peres of Fraunce, that
 shall receyve our othes.' Whan the lady vnderstole
 8 these wordes / she was soo sore an augred therof that
 almoste she had loste her wytte / and sayd to Rey-
 narde / 'Sir, yf ye wyll beleve me, ye shall not go one
 fote there / For the playnes of Valcoloures are soo
 12 dangerous / for there is a roche right highe, and there
 ben foure grete woodes rounde aboute.¹ yf ye wyll
 bileve me, ye shall take a daye for to speke wyth
 Charlemagne here in the medowes of Mountalban;
 16 and ye shall goo there mounted vpon bayarde, and
 your brethern wyth you / and there ye maye conferme
 your peas / or elles contynue your werre. and take
 two thowsande knyghtes, & gyve theym to maugys
 20 your cosin, whiche shall kepe them in a busschement
 vpon the ryvage, yf it happe you to have nede; for
 I doubte me sore of trayson. wherfore I praye you
 that ye kepe your selfe well sure / For I dyd dreme to
 24 nyghte a dreme, that was ferefull and merveyllous.
 For me semed that I was atte the wyndowes of the
 grete ²palays, & sawe com oute of the grete wood of
 Ardeyn well a thousande wyld bores / that had grete
 28 & horryble teeth; the whiche slewe you / ³and rented
 your body all in peces;³ and also I sawe that the grete
 towre of Mountalban fell down to grounde / and,
 moreover, I sawe a shot of adventure / that smote your
 32 broder Alarde so harde that it perced his body through
 and thrughe / and that the chapeli of saynt Nyecolas,
 whiche is wythin this castell, felle down to therthe,

Reynarde tells her of the conditions made by Charlemagne.

She implores Reynarde not to go, as the plains of Vaucouleurs are so dangerous,

and wishes him to speak with the Emperor at Mountalban.

She relates her terrible dream to Reynarde, in which a thousand boars came from the forest of Arden, and rented his body in pieces,

and slew Alarde;

¹ Dont la maindre dure bien dix lieues, F. orig. l. vi. back.

² Fol. O. i. back. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. l. vi. back.

and how two
angels hung
Richard to an
apple tree.

Reynawde will
not listen or
believe in the
dream.

The brethren all
counsel Reynawde
to go well armed,
and on horseback.

Reynawde says he
will go alone if
the brethren are
afraid;

he asks the King
if they may take
their horses.

John will not
allow it,

and all the ymages that ben in it wepte for grete pyte.

And that two angeles came down from hevyn, that
hanged your broder Richarde at an apull tree / and
thenze the sayd Rycharde cryed wyth an hyghe 4
voyce / Fayr broder Reynawde, come and heipe me!
and Incontynente ye wente there vpon your horse
Bayarde, but he felle down by the waye vnder you
wherfore ye myghte not come tyme ynoughe / wherof 8
ye were full sory. And therefore, ¹good syre, ¹I coun-
seylle you that ye goo not there.'

'**L**ady,' sayd Reynawde, 'holde your peas; For
who that beleveth over moche in dremes / he 12
dooth agenste the commaundemente of god.' Thenne
sayd Alarde, 'by the feyth that I owe to god / I shall
never sette foote there.' 'nor I nother,' sayd Richarde /
'Alas,' sayd thenne Guycharde / 'yf we muste goo 16
there, lete vs not departe thyderwarde as men of
counseille, but lete vs goo there like as prue and
worthy knyghtes / havynge eche of vs his armes vpon
hym, & well a horsbacke, ¹and not vpon mewles; ¹ and 20
that our broder Reynawde be well mounted vpon bay-
arde, whiche ² shall maye bere vs all four at a nede' /
'by god,' sayd reynawd, 'ye shall say what ye wyll /
but I shall goo there, as I have sayd: what soever 24
happeth' / And thenne he wente out of his chambre,
& came to kyng Yon / and sayd to hym, 'By god, I
merveylle me moche of my bredern, that wyll not go
wyth me, by cause ³they have no horses wyth theym. 28
and yf it playse you, ye shall gyve vs leve to take eche
of vs a horse, & ye shall kepe styll your eyghte erles
wyth you / and we shall go there as ye have com-
maunded vs' / 'I wyll not doo it,' sayd the kyng yon / 32
'For the kyng Charlemagne doubteth you to sore, &
your bredern, and your horses / and also I have gyven

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. l. vi. ² shall may = be able.

³ Fol. O. ii.

hostages & suretes ¹that ye shall bere noo maner of
 harneys wyth you, but oonly your swerdes, as I have
 tolde you afore / and that ye shall ride vpon mewles,
 4 and not vpon horses¹ / And yf ye goo there otherwyse
 arayed, Charlemagne shall thinke that I wil betraye
 hym, and so shall he dystroye all my londe / that shall
 be the payment that I shall have for you / I have
 8 traveylled myselfe full sore for to brynge you ²& your
 bredern² atte one wyth Charlemagne; and therefore, goo
 there yf ye wyll, and yf ye wyll not / leve it.'

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'Sir, syth that it is soo /
 12 we shall goo there;' and thenne he wente from
 king yon in to his chambre agayne / and fonde his
 wyff, that noble lady, alarde³ & Richarde / that asked
 hym how he had doon / and if they sholde have his
 16 goode horse bayarde wyth theym.' 'By god,' sayd
 Reynawde, 'I canne not have leve to doo so; but, my
 bredern, doubte you not / for the kyng yon is as true a
 prynce; and yf he sholde betraye vs / he sholde be
 20 sore blamed for it, for he shall make vs to be con-
 duytted by eyght of the moost grete erles of his
 royaume / and god confoude me yf I sawe ever ony
 evyll doon by hym.' 'Syr,' sayd his bredern, 'we
 24 shall goo gladly wyth you, sith that ye wyll have vs
 nedes to doo soo.' whan they were thus accorded herto /
 they wente to bed, & slepte vnto the daye appered /
 And whan Reynawde sawe the day, he rose vp, and
 28 sayd to his bredern, 'Arise, syres, & make vs redy /
 for to goo there as we shold goo / for if Charlemagne be
⁴soner to the playnes of Valcolours than we / he shall
 haply be angry for it.' 'Syre,' sayd his bredern, 'we
 32 shall soone be redy.' and whan they were all redy, they
 went to the chirche of saynt Nyecolas for to here

and says that he
 has given his
 word to Charle-
 magne that they
 shall go on mules.

Reynawde then
 determines to go,

and tells his wife
 that John would
 never betray
 them,
 and that he will
 send eight Earls
 with them for
 safe conduct.

¹⁻¹ que vous ny pourterez armes ne ne serez montez sur
 voz cheuaulx, F. orig. l. vi. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Guichart, F. orig.

⁴ Fol. O. ii. back.

The Sons mount their mules, and, accompanied by the eight Earls, depart from Montalban.

masse / and whan [they] cam to the offrynge, Reynawde
& his bredern offered many riche yeftes / And after the
masse was doon¹ / they asked after theyr mewles, &
incontynent they mounted vpon / and in their felaw- 4
shyp were eyghte eiles / the whiche knewe all the
maner of trayson. and whan they were all mounted
they toke on theyr way, but the foure sones of Aymon
were good to knowe by thother / for they had on grete 8
mauntelles of scarlet furred with ermynes / and bare
in theyr handes roses in token of peas, and also theyr
swerdes / for ²they wold not girde theym.² ³Now god
be wyth theym³ / for if he kepe them not / they ben 12
in waye of perdicyon, and never to com agen to Mon-
talban / Whan the kyng yon sawe theym thus goo, he
felle down in a swonne more than four tymes, for the
grete sorowe that he had atte his hert / ⁴for how be it 16
that he had betrayed theym so / yet had he grete pite
of theym⁴ / but this that he had doon / evyll counseyll
had made hym doo it / And thenne he began to make
the gretest sorow in the worlde / and sayd / ‘Ha, 20
good lord, what have I doon / dyde ever ony man so
grete a trayson as I have doon, nay vereli; for I have
betraied the best knyghtes of y^e worlde / and the
most worthy / ⁵and true.’⁵ 24

John sorrows over the Sons’ departure because of his evil treason against them.

His folk comfort him, saying that Reynawde is too wise for harm to befall him.

Thenne sayd his folke / ‘syre, ye doo not well to
make suche a sorow, for Reynawde is / veri wyse;
and he shall perceyve it right soone.’ ‘Ha, god,’ sayd
the kyng Yon / ‘were it as ye saye; for I sholde be 28
more glad than yf I had wonne X. of the best citees of
Fraunce; for Reinawde is my frende & my broder.
Ha, Mawgys, how shall ye be sori, whan ye shall

¹ chante, F. orig. l. vii. back.

²⁻² Ilz ne les volurent oncques laisser, F. orig. l. vii. back.

³⁻³ or en pense nostre seigneur qui prit mort et passion en la croix, F. orig. P. vii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ Car non obstant quil les auoit ainsi trahiz Il en auoit peur, F. orig. l. vii.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

knowe this mater / Reynawd dyd grete foly / whan he
toke ¹not your advyse in this thyng / for yf he had
knownen of it ye sholde not have suffred hym [to] go
4 there / 'Lordes,' sayd y^e kynge yon, 'I, poure wretche /
whether shall I becom, if the four sones of Aymon
deye / for mawgis shall slee me wythout merci / and
also it is well rayson / for who that betraieth a nother
8 & pryncipally his frende carnall ought not to lyve nor
have ever ony worshyp'² / but his folke toke hym vp
incontynente & began to recomforte hym by many
grete raysons ³that thei layde afore hym.³

John fears the
wrath of Mawgis
should the Sons
be slain.

12 **N**owe begynneth the piteouse histori of the four
sones of aymon, that went to their dethe by the
meanes of y^e trayfour kyng yon / And because of the
trayson *that* he commytted agenst the four sones of
16 aymon / he loste the royaume of gascoyn, the name &
the dygnyte therof⁴ / for never sin that tyme was no
kyng crowned in gascoyn. Now shall I telle you of Rey-
nawde & of his bredern⁵ / thenne rode Reynawde & his
20 bredern towarde the playne of Valcouleurs / and as they
rode thiderwarde, Alarde began to synge ⁶right swetly
& ioyfull⁶ a new song / and Guycharde & Richarde
dide in lykewyse / but I telle you that no instrument
24 of musike⁷ sowned never so melodiously as the thre
bredern dyd syngyng togider; alas, what pite was it
of so noble & so worthy knyghtes *that* wente syngyng
& makyng ioye to their deth; they were as the swan
28 that syngeth that yere that he shal deye / Reynaude
went behynde them sore thynkyng; his hede bowed
doun towarde therthe / and behelde his brethern that

The three brothers
sing sweetly as
they ride towards
Vaucouleurs.

Reynawde rides
behind, thinking
sadly,

¹ Fol. O. iii.

² Et quant Il eut ce dit, Il cheut tout pasme a terre,
F. orig. l. vii., omitted in Caxton.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. l. vii.

⁴ de non jamais y auoir roy, F. orig. l. vii.

⁵ que dieu vueille garder de mal et descombrier par sa
pitie, F. orig. l. vii.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig.

⁷ ne psalterion, F. orig.

rode forth makyng grete ioye / and he sayd / 'O god,
 what knyghtes be my bredern, that there ben none
 suche¹ in all the worlde, nother so gracyous' / and whan
 he had sayd this, he set his handes togyder & heved ⁴
 and weeping, them vp towarde hevyn, all wepyng / and sayd in
 this maner, 'Good lorde, by thy glorious & blessed
 name, ²that dydest cast danyell out fro the lyons / and
 delyverest Ionas fro the fysshes beli / and saved saynt ⁸
 peter whan he caste hymselfe in the see for to com to
 y^e, and pardoned mari magdalene / and made y^e
 blynde to see / and suffred passion and dethe vpon the
 crosse for our synnes / and pardoned Ionugys³ that ¹²
 smote the wyth a spere ⁴in to thy blessed side⁴ / wherfro
 thy blessed blood fell in to his eyen; and incontynent
 he recovered his sighte therby / and by thy resurrec-
 tyon / kepe this daye my body (yf it playse the) fro ¹⁶
 deth & fro prison; and also my bredern, for I wote not
 where we goo / but me semeth that we go in grete
 peryle' / And whan he had fynysshed his royson, his
 eyen wexed weete agen for pite that he had / leste his ²⁰
 brethern sholde have ony harme for love of hym / For
 it playsed them not well that they were so bare of
 their armes.

prays to God to
 protect him and
 his brethren from
 all evil.

Alarde enquires of
 him the cause of
 his grief,

Thenne whan alarde saw his broder Reynaude that ²⁴
 had his eyen full of teres, he sayd to hym, 'Ha,
 broder,⁵ what eyleth you / I have seen you in right
 grete peryll, & a boutte a harde werke / but I sawe you
 never make so yll chere as ye doo now, for I have seen ²⁸
 you wepe at this owre / Wherof I mervyll me gretly /
 for I wote well for certeyn that ye wepe not wythoute
 some grete occasion.' Thenne sayd Reynaud / 'fayr
 broder, me aylleth no thyng' / 'By the feyth that I ³²
 owe to you,' sayd alarde, 'ye wepe not for no thyng.

¹ si bons, F. orig. l. viii. back. ² Fol. O. iii. back.

³ Longius. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

⁵ beau sire Regnault, F. orig. l. viii. back.

This is the day that we sholde be attone wyth kyng
 Charlemagne; so praye I you for god, my dere broder,
 that ye leve this sorow / and lete vs goo forth merely,
 4 & bere oute a good face as longe as we ben alyve / for
 after that a man is ones decessed / it is no more spoken
 of him. And thus I praye you, broder, that ye synge
 wyth vs; For ye have soo fayr a voyce, that it is a
 8 grete playsure for to here you syng, whan ye be wyll-
 ynge to it.' 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'wyth a goode
 [will,] syth ¹that it playseth you.' And thenne began
 Reynawde for to synge soo meledyously that it was
 12 grete playsure for to here hym. Soo longe rode the four
 sones ²of Aymon ²the lityll pase of their mewles, syng-
 ynge & devysynge amonge theym selfe, that they came
 to the playne of Valcolours / Now wyll I telle you of
 16 the facyon of the valey. For wyte, that yf I telled you
 not / ye sholde not maye³ knowe it / There is a roche
 right hie and noyous to goo vp / and it is envyrouned
 rounde aboute wyth four grete² forestes ryght grete &
 20 thyek, for the leest is there a dayes journey to ryde
 thourge it; and there ben four grete ryvers all aboute
 it sore depe / wherof y^e gretest is named Gyrounde;
 the other is called Dordonne; the thirde is named
 24 Nore / and the other Balancon; and there is nother
 castell nor towne⁴ by XX myles nyghe aboute it. And
 therfore the trayson was there devysed / for this playne
²of Valcolours² was ferre from all folke / and there was
 28 a waye crossed in four / the one waye was towarde
 Fraunce, the other in to Spayne / ⁵the other⁵ in to
 Galyce, and the fourth in to Gascoyn. And at every
 one of thyse foure wayes was layde a busschement of
 32 V hundred men well horsed ²and armed,² for to take
 Reynawde & his bredern quycke or deed; for thus had

and begs him to show a good face as long as they are alive.

Reynawde sings to gladden them,

and thus they reach the plain of Vaucouleurs.

The valley is surrounded by four great forests,

and there is no town within twenty miles;

the plain is crossed by four ways,

and there are in ambush five hundred men at each of these ways, ready to slay the Sons.

¹ Fol. O. iv. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.
³ be able. ⁴ ne nulle habitacion, F. orig. l. viii.
⁵⁻⁵ le tiers, F. orig. l. viii.

they sworne it, and promysed to kyng Charlemagne. Thenne cam there Reynawde & his bredern wyth theyr felawshyp of eyghte erles, that the kyng yon¹ of Gasecoyn¹ had take to theym, the whiche wylt well all the mys- 4 tery of this trayson. And incontynent Ogier, the dane, sawe theym firste of all / the whiche was all abashed / and sayd to his folke, 'Fayr lordes, ye ben my men, my subgettes, & my frendes; ye knowe that Reynawde 8 is my cosin, & I oughte not to see his dethe nor his dommage. Wherefore I praye you all that ye wyll doo hym no harme at all, nor to none ²of his bredern, ¹my cosyns'¹ / They answerd all, that they sholde doo his 12 commaundement wyth a goode wyll / This hangynge, Reynawde & his brethern passed by and wente in to the myddes of the playne.

Ogier, when he sees the Sons approach, tells his folk not to attack them;

so they pass without harm, and reach the middle of the plain, where they find no one.

Thenne whan Reynawde & his brethern were com 16 there, and fonde noo body / they were of it sore abashed / And after, whan Alarde saw this / he called his brother Rycharde, and sayd to hym / 'What is this, fayr brother, I see well that we ben betrayed / 20 for I see you chaunge your colour / how thynke ye?' 'Brother,' sayd Rycharde,³ 'I doubte me sore for reynawde.' 'Have noo doubte,' sayd Alarde; 'for we shall have no thyng but goode' / 'My brother,' sayd 24 Rycharde,³ 'I promyse you all, my herte shaketh / nor never in my dayes I had not soo grete feere; For all my heeres rise vp / Wherof I doubte me sore that we ben betrayed / And that more is, I sholde not be aferde 28 yf Reynawde were armed and set vpon bayarde, and we also; for thus as we ben now, we ben halfe discomfyted' / And whan he had sayd thus, he spake to Reynawde and sayd / 'Brother, why do we tary here, sith 32 that we have founde noo body ¹wyth whom we sholde speke?¹ for yf xx knyghtes were here armed / they

Richard begins to suspect that they are betrayed,

and asks Reynawde why they tarry here longer.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. O. iv. back.

³ Guichard, F. orig. m. i. back.

sholde have vs where they wolde, mawgre our teeth
 as bestes / seenge that we have so many enmyes in
 Fraunce. Ye wolde not beleve this that we tolde you /
 4 and also your wyf at Mountalban / wherof I fere me
 sore that ye shall have no leyser for to repente you of
 it / For yf our cosyng mawgis had *ben* here wyth vs /
 and that ye had your goode horse bayarde / ¹we sholde
 8 not doubte Charlemagne wyth all his puissaunce, of a
 strawe¹ / I praye you lete vs goo hens, for I promyse
 you it is foly for to abyde here long; for I know well
 that charlemagne hath made vs for to com here as bestes
 12 clothed with scarlet / nor I can not beleve none ²other /
 but that the kyng Yon hath falsly ³betrayed vs' /

‘**C**ertes, fayr brother, ye say trouth,’ sayd Rey-
 nawde / ‘and I perceyve me well of it / now
 16 lete vs goo backe agen all fayr & softe / and as they
 wolde have retourned,’ Reynawde hehelde a side &
 saw well a thousande knyghtes armed, comynge a grete
 paas agenst theim / And foulques of morillon cam
 20 afore all the other, well horsed, his shelde afore hys
 breste, & ⁴his spere alowe in the reest, the grete valop
 agenste Reynawde; ⁴for he was that man in the worlde
 that he mooste hated. Whan Reynawd sawe com
 24 foulques of morillon, he knewe hym well at his shelde,
 and was so an-angred for it that he wyste not what to
 doo. ‘Ha, good lord, what shall we poure synners
 doo? I see well *that* we must deye this day withoute
 28 doubte’ / ‘Broder,’ sayd Alarde, ‘what saye ye’ / ‘by
 my feyth,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘I see here grete sorow.
 Here cometh foulques of morillon for to slee vs; and
 whan alarde had seen theim comyng⁵ / it lacked lityll
 32 that he wexed madde, and fell down almost for grete

Reynawde would
 have returned,
 but perceives
 Foulques of
 Morillon with a
 thousand knights
 approach,

and knows that
 they come to slay
 him.

1—1 nous ne doubterions Charlemaigne ung bouton, F. orig.
 m. i. back.

2 Fol. O. v. 3 et mauvaisement, F. orig. m. i. back.

4—4 la lance baisse contre Regnault, F. orig. m. i.

5 comyng, orig.

angre that he had of the same / and whan guycharde & Richarde sawe this, they began to make grete sorow. For they scratched theyr vysages & pulled theyr heeres / And whan alarde was a lityll assured / he sayd / 'Ha, 4 fayr brethern, guycharde & rycharde / now is the day com that we shall deye all thurgh mortall¹ treyson; for I knowe well that Reynawde hath betrayed vs, and certes I wolde never have thoughte that ony treyson 8 sholde have entred wythin so noble a man as he is; he made vs come here agenst our wylles & mawgre vs, by cause he knoweth well the trayson. Ha, Reynawde, the sone of Aymon of ardeyne / and who shall 12 ever truste ony man / whan ye that are our broder, and that we take for our lord / have brought vs hider magre vs to our deth / and have betrayed vs so falsly' / 'O richarde,' sayd alarde, 'draw² oute your swerde³ / 16 by god, the traytour shall deye wyth vs. For well ought the traytour to deye that hath procured so mortall a treyson.' Whan alarde had sayd this, they all thre dyde set hande to their swerdes & cam to Rey- 20 nawde for to sle hym yrefully,⁴ & sore an-angred as lyons; for they trowed for very certen that Reynaud had betrayed theym. Whan reynaude sawe theym com thus / he made semblaunt to defende hymself / 24 but longhe at theym by grete love. 'alas,' sayd richarde, 'what had I thoughte? I wolde not slee my broder for all the good in y^e worlde' / and so sayd alarde & guycharde; for thei were sore repented of 28 this that they had enterprised for to doo / and they began all for to wepe for pite, & caste their swordes down to therthe, & kyssed reynawde, sore wepyng. And alarde sayd, 'ha, good Reynawd, whi have you 32 betrayed vs so? / we be nother normans nor englyshe, nor almayns;⁵ but we be all bredern of one fader & of

The three brethren think that Reynawde has betrayed them,

and prepare to kill him in great anger.

Reynawde laughs for love of them.

They perceive his love for them, and throw down their swords.

¹ motarll, *orig.* ² Fol. O. v. back. ³ du fourreau, F. orig. m. i.

⁴ comme lyons, F. orig. m. i.

⁵ Flamans, F. orig. m. i.

one moder / and we holde you for our lord. For god,
 brother Reynawde, tell vs of whens cometh this tray-
 son / we ben com of so noble kyn, of gerarde of rous-
 4 sellon, & of dron of nantuell, & of the duk benes of
 aygremounte, and never none of our lynage thought no
 treyson / and how have ye doon so that have procured
 it now / ¹agenst your naturell brethern ;¹ certes it is a
 8 grete fawte to you.'

'**B**rother,' sayd Reynawd, 'I have more grete pite of
 you than I have of my owne self / for I have
 brought you here agenste your wyll ; and yf I had
 12 beleved you, this myshap had not com to vs. I have
 brought you here, and I promyse you I shall brynge
 you agen from hens, wyth goddys grace. Recomende
 our self to our lorde, and thynke for to deffende vs
 16 well, and feere not the dethe for our worshyp ; For
 ones we must deye wythoute faylle. But it is goode
²to gete worshyp' / 'Broder,' sayd Richarde, 'shall ye
 helpe vs?' / 'ye,' sayd Reynawd, 'doubt not therof' /
 20 and whan he had that sayd, he torned towarde therles,
 & sayd to them / 'fayr lordes, the kyng yon hath sent
 you wyth vs for to conduyt vs, & under the surete of
 you we be com here to lese our lyves / And therfor
 24 I pray you that wyll helpe vs' / 'Reynawde,' sayd
 therle of ansom / 'It is not for vs to bargayn here
 long / but lete vs all flee for to save ourself, & we
 maye' / thenne sayd Reynawd / 'by my hede, ye be
 28 all traytours, and I shall smyte of all your hedes' /
 'Broder,' sayd alarde, 'what tary ye soo long, for they
 be well worthy to deye / sith that they ben traitours.'
 and whan Reynawde vnderstode that worde of his
 32 broder / he set hande to his swerde, & smote therle of
 ansom so grete a stroke vpon the hede that he cloved
 hym to the harde teeth, & it was well rayson, for it
 was he that counseyllid this trayson to the kyngne you ;

Reynawde says
 that he grieves
 for them, as it is
 his fault that they
 are here,

but encourages
 them to fight
 well, and to die
 honourably ;

he demands of the
 Earls that they
 shall help him.

Ansom says they
 must fly and save
 themselves.

Reynawde then
 slays him for his
 treason,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. O. vi.

and the rest fly,
pursued by
Reynawde,

whose mule falls
under him;

he laments the
absence of
Bayard.

Guycharde ad-
vises their imme-
diate flight,

but Reynawde
would rather die
than fly shame-
fully.

They confess one
to the other,

that was the rewarde that he had for the first / Whan
therle of ansom was thus slayn / the other vii began to
flee, and Reynawde ran after; but he coude not renne
fast; for his mewle was to sore lade of the weyghte of 4
his body / so that the beest fell down under hym / for
Reynawde,¹ to say the trouthe, was ²so bygge made &
so grete,² that no horse myghte bere hym but oonly
bayarde. For as it is sayd / Reynawde had xvi. fete 8
of lengthe, & was well shape of body after y^e gretnes.
Thenne whan Reynawd sawe hymselfe a gronde,
he stode vp lightly ³wyth his mewle,³ & sayd /
'Ha, bayarde, my good horse, that I am not on your 12
backe armed of all peces, for, or ever that I sholde be
overcom / I sholde sell my deth full dere. Alas, none
ought not to complayne my deth, sith that I have pur-
chaced it myself' / 'Broder,' sayd guycharde, 'what 16
shal we doo? here by⁴ our ennyes evyn by vs: Yf ye
thynke it good, lete vs adventure to passe over this
ryver, & go vpon ⁵that highe roche / and soo we shall
maye save our selfe' / 'Goo foole,' ⁶sayd Reynawde,⁶ 20
'what saye ye / ye wote well that our mewles myght
not renne before the horses / what sholde avaylle vs for
to flee, sith that we myght not save ourselfe / Certes I
sholde not flee for all y^e world / I have lever deye 24
wyth my worshyp / than I sholde lyve wyth grete
shame; for he that deyeth in fleyng, his soule shall
never be saved.' Thus as Reynawde spake to his broder
Richarde,⁶ alarde sayd to hym, 'broder Reynawde, 28
lete vs lighte from our mewlis a fote, & shryve our selfe
the one to thother,⁷ to thende that we be not overcom
by the devyll.' 'Frende,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye
well & wysely.' and they dyde as Alarde had devysed / 32

¹ le filz aymon, F. orig. m. ii.

²⁻² si grant, F. orig. m. ii. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ be. ⁵ Fol. O. vi, back. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig. m. ii.

⁷ Et communions nous de fueilles du boys a celle fin que nous ne foyons surprins de l'enemy, F. orig. m. ii.

And whan they were confessed thone to thother /
 Reynawd sayd to his bredern, 'Lordes, lete vs doo
 suche a thyng / wherof we shall gete worshyp, sith it is
 4 soo that we maye not scape / lete vs kille them that
 com firste vpon vs / And we shall have avantage vpon
 thoder; and goddis curse have hym that shal feyne
 hym selfe.'

8 **T**henne whan Alarde herde Reinawde speke thus /
 he colled hym wyth his armes, and kyssed hym
 all wepyng, and sayd to hym / 'Broder, we ben two
 & two. I praye you that thone faylle not to helpe the
 12 other aslong that lyf is in our bodies.' 'brother,' sayd
 thother, 'we shall helpe you wyth all our myghte' /
 and thenne they wente & kyssed Reynawde by grete
 love. and after, whan they had kyssed eche other /
 16 they toke of their mantelles & wrapped them aboute
 their lifte armes / and toke their swerdes in their
 handes, and beganne to crie, & called their badges &
 tokens. Reynawde cried 'montalban' / alarde 'saint
 20 nycolas,' guyarde 'balancon' / & y^e gentil richarde /
 'ardeyn,' whiche was the badge or token of their fader
 aymon. Whan Foulques of Moryllon sawe the four
 1sones of Aymon comyng towarde hym all vnarmed /
 24 and vpon mewles so boldly / he was all abasshed of it /
 Thenne he began to crye, and saye, 'Reynawde /
 Reynawde, ye are come to your dethe; and I promyse
 you, he that moste loveth you hath betrayed you, that
 28 is the kyng You / but have pacyence, for I shall set to
 your necke an halter / Now have you not your horse
 bayarde / the whiche ye have ryden vpon wrongfully /
 Now shall be avenged the deth of Berthelot, that ye
 32 slewe.² Reynawde, what shall ye doo: wyll ye deffende
 or yelde you? but your deffence shall be not worthe
 to you / And yf ye make ony semblaunt to defende
 your selfe / I shall slee you Incontynente.'

and Reynawde
 counsels them to
 kill all their
 enemies who shall
 first approach.

The four brethren
 vow to defend
 each other,

and then take
 their swords,
 each crying on
 his own banner.

Foulques of
 Moryllon derides
 Reynawde,

saying he will put
 a halter round his
 neck, or slay him
 immediately.

¹ Fol. O. vii. ² faulcement, F. orig. m. iii. back.

'Foulques,' sayd Reynawde / 'ye speke well like a
 beste; and trowe you that I shall yelde me
 quycke to Charlemagne or to you / I shall first smyte
 of your hede, and the helme wythall / yf I can retche 4
 to you. ye knowe well how my swerde cutteth / By
 god, Foulques,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye are gretly to be
 blamed for to have gyven the counseyll for to make
 vs to be betrayed by the kynge Yon / For it is the 8
 fouleste crafte that a knyght may for to doo treyson.
 But doo as a gentylman oughte to doo / to the ende
 that men say not that it is treyson, yf ye wyll lete vs
 goo / we shall be all four redy to become liegemen of 12
 the kyng Charlemagne, and I shall gyve you my horse
 Bayarde / the whiche I gaaf not for all the golde
¹in the worlde; and also I shall gyve you y^e stronge
 castell Montalban. and yf the kyng Charlemagne 16
 maketh werre agenst you for love of vs / we shall serve
 you wyth fyve² hundred knyghtes well armed & well
 horsed ever more / and yf it playse you, ye shall save
 vs our lyves / And yf ye wyll not doo this / doo a 20
 nother thyng that I shall telle you,³ for to kepe you to
 be not called a traytour / Chese XX ⁴knyghtes of the
 beste that ye have / and put them in a felde well armed
 vpon good horses / & we four shall fyght wyth theym 24
 vnarmed as we be, vpon our mewles. And yf your
 XX. knyghtes well armed & well horsed may overcom
 me & my bredern, though we have no harnes vpon vs /
 we pardonne theym our deth; and yf god wyll that we 28
 sholde overcom theym / that ye sholde thenne lete vs
 go free where we wolde / it is that I requyre you,
 for⁵ goddys love & for your worshyp, & no more. and
 yf ye doo not so, ye shall be taken for an ylle knyghte 32
 all dayes of your liff' / 'By god, Reynawde,' sayd

Reynawde blames
 Foulques for his
 treachery in
 betraying them
 to John,

and offers him
 termes of peace.

¹ de Paris, F. orig. m. iii. ² quatre, F. orig. m. iii.

³ pour vous oster de blasme, F. orig. m. iii.

⁴ Fol. O. vii. back.

⁵ pour dieu et pour aulmosne, F. orig. m. iii.

foulques, 'your prechyng shall not avaylle you no
 thyng / for I have lever to have founde you now in
 this araye / than *that* I hadde woune an ¹hundred
 4 thousande marke of fyne golde.¹ Now is your cosin,
 the wyse Mawgis, ferre fro you; he can not give you
 no counseyll at this hour / and also all your folke be
 well ferre fro you / they shall not gyve you no socours /
 8 And also I knowe the goodnes of my men, & that they
 have promysed the kyng Charlemagne / that they shall
 not faylle to assayll you worthily.' 'By my feyth,'
 sayd Reynawde, 'and we shall defende ourselfe also to
 12 our power.' Thenne sayd Alarde to Reynawde /
 'broder, what ordenau^{nce} shall we kepe?' 'broder,'
 sayd Reynawd, 'we shall kepe fote two & two. ye &
 Guycharde shall be behynde, and I & Richarde shall
 16 make the forwarde; and lete vs smyte well harde,
 I praye you: For the tyme is now come that we must
 nedes doo so / and make we that thyng that shall be
 lefte in perpetuell memory to them that shall be after
 20 vs / sith that by no wyse we maye not scape.' 'Fair
 broder,' sayd Alarde to Guycharde, 'ye were well
 deceyved, for that ye trowed that reynawd had betrayed
 vs / I promyse you he wolde not doo it for all the
 24 golde of the worlde.' 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne
 Guycharde ²to Alarde,² 'I ³am now well hole, sith that
 our dere breder Reynawde shall be to our helpe; for
 aslonge as he shall be alyve, we shall deffende ourselfe,
 28 but not after, for though I myght chose, I wolde not
 lyve after he were deed.' And whan he had sayed
 this, they medled theymsel among their *emnyes*.
 Shortly to speke of, the four sones of Aymon assembled
 32 wel agenst thre hundred good knyghtes / But their
 corages were never the lesse therefore aslonge as they
 had lyfe in the body, but that they shewed to their

Foulques will not
 hear of such
 conditions,
 and says he would
 rather have found
 Reynawde in this
 manner than have
 won a thousand
 marks of gold.

The brethren then
 prepare to fight,

and go into the
 midst of their
 enemies against
 five hundred
 knights.

¹⁻¹ mille mares dor, F. orig. m. iii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. m. iv. back. ³ Fol. O. viii.

Foulques spurs
his horse towards
Reynawde,

and overthrows
him.

Alarde, in great
fear, cries out that
his brother is
slain.

Reynawde re-
bukes him, and
rising quickly,
draws his sword,

and asks Foulques
to dismount also
and fight him on
foot.

Foulques tries to
slay him at these
words,

but Reynawde
escapes,
and with one
stroke lays the
traitor dead upon
the ground;

enmyes a knyghtes face / whan Foulques of moryllon
sawe Reynawde com / he spored his horse wyth the
spores & bare his speere a lowe, and went & smote
Reynawde by the mauntell of scarlet that was aboute 4
his arme so grete a stroke that his spere entred thurgh
his thye, & overthrew bothe hym & his mewle to
therthe. Whan Alarde sawe that stroke / he cried
sore, & sayd, ‘ alas, we have lost Reynawde our broder, 8
that was all our hope & our socour ; now maye we not
scape / but that we shall be deed or taken, and it
is better that we yelde us prisoners at this tyme, thenne
to defende vs ony more / ¹For sith it is so, our defence 12
shall helpe vs no thyng agenst so many folke.’ ¹ And
whan Reynawde vnderstode that worde of his broder,
he cried to hym wyth a hie voys, & sayd, ‘ Fy vpon
you, gloton ! what is that ye say ? I have no harme 16
yet, but I am all hole as ye ben / ¹thanked be god ¹ /
and yet shall I selle me full dere or I deye’ / And
whan Reynawd had sayd this, he rose vp quyekly, &
toke the spere wyth bothe his handes / and pulled it 20
out of his thye wyth grete greef / and after set hande
to his swerde, And sayd to Foulques of moryllon,
& knyghte, yf ye wyll doo like a good man, lyghte
a fote as I am / And ye shall knowe what I canne 24
doo’ / Whan Foulques of Moryllon vnderstode hym /
he tourned vpon hym sore an-angred / and thoughte ²to
have smytten hym vpon his hede ; but Reynawde
drew a lityl aside, and went & gaaf to Foulques suche 28
a stroke vpon his helme, ³that nother yren nor stele
myghte not save hym ; ³ but that Reynawd clove hym
into the harde teeth, and felde hym deed to the erthe /
& whan he saw hym falle, he sayd to hym / ‘ Now 32
vnhappy traytour, that thy soule maye have no
pardonne, but goo to the pyt of helle’ / And whan he

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig. m. iv. back. ² Fol. O. viii. back.

³⁻³ que rien ne le secust garder, F. orig. m. iv. back.

had sayd that, he toke the horse of Foulques, that was
 right good / and light vpon it incontynent; and toke
 his sheelde and his spere / that Foulques had shoved
 4 thrughe his thighe. & thenne he sayd to his bredern /
 ‘Be ye all sure that aslong as I am a lyve ye shall
 have no harme / but the frenshmen shal saye that they
 have an yll neyghbour of me.’ And wyte it, whan he
 8 was on horsbacke, he was not well at ease / by cause
 that the stiropes were to short for hym. But he had
 other thyng to doo / than to make theim lenger. and
 1 when he was thus set on horsbacke,¹ he made his horse
 12 to renne, & helde his spere alowe / and wente & met
 wyth therle Angenon by suche maner that he put
 bothe yren and wood thrughe the breste of hym,
 so that he muste falle down deed fro the horse to the
 16 grounde afore his foote / And after, Reynawde set
 hande to his swerde, and smote a knyghte suche a
 stroke that his helme ²myghte not save hym, but cleved
 hym to the teth. What shall I telle you more? Now
 20 wyte it that at that tyme Reynawde slewe ¹wyth his
 owne handes¹ four erles / iij dukes, & ³VI knyghtes /
 and after he began to crie ‘Montalban’ wyth a hie voys.
 And after his crie, he went and smote Roberte the lorde
 24 of dygeon, that was sone to the duk of Burgoyne,⁴ so
 that the hede with the helme he made it lepe to the
 grounde. and after he slewe a nother sterke deed /
⁵that cam to rescue the sayd lorde.⁵
 28 ⁶**A**nd whan Reynawde had doon thise noble prowes /
 he behelde aboute hym / and trowed to have
 seen his brethern thenne: but he sawe none of theym /
 wherof he was sore abashed. ‘O god,’ sayd he,
 32 ‘where are my bredern goon, now be they well ferre
 from me; we shall never com togyder agayn’ / And

he takes the horse
of Foulques,

his shield and
spear,

and goes towards
Earl Angenon,
whom he also
slays;

and overthrows
Robert of Dijon.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² myhgte, *orig.*

³ onze, F. orig. m. iv.

⁴ si durement, F. orig.

⁵⁻⁵ encontre luy en grant angoisse, F. orig. m. iv.

⁶ Fol. P. i.

Alarde then comes
to him, who has
also won a horse,

than cam there Alarde, that in lyke wyse had wonne a
horse / the shelde and the spere, for he had slayne
a knyghte / and had taken his horse, but he was sore
hurte / Nevertheles he came, and helde syde wyth his 4

and Richard and
Guicharde appear.

broder / ¹and Richarde¹ & Guycharde came soone at
the other syde / Thenne Alarde sayd to Reynawde /
'Brother, be all sure that we shall never faylle you to
the deth' / And whan the four brethern were assembled 8

They make great
havoc among the
Frenchemen,

togyder agayne / they began to make soo grete dystruccion
of frenshemen, that none durste abyde them / For
all they that they hitte, scaped not the deth / whan the
frenshemen sawe this, they were mervaylled / and sayd 12

who say they
must be devils
to fight so
marvellously.

thone to the other / 'By my soule, this passeth all other
wounder ; I trowe that they ben noo knyghtes, but that
they ben devylles / now lete vs make to them a sawte
bothe behynde & before, For yf they lyve longe / they 16
shall doo vs grete hurte' / And whan they were herto

The Sons are
parted after this,

accorded, they ran all vpon the four sones of Aymon soo
harde that they parted them, wo'de they or not / But
Reynawde passed thurgh the them all, and brought hym- 20

but Reynawde
and Alarde come
out of the
skirmish safely.

self oute of the prees, and Alarde after hym / And
Rycharde retorned fleenge towarde the roche Mount-
bron / and Guycharde abode there on fote / for the
frenshemen had slayen his mewle vnder hym / and 24
had wounded hym wyth two speres well depe in to

Guicharde is
taken prisoner,
having lost his
mule, and is
bound and laid on
a horse by the
Frenchemen,

the flesshe, & was taken for prysoner ;² & they bonde
hym both hande and fote / and layed hym vpon a
lityll horse overhwarte / like as a sacke of corne, soo 28
wounded as he was / and I promyse you men myghte

who beat him,
and say he shall
be hung by
Charlemagne.

well folow³ hym bi the trase, by cause of the blode that
cam out of his body ; and so led hym soo shamfully as
that it had be a theef, & went all betyng vpon hym, 32
sayng to hym, that they led him to Charlemagne / the
whiche sholde make hym to be hanged, for to avenge

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. m. iv. ² voulsist ou non, orig. m. iv.

³ Fol. P. i. back.

the dethe of his dere newew Berthelot, that he loved soo moche / the whiche Reynawde slewe soo shamfully playng at the chesse.

4 **A**nd whan Reynawde sawe that his enmyes led his broder ¹Guycharde¹ so shamfully, he wexed almost mad for angre / and called his brother alarde to hym, & sayd / 'Fayr brother, what shall we doo? see

Reynawde asks Alarde how they may succour Guycharde, for to let him die shamefully would be treason.

8 how shamfully they fare wyth our broder ¹guycharde.¹

Yf we suffre them to bryng hym forth of this facyon / we shall never have worschyp in our dayes' / 'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'I wote not what we maye best doo, for to

12 abide, or for to goo to theym / For I telle you *that* we be no moo but two, and they be so grete nombre² of folke that we can doo no thyng agenste theym' / 'O god,' sayd Reinawde, 'what shall I doo yf the kyng

16 Charlemagne make my brother to be hanged / I shall never be at my hertes ease / nor I shall never com to no court, but men shall poynte me wyth the fynger / and shall say : "see, yonder is the sone of Aymon, that

20 lete his brother to be hanged to the pyn tre of Mount-facon / and he durst not socour hym." Certes,' sayd Reynawde to alarde / 'broder, I had lever deye firste / but yf I sholde rescue our brother fro deth.' 'Broder,'

24 sayd alarde, 'now set yourselfe afore, and I shall folowe you, & after my power I wyll helpe you to rescue hym' / and whan Reynawde herde that, he caste his shelde behynde hym / and habandouned his body all

Alarde says he will follow Reynawde to his brother's rescue.

28 boldly as a lyon, and cared not how the game sholde goo ; for ye sawe never wood men hewe in a forest, nor make so³ grete noyse as Reynawde made wyth his swerde amonge his en⁴myes, for he cutted and hewed

32 legges and armes by suche wyse⁵ that no man sholde beleve it / but they that see it.⁵ Thus made Reynawde

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² nombre in Caxton.

³ se, *orig.*

⁴ Fol. P. ii.

⁵⁻⁵ que cest chose Increable, F. orig. m. v.

at that tyme that the frenshemen must nedes make hym waye to passe, whether they wolde or noo. And many made hym waye for the love of Ogier / for they knewe well that the four sones of aymon were his cosins. 4 and whan Reynawde was passed, he sayd to theym that led ¹his brother¹ guycharde, 'Lete goo the knyghte, ye yll folkes, for ye be not worthy to touche hym' / and whan they that ledded guycharde sawe com Rey- 8 nawde / they were sore afrayed, that they put theym selfe to flighte, & lefte Guycharde free, & sayd the one to the other, 'Here cometh the ende of the worlde' / and whan Reynawde sawe that they fled, he sayd to 12 alarde, 'Goo ye, fayr brother, and vnbynde guycharde ¹our brother,¹ and sette hym vpon this horse / and gyve hym a spere in his hande, and com after me, for the traytours ben discomfited.' 'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'I 16 shall goo where it playse you / but I telle you yf we parte one from thother, we shall never come togider agen / seenge that we be so fewe & so yll armed / but lete vs kepe togyder / and helpe thone the other' / 20 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye well & wysely; and we shall doo it.' And thenne they wente bothe togyder to Guycharde / and vnbounde hym / and made 24 hym mounte on horsbacke, the shelde at the necke, and the spere in the hande / Now goo there [the] thre brethern togyder / and the fourthe fyghteth agenste a grete nombre of folke / that was the valyaunt Rycharde / that was the mooste worthy of all ¹after his brother 28 Reynawde.¹ But men had slayne his mewle vnder hym / and was wounded ryght sore. But he had slayn fyve erles / and well xiiii. knyghtes² / wherof he was soo sore traveylled / and soo wery, that he myghte not 32 almoste deffende hym selfe no more, but went ³rounde aboute the roche / And thenne cam Gerarde of Val-

The Frenchmen out of love for Ogier, let the brethren pass,

and the folk who lead Guycharde fly for fear of Reynawde.

Guycharde is set free, and mounted on horseback.

The valiant Richard has slain meanwhile five Earls and fourteen knights, but from weariness can defend himself no more.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² knihtes in Caxton.

³ Fol. P. ii, back.

- come, that was cosyne to Foulques of morillon / the
 whiche he had founde deed, wherof he made grete
 sorowe / and sayd / ' Ha, gentyll knyghte, it is grete
 4 *dommage* of your dethe. Certes, he that hath broughte
 you to this deth is not my frende. Now shall I
 avenge me yf I maye.' and thenne he came to the
 roche. And whan he saw Richarde in soo grete greef,
 8 he spored his horse wyth his spores, and bare his spere
 alowe, and smote Richarde thourghe the mauntell of
 scarlet / that he had wrapped aboute his lyfte¹ arme
 soo harde, that the spere entred ferre in his body, soo
 12 moche that he brought hym to the erthe / and as he
 drewe his spere agayne / the guttes of Richarde came
 oute of the body in to his lappe; and the wounde was
 soo grete that the lyver and the lounge appyered.
 16 Thenne beganne Gerarde to crye / ' Now are dyscoupled
 the foure sones of Aymon, for I have slayne Richarde
 the hardy fyghter; all the other shall sone be slayne or
 taken / yf god gyve me helthe. And I shall brynge
 20 theym to the kynge Charlemagne / ²that shall make
 theym to be hanged atte Muntfacon, as sone as he
 hath theym.'²
- T**henne whan Rycharde was come a lityll to his
 24 ease, he rose vp quyckely vpon his feete / and
 toke his bowelles wyth both his handes and put theym
 agayn in to his bely; and after set hande to his
 swerde, and came to Gerarde, and sayd to hym in
 28 grete angre / ' Thou cursed man, thou shalte have thy
 rewarde anone for that ye have doon to me. For,
 certes, it shall not be vmbrayed to Reynawde that ye
 have slayne his brother.' And whan he had sayd
 32 thus, he smote Gerarde thrughe the quyras / and
 thourghe the shelde, soo grete a stroke / that he hewed
 the sholdre and the arme wyth all from the body,

Gerard of Val-
come grieves
over the death of
Foulques;

he perceives
Richard,

and with his spear
wounds him
terribly,

then cries out
that he has slain
one of the Sons
of Aymon.

Richard rises
from the ground,

and slays Gerard
with one stroke;

¹ omitted, F. orig.

²⁻² qui les mectra a montfacon, F. orig. m. vi. back.

& felled hym doun deed to the erthe ¹afore his feete /
 and thenne sayd to hym / 'Certes, Gerarde, it had be
 better for you that ye had not come hitherwarde / for
 to the kynge Charlemagne / Now shall ye not bere ⁴
 your boste that ye have slayne one of the foure sones
 of Aymon.' And whan he had sayd that, he felle doun
 in a swoone; and whan he was come agayne to hym
 selfe / he beganne to wysshe after his bretherne, ²and ⁸
 complayned theym sore, ² saynge, 'O Reynawde, fayr
 brother, this daye shall departe our company, For
 I shall never see you, nor ye me / O castell of Mount-
 alban, I comende ³ the to god, that he wyll by his mercy ¹²
 and pyte brynge agayne your lorde sauff and sounde
 of his body / Ha, kynge Yon of Gascoyn / Why have
 ye betrayed us / and taken vs to the kynge Charle-
 magne / certes, ye dede therin grete synne / ²and a ¹⁶
 shamfull fawte.' ² and after, he sayd all wepynge / 'O
 fader, kynge of glory / and lorde of all the worlde /
 socoure this daye my power bredern, For I wote not
 where they ben; nor of me they maye have nother ²⁰
 helpe nor socours, for I am all redy for to deye.'

he then swoons
 because of his
 wound, and on
 recovery regrets
 the absence of his
 brethren,

and the treachery
 of King John;

he weeps, praying
 God to succour
 his poor brothers
 this day.

Reynawde, Alarde,
 and Guicharde
 fight valiantly,

and come to a
 narrow pass
 where they can
 defend them-
 selves.

Reynawde en-
 quires after
 Richard,

Now shall I telle you of Reynawde, of Alarde / and
 of Guycharle, that faughte strongely agenste
 theyr eumyces, as worthy knyghtes that they were. ²⁴
 But all theyr grete fayttes of armes sholde avaylled
 theym noo thyng ⁴ yf they had not come to a narrow
 waye of the roche / where men myghte not come to
 theym but afore. And whan they had be longe there / ²⁸
 Reynawd beganne to saye to his brother Alarde /
 'Brother, where is become our brother ⁵Richarde, that
 we sawe not of a goode while agoo. Now thynke
 none other but that we shall never see hym / For ³²
 I lefte hym here by this sapyn tre, whan ye and I

¹ Fol. P. iii. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. m. vi.

³ comeude in Caxton.

⁴ . . . quilz ne fussent ou mors ou prins . . . , F. orig. m. vi.

⁵ brether in Caxton.

had soo moche adoo. I praye god, yf he be deed, that
 he have his soule / Now ¹I wyll wyte tidynges of hym and says he will seek tidings of him.
 yf it be possyble' / 'Brother,'² sayd alarde, 'yf ye wyll
 4 beleve me, ye shall abyde here / god pardonne hym yf
 he be deed, For we may not helpe hym, the parylle is
 to grete / And I beleve that we sholde deye afore that
 evyn were come' / 'Ha, brother,' sayd Reynawde,
 8 'shall we faylle to our brother Rycharde, the goode
 knyghte and worthy.' 'Thenne,' sayd Alarde / 'what
 wyll ye that we shall doo therto / For as to me, I
 knowe no remedye to it' / 'Alas,' sayd Reynawde /
 12 'ye speke folysly / For I sholde not doubte for fere of
 dethe to wyte where he is become / And yf I sholde Reynawde says he will go alone rather than not rescue his brother,
 goo alone / yet shall I vnderstonde some tydynges of
 hym.' 'Brother,' sayd Alarde / 'I promyse you / yf
 16 we departe thone from the other, we shall never see vs
 agayne togyder.' 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'other
 deed or all quycke I shall fynde hym, where soo ever
 he be / it maye none other be' / And whan Reynawde
 20 had sayd thise wordes / he spored his horse with his
 spores / and came atte the other side of the roche / And
 whan they that had chased Rycharde there for to slee
 hym / sawe Reynawde³ come / they smote theym selfe and spurs on his horse to the other side of the rock.
 24 to flyghte. And thenne Reynawde wente a lityll more
 vpwarde vpon the roche, and founde there his broder
 Rycharde, that laye nyghe deed vpon the grounde, and
 helde his bowelles bytwene his handes; and aboute
 28 hym were a grete nombre of folke whyche he had
 slayne. Whan Reynawde sawe hym deed, and soo sore
 wounded / he had of it soo grete sorowe at his herte
 that almoste he felle down deed to the grounde / But
 32 he toke corage, and came nyghe his brother / and
 lyghted down from his horse, and kyssed hym sore he kisses him,
 wepyng, and sayd / 'Ha, fayre brother / It is grete

¹ Fol. P. iii. back.² Sire, F. orig. m. vi.³ et ses aultre deux freres . . . F. orig. m. vii. back.

weeping sorrow-
fully over his sad
plight,

pyte and dommage of you / and of your dethe / For,
certes, never man was worthe you ; for yf ye had ¹ come
to mannys age / never Rowlande nor Olyver were
so prue in knyghthode / as ye sholde have be. Alas, 4
now is loste our beaulte and our yougthe thourghe
grete synne / O, goode lorde / who sholde ever a
thoughte that ony treason sholde have entred² in to the
herte of the kynge Yon / Alas, my brother Richarde, 8
woo is me for your dethe / For I am cause of it /
Alas, this daye in the mornynge, whan we departed
oute of Mountalban we were four bretherne, all good
knyghtes. Now are we but thre, that ben worthe noo 12
thyng, for we ben peryllously wounded, and all
vnarmed. Now god forbede that I sholde scape, syth
that ye be deed ³ vpon the traytours.³ But I praye god
that I maye venge your deth vpon⁴ theym or ever I 16
deceasse / For I shall sette therto my gode wylle ; and
yf god wyll, it shall be soo.' Evyn thus as Reynawde
made mone over his brother / he behelde behynde hym,
and sawe come his brethern Alarde & Guycharde, all 20
dyscomfyted / that cryed vpon Reynawde, ' Brother,
what doo you / come anone and helpe vs / for we have
grete nede' / And whan Richarde herde the voys
of Alarde / he opened his eyen. and whan he sawe 24
his brother Reynawde afore hym, he sayd to hym /
' O, brother Reynawd, and what doo you here / see ye
yonder that roche, whiche is soo highe and so stronge /
where as ben many smalle stones above ; yf we myghte 28
doo soo moche that we clymed vp there / I beleve that
we sholde be sauf from our ennyes, for it can not be
but our cosyn mawgys knoweth our dysease by this /
and he shall come to socour vs.' ' Brother,' sayd 32
Reynawde, ' wolde god we were there. Now telle me,

and vows venge-
ance on his
enemies.

Alarde and Guy-
charde fly before
the enemy,
and cry to Rey-
nawde to help
them.

Richard opens his
eyes, and seeing
Reynawde,

counsels him that
they should go
to the top of the
rock, and there
wait till Mawgis
succours them.

¹ Fol. P. iv.

² . . . dedens ung si noble cueur comme du roy jon, F. orig. m. vii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ les traictres, F. orig. m. vii. back.

my fayr broder / how fele your selfe ; thynke ye that
ye maye recovere helthe ? ' Ye, ' sayd Richarde, ' yf
ye scape, and elles not ; for wyth the sore that I have
4 I myghte well deye ¹ for sorowe. ' ¹

² **A**nd whan Reynawde herd Rycharde speke thus, he
was ryght glad of it. Soo called he Alarde to
hym / and sayd, ' brother, take Richarde vpon your
8 shelde, and lede hym vpon the roche / and Guycharde
and I shall rowme the waye afore you. ' ' Brother, '
sayd Alarde, ' doubte not / I shall doo my power. '
And thenne he lyghted down, and toke vp Rycharde
12 and layd hym vpon his sheelde ; and after he lyghted
agayne on horsbacke. and Reynawde and Guycharde
leyd hym wyth his broder vpon the horse necke / And
after put theym selfe a fore to breke the preece of the
16 frenshemen. And they dyde so moche that they came
to the roche / But wyte it well that Reynawde made
there soo grete fayttes of armes that all his ennyes
were sore merveyllid wyth all. For he slew at that
20 tyme well thirty knyghtes / that never wylde bore, nor
tygre, nor lyon / nor bere, dyde that Reynawde made
there of his body / But, for to saye the trouthe, Rey-
nawde settid noughte by his lyffe, and ieoparded hym
24 selfe all togyder / for he was as a man dysperate / And
whan they were come to the roche, Alarde set down his
brother Richarde to the erthe / and beganne to deffende
quykely. but I wote not how they myghte endure /
28 for they had nother castell nor fortresse / but onely the
roche.

Alle thus as the thre bretherne deffended theym
selfe wyth grete woo, Thenne came there Ogyer
32 the dane and his folke / And had in his company
Magōn of Fryse, wyth well a thousande knyghtes,
and cryed vpon Reynawde, ' Certes, knyghte, ye shall
be deed / we have sworne your dethe. This daye is

Reynawde tells
Alarde to put
Richard on his
shield, and bear
him thus on to
the rock.

The two other
brethren break
the press of the
Frenchmen,

and Reynawde
slays 30 knyghts,

risking his life
as a desperate
man.

Ogyer and his
folk come towards
them, and Magon
of Fryse with a
thousand knyghts.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. P. iv. back.

the departynge that ye and your bretherne shall suffre
 dethe / Ye dyde as fooles ¹whan ye belived the kynge
 Yon, For he hath put you all to dethe.' Whan Alarde
 sawe soo grete folke come / he was sore an angred / and 4
 sayd to Guycharde, 'See how grete a sorowe is here
 afore vs, and the grete nombre of folke that ben redy
 for to slee vs four knyghtes. Certes, yf we were fyve
 hundred well armed / yet sholde not we scape / For 8
 they ben well armed, and a grete quantyte of knyghtes' /
 'Surely,' sayd Guycharde, 'here is a mervelouse com-
 pany / ²but yf god helpe vs now,² we ben come to the
 ende of our dayes / It is noo grete dommage of me 12
 nother of Rycharde / but the grete dommage is of
 Reynawde, that is the best knyghte of the worlde' /
 And whan Alarde and Guycharde had spoken togyder,
 they wente to Reynawde and kyssed hym, full sore 16
 wepyng, and sayd to hym / 'O, brother Reynawde,
 gyve vs a gyfte yf it playse you, for the love of our
 lorde god.' 'Lordes,' sayd Reynawde, 'what thyng
 aske you of me? ye knowe well ynoughe that I canne 20
 not helpe you of noo thyng. And this daye muste I
 nedes see you deye byfore my eyen.'

'**B**rother,' sayd Alarde, 'herke what we wyll telle
 you, and yf it playse you ye shall doo it' / 'Sey 24
 on, hardely,' sayd Reynawde. 'Brother,' sayd Alarde,
 'men sayen comynly that it is better to doo one harme
 than two / I saye this, by cause that yf ye deye here,
 it shall be grete dommage, And the loss shall never be 28
 recovered agayne. For none shall avenge your dethe /
 But thoughe we deye here and not you / it shall be noo
 grete dommage / For ye shall avenge vs well. And
 therefore we praye you, swete brother, ³for all the play- 32
 sures that ye wolde doo ever to vs;³ that ye wyll goo

Alarde is greatly
 angered when he
 sees so many folk
 approach.

The brethren
 grieve over Rey-
 nawde, fearing
 that he will die
 before their eyes.

Alarde, for love of
 his brother,

advises him to
 leave them and
 save himself,

¹ Fol. P. v.

²⁻² Si aventure dieu ne pense de nous . . . F. orig. m.
 viii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. m. viii.

your wayes / and we shall abyde here. And whan the
 1^dethe shall come, we shall take it a worthe / This that
 we saye ye maye well doo; For ye be well horsed /
 4 and ye shall well save your selfe mawgre the frenshe-
 men, yf they² goo to Mountalban. And whan ye be at
 Mountalban / lyghte vpon Bayarde well armed / and
 brynge anone wyth you our cosyn Mawgys for to
 8 socoure vs' / 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde / 'ye speke to
 folyshly. Certes, I wolde not doo so for all the golde
 of the worlde. I sholde be sore badde and full vn-
 kynde yf I dyde soo / ³For I cowde not spyll my selfe
 12 sooner³ than for to leve you in soo grete perylle. Other
 we shall all scape, or elles we shall all deye togyder /
 For the one shall not fayll the other as longe as we
 maye lyve / Now god that suffred deth and passyon⁴
 16 save vs!' Thus, as Reynawde spake to hys bretherne,
 came the erle Guymarde / to whom god gyve evyll
 adventure, and sayd to Reynawde / 'knyghte, ye be
 take / and ye muste deye wyth shame vpon this roche /
 20 Whan ye beleved the kyng yon, ye dyde grete foly.
 He wrought grete trayson whan he dyd sell you to the
 kyng Charlemagne, that hateth you soo moche / For ye
 loved hym more than ye dyde your cosyn Mawgys /
 24 He hath well rewarded you for the grete love ⁵that ye
 oughte to hym.⁵ Telle me, Reynawde,⁶ whether ye wyll
 yelde you or deffende you?' 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde,
 'now speke ye for noughte / I shall never yelde me as
 28 longe as I am man a lyve' / 'Reynawde,' sayd thenne
 Ogyer, 'what wyll ye doo? We canne not helpe you
 of noo thyng; other gyve yourselfe vp, or deffende your
 selfe.' 'Ogyer,' sayd Reynawde,⁷ 'by hym that made
 32 the worlde, I shall never yelde me. I was never noo

and go to Mountalban, where he may fetch Mawgis to help them.

Reynawde says he would sooner die than escape as a coward, leaving his brethren in such peril.

Earl Guynard approaches the Sons,

and tells them how foolish they were to trust King John;

he asks Reynawde whether he will yield or defend himself.

¹ Fol. P. v. back. ² vous, F. orig. m. viii.

³⁻³ Car je ne me pourroye myeulx honnir . . . F. orig. m. viii.

⁴ par mortelle trahison, F. orig. m. viii.

⁵⁻⁵ *qui* a luy avies, F. orig. m. viii. ⁶ omitted, F. orig.

⁷ par celluy dieu . . . F. orig. m. viii.

Reynawde says he would sooner die than yield and be hung as a thief.

theef, & therefore wyll I not be hanged / I have lever deie lyke a knyght, than to hange ¹lyke a theeff.' ⁴ 'Lordes,' sayd Guymarde, 'lete vs sawte theym / For they shall not ²may kepe longe agenste vs' / 'Lordes,' ⁴ sayd Ogyer, 'ye maye well sawte theym yf ye wyll / but by my soule I shall doo theym no thyng, For they ben my eosyns, nor I shall not helpe theym / For ye shall take theym well wythoute me' / 'Certes,' sayd ⁸ the frenshe men, 'we shall thenne assaylle theym worthyly' / Thenne Ogyer drew hym selfe and all his folke a side, well the lengthe of a bowe shot, And beganne to make soo grete a sorowe as thoughe all the ¹² worlde had fynysshed a fore his eyen; and all his sorowe was for Reynawde his cosyn / and for his bretherne / And thus as he made his mone, be beganne for to saye / 'Ha, fayr cosyn Reynawde, it is grete ¹⁶ pyte of your dethe; And I, vnhappy man, that am of your kyn, suffire you to deye afore myn eyen / And yet I canne not helpe you / For I have promysed it to Charlemagne / nor I oughte not or to breke myn othe.' ²⁰ But the history telleth that ³Ogyer duange hym ⁴selfe gretly that daye / And thorughe his purchase the four sones of Aymon scaped⁵ / For yf he wolde have put peyne to it, they sholde not have scaped by no maner / ²⁴ But as men sayen, 'true blood may not lye.'

Ozier makes great sorrow over his kinsmen, and his fair cousin Reynawde,

grieving that he cannot help them, because of his oath to Charlemagne.

Four Earls assault the rock on which the Sons stand.

Byfore the roche were four erles / for to sawte the four sones of Aymon, and made theym moche adoo; For theyr folke sawted theym in four partyes. ²⁸ Wherof Reynaude kepte the two partes / and Alarde and guycharde kepte the other tweyne / For Rycharde laye down vpon the erthe sore wounded / as I tolde you a fore / And yet was Guycharde⁶ wounded sore ³²

¹ Fol. P. vi.

² be able.

³ Ogyer se faignit celluy jour grandement, F. orig. n. i. back.

⁴ selfe in Caxton.

⁵ tant quilz ne furent mye prins, F. orig. n. i. back.

⁶ alart, F. orig. n. i. back.

thrughe the thye / wherof he had bled soo longe that
 he was feynte / and felle doun to the erthe. ¹And
 whan he sawe that he myghte noo more deffende, he
 4 beganne to call ²vpon Reynawde,² and sayd / 'Ha, Rey-
 nawde, fayr brother / Lete vs yelde vs, I praye you /
 for I nor Richarde maye noo more helpe you' /
 'Brother,' sayd Reynawde, 'what saye you, now shew
 8 ye well that ye be ferdfull; but I lete you wyte / that
 yf I trowed to scape other for golde or for sylver / or
 for cyte, or for castelles / or for my horse Bayarde that
 I love soo muche / I shold have yelde me prisoner to
 12 day in the mornynge. For ye wote well, ³that yf we
 ben take, all the golde of the worlde save vs not from
 hangyng / or som other shamfull dethe :³ And therefore
 I wyll not yelde me by noo maner of wyse / A man
 16 that wyll be valyaunte oughte to deffende hym selfe for
 to be hole' / 'Ha, Richarde,⁴ socoure vs for the love of
 Ihesus / for we have well mystre. We ben nother
 normans nor bretons / but we ben all of one fader and
 20 of one moder / Now oughte we well to helpe eeche other
 wyth all our power for our worship; for otherwyse
 men shold saye that we ben bastardes, and of an ylle
 fader.' 'Ye saye trouth,' sayd Guycharde⁴ / But ye
 24 wolde not beleve how feble I am, for I am wounded to
 the deth.' 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde, 'I am sorry for
 it / but I shall deffende you as longe as lyffe is in my
 body.' Who had seen thenne the noble knyghte Rey-
 28 nawde take vp the grete stones, and caste theym vpon
 hys enmyes, ye wolde not have sayd that he had not
 be wounded nor traveylled of noo thyng / Whan
 Rycharde that lay a grounde thus wounded, as I have
 32 tolde you above, sawe and herde the grete noyse that
 they that sawted the roche made, he toke up his hede,

Guycharde is
 wounded so that
 he falls to the
 ground, and can
 defend himself no
 more;

he cries on Rey-
 nawde to yield
 himself.

Reynawde re-
 preaches him with
 cowardice,
 and says nothing
 shall make him
 give himself up
 as a prisoner.

Guycharde says
 he is wounded to
 death, and cannot
 fight.

Reynawde
 defends him
 nobly, throwing
 great stones upon
 his enemies.

¹ Fol. P. vi. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³⁻³ que tout le monde ne nous pourroit eschapper de mort
 se Charlemaigne nous peut tenir, F. orig. n. i. back.

⁴ alart, F. orig.

and sayd to Reynawde, 'Brother, I shall helpe you; But cutte me some of my sherte, and I shall bynde my syde and wounde soo that my bowelles maye not yssue oute of my bely / And thenne I shalle sette me ¹to my 4 deffence and shall helpe you wyth all my herte' / Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'Now arte thou well worth a true man' / And whan Guycharde vnderstode hym, he was ashamed / and toke agayne strengthe in hym beyonde his power, and came to the deffence / ²and sayd wyth a hyghe voys, 'Ogyer,² Fayr cosyn, what doo you to your lynage? Certes, it shall be a grete shame to you yf ye socoure vs not / for the fawte that ye doo 12 to vs shall be layd vnto you in every place where ye goo, to lete vs deye thus, we that ben your kynnes men / the beste of all the worlde / Save Reynawde, and ye shall doo lyke a true man. And as for vs 16 other / it maketh nother lesse nor more' / Whan Ogyer vnderstode thise wordes / he was sory for it / that noo man myghte more / and wolde have gyven a grete thyng to have delyvered theym, And sayd that he 20 wolde doo wyth all his herte all that he myghte doo for theym / And thenne Oger spored brayforde wyth his spores / & came to the roche wyth a staff in his hande, And sayd to theym that sawted the roche, 24 'wythdrawe yourselfe a lityll tyll I have spoken wyth theym a lytyll, for to wyte whether they wyll gyve theymselfe vp or noo / For it is better that we have theym queyke than deed.' 'Syre,' sayd the frenshe- 28 men, 'we shall doo³ your commaundement; But we leve theym wyth you to kepe in the name of the kynge Charlemagne.' 'Ha, god,' sayd Ogyer, 'I never thoughte trayson / nor I shall not begynne yet' / And 32 thenne he came more nyghe the roche than he had be, and called to hym the foure sones of Aymon / and

Guycharde pleads with Ozier for the life of Reynawde.

Ozier is sorry, and would give much to help them;

he commands his men to withdraw for a time while he speaks to the Sons;

he calls the Sons,

¹ Fol. P. vii.

²⁻² et dist a Ogyer, F. orig. n. i.

³ dooo in Caxton.

- sayd to them, 'Fayre cosyn, rest you, and take agayn
 you[r] brethe / and yf ye ben hurte, wrappe vp your
 woundes / And make good garnyssheng of stones / and
 4 so defende yourself nobly of all your ¹powre; For yf
 the kynge Charlemagne maye have you, ye shall never
 have pardonne; but he shall make you to be hanged
 and strangeled / And therefore ye muste nedes kepe
 8 your selfe well. For I promyse you, yf Mawgys knowe
 of it, he shall come to socoure you / thus shall ye scape,
 and other wyse not.' 'Cosyn,' sayd Alarde, 'ye shall
 have of it a goode rewarde / yf ever we may scape.'
 12 'Ye saye true,' sayd Reynawde; 'For yf I maye scape,
 by god that suffred deth and passyon for vs vpon the
 crosse / all the golde of the worlde shall not save hym /
 but I shall slee hym wyth my owne handes / For I
 16 hate hym moche more than I doo a straunger; For he
 that sholde deffende and helpe me agenste all men, It
 is he that dooth me harme.' 'Cosyn,' sayd Ogyer, 'I
 maye not doo therto, so helpe god my soule / For the
 20 kyng Charlemagne made me swere afore all his barons
 that I sholde not helpe you in noo maner of wyse.
 And of this that I doo / I am sure that the kynge
 Charlemagne shall conne me noo thanke' / 'Brother,'
 24 sayd Alarde, 'Ogyer telleth you trouth.' And also it
 was well trouth that ogyer was reprevd therof for
 treyson; For Charlemagne called hym traytour afore
 all his barons. Thenne Reynaude bonde the woundes
 28 of his bretherne as well as he cowde / But the wounde
 of Rycharde was soo greefull to see, that it was pyte to
 beholde / For / all the entraylles appyered oute of his
 body / And whan he had lapped theym all, Alarde
 32 wrapped the wounde that Reynaude had in the thye /
 And whan they had reste theymselfe a lityll / Reynawde
 stode vp and wente vpon the roche for to gader stones
 to deffende theym selfe. And garnyssed therwyth

and tells them to
rest and bind up
their wounds,

and urges them to
fight valiantly,

until Mawgis
shall come to
their aid.

Reynawde de-
clares in anger
that he will slay
him, if he escapes
that day.

Ogyer justifies his
conduct, as he has
sworn before the
Emperor not to
defend his kins-
men.

¹ Fol. P. vii. back.

their deffence where ¹hys bretherne sholde stande.
 Whan the frenshemen sawe that Ogyer, the dane, made
 there to long a soiournyng, they beganne all to calle
 and crye / 'Ogyer, ye make there to longe a sermon, 4
 telle vs yf they wyll yelde theym or noo / or yf they
 shall deffende theym selfe.' 'Naye,' sayd Ogyer, 'as
 long as they have lyffe in theyr bodyes' / 'By my
 soule,' sayd the frenshemen, 'thenne goo we sawte 8
 theym efte agayne.' 'Thenne,' sayd Ogyer, 'I promyse
 you, I shall helpe theym with all my power.' Whan
 therle Guymarde herde Ogyer speke soo, he wente to
 hym, and sayd / 'We commaunde you in the kynges 12
 name of Fraunce, that ye come to the batayll wyth vs,
 agenste the four sones of Aymon / As ye have pro-
 mysed and sworne / and for doubte of you many a
 lorde is here in our companye that wyll not fyghte' / 16
 'Lordes,' sayd Ogyer, 'for god mercy / ye knowe all
 redy they ben my cosyns germayne / I praye you lete vs
 wythdrawe ourselfe abacke, and lete theym be in peas ;
 and I shall gyve eche of you large goodes.' 'Ogyer,' 20
 sayd the frenshemen / 'we shall not doo soo, but we
 shall brynge theym prisoners to the kynge Charlemagne
 that shall doo wyth theym his playsure / and also we
 shall telle hym what ye have doon. Whereof / he 24
 shall come you lytyll thanke all his lyff.' And after
 whan Ogyer vnderstode thise wordes, he was sore an
 angred / and sayd by grete wrathe, 'By the feyth that
 I owe to all my frondes, yf there be ony of you soo 28
 hardy that take Reynawde or ony of his bredern for to
 delyver theym to kynge charlemagne I shall smyte of
 his hede, what somer come after it.' 'Ogyer,' sayd
 the erle Guymarde, 'we shall not leve therefore, for 32
 to take theym ryght shortly / And whan we have
 theym / we shall see who shall take theym from us /
²for we shall well conne shewe this to the kyng Charle-

The Frenchmen
 are angry with
 Ogier for his long
 parley with the
 Sons,

and prepare to
 assail them again.

Ogier declares his
 intencion of
 helping his kins-
 men,

and asks his men
 to let the Sons go
 in peace.

The Frenchmen
 will not, as they
 are in the service
 of Charlemagne.

Guyward rebukes
 Ogier, and says
 when these Sons
 are taken
 prisoners, Charle-
 magne shall know
 of his conduct.

¹ Fol. P. viii.

² Fol. P. viii. back.

- magne.' And thenne they began to sawte the roche
 agen. Wyte it that Reynawde & his bretherne deffended
 them selfe full nobly. But whan Reynaude sawe this
 4 grete multytude of folke that cam for to sawte theym /
 he beganne to saye / 'Ha, Mawgis, my fayr cosin /
 where are ye now that ye knowe not this myshap, for
 ye wolde come anone to helpe vs, but ye knowe it not ;
 8 wherof I am evyll contente / For I was a foole and
 over hasty that I spake not to you of this matere afore
 that I cam here / Ha, bayarde, yf I were vpon your
 backe / I sholde never entre wythin this roche, for fere
 12 of the frenshemen. But the kynge Charlemagne sholde
 lose here of the beste knyghtes of his company.' and
 whan he had sayd thys, he beganne to wepe full ten-
 drely for the love of his bretherne, that he sawe soo
 16 sore wounded & soo wery / Thenne the frenshemen
 sawted theym efte as stronge agayn ; and I promyse
 you yf it had not be the grete prowes of reynawd they
 sholde have ben taken at that tyme by fyne force.
 20 Whan the sawtynge was fynysshed / Reynawd set
 hymself vpon his deffence ; for he was so wery, that yf
 he had goon he sholde have fallen down to the erthe,
 soo weke he was, and that was noo merveylle, for they
 24 had soo sore traveylled hym / and had suffred soo many
 tormentes & terrible sawtes that it was wonder they¹
 cowde endure soo longe.

- 28 **A**nd whan Oger, the dane, sawe his cosyn soo sore
 tourmented, he toke hymselfe to wepe tendrely.
 And thus as he wepte, he bethoughte hymselfe of a
 grete wysedome, & called to hym a knyght of his *that*
 was named gerarde, and sayd to hym / ²' have, for god,
 32 mercy of me ; & ³but yf ye doo *that* I shall telle you³ /
 I am dishonoured for ever more' / 'sire,' said Gerarde,
 'telle me what it please you / for it shal be doo

The Frenchmen
 renew the assault.

Reynawde
 bewails the ab-
 sence of Mawgis

and Bayard,

and weeps out of
 pity for his
 brethren, who are
 so weary.

He sets himself
 on his defence,

and nearly falls
 through weariness.

Oger calls a
 knight named
 Gerard,

¹ they *repeated in text.* ² Girart, F. orig.

³⁻³ se vous ne faictes ee que vous diray, F. orig. n. iii. back.

and tells him to take XL. knights and go to Mount Hosity, and keep watch there, lest Mawgis should come to succour the Sons.

though ¹ I sholde lose my liffe' / 'gramercy,' sayd Ogyer /
 'Now shall I tell you what I wyl that ye do. Take
 wyth you XL. knyghtes of the best of my felawshyp /
 and goo lightly to the mount Hosity / and kepe your 4
 selfe thervpon / and beholde towarde Mountalban all
 the ryght waye that noo body come but ye see hym /
 For yf Mawgys maye wyte by ony waye the mysfor-
 tune of his cosins, I promyse you that he wyll come to 8
 socoure theym, and shall gyve vs moche a doo, soo
 that y^e moste hardy shall be sore afrayed' / 'Sire,'
 sayd gerarde, 'this *that* ye have sayd shall be well
 doon' / and thenne he toke XL of y^e best knyghtes of 12
 his company, and went to the mount Hosity; where they
 made not well theyr watche for the prouffyte of the
 frenshemen / Ye oughte here to wyte that Ogyer founde
 this manere to sende his men forth, but oonly that 16
 Reynawde & his brethern sholde not have a doo wyth
 soo many folke; and thoughte not of that that happed.
 ¶ But now levethe here the history, to speke of the
 foure sones of Aymon that were in the roche Mount- 20
 bron. And also leveht to speke of Ogyer the dane,
 and of thother folke that Charlemagne had sent / and
 retorneth to speke of Godarde the secretary of the kyng
 Yon, that had red the lettres, where the trayson was 24
 conteyned all playnly /

Ogier does this that the Sons may not have to fight so many folk.

CHAPTER X.

¶ Howe after that Godarde the secretary of
 the kyng yon had rehersed all the treyson
 to Mawgys / that the kyng yon had doon 28
 to his cosins² / Mawgis brought suche a

¹ Fol. Q. i.

² la quelle Il scauoit bien au long car Il auoit leues les lectres du roy charlemaigne et escripte la responce que le roy yon luy auoit surree faicte, F. orig. n. iii.

socoures to Reynawde & to his brethern,
 that he saved theym fro deth by his grete
 wysdom / Capytulum x.

4 **N**ow sheweth the history, that whan Godarde sawe
 Reynawde & his brethern goo to their deth
 thourghe soo false a trayson / he had of it grete sorowe
 & pyte, and he was ryght sory for it / for two pryneypall
 8 causes / ¹wherof thone was for his mayster, the kyng
 yon, that had wroughte that shamfull treyson / And
 thother was for the grete pyte & dommage that it was
 for to make deye so pyteously suche worthy knyghtes
 12 as the four sonès of Aymon were / So began he to wepe
 pyteously ; and thus as he wept, came there Mawgys,
 the cosin of the four sones of Aymon, that went to the
 kechyn for to haste the mete / for the kyng yon wold
 16 ete, to the whiche men made good chere, bicause thei
 knewe not the trayson that he had doon / Whan the
 clerke sawe Mawgys, he called hym / and sayd to
 hym / ‘ Ha, mawgys, how it is yll wyth you / for yf
 20 god put noo remedy in you, ye have loste that thyng
 that ye moost love in this worlde, that is Reynawde &
 his brethern / for the kyng yon hath betrayed them
 shamfully.’ And thenne he shewed to hym all the
 24 trayson. whan Mawgis vnderstode thise wordes, he
 was all oute of his wyttes, & sayd to the clerke,
 ‘ Godarde, for god goo away fro me / for all my lymmes
 shaken for angre, nor I can not stande vpon my feet,
 28 for my herte telleth me *that* Reynawde & his brethern
 ben deed.’ ‘ Certes,’ sayd Godarde, ‘ ye saye trowth /
 For² the lettre sheweth that Ogier the dane & Foulques
 of morillon are set in a bushement³ wyth a grete nombre
 32 of folke in the playne of Valcolours / and Reynawde &

Godard weeps
 because of the
 betrayal of the
 Sons by King
 John,

and tells Mawgis
 of their sad fate,

and how Ogier
 and Foulques lie
 in ambush to
 attack them,

¹ Fol. Q. i. back.

² Fer in Caxton.

³ a tout deux mille cheualliers bien armez, F. orig. n. iv. back.

and how they
cannot defend
themselves with-
out arms.

Mawgis is so
grieved that he
would have killed
himself, but
is restrained by
Godarde, who
advises him to go
to the rescue of
his kinsmen.

Mawgis, without
a word to King
John, orders all
the soldiers in the
castle to arm,

his brethern are goon thyder all vnarmed by the
counseylle of kyng yon / and thus they can not
defende / but they muste be deed or taken.' Whan
Mawgys vnderstode this, he was sory for it, that he 4
felle down in a swoune to therthe / and atte the
fullyng that he made, he brake all his browes. and
whan he was come agen to hymselfe, he was so sory
that he wyste not what he sholde doo / So toke he a 8
knyff, and wolde have shoved it in his breste / but he
myghte not / for Godarde toke hym by the handes,
and sayd to hym / 'Ha, gentyll knyghte, ¹have mercy
vpon you / kylle not yourself / for your soule shal be 12
dampned for it; but light a horsbacke, & take wyth
you all the men of armes that ben wythin, and the
good horse bayarde, that renneth so fast / and goo
there as your cosins ben goon assone as ye may: and 16
whan ye come there, ye shall see anoone yf ye can
helpe theym or not; for yf thei ben alyve, ye shall
socoure theim ryght well' / 'Godarde,'² sayd Mawgis,
'your counseylle is right good.' and thenne he began 20
to wepe, and sayd / 'Ha, noble knyghte Reynawde,
it is grete dommage yf ye be deed / but I make my
vow to god, that yf ye & your brethern be deed,
I shall never lyve two dayes after you' / And thenne 24
Mawgis, wythout ony noyse or³ ony worde to be made
of this to the kyng yon, nor his suster, the wyff of
Reynawde / commaunded all the souldyou[r]es of the
castell to be redy in armes lightly. and whan the 28
knyghtes vnderstode hym, they toke their harneys on
Incontynent, as they were wount to doo / And whan
they were all armed, they cam all to the loweste parte
of the palays & presented theymselpe; and whan 32
Mawgys sawe theym, he shewed vnto theim all the

¹ Fol. Q. ii.

² Sire, F. orig. n. iv. back.

³ or *repeated in text.*

traison that the kyng Yon of Gaseoyn had doon to Reinawde and to his bretherne. and tells them of the treachery of the king.

Thenne whan y^e knyghtes of Reynawd vnderstode
 4 this, thei began to make suche sorowe that it was
 pyte for to see, and wysshed after the noble knyghtes
 that were gon to their deth / ¹and were so disperat that
 thei wolde almost have kylled theimself ¹ / For thone
 8 wysshed after Reynawde, & y^e other after Alarde,²
 thother after Guychard, & thother after Richarde, and
 sayd, ‘Ha, valyant & pru knyghtes, it is grete
 dommage of your deth, for certenly all the world shall
 12 be the worse therfore / Alas, & who shall gyve vs now
 the fair armes & the good horses that ye were wount to
 gyve vs?’ thus ³as thei were makyng this grete sorow /
 mawgys sayd to y^e palfreyner that kept bayerde /
 16 ‘frende, goo & set the sadell vpon bayerde, and I shall
 bryng hym to Reynawde’ / ‘syr,’ sayd y^e palfreyner /
 ‘I may not doo it / for Reynawde ⁴my maister⁴ com-
 manded me whan he went, that I shold not suffre no
 20 body to lighte vpon it tyll he were com agen’ / whan
 mawgis vnderstode thanswere of the palfreyner, he was
 wroth / and smote hym wyth hys fiste so grete a stroke
 that he cast hym⁵ at his fote afore hym, & after went
 24 hymself to the stable where bayerde was / whan bayard
 sawe Mawgis, he began to shrynke his eeres, & smote
 wyth his forfete so strong that no body durst goo nyghe
 hym / ⁶but the palfreyner that tended vpon hym. and
 28 whan mawgis sawe that bayerde played so, he toke a
 staffe & smote bayard vpon the hede so that he made
 him knele to the erth. and whan bayerd sawe he was
 so curstly dealed wythall / he was a ferde lest he shold
 32 be yet more shreudely handlyd, & so he helde hymselfe
 styll / and mawgis caste the sadel vpon hym, & bryddled

¹⁻¹ et a peu quilz ne se desesperent . . . F. orig. n. iv. back.

² Guichart. F. orig. ³ Fol. Q. ii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. n. iv. ⁵ Sur ses genoulx, F. orig. n. iv.

⁶ fors que Regnault ou le palefrenier, F. orig. n. iv.

Mawgis saddles
and mounts
Bayard,

and with five
thousand men
issues out of the
gate Fawcon,

and goes secretly
through the wood.

Reynawde sees
the approach of
Mawgis from the
wood;
he is mounted
upon Bayard,
who flies like a
swallow, leaping
xxx feet at each
step.

hym.¹ And wyte it, that whan mawgis was vpon bayardis backe, he was well like a valyaunte man ²& a hardy knyghte,² for he was one of the fayrest knyghtes of the world, & one of the best / and the moost subtyl ⁴ of the worlde. And whan mawgys & all his folke were ²all redy a horsbacke² well armed / thei went out ate the gate fawcon. And they myght well be a bouthe V. thousande men well horsed & well armed, and ⁸ vii hundred good archers, that never wolde goo backe for noo doubte of deth by ony maner / ³and they set theymsel to the waye / not by the right waye / but³ went thourghe the wode⁴ all a coverte wyth grete ¹² dyligence / And all wayes mawgys wente wysshynge after Reynawd and after his brethern, for he wyst not yf they were deed or a lyve / and sayd to hymselfe, ‘Ha, Reynawde,⁵ god be this day wyth ⁶you / and kepe ¹⁶ you ⁷& your bredern⁷ fro dethe & fro prison! But now yf the frenshemen kepe not theymsel well / they shal have suche a neyghbour & so cruell that thei shalle soone wery of it, & shall sore repent’ / Now shall we ²⁰ leve to speke of maugis, that brought socours to Reynawde to the playn of Valcolours. and we shall shewe of Reynawde & of his brethern, that were at roche montbron full of woo & sori, for thei saw theymsel in ²⁴ grete peryll / All thus as Reynawde dyde reste hymself vpon the defence of the roche, & thought in hym selfe what he myght doo / he torned his sight towarde the wood,⁴ & sawe come mawgis wyth his folke, the shelde ²⁸ at the necke, the swerd in the hande, & mounted vpon bayerde. wyte it that bayarde went not the lityll pase, but went lyke a sualowe / for at every lepe that he made, he lept xxx fote of grounde / and whan Reynawde ³²

¹ puis se arma et monta dessus bayart, F. orig. n. iv.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. n. iv.

³⁻³ Et se mirent a la voye hors le chemin. F. orig. n. iv.

⁴ de la serpente, F. orig. n. iv. ⁵ le filz aymon, F. orig. n. iv.

⁶ Fol. Q. iii. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted, F. orig. n. iv.

sawe mawgis com wyth so grete folke & so fayr a company, all his body shevered all sodenly for grete ioye / and forgate all the grete sorowe & tormente that
 4 he had suffred all the daye, & sayd to his bredern /
 ‘Bredern, ¹be mery, & ¹be not dysmayed of no thyng, for here cometh mawgis for to socour vs ¹wyth a grete nombre of folke; ¹now he sheweth well that he is our
 8 kynsman & a good frende: blessed be he of god that lath tolde hym the daunger that we were in’ /
 ‘Brother,’ sayd alarde, ‘is it trouthe *that* we shall have helpe anone?’ ‘Ye,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘by the feyth
 12 that I owe to you.’ ‘Certes,’ sayd alarde, ‘now complayne I not’ / and whan Rycharde, that laye with his boweles betwene his handes, vnderstode this word, hym semed that he dremed this that he herde whiche
 16 his brethern sayd / for he was all redy brought as one that had loste hys brayne / by cause of the grete sore that he felte, and forced hymself so that he righted hymself vpon his buttocke, but it was wyth grete
 20 peyn / & sayd to his broder, ‘Reynawde, me ²semeth that I have herde named mawgis, or elles it is come to me by a vision’ / ‘broder,’ sayd Reynawd, ‘by my feyth we have socours of mawgis, that bryngeth to vs
 24 all the power of montalban’ / ‘Broder,’ sayd Rycharde, ‘for god, shewe me hym!’ And thenne Reynawde toke hym vp bitwene his armes, & shewed hym mawgis, that cam ridyng vpon bayarde as faste as tempest. whan
 28 Richard saw mawgis he was so glad *that* he fell in a swoone bytwene his broders armes. and whan he was com agen to hymself, he sayd, ‘Now am I hole, for I fele nother yll nor sore’ / ‘Brother Reynawde,’ sayd alarde, ‘what shall we doo? For yf the frenshemen perceyve the comyng of mawgis, they shall fle, and I wolde for no good that they sholde doo so;

Reynawde encourages his brethren to be of good cheer, as Mawgis is coming with succours.

Richard enquires of the coming of Mawgis,

and is shown his approach from the arms of Reynawde;

he swoons with joy.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig. n. iv.

² Fol. Q. iii. back.

Alarde advises that they should avenge themselves on their enemies,

by beginning the battle before Mawgis arrives.

The three brethren descend from the rock.

The Frenchmen think they come to yield themselves prisoners.

Ogier upbraids the Sons with folly for leaving the rock, saying they will be laughed by Charlemagne this day.

Reynawde counsels Ogier to flee lest he should slay him.

for I wolde that we were first avenged vpon theym for the grete hurt that they have doon to vs; but lete vs doo one thyng that I shall tell you / Lete vs goo doun to the fote of the roche & begyn the batayll / 4 and while *that* they shall fyghte wyth vs / mawgis shall be com / & by all thus they shall not scape vs' / 'broder,' sayd reynawde, 'ye saye well, & we shall doo so' / and thenne reynawd, alarde, & guycharde went 8 doun to the fote of the roche / and the lityll richarde bode above vpon the roche, for he cowde not move nor helpe hymselfe.

Reynawde cam doun fro the roche wyth his two 12 bredern; and whan the frenshemen sawe theim, thei began to saye thone to thother / 'Here com the sones of aymon, that wyll yelde theymselvf prisoners / now lete vs not kylle theim, but take we theim for 16 to brynge theim a lyve to themperour Charlemagn.' and whan they had sayd this / they began to crye / 'Reynawd, but yf ye wyll deye shortly / yelde yourself! and yf ye doo it wyth good wyll / we shall 20 all praye Charlemagn that he have mercy vpon you' / Whan Oger herde theym speke thus, he wende it had be trouth that reynawd & his ¹ bredern wold have gyven theym self vp as prisoners / Soo was he full sori for it / 24 and spored brayford wyth the spores, & cam agenst reynawd & his bredern, & sayd to theym, 'knyghtes, I holde you now for foles, that ye have lefte your roche, *that* was ye^e sayng of your lif / this day shall ye be 28 hanged wyth grete shame / and yet I can not helpe you, for I shold be blamed of Charlemagn' / 'Oger,' sayd Reynawd, 'we be not suche foles as ye wene / but I wyll that ye flee. For by the feyth *that* I owe 32 to the olde aymon my fader, yf ye tary ony while here ye shall not be wyse / for yf I can reche to you / I shall shewe what I canne doo' /

¹ Fol. Q. iv.

This hangyng / that reynawd spake to oger, oger
 behelde towarde the right waye that cam fro the
 wode,¹ and sawe folke com to reynad, that mawgis
 4 brought / and was all afore mounted vpon bayarde,
 that cam fast / And whan oger sawe com thus² the
 folke of reynawd in grete nombre, he knew theym
 well, and was right glad of it / and his hert rored
 8 in his beli for ioye. and righted hymself vp³ in his
 saddle wel halfe a fote, & sayd to his folke / 'Fayr
 lordes, what shall we doo / the devyl hath told mawgis
that we be here. he cometh ridyng vpon bayard, &
 12 bryngeth wyth hym a fayr company. Certes, yf we
 were xx. thousand, yet were we not able to fighte wyth
 theym, and ye shall see this day that the sorow shall
 retorne vpon vs' / This hangyng, cam mawgys wyth
 16 all his felyshyp / and there where he saw oger, he cam
 to hym & sayd / 'Oger, I holde you for a fole by-
 cause that ye cam here to werke treyson. I chalenge
 of you reynawd & his bredern, & am com here for to
 20 be their surete. By god, oger, it longeth not to you
 for to betray thus reynawd⁴ & his bredern⁴ / for ye be
 of his lynage; but ye have yll shewed it to hym.
 your fader wroughte never treyson, and I merveyll me
 24 sore how ye⁵ wold graunt to it / your fader lefte you
 in fraunce for a pledge at saynt omers to Charlemagu,
 whos man ye are / paynge to hym everi yere four peny
 weyghte of golde / Oger, oger, ye be descended of
 28 damp Richarde of roussillon, of dron of nantuell,
 of the duk benes of aygremount; all thise were
 bredern, and good true men & feithfull knyghtes / and
 aymon of dordonne was theyr broder, & is fader to
 32 reynawd / this knowe ye wel, and ye wyll be other
 than was your lynage; wherof I defye you to the deth /

Oger perceives
Mawgis and his
folk

and with joy asks
his lords what
they shall do
against so many
men.

Mawgis rebukes
the Daue for his
treachery against
the Sons,

and defies him to
the death.

¹ de la serpente, F. orig. n. v.

² Mawgis et les gens, F. orig. n. v.

³ dessus la teste de son cheval, F. orig. n. v.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. n. vi. back. ⁵ Fol. Q. iv. back.

for I hate you vtterly.' Whan mawgis had sayd this
 worde / he spored bayarde wyth the spores, & smote
 Ogyer in the sheelde so harde that the sheelde ner his
 harnes coude not save hym / but that he made hym a 4
 grete wounde in his brest / and of that stroke floughe
 the spere in peeces. And whan oger sawe that / he
 was so sore an angred for it that he waxed almost mad,
 and wold have goon vpon mawgys, but he myghte not. 8
 For whan bayard smelled his lord / he ran myghtely
 towarde hym / wold mawgis or noo. And whan he
 was com byfore reynawde, he kneled byfore hym / &
 mawgis lighted from hym, & cam to reynawd & kyssed 12
 hym full swetly / and after he kyssed alarde &
 guycharde. And thenne sayd / 'where is the lityll
 rycharde? For men helde hym for one of the moost
 hardy of the worlde.' 'Cosin,' sayd reynawd, 'he is 16
 there above sore wounded, that I wote not whether he
 be deed or a lyve.' 'cosin,' sayd mawgys, 'can not he
 move hymself' / 'it is not tyme to speke so long,' sayd
 reynawd / 'but lete vs see who shall doo best of vs all. 20
 gyve me my horse & my armes.' 'with a good will,'
 sayd mawgys. and thenne reynawd armed hym &
 lighted vpon bayarde / the sheelde at the necke & the
 spere in the hande¹ / and whan he had said this he 24
 spored bayard with his spores / and lept at everi tyme
 xxx. fote of lengthe / Whan reynawd saw hymself
 vpon bayarde he was right glad, for ²he trowed never
 to have set vpon his backe agen,³ and whan he sawe 28
 hymself thus horsed & armed ⁴wyth his owne armures⁴ /
 so helde hymself more sure than that he had be in the
 maister towre of montalban / and thenne he made
 a course & ran vpon Oger, & smote hym so harde that 32
 he made hym lighte fro the saddle, and bare hym fiersly

He spurs Bayard,
 and wounds Ogyer
 severely, breaking
 his spear in the
 encounter.

Bayard will not
 stay longer, but
 runs towards his
 master,

and Mawgis dis-
 mounts and
 embraces his
 kinsmen.

Reynawde asks
 for his horse,
 and, having
 armed him-self,
 mounts upon
 Bayard.

He runs upon
 Ogyer, and smites
 him fiercely to
 the ground,

¹ et dist a ses freres. Freres, armes vous car le besoing en est venu, F. orig. n. vi. ² Fol. Q. v.

³ et qu'il peust retourner en son premier estre, F. orig. n. vi.

⁴⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

to the grounde. & whan reynaude sawe oger a
 grounde / he lighted a fote, & toke the horse of ogyer
 & brought it to him agen, and helde the stirope, &
 4 made oger to light vpon brayforde agen / and thenne
 Reynawd sayd to hym / ‘Cosin ogyer, now have ye the
 rewarde of the goodnes that ye dyde vnto vs / but,
 certes, this that ye have doon, ye dyde it as a traytour
 8 & an yll kynsman / therefore kepe you fro me, for I
 defye you; and by hym that made y^e worlde, I shall
 spare you nomore / for ye are slaundred’ /

but afterwards
 dismounts and
 holds the stirrup
 for his cousin to
 mount again,

telling him to
 keep away, or he
 will be killed
 without mercy.

12 **C**osin Reynawd,’ sayd Ogyer, ‘and we shall kepe
 vs fro you, doubte ye not.’ who thenne had be
 in that place, he shold have seen how Reynawd had
 medled hymself vygoriously among the frenshemen /
 and myght well saye that he was a knyghte ¹prue &¹
 16 valyaunt. And thenne cam mawgis vpon a nother
 horse that he had recovered, & spored hym with his
 spores, and cam to therle Guynarde, & smote hym
 thorughe the sheelde so that he shoved his spere
 20 thrughe & thrughe his body / and felde hym down deed
 to therthe. ²And whan he had guyven that stroke
 he cried ²‘Montalban cleremount.’ and after he sayd
 in this maner, ‘Fre knyghtes, smyte vpon this frenshe-
 24 men, that wold slee the best knyghtes of the world;
 they have well shewed grete worthynes whan they be
 com heder in grete nombre for to fight agenst four
 knyghtes vnarmed: but they shall repente theym of
 28 their bargayn right sore, ³or that two owres ben a
 goo³ / & ⁴therefore leye strongly vpon them, & as harde
 as ye can / for yf oger scape vs, we be ⁵dishonoured’ /

Mawgis slays
 Earl Guynard,

calling on his
 banners, ‘Mount-
 alban,’ and ‘Clere-
 mount’;
 he commands his
 knights to fight
 valiantly, for if

Ogier escape they
 are dishonoured.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig.

²⁻² Et puis mist la main a son espee, et frappa ung cheval-
 lier qui auoit nom aliau, et luy donna sur son heaulme si grant
 coup, quil labact mort a terre. Et quant Il eut fait ses deux
 coups, Il escrie son enseigne, F. orig. n. vi.

³⁻³ omitted. F. orig. n. vii. back.

⁴ Lors dist a les gens, F. orig. n. vii. back.

⁵ Fol. Q. v. back.

and thenne began the striff fell and cruell; & many a frensheman was cast down to therth: For¹ they myghte not endure the grete merveylls of armes that Reynawde & his bredern made. And whan the frenshemen 4 saw that they coude not wythstande no lenger / and saw the grete dommage ²& hurt² that Reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis bare to theym, they put theimself to flighte, and oger wyth them, towarde the ryver of Dordonne; and oger passed it over vpon his horse brayforde / and whan he was come at thother side of the ryver / he lighted a fote / and Reynaud called in a scorne, & sayd to hym / 'Oger, I trowe ye be becom 12 a fissher / have ye celes or sawmons? I gyve you leve to chuse whether ye wyll com agen at this side, or that I go to you at that side. and yf ye come agen at this side / I shall kepe you sauf from all men, but of me 16 onely / or els make me sure fro charlemagnes folke, & I shall passe over to yonder side & shall iuste wyth you' / and after sayd to hym / 'Ye horson false knawe, ye have falsed your feyth to Charlemagn, for 20 ye be my cosin germayn / And how had ye the hert for to see vs murtrished in your presence / and that ye defended vs not agenst all men / and ye come yourselfe for to slee vs by traizon. Certes, oger, ye 24 have doon amys gretly / But thanked be god, ye leve wyth vs behynde you a good pledge / For here abideth with vs Foulques of morillon and therle Guimard / the whiche shall never make vs no werre; & more than vi.³ 28 hundred of your frenshe knyghtes / evyll tydynges ye shall bere of theym to charlemagne and to Rowlande / and ye shall gyve theym an yll rekenynge of your men. And goddys curse have they yf they make not 32 you to be hanged as a theeff ⁴by the necke.'⁴

The Frenchmen with Ogier fly towards the river Dordogne.

Reynawde scoffs at Ogier, asking if he be a fisher, and sells eels or salmons;

he upbraids him with cowardice and false faith towards the Emperor,

who shall hang him as a thief.

¹ Fro in Caxton. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. n. vii. back.

³ quatre, F. orig. n. vii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

1 **T**henne were the frenshemen sore abashed whan
 thei herde reinaud reprove oger² so, wherof thei
 were glad,³ & said to oger / 'well fynde ye now y^e
 4 rewarde of your goodnes! yf ye wolde have doon your
 devoyre, y^e four sones of aymon had be taken' / &
 whan oger saw hymself thus reprovéd of thone parte
 & of thother, he was right sori for it / and thenne thei
 8 lefte hym vpon the river side of dordonne; & abode
 wyth hym but V⁴ men / and whan oger sawe that all
 his company had lefte hym / he knew well that they
 dyd so for dispyte. thenne said he all by hymself,
 12 'Fayr god of heven, I am well worthy to be served
 thus! and the proverbe may well be rehersed for a
 trouthe, that sayth / "Often happeth evill for a good
 torne"' / whan oger had said this, he ⁵cried &⁵ sayd
 16 to reynawd / 'O, mad beest, ye blame me wrongfully &
 wythout a cause, for ye & your bredern shold have be
 hanged by this wythout ony pardonne / nor mawgyes
 had never com here tyme ynoughe; wherof ye have
 20 called me traytour / but ye lye falsly, for I never dide
 treason, nor never shall, yf god wyll. Ye have also
 called me fysshher, now ought I well to waxe mad all
 quycke, whan suche a gloton doth to me soo grete
 24 owtrage / but by the feith that I owe to all my
 frendes / but yf I fered other than you / I sholde goo
 gyve you suche a stroke thourgh the shelde that ye
 sholde saye it is a stroke of a maister.' ¶ Thenne said
 28 reynaude / 'ogier, ye speke well at your ease / for ye
 shall doo no thyng at all of that ye say, leest your
 limes should be hurt' / 'by my berde,' sayd Oger, 'I
 shal' / And thenne he broched braiford with the spores,
 32 and put hymselfe to swymme over the ryver. And
 whan he was come to the playn grounde / he made

The Frenchmen
also reprove the
Dane for not
having slain the
Sons.

Ogier laments
over his evil
fortune,

and tells Rey-
nawde how
wrongfully he
blames him after
his goodness
towards him.

He swims over
the river again
on Brayford,

¹ Fol. Q. vi.

² le dannoys, F. orig. n. vii. back.

³ Lors dirent entreulx. Dieu soit loue de ses parolles, F.
orig. n. vii. back.

⁴ dix, F. orig.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

and declares himself ready to fight.

hym redy for to ioust as wete as he was. and whan reynawde saw oger so yll arayed for to fighte, he had pite therof / And said to him,

Reynawde does not wish to begin the quarrel again,

‘**C**osyn, I have at this our no wyll for to fyght, 4
and therefore ¹goo your wayes agen, for this daye ye shall not be defoyled by me; now know I well that ye have holpen me’ / ‘Reynawd,’ sayd oger, ‘moeke not wyth me / Ye have called me traytour byfore many 8
knyghtes. yf I went my waye agen / men mighte saye to Charlemagn that I had betrayed hym falsly / My spere is yet all hole : it were a grete shame to me but yf I brake it vpon you or vpon one of your bredern / For 12
Foulques & therle guymarde shold complayne in helle vpon me / and of thother parte I shold have non excuse towarde the kyng charlemagn yf I went thus away / for ye have well slayne four hundred knyghtes of ours / 16
wherfore I saye for a conclusyon that I shall not goo my waye, but that I medle firste wyth you / for ye wote well that yf I wente thus my waye / the kyng Charlemagn sholde bere me som dishonour for it, & 20
he shold have rayson, & also he shold make me to be heded, and therefore I wyll fyghte wyth you / for, certes, I have lever dey than to retorne thus to hym / and yf god hath ordened that ye shall smyte of my hede, I 24
pardonne you my deth / for yf I can overcome you, I shall brynge you to the kyng charlemagn, what somer ever come of it.’

but Ogier will fight, so that men may not say he has betrayed the Emperor,

and would rather die than return thus to Charlemagne.

And whan reynawd herde ogyer speke so, he wexed 28
mad for angre, & sayd by wrathe / ‘oger, I defye you to y^e deth, & kepe you fro me!’ ‘and you of me,’ sayd oger / And whan they had defyed eche other so, Reynawd spored bayarde, & Ogyer brayford, their good 32
horses, & ran thone vpon thother so strongly that the erthe trembled vnder their fete / and whan cam to laye the speres alowe, thei hit eche other so harde that they

Reynawde in great anger defies Ogier to the death,

and runs so hard upon him that both their spears are broken,

¹ Fol. Q. vi. back.

brake their speres ; and after their speres were broken /
 they recounted eche other wyth their sheldes, & gaaf
 eche other so grete strokes *that* thei both fell down to
 4 therth over the croper of their horses,¹ & were sore
 wounded. and whan y^e two good knyghtes ²sawe them-
 self at the grounde,³ thei rose vp quyckly & set hande
 to their swerdes, & began to make so harde medelyng
 8 that it was merveylle. But herke of their horses ! wyte
 that whan bayarde & braiforde sawe their maisters at
 the grounde / incontynent they went thone to thother /
 and began to byte eche other, & cast their fete thone
 12 vpon thother. whan oger sawe *that*, he was ful sory for
 it / for he knewe well that bayarde was the stronger ;
 so ran oger thider, the shelde at his necke & his swerde
 in his hande ; for he wold helpe his good horse brai-
 16 forde, for he was a ferde that bayarde sholde have
 kylled hym. Whan reynawd sawe this, he cried &
 sayd / ‘ what is it oger that ye wyll doo ? it is not the
 werke of a knyghte to smyte a beest / and well me
 20 semeth that ye have ynoughe to doo of me wythout ye
 bete not my horse ’ / Thenne reynawd smote oger so
 grete a stroke vpon his helme, that he felde hym down
 to the grounde ; but the stroke slided a side & kyt a
 24 sondre all *that* it rought well a hundred maylles of his
 flankarde, and wounded hym sore vpon his hippe / and
 yf the swerde had not tourned wythin reynawdes
 hande, oger sholde never have eten bred / and whan
 28 reynawd had gyven to hym that stroke / he sayd to
 hym, ‘ ogyer, lete alone bayarde, for ye have ynoughe
 adoo wyth me / I beleve that I have apayred your
 helme / for I see your visage that is sore pale.’ and
 32 whan oger felt hymself hurt / he wexed almost wood
 for angre / and retorned to reynawd wyth his swerde

and are finally
 unhorsed and
 much wounded.

Bayard and Bray-
 ford, like their
 masters, fight
 each other.

Ogier interferes,

knowing his horse
 will be slain.

Reynawde goes
 after him,
 and wounds him
 again severely.

¹ tieuellement que de tieulle louste, F. orig. n. viii. back.

² Fol. Q. vii.

³ Sans faire demourance, F. orig. n. viii. back.

cortyne, and sayd, 'Ha, cortyne that so moche I have loved the, and, certes, it is wel rayson / for ye be a good swerde, & in many places ye have well holpen me, & many a proud man overthrowen / and whan I went 4 with charlemagn at estborwgh in almayn / Rowlande & Olyver dyde assaye their swerdes at Perron / And I smote after for to assaye you, And ye kytted therof well halfe ¹a fote, and there I brake you, wherof I was 8 right sori. But for the goodnes that I know in you, for to be amended agen, & therfore ye be called courten / and but if ye avenge me now of this gloton I shall never have no trust to you / and thenne he smote Rey- 12 naud vpon his helme so harde, that he made hym rele / and whan oger saw Reynaud thus arayed, he said to hym, 'by god, Reynawde, I have yelde you agen that ye had gyven me / we be now quyte: wyll ye begyn a 16 fresshe.' 'by my feyth,' sayd Reynawd, 'ye, for I desire more to fight than I do ony other thyng' / and thenne they went & ranne thone upon y^e other and began a nother medelynge; but thenne cam there 20 alarde, mawgis, & guycharde, & all their folke / and whan oger sawe theim com, he was ²wrathe & sory² for it / and so went he agen to brayforde, his good horse, & lighted upon him, & swymmed agen over dordonne. 24 and whan he was over, he abode still at the ryver side, & lighted down to therthe / but he had no sadel upon his horse, for the gyrthes brake whan he iusted wyth Reynawde / Whan Reynawd sawe brayforde sadeles, he 28 called to oger, & sayd, 'Oger, com feteche your sadell, for it shall be to you a grete shame yf ye ryde thus; and thanke our lorde that ye be thus departed fro me wythout ony more harme; for yf we had taryed a lityll 32 lenger togyder / I wold have broughte you in suche a place where ye were never; for the kynge Charlemagn, your lord, sholde never have rescued you in [t]yme' /

Ogier appeals to his good sword to help him against Reynawde, and with a blow makes his kinsman reel.

They begin the fight again, but Mawgis, Alarde, and Guycharde approach, and Ogier has to flee upon Brayford.

Reynawde asks him to return and fetch his saddle, and be thankful for his escape without more harm.

¹ Fol. Q. vii. back. ²⁻² moult doulant, F. orig. n. viii.

‘Reynawd,’ sayd oger, ‘ye threten me of ferre / it
 longeth not to a good knyghte to threten one so; but
 I wote well *that* yf it had not be your folke that have
 4 socoured you, I wolde have brought you to kyng
 Charlemagn or evyn.’ ‘Ogyer,’ sayd Reynawd, ‘ye
 have well shewed that ye be a good knyghte that passed
 y^e ryver of dordonne for to com fight wyth me; but
 8 shall ye tari there¹ for me tyll I passe over at thother
 side ²vpon my horse bayard.’ ‘ye, vpon my soule,’
 sayd ogyer / ‘and yf ye doo it, I shall saye that ye be
 the best knyghte of the world. Whan Reynawde vnder-
 12 stode that worde, he spored bayarde wyth the spores,
 & wold have passed over dordonne, but mawgis, alarde,
 & guycharde letted hym / and wold not suffre hym to
 goo, but toke hym by the brydell; and alarde sayd to
 16 hym / ‘Ha, fayr broder, & what is this that ye wyll
 doo / ye be overhasty / for who that dooth you goode,
 he leseth well his tyme. ye knowe well, and Oger had
 not be, we sholde have be ded this daye, and the
 20 socours of mawgis had helped vs but lityll / Lete Ogyer
 be in peas, I praye you / for there is not a better knyghte
 in the worlde than he is one’ / & thenne cryed alarde
 to ogyer / ‘Fayr cosyn, goo to god / for ye have well
 24 holpen vs’ / whan alard had spoken to ogyer / he re-
 turned him to his broder Reynawd, & sayd to hym,
 ‘Fayr brother, me semeth it were good that we shold
 torne backe agen, for to wyte howe our brother Richarde
 28 dooth / that abydeth vpon the roche mountbron so
 wounded as ye knowe. Lete goo our enmyes with
 shame ynoughe, for we have *dommagel* theym ryght
 sore.’ Thenne called Ogyer to Reynawde / and sayd,
 32 ‘ye have dyscomfyted vs / but by my faders soule, we
 shall come agen soo grete folke vpon you, that we
 shall bere to you grete harne, and so shall we take
 the proye / the whiche ye shall not dare defende’ /

Ogier blames
 Reynawde for his
 injustice towards
 him.

Reynawde wishes
 to pass over the
 river and fight
 Ogyer again,
 but his brethren
 prevent him.

Alarde commends
 the conduct of
 Ogyer in helping
 them,

and counsels that
 they should return
 to the rock where
 Richard lies.

¹ sur broyfort, F. orig. o. i. back. ² Fol. Q. viii.

‘Now threten all fayr,’ sayd Reynawd, ‘for we have suche a castell where we dare well abyde Charlemagne / and you, at any owre that ye come / and also I telle you for certen that, or ever thre¹ dayes be passed / 4 ye shall never take vs for all that ye can doo. And how *somever* the game gooth, the losse hath ever be vpon you vnto this tyme / And also ye shall bere no goode tydynges to Charlemagne.’ 8

U And whan ogier had spoken ynoughe to Reynawde / he spored Brayforde,² and wente after his folke that had lefte hym, and he rode soo long that he cam to Mountbandell, & lighted down before the tente 12 of Charlemagn / and whan Rowland & Olyvere saw com Oger thus wounded & makyng so evyll chere / thei trowed that there had be a battayll; and that oger had taken Reynawde & his bredern. and so thei dyde 16 call the duke Naimes, Salmon of breten, Rycharde of normandy, & therle Guydellon; and when thei were all assembled / they sayd, thone to thother, ‘Pour vnhappy, & what shall we do / this day shall we see hange the 20 four sones of Aymon / thei be cosins to vs all, and yf Charlemagn maketh them to be hanged / we be dyshonoured for ever’ / And whan Charlemagn sawe com oger, he sayd to him, ‘Oger, where ben the foure sones 24 of Aymon / have ye taken theym, or slayn them, or remysed theym for prysoners?’ ‘Syr,’ sayd oger, ‘all fair and softly, wyte it that they ben no children / but thei are the best knyghtes of the world / and they be 28 a lyve / I tell you, syre, that we fonde theym in the playn of valecolours / all four clothed in scarlet, furred wyth ermyns, & vpon mewles / and bare in their handes flowers & roses. well has the kyng yon of gascoyn kept 32 his covenant to you / for he hath sent theym forth in suche maner as he promysed to you / but worthynes

Ogier departs on Brayford for the tent of Charlemagne.

The barons think that Oger has captured the Sons.

Charlemagne enquires whether the Sons are slain or taken prisoners.

¹ quatre, F. orig. o. i. ² des esperons, F. orig. o. i.

³ Fol. Q. viii. back.

& the proues was suche that they chaunged ther meules
to gode horses, & recovered both shelde & spere. Ogier describes
the Sons' wonder-
ful prowess,
And whan Reynawd had gotten a horse / he slewe
4 foulques of morillon first of all, and mounted upon his
horse¹ / but at the last they fonde a roche corven after
the maner of a cave, that is a strong place / where they
defended theymself a longe while ; and Rycharde, one
8 of their bredern, had be slayn / and thother thre shold
have ben other taken or slayn, if mawgis had not com
there to socoure theym, mounted vpon bayarde, &
brought with hym V. thousande knightes,² whiche have
12 dyscomfyted vs, and have slayne therle Guymarde' /
'**H**a,' sayd Charlemagne, 'that is it true that they
ben so scaped.' 'syre,' sayd Ogier, 'ye, verely.'
Whan the kynge vnderstode that reynawde & his
16 brethern were scaped, he was³ right wrothe & full angry³
for it / and sayd / 'Ha, good lord of glory / 'how am I
shamed for four glotons ! certes this weryes me sore !
but no forse, lete theym doo the worst that they can,
20 for yf they have scaped me now, they shall not scape
me a nother tyme' / 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'wyte it / but
mawgys had not be, they cowde not have scaped.'
'goodys curse have he for it,' sayd Charlemagne, 'and
24 an evyll yere ; for often has he helpen theym agenst
me / and soo I wote well, that yf I helde Reynawde &
his brethern wythin my prison / Mawgis sholde delyver
theym oute, and therfore I hate hym to deth, wherof I
28 praye you our lord that I deye not tyll I be first
⁴avenged of it.' 'Syre,' sayd Ogier, 'by the feyth that
I owe to you / Reynawd gaaff me soo grete a stroke that
the corner of my helme felle down wythall to therthe,
32 and I promyse you I was well gladd when I was scaped
from his handes. For of thre thousande⁵ that we

Ogier describes
the Sons' wonder-
ful prowess,
and how Rey-
nawde recovered
a horse, and slew
Foulques,

and how they
would all have
been slain, had
Mawgis not
rescued them with
v. thousand
knights.

Charlemagne is
very wroth when
he hears of the
Sons' escape,

and declares
his hatred for
Mawgis.

¹ puis nous les menasmes ung grant traict dare tous descon-
fitz, F. orig. o. ii. back. ² Fol. R. i.
³⁻³ moult doulant, F. orig. o. ii. back.
⁴ avnenged in Caxton. ⁵ cheualliers, F. orig. o. ii. back.

Ogier tells the Emperor of their great losses in battle.

Roland, in fierce anger, calls Ogier a coward for having spared the Sons.

Ogier, for this injury, tells Roland that he lies falsely.

broughte wyth vs, there are com agayn but thre hundred, and the surplus is all slayn or taken' / Whan Rowland vnderstode thise wordes, he shoke all for angre, & sayd by grete wrathe, 'By god, syre Ogyer, 4 ye were sore hardy, for ye had noo felawes that dyd soo wel as ye dyde / but by saynt peter the postle / I saw never soo stronge a cowarde as ye be, nor never cam oute of Denmark a good knyghte.' 'Ha, hourson 8 cowarde kaytiff, how have ye ony eyen that dare beholde vpon a man / but a nother thyng there is / for ye have spared theym / for they ben your cosins & your frendes. Now be the kyng blamed, but yf he 12 maketh you to be hewen in all peces, for they sholde have ben take, if ye had not be' /

Thenne whan oger sawe hymselfe so reprevd/ he wexed all madde of the grete iniury that Row- 16 lande had sayd to hym soo / and answered boldly & sayd, 'Damp Rowlande, ye lye falsly of that ye saye; For I am not suche as ye telle / And here is my pledge for to defende me this quarelle agenst body to body; 20 for I nor none of my kyn dyde never amys agenste Charlemagn; but of all Fraunce I am one of the best & truest knyght that be in it; and of a better kynne I am come than ye be, Rowlande² / Gerarde of roussyllon 24 was myne vncler / he kept me of a lityll chylde; and Dron of nantuell & the duke Benes of aygremount; thise thre were brethern, the whiche were all myn vncler. And Myneus of aygremount was my fader / 28 and also the bisshop Turpyn & Rycharde of normandy ben my kynsmen / and thus are the four sones of aymon of my lynage. Now, good sire Rowlande, telle me your lynage, for I knowe your highnes; for by saynt 32 denys of Fraunce, I shall defende me agenst you wyth my swerde / and so shall I shewe to you yf I be true or

¹ Fol. R. i. back.

² Sire droit empereur, F. orig. o. ii.

no' / ¹Rowlande was thenne wonderfull wrothe / whan
 he herde ogyer speke so, and vaunced hymselfe agenste
 hym, & wolde have smyt hym / And whan ogyer sawe
 4 hym come, he set hande to his swerde cortyne, & sayd
 to Rowland / 'Beware ye be not so hardy for to set
 hande vpon me, for by the feyth that I owe to him
 that begate me / I shall make the hede to flee fro thy
 8 body / yf ye come any nerer' / Whan Charlemagn saw
 these two barons move theymselfe soo sore, ²the one
 agenste thother² / he was right sory for it / And thenne
 rose the duke Naymes of bavyre, & therle Aymery, and
 12 sayd / 'Syr Rowlande, what wyll ye doo / by my hede,
 the thyng shall not goo as ye trowe / For oger is not
 suche as ye make hym ;³ and yf the kynge were not, the
 thyng sholde goo otherwyse than ⁴ye wene / ogyer is
 16 suche a knyghte as all the world knoweth ; nor in his
 lynage was never noo man borne that made treyson ;
 but he is the best knyghte in all Fraunce of all sides
 but we merveylle how Charlemagn suffreth you to tak
 20 so grete a pride vpon you. And yf he suffreth it / we
 wyll not doo so for no thyng that can come of it.'
 Whan Charlemagne sawe this grete noyse betwene his
 barons, he was right wrothe, & sayd to Rowland, 'Fayr
 24 newew, lete this alone, for it longeth not to you to saye
 so / and betwene this & to morow I shall enquire of
 this matere ; and yf Oger hath doo amys in ony thyng
 agenste me, I shall make hym abyte it full dere / for all
 28 they in the world shall not kepe hym, but I shall make
 hym beheded for it.' 'Syr,' sayd ogyer, 'I wyt well
 but there is in fraunce no man so prue ne so hardy /
 that shall saye that I have doon treyson agenst you nor
 32 agenst ony other, but that I shall fighte agenst hym in
 the quarell / and shold shewe to hym that he lyed

Rowland advances
towards Ogier,
and would have
struck him, but
Ogier sets hand
to his sword and
threatens to slay
him.

Duke Naymes
and Earl Aymery
interfere between
them.

Charlemagne
commands Rol-
land to cease this
quarrel,
and says he will
enquire into the
matter.

Ogier protests
that he is im-
muent of all
treachery towards
the Emperor,

¹ Aultrement me conuendra mourir de dueil, F. orig. o. ii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. o. ii.

³ et que vous le doyres bactre ne oultraiger, F. orig. o. iii.
back.

⁴ Fol. R. ii.

and relates to him all that happened at Mountbron,

falsly' / but and it playse you to here me, I shall telle
 you the trouth of the mater¹ / Wyte it, syre, that whan
 I came to the roche Mountbron where the four soncs
 of Aymon were, and sawe that we were so grete nombre 4
 of folke agenst four knyghtes all vnarmed / I promyse
 you that I holpe them not / nor I was not agenst
 them / but wythdrewe me aside & lete the other
 shyfte wyth them / and I stode styll & behelde vpon 8
 the grete sorow / For I sawe deye my flesshe & my
 blode, and I myghte not helpe them of noo thyng /
 Now have I tolde you all the trouth / and all that I
 dyde / And yf ye fynde otherwyse than that I telle 12
 you a fore all these noble barons / I wyll be sore
 punysshed / but by the feyth that I ow to god, yf ever
 I fynde me in ony place where I maye helpe them, I
 shalle helpe them wyth all my power, yf I shold lose 16
 my hede for it. For all the worlde ²oughte to hate me,
 by cause I faylled them atte theyr nede. For they
 ben my cosins / and ye, syre, have doon so moche to
 them that it shold suffyse you, for they be not soo 20
 moche guilty of that they be charged of as men make
 semblaunt; but by the virgyn Mary / as long as I shal
 lyve, I shall not fayll them of that I maye doo. Over
 hasty was Rowlande for to have smytte me wrongfully / 24
 and wythout ony cause, but I wyll well that he knowe
 that yf he sawe Reynawde mounted vpon his horse
 bayarde / he sholde not take hym for a ribawde, nor he
 sholde not dare abyde hym body to body, for all the 28
 golde of spayne.' Whan Rowlande herde Oger speke
 thus / he sayd to hym, 'by god, Oger, ye have praysed
 hym moche / and ye make hym wonderfull hardy /
 but I praye god *that* I maye ones fynde hym vpon 32
 bayarde, his good horse, all armed from hede to too /
 for to knowe yf he be as valyaunt as ye make hym' /

and says he will from henceforth help the Sons whenever he shall find that they need it.

He blames Roland for his hastiness,

and vows he would not dare to meet Reynawde mounted upon Bayard for all the gold of Spain.

¹ Sans mentir de mot, F. orig. o. iii. back.

² Fol. R. ii. back.

Wyte that god herde the prayer of Rowlande, for Rowlande not longe after that fonde Reynawde vpon bayarde, and I telle you that Rowland helde hym not
 4 sith for noo rybawde nor for no knave / but toke hym for the beste knyght of the worlde / But the history leveth now to telle of kyng Charlemagn of Fraunce / of Rowland,¹ & of Oger the dane, and of the XII peres
 8 of Fraunce that ben at y^e sege afore Mountalban / and retorneth to speke of Reynawde, that was yll at ease for the love of Richarde, his brother, *that* was wounded to deth in the roche Moutbron.

CHAPTER XI.²

12 [How by the succours that Mawgis brought to reynawd and to his bretherne into the playne of Walcoloures, they discomfited kyng charlemagnes folke, wherof Ogier had
 16 manye reproches of rowlande for some goodnes and favoure that he had shewed to reynawde and his bretherne at roche mountbron, and was therfore called trai-
 20 toure, wherof a great inconveniencie came therof afterwarde afore king Charlemagne.]

Now sheweth the history, after that Reynawd had dyscomfyted the frenshemen / he retorned agen

¹ et de Olivier, F. orig. o. iii.

² The heading of this chapter is omitted by Caxton, and is therefore given here from Copland's Table: the French Edition of 1480 has it in the following form:

Comment, par le secours que maugis amena a Regnault et a ses freres es plains de Vaulx couleurs, Ilz des confirent les geus du roy Charlemaigne, dont ogier en eut mains reproches de Rolant pour aucune bonte quil auoit faicte a Regnault et a ses freres en la roche mombbron. Et en fut ogier appellee 'traicte,' dont grant Inconvenient en vint apres devant Charlemaigne.

Chapitre .xi.

Reynawde returns
to the rock
Mountbron,

and weeps over
the sad state of
Richard.

Mawgis comes
to the rock,

and is sorry when
he sees Reynawde
weep thus.

He promises to
cure Richard of
his wounds, if
Reynawde will
vow to help him
against Charle-
magne.

towarde roche mountbron, where he had lefte his brother
 Richarde thus wounded, as ye have herde / And whan
 he was come there, & saw his brother so horryble
 wounded / he cowde not kepe him from wepyng / and 4
 sayd, ‘Alas ! what shall I doo whan I ¹have lost my
 dere brother, the beste frende that I have in the world ?’
 and after he had sayd that worde he felle to the
 grounde from bayarde in a swoone. and whan alarde 8
 & guycharde sawe their broder that was fall, they
 began to make theyr mone for Richarde pietously.
 And whan Reynawde was com agen to hymselfe / he
 made grete sorowe wyth his two bredern, Alarde & 12
 guycharde, vpon Richarde their brother, *that* laye vpon
 therthe wyth his bowelles betwene his handes. And
 this hangyng, cam mawgis vpon broykarre, his gode
 horse, the best that men wyste after bayarde / and 16
 helde a pece of a spere in his hande / And whan he
 saw Reynaud make suche sorow, he was right sori for
 it. And whan he sawe Richarde thus sore wounded /
 he was wrothe, & had grete pyte for to see the wounde 20
 that was so grete / for men sawe the lyver wythin his
 body. Thenne sayd he to Reynawd, ‘fayr cosin, take
 hede what I shall say, & leve this sorow ; ye know wel
 that ye be all my cosins / and therefore we ought to 24
 parforce ourselfe for to socour thone the other whan it
 is nede. I have socoured you many tymes / and wyte
 it that all the [h]arme that Charlemagn bereth to
 me / it is all thurgh your occasion / he slewe my 28
 fader but late, wherof I bere yet at my hert grete
 hevynes, that was your vncler that deyed for your love :
that knowe ye well / But yf ye wyll promyse me
 afore all your barons for to com wyth me into the 32
 tente of the kyng charlemagne, & helpe me to sawte
 hym for to avenge vpon hym the dethe of my sayd
 fader / yf we can, I shall delyver to you Rychard, evyn

¹ Fol. R. iii.

now hole & sounde without any sore' / and whan
 Reynawde understode these wordes, he cam to mawgis /
 and kyssed hym in the breste all wepyng, & sayd to
 4 hym / 'Ryghte swete & fayr cosin, for god mercy,
 Delyver to me agen my broder Richarde hole, yf it
 playse you. And yf ye wyll that I ¹doo any other
 thyng for you / commaunde me, and I shall do it wyth
 8 right good herte / For ye wote well that I dyde never
 any thyng that was agenst your wyll; nor there is no
 man in the worlde for whom I wolde doo so moche as
 I wold do for you.' whan mawgis sawe Reynawd
 12 wepe so tenderly, he had grete pite of it, and sayd to
 hym, 'Now be not dysmayed of no thyng, fayr cosyn,
 for ye shall have Richarde hole & sounde incontynente.'
 And thenne he lighted down from his horse / and toke
 16 a botell wyth white wyne, & wasshed the wounde of
 Rycharde ther wythall ryght well / and had awaye all
 the blood that was aboute / And be not mervaylled
 where he gate all suche thynges as apperteyneth to this
 20 cure / For he was the subtillest nygramancer that ever
 was in the worlde; and whan he had doon so, he toke
 his bowelles, & put theym agen in to his body / and
 thenne he toke a nedle & a threde / and sewed vp the
 24 wounde full maisterly, and hurted not rycharde / and
 after, he toke a salve, he anoynted all the wounde /
 and as soone as the wounde was thus anoynted it was
 as hole as thoughe he had never be hurte in that place
 28 of his body / And whan he had doon all this, he toke
 a drynke & gaaf it to Rycharde for to drynke / and
 whan Rycharde had dronken it, he rose lightly vpon his
 fete, all delyvered & quyte fro his dysase / and sayd to
 32 his bredern / 'where is Ogier goon and his folke / are
 they scaped from vs' / 'brother,' answered Reynawd,
 'we have dyscomfyted them, god gramerey, & mawgis,
 that cam to socour vs / for otherwyse we sholde have

Reynawde willingly consents to do all that his cousin may command.

Mawgis washes the wound of Richard with white wine,

and gives him a drink, which cures him immediately.

¹ Fol. R. iii. back.

ben all deed, and so he hath saved vs & our lyves at thys tyme. now ought we well to love hym more than our selfe.' 'broder,' sayd Richarde, 'ye saye tronthe' / and after, Alarde sayd to mawgys / 'fayr 4
 cosin, hele me, I praye you / for I have a grete wounde in the thye.' 'And I also,' sayd Reynawde, 'for I ¹am hurt right sore' / 'and I also,' sayd guycharde, 'for goddys love gyve vs helthe to all vs' / thenne sayd mawgis to 8
 them / 'be not dysmayed, my fayr cosyns / for I shall helpe you al anone' / Thenne toke mawgis of the white wyne wherof he had washed the wounde of Richarde / and wasshed their woundes to them all / and after he 12
 noynted them swetly, & anone they were all hole / And whan they were all guarissed / they made Richard to lighte vpon a horse, and put theymself to the waye, for to retorne agen ²to montalban.² And thus as they 16
 went on their waye,³ a spye departed fro their felyshyp of Reynawde / and cam to montalban to the kyng yon, & sayd to hym, 'Sir, I bryng you tydynges / Now wyte that reynawd & his bredern ben scaped fro 20
 the playn of valecolours, where ye had sent them; and they have dyscomfyted ogier the dane & all the folke of charlemagn, and also they have slayn foulques of morillon & therle guymarde / and soo many of other 24
 knyghtes that I cowde not telle you the nombre.'

And whan the kyng yon vnderstode thise tydynges, he was sore abasshed of it, that he wyste not what he sholde saye; and after he sayd, 'Alas, how 28
 gooth this / here ben evill tydynges! how may this be / dyde they fynde the busschement of the kyng Charlemagne? 'sire,' sayd the spye / 'ye, certenly / and shold have ben cursedly handled yf mawgis their 32
 cosin had not socourde them / And for the socours that mawgys broughte wyth him / Oger was dyscom-

Alarde and Reynawde also ask Mawgis to heal their wounds.

Richard mounts on horseback, and with his brethren and Mawgis return to Montalban. A spy goes from their company to King John with tidings of all that has happened,

and of the succours which Mawgis brought to his kinsmen.

¹ Fol. R. iv. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. o. iv.

³ a moult grant joye. F. orig. o. iv.

fyted, & all his folke of Charlemagne, soo that fewe of
 theym scaped / For mawgis broughte to Reynawd
 bayarde, his good horse / that was cause of all the harme
 4 ¹that was doon there of the other parte¹ / ‘Alas! vn- King John
deploures his evil
fate,
 happy myschaunt,’ sayd thenne the kyng yon, ‘& what
 shall I doo / yf I abyde Reynawd, mawgis, alarde,
 guychard, & rychard, I am deed wythout doubt / for
 8 all the world ²coude not deffende me therfro. And
 also it were well righte nor Reynawd sholde doo but
 well, yf he slewe me cruelly / For I have well deserved
 dethe / for never Iudas ne the emperour Neron of Rome
 12 made soo grete a treyson as I have doon, that wold
 have brought to a cruell deth the best knyghtes of the
 worlde, ¹that ben the four sones of Aymon,¹ for the
 thretynge of a prynce.’ And whan he had sayd thise
 16 wordes, he beganne to make grete sorowe / and sayd /
 ‘Ha, fayr suster Clare / this day shall departe our love /
 ye shall never see me more / This daye shall I forsake
 Gascoyn, for I shall never come agen therin’ / And
 20 thenne he cryed wyth an hyghe voys / ‘Now goo hens,
 fayr lordes, for goddis sake / be lightly redy / For the
 nede of it is now com; and lete vs bryng with vs the
 beste knyghtes³ that I and ye have. and yf we maye
 24 doo so moche to gete the wode of the serpent, ⁴whiche
 is a grete foreste, we shall be sauff ynoughe / and⁴ we
 shall may scape at our ease / For we shall lodge our-
 selfe wythin an abbey of saynte Lazare / and we shall
 28 take suche habyte as the monkes there have / And by
 all thus shall we maye be saved. For I knowe soo
 moche goodnes in Reynawd, that whan he shall fynde
 vs shoren as monkes / he shall do vs no harme’ /
 32 Thenne was there a spye, that was called Pygwade,
 that was soo grete that he had well XV fote of lengthe /

and compares
himself to Judas
and Nero.

He commands
his knyghts to
arm and fly with
him to the wood
of the Serpent,

where there is an
Abbey, in which
they can enter
and become
monks.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. o. v. back. ² Fol. R. iv. back.

³ chevaulx que vous ayez. F. orig. o. v. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. o. v. back.

A spy called
Pygwade writes
all the words of
John on parch-
ment,

and goes to the
pavilion of the
Emperor, where
he calls Roland.

And tells him
how John and his
folk have fled to
the Abbey,

and intend to
become monks.

Roland swears to
hang the traitor.

Pygwade says he
has found Rey-
nawde and
Mawgis, who
come over the
river towards
Mountalban.

and wente as faste as any horse cowde trotte / This
Pygwade had well herde all that the kyng yon had
sayd / & wrote it in a skynne of parchemente / and
wente lightly out of Mountalban at the gate, called y^e 4
gate fawcon / and passed thurgh the wood of the
serpent in a lityll while, And mette wyth Reynaud,
his bretherne, and Mawgis, that came agayn to Mount-
alban, that broughte wyth theym ¹a grete multytude of ¹8
prisoners; and Pygwade, that grete theeff watched vpon
²theym. And anone he ranne as faste as he myghte to
Mountbendel / and wente in to the pavylyon of Charle-
magne, and called Rowlande / and sayd to hym, 'Syre, 12
I shall telle you such tydynges / wherby ye shall gete
goode ynoughe, yf ye wyll beleve me / And I shall
telle you a thyng wherof ye shall be right gladde' /
'Goode frende,' sayd thenne Rowlande, 'thou arte wel- 16
com to me / and what tydynges bryngest thou, telle
me, I praye the.'³ 'Syre,' sayd Pygwade / 'wyte it
that the kyng yon fleeth away all vnarmed / he and
all his folke, and hath wyth theym nother somer nor 20
mewle, but oonly their beste horses' / And they goo in
to the wode of the serpente, in to a house of religyon,
whiche is named saynte Lazare / and he hymselfe is
delybered for to take the habyte and to be come a 24
monke / 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne Rowlande, 'I
shall goo mete wyth theym anone wyth foure thousande
knyghtes / And I shall avenge Reynawde and his
brederne vpon theym / and I shall make theym to be 28
hanged as traytours / For I never loved tratours / nor
never shal, and god wyll' / 'Syre,' sayd Pygwade,
'yet is there more / for I have founde Reynawde, his
brethern, and Mawgis, that came over the ryver of 32
Balencon, that bryngeth wyth theym many prisoners
of your folke / And yf ye wyll fynde them, ye muste

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. o. v. back.

² Fol. R. v. ³ thee.

goo that waye' / 'Frende,' sayd Rowlande, 'ye have
 deserved a grete rewarde / for ye have broughte to vs
 goode tydynges' / Thenne Rowlande called to hym
 4 Olyver / and sayd, 'Olyver, my goode & true felawe,
 lighte vpon your horse quyckely / and brynge wyth
 you Guydellon and Rycharde of Normande; and ye
 syre Ogyer of Danmarke, ye shall come wyth me, yf
 8 it playse you / and ye shall see the grete prouesse of
 Reynawde, the sone of Aymon / And we shall take
¹wyth vs but foure thousande men, and yet Reynawde
 is fyve thousand well horsed and well arayed / And
 12 thus we shall mowe fyghte wyth theym wythoute ony
 advantage.' 'Certes,' sayd Ogyer, 'I shall goo there
 to see howe ye shall have hym / And whan ye have
 taken hym, I promyse you to lende you a rope, yf ye
 16 have nede of it' / And whan they had all devysed, they
 mounted on horse backe / and toke their waye, And
 the grete rybawde guyded theym streyght to the ryver
 of Balancon. And the kynge of Gascoyn rode thenne
 20 thorughe the wodes of serpente wyth his folke / and
 he rode soo longe that he aryved at the monastery of
 saynte Lazare / And they prayed the abbote of the
 place soo moche, that he made theym monkes in the
 24 devylles name / This hangynge, came there Rowlande
 and Olyvere wyth theyr folke, *that* entred anone in to
 the abbey. And whan the abbot sawe them, he came
 theym agenste, and all the covent syngynge, 'Te deum
 28 laudamus.' And whan they had songe / the abbot
 sayd to Rowlande, 'Syre, ye be right welcome / wylle
 ye have ony thyng that we may doo?' / 'Lorde abbot,'
 sayd Rowlande, 'we thanke you wyth all our herte /
 32 But wyte that we seke here the falseste traytour of the
 worlde / that men calle the kyng yon of Gascoyn / the
 whiche is here wythin; for I wyll hange hym like a
 theeff' /

Roland calls
 Oliver, and tells
 him to arm and
 come with V.
 thousand men to
 fight the Sons of
 Aymon.

King John rides
 through the wood,

and arrives at the
 monastery, where
 he is made a
 monk by the
 Abbot.

Roland comes to
 the Abbey,

and demands the
 person of King
 John.

¹ Fol. R. v. back.

The Abbot will not consent to yield him up.

Thenne answered the abbot / 'ye shall not, syre, and please you, for he is become our monke / and also he hath taken the habyte / And therefore we shall defende hym agenste all men.' Whan Rowlande herde 4 the abbot speke soo / he tooke hym by the hoode / And Olyver toke the pryour that was nyghe, & they shoved theym so prately agenste a pyller of marbell stone that their eyen lepte oute of theyr hedes. And 8 1 thenne Rowlande sayd to the abbot / 'Now mayster monke, delyver to me lightly that devyll the kynge Yon, whiche is the brother of Iudas, or elles I shall make an ende of you, For I have sworne that he shall 12 never doo treyson more' / Whan thabbot vnderstode this that Rowlande sayd to hym, he and all his monkes fledde away from hym. And whan Rowlande sawe this, he set hande to his goode swerde, Durandall, and 16 entred in to the cloystre, where he fonde the kynge yon knelynge byfore an ymage of our lady, And was cladde wyth the abbyt of religyon / and the hode vpon his hede / And whan Rowlande sawe hym / he knewe 20 hym well / For he had seen hym afore that wyth his vncle Charlemagn / Thenne he toke hym and sayd to hym, 'Syre monke, in the devylls name, coune ye well your lesson / arise vp wyth sorowe, and come wyth 24 me for to see the kynge Charlemagne; for he shall make you to be hanged as a traytour proved evyll kynge, and a felon / Where ben the foure sones of Aymon that ye sholde have delyvered vnto Charlemagn? ye 28 shall be payed for the trayson that ye have doon; and I wyth myn handes shall avenge Reynawde and his brethern vpon you.' And whan he had sayd this / he made the kynge Yon to be set vpon a horse / and 32 blynded his eyen 2 wyth a clowte, that he myghte not see noo thyng.² And thenne gaaffe hym the monkes hode vpon his hede / And thus satte in the saddle, the

Roland swears to kill him if he does not consent.

The Abbot and all the monkes fly in terror.

Roland takes John, and reproaches him for his evil treachery against the Sons;

he blinds his eyes, and sets him on horseback with the monk's hood upon his head.

¹ Fol. R. vi. ²⁻² omitted. F. orig. o. vi.

face towarde the horse taylle / and the back forward.
 The kyng yon made none other thyng but that he
 wysshed styll after Reynawd and his brethern / and
 4 sayd / 'Alas, and that I dyde grete harme / whanne
 that I consented to this mortalle trayson¹ / Now oughte
 I well to deye ten tymes yf ²it myghte be soo² / For I
 have well deserved deth.' ³Whan the kyng Yon had
 8 sayd this, he sayd to one of his pryve counseyll that
 he herde nyghe hym, how well he sawe not, 'Frende,
 goo to Mountalban, and telle Reynawde that he com
 to socour me, for he is my man, and that he take no
 12 hede to my trespase ²& evyll dede² / but to his fraun-
 chyse. For yf he lete me deye soo, he shall be therof
 reprevd & blamed evermore, and his yssue shall be
 dishonourde by. And yf he can recover me / I wyll
 16 that he make my tonge to be kyt of, wherby I dyd
 consent to the trayson / or elles my hede / yf it
 semeth hym good / for I have well deserved it agenst
 hym' / 'Syre,' sayd the knyghte, 'I shall not goo
 20 there, for I wote wyll that reynawd wyll not set one
 fote forth for to save you, by cause of the grete
 harme that ye wold have doon to hym' / 'he shal,'
 sayd the kyng yon, 'for I knowe so moche by hym
 24 that he shall not saye there agenst.' 'Syr,⁴ I wyll
 thenne goo to hym wyth a good¹ wyll, sith that it
 please you; and god gyve that reynaude, his bredern,
 & mawgys wyll com & helpe you / for I know well
 28 that ye have grete nede of it / but yf god helpe you' /
 This hangyng, olyver sayd to rowland / 'Rowlande,
 good felawe myn / what shall we doo with this
 unhappy kyng?' / 'frende,' sayd Rowland, 'we shall
 32 lede hym to mounzfawcon / and we shall leve Balencon
 at the right hande' / And this they dyd, for to fynde

John tells one of his men, who is near him, to go to Reynawde and implore his assistance.

The knight consents to go.

Roland declares his intention of hanging King John at Monfawcon.

¹ comme ceste a este, F. orig. o. vi.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. o. vi. ³ Fol. R. vi. back.

⁴ dist le cheuallier, F. orig. o. vi.

reynawde & his bredern / for rowland was sore wyll-
 inge to fynde reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis ¹his
 cosin.¹ ‘Gode lord,’ said oger the dane, ‘by thy pite
 & mysericorde, graunt to Rowlande his prayer & ⁴
 his wyll, that is that we maye fynde Reynawde, his
 brethern, & mawgis / for to see how rowlande shall
 bere hymself, and yf he shold take theym or noo / for
 I knowe well that none shall put down his pride ⁸
 but onely reynawd.’² ¶ But here I leve to speke of
 Rowland, olyver, & of Oger, & of their folke, and of
 the kynge yon of gascoyn, that ³they broughte wyth
 [them] for to be hanged, and retome agen to shewe of ¹²
 the foure sones of Aymon.

CHAPTER XII.

¶ How after that Reynawd & hys bredern
 were garnysshed of theyr woundes that
 they had in the playne of valcolours, they ¹⁶
 went agen to Montalban. And how they
 rescued the kynge Yon from the handes of
 Rowlande.⁴

In this partye sheweth the history, that whan Rey- ²⁰
 nawde & his brethern were well hole of theyr

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. o. vi.

² le filz aymon, F. orig. o. vii.

³ Fol. R. vii.

⁴ Caxton has left out part of the French original, which has:

“Mais quant le roy jon sceut leur destour, il sen fouyt, et sen ala rendre moyne en ung moustier qui estoit dedens le boys de la serpente, la ou rolant et olivier et ogier le dannois le trouverent, et le volurent faire pendre pour la trahison quil auoit faicte a regnault et a ses freres. Non obstant que regnault fut leur enemy. Mais regnault le recourut des gens de rolant.”

Chapitre .xii.

- woundes, by the helpe of Mawgys, that had heeled
 theym, they put theym selfe to the waye agayn towarde
 Mountalban. And whan they were come there /
 4 my lady Clare wente agenste theym, and broughte
 wyth her two chyldren, Yonnet and Aymonet, that
 had wepte and¹ scratched their swete² vysages soo sore
 that there appered of theym nother eyen nor monthes /
 8 Alwayes they wyste not wherfore they dyde soo /
 for they were veri yonge. And she also was all
 dysfygured for wepynge, And of grete lamentacyons
 that she made, for she wyste well how² her brother,²
 12 the kyng Yon, had betrayed Reynawd her husbonde
 and his bredern / and wende that they had ben deed.
 But whan she sawe theym come, she was never soo
 gladde. And the two chyldren ranne at their faders
 16 fete³ / and wold have kyssed theym. And whan Rey-
 nawde sawe theym, he shoved theym awaye wyth his
 fete soo strongly that he had almoste broste theym /
 And the lady wolde have taken hym in her armes and
 20 kyssed hym, but he wolde not sufere her / and sayd to
 her / 'Lady, goo oute of my syghte to your brother,
 that fellon cruell and false traitour / for ye shall never
 have my love agen / for it hath not holden in hym / but
 24 that we shold have be deed by this tyme, yf god &
 our cosin mawgis had not socourde vs / now goo after
 hym all a fote & wythout company / for ye shall not
 take⁴ no thing of myn, & as an evyll woman ye shall
 28 goo your way, for ye be the suster of y^e gretest traytour
 & the vntruest kyng of the worlde / and I shall hang
 your chyldren / for I fere me leest they sholde be
 traytours as their vncler' / 'Syre, for god mercy,' sayd
 32 the lady, 'I shall swere to you vpon all halowes, that
 I had doubte of your goynge, and many tymes I dyde

The Sons and
 Mawgis arrive
 at Montalban,
 where the lady
 Clare receives
 them.

She is disfigured
 with weeping and
 lamentations for
 her husband,

but rejoices when
 she sees him
 again, and with
 her two sons
 hastily approaches
 him.

Reynawde with
 anger repels her,

and says she shall
 go after her evil
 brother on foot
 without escort,

and that the chil-
 dren shall be
 hung.

¹ end in Caxton. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. o. vii. back.

³ et de leurs oncles, F. orig. o. vii. back.

⁴ Fol. R. vii. back.

telle you of it, thourghe thoeccasion of the dreme that I
 dredmed that nyghte / And I tolde you that ye sholde
 not beleve the kynge my brother. And, notwyth-
 standynge that he was my brother / I doubted this 4
 that is befallen sith. Syre, for god I crye you mercy /
 For in this I am noo thyng gylty / and soo god have
 mercy of my soule / For I love moche better the leest
 too of your fote, than all kyng yon my brother / 8
 nor all the londe of Gascoyn.' And whan she had
 sayd this, she felle down in a swoune vpon the fete of
 Reynawde. And whan guycharde saw the lady in a
 swoune / he toke her vp, & sayd to her / 'Madame, 12
 discomfourt not yourselfe so sore; lete Reynaud saye
 his wyll / for ye be our owne lady, ¹& our suster¹ / now
 be of good chere / as longe as we be a lyve we shall
 not faylle you; & thoughe ¹our broder¹ Reynawd faylle 16
 you, we shall not doo so / but we shall serve you wyth
 all our hert' / 'broder,' sayd richarde, 'lete vs doo one
 thyng / goo we praye our broder Reynawd that he
 pardonne my lady, our suster, his evyll wyll / for she 20
 is not gylty in the mater / And yf we wold have
 beleved her, we shold not have gon on fote oute of
 this place / and now we oughte to shewe the grene
 & y^e russet mauntelles of ermynes, the good horses & 24
 palfreis that my lady dyde gyve vs, more oftener than
 dyde Reynawde. Now lete vs reward her for it / for
 she hath mystre of it / and at the nede the frende is
 knowen.' 'bi my feith,' said alarde, 'ye saye well.' 28
 And the^{me} wente the thre bredern vnto Reynawde,
²and drewe hym a syde. and after, Alarde sayd to
 hym / 'Fair broder, for goddys love be not thus angry,
 for ye know that my lady hath noo culpe at all the 32
 treyson that her brother, the kynge yon, hath doon to
 vs / For yf ye wolde have byleved her, we sholde not

Lady Clare
 implores for
 mercy, as she is
 entirely guiltless
 of wrong,

and swoons at the
 feet of her hus-
 band.

Guycharde raises
 her from the
 ground, and
 comforts her.

Richard advises
 that they should
 ask Reynawde to
 pardon her.

Alarde intercedes
 with his brother,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. o. vii.

² Fol. R. viii.

have goon thider / Wherefore we praye you that ye
 wyll pardonne her' / Thenne sayd Reynawd, 'my
 brethern, for the love of you I graunt the same, and I
 4 pardonne her myn evyll wyll presently' / Whan the
 brethern vnderstode hym, they were right glad / and
 came agen to the lady Clare, and sayd to her /
 'Madame, be of good chere, and make Ioye, for we
 8 have made your peas' / And thenne ¹Alarde & Guy-
 charde¹ toke her by the handes, and broughte her to her
 husbonde Reynawd / and whan Reynawde saw her / he
 went and toke her by the chynne, and kyssed her.²
 12 And thenne began the ioye & the feste ryght grete at
 Mountalban / And they wasshed their handes & went
 to their mete. And thus as they sat at the table, there
 came in the messenger of the kynge yon / that cam to
 16 Reynawd / And whan he was afore Reynawd, he sayd
 to hym, 'Syre, the kyng yon sendeth you worde by
 me that ye come to socour hym / for otherwyse he
 canne not scape the dethe, For Rowlande & Olyver
 20 ledeth hym for to be hanged at Mountfaweon. And
 doo this, syre, yf it playse you for god / and beholde
 not his evyll wyll / but take hede to your goodnes, for
 our lord pardoned mari magdalene & longys³ of their
 24 synnes. He knoweth well that he hath deserved dethe
 for the grete fawte that he hath doon to you; and yf
 ye slee hym, he pardonneth to you his dethe' /
 'God dys curse have he,' sayd Alarde, 'that shall
 28 **G** set his fote thiderward, nor that shall bye hym
 agen, though he myghte be had for a strawe / But
 goddys curse have Rowlande, ⁴yf he hangeth hym not
 as a traytour approved' / Whan Reynawd had herd this
 32 that the mesager said, he loked downwarde, & studied
 a goode while that he sayd noo worde. and whan he

and Reynawde,
 for the love of his
 brethern, con-
 sents to receive
 her again.

They all feast
 joyfully at Mont-
 alban.

A messenger
 arrives with the
 tidings of the
 capture of John
 by Roland,

and his appeal to
 Reynawde for
 help.

Reynawde thinks
 deeply when he
 hears this news,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. o. vii.

² par grant amour, F. orig. o. viii. back.

³ Longius.

⁴ Fol. R. viii. back.

had thoughte long yncaghe / he began to wepe, behold-
 ynge his bredern / For a good herte can not lye whan it
 cometh to a nede. Thenne sayd he a good *raison* as a
 noble knyghte / ‘Lordes,’ sayd Reynawd to his bredern 4
 & to his knyghtes, ‘Now here what I wyll saye to you /
 Ye know how I was dysherytet at parys wrongfully
 vpon ^{the} feste of Pentheecoste, that Charlemagn helde
 open court and full in his palays, where was a fayr 8
 company of grete Lordes / For there were vii¹ hundred
 knyghtes, all gentylnen, bothe of name & of armes /
 and a hundred, what of dukes & of erles / and more
 than four² score bysshopes, and many barons. and that 12
 tyme was slayne the duke Benes of aygremount, myn
 vnele, that was so goode a knyght, as men knew
 well. I dyde aske right for hym to Charlemagn afore
 all his courte / wherof the kyng rebuked me, ³& 16
 called me all to nought³ / and grete iniury he sayd to
 me / And whan I sawe that the kyng reproved me
 thus, I was wrothe & right angry for it / And I behelde
 vpon my bredern, & knewe their stomackes / and sawe 20
 myn enmyes byfore me / soo neded not that I shold
 have soughte them elles where / And it suffysed
 theym not of that I had be owtraged by charlemagn /
 but that Berthelot owtraged me of newe, he & I 24
 playng at the ches, Wherof I toke the ches borde, &
 smote hym wyth it soo grete a stroke vpon his hede,
 that I slewe hym ³a fore my fete.³ And Lews, another
 neveve of Charlemagn, wolde have slayn my broder 28
 Rycharde, and had hurt hym all redi full sore / But I
 smote hym in suche wyse wyth my fyst *that* I felde
 hym doun ded afore me to therthe / and whan Charle-
 magne wyste of it / He wolde have made me ⁴to be 32
 kyllled and hewed in to peces / but my kynnesmen

and tells his
 brethren to listen
 to what he shall
 say to them.

He relates to
 them all his
 history,

and how he slew
 Berthelot at the
 court of the
 Emperour,

¹ Troys, F. orig. o. viii. back.

² cinquante, F. orig. o. viii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. o. viii. back.

⁴ Fol. S. i.

wold not suffre it / for there was grete medlynge, soo
 that many strokes were gyven. And whan the med-
 linge was ended, I mounted vpon bayard / and my
 4 brethern I made to mounte also, thone byfore, & the
 two other behynde me / ¹And thus rode we all four
 vpon my horse bayarde¹ / and so came to ardeyne /
 where I dyde buylde a castell. And there Charle-
 8 magne came & beseged me / and made swere my good
 fader Aymon that he shold never helpe vs wyth none
 of all his godes / ¹and that he shold be vtterly agenste
 vs¹ / and in likewyse he foreclosed me fro all my kyns-
 12 men, that none of them was not soo hardy for to have
 shewed to vs the leest favour of the worlde. Fayr
 brethern, ye knowe well the grete poverte that we
 have endured soo longe tyme / And whan I sawe that
 16 I wyst not where to goo / I cam in to this londe wyth
 suche a feliship, as ye knowe, and I spake to the kynge
 yon and shewed hym howe I had werre agenste Charle-
 magne; and he shewed me grete love, and made me
 20 grete honour, soo that he gaaff me his suster to my
 wyff, and wyth her a duchye, and buylded Montalban
 for me. And of thother part, my chyldren are his
 neveux / wherof thone bereth his name / that is
 24 Yonnet, and ye see them here / and I have saved hym,
 his royame & all his londe; and all his rebelles² I have
 made come to seke mercy of hym; and I fonde hym
 never in noo fawte / but Charlemagn is soo grete &
 28 soo myghty a kinge, and also ye knowe well that he
 hath overcom & dyshonourde many good men / and
 for fere of hym, the kyng yon betrayed vs, wherof he
 is not to be blamed overmoche, seenge that agenste
 32 charlemagne noo thyng hath power / And therefore, yf
 the kyng Yon delyverde me to Charlemagne, it was by
 evyll counseyll that some of his barons gaaf hym / ³for

and of the strife
which ensued;

his flight to
Arden,

and his war with
Charlemagne;

his interview with
King John,

and his marriage
with the King's
sister;

how the treachery
of John arose
from fear of the
Emperor,

¹—1 omitted, F. orig. o. viii. back.

² de son pays, F. orig. o. viii. ³ Fol. S. i. back.

god made never soo good a man, but that¹ he mysdoeth
 by evyll counseyll sometyme / And how can I leve
 hym when I have not mystrusted hym afore tyme ;
 me semeth that I oughte to shewe hym goodnes agaynst 4
 felony. Therefore I praye you all, that ye wyll make
 you redy, for I wyll go socour hym / For it were grete
 reproche to my chyldren that theyr vncle sholde be
 hanged as a theeff / and it were to vs a grete dishonour, 8
 for he is our lord. And yf he hath doon evill, we ought
 to doo well agenst it / and also we oughte not to forgete
 the benefeyttes that the kyng yon hath doon to vs ; and
 I promyse you that the fawte & the treyson that he 12
 hathe doon, is not com thourgh his malyce, but thourgh
 evyll counseyll. For yf it had be oonly by his
 mocyon / I wolde see the herte from the body of
 hym / but I wote well nay / For Charlemagn is of soo 16
 grete a power, that every man fereth hym. And ther-
 fore, I telle you that I wyll goo rescue hym ²from
 Rowlande, yf I can,² wyth all my power.' 'By my
 feyth,' said Alarde / 'ye shall themme goo wythout me / 20
 for I shal not put my fete there / for a traytour oughte
 never to be holpen nor socoured' / 'Nor I,' sayd
 Guycharde ; 'I shall not goo there.' 'Ye shall,' sayd
 Rycharde, '& it playse you, sith that Reynawd wil 24
 have vs to doo so / For he is our lord and our wele /
 and therefore I praye you, fayr bredern, that ye wyll
 obeye hym.' Whan Reynawd had concluded that
 he sholde goo for to rescue the kyng yon agenste 28
 the wyll of Alarde & of Guycharde, all y^e Gascoynes
 that were there began to crye, & sayd, 'Blessed be the
 nour that ever Reynawde was borne / for noo man
 erthly ys worthe hym of goodnes & of prowes' / and 32
 themme they sayd to Reynawde, 'Syre, we shall gyve
 vp to you all the londe of Gascoyn / and shall make

and therefore
 there is reason
 why he should
 succour him now,
 and not let him
 be hanged as a
 thief.

Alarde declares
 that he will not
 go to the aid of a
 traitor, nor will
 Guycharde either.

Richard says that
 they shall do as
 Reynawde
 desires.

¹ that repeated in text.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. p. i. back.

you the lord of it / For there shall be never none other
 lorde in gascoyn but you, as ¹long that ye shall lyve / so
 that for god, ryght swete syr, that ye suffre not the
 4 kyng yon ²to be had away ³to Charlemagn; ³ for it were
 a grete shame to all them of the royaume of Gascoyn
 that men had hanged their kynge.' 'By my soule,'
 sayd Reynawde, 'ye saye trouthe' / And thenne he
 8 toke his horne, & blew it thre tymes so strongly that
 he made all Mountalban to sowne wyth it / And
 incontynent, wythout abydyng, ⁴they of the towne⁴
 went & armed theym / and cam byfore Reynawd /
 12 and whan they were all redy, Reynawde lighte vpon
 bayarde / the sheelde at the necke & the spere in the
 hande / and they were well in his felawshyp six
 thousande men on horsbacke, and well a thousande a
 16 fote / And whan they were oute of Mountalban, Rey-
 nawd spake to his folke, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes,
 remembre you that your lorde is in grete daunger, and
 in perell of dethe; and but yf we fyghte strongly, he is
 20 deed wythout remedy. Wherfore I praye you all, that
 ye doo this daye that / that shall torne to our worshyp.'
 And whan reynawd had sayd these wordes, he went
 agen towarde his bredern / and sayd to theym, 'Fayr
 24 bredern, ye knowe *that* Rowlande hateth me to deth /
 and not thurgh my defawte, but onely thourghe enuye.
 Wherfore, I praye you that ye attende vpon me this
 daye, and ye shall see me doo as a good knyghte; and
 28 this daye the pride of Rowlande must be layd, or elles
 myn, a down.' Whan Alarde herde his broder Rey-
 nawde speke so / he sayd to hym / 'And wherof care
 you? he sure & certeyne that as longe that liif is in
 32 our bodyes, we shall not faylle you' / and wyth this
 worde thei put theym to the way. And Reynawd
 toke two thousande knyghtes, & gaaff them to alarde

Reynawde blows
 his horn three
 times to summon
 his folk,

and mounts on
 Bayard, taking
 in his company
 vi thousand men.

Reynawde tells
 his brethren how
 he intends this
 day to lay low
 the pride of
 Roland.

He gives two
 thousand knyghts

¹ Fol. S. ii. ² be to, *orig.* ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. p. i. back.
⁴⁻⁴ ceulx qui ouyent le son de la trompe, F. orig. p. i. back.

to Guycharde for
the vanguard.

& guycharde, & sayd to theim, 'Fayr brethern, ye shall make the forwarde, & kepe your men in good ordenaunce; and I & my broder Rycharde shall make the reregarde' / 'syre,' ¹sayd Alarde, 'we shall doo 4 it well yf god wyll' / and thenne they rode forthe so long that thei sawe y^e folke of Rowland nigh theim. and whan Alarde aperceyved theim, he made his men to tari, & sente worde to Reynawd that he 8 sholde make haste to com / for thei had fonde their enmyes. And whan Reynawde wyst of these tydynges / he made his folke to ride hastely, & cam anone to Alard his broder. and whan he sawe his enmyes, he 12 put his folke in araye, and devysed his batailles honestly² as a good capitayn of werre. /

They approach
the folk of
Roland,

and Reynawde
marshals his
folk.

Roland informs
his lords of the
coming of the
Sons and Mawgis.

Thenne whan Rowlande sawe so grete folke / he called to hym the bisshop Turpyn, & Guydellon 16 of bavyre, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, now behold / I see yonder many folke armed / myght that be Reynawd & his bredern, wherof the renommee is so grete; & of their cosyn Mawgis, the subtyll knyghte?' 20 'Sir,' sayd the bisshop Turpyn / 'ye, they ben tho verely / and also I telle you they make theymself to be well know wherscever thei goo; and I tell you that we can not save vs, but that we must medle wyth 24 theym.' Whan Ogier sawe Reynawde, he loyned & heved his handes toward heven, & sayd / 'O god, blessed thou be that hast suffred Rowland to fynde Reynawde, his bredern ³& Mawgis!³ certes, who that 28 gaf me a thousande marke of gold, I shold not be so glad, for Rowland hath now all his desire; ³and, for certen, I am right glad that we have fonde them.³ Now shall I see how he shalle bere hymself agenst the 32 valyaunt Reynawd, his bredern / and Mawgis' / and whan he had sayd this / he torned hymself toward

Ogier is greatly
rejoiced when he
sees Reynawde
and his folk;

¹ Fol. S. ii. back. ² Comme Il le scauoit bien faire, F. orig. p. i.
³⁻³ omitted. F. orig. p. ii. back.

Rowland, & said to hym, ‘Rowland, now have ye that
 ye have desired so long! and I am glad that it is com
 so / for now shall I see how ye shall take them / For
 4 yf ye can take them a lyve, & bryng them to Charle-
 magn, he shall coñ you grete thanke for it; and
 so shall bayarde be your owne, that ¹ ye have soo sore
 desired / and the werre shall be thus fynyshed’ /
 8 ‘Ogyer, ogier,’ sayd thenne Rowlande, ‘thise ben
 reproches that ye telle me. But, by saynt Denys of
 Fraunce, ye shall see or evyn who shall be mayster of
 vs two’ / ‘Rowlande,’ sayd Ogier / ‘now shall it be
 12 seen what ye can doo’ / whan Rowlande knewe that
 he muste have medlyng wyth his enmyes / he or-
 deyned all his bataylle, as he cowde well doo / and
 after he set his folke in ordenaunce of bataylle, the
 16 beste that he myghte / And whan Reynawde sawe that
 Rowland ordeyned his bataylles / he called his brethern,
 and sayd to them / ‘Lordes, here com the frenshemen;
 yonder is Rowlande & Oliveres / and the duke Naymes
 20 of bayyre, and Oger the dane; Ye shall abyde here for
 to make the reregarde / and yf we have mystre of
 helpe / come & helpe vs’ / ‘Syr,’ sayd Mawgis, ‘ye
 make to longe sermone / delyver you, for we tary to
 24 long fro sawtyng ²vpon our enmyes’² / ‘Cosyn,’ sayd
 Reynawd, ³‘ye say well, and³ ye speke like a good
 knyghte / For yet have I no better knyghte than
 ye be one, whan I see you armed by me; now thynke
 28 to doo well / for I goo firste of all for to overthrowe
 the pryde of Rowland, that is so grete, as every man
 knoweth / And I praye you all that everi man doo his
 parte wyth all his power.
 32 **A**nd whan the bredern vnderstode that reynawd
⁴wold goo prove hymselfe vpon rowland⁴ / they

he advises Roland
 to show his
 prowess in the
 capture of the
 Sons.

Roland swears he
 will do his best
 to win the battle.

Reynawde orders
 his brethren to
 keep in the rear
 until he has need
 of them.

¹ Fol. S. iii. ²⁻² Rolant, F. orig. p. ii. back

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. p. ii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ aler esprouwer sur bayart, F. orig. p. ii.

Reynawde is entreated by his brethren not to fight single-banded against Roland,

beganne all thre¹ to wepe, & sayd / 'Ha, brother² / and wyll ye that ye & we be deed all atones? For ye can slee yourselve noo better than to prove yourself vpon Rowland / For he is overmoche prue¹ & valiaunt,¹ and **4** also he can not be hurt wyth yron; but we pray you that ye wyll assaye yourselve vpon the other, & lete rouland alone' / 'Lordes,' sayd reynawd, 'ye have spoken ful well. I knowe well that rowland is hardy **8** & prue, and that his ³matche is not in the worlde of knyghtehode; but I am in the right / and he is in the wronge, whiche shall mowe tourne hym to a grete harme, and therefore I wyll not refuse / but that **12** I shall goo agenste hym / But and yf he wyll peas he shall have it / and yf he wyll have werre, ⁴he shall fynde me redy to receyve him therto,⁴ For I have lever deye than be longe syke. **16**

but he will not listen to their counsel,

¶ Now I praye you speke noo more of it, but see that ye bere yourselve well agenste our ennyes, For we have to doo agenste many a noble knyghte' / 'Cosyn,' sayd Mawgys, 'thynke to assaylle well, For **20** ye shall be socoured ryght well.' Thenne the worthy knyghte Reynawde wente afore all the other wyth his sheelde at the necke, and his spere in his hande, sittyng vpon bayarde⁵ / Whan Rowland sawe Reynawde come wyth his folke well ordred / he shewed it to olyver, and sayd / 'Felawe, what thynke you by that folke? / see how they come towarde vs in good arraye' / ⁶'Certes, Rowlande,' sayd Olyver,⁶ 'Reynawd **28** knoweth more of werre than ony other knyghte that lyveth, and the moost gracyous; For ther is none so poure a knyghte in the worlde, if he come to hym / but he shall be ryght welcome to hym / and yf he **32** come a fote, he shall set hym anone a horse backe.

and goes forth before his folk well armed

mounted upon Bayard.

Roland commends the prowess of Reynawde.

¹ omitted, F. orig. p. ii. ² Regnault, F. orig. p. ii.

³ Fol. S. iii. back. ⁴⁻⁴ il laura, F. orig. p. ii.

⁵ que bien ressembloit cheuallier a leure, F. orig. p. ii.

⁶ omitted, F. orig. p. ii.

And yf he be yll appoynted / he shall anone araye
 hym after his astate. Is not this a grete goodnes
 of hym?'¹ / 'Ye, by my soule,' sayd Rowlande / 'and
 4 he dooth well / For yf he dyde otherwyse, he myghte
 not abyde longe agenst myn vncke Charlemagne.'²
 'And me semeth,'³ sayd agayn Olyver,³ 'that he hathe
 well thre tymes moo folke than we have, wherof he
 8 myght well gete vpon vs / but yf we take better hede,
 for they ben well subtyll folke' / 'Olyver,' sayd Row-
 lande, 'ye saye trouth, but ye knowe well the gascoyns
 ben cowardes of veri kinde / and can not abyde no
 12 stroke of swerde, but that thei will⁴ flee lightly away.'
 'that is true,' sayd the bysshop Turpyn, 'but they
 have wyth them a good guyde as ony is in all y^e
 worlde. And wyte it, syr Rowland, that the valiaunt
 16 man causeth his folke to abyde nyghe hym. For
 a worthy capytayn is the myrroure & ensauple to
 thother for to doo well.' Whan Rowland herde this,
 he wexed almost mad / bycause men praysed Rey-
 20 nawde & his folke soo moche; & wyth this he spored
 his horse, and went byfore all his folke well the shot
 of a bowe ferre / and cam agenst Reynawd. And
 whan Reynawde sawe Rowland com alone, he sayd to
 24 Alarde, 'Fayre broder, beware, vpon asmoche as ye
 love me, *that* ye move not, nor your folke; but abyde
 styll here till that I have iousted wyth Rowland, that
 cometh alone / and therfor I wyll no man helpe me
 28 agenste hym' / Whan Reynawd had sayd this, he
 spored bayard wyth the spores, and came agenst Row-
 land so faste, that they that sawe it wende that bayarde
 had floughe in the ayer, For the smallest lepe that he
 32 lepte, was of XXX fote ferre or more. And whan he
 was com nyghe Rowlande as for to have iousted /

Oliver fears the
 strength of the
 Sons.

Roland says the
 Gascons are
 cowardes, and are
 sure to run away

Roland is angry
 at the praise
 accorded to Rey-
 nawde, and spurs
 his horse towards
 Bayard.

Reynawde hastily
 approaches Ro-
 land,

¹ dist Olivier, F. orig. p. ii.

² car trop est noble chevalier, F. orig. p. ii.

³⁻³ emitted, F. orig. p. ii. ⁴ Fol. S. iv.

and alights on
foot,

and presents his
sword to Roland,
kneeling before
him;

he begs him to
remember his
kingship,

and says he will
give him Bayard

and forsake
France, if peace
may be accorded
between him and
Charlemagne.

Roland says he
cannot make
peace unless
Mawgis is de-
livered up to the
Emperor.
Reynawde will
not do this,

Reynawd lighted doun a fote / & pyghte his spere
in therth, And bounde bayard therat, bycause he shold
abyde there stille / And vngirte flamberge, his¹ swerde,
and cam before Rowland & presented it to hym, 4
and kneled afore hym & kyssed his fote, and sayd
all wepyng / ‘Damp̄ rouland, I crie you mercy for that
pite that our lord had in the crosse vpon his moder
whan he comended her to saynt Iohn, that ye wyll 8
have pyte vpon me. Ye knowe well that I am your
kynsman, and, how be it I am poure, yet shal I be and
my brethern your men / And also I shall gyve you
bayarde, and shall make you lord of Mountalban, so 12
that it wyll plase you to purchace our peas wyth the
kyng Charlemagn your vncle; and, yf it playse you
for to doo so I shall make all² my bretherne to graunte
the same, And I shall forsake fraunce all my liff / And 16
I promyse you that³ I shall goo in to the holy londe³
wyth Mawgis and my brethern for to make werre
agenste the sarrasins.⁴ And yf ye thynke that I saye
well / brynge it aboute yf ye canne. For yf ye doo it 20
ye shall have a felawe and a servaunt of me.’

Rowlande had grete pyte whan he herde Reynawd
speke in this manere, And beganne to wepe full
tenderly / and after sayd to hym, ‘By god, Reynawd, 24
I dare not speke of it, but yf soo be that ye wyll
delyver vnto hym Mawgys’ / ‘Alas,’ sayd Reynawd,
‘I shold never doo that, for to deye for it, For Mawgys
ys no man for to be gyven awaye for to have peas.’ 28
And thenne he rose vp and toke his swerde & his
sheelde, And came to bayard and mounted vpon hym
wythoute styrope / and thenne he toke his spere in
his hande / And whan he was well appareylled, he 32
wente agen to Roulande, and sayd to hym / ‘Row-

¹ bonne espeé, F. orig. p. iii. back. ² Fol. S. iv. back.

³⁻³ Iray oultre mer, F. orig. p. iii. back.

⁴ Tres doulx sire, F. orig. p. iii. back.

1 Inde, wyte that I shall never more crye you mercy, for
 fere that I have of you / But I have cried you mercy
 for to bere you worship, by cause that ye be of my
 4 kynne / But sith that I see that ye be so proude that
 ye wyll doo noo thyng for me / nor for my prayer. I
 shall mowe deale resonably wyth you / to the ende that
 ye shall not mow reporte nor saye to the other barons
 8 and knyghtes of Fraunce / that Reynawde the sone of
 Aymon hathe cryed you mercy for fere / The caas is
 suche / ye have wyth you a grete company of folke /
 And also I have of my side men ynough, thanked
 12 be god / and yf our folke asemble togider / it canne
 not be otherwyse, but that grete harme shall falle
 of bothe sides. But, and ye wyll, we shall fighte, we
 two togyder, for theym all, wythout ony helpe of
 16 other / and yf ye overcom me, ye shall brynge me to
 charlemagne / that shall ¹doo his playsure of me / And
 yf I can conquere you, ye shall com wyth me to
 Mountalban, under condycyon that ye shall have
 20 nother evyll nor shame / no more than shall my owne
 persone' /

but proposes that
 they should fight
 together single-
 handed, and
 whichever shall
 win shall be
 prisoner of the
 other.

' Shall ye doo this that ye have sayd?' sayd Row-
 lande / 'ye, wythoute fawte,' sayd Reynawd / 'By
 24 mi hede,' sayd rowlande, 'ye shall make me sure therof
 fyrst' / 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde, 'wyth a god wyll' /
 And thenne Reynawd sware it vnto hym vpon his
 parte of paradys.² 'Reynawd,' sayd rowlande, 'I wyll
 28 go take leve of my felawe Oliver / for I have promysed
 hym that all the bataylles that I shall vndertake,
 he shall mow make theym hymself, yf it playse hym.'
 'Go thenne,' sayd Reynawde, '& make it short.' and
 32 thenne Rowland went agen to his felawes / And whan
 he was com to them / hector, the sone of oedon,
 olyver, & ogyer the dane, asked of hym, saenge / 'Syr

Roland consents,
 and departs to
 take leave of
 Oliver;

¹ Fol. S. v.

² de tenir loyaulment ce que auoit este devise, F. orig. p. iii.

he relates to his friends the proposal of Reynawde.

Oliver agrees that either he or Roland must fight.

Bi-hop Turpin and the other Earls oppose the fight, and advise that their armies should decide the victory.

Roland willingly agrees to this, and commands the advance of his folk.

Rowland, what sayeth Reynawd? have ye spoke wyth hym?' 'ye,' sayd rowland / 'and what thynke you by hym?' 'Certes,' sayd rowlande, 'reynawd is a sage knyght & well taughte / for he hath requyred me to 4
 fyghte wyth hym body to body / and that our folke be styll of the one syde, and of the other' / 'Rowlande,' sayd olyver, 'ye shall doo in this your playsure / for other ye or I must fyghte wyth hym / But I 8
 counseyll that ye go there / for as longe as I shall lyve, I shall not be enmye to Reynawde, onely for his worthynes. For Reynawde is a knyghte of grete honour' / Whan the bysshop turpyn, ector the sone 12
 of odeoñ, & thother erles herde this, they began to saye, 'Rowland, what is that ye wyll doo? For god mercy, doo it not, for reynawd is of your linage & of ours; and yf ye brynge hym to dethe / we shall 16
 never love you after / sire, leve that off're that reynawde gyveth to you, & make your folke to assemble wyth the folke of reynawde, for it is ¹better that they be take of your folke, than that the one of you two were deed.' 20
 'wyll ye that it be so?' sayd rowland / 'ye, sir, yf it playse you' / 'certes,' sayd roland, 'it playse me right well' / and thenne he sayd to all his folke / 'Lordes, thynke to defende you well / for it is now nede 24
 therof' / 'Syre,' sayd thother, 'have no doubte of no thyng, for we shall do well your commaundement' / and thenne thei put theymself in ordenaunce. and rowland began to crie 'mountioye, saint denys' / and 28
 whan cam to y^e setting on wyth speres, Ye shold have seen thenne many a knyght brought to grounde, & many horses that ranne masterles thurgh the feeldes, so moche that it was grete pite for to see so grete a 32
 dystruetyon of knyghtes as was made there. Whan reynaud sawe the two oostes muste assemble togyder / he spored bayarde wyth the spores, & put hymselfe

¹ Fol. S. v. back.

amonge the thickest of the frenshemen / and smote a
 knyghte so harde in the breste that he overthrewe
 bothe horse & man to the grounde ; and after smote a
 4 nother soo sore, that nether for sheelde nor for quyras
¹of stele¹ he let not, but that he shoved the yren of his
 spere thrughe & thrughe hys body / and fell deed to
 therth / and wyte at that stroke he brake his spere.
 8 and reynawd set hande lightly to his swerde, and
 began to criē ‘ Mounतालban ’ as lowde as he cowde. And
 thenne he made so grete slaughter of frenshemen that
 none durst abyde afore hym, but fled fro him as fro
 12 the deth. Shortly to speke, reynawd dyd somoche
 thorughe his strengthe / and thorughe the highe
 knyghthode of his brethern, that he brake the firste
 bataylle of the frenshemen / wolde they or noo /

16 **W**han the lityll Rycharde / the brother of Rey-
 nawde, sawe that the Frenshemen were puite
 a backe / He beganne to crye on heygthe ‘ Ardeyne ’ as
 moche ²as he myghte. And put hymselfe in to the
 20 greteste preesse ¹amonge his ennyes,¹ and beganne to
 make soo grete hewynge of folke that it was wonder to
 see / For Reynawde faughte not for to loke the better
 vpon hym. And thenne Rycharde, that thoughte hym
 24 selfe never wery of gevyngē of strokes, beganne to
 calle vpon his broder, and sayd, ‘ Reynawd, fayr
 broder, where ben your grete strokes goon that ye were
 wonte for to gyve ¹vpon your ennyes?¹ Alas, smyte
 28 now vpon them / for they ben almost overcom ; make
 that the frenshemen, full of pryde, mocke not of you /
 and soo make we suche a thyngē that it be spoken of
 it vnto Parys’ / Whan Reynawd herde Rycharde
 32 speke thus, he began to smyle / and after he smote
 bayarde ¹wyth the spores¹ / and beganne to smyte better
 than he dyde afore. Who that had seen thenne his
 grete strokes departe / he myghte well have sayd that

Reynawde fights
in the thickest of
the battle,

and makes the
Frenshemen flee
before him.

Richard cries on
high ‘ Arden,’

and fights as
valiantly as
Reynawde.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. p. iv. back.

² Fol. S. vi.

The Frenchmen
cry to Roland
to defend them.

Roland calls on
Reynawde to fight
him,

and the two
knights prepare
to joust together.

no carpenter smotte never soo well in wood as Reynawde dyde vpon the helmes ¹of stele¹ and vpon the sheldes of the frenshe men / And whan the frenshemen sawe that the dyscomfyture tourned vpon theym, they **4** beganne to calle Rowlande / and sayd to hym / ‘Ha, Rowlande, what doo ye / whi come ye not and helpe your folke / For they ben deed, but yf ye socoure theym.’ Whan Rowlande vnderstode that worde, **8** wherof he was wrothe / ²and ryght sory² / And whan he sawe his folke soo sore handeled / He beganne to crye ‘Mountioye saynte Denys.’ And after spored his horse, and entered in to the medlee ; And wente here **12** and there, cryenge, ‘Reynawd, where be you goon / See me here ; I am all redy for to doo the bataylle, my body agenste yours, that ye aske of me.’ Whan Reynawde herde Rowlande, that called thus after hym / **16** He put flamberd³ in to his sheeth ; And⁴ toke a spere in his hande, and cam there as Rowlande was, & sayd ⁵to hym / ‘Where are ye, Rowlande ? be ye a ferde of me, that ye have taryed soo longe for / Beware your self **20** from me !’ ‘And you of me,’ sayd Rowlande. And thenne they spored theyr horses,⁶ and dyde iouste the one agenste the other. And whan the frenshemen and the gascoyns saw that, thei withdrewe theym selfe **24** from eche other, for to beholde the ioustynge of the two worthy knyghtes / For, to saye the trouth, there were not two other suche in all the worlde !

Whan Salamon of Bretayne / and Ector, the sone **28** of Oedon, sawe that the ioustynge of Reynawde and of Rowlande was begon, they set theym selfe to wepe full tendrely ; and came to the duke Naymes, to the byssshop Turpin, and to Olyver, and **32** sayd to theym / ‘How, lordes, may ye suffre that one

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. p. iv. back. ² omitted, F. orig. p. iv.

³ son espee, F. orig. p. iv.

⁴ et prent une lance courte et grosse, F. orig. p. iv.

⁵ Fol. S. vi. back. ⁶ des esperons, F. orig. p. v. back.

of the beste knyghtes of the worlde / and hym *that* we
oughte to love beste, be slayne and deed before you.’
‘Certes,’ sayd the duke Naymes, ‘that shall be grete
4 sorow to vs for to see’ / And thenne he cam to Olyver,
and sayd to hym / ‘I praye you that ye goo to Rowlande,
and telle hym from vs all, that he oughte not to fyghte
wyth Reynawde wyth the swerde / But lete hym take
8 a spere and breke it vpon reynawde ; for to acyqyte his
feythe / For yf he slee Reynawde we shall never love
hym after’ / ‘Lordes,’ sayd thenne Ogyer, ‘lete this
alone / ye knowe not Reynawde so well as I doo /
12 Reynawde is noo childe for to be made a ferde soo
lightly as ye trowe. Lete theym shyfte hardely, ¹they
two togyder,¹ For, by the feyth that I owe to you /
Rowland shal be all wery or ever he retourne agayne /
16 And he shall be as fayne to leve the bataylle as shall
Reynawd. And ye shall see that Rowlande wold he
had not gon there, for the best cyte *that* themperour
Charlemagn hath.’ ‘Oger,’ sayd ector / ‘ye speke of it
20 as for enuye / certes yf ye shold fight wyth rowlande,
ye shold ²well saye otherwyse’ / And thenne he sayd to
Olyvere / ‘Good syre, lete this bataylle be defierred yf
ye maye be ony wyse.’ ‘Lordes,’ sayd Olyver, ‘wyth
24 a goode wyll, sith that ye will have it soo’ / And
thenne he wente to Rowland, and sayd to hym all that
the barons had sayd. ‘Felawe myn,’ answered Row-
lande / ‘god confounde theym / for they take awaye
28 this daye the desyre of myn vncle Charlemagne’ / And
thenne he tourned hym towarde Reynawd, and sayd to
hym / ‘Syre reynawd, ye have assayed of my swerde /
and not of my spere.’ ‘Rowlande,’ sayd Reynawd,
32 ‘yf ye leve your swerde I shall conne you nother
thanke nor gramercy for it / For I fere you not of noo
thyng / but lete vs make an ende of our bataylle /
And to whom god gyveth the vycory, lete him have

Naymes counsels
Oliver to go and
prevent the
combat between
Roland and
Reynawde.

Ogier is anxious
that the fight
should continue.

Hector begs
Oliver to let the
combat be
deferred.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig. p. v. back. ² Fol. S. vii.

Roland will not fight with a sword, but runs on Reynawde with his spear.

They break their spears in the encounter,

and Roland is unhorsed,

through the fall of Melantes.

Roland prepares to kill Melantes for having fallen,

but Reynawde interferes, and prevents him.

it' / Rowlande wolde not doo soo, but dyde like as a curteys man / and he dyde as the barons had sent him worde. For he toke a spere, and ran vpon Reynawde as moche as he myghte / And whan Reynawd sawe he 4 wolde none otherwyse do, he ranne also ¹ wyth a spere¹ vpon Rowlande / And roughte eche other sore wonderfull harde that they made theyr speres to flee all in peces. And whan they had broken their speres, they 8 recounted eche other wyth their sheldes so strongly that bothe theyr horses, that is to wyte, Melantes & Bayarde, stakerde / and were all a stonyed ther wyth- all / But wyth that stroke Rowlande & Melantes² were 12 both felde to the grounde in a hepe / And Reynawd passed forth by theym, cryenge 'Mountalban' wyth a hye voys. Wherby I telle you, for certeyn, that Rowlande never felle down for no stroke of spere, but 16 onely that tyme / but it was no merveylle / For he cowde not holde hym selfe by the clowdes / syth that his horse had faylled hym

³ **T**henne whan Rowland saw hymselfe thus over- 20
thrown, he was not well contente, & rose vp incontynente and toke his swerd in his honde, And came to melentys to kit of his hede / And beganne to seye / 'Evyll courser, who kepeth me that I kylle the 24 not⁴ / sithe that thou haste lete falle thyselfe through the stroke of a childe, I shall never trust the' / 'Soo helpe me god, Rowland,' sayd Reynawd, 'ye do ⁵ to melantis grete⁵ wronge, For it is longe sith that he ete 28 ony mete / and therefore he can not well traveylle / but bayarde hath eten well to nyghte that was, and therefore he is more strong than is your horse'⁶ / and thenne Reynawd lighted down fro bayard / bycause that Row- 32 land was a fote. and whan bayarde sawe his mayster

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. p. v. back.

² Son cheval, F. orig. p. v. ³ Fol. S. vii. back.

⁴ not repeated in text.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. p. v.

⁶ Benoiste soit leure que oncques fut ne, F. orig. p. v.

a fote, he ran vpon melantis, the horse of Rowland,
 and smote hym wyth his hinder fete soo grete strokes
 that he had almost broken his thie / whan rowlande
 4 sawe that, he was wrothe for it, & cam towarde bayarde
 for to have smyte of his hede. And whan Reynawd
 saw that / he sayd to Rowlande / 'What wyll ye doo ?
 it is no worship to you to smyte a beest ; and yf ye wyll
 8 doo ony fayt of armes, com to me & not to my horse,
 for I shall gyve you strokes ynowe, so moche that ye
 shall be wery of it or we departe ; but kepe well that I
 slee not you / and leve bayarde in peas, for there is not
 12 in all the worlde another so good a beest ; For he dyd
 shewe it well whan he wan the crowne of charlemagn
 your vucle in your presenee / and yf he doth helpe me,
 he doth but his devoyre, & that a good horse ought to
 16 doo ; but torne your sheelde towarde me, & ye shall
 see how Flamberde cutteth.' 'Reynawd, reynaul,'
 sayd Rowlande, 'threten not soo moche, For before
 this daye be com at an ende / ye shall see a thyng
 20 that shall not playse you over moche' /

Bayard attacks
 Melantes, to the
 great anger of
 Roland.

Roland advises
 Reynawde not to
 boast so much
 until the day is
 finished.

Reynawde was not contente whan he vnderstode
 the yll wordes of Rowlande, and shoke all for
 angre ; ¹and Incontyente ranne vpon Rowlande, and
 24 gaaff hym suche a stroke vpon his helme that he all to
 brused it ; and the stroke slided vpon the sheelde soo
 that he cut of it a grete quarter, and of the courset of
 stele also, but he cut no thyng of the flesshe / And
 28 whan Reynawde had gyven Rowland *that* stroke, he
 sayd in maner of a moeke to Rowland, 'what saye ye
 bi my swerde / doo it cut well or no ? for I have not
 myssed at that stroke / Now kepe ye well fro me / for
 32 I am not suche a chylde as ye take me for' / Whan
 Rowlande felt that grote stroke that Reynawd had
 gyven to him / he was all merveylled of it / and
 wythdrewe hymself abacke / for he wolde not *that*

The fight begins
 again,
 and Reynawde
 smites Roland
 severely.

¹ Fol. S. viii.

Roland with his sword cleaves the shield of Reynawde.

Mawgis and all his company appear and prevent Reynawde from renewing the strife.

Ogier and Oliver take Roland away.

The batte commences between the two armies.

Reynawd shold have recovered a nother stroke vpon him sodenly / and set hande to durandall, his good swerde, & ran vpon Reynawd / and reynawd helde his sheelde agens^t it / & Rowlande smote in to the shelde 4
 so grete a stroke that he clove it bi the myddes thurgh^e & thurgh^e / and the stroke descended vpon the helme, & dyde it no harme. and whan Rowland had made that stroke / he sayd to Reynawd, ‘ Vassall, ye be now 8
 quyte / for I have yelded you agen that ye lended me right now / Now shall I see who shal begyn^e agen.’ ‘ By my soule,’ sayd reynawd, ‘ fowle fall have I now yf I feyne me now / For I dyd but play afore; nor 12
 your fraunchise shall never avaylle you agenst me, but that I shall bryng your pride al down to therthe.’ ‘ Reynawd,’ sayd rowland, ‘ yf ye doo this that ye saye, ye shall werk merveilles’ / And all thus as they 16
 wold have begon agen the batayll, soo cam there Mawgis & all his company, and sayd to Reynawd / ‘ Cosin, mouⁿte vpon bayarde / for it were to grete a losse yf you or Rowland were ded.’ And there came 20
 Ogier and Olyver, and made Rowlande to lighte agayne vpon his horse. But wyte it well that Ogier had not be soo gladd^e yf one hadde gyve to hym ¹a ²grete² cyte, as he was be cause that Reynawde had east down 24
 Rowlande ²& his horse² / and whan they ³had recounted roulande³ / they began agen a sore batayll & a cruell / and so felle that it was pite for to see / for thone hewe the other wythout ony mercy / And whan Rowlande 28
 saw that the batayll was begonⁿe agen / his hert dide swell for angre bycause that reynawd had overthrown hym to the grounde. soo began he to call as hie as he myghte, ‘ Where are ye goon, Reynawd the sone of 32
 Aymon? goo a side & lete vs parfornyssh^e our batayll, for men knowe not yet whiche is the beste knyghte of

¹ Fol. S. viii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. p. vi.
³⁻³ eurent monte rolant, F. orig. p. vi.

vs two' / 'Syr,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye have the corage
of a knyghte that wyll conquere honour / but & we
fichte here togyder, our folke shall not suffre it / But
4 lete vs doo one thyng that I shall tell you; ye be well
horsed, & I am also, lete vs bothe swimme over the
river & goo to the wode of the serpent, for ye can not
wysse no better place for to fichte / and we shall not
8 be there departed, thone fro the other, of our folke, but
¹we shall maye fyghte there togyder tyll the one of vs
two be dyscomfited & overcome' ¹ / 'Certes,' sayd Row-
lande, 'ye have well spoken, and I graunt it as ye have
12 sayd.' and thenne they spored their horses for to go
to the wood of the serpent. but Olyver toke hede to
theym / and toke Rowland by the brydell & wythhelde
hym, wold he or noo. and Reynawd went for to have
16 passed over the river vpon bayarde, that ran as the
wynde, & waloped so harde that he made all therthe
where he passed to shake vnder hym; and as he ran
in this maner / he loked afore hym and sawe the kyng
20 yon, that was avyronned wyth well four score knyghtes,
that kept hym for fere of Reynawd, leste he & his
bredern shold have rescued him / & thise knyghtes
ledde him shamfully, as ye have herd afore. and whan
24 reynaud saw y^e kyng, he was glad of it, & sayd / 'Ha,
good lord, blessed ²be thy name, whan ye have graunted
me so fayr adventure,' and wyth this he set hande / to
his swerde, and spored bayarde wyth the spores / and
28 cryed as hie as he cowde / 'lete go the kyng yon, evyll
folke that ye be / For ye be not worthy to laye hande
vpon hym.' and thenne he entred wythin theym, &
smote a knyghte vpon his helme so rudely that he
32 clove his hede to the haude teeth / and overthrewe
hym deed to therthe / And whan the other sawe

Reynawde pro-
poses to Roland
that they should
go to the wood of
the Serpent, and
there end their
combat.

Oliver again
interferes, and
prevents Roland
from going there.

Reynawde on his
way to the wood
meets King John,

and demands the
knights to release
him;

he slays one of
them, and the rest
are discomfited.

¹ et la pourrons finer nostre bataille. et a qui dieu en donra
lon ne, si le peigne car ceste le meilleur selon mon aduis. F.
orig. p. vi.

² Fol. T. i.

Reynawde amonge theym / they put theymselfe to flighte / and sayd the one to thother / 'The devyll hath broughte this cruell¹ man here now / lete vs flee ; goddis curse have he that shall abyde hym / For the soule of 4 hym that wyfully suffreth hymself to be slayn shall never come to the mercy of god' / And thenne they put [t]heymself in to the thyekeste of the forest, and lefte behynde theym the kinge yon, that they lodged as 8 a prisoner / and Reynawde cam streyghte to hym / and vnbounde hym and vnstopped his eyen, and after sayd to hym / 'Ha, evyll kyng / how have ye the hert for to betraye vs so falsly, as ye have doon me & my 12 bredern ; dyde we ever ony thyng that was in² your dysplaysur / It is not longe on you, but that we shold have ben all hanged by this / but I shall smyte of your hede, evyn anone / and shall avenge me & my bredern³ 16 vpon your body' / Whan the kyng yon sawe Reynawde, that hadde delyverde hym, he kneled adoun byfore hym, & sayd to hym / 'Certes, noble knyghte, it is well rayson that men slee me ; Wherof I praye 20 you, for god, that yourselfe wyl⁴ take the liff fro me, and⁴ out of my hede / and lete it not be doon by none other / and pulle out my tonge, wherwyth I spake the trayson / For I have well deserved gretter martyrdom. 24 and all this made me doo therle of Ansom / and the erle Anthony / Now slee me, for god / for suche an evyll man as I am oughte not to lyve longe. I have moche lever⁵ that ye kylle me⁴ wyth your swerde,⁴ 28 than that cruell kyng Charlemagn⁴ shold make me to be hanged.'⁴ 'Now light vp,' sayd Reynawde, 'for ye shall be well payd as ye have deserved.' But here leve I to speke of kyng Yon & of Reynawd, that ben in the 32 wood of the serpent / where he taried after Rowlande

Reynawde unbinds the eyes of John, and reproaches him for his treachery.

John confesses that he deserves to be slain,

but begs Reynawde to behead him, rather than Charlemagne should have him hung.

¹ omitted, F. orig. p. vii. back. ² m. *in text*.

³ chetif serorge et mauvais homme que vous estes, F. orig. p. vii. back. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. p. vii. back.

⁵ Fol. T. i. back.

for to fighte wyth hym, as he had promysed hym / &
 shall retorne to speke of Rowland & of Olyver, that
 spake to their folke for to telle them a part of theyr
 4 besines, and how they had ben dyscomfyted.

CHAPTER XIII.¹

[The xiii. chapter sheweth, how that after
 Reynawd had succoured kyng yon, was the
 8 same houre a merueylouse battaylle be-
 tweene Reynawde and the frenshe men.
 For Rowlande was there sore beten and
 many other, wherof Ogyer was glad by-
 12 cause that Rowlande had called him tray-
 toure; And also he knewe that the foure
 sonnes of Aymon, were not for to be so
 lyghtelye ouercomen, as men had sayde
 16 afore. And for this cause there had been
 a sore medle betweene Rowland and ogyer,
 yf it had not be the other barons, that de-
 parted them, and in this recountre Rycharde
 20 the brother of Reynawde, abode for prisoner
 of Rowlande.]

In this parte sheweth the history, that after Rey-
 nawde was departed fro the bataylle for to go
 24 fighte body to body agenste Rowlande, the newewe
 of Charlemagne, in the wood of the serpent / Rowland
 Olyver & the dane Ogyer faughte agens Alard,
 Guycharde, & the lityl Rycharde, agenste Mawgis &
 28 agenste their folke / and the batayll was there so
 sharpe & soo fell of one parte & of the other / soo that

¹ The heading of this chapter is omitted by Caxton, and is therefore given here from Copland's Table: Ed. 1554.

The folk of Roland
are overcome by
the Sons and
Mawgis.

Ogier jeers at
Roland for his
discomfiture;

they would have
fought, but are
parted by Oliver.

Richard defies
Roland, whom he
meets, and pre-
pares to fight
him;

he is overthrown,

but remounts and

grete hurte & scathe was there made of bothe partes /
but at the laste the discomfytur turned vpon Row-
lande / and vpon his folke. In somoche that Row-
lande & Olyver were constrayned by force for to goo 4
backe agen all dyscomfytet / for the thre brethern
& Mawgys made agenst them so grete efforte of armes
that they gate the pryce that daye / And then as
Rowland went backe agen all dyscomfytet, he bare his 8
hede lowe, for he was a shamed that he had be soo
rebuked / And the^{ne} Ogier sayd to hym / 'Lord
Rowland, who hath arayed your sheelde of this faeyon?
I see your horse hurte in the thye, & vnder the croper / 12
he was felled vpon the right side, and you also / it is
well seen on your side. I trowe that ye have founde
reynawd the sone of Aymon. have ye brought him
wyth you / where have ye put hym' / Whan Row- 16
lande vnderstode *that* reproche that Oger made vnto
him / he wexed almost ²madde for angre / Soo toke he
his swerde, and ranne vpon Ogier for to have smytte
hym vpon the hede / But whan olyver sawe this, he 20
toke Rowland by the brydelle / and the erle Gnydellon
toke Ogier / and thus they were departed / And thus
as they were departed, and that Rowland went on his
waye / came there after hym the lityll rycharde, the 24
brother of Reynawde / that beganne to calle as hie as
he myght / 'Damp Rowlande, ye goo cowardly awaye /
retourne agayn that I may see your sheelde / and lete
vs have a course, ¹we two togyder.' ¹ 'knyghte,' an- 28
swerde Rowlande, 'I graunt therto by my feyth.' And
the^{ne} they spored their horses wyth their spores;
and Rowlande cam agenste rycharde soo harde that he
overthrew hym and his horse wyth all in a hepe 32
to the grounde. And whan rycharde sawe hymselfe
thus a grounde / he rose vp quyckely and came to his
horse / and lighted vp agayn wythoute ony styrop /

¹ omitted, F. orig. p. vii.

² Fol. T. ii.

And whan he was on horsbacke, he set hande on his swerde, and deffended hymself nobly ¹agenste his enmye Rowlande.¹ defends him-self nobly.

4 **W**han Rowland sawe this / and that he knewe that it was one of the brethern of Reynawd, ²he had so grete Ioye of it that hym semed that he had be in paradyse / and Incontynente² he beganne to erie /
 8 ‘Mountioye saynt Denis.’ And sayd vpon hym, ‘now, my frendes / For yf he scape vs, I shall telle it to Charlemagn.’ And whan the Frenshmen sawe that Rowlande wold have rycharde taken, they set all³ vpon
 12 hym, so that they smote hym wyth more than fourty swerdes all at ones / and it happed so that his horse was kyllled vnder hym / and he overthrowen to therth / and whan Richarde sawe his horse deed a grounde, he
 16 was right sory for it / and rose vp quyekely vpon his fete / and smote therle Antony so grete a stroke wyth his swerde that he wounded hym ⁴right sore / Humall the breton sawe that, and he smote Rycharde ; & rycharde
 20 recovered vpon hym wyth suche a stroke⁵ that he felled bothe horse & man down to the erth / ⁶And wyth this guydellon cam from behinde, & overthrewe richarde fro the arsons of his saddle to the grounde⁶ / And whan
 24 Rowlande sawe richard at the grounde, he cam to hym & sayd / ‘Now yelde you, and abyde not that we slee you, for it were grete *dommage*’ / ‘sire,’ sayd thenne richarde, ⁶the yongest sone of aymon,⁶ ‘to you, rowlande,
 28 I shall yelde me, & to none other / For I can not yelde me to no better man than ye be one.’ And wyth this he toke hym his swerde ; and Rowlande receyved it wyth a goode wyll, & made the lityll richarde to light

The Frenchmen
all set upon
Richard,

and after a short
onslaught he is
overpowered,

and yields him-
self prisoner to
Roland.

1-1 contre ses ennemys, F. orig. p. vii.

2-2 omitted, F. orig. p. vii. ³ all repeated in text.

⁴ Fol. T. ii. back.

⁵ que luy et cheval versa par terre et si le naura durement a mort, F. orig. p. viii. back.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig. p. viii. back.

vpon a mewle. And thus they had hym prisoner.
 Alas, & what *dommage* shall it be if the prue richarde
 be hanged / he is well like to be / but that god &
 Mawgys delyver hym / all this myshappe sawe a 4
 servaunt of richarde. and whan he sawe that men led
 thus his mayster richard / he spored his horse wyth the
 spores, & aventured hymselfe to passe over the ryver /
 and cam lightly¹ to reynawd, & sayd to hym / 'Syre, I 8
 bryng you evyll tydynges. Wyte that Rowlond ledeth
 wyth hym your brother richard for prisoner well sham-
 fully.' Whan Reynawd vnderstode these wordes, he
 was so angri for it that he had almoste lost his wyte / 12
 and after he sayd to the yoman / 'com hyder, tell me,
 my frende / are they that leden my broder² ferre hens' /
 'Sir,' sayd the yoman / 'ye, it is not possible that ye
 sholde overtake them.' And whan Reynawde vnder- 16
 stode this, he was more angry than he was to fore /
 and fell fro bayard in a swoone to therthe. And whan
 he was com agen to hymselfe / he beheld afore hym /
 And sawe his brother Alard come wyth his folke, that 20
 came after Reynawde by the trase / For they wende
 that Ryehard had be goon to hym long afore theym.
 And whan ³alard sawe reynawd make suche a sorow /
 he came thenne to hym, & sayd in this maner, 'Ha, 24
 fayr broder, and what eylleth you / It longeth not to
 suche a knyghte as ye be for to make so grete a sorowe
 as ye doo.' 'Alard,' sayd Reynawd, 'ye have doon full
 yll, for I have lefte my brother richarde wyth you to 28
 kepe him / and ye have lost hym, for Rowland ledeth
 hym wyth hym as prisoner / and he is all redy so ferre
 broughte *that* we can not socour hym' / whan alard &
 guychard vnderstode these tydynges / they began to 32
 make suche a sorowe that it was merveyll for to see

A servant of
 Richard brings
 the evil tidings
 of his capture to
 Reynawde.

Reynawde makes
 great sorrow for
 his brother,

and tells Alarde
 how Richard has
 been taken
 prisoner by
 Roland.

¹ omitted, F. orig. p. viii. back.

² Richart, F. orig. p. viii. back.

³ Fol. T. iii. (S. *in text.*)

- ¹the lamentacion that they made¹ / 'alas,' sayd Reynawd, 'what is he that hath parted our company / to daie in the mornyng we were four bredern togider /
 4 and now we ben but thre. Ha, fayr brother richard, it is a grete *dommage* of you; for yf ye had lyved your age, ye shold have passed all your brethern / seenge that ye were the yongest of vs all, & yet ye
 8 were the moost hardy / and thrughe your hardynes ye are taken.' 'fayr¹ brother,' sayd alard / 'all cometh by you, that broughte vs here agenst our wyll for to socour the kinge yon / Now have we lost richard,
 12 wherof the losse shall never be recovered, for we shall never see hym a lyve.' And whan he had sayd this, he sayd to guycharde / 'Broder, draw oute your swerde, so shall we cut of the hede of this traytour kyng yon
 16 therwyth / for whom we have now lost our broder richarde.' 'Brother,' sayd thenne Reynawde, 'I praye you, for ye love that ye have to me, that ye touche not the kyng yon ¹for to doo hym any harme¹ / for
 20 he hath yelded hymselfe vnto me / but bryng hym vnto moun^talban, and see that he be kepte sure. And I shall abyde here wyth my good horse bayard, & flamberde my good swerde, wythoute any other com-
 24 pany / Soo shall I goo in to the pavyllion of charlemagn, where I shall recover my brother Richard, or a nother prisoner for hym, or ²elles I shall deye wyth hym' / and whan he had said that worde, he spored bayard
 28 wyth the spores, for to have goon thyder, but alard toke hym bi the bridyll, & guychard toke hym with both his armes fro behynde for to kepe hym, that he shold not goo / and thenne alard sayd to him / 'Bi
 32 saynt peter of rome, ye shall not goo no fote there, for it is better that richard deye, yf it must be so / than ye shold deye.' And thus as the thre brethern made

Alarde wishes to behead King John, who is the cause of all their misfortune.

Reynawde restrains him, and commands that the King be kept from harm;

he announces his intention of going to the tent of Charlemagne for Richard.

Alarde and Guychard prevent his going.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. p. viii.

² Fol. T. iii. back. (S. *in text.*)

their mone¹ for richarde, cam there mawgis theyr cosin, that followed them. and whan he sawe his cosinus make suche sorow / he was sore agaste, & sayd to theym / 'What eyleth you, fayr cosins / it is no⁴ worship to you, nor y^e maner of good knyghtes / but of wymen, to make suche sorowe as ye doo.' 'Cosin, cosin,' sayd alard, 'I shall tell you what causeth vs to doo so / wyte that rowland ledeth wyth hym our⁸ broder richard for his prisoner, the best knyght of the world after reynawd; and reynawd wyl go to the pavyllion of charlemagn; and ye know well yf he goo there, he is but lost for evermore' / 'Reynawde,' sayd¹² the^{nne} mawgis, 'it were no wysdome to you yf ye went there / for your goyng shold not profyte no thyng / but go your wayes to mountalban, & I shall go there² as ye wold have goon my self;² and yf richarde¹⁶ be not deed, I shall bryng hym agen wyth me vnto you all, were he shitte vp in X prisons, mawgre charlemagn.'³ 'Cosin,' sayd reinawd, 'I shall becom your man yf ye doo this that ye saye' / 'cosin,' sayd²⁰ mawgis, 'I shall doo it wythout fawte / but leve your sorow; I shall deliver hym agen in to your handes⁴ hole & sounde,⁴ yf it playse god.' and whan he had sayd so, the bredern set theymself to the waye for to²⁴ retourne to mountalban / but soo grete sorow was there never made, as the thre bredern made for their broder richard⁵ / And thus, makyng their grete mone, they dyd someche that they cam to mountalban, &²⁸ lighted⁶ from their horses in the base court, and after

Mawgis enquires the cause of their sorrow,

and tells Reynawde to go to Mountalban, and he will deliver Richard.

The Sons depart for Mountalban,

¹ *que* estoit grant pitie a veoir, F. orig. p. viii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. p. viii.

³ de france, F. orig. q. i. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. q. i. back.

⁵ Helas! ce dist regnault, frere richart comme cest grant dommaige de vous se vous estes mort, car oneques chevallier ne vous valut de hardiesse, ne de prouesse. Et si etiez ung yosne enfant. Et se maist dieu Je plains plus la grant bonte de vous, que Je ne fais ce que vous estes mon frere, F. orig. q. i. back, omitted in Caxton.

⁶ Fol. T. iv.

wente vp to the dongeon / And whan the noble¹ lady
 clare, the wyf of Reynawde, wyste that her husbonde
 came / she came agenste hym right glad & Ioyfull /
 4 and ledeth at ether hande of her both her yonge
 children / aymon & yon ; and eyther of theym bare a
 lityll staff in his hande / and began to crie vpon their
 vncle / ‘vassayll / but that ye be now prisoner /
 8 ye shold have deyed by our handes’ / and they cam
 nyghe hym, & sayd / ‘cursed kyng & vntrue ! why
 have you betrayed my lord our fader, & his bredern,
 our vncles / that have doon to you so god servyse ?
 12 certes, ye be well worthy to deye a shamfull deth’ /
 Whan alarde herde his newewes speke of this maner /
 he beganne to wepe full tendrely. And thus as he
 wepte, he kyssed Aymouet, that bare the name of their
 16 fader / and sayd, ‘Ha, god, how ben we broughte lowe
 and dystroyed’ ! And whan the lady herde Alarde
 speke thyse wordes, and sawe that he wepte / she
 thoughte well that it was not wythoute a cause ; and
 20 she sayd to alarde / ‘Fayr brother, for god telle me
 the occasyon of your sorow.’ ‘Lady,’ said alarde,
 ‘wyth a good wylle² / Now wyte that we have loste
 our brother rychade / Rowlande ledeth hym for his
 24 prysoner to charlemagn ; but yf our lord save hym, we
 are not like never to see hym’ / ‘Alas, I vnhappy !
 what shall we doo?’ sayd the lady, ‘syth that Rych-
 arde is loste, For we shall never have honoure.’ And
 28 saynge thyse wordes, she felle down in a swoone to
 the erthe. And whan she was come agen to herselfe,
 she beganne to make soo grete a sorowe / that all
 they that were there had grete pyte of her / ¶ But
 32 here levethe the history to speke of Reynawd, of
 Alarde / and of Guycharde / and of the lady Clare /
 and her yonge chyldren / And retourneth to shewe of

and are received
 by Lady Clare
 and her children.

The lady asks
 them why they
 are so sorrowful.

Alarde tells her
 of the loss of
 Richard.

Clare falls down
 in a swoon,

and grieves
 terribly for
 Richard.

¹ omitted, F. orig. q. i.

² le vous diray, F. orig. q. i.

Mawgis, the goode knyghte, that had put hymselfe in adventure and in peyne, for to ¹deliver Rycharde oute of the handes of the kynge Charlemagne.

CHAPTER XIV.

How after that Reynawd, Alarde, and ⁴ Guycharde were retourned to Mountalban, after the bataylle that they had by the woode of the serpente, they made grete sorowe for the love of Rychard there broder / ⁸ that was in the handes of the kynge Charlemagne / and how he was delivered by the wytte of Mawgys.

Mawgis goes to
Montalban,

Now telleth the history / that whan Mawgys was ¹² come agayne to Mountalban / soo moche wrothe he was, that he myghte nomore, for the love of Rycharde that was take / And by cause that reynawd and his bretherne made therefore soo grete sorowe, Inconty- ¹⁶ nente that he was lighted from his horse / he wente into his chambre, and made hymselfe to be dysarmed ; and after he toke of all his clothes, and put hymself all naked / and this doon, he toke an herbe and ete it, and ²⁰ as soone that he had ete it / he swelled like a padde / and thenne toke an other herbe / and chaufed and helde it betwene his teeth / and anone he be came all blacke as a cole ²in his face, as one that is beten wyth staves² / ²⁴ and his eyen reled in his hede ³as he had be other dronken or madde³ / and dysguysed hymself wonderfully, that he that had well knowe hym afore⁴ shold not thenne have sayd that he had be mawgys. And whan ²⁸

and there dis-
guises himself;

¹ Fol. T. iv. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. i.

³⁻³ quil sembloit quil deust mourir, F. orig. q. i.

⁴ ne leust congrneu, F. orig. q. i.

he was thus ¹torned and ¹countrefayt / he toke a grete
 mantell and a hode, and clothed hymselfe therwyth,
 and toke on his fete a grete payre of botes, & the staff
 4 of a pylgryme in his hande. And thus arrayed, he
 yssued oute of mountalban. And whan he was oute,
 he sette hymselfe for to goo the waye so grete pase that
 no horse cowde not have waloped so fast / tyll that he
 8 cam to mounzbandell, byfore the tentes of themperour
 Charlemagn, ²or ever that Rowlande were come there
 agayn. and there he helde hym styll, & spake no thyng
 at all / but loked oonly vpon the kyng & vpon his
 12 pavyllion / And whan he went, he halted wyth thone
 fote / and lened before the kynges tente vpon his staff,
 and kept the one of his eyen close. And whan he
 sawe the kyng com out of his pavyllion / he nighed hym,
 16 & sayd, 'God of heven, that suffreth deth & passion in
 the crosse, kepe you, kyng Charlemayn, fro deth & fro
 pryson, and from evyll treyson /'
 'Vassall,' sayd the kyng charlemagn / 'god con-
 20 fonde you ! for I shall never truste vpon none
 suche a begger as ye be / by cause of the evyll theef
 mawgis / the whiche hath deceyved me many tymes /
 for whan he wil, he is a palmer, a knyghte, or a gryfon,
 24 or elles a heremyte / be suche maner that I can not
 beware of hym. And yf it playse god & hys blessed
 moder, I shall avenge me ones vpon hym, how that the
 game gooth' / And whan mawgis herde themperour
 28 speke of this manere, he answered no thyng / and
 kepte hym styll a grete while ; and after he sayd to
 the kyng, 'Syre, yf mawgis be a theef / all other poure
 folke be not so. I have more nede of helthe than I
 32 have to doo ony treyson ; & it is well seen on me *that*
 I am not the body that myghte doo ony grete harme /
 Syr, I come from Ierusalem, where I have worshypd
 the holy grave, and have doon my oblacyons in the

he takes a pil-
 grim's staff, and
 wears a mantle
 and hood, and
 thus issues out of
 Mountalban ;

he arrives at the
 tent of Charle-
 magne before
 Roland's return,

and calls on the
 Emperor.

Charlemagne is
 suspicious of his
 appearance,

because of the
 subtilty of
 Mawgis.

Mawgis assures
 him that he has
 just come from
 Jerusalem,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. q. i.

² Fol. T. v.

and is going to Rome; temple of salamon, and yet I must goo to rome & to saynt Iames in gales, and god wyll. But I dyd passe yesterlaye over baleneon & over gironde¹ / wyth x men, ²my servauntes,² that I ledde alwayes by the waye wyth 4 me for to kepe & defende my body. And whan I had passed over gyronde / ³I cam wyth my meyne thurgh a wood nyghe montalban³ / where I mette wyth many brygantes & theves, that slewe all my men, & al that 8 I had thei toke ⁴fro me, and lete me goo / and gladde I was whan soo fayr I was deliverde of theym. And after I asked of the folke of y^e countrey what men they were that ⁵had so⁵ slayn my men / and they dyd telle 12 me that they were the four sones of aymon, & a grete thef that was called mawgys ²wyth theim² / And I asked them why they wold set theymself to so fowle a craft & vnhappy / seen that thei were so grete gentylnen 16 born. and the peple of the countrey answerde me that they were constrained for to doo so, by cause they had soo grete poverte wythin mountalban that they wyst not what to doo / but I dyde never see so cruell a man 20 as the same mawgis is / for he bounde my handes behinde my backe whan he had robbed me / and thenne he bete me so sore that I wende to have deyed therof / and hathe arayed me as ye see. Syr, ye be the best 24 kyng of the worlde, & ye be lord of all this londe, wherfore I pray you, for god, that ye wyll do me right of these four sones of aymon, & of maugis that grete theef' / And whan charlemagn vnderstode these wordes, 28 he righted his hede vp & sayd / 'Pilgryme, is it true as thou sayst' / 'ye, syre,' sayd mawgis / 'Now tell me thy name,' sayd charlemagn / 'Syr,' sayd mawgis, 'my name is gaydoñ, & I am borne in bretayn, & I am 32 a grete man in my countrey / wherfore I requyre you, in

¹ et entre dedens ung dromon, F. orig. q. ii. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. ii. back.

³⁻³ Je vins par dessoulz montauban, F. orig. q. ii. back.

⁴ Fol. T. v. back. ⁵⁻⁵ so had, orig.

the worship of the holy sepulture¹ that I have soughte,¹
 that ye doo me ryght' / 'Pylgryme,' sayd Charlemagn,
 'I can not have noo ryght of them my selfe / for I
 4 promyse the! yf I had theym, all the worlde sholde
 not save theym, but that I sholde make them deye
 a shamfull dethe.' 'Syre,' sayd thenne mawgis / 'sith
 that ye can doo me no righte of theym, I besече all
 8 myghty god, that is in heven, that it playseth hym for
 to doo it' / 'Syre,' sayd the barons, 'this pylgryme
 semeth to be a goode man and a true / as I suppose /
 For it is well seen on hym / gyve to hym your almes
 12² yf it playse you' / And thenne the kyng commaunded
 that men sholde gyve hym³ xx. li. of money / and
 mawgis toke theym & put it in his hode / and he sayd
 in himself / 'ye have gyven to me of your owne good,
 16 but ye have doon like a fole / I shall reward you right
 dere for it or ever I departe fro you.' and whan he
 had the silver, he asked after some mete, for goddys
 sake / for sin yesterdaye he had not eten, as he sayd /
 20 'by my feyth,' sayd Charlemagn, 'thou shalte have
 4mete & drynke⁴ ynough.' And anone they brought to
 hym mete / and he set hym down,⁵ & toke & ete well of
 the beste.⁶ And the kyng sayd to hym, 'now ete fre,
 24 good pylgryme, For thou shalt be well served' / and
 mawgys ete styll, and answered never a worde, but be-
 held oonly the kyng in his visage / And the kyng sayd
 to hym, 'tell me, pylgryme, & hide no thyng fro me /
 28 why haste thou loked so sore vpon me!' 'syre,' sayd
 mawgis, 'I shall tell you it wyth ryght a good wyll /
 Wyte that I am a well traveylled man; but in noo
 place that ever I was / I saw never, nether crysten man
 32 nother sarrasyn, soo goodly a prynce / ne soo curteys /
 as ye be one / wherof of all the pardons that I have

Charlemagne
 deplores his help-
 lessness against
 the Sons, whom
 he would willingly
 slay,

and commands
 his barons to give
 alms to the
 pilgrim,

and food of the
 best.

Mawgis says he
 has never seen so
 goodly a prince as
 Charlemagne,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. q. ii. back. ² Fol. T. vi.

³ trente, F. orig. q. ii. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. q. ii.

⁵ sur ung eschaquier, F. orig. q. ii.

⁶ car Il en auoit mestier, F. orig. q. ii.

worne in my vyage makinge, I gyve you the halfe freely' / 'Certes, pylgryme,' sayd the kyng, 'and I take it gladly / And I thanke you moche therof.' And mawgis gaaf hym thenne,¹ for a wytnesse of the same,¹ 4 his palmers staff¹ for to kysse it.¹ Tlenne said the barons / 'certainly, syre, the pylgryme hath given you a fayr gifte; ye oughte to rewarde hym well for it' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgis, 'I aske none other rewarde for it / 8² but *that* ye wyll take my gyfte a worthe / and that I may reste me here a while / for I am very syke and wery'² / And thus as y^e kyng spake to mawgis, cam thenne Rowlande and Oliver, and all their folke, that 12 broughte Rycharde for a prysoner.

and gives him his staff to kiss.

Roland, Oliver, and all their folk, arrive, bringing Richard with them.

And whan Ogyer and Estorfawde, the sone of Oedon / and the duke Naymes, sawe that Rowlande wolde goo to the pavyllion of Charlemagne wyth 16 Rychard, They came to Rowland and sayd to hym / 'Syre Rowland, how canne you hate Rycharde soo sore / that ye wyll yelde hym to Charlemagne' / 'Lordes,' sayd Rowlande, 'what will ye that I shall doo wyth 20 him; te'l me and I shall doo it' / 'Syre,' sayd they, 'we wyll that ye delyver Rycharde, and ye shall saye that it was a nother prisoner.' 'Lordes,' sayd Rowland, 'yf I canne doo this, I shall doo it gladly' / All 24 thise wordes herde a yoman,⁴ that Incontynent spored his horse / and came to the kynges tente,⁵ and sayd to Charlemagn, 'Syre, I brynge you tydynges sore strange / we have fou[g]hte by⁶ the ryver syde of Balencon / 28 where there Reynawde, the sone of Aymon, hath kept his owne right well agenst rowlande your nevewe / and setteth not a strawe by hym. And Rowlande loste there more than he wanne.' Whan the emperoure 32 Charlemagne vnderstode that worde / he was abassed

The barons entreat Roland not to deliver up Richard to the Emperor.

He consents if it is possible. A yeoman overhears this conversation, and goes to Charlemagne and tells him that Richard has been taken prisoner.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. q. ii.

²⁻² car Je suis plus malade *qu'il* ne me fait mestier, F. orig. q. iii. back.

³ Fol. T. vi. back.

⁴ aymon, in text orig.

⁵ la ou Il vit le roy, F. orig. q. iii. back.

⁶ be, *orig.*

gretly; and after he sayd to the yoman, 'Telle me, my frende, how was yet of my nevene Rowland' / 'Syre,' sayd the yoman, 'he foughite¹ wyth the four sones of
4 Aymon, that deffended theymselve well. But Rowlande hathe broughte wyth hym prisoner one of the foure sones² of Aymon² / the whyche is the mooste hardy & the moost valiaunt of them all / in all poyntes.'

8 **C**harlemagne began thenne to lepe for Ioye, whan he vnderstode thise tydynges / and came oute of his tent, & behelde & sawe Rychard, that Rowlande³ brought. Whan Charlemagn sawe rycharde, he knew
12 hym well incontynente, & began to crie for grete ioye *that* he had / 'by my soule, newew, it is well seen that ye have be there, for elles Richarde sholde⁴ not have ben take' / 'Certes,'⁵ sayd Rowlande, 'well lied Ogier
16 to you / for if he had not be / y^e four sones of aimon were take as well as one' / and theme said the kyng to richard / 'Hoursone! by the feyth that I owe to
20 shall have of evylle & of tormentes ynough.' 'sire, sayd Richarde, 'I am in your prison. I fere me not to be hangd as long as reynawd, my broder, shall may light vpon bayarde / and that mawgis be a lyve, alarde
24 & guycharde, my righte dere bredern / for yf ye doo to me ony owtrage, no castell, ne towne, ne fortresse shall not kepe you; but that thei shall make you deye an evyll deth or two dayes be passed.' Whan charlemagn herde
28 richard speke so proudly, he was right an *angred* for it, & toke a staff with both his handes, & smote Richarde therwyth vpon the hede so harde that he made the blode renne oute of it to therthe / And whan richard
32 felt hymself thus wounded, he vaunced hymselfe / and toke the kyunge wyth both his armes by the waste, &

The Emperor with great joy comes out of his tent and sees Richard;

he swears to have him tortured, and then hung.

Richard boldly says he fears nothing so long as his brethren and Mawgis live.

Charlemagne smites Richard with a staff,

and they fight.

¹ au gue de balancon, F. orig. q. iii. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. iii. back.

³ son nepveu, F. orig. q. iii. back. ⁴ Fol. T. vii.

⁵ Sire, F. orig. q. iii.

wrastled togyder alonge whyle, so that thei fell both
doun, thone here & the other there. And Richarde
¹rose vp quyekly, & ¹wolde have renne vpon charlemagn,
but oger & salamon seased him & kept him therfro / 4
and after they sayd to charlemagn, 'Sir, ye have doon
overmoche amys for to bete a prisoner.' 'certes, my
lordes,' sayd richard, 'it is more dishonour to the kyng
for to smyte me / than it is to me for to defende my 8
body / but he is well wonte to doo suche owtrages / for
it is not the first that he hath doon, nor it shall not be
the last' / And whan mawgis sawe that charlemagn
had smyten richarde / he was sore an angred therfore / 12
that he had almoste layd vpon hym² wyth his palmers
staff; but he thought if he had doo soo, bothe Rycharde
& he shold have be deed. and whan charlemagn sawe
that richard spake so boldly, he said to hym, 'richard, 16
god confounde me yf ye scape me for all your³ wyked-
nes / for ye shall soone be hanged⁴ by the necke.'⁴
'sir,' sayd richard, 'speke more courtesli, yf it playse
you, for I shall see you soner be fleyn quyeke than 20
ye shall see me han^{ge} / nor ye shall not be so hardy to
doo so.'⁵ 'what somever ye prate / say, or crake'⁵ /
sayd charlemagn, 'ye shall not scape me, but ye shall be
hanged or nyghte; and wold god I helde as faste your 24
bredern, & mawgis,⁶ that theef,⁶ as I hold you now / for
they sholde be hanged wyth you to bere you company,
bycause ye sholde not be a ferde.' ¶ All thus as
richarde strove with charlemagn / he torned hymself & 28
sawe mawgis behynde him, that held hymself styll
lenyng vpon his staff; and he knewe hym well, wherof
he was well glad, for he wyste well he shold not deye
sith mawgis was there. And whan richard had seen 32
mawgis, he was sure of his liff, & sayd to charlemagn,

Ogier interferences between them, and rebukes the Emperor for his conduct.

Mawgis nearly attacks the Emperor with his staff when he sees Richard treated thus.

Charlemagne still threatens Richard with death,

and says he shall be hanged ere night, and wishes that the other Sons and Mawgis were also in his power.

Richard turns round and sees Mawgis, whom he at once recognises, and is very joyful.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. q. iii. ² le roy, F. orig. q. iii.

³ Fol. T. vii. back. ⁴⁻⁴ en brief, F. orig. q. iii.

⁵⁻⁵ Si ne meschapperez vous mye toutesfois, F. orig. q. iii.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig. q. iii.

The Right Plesant and Goodly Historie
of
The Foure Sonnes of Aymon.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XLV.

1885.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

No. 45

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART XI.

The Right Plesaunt and Goodly Historie
of the
Four Sonnes of Aymon.

ENGLISH FROM THE FRENCH BY
WILLIAM CANTON,
AND PRINTED BY HIM ABOUT 1489.

EDITED FROM
THE UNIQUE COPY, NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF EARL SPENCER,
with an Introduction,
BY
OCTAVIA RICHARDSON.

PART II.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXV.

Extra Series

XLV.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCEER PRESS, BUNGAY.

INTRODUCTION.

CAXTON'S "right pleasant and goodly historie of the Four Sons of Aymon" is englisht from the French prose romance "Les Quatre Filz Aymon," which is a rendering more or less free of an ancient *chanson de geste* bearing the same name, though more often entitled "Renaud de Montauban." The earliest extant text of the *chanson* is a *remaniment* of the end of the 12th century.¹

The conversion of the poem into prose was not accomplished before the close of the 14th century. None of the prose manuscripts are earlier than the 15th century. Of them the British Museum has three MSS., all in writing of the 15th century. In one,² a large vellum folio, about 1445 A.D., the story is illustrated by nine miniatures; in the borders of the first appear the arms of John Talbot, first Earl of Shrewsbury, and those of Henry VI. and his Queen Margaret of Anjou empaled. It is similar to the usual printed edition, from the third chapter of that edition to the end. Another manuscript, a vellum folio of the 15th century, is also a prose version, to which is prefixed a fragment of a metrical version of the story, the text of which closely resembles that published by Bekker in his Introduction to "Fierbras"; another metrical fragment is added at the conclusion of the prose tale, which contains the adventures of Maugis, how he became Pope under the name of Innocent, hears Charlemagne's confession, and is stifled by the Emperor in a cave near Naples.

¹ For the history of the *chanson de geste* see *Histoire Litteraire de la France*, vol. xxii, pp. 667-700; *Renaud de Montauban*, edited by H. V. Michelant Stuttgart, 1843; and M. Longnon's paper in *Romania*, for 1878. The general introduction to this series might also be examined together with M. Gaston Paris' *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 19, 139, 298.

² Cat. of Romances. Brit. Museum, J. H. Ward, pp. 619-622.

The third manuscript at the British Museum contains a much briefer text than that of the printed editions, and is imperfect at the end.

✓ The French prose rendering of this romance is much inferior to the poem in every sense, and cannot properly be deemed a direct reproduction of it, although it follows the thread of the narrative throughout, sometimes closely enough, at others wandering to a considerable distance; but even while following, it robs the original of half its beauties through its prosaic rendering. The valuable historical allusions are for the most part cast to the winds, the names abstracted, the circumstances altered, the speeches shortened or omitted, the sequence of the story being frequently unsettled.

The palm for superior dramatic treatment must also be given to the chanson's version of the chess-murder, on which the mincing of the prose version has a damaging effect. The toning down of the ferocity of the chanson destroys the prose relation completely as a picture of old time. The story also can ill afford the omission made in the prose of the curse with which Foulques of Morillon is first introduced—

“ En France ot i linage cui Dame Dex mal dont ;
Ce fu Grif d'Autefueille et son fil Guenelon,
Béranger et Hardré et Hervi de Lion,
Antiaumes li felon, Fouques de Morillon.”¹

The curse has an important bearing on the events which follow, and gives, in fact, a key to the venom with which Foulques is pursued throughout the story.

The prose loses much by its rejection of the first embassy of Charlemagne to Beuves d'Aigremont. The murder of Enguerran, which precedes that of the second ambassador, Lohier, the king's son, lays a far broader basis for the Emperor's revenge, on which the story is built, than the single murder of Lohier in the prose version.

In connection with this, it may be well to notice the omission of another striking passage from the prose, in which Charlemagne swears vengeance on the murderers of his son and nephew—

¹ *Renaiss de Montauban*, p. 39. ed. Michelant.

“ Il jure Dame Deu qui tot a à jugier,
 Qu'il ne s'en tornera por Mars ne por Fevrier,
 Tant Kara pris Renaut qu'il ne puet avoir irer ;
 As forches iert pendus, nus nel puet respitier.
 Richars sera detrais à keue de somier,
 Ki ocist Loois à l'espée d'acier
 Et Renaus. Bertelai au pesant eschekier,” p. 57.

The circumstance, which we know from history, of Charlemagne having had a son who died young, gives an interest to this passage, which should have pleaded for its preservation, and for that of several others which allude to the same murder. The exclusion of many such passages of historical interest is a matter of regret. One passage may be instanced in which mention is made of the monastic foundations of Gerard de Roussillon, to which pious works the name of Doon de Nanteuil is joined with that of his brother. Of them it says—

“ Il des confirent Karle lui et ses compaignons ;
 J'en estora saint Pere de Cluigni le baron
 Et puis la charité et vezelai selone,
 Saint Beneoit sor Loire, là où si moine sont,” p. 156.

Of the early printed editions of the French prose romance, which are numerous, the British Museum possesses four, two of Paris and two of Lyons. One alone of these editions is dated, that of Lyons, 1539. The general catalogue of the Museum gives as probable dates to the others, 1480, 1520, 1525 respectively. The edition said to be of Lyons, with the supposed date of 1480 attached to it, is a folio volume whose typography is singularly beautiful. The letters all stand out distinctly, the type is large, and the words are amply spaced. Ornamental capitals head the paragraphs throughout. Caxton's translation of *Les Quatre Fils Aymon*, which he undertook “at the desire of John Erle of Oxenforde,” seems to have been undoubtedly made from this edition, as in portions of the story where these various editions differ from each other, that of the 1480 edition is invariably adopted by Caxton. In his translation of this work, Caxton shows himself piously literal. Words and phrases, both foreign and unusual, he transferred bodily to his text; nothing ever deterred him, simply because it was French; he wandered along every winding of the sentences he was rendering, and brought

them over with all their sinuosities into the English. In consequence, his translation is perhaps one of the most literal that has ever been produced in the English language, and though to some extent stilted and even awkward, yet it is impossible not to admire his faithfulness to his original; and the very quaintness of those peculiarities of language sometimes adds a charm to his composition.

The few instances where Caxton has differed from the French will be seen by the collations which have occasionally been marked in foot-notes on the pages of this work.

As a picture of the language of the time, his "Four Sons of Aymon" is highly curious and interesting. He continues the use of double negatives—so common in Chaucer and other Early-English writers. That this was not merely an imitation from the French, is shown by Caxton making use of two where his original gives him warrant only for one. On p. 65, l. 24, "Charlemagne made Aymon to swere that he should *never gyue no* help to his children"; p. 18, l. 10, "for doubte of death shall *not leue nothyng* unsayd of hys message to the duke benes." On p. 255, l. 27, "All my lymmes shaken for angre, *nor* I can *not* stande upon my feet." In the French there is but one negative. Ed. 1480. Caxton frequently omits the pronominal subject of a verb in the clauses of a sentence, which succeed the leading one, so that often the drift of the narrative alone leaves the reader to decide the subject of the verb thus omitted. This practice with him is generally an imitation of his original. On p. 238, l. 24, "The freushemen had wounded hym wyth two speres well depe in to the flesshe and was taken for prysoner." The French is (Ed. 1480) "et lavoient naure de deux espees bien parfond en la cher et fut prins pour prisonnier."

Caxton uses many words in the plural which are now allowed only in the singular, this also is usually in obedience to his original. On p. 262, l. 29, "armed with his own *armures*"; on p. 235, l. 32, "But their *corages* were never the lesse therfore." Occasionally a word occurs in the singular where a plural is now used: on p. 182, l. 31, the troops are ordered to come, "well garnysshed of *vytaylle* for the space of vii. yeres." The Midland plural in *en* occurs frequently: on p. 3, l. 16, "virtues which *ben* digne"; p. 5, l. 2,

“chapytres whiche *speaken* of many faire matters”; p. 13, l. 27, “Bayard is yit a lyve in the forest of Arleyne as men *seyen*.” The Southern plural in *eth* also occurs: on p. 70, l. 26, “thise ben the folke of themperour Charlemayn that *goeth* to Arleyne.” Sometimes the plural form now used is found in the singular: on p. 75, l. 32, “Themperour Charlemayn of fraunce *lete* you wyte by us that ye sende to hym Guycharde.”

The possessive case of nouns in Caxton is made, as usual, by the addition of *s* or *es*: thus on p. 77, l. 19, “Charlemayn’s folke”; p. 13, l. 17, “for goddes sake”; though it is sometimes made in *is*, p. 25, l. 8, “Bayardis back.” On p. 283, l. 1, there is a singular example, “his face towarde the horse taylle.”

Caxton almost invariably uses *ye* for the nominative and *you* for the objective case of the pronoun. There is an exception on p. 172, l. 31, due possibly to the compositor setting the MS. ‘y’ = thou, as ‘you’:—“I wote not what *you* sayste *thou* arte more like a foole than a bysshop.” Also on p. 142, l. 7, “I praye the for the love that *you* haste to thy god, that *thou* gyve me trewes.”

Which is constantly used for persons, and so used is generally preceded by the definite article. *That* and *that that* are frequently used instead of *what*, whose occurrence is rare in comparison with these substitutes: on p. 70, l. 32, “I comme you nother thank nor grace of that *that* ye saye.” *This* (= pl. thise) is frequently used for *these*: on p. 184, l. 20, “I will departe the londe of Gasecoyn to *this* yonge knyghtes for theyr herytage.” *Other* is invariably used for *others*, and *self* for *selves*: on p. 98, l. 28, “Reynawde mounted upon Bayarde and the *other* also lighted upon theyr horses.” A very common use in Caxton—as in many other writers—is that of the past participle losing its final *n*, and assuming an infinitive form after an auxiliary verb. On p. 3, l. 12, “the clerkes haue had great knowledge by innumerable volumes of Lookes which haue *be* made”; p. 14, l. 3, “Iherusalem was *take* agayne of the Christen.” A great many old or peculiar forms of the past tenses and participles occur: on p. 137, l. 20, “*he here*”; p. 79, l. 11, “flancardes all to-brosten”; p. 176, l. 22, “Euery man *putted* hymself for to renne.” The word *conne*, to be able, is constantly used; and a similar use is

made of *may*, on p. 227, l. 16, "For wyte that yf I telled you not, ye sholde not *maye* knowe it." The form *mowe* of this verb sometimes occurs: on p. 167, l. 25, "ye shall *mowe* know the beste horse of your royame." Giving a future auxiliary to the verb *will* is curious. On p. 64, l. 21, "il vous rendra au roy" is translated, "he *shall wyll* yelde you to the kyng." A striking feature of Caxton's English is the number of reflective verbs with which it abounds. On p. 4, l. 11, "Whyche booke I haue endevoorde me to accomplyshe." P. 236, l. 18, "Yet shall I *selle me* full dere or I deye." An example may be given of verbs completed by prepositions: p. 6, l. 30, "and gaue them *of* havoyre so much, that they myghte well *make* war *with* agenst the king." Caxton has many substitutes for present participles, which reduces their use considerably, as on p. 70, l. 27, "These ben the folke of themperour *that goeth to* Ardeyn"; p. 74, l. 32, "sende a messenger to Reynawde *for to tell* hym that he yelde you Guycharde."

He makes use also of a great many particles needless in modern English, by the omission of many others in places where they are now deemed indispensable. A few characteristic sentences will illustrate his practice in this respect. On p. 154, l. 30, "ioye began to be grete in the castell *as* god had descended there"; p. 87, l. 10, "So he swere god"; p. 109, l. 3, "he was so very he myghte no more."

The adverb *very* had hardly come into use: it has many fore-runners, such as *full, sore, right*, etc.

Nother is constantly used for *neither*; *sith* and *syn* for the later *since*. *Ne* is sometimes used for *nor*, in second alternatives, as on p. 317, l. 31, "I saw neuer nether crysten man, nother sarrasyn, soo goodly a prynce, *ne* soo curteys as ye be one."

An-angered is an intensitive by which Caxton translates the French 'enragé.' *But yf* is another old expression continued by him for *unless*: on p. 101, l. 9, "it sholde hurte hym sore *but yf* he myghte take theym."

The use of *doo* with the infinitive—'doo make' = cannot be made,—is another continuation by Caxton of an older usage, and is a great contrast to modern English: on p. 18, l. 28, "I shall *doo*

hange"; p. 7, l. 21, "And dyd *doo* make the castell of Montawban." Sometimes the verb *make* is substituted for *do*, in its sense of 'perform,' as on p. 84, l. 4, "the grete fayttes of armes that he *made* there."

Caxton makes use largely of articles where they are now omitted, and omits them frequently in places where they are always used, as on p. 6, l. 5, "it bare *a* great dommage to the realme"; p. 8, l. 32, "Mawgys broughte suche *a* succourses."

The order of words in sentences is frequently changed in Caxton's text, as in earlier English: on p. 87, l. 18, Reynawde "wente to chasse in woodes & in ryvers as often as *hym plajsed*" = it pleased him; on p. 117, l. 23, "euerybody had *of it* pyte."

The original edition of Caxton's "Four Sons of Aymon" has neither title-page, printer's name, place, nor date. It is a folio volume, and the fortunate possessor of the only copy known is Earl Spencer. The celebrated founder of the Althorp Library, Earl George, acquired it by purchase in the year 1822. Of its previous history we can discover nothing. The date assigned to it by Blades, in his life of Caxton, is 1489, and has been adopted from the circumstance, that the works issued from Caxton's fount No. 6 range from 1489 to 1493. Although Earl Spencer's copy is unique, it is not perfect. It lacks Caxton's prologue and colophon. To its owner I return the warm thanks of the Society and myself for generously sending his treasure to the British Museum for so many months for our use. The General Catalogue of the British Museum mistakingly represents that institution as the possessor of two leaves of another copy of Caxton's "Four Sons of Aymon." Unfortunately, however, there is really only one leaf, for the second is apparently an extract from some work of devotion or popular theology, and though resembling in both type and style the leaf to which it is attached by the compiler of the Catalogue, has no connection with it. The genuine leaf is the beginning of chapter xxv, and is similar to the corresponding leaf in Copland's edition. Even the vignette which heads the leaf is the same, and is a repetition from the block used for chapter ix. Four leaves of the same edition were discovered by Mr. Blades to be in the possession of Mr. Green of Bishops Stortford

in 1882. They are portions of signature E, and do not therefore supply the defects of the Althorp copy.

A second edition, as we learn from the colophon of the third edition, was "Imprinted at London by Wynken de Worde, the viii. daye of Maye, and the yere of our lorde. M.cccc.iii." One leaf only of this edition is known to be extant. It was discovered in 1882 in a volume of early-printed fragments by Mr. Henry Bradshaw, and is now in the Cambridge University Library.

Copland's third edition was issued on 6th May 1554; the colophon describes it as printed for Thomas Petit, not for Robert Toye, as asserted by the Catalogue of the Harleian Library. It was no doubt printed for both these and other booksellers, as the 'trade' editions of Chaucer were. The prologue to this edition is undoubtedly a literal reprint of Caxton's original preface, and it thus supplies one of the chief defects of the Althorpe copy.¹ Although no edition later than Copland's is now known, entries in the Stationers' Registers point to the conclusion that the romance was twice reprinted before the close of the century. Licences to reissue it were granted in March 1582 (Arber's *Transcript*, ii. 408), and in February 1598-9 (*ibid.* iii. 137). On 22nd Feb. 1598-9 a printer was licensed to print "the last part of the ffowre sons of Aymon" (*ibid.* iii. 139).²

The success of the story of the Sons of Aymon gave birth to many and various editions. The name and adventures of Renaud were a passport to success of which poets availed themselves, and on all sides there are testimonies to the universal fame of Bayard. His namesake, "sans peur et sans reproche," is said when besieged in Mezières, recalling the feats of the noble steed through the identity of their names, to have answered the summons to surrender, sent him by Prince Henry of Nassau, with the proud reply, "A Bayard of France will never yield to a cart-stallion of Germany." The noble Bayard carried the Sons of Aymon everywhere, and all lands were eager to possess them and offer them a home. Horse and riders were depicted upon the walls of castles and convents. "On

¹ For the bibliography of the romance, see two letters by Mr. W. Blades, and one by Mr. S. L. Lee, *Athenæum*, Aug. 19, 26, and Sept. 9, 1882.

² In Arber's *Transcript*, iv. 459, is an assignment of 'The four sons of Aymon' by Wm. Stansby, and his widow Elizabeth after his death, to Master Bishop, on 4 March, 1639.

the walls," says Roquefort, "of the nunnery of St. Reynold in Cologne, is a painting of four Paladins, mounted upon Bayard, and Reynold is distinguished among them by an aureole, the sign of saintship."¹

It is well known that the mediæval romance of France became the property of cultivated Europe. From its source was supplied the fuel of the worldly imagination, and Renaud taking a prominent part was translated universally, and imitated in all fashions. In the 13th century Maerland could speak of having read the history of the Four Sons of Aymon in his native Flemish, "Hiemskindre, dat ic las."² This translation is said to be due to Nicholas Vesboschten, and it became the source of a German translation of the 13th century.³

Through what channel the story of the Sons of Aymon found passage to Iceland is uncertain. It is still a question whether the Icelandic versions originated from French manuscripts brought into Norway, which were read by the Scandinavian reciters, or whether they were learnt in France and brought over orally. The numerous manuscript copies testify to its popularity, the oldest of which may be referred to the middle of the 13th century. Here the story has acquired a new name. The Saga of Earl Magus adopts altogether a strange character, it knows nothing at all of the sojourn of the Sons of Aymon in Mountauban, mingles the story with that of Gerard, in whom some recognize the hero of Vienne, brings Charlemagne to live at Worms, and makes the chateau of Aymon Buslaraborg in Germany, giving that of Strasburg to Magus. The Saga was published for popular reading at Reikavick in 1858.

In Italy Renaud shone as the hero of every style of poetry, whether chivalrous, amorous, or comic. The "Quatre Fils d'Aymon" formed one of the volumes of the 13th century "Reali di Francia." Renaud is one of Pulci's heroes; in Boiardo the Emperor Gradasse is obliged to raise 150,000 men to conquer Bayard; and Renaud, side by side with Roland, divides the honours of the famous

¹ Poésie Française dans les xijth et xiiith Siècles, p. 141. Roquefort.

² Reiffenberg, Philippe Mouskes, vol. ii, ccxiv.

³ Hist. poet. de Charl., G. Paris, p. 139.

“Orlando Innamorata” of Ariosto. Tasso’s “Rinaldo” is based immediately on the French romance of the Four Sons.

Outside the world of letters altogether, the story has left its trace in the popular traditions of certain portions of France, Belgium, and Germany, chiefly in the neighbourhood of the Ardennes. The name of the Four Sons of Aymon still clings tenaciously to the ruins of the rock-built Chateau of Ambleve, as does that of Bayard to a chateau at Dhuy. The whole North of France is associated with the story, and the neighing of Bayard is still believed to be distinctly heard through the valleys of the Ardennes. In the beginning of the 18th century the presses of Troyes found full employment in its reproduction. To this day Chateau-Renaud, surrounded by the waters of the Meuse, is still believed to be the neighbourhood of the retreat of Maugis and Bayard, and the Castle of Renout’s Steen, in the Province of Liege, is freely abandoned to them in the surrounding universe of popular tradition. In Brittany, a rude dramatization of the original Epic witnesses to the popularity of the story at the present day. During the celebration of the *Kermesse*, a Belgium popular feast, which is said to date back to the year 891, an enormous horse bearing four knights, and decorated with their escutcheons, paraded the streets of Louvain in 1490, behind the corps of the University. “As late as the year 1825,” says Reiffenberg, “Bayard repaired to Mechlin, to crown a feast framed on the oldest models which was held there; and at Dortmund, in Westphalia, Renaud is still held in heroic and saintly esteem.” M. Léon Gautier also calls our attention to the pictures decorating the chimneys of the peasant in France, where, by the side of rude representations of the battle of Austerlitz and the Wandering Jew, is seen that of the Four Sons of Aymon.

Proofs of the popularity of the English translation of the romance are not far to seek. We know not only (as we have shown) that reprints of it were numerous, but that the reprints were widely read and appreciated during the later years of the 16th century. The book is one of those which Cox, the Quixotic old captain of Coventry, who took prominent part in the Kenilworth festivities of 1575, had at his fingers’ end. Francis Meres, in the *Palladis*

Tamias, 1598 (p. 268*b*), mentions the work among others as “no lesse hurtfull to youth then the workes of Machiavell to age.” Wherever, in fact, in Elizabethan literature romances are under discussion, the “Four Sons of Aymon” is brought into court, and receives some sort of tribute to its popularity. The least equivocal of its commendations is the mention in “Henslowe’s Diary” of the fact that the story was dramatized, and arrangements made for its production on the stage at the time that Shakespeare and his companions were proving the potentialities of the English drama. The entries in the theatrical manager’s diary runs as follows:—

“Layd owt for the componye, the 10 of desembr 1602
unto Robarte Shawe for a boocke of the 4 sonnes of
Amon the some of xl.”¹

“Memorandum that I Robert Shaa have receated of Mr. Phillip Henslowe the some of forty shellinges upon a booke called the fower sonnes of Aymon, which booke, if it be not played by the Company of the Fortune nor noe other company by my leaue, I doe then bynd my selfe by theis presentes to repay the sayd some of forty shillinges upon the delivery of my booke att Christmas next, which shall be in the yeare of our Lord God 1603 and in the xlvjth yeare of the Raigne of the Queene.
per me ROBT. SHAA.”²

Proof is extant of the production of the play by a company of English actors at Amsterdam, but nothing is known of Robert Shaw or Shaa beyond the facts that he was an actor at Philip Henslowe’s theatre, received many small loans from his employer, and occasionally assisted him in the management (Henslowe’s *Diary*, pp. 96 et seq.). It does not appear that the play was published.

Thomas Heywood, in his *Apology for Actors*, 1612 (repr. in Somers’ Tracts (1810), iii. 574—600), the Third Booke, argues that, among the benefits of plays, they “haue beene the discouerers of many notorious murders, long concealed from the eyes of the world” (sign. G, bk. ; Somers, iii. 598). And after citing an instance of this ‘at Lin in Norfolke,’ and another of marauding Spaniards at ‘a place called Perin [*i. e.* Penryn] in Cornwall,’ being frightened into flight by a battle on the stage, he goes on with the following

¹ p. 230.² p. 233.

case of the play of the *Four Sons of Aymon* and Renaud's murder (sign. G 2; Somers, iii. 599).

“Another of the like wonder happened at *Amsterdam* in *Holland*: A company of our *English* Comedians (well knowne) ^{A strange accident happening at a play.} traouelling those Countreyes, as they were before the Burghers, and other the chiefe inhabitants, acting the last part of the 4 sons of *Aymon*, towards the last act of the history, where penitent *Renaldo*, like a common labourer, liued in disguise, vowing, as his last pennance, to labour & carry burdens to the structure of a goodly Church there to be erected, whose diligence the labourers enuying, since, by reason of his stature and strength, hee did vsually perfect more worke in a day, then a dozen of the best, (hee working for his conscience, they for their luces,) wherevpon, by reason his industry had so much disparaged their liuing, conspired amongst themselues to kill him, waiting some opportunity to finde him asleepe, which they might easily doe, since the sorest labourers are the soundest sleepers, and industry is the best preparatiue to rest. Haning spy'd their opportunity, they droue a naile into his temples, of which wound immediately he dyed.

“As the Actors handled this, the audience might on a sodaine vnderstand an out-cry and loud shriek in a remote gallery; and pressing about the place, they might perceiue a woman of great grauity, strangely amazed, who, with a distracted & troubled braine, oft sighed out these words: ‘Oh, my husband, my husband!’ The play without further interruption proceeded; the woman was to her owne house conducted, without any apparent suspition, euery one coniecturing as their fancies led them. In this agony shee some few daies languished; and on a time, as certaine of her well-disposed neighbours came to comfort her, one amongst the rest being Churchwarden, to him the Sexton posts, to tell him of a strange thing happening him in the ripping vp of a graue: ‘See here (quoth he) what I haue found!’ and shewes them a faire skull, with a great nayle pierst quite through the braine-pan; ‘but we cannot coniecture to whom it should belong, nor how long it hath laine in the earth, the graue being confused, and the flesh consumed.’ At the report of this accident, the woman, out of the trouble of her afflicted conscience, discovered a former murder. For 12 years ago, by driuing that nayle into that skull, being the head of her husband, she had trecherously slaine him. This being publickly confest, she was arraigned, condemned, adiudged, and burned.

“But I draw my subject to greater length then I purposed: these, therefore, out of other infinites, I haue collected both for their familiarnesse and latenesse of memory.”

SKETCH OF THE STORY.

THE story opens with an account of the Court of Charlemagne at Paris, where nearly all the powerful Barons of the land are assembled, and among them the Duke Aymon of Dordon, with his four sons, Renaud, Alard, Guichard, and Richard. Duke Beuves of Aigremont, brother to Aymon, is absent from the court, and the Emperor is so enraged by this insult, that he vows to besiege Aigremont, unless Beuves promises to serve him next summer with a powerful army. Duke Naymes advises Charlemagne to send a messenger to Aigremont, and after some discussion, Lohier, the eldest son of the Emperor, is sent there with a hundred knights.¹ He delivers his message insolently to Duke Beuves, who answers him with equal warmth, and a fight ensues, in which Lohier is slain by Duke Beuves; his body is conveyed to Charlemagne by the few survivors of his company and buried at Saint-Germain. The Emperor vows to revenge the death of his son by besieging Aigremont.

Meanwhile the Sons of Aymon have been created knights by Charlemagne, and Renaud has been presented with the wonderful horse Bayard.

When Aymon hears of the death of Lohier, he departs with his sons in haste to Dordon for fear of the Emperor's wrath.² Great preparations are made at Paris for the campaign against Duke Beuves; while the army are on their way to Aigremont, a messenger informs them that Beuves is at Troyes, and is besieging that city with the assistance of his brothers, Doon of Nantueil and Gerard of

¹ In the original chanson Enguerrand, the nephew of the Emperor, is first sent to Aigremont, he is slain, and Lohier then undertakes the message and shares the same fate. A knight called Enguerrard of Peronne is killed at Troyes by Beuves in this prose version.

² In the chanson Aymon is banished by Charlemagne before the death of Lohier, and is received again into favour when the preparations for the attack on Aigremont are being carried out; his sons are then created knights.

Roussillon ;¹ the inhabitants therefore implore the help of Charlemagne.

The fact of Beuves having summoned his brother Gerard of Roussillon to Aigremont, in order to march upon Troyes, has enlightened us as to the situation of Aigremont. M. Paris says :

“Le château Roussillon devait être plus éloigné de Troyes que l'autre, puisque c'est le duc Girart qui va trouver son frère pour marcher d'Aigremont sur Troyes. . . . La situation d'un village voisin de Chablis en Bourgoyne, encore aujourd'hui nommé Aigremont, semble répondre aux indices que nous offre le texte des deux (romances) de Girart et des quatre fils Aimon.”

The French army arrives at Troyes, where a battle takes place, and lasts until sundown ; the armies then cease fighting, neither side having gained the victory. Next day Beuves and his chief Barons appear barefoot before the Emperor, and crave his pardon ; which having been granted to them, peace is proclaimed.

Beuves promises to serve the Emperor at Paris on the feast of St. John next summer. On the way thither he is treacherously slain by Earl Guenes, who has obtained Charlemagne's permission to murder him.

At the next assembly of the Barons at Paris, Aymon and his four sons appear again.

Renaud plays chess with Bertholais, the nephew of Charlemagne, in the palace ; they quarrel over the game, and Renaud, seizing the chess-board, deals Bertholais a blow with it which causes his death.² A great tumult thereupon arises in the palace, and the sons escape with much difficulty to Dordon, where they are received by their mother. They are soon obliged to quit Dordon for fear of the

¹ This includes Aymon in the chanson, but no mention is made of his being present at the siege of Troyes in the prose version ; he is supposed to be still at Dordon until after the death of Beuves.

² This incident is differently related in the chanson. Renaud and Bertholais quarrel during their game of chess, and Bertholais strikes Renaud, who complains of this insult to the Emperor. Charlemagne takes his nephew's part, which causes Renaud to reply wrathfully to the Emperor, accusing him of the murder of his uncle, Duke Beuves. Charlemagne then deals Renaud a blow ; the latter retires, meets Bertholais, and slays him with the chess-board.

This scene seems to be an imitation of the death of Baldwin a son of Ogier, who is killed by Charlot (Charlemagne's son) with a chess-board, in the chanson of “Ogier le Danois.”

Emperor's wrath and take refuge in the forest of Ardennes, where they build a castle, called Mountaynford (Montessor), and conceal themselves for several years. M. Paris says :

“ Il existe encore au-dessus de Sedan et de Mezières un village nommé Château-Renaud situé sur le penchant d'une haute montagne enfermée par les eaux de la Meuse vers le midi l'est et l'ouest. On distingue aujourd'hui difficilement sur la roche quelques ruines d'une forteresse, mais ces ruines avaient, il y a deux ans, plus de caractère, quand Malherbe notre grand poète écrivait au savant antiquaire Peïrese. ‘ La principauté de Madame la princesse de Conti s'appelle Chasteau-Renaud, à deux lieues de Sedan et autant ruiné, ou l'on voit encore la tour de Maugis et l'étable de Bayard.’ ”

Charlemagne, as soon as he hears of the Sons' retreat, collects an army and besieges the castle ;¹ the old Duke Aymon fights against his children, as he has sworn to defend the Emperor's cause. Terms of peace are offered to Renaud if he will deliver up his brother Guichard, which he indignantly refuses to accept. The three gates of the castle are then surrounded by the Frenchmen, but this does not prevent the Sons from hunting daily in the forest. After the siege has lasted 14 months, Hernyer of Seveyne² promises to take Renaud and his brother's prisoners, if Charlemagne will give him the castle as a reward. He then approaches the castle and begs Renaud to grant him shelter as an enemy of the Emperor's ; Renaud believes his story, and allows him to sleep in the castle ; when all have retired to rest, Hernyer lets down the drawbridge and signals to his men to enter. Fortunately for the Sons, Alard's horse wakes Renaud, who rouses his brothers, and they fight their enemies valiantly ; Charlemagne sets a portion of the castle on fire ; in the tumult Hernyer and his followers are slain by Renaud, who afterwards escapes on Bayard with his brothers into the Forest of Ardennes. They are pursued for some distance, but their enemies cannot overtake them. Duke Naymes advises Charlemagne to give up the campaign and disband his army. This being done the Emperor returns to Paris.

¹ No mention is made here of the Espans pass, supposed to be inhabited by fairies. In the chanson Charlemagne warns his men against the dangers they may encounter in this ravine.

² Hernyer of Lausanne ; he is promised the town of Laon as well as the castle. The Espans pass is again alluded to when the Sons are chased from Montfort in the chanson.

Aymon on his way to Dordon, meets his Sons encamping in the Forest, when Renaud begs him to grant them peace, but Aymon only reproaches him for his conduct; they fight, and lose heavily on both sides, and the Sons with but 14 of their men are only saved by crossing a small river.

Aymon departs for Paris, taking with him the body of Esmenroi, a favourite knight of Charlemagne's, who has been slain by Renaud. He gives the Emperor a full account of the battle, but he is not believed to have fought against his sons, and is received coldly by Charlemagne; he therefore leaves Paris and arrives at Dordon, where the Duchess blames him severely for his conduct towards his children.

Renaud and his brothers wander in the forest until they are nearly famished, and all their horses die, except Bayard, who thrives on roots; at last they determine to go to Dordon and entreat their mother to receive them. They are not recognised in the streets of the city as they pass through, and even their mother does not know who they are at first; but she discovers Renaud by a scar on his face, and welcomes them joyfully. They sit down to supper,¹ and while they are relating their adventures, Aymon enters the castle. He is furious with his Sons at first, but soon afterwards repents of his conduct towards them, and allows the Duchess to give them food and money; nevertheless, he will not break his promise to Charlemagne, so he retires into the forest while his Sons inhabit the palace.

Next day they depart from Dordon, and on their way meet Maug's returning from the Court of Charlemagne, where he has managed to steal a quantity of gold, which he divides with Renaud and joins their company.

Their journey towards Bordeaux, and from the description of the journey it is possible to determine the situation of Dordon, which is, as M. Paris says:

“La ville actuelle de Dourdon effectivement située dans cette partie de la Brie Française nommée le Hurepois, et d'où l'on doit passer dans le Gâtinais puis dans l'Orléanais, pour se rendre en Aquitaine.”

¹ In the chanson the four brothers enter the palace and sit down to supper before their mother recognises them.

On arriving at Bordeaux they offer their services to King John of Gascony, who is at war with the Saracen King Bege (Borgons); John willingly accepts their aid, and Renaud conducts the war so successfully, that Bege is taken prisoner and peace proclaimed. Renaud is then allowed to build the Castle of Montauban, and is soon afterwards married to King John's sister Clare; the wedding being solemnised with great ceremony at Montauban.

The Emperor on his way to Galicia passes Bordeaux, he looks over the river Garonne, and marvels at the beauty and strength of the castle newly built there. On discovering that it belongs to Renaud, he sends Ogier to demand the four sons from John; when this request is refused, Charlemagne wishes to besiege the castle, but his Barons demur, as they are tired of war. At this juncture Roland¹ arrives, and undertakes a campaign against the Saracens² on his uncle Charlemagne's behalf. He besieges Cologne, takes the Saracen chief prisoner, and returns to the Emperor.

All Roland now requires is a good horse; for this reason Charlemagne proclaims a horse-race at Paris, and the best steed is to be bought for Roland. Renaud determines to race Bayard, so he and Maugis set out for their journey to Paris. Maugis, in order that they may not be recognised, changes Bayard from a black into a white horse, and makes Renaud look like a boy of fifteen.

Four miles outside Paris they meet Ogier and Naymes, whom the Emperor has sent to guard the way; the Barons, however, do not recognise them, and allow them to proceed.³ They arrive at Paris, and lodge in a shoemaker's house; but from some hints dropped by Renaud, the man discovers their secret, and vows to inform the Emperor, whereupon he is instantly slain by Renaud, who escapes with Maugis from the house. Bayard has his feet tied by Maugis, in order that he may appear to be lame until after the other horses have started, when he is unbound, and wins the race

¹ When Roland arrives at the Emperor's palace, he tells Charlemagne, "I am called Rowland of Bretagne, and I am the sone of your suster and of the duke Myllon." These words accord with the history which makes Roland governor "des marches de Bretagne."

² Saxons in the chanson.

³ This incident is omitted in the chanson.

easily. Renaud seizes Charlemagne's crown, which is exhibited as a prize, and telling the Emperor that he may look elsewhere for a horse for Roland, rides hastily from the city, and swimming over the river Seine, joins Maugis. They arrive at Melun, where they meet the other three Sons, and ride through Orleans to Montauban.¹

The Emperor, determined to be revenged upon Renaud,² assembles a mighty army at Paris, during Eastertide, and marches towards the Castle of Montauban,³ where they encamp. Roland and Oliver pitch their tent at Balencon, near the river, and go hawking one day, thinking they may leave the camp in safety, but Renaud discovers their absence, goes forth against Charlemagne's army, which he surprises, and finally, having captured the golden dragon from Roland's tent, returns to his castle with much plunder.⁴

The Emperor, in despair of ever taking the castle, despatches a messenger⁵ to ask King John to deliver up to him the four Sons; after a long discussion with his Barons⁶ John consents to betray them, which he does by sending them unarmed to the plain of Vaucouleurs, where the Barons of Charlemagne await to take them prisoners. The Sons discover the treachery of King John when they

¹ In the chanson Renaud joins Maugis at Champeaux, they reach Monthery, and then journey through Poitiers and Orleans to Montauban.

² It is on the Emperor's return from an expedition against the Saxons, where he has killed the chief Guitechim, that he collects an army to besiege Montauban in the chanson. This incident is omitted in the prose version.

³ In the chanson Charlemagne marches first to Montbendel, which he surrounds with his immense army: he admires the strength of the castle, which, he says, is finer than Roche Guyon, Paris, or Orleans; "that is nothing," says Ogier, "Montauban is a hundred times stronger." Charlemagne subdues the Castle of Montbendel, he hopes to conquer all Gascony in the same manner without bloodshed. The siege is then directed towards Montauban.

⁴ This incident is not mentioned in the chanson.

⁵ The name of Girard the Spaniard, who advises Charlemagne to demand the surrender of the Sons, and of Gainemark, who undertakes the message, are mentioned in the chanson. When the messenger arrives, King John attempts to strike him, threatening to have him hung; his barons interfere. John then consents to consider Charlemagne's proposals, and keeps the messenger three days for his answer. This incident is very differently related in the prose version, where John receives the herald courteously, and tells him, "ye must tary here a seven night" for his answer.

⁶ Among the Barons who argue with John for the deliverance of the Sons to Charlemagne is the Lord of Montbendel, who in speech mentions the surrender of his castle, referring to that portion of the siege by Charlemagne which is omitted in the prose version.

arrive at Vaucouleurs, but they nevertheless fight bravely against an enormous host of adversaries, and finally gain a respite through the kindness of Ogier. Meanwhile Maugis, who is at Montauban, hears from King John's secretary of the plot against his cousins, and sets off for Vaucouleurs, where he arrives in time to rescue them. King John on receiving the news of their rescue, flies to an abbey in the wood of the Serpent, where he seeks refuge for a time, but is discovered by Roland, who takes him prisoner. John, in terror of his life, contrives to send a messenger to Renaud, who is now at Montauban, beseeching him to come to his assistance. Renaud and his brothers ride forth to meet Roland, and a battle ensues, in which Renaud is victorious, and rescues King John, but Richard remains a prisoner in the hands of Roland. Maugis, in order to save Richard from the cruelty of Charlemagne, departs for the Emperor's tent disguised as a poor pilgrim, and arrives before Roland has returned with Richard. Maugis completely deceives the Emperor, who orders food to be given to him as a holy man.¹ Roland then enters the tent, and presents Richard to Charlemagne, who declares that he shall be hung without delay. Richard recognises Maugis, and is therefore certain of escape from the hands of the Emperor. Maugis then leaves the tent, and retires hastily to Montauban; he orders Renaud and his two brothers to arm themselves, and with an army to proceed to the tent of Charlemagne.

Renaud willingly consents, and proceeds to Monfaucon with his folk, where they encamp in a wood near the gallows which are being prepared for Richard, but unfortunately they fall asleep from extreme weariness. Meanwhile Charlemagne commands the execution of Richard, and orders several of his Barons to perform the deed, but they all refuse on various pretexts, until Ripus of Riplemound undertakes the duty. Richard is led before the gallows, and believing that there is no chance of escape for him, begs for time in which to pray, and confesses to a priest. Just as he has finished his confession, and is prepared for death, his brothers (who have been

¹ When Maugis appears before the Emperor, and craves for food, he asks Charlemagne to put it in his mouth, as a dream has led him to believe that thereby he will be saved from all his sufferings. Charlemagne consents to this; no mention is made of the palmer's staff in the chanson.

awakened by the sagacious Bayard) appear, and a fight ensues, in which Ripus is killed by Renaud, who gives his armour to Richard ; the latter, with four hundred men, presents himself before Ogier, who is rejoiced over the victory of the Sons. Richard afterwards meets Charlemagne, they fight, Renaud and his men join in the battle, and after a prolonged skirmish, the Sons enter the Emperor's pavilion with three thousand men, and bear away the golden eagle, which Renaud conveys to Montauban. Maugis is left alone with the Emperor's army, and fights bravely for his liberty, but is overpowered by Oliver, who presents him to Charlemagne, just as the latter is complaining of his subjects' infidelity to him in allowing the Sons of Aymon to escape. The Emperor vows to slay Maugis without delay. The Sons meanwhile have returned to Montauban, where they discover the absence of their cousin. Renaud, in great anxiety for his fate, mounts Bayard, and goes to the river Baleneon ; he meets there two pages from the Emperor's camp, who tell him that Maugis is in Charlemagne's hands. Renaud vows to rescue him next day.

The Emperor commands his Barons to prepare a gallows on which to hang Maugis ; but Naymes begs him to delay the execution until the following day, and Charlemagne consents to this, on condition that Maugis will promise not to escape. The twelve peers give their pledges for his safety, and prepare to watch over him all night ; but Maugis, who has been put in irons, nevertheless contrives to charm all his guardians to sleep, and then departs, taking with him the Emperor's sword, and those of Roland and Oliver, with much treasure to Montauban. On the way thither he meets Renaud at the river-side of Baleneon, and the cousins journey together to the castle, where much feasting and rejoicing takes place. Richard shows Maugis the golden eagle which they have captured, and it is set up on the high tower of the castle. Naymes and Ogier are sent to Montauban by Charlemagne to demand the surrender of his sword, in return for which a truce shall be granted them for two years. Renaud consents to these conditions, and, moreover, goes back with the Barons to the Emperor's camp. He is conducted before Charlemagne, who vows he shall be slain, but a compromise is effected, in

which Renaud and Roland are doomed to fight a duel on the morrow. At Monfaucon the battle begins, but the final contest between the heroes is prevented by the appearance of a miraculous cloud, and Roland goes with Renaud to Montauban as his prisoner.

Charlemagne besieges the castle, but in the night Maugis, through the medium of a charm, carries the Emperor asleep to Montauban; he then leaves the castle, and goes over the river Dordogne into a hermitage, where he lives poorly, doing penance for his sins. The Sons discover the presence of the Emperor in Montauban still asleep, they search for Maugis, but are bitterly afflicted when they hear he has left them. Charlemagne will not consent to peace unless Maugis is given up to him, but Renaud allows him to return to his tent unharmed with the Barons. Charlemagne, vowing he will starve the Sons into submission, has the castle surrounded by his men, and although Renaud several times repulses the enemy, he can gain no advantage over them. Great famine prevails in Montauban, and all the horses, except Bayard, are slain for food. Renaud, as a last resource, goes to the tent of Duke Aymon and implores him to give his starving children food. Aymon finally consents, and sends provisions into the castle by means of the engines used in the assaults on Montauban, which he fills with food instead of stones. The Emperor discovers that Aymon has been befriending his children, and dismisses him from his army for this offence.

The Sons are again reduced to starvation, but are finally saved by an old man in the castle, who shows Renaud a secret passage from Montauban into the wood of the Serpent. All the people abandon the castle and go to the monastery, where Renaud's friend Bernard dwells; and after obtaining food and wine from him they depart for Arden (or Dordon, in the French prose version), where they are joyfully received by the people of the town.¹

Charlemagne quickly discovers the flight of the Sons from Montauban and the secret passage; he immediately orders his army to besiege Arden (Dordon). As they hasten towards the castle, Renaud

¹ In the chanson the Sons are said to go to Tremogne, not Arden or Dordon. This Tremogne is the ancient name for Dortmund in Westphalia, which position would account for the fact that Charlemagne passes Liege to go to Paris; from Dordon this would be impossible.

perceives their approach, and at once orders a number of his knights to arm and accompany him in his attack upon the Emperor. Renaud and his army are obliged, however, to retreat after a fierce skirmish with the enemy; and having captured Duke Richard of Normandy, they take him prisoner into the castle. The Peers all implore Charlemagne to make peace with the Sons for fear they should slay Duke Richard; but the Emperor is still persistent in his refusal. King John at this time dies in the castle. Maugis within his hermitage has a dream of the distress of his kinsmen, and he sets forth towards Arden. On the way he encounters two merchants, who have been robbed by thieves in the wood; Maugis slays the robbers and gives back the plunder to the merchants, and he hears from them of the condition of the Sons, and hastens towards their castle, which he enters in the guise of a pilgrim, and is served with food as a stranger. Renaud towards night recognises him, and great joy is made over his arrival. Next day he departs for the Holy Land. Renaud causes a gallows to be erected on the walls of his castle, in order to hang Duke Richard; seeing this Charlemagne is persuaded by his Barons to send Duke Naymes to the castle with terms of peace; the conditions being that Renaud should give up Bayard to the Emperor and depart to the Holy Land in poor array, begging his bread as a pilgrim, while his brothers keep all his lands during his absence. Renaud accepts these conditions, and after clothing himself poorly and commending his wife and children to the protection of Duke Richard, departs from his castle. Charlemagne takes possession of Bayard, and on his way to Paris stays at Liege, where he orders the horse to be thrown into the river Meuse, with a millstone round his neck. This command is carried out, but Bayard contrives to break the stone, and swimming to land, gallops away unharmed into the forest of Ardennes.

Renaud arrives at Constantinople and lodges with a holy woman, who tells him there is another pilgrim in the house lying sick; Renaud goes to see the pilgrim, and finds his cousin Maugis. They meet joyfully, and after feasting together set forth for Jerusalem. They find a large army surrounding the Holy City; on inquiring the cause of this, they are told that the Admiral of Persia has taken the

city by treason, and it is being besieged by the Christians. Renaud and Maugis pass through the Christian encampment, and set up a small tent for themselves. Next morning the enemy advances towards their tent, which in the confusion of battle is overthrown. Renaud¹ mounts a wall near by, and with a large fork or tent pole defends the way, and assisted by Maugis, slays numbers of the enemy. Earl Rames² approaches the two pilgrims, and on learning their history welcomes them with delight; he provides them with rich clothing and armour, giving the command of his army to Renaud. King Thomas,³ who is a prisoner within Jerusalem, wonders why so much feasting and rejoicing is taking place amidst his army. Next day the Admiral renews his attack on the Christians, the Saracen King Margary is slain by Renaud, and after a fierce battle the Saracens are discomfited, and fly towards the city pursued by Earl Rames. Renaud contrives by placing a large beam under the portcullis to keep open the gate into Jerusalem, and the Christian army enters and takes possession of the city. The Admiral vows to slay King Thomas unless Renaud will grant him terms of peace, and allow of his safe conduct back to Persia; to these conditions Renaud consents, and peace is concluded amidst general rejoicings. King Thomas prepares a ship, which he fits out for Renaud and Maugis, in order that they may return to France. After eight months at sea they arrive at Palermo.⁴ King Simon of that town receives them gladly, and tells them how his lands are daily wasted by the Persian Admiral. Renaud and Maugis vow to assist him against his enemy. They encounter the Admiral and rout his forces, compelling him to retire utterly discomfited. Soon after this Renaud and Maugis take leave of King Simon and journey by sea to Rome,

¹ In the chanson Renaud mounts a mule and pursues the enemy, while Maugis showers stones upon the Saracens.

² Geffroi, orig.

³ No mention is made of King Thomas in the chanson; Geffroi of Nazareth is in command of the Christian army, and is subsequently made King of Jerusalem at the conclusion of the war. When Renaud enters Jerusalem he goes straight to the Holy Sepulchre, where he and Maugis offer their devotions.

⁴ In the chanson this incident of Renaud's encounter with the Persian Admiral is entirely omitted. They take ship at Acre and go straight to Brindisi, whence Renaud journeys to France, and arrives at Tremogne (Dortmund) in Westphalia. Maugis retires to his hermitage.

where they confess to the Pope, and having received his benediction depart for France. They are joyfully received at Arden by the three brothers, and from them Renaud hears of the death of his wife Clarisse. He takes his two children and Maugis to Montalban, where the people of that town welcome them gladly. Maugis then takes leave of Renaud and departs for his hermitage, where thirteen years afterwards he dies. Renaud prepares his two sons for their journey to Paris to be presented to Charlemagne, and sends them to the Court with an escort of five hundred knights.¹ They arrive there, and are graciously received by Charlemagne, who confers on them the honour of knighthood, and raises them to the post of carvers at his table. This rouses the jealousy of Constant and Rohart, the two sons of Foulques, whose father was slain at Vaucouleurs by Renaud, and they determine to insult Aymonet and Yon, in order to raise a quarrel. One day Charlemagne presents Yon with a valuable knife; after receiving this gift Yon chances to push Constant with his elbow as he passes him; and Constant, seizing this opportunity to quarrel, calls him the son of a traitor, and challenges him to fight.² The Emperor endeavours to prevent the combat, and orders Constant to ask pardon of Yon; but the sons of Renaud both implore him to grant them the satisfaction of a duel. Charlemagne consents, and orders the fight to take place on the Isle of our Lady, within Paris. He also sends word to Renaud to appear at Court, in order to witness the battle between his sons and the sons of Foulques. Renaud arrives at Paris on the appointed day with his three brothers and a large company of knights. Griffon of Auteville lies in ambush near the battle-field ready to help the sons of Foulques in case of their discomfiture. This plot is revealed to Renaud, who commands Richard to take his men to the Isle to protect his sons in case of treachery on the part of Griffon.

The Emperor and his Peers witness the battle, which lasts until all the four champions are grievously wounded; Aymonet finally

¹ In the chanson Renaud accompanies his sons to Paris.

² This incident is differently related in the chanson. Charlemagne calls Aymonet and Yon to bring him wine; during the meal Constant and Rohart throw down Yon and break the Emperor's cup; in the uproar the sons of Foulques challenge the sons of Renaud.

compels Constant to yield himself prisoner, and presents him to the Emperor. Yon slays Rohart, and his brother Constant is hung by command of the Emperor.

After Aymonet and Yon are healed of their wounds, they take leave of Charlemagne, and return with their father to Montauban. Renaud divides his possessions between his two children, and clothed as a pilgrim departs from Montauban never to return again. After wandering in the woods for many days he arrives at Cologne, where the Church of St. Peter is being built. He works there as a labourer, and through his wonderful strength gains the approbation of the chief mason. The other labourers are so jealous of him that they vow to kill him, and one day as Renaud is asleep under an archway they slay him and throw his body into the river Rhine in a sack, and answer the questions of the master mason as to Renaud's disappearance with jests. A wonderful miracle is then manifested: the fish of the river support the body of Renaud upon the surface of the water, torches appear round the body, and angels are heard singing in the night. The Archbishop with his clergy come to take the body out of the water, and on opening the sack they discover the corpse of the lost workman of St. Peter's Church. The labourers then confess their crime and pray for mercy: the Archbishop contents himself with dismissing them from his service unpunished.

The corpse is laid in a coffin to be buried, but it rises slowly and is borne by invisible hands out of the church into a cart, which passes out of Cologne and carries the body to a little town called Croine,¹ followed by the Archbishop and his clergy. There it is laid in a small chapel, and the Archbishop uncovers the face of Renaud, in order that he may be recognised by the people collected there.

A pilgrim appears before the brothers of Renaud, and tells them of the miracles at Cologne. They set forth for that city, and then go to Croine, where they discover the corpse of their brother; they reveal themselves to the Archbishop, who has the body of Renaud richly entombed at Cologne, where, as we are told, it rests unto this day—the memory of Renaud the Martyr being yearly commemorated by a service held in his honour.

¹ Tremogne in the chanson.

'syre, where shall I be hanged, tell me?' / 'certes,' sayd
 charlemagn, 'at the gibet of mounifawcon; & there
 shall your bredern may se you, & mawgys your cosyn' /
 4 'Sire, it is no reyson that suche a man as I am sholde
 be hanged / but make peas wyth vs, & ye shall doo
 wysly / & yf ye doo not soo, ye shall soro repent it, as
 I trowe.' And whan mawgis had herde all that he
 8 wold here, he made no lenger taryeng / but he went
 out of the pavyllion & said no worde / and whan he
 was out of it, he began to walke so grete a pas that no
 horse myght not have folowed hym, and passed thugh
 12 the wood of the serpent, & dyd somoeche that he cam
 to mowntalban, where he fonde Reynaud & his folke,
 that wayted for hym / And whan reynawd saw him
 com wythout richard, he was full sory, so that he fell
 16 down in a swoune / and alard & guychard toke him vp
 & sayd to hym, 'Fair broder, ye doo as a childe / ye
 ought not to make suche sorow' / 'holde your peas,
 traytours,' sayd reynawd / 'for ye have lost the beste
 20 knyght of the ³worlde,² For I see Mawgys come alone,
 wherfore I beleve that Richard is deed / for if he were
 a lyve, Mawgis wold have brought him wyth hym,
 For he never myssed of no thyng that he toke in
 24 hand' / And whan alard & guychard vnderstode these
 wordes / thei toke therof so grete a sorow that they
 fell both down in a swoune to therth / And whan they
 were com agen to theymsel, they made so grete sorowe
 28 that it was pyte for to see; and this hangyng, cam there
 Mawgis. And whan he saw the grete sorowe that his
 cosyn made, he was wrothe for it, And sayd to them,

Mawgis then
leaves the pa-
villion, and goes
swiftly towards
Montalban.

Reynawd swoons
when he sees
Mawgis without
his brother,

fearing he is slain.

The brethren all
weep for sorrow.

¹ Sire Regnault beau frere. F. orig. q. iv.

²⁻² dieu vous confonde car par vostre defaulte a este perdu
le meilleur chevalier du monde, car se vous leussiez suiuy;
il neust mye este prins mais vous ny ousastes mye aler pour
crainte. Et aussi vous ne vouliez point que Je y alasse pour le
secourir car Je y eusse bien este a temps. Or lavons nous perdu
ne Jamais ne le verrois, F. orig. q. iv.

³ word, *orig.* ⁴ Fol. T. viii.

Mawgis is angry when he sees them, and enquires why they make such sorrow,

‘What eyleth you, fayr cosins, *that* ye make so evyll chere’ / ‘Alas, mawgis,’ sayd Reynawde / ‘what is doon of our broder richard?’ ‘Cosin,’ sayd mawgis, ‘richard is yet in prison ; but charlemagne hath sayd that he shall 4 make hym to be hanged at the gybet of mountfawcon / And hath sayd that he shall not kepe hym longe alyve, leest ye & I shold rescue hym. And here is xx.¹ li of money that charlemagn hath gyve me in hys pavylyon, 8 and made me have bothe mete & drinke at my plaisur.² Now shall it be seen yf ye love Rychard, and yf ye be a goode knyghte or not ; for ye must socoure & delyver hym by force of armes, or elles he shall deye, for all 12 the world shal not kepe hym otherwyse therfro.’

and tells them that they must rescue Richard by force of arms.

Reynawde is comforted by this news, and no longer fears for his brother's safety.

Reynawd was well recomforted whan he herd ³maugis speke ;³ & after he sayd / ‘sith that it is so that Richard is yet alive, yf I had but myself, my 16 brethern & mawgis, yet sholde I kepe richard fro deth, mawgre the power of charlemagne’ / and the^{me} mawgys, wythout ony long abidyng, toke of his cope & his hode, and toke an herbe & ete it, and anone the 20 swellyng went fro him⁴ / and whan he was armed, he presented hymself to reynawd⁵ / and incontynent al his bredern put theymself in armes / And anone they toke their waye towarde mountfawcon / And 24 whan they were come to a bowe shotte nyghe from it, Reynawde sayd to his folke / ‘Lordes, yf ever ⁶ye loved me / thynke for to doo now so moeche that my brother rycharde may be rescued from this shamfull 28 deth. For I promyse you that I shall brynge hym wyth me, or elles I and my brethern & Mawgys shall deye wyth hym’⁷ / ‘Syre,’ sayd his men, ‘doubte not of vs / for we shall doo our devoyre’ / ‘brother,’ sayd 32

The Sons and Mawgis arm themselves, and depart for Montfaucon ;

¹ trente, F. orig. q. iv. ² au pres de luy, F. orig. q. iv.

³⁻³ ses paroles, F. orig. q. iv. back.

⁴ et puis se arma, F. orig. q. iv. back.

⁵ moult honorablement, F. orig. q. iv. ⁶ Fol. T. viii. back.

⁷ et Ils sont tieulx comme vous scaues, F. orig. q. iv. back.

thenne Alarde, 'lete vs lighte here down / and lete vs
hide ourself wythin that busshe that we se yonder; for
yf we were seen, the frenshemen myght kylle our
4 broder rycharde or ever they wolde come.' 'Broder,'
sayd Reynawde / 'ye speke wysely' / and thenne they
lighted down a fote, and put theymseif in a bushement
wythin a wode¹ ²that was nyghe Mountfawcon,² Rey-
8 nard at the right side of it / Alard at the lefte side,
and wyth hym Guycharde & Mawgys /

they put them-
selves in ambush
in a wood near
Monfaucion.

Well, ye have herde how thei were sent to the
playn of valcolours, and the payne that Rey-
12 nard & his bredern suffred; and thenne howe they
wente & socoured kynge yon of Gascoyn, that had
betrayed them / And how Reynawde dyde fyghte
wyth Rowland, wherof he was sore trayveyllid / and
16 had ben all redy thre dayes wythoute slepe, and ther-
fore ye ought not be merveyllid yf Reynard, his
bredern, & mawgis fell a slepe / and, to saye the
trouth, assone as Reynard, his bredern, & mawgis
20 were embusshed vnder the sapyn trees, thei fell in to so
harde a slepe that thei forgate richard / Now god, for
his pite / have pite vpon him, ²and kepe hym² / For
otherwyse he muste deye /

The brethren and
Mawgis fall asleep
in the wood from
weariness.

24 **N**ow shall we telle you of Charlemagne, that was
in his pavyllion. he called to hym the duke
Naymes & rycharde of normandy, & sayd to theym,
'Lordes, what counseyll gyve you me? ye knowe
28 that rycharde the sone of aymon is of grete power /
I fere me *that* reynard shal com to socour him whan I
shall sende him for to be hangid, & therefore I must
sende³ ⁴company for to withstande reynawde, his bre-
32 dern, & Mawgis.' And thus as the kyng and the duke
Naymes spake togyder, he lokid before hym & saw

The Emperor
calls Naymes and
Richard of Nor-
mandy, and asks
their counsel in
regard to the son
of Aymon.

¹ de sappin, F. orig. q. iv. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. iv. back.

³ ung tieul homme de ma part, F. orig. q. v.

⁴ Fol. V. i.

He calls Berenger
of Valois,

Berenger of valoys / and called hym, & sayd to hym /
‘Berenger, ye are of my men, For ye hold of me
scotland & wales / ye oughte to come serve me in
Fraunce wyth all your pouer every yere ones whan 4
I have nede. I shall now quyte you & relesse vnto
you all the servyse that ye owe me, to you & to your
eyres for evermore, soo that ye wyll take¹ Richard, the
sone of Aymon, ²and see that he be hanged & stranged 8
at Mountfawcon.² And yf Reynawde com there for to
rescue hym / I praye you that ye wyll take in hande
my quarell.’ ‘Sire,’ sayd Berenger, ‘I see well now
that ye love me but a lityll / whan ye sende me to doo 12

Berenger answers
that he cannot do
so shameful and
dishonourable an
action.

suche a dede. it were to me a grete shame yf I dyd
it; for no thyng that is to my disworshippe, I wyll
not doo wyth my good wyll / and also ye ought
not to conseylle me to it, nor suffre me to doo so. 16
Yet have I lever to serve you, as mi dute is for to doo,
than that I shold doo the same that ye wolde put me
to.’ And whan Charlemain sawe that Berenger wold

The Emperour
then calls Guy-
dellon,

not doo it / he called to hym therle Guydellon, & sayd 20
to hym, ‘Guydellon, ye be my man, & holdeth Bavire
of me; and ye ought to serve me at ony tyme that I
call you, with thre³ thousande men / yf ye wyll goo
hange Richard, ²the sone of aymon / I shall make you 24
free, & ²I shall gyve you y^e cyte of mascon’ / ‘I wyll
not doo it,’ sayd therle Guydellon; ‘but I telle you for
certeyn that Richard shall have noo harme if I may
helpe hym fro it to my power.’ Thenne sayd Charle- 28
magn, ‘goo oute of my sighte / for ye be no good
man’ / And thenne he sayd to rychard, ‘by god, yet
shall ye be hanged in dispite of theym’ / Thenne called
Charlemagne Oger the dane, & sayd to hym, ‘Ogier, ye 32
be my man. it is shewed vnto me that ye dyd ⁴the

whom he promises
to reward if he
will hang the son
of Aymon.

Earl Guydellon
refuses to harm
Richard.

¹ aillez pendre richart, F. orig. q. v.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. v. back. ³ deux, F. orig. q. v.

⁴ Fol. V. i. back.

other daye treyson agenste me in the playn of Val-
 colours, for love of Reynawde / Now shall it be seen now
 yf it is true or not / Yf ye wyll goo hange Richarde, I
 4 shall gyve you the cyte of Lion. And I shall holde
 you quyte of all the servyse that ye owe me, & your
 eyres also, for evermore.' 'By the feith that I owe to
 you, sire, I shall not doo it, for ye wote how Richarde
 8 is my cosin germayn; and I telle you, that who soever
 shall hange Rycharde ¹the sone of Aymon, ¹I defy hym,
 and I shall helpe Reynawde wyth all my power' /
 'Go fro me,' sayd charlemagn, 'goodys curse have ye /
 12 nevertheles, by my berde, yet shall he be hanged' /
 And whan he had sayd so / he called to hym the
 bysshop Turpyn, & sayd to hym, 'Ye bysshop, I shall
 make you pope ¹of rome ¹yf ye wyll hange Rychard.'
 16 'syre,' sayd the bysshop Turpyn / 'What saye ye /
 ye knowe well that I am a preest / and ye wyll that I
 shold hange folke / yf I dyd so, I shold lese my masse,
 & be regulet / and also ye knowe well that Richarde
 20 is my cosin / wolde ye that I sholde *commytte* treyson
 vpon my kynsmen / certes, it were agenst reyson' /
 'Soo helpe you god,' sayd Charlemagn, ²'ye leve it
 neyther for kynred nor for masse, but as a cowarde;
 24 ye leve it only for fere that your crowne sholde be
 bete.'²

Charlemagne calls on Ozier to prove himself his faithful subject by hanging Richard.

Ozier declares that his near kinship to the Sons prevents his obeying this command.

The Emperor addresses Bishop Turpin, to whom he promises the Pontificate if he will do this deed. Turpin says that as a priest he cannot hang men.

Thenne called Charlemagn, Salamon of breten, &
 said to hym, 'Salamon, ye knowe well that ye
 28 be my man, & that ye holde breten of me / I shall
 gyve you y^e duchie of Ansom, yf ye wyll hange
 Richarde, ¹the sone of Aymon.'¹ 'Syr,' answerde Sala-
 mon / 'yf it playse you to *commaunde* me ony other
 32 thyng, I wyll be redy to doo it wyth a good wyll, but
 this I wyll not doo / And I telle you for certeyn, that

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. q. v. back.

²⁻² vous le laissez plus pource quil est vostre parent que pour dieu ne pour vostre messe, F. orig. q. v. back.

rycharde shall have noo harme, yf I maye' / 'Salamon,'
 sayd the kyng / 'ye be a traytour, sith that ye wyll
 not doo my commaundement.' And after this he
 sayd, 'Rycharde, I wyll that ye ¹know well that ye ⁴
 shall be hanged in dyspyte of all thy kynsmen' / 'Sir,'
 sayd Richard / 'peraventure it shall be otherwyse than
 ye wene.' and thenne Charlemagn tourned hymself
 towarde Rowlande, and sayd to hym / 'Fayr nevewe, ⁸
 goo & see that he be hanged, I praye you / for it
 is well reyson that ye doo thoffyee, sith that all the
 frenshemen have faylled me / & also ye have taken
 hym / wherfore ye must nedes hange hym; and I ¹²
 shall gyve you Coleyn vpon the ryn, & soo many
 other countreys that ye shall have ynoughe.' 'Syr,'
 answerde Rowlande, 'yf I dyde this, I shold be taken
 for a traytour / For I have answered Richarde a fore ¹⁶
 that I toke hym, that he shold have noo harme of
 his body; and yf ye make hym deye, no man shall
 never truste me vpon my feyth / Wherfore I praye the
 xii peres of Fraunce, that none of theym wyll take the ²⁰
 charge vpon hym for to see hym hanged / for yf he
 were hanged / I sholde be dyffamed / And I promyse
 you, that who shall hange Richarde, I shall goo to
 Reynawde / and shall put myself in hys pryson / and ²⁴
 yf he wyll pardonne me his broders deth, I shall
 helpe hym vndre my othe agenste all men wyth thre
 thousande fyghtyng men, well arrayed on horsbacke' /
 'Nevewe,' sayd Charlemagne, ²'the devyll spede you / ²⁸
 ye ben all false vnto me.'²

Charlemagne
 turns towards
 Roland, and tells
 him to see that
 the traitor is
 hung.

Roland also
 refuses because of
 his promise to
 Richard.

The Emperor
 rises in great
 wrath, and ad-
 dresses his barons,

And whan Charlemagn sawe that he myght not
 bringe his wyll aboute ³for to hange Rycharde,³
 he was soo wrothe ⁴that he shoke for angre,⁴ and rose ³²
 vpon his fete, & sayd / 'Lordes, ye knowe well that I

¹ Fol. V. ii.

²⁻² de dieu soyes vous maudit, F. orig. q. vi.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. q. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ quil ne scauoit que faire, F. orig. q. vi.

am the sone of kyng Pepyn, & of the queene Bethe. to whom he relates the story of his life,
 my fader was norished in Fraunce, and I fled in
 to Spayn to Alaffre vpon the see; and there I dyd
 4 many merveilles of armes *that* I was made knyght,
 & dyde *conquere* salienne, my love, that forsake XV.
 kynges bering crowne for my sake; and she cam with
 me in to¹ Fraunce, ²and thenne I was crowned kyng and how he was crowned king of Fraunce,
 8 ³accordynge to the right of my patrymonye³ / and
 thenne I dyde wed the sayd lady galiene wyth right
 grete ioye, & wende to have had my royame in peas /
 but the same day that I was crowned, the xii peres of
 12 Fraunce purposed to have made me deye at cristmasse
 nexte folowyng / but our lord sent me an angell / and
 made hym to telle me that I shold goo hide myselfe /
 the whiche I dyde so, & I durste not saye agenste it /
 16 nor I wyst not where I sholde hide me / but god wold
 that I sholde fynde Bason, a grete theef / that brought
 me in to a pytte; and this hangyng, men conspired my
 deth / but Bason⁴ shewed me all togyder, & thorughe
 20 his ayde I toke myn ennyes; and I punysshed theym
 afterwarde at my wylle; and so shall I do by you / yf
 there be ony that wyll doo contrary to my wyll.
 And I am delibered to enquire eche of you by this
 24 maner, for to see who shall be false or true to me.
 Whan Charlemagn had sayd this, he torned towarde
 the sone of Oedon, & sayd to hym / 'Escouff, com
 forthe! I have brought you to grete honour, & we
 28 have norysshed you full derely. ye knowe that ye
 holde Langres of me; yet shall I doo to you moche
 more good than I have doon, for I shall gyve to you
 therldomes of moun^tferrau^t & of elermou^t, so that
 32 ye will goo hang that hoursoñ rychard' / 'Sir,' sayd
 escouff, 'ye wote well that moreoedon holdeth all the

and says he shall judge of their fidelity by their obelience in this matter.

He then commands Escouff to come forth,

and offers him great lands if he will do his will.

¹ la doulee france, F. orig. q. vi. back. ² Fol. V. ii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. q. vi. back.

⁴ Bazyn, in text orig.

lond that ye speke of, and I had never no¹ thing therof / but I am felaw wyth Rowland in armes; and whan I shall be lord of that londe my father holdeth in his hande, I shall fulfyll your commaundement'² / 4
 'By saynt Denys of Fraunce, ye must goo see that he be hanged,' sayd charlemain, ³' & I shall make you lord of moo londes.'³ 'Sir,' sayd estorfawde / 'is it erneste that ye speke?' 'ye,' sayd Charlemagn. 'By 8
 my hede, syre,' sayd Estorfawde / 'Ye wolde not be wyth me for to see Rycharde hange, for halfe ⁴of your royaume' / Whan the kyng herde that he was thus reprevd / he toke a staff, & caste it after Estorfawde⁵ / 12
 but Estorfawd sterte from his place, and ⁶the staff brake in peces agenste a post⁶ / And whan the xii. peres sawe that / they wente all out of the pavylion of Charlemagn. And whan that charlemagn returned 16
 hym / and sawe that none of all the xii peres wolde abyde there wyth hym, Thenne he sayd to the duke Naymes, 'where be my xii peres goon?' 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'they ben all goon oute of your 20
 pavylion / and not wythout a cause, for it becometh not to suche a ³noble³ kyng as ye be, for to smyte his barons / for ye shold be sore blamed.'

Thenne whan Charlemagn sawe this, he called to 24
 hym Rychard of montrolonde,⁷ & sayd to hym / 'Com forthe, Rycharde of montrolonde⁷ / here what I shall tell you. ye know well that ye be one of theym that I love best in this worlde, but ye must doo 28
 one thyng at my request / It is that ye wil goo hange Richard, the sone of Aymon, at the gybet of mountfaweon' / Thenne Rychard of montrolonde answerde,

¹ ne, *in text.* ² et vostre volente, F. orig. q. vi.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. q. vi. ⁴ F^{ol.} V. iii.

⁵ pour le frapper, F. orig. q. vi.

⁶⁻⁶ le baston ala frapper au rubant si grant coup que le baston en ala en deux pieces, F. orig. q. vi.

⁷ de rolant, F, orig. q. vi.

Esconf reproves
the Emperor,

who flings a staff
at him; it breaks
against a post.

The XII. peers
leave the pavilion
in disgust at the
Emperor's
conduct.

Charlemagne tries
to induce Richard
of Montrolonde to
do the deed,

‘ Sir, I shall doo so wyth a good wyll / for I am your man, & soo I oughte not to refuse your commaundement / but, by my soule, syre emperour / yf ye wyll
 4 that I goo hange Richard, ye shall come wyth me with a thousand knyghtes well armed / and I shall hange hym where soever it playse you / And yf Reynawd & his bredern com there to rescue / I shall ieoparde
 8 my owne body for to save yours. Now see yf ye wyll do this or no, for none otherwyse wyll I not goo there one fote.’ ‘ Goo from me, gloton,’ sayd Charlemagn / ‘ goddys curse have thou’ /

but he answers that he will consent if the Emperor will accompany him with a thousand knights.

12 **T**he kynge thenne called to hym the duke Naymes, and sayd to hym, ‘ What counseyll ye gyve you’ / ‘ Syre,’ sayd the duke Naymes, ‘ goode / yf ye wyll beleve me. ¹Syre, ye wote that Reynawde, his brethern,
 16 and Mawgis, are of the best knyghtes of Fraunce / as every man knoweth well / this werre hath lasted ryght longe, For it is wel xvi. yeres that it began fyrste / and many a noble knyghte hath be slayn for the same /
 20 yf it playse you, ye shall sende worde ²to Reynawde,² to Alarde, Guyehard, & Mawgis, that they wyll becom your men / and ye shall deliver agen vnto theym their brother Rychard ²alyve,² and that ye wyll doo make
 24 reynawde & alarde of the xii. peres of Fraunce. And whan Reynawd & his bredern shall see that ye have doon to them soo grete worship, they shall serve you wyth good herte, and so that ye shall coñ them grete
 28 thanke for it / and I ensure you ye shall be the more dred & more redoubted for cause of them. and yf ye have ones the four bredern & Mawgis their cosin ³to your frendes³ / there shall be no prynee in all crysten-
 32 dome so hardy that dare move werre agenst you / and I promyse you, sire, that the more ye kepe this werre agenste theym / the more shall ye lose therby / and,

Duke Naymes counsels the Emperor to send word to the Sons and Mawgis that he will release Richard if they will become his subjects again.

¹ Fol. V. iii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. vii.

³⁻³ tous ensemble, F. orig. q. vii.

moreover, they be all of our house by theyr fader
 Aymon / this knowe ye well / and therfore I can not
 nate them by noo wise' / 'Naymes,' sayd charlemagne,
 'I wyll not doo so / for they all have doon amys 4
 agenst¹ me, and so shall I doo hange Rycharde, bi the
 feyth of my body' / 'Syr,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'ye
 shall not doo so, & god wil, For he is of grete lynage,
 & of our lynage / for we sholde never maye suffre it 8
 nor endure, and ye also sholde be blamed full sore for
 it. But & ye wyll make hym deye, I shall gyve you
 better counseyll' / 'Telle me how,' sayd Charlemagn /
 'and I shall doo it / yf it semeth me good' / 'Syr,' sayd 12
 the duke Naymes, 'sith it playse you that Rycharde
 shall deye, lete hym be caste in to a depe prison vnder
 the erthe, and make hym to be kepte surely ²there in
 that he scape not awaye² / and commaunde ³that noo 16
 mete at all be broughte to hym / and so shall he deye for
 hungre. And ye shall not be blamed yf ye doo soo' /
 'Naymes,' sayd Charlemagne / 'ye doo iape wyth me /
 I knowe it well / whan ye doo telle me this / Ye knowe 20
 well that Maugys is to grete a nygremancer / For I
 shold never maye keje Rycharde in pryson, but that
 mawgys wolde have hym oute thorughe his crafte / and
 therfore I wyll not doo as ye saye' / Thenne came 24
 Ogyer the dane / and sayd to the duke Naymes, 'Ye
 make to longe a sermon; lete the kyngde doo wyth it as
 it playseth hym; For the more that ye praye him, and
 the worse shall he doo / but he shall make peas whan 28
 he see that he canne none otherwyse doo / But this
 daye shall be seen who loveth Rycharde'⁴ / And whan
 Ogyer had sayd this / he wente oute of the pavylion,
 and Escouff wyth hym, and Rychard of Normandy, the 32
 byssshop Turpyu, and Guydellon of Bayyre / and made

Charlemagne will
 not listen to this
 advice.

Naymes then
 proposes that
 Richard should
 be cast into
 prison, and there
 left to starve.

Ogyer comes to
 Naymes, and
 tells him it is
 useless to hold
 further parley on
 the matter;

¹ aienst, *in text*. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back.

³ Fol. V. iv.

⁴ et combien *que son lignaige soit huy tourne dune part et se*
 Il y a nul qui luy face mal, je les deffie de moy, F. orig. q. vii. bk.

their folke to be armed. And whan they were armed,
 they were well xii thousande men. And thenne ogier
 beganne to crie wyth a hie voys / ¹ Now shall it be
 4 seen who shall be so hardy for to lede Rycharde ² the
 sone of Aymon² to hangynge / For suche shall brynge
 hym that never shall come agayn / but he be hedles /
 and oger wente into the pavyllion where Rychard was / he enters the
pavyllion where
Richard is seated,
bound hand and
foot.
 8 that was bounde bothe handes & fete, and was blinde-
 felde. And whan Ogier sawe rycharde that was thus
 arrayed, he had of hym grete pyte; soo wente he to
 hym to have delivered hym / but he advysed hymselfe /
 12 & sayd that he shold not doo it, but he wolde tary for
 to see an ende of it, what the kyng shold doo therof.
 And whan Rychard herde Ogyer speke, he called to
 hym, & sayd in the presence of the duke Naymes, and of
 16 Rycharde of normandy, of Guydellon ³ of bavyre,³ and
 of the bysshop Turpyn / and of Rowland, that thenne
 happed to come there / ⁴ Fayr lordes, I knowe well that Richard thanks
the lords which
surround him for
their endeavours
on his behalf,
 yf it were at your playsur ye wolde lete me go quyte;
 20 and all ynoughe ye have travaylled yourselfe for me,
 wherof I thanke you right moche; but sith that I muste
 nedes be broughte to the galohous / It is better that I, and says he must
die.
 poure, vnhappy, deye alone / than that ye sholde have
 24 ony harme for my sake; wherfore loke that ye lose not
 the good grace of Charlemagne / and I praye you that
 ye wyll goo vnto hym, & tell hym that he doo his wyll
 vpon me, for I have lever deye shortly / than to lyve
 28 longe in sorowe.' Whan Ogier sawe Richard speke soo,
 he was so sory for it that he felle almost down to the Ogier swoons
when he hears
Richard speak
thus,
 grounde for grete sorow in a swoune,⁵ and sayd to
 Rychard in angre, 'What saist thou, fole destestable,
 32 Wylte thou be hanged? for yf we sayd the same that
 thou sayst to Charlemagn / all the golde of the worlde

¹ Damps roy. F. orig. q. vii. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back.

³⁻³ omitted. F. orig. q. vii. back. ⁴ Fol. V. iv. back.

⁵ et quant Il fut revenu Il dist a Richart, F. orig. q. vii. back.

shold not save the, but that thou sholdest soone be
 hanged ¹bi the necke.¹ ‘I care not,’ sayd Rychard,
 ‘hap as it hap wyll.’ And thenne he tourned hymself
 toward Rowland, & sayd to hym / ‘I pardonne you, ⁴
¹sire¹ Rowlande, here & afore god, the feith that ye have
 promised me / and that ye gaaff me whan ye toke me
 afore balanon’ / And whan Ogyer herd this he wexed
 almost mad for grete angre, and sayd to Rowlande, ⁸
 ‘Syr, beleve not Richarde, for he speketh as a man
 that is vexed in his spyrites, and not wythout a grete
 cause / but kepe to hym the feyth that ye have pro-
 mysed hym, for it shall be your ¹grete¹ worship yf ye ¹²
 doo so’ / ‘Ogier,’ sayd Rowlande, ‘doubt not / I shall
 kepe to Rycharde all that I have promysed hym, &
 more.’ Whan Richarde herd that worde, he called to
 him oger, & sayd / ‘Fayr cosin, for god, kepe your ¹⁶
 peas / for I have seen here mawgis ryghtnow / and I
 wote well he hath not forgotten me / For by the feyth
 that I owe to you, suche shall lede me to the gibet that
 shall soone lose his hede, and many other moo wyth ²⁰
 hym.’ ²‘Cosin,’ sayd Ogyer, ‘is it trouth that ye saye
 that ye have seen Mawgis here’ / ‘Ye,’ sayd Richard,
 ‘withoute ony fawte.’ Thenne sayd Ogyer, ‘blessed be
 the good lorde of this tydynges / now have I noo doubte ²⁴
 of Rycharde / sith that my cosin knoweth of it.’ And
 thenne all the xii peres of Fraunce lighted a fote / and
 cam to Charlemagn & sayd to hym / ‘Sir, we ben all
 your men sworn to you. All that we have sayd & ²⁸
 doon / we dyde it for to see whether we myghte have
 deliverde our cosin³ ⁴from deth by your good wyll⁴ / but
 sith that it playseth not to you that he be saved, & that
 ye wyll that he be hanged, we wyll not speke no more ³²
 agenst it / by cause that ye angre yourselfe to sore /

and begs Roland
 to keep faith with
 him.

Richard tells
 Ogier how he has
 seen Mawgis here.

The xii peers
 submit to the
 decree of Charle-
 magne against
 Richard.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. q. vii. back. ² Fol. V. v.

³ richart, F. orig. q. viii.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. q. viii.

Now sende Rycharde to be hanged by whom ye wyll /
for he shall not be letted of vs therfro' /

4 **T**henne sayd Charlemayn, 'by my feith now ye
speke well & wisly, and now I pardonne you
all'¹ / And thenne charlemagn called to hym Rypus of
Riplemonde, & sayd to him, 'Rypus, yf ye wyll doo
8 so moche for me that ye wyll goo hange Rychard / I
shall make the lord of grete londes / and ye shall be
my chambreleyn all your liff' / 'Syr,' sayd Rypus, 'I
am all redy to fulfille your commaundement / for
Reynawde slewe my vnele be side balencon.' 'Ye
12 speke now well,' sayd ogyer / 'ye shall be a cowarde
but yf ye avenge yourself at this tyme' / And whan
Ripus vnderstode Ogyer speke thus, he thoughte hym-
selfe the more sure for it, And ²right humble &
16 courtesly² he kneled down tofore themperour Charle-
magne, and kyssed his fete, & after he sayd to him /
'Syre, I am ordeyned for to doo you servyse & your
commaundement. Yf it playse you, ye shall make me
20 sure that whan I shall com agen fro the hangynge of
Rycharde, that none of your xii peres shall not awaite
me none evyll tourne for it afterwarde' / 'Bi my feyth,'
sayd Charlemagne, 'I wyll doo soo wyth a good wyll.'
24 ³And thenne he sayd to Rowlande and to Olyvere / and
to all the twelve peres of Fraunce / 'Lords,⁴ I wyll
that ye promyse hym that he shall not be hurt by none
of you, nor in tyme to come by noo maner of wyse / by
28 cause I make hym to hange Rycharde.' The whiche
thyngge all the xii peres promysed hym wyth a good
wyll. And whan Rypus had taken the othe of the
xii peres of Fraunce for his surety / he wente to his
32 owne tente / and made him to be armed / and whan he
was armed, he lighted on horsbacke / and cam before

The Emperor
then pardons
them,

and commaunds
Ripus to hang
Richard.

Ripus promises
to fulfil the
Emperor's orders.

The Emperor
makes the xii
peers promise not
to hurt Ripus if
he haugs Richard.

¹ mon mal talant, F. orig. q. viii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. q. viii. ³ Fol. V. v. back.

⁴ par ma fois, F. orig. q. viii.

kyng Charlemagn / And whan themperour sawe hym /
 he sayd to hym, 'Rypus, take a thousande knyghtes
 wyth you for to kepe you / and yf Reynawd or Mawgys
 come there, take them & hange them wyth rycharde.' 4
 'Syr,' sayd ripus / 'I shall doo your *commaundement*.'
 And thenne the kyng made them deliver rycharde /
 and whan ripus had hym, he put hym to the waye, &
 mounted richard vpon a mewle / and put a halter at 8
 his necke, & so ledde hym forth, like as it had be a
 stronge¹ theef, and brought him before the pavyllion of
 charlemagn. And whan the kyng sawe him, he was
 glad of it, and sayd to rypus,² 'Wolde god that all 12
 thother sones of Aymon were in the plighte that richard
 is now in / For I sholde well avenge you / and myselfe
 also vpon them.'

Ripus puts
 Richard on a mule
 with a halter
 round his neck,
 and leads him to
 Charlemagne.

The Frenchmen
 sorrow when they
 see the evil plight
 of Richard.

Whan the frenshemen saw rycharde that was led to 16
 hangynge so vilainously, they began to make
 suche a sorowe for hym that it was merueille / soo that
 none so grete was never seen / Rypus rode on his waye,
 & dyde somoche *that* he cam to Mountfawcon. And 20
 whan rypus dyde see the galous sette vp / he sayd to
 rycharde, 'By god, richarde, see yonder is your lodgyng,
 where ye shall be hanged by myn owne handes³ / this
 daye shall be avenged the deth of foulques,⁴ my vncle, 24
 that Reynaude slewe besides Balencon. The socoures
 of ⁵Mawgis is now ferre fro you, for he can not kepe
 you, but that I shall hang you now in dispite of Rey-
 nawd & of your other brethern' / Whan Richard 28
 herde Rypus speke so proudly, & sawe that he was so
 nighe the gibet / and that he sawe noo socours comyng
 of noo parte / he was sore agast & a ferde / and thoughte
 he wold kepe Ripus wyth wordes, & sayd to hym, 32
 'Rypus, for god have pyte vpon me! For I am noo

Ripus shows
 Richard the
 gallows prepared
 for him.

¹ omitted, F. orig. q. viii.

² mon amy vengez moy de ce truant. Sire dist ripus . . .
 F. orig. q. viii.

³ a grant vilite, F. orig. q. viii.

⁴ de morillon, F. orig. q. viii.

⁵ Fol. V. vi.

man that shold be hanged by rayson / but I ought to
 be delivered by you; and yf ye wyll delyver me / I
 shall gyve you two hundred marke weyghte of fyne
 4 golde, & I shall make you a grete lord' / 'Certes,
 Richard,' sayd Ripus, 'ye speke for noughte / for I
 wold not leve you but that ye shall be hanged, for x of
 the best cytees of Fraunce.' 'Rypus,' sayd Rychard /
 8 'sith that ye wyll not have pyte vpon my body / have
 pyte vpon my soule. And I praye you, asmoche as I
 can, that ye wyll make a preest com to me for to shryve
 me.' 'Certes,' sayd Rypus, 'ye shall have one wyth
 12 right good wyll.' And thenne he made come a preest,
 som sayen that it was a bysshop, for to shryve Richard /
 the whiche began to shryve hymself, & shewed to the
 prest¹ many moo synnes¹ than ever he dyd in his dayes /
 16 and this he dyd for to²lengthe the tyme / and² to see
 yf he shold have ony socours or noo. And whan
 Rychard sawe that his helpe cam not, he wexed almost
 mad, and sayd to his confessor / 'Syr, I wote not
 20 what I shold more say / gyve me absolucyon' / and he
 gaff him penaunce according to the terme of his liff /
 and the confessor went from him all wepyng. And
 whan Rypus sawe that Rychard was confessed / he
 24 came to hym & put the halter aboute his necke / and
 made hym mounte vpon the ladder, & dyd shit the
 cheyn² wherat he shold hang² / & whan richard³ sawe
 that his bredern cam not for to save him / he wende
 28 none other but that he shold have deyed / & delibered
 hymselfe⁴ for to suffre deth atte that owre; and thenne
 he sayd to Rypus, 'My frende, I pray the for god that
 thou suffre me awhyle tyll I have sayd an oryson
 32 that I dyde lerne in my youthe, to the ende that god
 have mercy of my soule.' 'I wyll not,' sayd Rypus /

Richard offers
 Ripus a ransom,
 which he refuses.

Richard asks for a
 priest,

which is granted
 him.

He tries to delay
 in hopes of help
 arriving, but it
 does not come.

Richard, expect-
 ing to die, begs
 for respite to say
 his prayers.

¹⁻¹ dix fois plus de pechiez, F. orig. r. i.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. r. i.

³ Quant richart fut monte sur leschielle, F. orig. r. i.

⁴ Fol. V. vi. back.

He promises to
pray for Ripus,

who grants him
time to say his
orison.

The prayer of
Richard before his
death.

‘thou shalte have noo lenger respyte.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd
his men / ‘yes / ye shall yf it playse you / For yf he
maye doo so moche that his soule be saved / he shall
praye for you in the other world / and for vs also’ / 4
And thenne Rypus gaaf respite to Rycharde, wherof
he dyd like a fole¹ / And thenne Rychard tourned hym-
selfe towarde the eest / and beganne to saye his prayer
wyth good herte and devowtly / For he trowed to 8
have deyed wythoute remyssyon / And he sayd in this
maner.
‘**G**lorious Ihesus / by thy blessed name / that
made heven & erthe / and all the elements that 12
ben, and wente in this world as a poure man, and saved
Ionas from the beli of the fysshe, and in Bethelam
reysedest Lazaron, and delyvered Danyell from the
pyt of the lion. the synnes of the thief / ye dyde 16
pardonne in the crosse / where the felons Iewes had
crusified you. Also to mari magdalene her synne /
ye forgaaff in the hous of Symon / For she wysshe
your fete wyth grete devoicyon / Iudas, the false 20
traytour, murmured thurgh enuye / wherof ye dyde
shewe to hym that he dyde grete foly; and Iudas
kysseid you by grete treyson, and delivered you to
the iewes, wherof he was rewarded after his deserv- 24
ynge.² Good lord, ye created & made our fader Adam³
of the slyme of therth / and yllumyned him with
the grace of the holi gost; and after ye dyd haban-
donne to him the frutes of paradise / but he brake 28
your *commandement*, Wherbi mankynde went to
damnacion, & we all were dampned wythout remys-
sion / but after ye redemed vs bi the merite of your
blessid passion; ye did suffre ⁴grete evylles and grete 32

¹ Et quant richart eut le respit Il se tourne devers orient . . .
F. orig. r. i. back.

² Car pecha mallement a tort et sans raison. Dont faulce-
ment mourust en desesperacion, F. orig. R. i.

³ omitted, F. orig. r. i. back. ⁴ Fol. V. vii.

afflyetyons for vs poure synners, wythout ony devoeyon.
 Whan Longys¹ dyde shove the spere in to your dygne
 side, the water ranne of it, and also the blode lepte
 4 into his eyen / wherof he recovered his sighte; and ye
 pardoned hym his synnes / whan he called vpon you
 for mercy. And also to Noe ye lete make by your
 carpenters an arke for to save hymself, and of every
 8 beest a couple. In Iosaphat, good lord, ye broughte
 your apostles, where ye dyde make a fayr myracle /
 For wyth two fysshes & fyve loves of barle / ye fed v.
 thousande men all their fylle / O, gode lord / as I doo
 12 byleve this that I have sayd stedfastly, kepe this daye
 my body fro deth that is so nyghe, that I be not
 hanged nor put in pryson, but deliver me from the
 handes of my ennyes / that I be not vytupered nor
 16 broughte to shame by Rypus of ryplemonde, that
 holdeth me in his gynnes / Ha, Reynaude, my right
 dere broder, that ye be not here now wyth my brethern
 & wyth my² cosyn mawgis / ye have now forgotten me,
 20 & lete me here deye, Wherfore I recomende me to god
 of heven.' And thenne Richard began to wepe full
 tendrely, & sayd to rypus, 'Rypus, doo wyth me what
 ye will.'

Richard implores
 God to have
 mercy on him.

24 **N**ow shall we speke of bayard, the good horse,
 of Reynawd, of his bredern, & mawgis. It
 is trouth that bayard,³ the horse of reynawd the sone
 of Aymon,³ that cam of the fery, and thus he vnder-
 28 stode the worde whan it was spoken as well as it had
 be a man / Whan bayard vnderstode the noise⁴ that the
 folke made about the galous, and sawe that his mayster
 slept fast / he cam to reynawd, & smote him soo harde
 32 wyth his fete in the myddes of his sheelde that he

Bayard wakes his
 master Reynawde,

¹ Longius.

² bon cousin le saige maugis, F. orig. r. i. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. r. ii.

⁴ et le bruit des gens que ripus avoit amene avecques soy a monfaucon . . . F. orig. r. ii.

who sees his brother on the ladder, leaps on Bayard, and flies to his rescue.

Mawgis and the brethren wake and follow him.

made hym awake. Soo lept reynawd vpon his fete all afrayed, & beheld what it was, and loked toward moun^tfawcon & saw his brother vpon the ladder. Soo made he none other taryenge,¹ but lighted vpon 4 bayarde, that ranne as the wynde / For at every tyme he lepte xxx. fote in a playne grounde. And alarde, guycharde / and mawgis awoke for love of bayarde, that made grete noyse / And whan they were all 8 awaked / mawgis began to crye as hie as he cowde vpon his horse, 'the devyll spele the, evyll beeste, that thou hast lete me slepe soo longe' / and thenne he lighted quyckly vpon his backe / For there was noo 12 better horse in all the worlde after bayarde.²

Ripus sees the brethren approach,

Whan Rypus of ryplemonde, that wold have strangled Rycharde, sawe come his brothern & mawgys / he was soo sore abashed wyth it that 16 he wyste not what he shold doo, and he sayd thenne to Rycharde / 'Richard, ye be deliverde out of my handes / For here comen Reynawde & Mawgis / and all their puissaunce, that com for to socour you;³ 20 and yf it playse you, ye shall have mercy on me For this that I dyde / for to have broughte you here. It was put for to have awaye y^e debate that Charlemagne had wyth the xii peres of Fraunce; and I 24 knew well that ye shold be rescued wythout ony fawte by your brethern & of Mawgis.' 'Rypus,' sayd Rycharde, 'mocke not wyth me / for here is to hard a mocke for me, and ye wynne not moche by, for to 28 gabbe me of this facyon.' 'By my soule,' sayd Rypus, 'I mocke you not / it is in good earnest that I saye / ye maye see them here not a bowe shotte a ferre, nor I seke not to doo you ony harme / but goo down fro 32 the ladder / and have mercy on me, I beseche you, for goddys love.'

He begs Richard to have mercy on him.

¹ Fol. V. vii. back.

² et sen va apres regnault, F. orig. r. ii.

³ dont je me rens a vous beau sire, F. orig. r. ii.

Rychard was mervellously abashed whan he herde
 Rypus speke, and he torned his hede aside
 & sawe Reynawde, that cam a good pas / and whan he
 4 saw him, he sayd, 'ripus, I shall never clayme my
 broder reynawd for my broder / yf he hange you not
¹by the necke¹ to the same gibet where as ye thought
 to have hanged me right now.' This hangyng that
 8 Rychard spake to Rypus, Reynawd was arryved, and
 herde this that ²Richard had sayd to Rypus / And
 Reynawde began thenne to crie wyth a hie voys /
 'so helpe me god, Rypus, ye be deed. For ye be
 12 a cursed man / and for your cursidnes I shall hange
 you my owne self at this gibet / so shall you be
 possessor of my broder Richardis place / for all the
 power *that* Charlemagne shall make shall not save
 16 you therfro' / This hangyng, cam there mawgis, sore
 chauffed, & sayd to Ripus, 'Ha, rypus, thou traytour,
 evyll man, ye have alwayes be redy for to doo som
 evyll agenst vs, but sith that I have founde you here,
 20 I shall not seke you nowhere elles' / and thenne
 mawgis bare vp his spere for to have perced his body
 therwyth, but Reynawd cryed vpon hym, 'cosyn,
 touche hym not, for I wolde not for a grete thyng
 24 that a nother than I sholde slee hym. For I shall
 avenge vpon hym my dere broder Rycharde' / and
 thenne he drewe oute flamberde, & smote rypus wyth it
 suche a stroke that he felde hym deed to therthe
 28 at the fote of the ladder; & after he sayd to his
 bredern, 'kepe wel that none of his folke scape, but
 that thei be ded or taken' / And thenne Reynawd
 descended a fote, & went vpon the ladder, & toke
 32 richarde betwene his armes & brought hym down / and
 vnbounde him handes & fete / and after he kyssed his
 mouth, & sayd to hym / 'Broder, how doo ye fele your
 selfe? are ye not yll at ease' /

Richard threatens
to make his
brother hang
Ripus on the
gibbet he had
prepared.

Reynawde slays
Ripus and his
folk,

and releases his
brother Richard.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. r. ii. back. ² Fol. V. viii.

‘**B**rother,’ sayd Rycharde, ‘I have noo harme / but
 lete me be armed, I praye you.’ ‘By saynte
 Iohan,’ sayd Reynawde / ‘ye shall be armed anoue.’
 ‘Brother,’ sayd Rycharde, ‘lete me have the armours 4
 of Rypus of Ryplemonde’ / ‘wyth a good wylle,’ sayd
 Reynawde / And Incontynente he made Rypus to be
 had from his harneys, & made his broder richarde
 to be armed. therwyth he made hym to lighte on 8
 hors¹backe, and toke hym his sheelde / and his baner.
 and whan Richard was well appareilled, Reynawd toke
 y^e halter *that* rypus had put aboute Richardis necke /
 and put it aboute rypus necke ; & after, he mounted 12
 vpon the ladder, & drewe hym all deed / and hanged
 hym there as he wold have hanged richarde, and wyth
 hym well xv. moo² of his company, suche as kyng
 charlemagn loved moost / and whan he had hanged 16
 [t]hem, he sayd to rycharde / ‘Brother, thise many shall
 kepe here whatche in stede of you’ / whan this was
 doon, mawgis came to Reynawd, & sayd to hym,
 ‘Cosyn, telle me who waked you so well in tyme 20
 as ye were.’ ‘cosyn,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘by the feyth
that I owe to god, I slept as harde ³as though I had not
 slept in xii. nyghtes a fore³ / but baiard, my⁴ gentill
 horse, awoke me’ / thenne sayd mawgis, ‘O gracious 24
 lord of heven, blessed be god that made suche a
 horse / it is not the first good tourne that bayarde
 hath doon to you, my cosin, nor also it shal not be the
 laste.’ And they all went and kyssed bayarde for the 28
 goodnes that he had shewed vnto theym /

Reynawde gives
his brother the
armour of Ripus
of Riplemonde,

and hangs the
body of Ripus
with xv of his
company on the
gallows.

The brethren
embrace Bayard
for waking them
in time to save
Richard.

‘**M**y lordes,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘what shall we now
 doo? we have wrought well / sith that we
 have rescued the gentill richarde hole & sounde / me 32
 semeth that we ought to goo to mountalban, so shall

¹ Fol. V. viii. back.

² des plus principaulx de sa *compaignie*, F. orig. r. iii.

³⁻³ si je neusse jamais dormy, F. orig. r. iii.

⁴ le, F. orig. r. iii. back.

we recomforte clare, my wyff, & my two children, that
 ben all evyll at ease for the love of rycharde, & so
 shall we ete & slepe at our ease / for we have well
 4 nede therof / and we shall doo iustyce of kyng you,
 that so falsli hath betrayed vs. And after tomorowe
 we shall assaylle¹ charlemagne, *that* we love not / and
 we shall leve v hundred men wythin mountalban / and
 8 as many above mountbandell, that shall socour vs
 if nede be' / And thenne sayd richard / 'sir, yf it
 playse you, ye shall not doo soo, For ye knowe not the
 sorowe and the grete lamentacyon that the frenshemen
 12 made ²for the love of me in thoste of Charlemagn.
 And I promyse you, ye oughte well to love Ogyer /
 Rowland / Estorfawde the sone of Oedon, Richarde of
 normandy / the fayr Guydellon, Salamon of bretein,
 16 and eke Olyvere of vyeñ / For thei toke grete debate
 for me wyth Charlemagn wythin his pavyllion; and
 all this they dyde for the love of you / for they wend
 all for certen that Ripus shold have hanged me, and
 20 that I sholde have noo socours; but, & it playse you,
 gyve me leve that I maye shewe me to Ogyer the
 dane, & to all other our kynsmen ³that ben in Charle-
 magnis court,³ For thei shal have grete Ioye for to see
 24 me scape from the dethe.'

Reynawde pro-
 poses to go to
 Montalban.

He wishes to
 attack Charle-
 magne.

Richard tells
 them how many
 friends he has
 with the Emperor,

and asks to show
 himself to Ogier.

Thenne sayd Reynawd / 'for sothe, Ogier dyd like
 a valiaunt man; for men ought to love ⁴their
 frendes,⁴ & helpe them whan it is nele' / & after sayd
 28 Reynawde,⁵ 'Broder, y^e sonne is almoste vnder all
 redy. I fere me sore of you yf ye wyll goo in to the
 oste of Charlemagn / but & ye will nedes goo there /
 take wyth you four hondred knyghtes well horsed &
 32 well armed, and put theym in a bushemente nyghe
 by where ye go / and I shall be here wyth my folke /

Reynawde makes
 him take four
 hundred knyghts
 with him to
 succour him if
 wanted.

¹ le roy charlemaigne, F. orig. r. iii.

² Fol. X. i. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. r. iii.

⁴⁻⁴ les sciens, F. orig. r. iii. back.

⁵ richart, F. orig. r. iii. back.

and ye shall take wyth you Bondy, my good horne /
 and yf ye nede of ony helpe / sounde it hie as ye can
 well doo / and I shall socour you incontynent' / 'Syr,'
 sayd Richarde, 'be it as it playse you.' And thenne ⁴
 Reynawde toke his horne to Richarde, & foure hundred
 knyghtes. and Richard¹ toke on his waye, & bare the
 baner of Ripus wyth hym / and he² dyde so moche
 that he came to thoost of Charlemagne / and the kyng ⁸
 stode armed afore his pavyllion wyth his folke, that
 kept the way of mountfawcon / and they sawe come
 the baner of Rypus / ³as it had be borne by Rypus
 hymselfe vpon his horse³ / 12

Richard, with the
 banner of Ripus,
 comes to the
 pavilion of the
 King.

Ogier, thinking
 it is Ripus,

swoons with grief
 for the loss of
 Richard, and after
 goes to meet him.

Whan Ogier sawe Richarde com, he wende it had
 be Rypus of riplemonde, that had hanged
 Richarde / and of ⁴the sorowe that he toke for it, he fell
 down to therth in a swoone / And after, whan he was ¹⁶
 come agen to hymself, he sayd, 'Alas, we have lost
 Richarde, we shall never have hym agen!⁵ Now it is
 well seen, Richard, that ye had fewe frendes.' And
 wyth this he spored his good horse braiford / and cam ²⁰
 agenste Rycharde / for he trowed verely that it had be
 Ripus. And when Charlemagn sawe that Ogier the
 dane ranne towarde Ripus, he sayd to his folke, 'goo
 after hym, barons, I shall now see whiche of you is ²⁴
 my frende ⁶or my foo⁶ / here cometh Ripus, certeynly
 he hath doon well his devoyre, & hathe doon me good
 servyse, for he hath made me quyte of Rycharde, ⁷one
 of my mortalle enmyes,⁷ and now Ogier wyll kylle ²⁸
 hym in treyson / but & I canne holde hym / I shall
 doo suche iustyce vpon hym that it shall be spoken
 of it long time here after' / And thenne spored their
 horses, frenshemen & bourgoyns, after Ogier / and ³²
 Charlemagn hymselfe went after hym / but Ogier was

Charlemagne goes
 after Ogier for
 fear he should
 slay Ripus.

¹ omitted, F. orig. r. iii. ² richart, F. orig. r. iii.

³⁻³ monte sus son cheval, F. orig. r. iii. ⁴ Fol. X. i. back.

⁵ trahy la regnault et maugis, F. orig. r. iii. back.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig. r. iii. bk. ⁷⁻⁷ le filz aymon, F. orig. r. iii. bk.

all redy ferre from theym, wrothe & fyers as a lyon /
 and he cryed as hie as he cowde, 'Soo helpe me god,
 Rypus, ye be deed / and ye shall have a rewarde of
 4 that ye have doon to my cosin Rychard; and I pro-
 myse you ¹Charlemagn shall not come tyme ynoughe
 for to save you from my spere ¹ / Whan rycharde herde
 ogyer speke thus, he sayd, 'have merey on me, my fayr
 8 cosyn, For I am rycharde, your cosin, & not rypus /
 for we have hanged rypus in my place. And I promise
 you my brother Reynawde hathe well avenged me vpon
 hym / and therefore I am come for to shewe me to you
 12 & to my other kynsmen / for I wote well that ye shall
 be glad therof.' 'ye make a lesyng, false traytour of
 ryplemonde,' sayd ogyer / 'but ye shall not scape me
 soo.' Whan rycharde sawe ogyer soo sore chauffed
 16 wyth wrathe² / he sayd to hym / 'Cosin, knowe not
 you me?' 'nay, wythout fawte,' sayd ogyer / ³'For ye
 bere the armes and the baner of Ripus' / 'I have doon
 so, syre,' sayd Rychard, 'by cause I shold not be
 20 knowen.' 'By my soule,' sayd Ogyer / 'I wyll see
 your face naked, For otherwyse I wyll not beleve that
 that ye say.' 'Syre,' sayd Richarde / 'and ye shall
 see me anone' / And thenne he vnbokled hys helme
 24 & shewed his vysage / And whan ogyer sawe hym he
 was right glad / and went & ⁴kyssed the mouth of
 Rycharde full swetly⁴ / and toke hym in his armes
 many tymes, & said to rycharde, all lawghyng / 'Cosyn,
 28 what have ye doon of rypus?'⁵ 'by my feith,' sayd
 rycharde, 'he is now Archebyssshop of *that* feeldes /
⁴gyvyng the benedycion wyth his fote;⁴ For my broder
 Reynawd hath hanged hym, his owne handes / and wolde
 32 not suffre that none other sholde sette hande vpon hym
 but onely hymself' / 'by my soule' sayd oger / 'he hath

Richard declares
himself to Ogier.

Ogier will not
believe that he is
Richard.

He shows his face
to Ogier,

and tells him the
fate of Ripus.

¹⁻¹ charlemaigne vous sera mauvais garent, F. orig. r. iii. bk.

² contre luy, F. orig. r. iv. ³ Fol. X. ii.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. r. iv.

⁵ le mauvais traicte, F. orig. r. iv

doon right well.' and thenne he sayd to rycharde,
 'Fayr cosin, see to your selfe / for here cometh Charle-
 magn / and god be with you;' and thus retourned
 ogyer / And whan Charlemagne sawe Ogyer, he sayd 4
 to hym, 'why wente ye towarde rypus afore me' /
 'Syr,' sayd Ogyer, 'yf ye were not soo nyghe me / I
 sholde smyte of his hede / But I dare not doo it for
 love of you. goo ye to hym / for I make you sure he 8
 shall have no harme by me.' Thenne sayd Charle-
 magne¹ / 'I shall defende hym agenste all men.' And
 thenne he spored the horse wyth the spores, and cam
 to rycharde / wenyng to hym that it had be rypus² / & 12
 sayd to hym, 'Come nere, my speycall frende rypus /
 and take no fere of noo thyng / For I shall kepe you
 agenste all men.' Whan Rycharde herde Charlemagne
 speke thus, he sayd to hym / 'I wyll that ye knowe 16
 now that I am not the false traytour Rypus, but I am
 Rycharde the sone of aymon / and I am the brother of
 Reynaude, the best knyghte of all the world, and of
 Alarde, and of Guycharde, and cosyn to the valyaunte 20
 maw³gis that ye love so moche. Ye smote me to daye
 in the mornyng wyth a staff in the hede, wherof ye
 mysdyde gretly; & therefore my broder reynawd hath
 hanged⁴ your right wel beloved⁴ rypus there as he wold 24
 have lodged me / and xv. of his felawes wyth him for
 to bere him feliship / now beware of me, for I defye
 you' / Whan Charlemagne vnderstode these wordes, he
 was soo sore an angred of it, that none can be more / 28
 and spored his horse & ranne vpon rychard, and richard
 agenst hym / and gaaf thone to thother so grete strokes
 in their sheeldes that they brake bothe their speres all
 in peeces. ⁵And wyth the same⁵ they recounted eche 32
 other wyth their bodies soo myghtely that the strongest

Charlemagne
spurs after
Richard, thinking
it is Ripus.

Richard makes
himself known to
Charlemagne.

Charlemagne is
angry, and attacks
him furiously.

¹ par ma foy . . . F. orig. r. iv.

² de ripemout, F. orig. r. iv. ³ Fol. X. ii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. r. iv. back.

⁵⁻⁵ et apres le briser de leurs lances . . . F. orig.

of bothe habandouned the styropes / but it happed well
to charlemagn that he bode wythin tharsous of the
sadle ; but rycharde fell down to thertth. and whan
4 rycharde sawe hymself a grounde / he was wrothe for
it, and rose vp quyekly & set hande to his swerde / and
wente & smote Charlemagn vpon his helme soo grete a
stroke that he made hym all astonyed wythall ; but
8 the swerde slided vpon the helme, that was goode ¹&
fyne,¹ down to the horse neeke soo harde that he cut it a
sondre, ¹and with this stroke he felled y^e horse sterke
deed ;¹ and by all thus was Charlemagn broughte to the
12 grounde / And whan charlemagn saw hymself a grounde,
he was sore an angred for it / and lept vpon his fete
right quyekely, & toke his swerde in his hande, and
smote rycharde vpon his helme so harde that he made
16 hym rele wythall / and thenne began bytwyx charle-
magn² & rycharde a sore sharpe medlynge. And whan
they had foughte a grete while togyder, Charlemagn be-
gan to crye ‘mountioye saynt denys’ / and whan rycharde
20 herde this, he drewe him a side / and toke his horne
& souned it right hie, soo that his brethern herde it
well / and soo dyde mawgis. And thenne Incontyent
they spored theyr ³horses, and cam toward rycharde for
24 to socour him / And thenne sayd mawgis,⁴ ‘I doubte
me that richard is taken, but we shall deye all wyth
hym / or elles we shall have hym agen.’

Grete dyligence made reynawd for to socour rycharde.
28 And when he was come where he was / he cryed
sodenli, ‘montalban,’ and alard, ‘pavereyment,’ guyehard,
‘baleneon,’ and richarde, ‘ardeyn’ / and mawgys went
& ranne vpon a knyghte *that* was called magon, other-
32 wyse sampson, lord of pyerrefrite, & roughete him suche
a stroke that he felde hym deed to the grounde ; and
reynawd smote vpon a nother knyght by suche a wyse

They fight,
and Richard is
unhorsed.

The King has his
horse killed by
Richard.

They fight
fiercely, till
Charlemagne calls
for help.

Richard blows his
horn to summon
his brethren.

Reynawde and the
brethren come to
his succour.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. r. iv. back. ² charlemagn *in text*.
³ Fol. X. iii. ⁴ seigneurs, F. orig. r. iv. back.

that he shoved his swerde thurgh & thurgh his body ;
 and guychard smote a nother with his swerde soo
 fierly that he cleved his hede in two peces ; & alard
 smote the fourth knyghte vpon his helme soo grete a 4
 stroke that he cast hym deed to fore his fete ; and
 after he ranne vpon a nother knyghte rychely arrayed,
 & gaff eche other suche strokes that they bothe fell
 doun from their horses to thert^h / And thenne came 8
 there reinawd, that dyde so moche that the sayd
 knyghte was taken prysoner / whiche was called hughe
 of almagn, and broughte hym¹ to mountalban / what
 shall I telle you more / the batayll began to be felle / 12
 and soo cruell that it was grete pyte for to see / For
 the one spared not thother, but slew eche other as
 thicke as bestes. And whan reynawd sawe all redy
 that y^e sonne was goon vndre, & that the nyght cam 16
 fast on / he was in a doubte for his bredern, and sayd,
 ‘ Good lord, thurgh thi mercy & redempcyon / kepe
 me & my bredern from deth & from prison / for the
 nyght that is at hande maketh me to be a ferde’ / 20
 And as he spake these wordes, cam there kyng charle-
 magn, as fast as his horse myghte walop, agenst reyn-
 nawd, and reynawd agenste hym, by cause he knewe
 hym not / and smote eche other so harde in their 24
 sheldes that thei made their speres² to flee in peces, and
 recounted togyder both wyth theyr bodyes & sheeldes
 soo merveyllously that they overthrewe eche other to
 the grounde / and thenne they rose quyckly bothe 28
 atones, and set hande to their swerdes / And thenne
 Charlemagn began to crye ‘mouⁿtioye saynt denys’ /
 and after sayd, ‘ Yf I be owtraged by one knyghte oonly,
 I ought not to be a kyng nor to bere crowne.’ Whan 32
 reynaud vnderstode charlemain speke, he knewe hym
 well, & wythdrewe hymself a syde, & sayd, ‘ Alas,

The great fight
 between the Sons
 and the King's
 followers.

Reynawde and
 Charlemagne
 fight without
 recognising each
 other.

¹ par prisonier . . . F. orig. r. v.

² Fol. X. iii. back.

how am I dyffamed ! it is charlemagn to whom I have
iousted / I have mysprysed to sore for to have set hande
vpon hym / Ha, good lord / it is well XVI.¹ yeres a
4 goon that I spake not ones wyth hym / but I shall
now speke to him yf I shold deye for it / for by reyson
& right I ought to lese the firste ; wherfore I wyll make
to hym a mendes presently, and lete hym doo wyth
8 me what he wyll' / and whan he had sayd this, he
went to Charlemagn, & kneled byfore hym, and sayd
to hym / 'Sir, for god / I erie you mercy, gyve me
trews tyl that I have spoken wyth you.' 'wyth a good
12 wyll,' sayd charlemagn ; 'But I wote not who ye be,
²how be it that ye have iousted wyth me.'² 'I thanke
you humbli,' sayd reynaud,³ 'of that it playseth you to
saye soo by me³ / Syr, wyte that I am Reynawde, the
16 sone of aymon / and I erie you mercy / And for that
pyte that our lord had vpon the eros of his moder whan
he recomended her to saynt Iohan h's dysepylle / I
beseche you that ye wyll have pyte vpon [me] & vpon
20 my bredern. ye knowe that I am your man / and ye
have disherited me of mi londes, & have chased me
⁴oute of fraunce.⁴ It is a goo xvi⁵ yeres ; and by cause
of this, are deed soo many noble knyghtes & valyaunt
24 men, & other, in soo grete nombre that it can not be
sayd, For god / ye see well what it cometh of the
werre / for a lord that hath no pite in him, hath a hert
as harde as a stone. ⁶And therefore, sire, I beseche you
28 for god that ye have mercy on me & of my bredern
that ben suche knyghtes as ye know. I speke not
thise wordes for fere of deth, ne for courtyse of ryches /
For god gramercy we have goodes ynoughe / but I
32 speke it for to have your love oonly / Syr, suffre that

Reynawde asks
pardon of the
Emperor when
he discovers him,

and begs that
peace may be
accorded between
them;

¹ quinze, F. orig. r. v.

²⁻² mais vous joustes moult bien, F. orig. r. v.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴⁻⁴ . . . de vostre terre et de la mienne, F. orig. r. v.

⁵ xv. F. orig. ⁶ Fol. X. iv.

he offers to give
up Montalban
and Bayard

if Charlemagne
will pardon his
brethren.

The Emperor
refuses to accept
these terms of
peace,

and demands the
deliverance of
Mawgis into his
hands.

we have peas wyth you / and we shall becom your
men for evermore, and we shall swere to you feyth &
legeauns / and also I shall gyve you mountalban & my
good horse bayard, whiche is the thyng that I love 4
beste in this worlde after my bredern & mawgis / For
there is not in all the world suche a nother horse¹ /
And yf this can not satsysfe your mynde / I shall doo
yet more / Playseth it to you for to pardonne my 8
bredern / and I shall forswere Fraunce for evermore,
that I shall never be seen there, and I shall goo to the
holy sepulcre in Iherusalem, bare fote, for the remem-
braunce of you ; and I nor Mawgys shall never come 12
agen in fraunce, ²but we shall werre styll on goddys
emmyes / as ben turques & sarrasins' ²/

Thenne whan charlemagn herde reynawd speke thus,
he answerde hym & sayd, 'Reynawd, ye speke 16
for noughte / ye dyde an over grete foly / whan ye toke
that hardynes vpon you for to speke wyth me in my
palays as ye dyde / and yet ye dyde worse whan ye
slewe my newewe berthelot that I loved so moche ; and 20
now ye speke to me of peas, and ye crye me merey. I
promyse you for certeyn that ye shall have noo peas
with me, but yf ye doo that I shall tel'e you' / 'Sire,'
sayd reynawd, 'what shall *that* be? telle me, I praye 24
you!' / 'I shall shewe it to you wyth a goode wyll,'
sayd charlemagn / 'And yf ye doo it / ye and your
brethern shall accorde wyth me, And I shall gyve you
agen your heritage, and yet I shall gyve you / ynoughe 28
of myn owen / It is that ye gyve me mawgys in
my handes for to doo my playsur wyth hym, for I hate
him ³more than ony thyng in the world' / 'Syre,'
sayd reynawd / 'if I sholde deliver hym to you, what 32
wold ye doo to hym?' / 'Reynawd,' sayd charlemagn,

¹ chevalier, F. orig. r. v. back.

²⁻² mais ferons guerre contre les tures, F. orig. r. v. back.

³ Fol. X. iv. back.

'I promyse you I shold make hym to be drawn sham-
 fully at four¹ horses taylles thurgh parys. And after
 that, I shold doo take from the body of hym the *limmes*
 4 one after a nother, and thenne I shold make him to be
 brent, and his ashes to be cast at the wynde / And
 whan he shall be arrayed as I telle you / Iete hym
 themne doo his *incantacyons* & his *magyke* as he wyll /
 8 and I shall pardonne hym all that he can doo to me
 after that' / Thenne sayd Reynawd to the kyng /
 'syre, wold ye doo it in dede as ye saye?' 'Ye,' sayd
 charlemagn, 'in good feyth' / 'Emperour,' sayd rey-
 12 nawde, 'wold you not take townes ne castelles, golde
 ne silver, for the raunsom of mawgis?' / 'certes naye,'
 sayd charlemagne.² 'Sir,' sayd reynawd, 'thenne shall
 we never be accorded togyder; for I tell you for ceerteyn,
 16 that yf ye had all my brethern in your pryson, and that
 ye were delibered for to make them to be hangged,
 yet shold I not gyve you mawgis for to have theym
 deliverde oute of your handes' / 'Holde your peas
 20 thenne,' sayd charlemagn, '& beware of me / for other-
 wise gete ye noo peas wyth me' / 'Syr,' sayd reynawd,
 'I am sory for it, for we be noo meñ that oughte to be
 cast from your servyse;³ and sith that ye defye me, I
 24 shall deffende me / and our lord shall doo me *that* grace,
 yf it playse hym, that I shall not be take of you.' And
 whan charlemagn herde this / he was sore angry / and
 ranne vpon reynawd / and whanne reynawd sawe hym
 28 come vpon hym / he sayd to hym, 'Syre, for god
 mercy, suffre not that I sette hande vpon you / For yf
 I sholde leve my selfe for to be slayne by you, I were
 well a myschaunt' / 'Vassayll,' sayd Charlemagn, 'all
 32 these wordes awaylleth you not, For ye must nedes
 deffende yourselfe' / And thenne Charlemagne ⁴smote
 hym wyth Ioyuse his swerde vpon his helme, and the

Reynawde refuses
 this request,
 and tells the
 Emperor that
 peace can never
 be made between
 them on these
 conditions.

Charlemagne in
 fierce anger
 renews his attack
 on Reynawde,

¹ omitted, F. orig. r. vi.

² par ma foy, F. orig.

³ sernyse, orig.

⁴ Fol. X. v.

stroke slided down vpon the sheelde of Reynawde soo
 that he kytted quyte and clene a grete parte therof.
 Whan Reynawde felte soo grete a stroke that kynge
 Charlemagne had gyven hym, he was sore an angered 4
 for it. He vaunced hym selfe forthe, and caught the
 kynge wyth bothe hys armes by the backe / and by the
 waast in maner of wrastelynge, For he wolde not smyte
 hym wyth his swerde Flamberde, and toke hym and 8
 layd vpon the necke of his horse Bayarde / for to have
 broughte hym wyth hym ¹to Mountalban¹ wythout
 ony other harme. And whan Charlemagn saw that he
 was handeled of this facyon / he beganne to crye as 12
 lowde as he myghte, ‘Mountioye, saynte denys’ / and
 thenne he sayd / ‘Ha, fayr newew² Rowlande / where
 be you / Olyvere of vyenue, and ye duke Naymes / and
 bysshop Turpyn / shall ye suffre that I be thus taken 16
¹and broughte as a prysoner? ¹ and yf ye doo soo / it shall
 be a grete shame to you all’ / Reynawde began thenne
 to crye ‘Mountalban’ ³ as highe as he cowde / whan he
 herde Charlemagne speke soo / And after he sayd / 20
 ‘Ha, my bredern / and ye cosin Mawgys, com hither /
 and lete vs goo, for ⁴I have gyven the kynge suche a
 checke, ⁴ that yf we can now brynge hym wyth vs / we
 shall have peas in Fraunce fromhens forthon.’ Thenne 24
 the noble peres of Fraunce / as Rowlande, Olyvere /
 and the other, came to the socours of Charlemagne /
 And of that other parte / came there for to helpe Rey-
 nawd, his brethern and Mawgys, and well four hundred⁵ 28
 knyghtes well armed. And whan the valiaunt knyghtes
 were assembled togyder of bothe partyes, ye sholde
 thenne have seen there a merveyllous bataylle / For
 they slewe eche other as bestes. And there were so 32
 many speres broken, and so many sheeldes cloven / and

who seizes the
 Emperor
 and lays him on
 Bayard.

Charlemagne
 calls on his
 banners,
 and deplores the
 absence of his
 men.

Roland and
 Oliver come to his
 relief;

also Mawgis and
 his men arrive.

The battle begins
 again.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² newew, *orig.* ³ son enseigne, F. orig. r. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ Jay pris ung tel esbac, F. orig. r. vi.

⁵ hundred, *orig.*

hewed in to peeces, and so many ¹helmes vnbokeled /
 and soo many a quyras broken and perced, and so many
 horses that drew after theyr guttes a longe in the
 4 feeldes, and soo many a man slayne, that it was pyte
 for to see.² And whan Rowlande was come to the
 medlee, he wente vpon Reynawde, and gaaf hym soo
 grete a stroke vpon hys helme that he was all astouyed
 8 therwyth, and after he sayd to hym, ‘Vassayll, ye have
 doon evill that ye trowed to have brought awaye the
 kyng in this maner of wyse! Ye wote well it is to
 hevy a bourdon for to lede of this facyon. ye shall leve
 12 hym / and yet ye shall abyge full dere for it, are ye
 escape me’ / And whan Reynawde sawe that he was
 thus repreved, and felte the grete stroke that Rowlande
 had gyven to hym ³vpon hys helmet,³ he was wrothe,
 16 and toke his swerde in his hande / holdynge alwayes
 Charlemagne afore hym vpon bayardes necke / and cam
 to Rowlande, and sayd to hym / ‘Damp Rowlande,
 come forthe! soo shall ye wyte how Flamberde cutteth’ /
 20 And whan Rowlande vnderstode hym, he came vpon
 hym / And whan Reynawde sawe hym come / he lete
 fall doum Charlemagne & ranne vpon Rowlande / And
 there beganne amonge them two a fyers medelynge.
 24 This hangyng, cam Alarde, Guycharde / and the lytyll
 Rycharde / and ranne vpon Rowlande atones / and gaaff
 hym soo moche to doo that he muste put hymselfe to
 flighte / wolde he or noo / And whan Reynawde sawe that
 28 Charlemagn and Rowlande had saved theymselfe, he
 was right sory for it, and he sayd to his bretherne, ‘My
 brederne, ye have wroughte yll / For yf ye had be styll
 by me, we had doon a grete fayt / For I had taken
 32 Charlemagne, that we shokle have broughte wyth vs to

Roland attacks
 Reynawde,
 who is holding
 the Emperor on
 his horse.

Reynawde lets
 Charlemagne fall,
 and fights Roland
 with the help of
 Alarde and
 Guycharde.

¹ Fol. X. v. back.

² et vous prometz quil en y eut tant de occis dune part et daultre que lon ne scauoit le nombre et grande fust la pitie, F. orig. r. vi. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

The Sons grieve
over the escape
of the Emperor.

mountalban.'¹ 'Syre,' sayd his bretherne / 'we are sory
for it that we dyde not soo / But we had so moche to
doo in a nother place, ²that it is well to vs that we
scaped sauf wyth our lyves. But lete vs see that we 4
doo well, and sowne our horne to thende ye maye
gader agen togyder your folke that be soo sperkled
abrode, for there is dangeour by cause of the nyghte
that cometh so fast on / and calle agen your baner / for 8
we have wonne more than we have loste, and lete vs
goo to montalban.' Reynawd, that was sage, dyde as
his bredern & maugis counseyllid hym / Whan charle-
magne sawe that reynawde had wythdrawe his baner / 12
he was glad of it / For he saw well that his folke was
at the worste hande / soo made he to sowne the retrete,
& passed balencon / and dyde somoche that he cam
agen to his oost / And whan he was lighted doun a 16
fote / he sayd to his folke / 'By my soule, it gooth not
well with vs / for reynawd hath put vs from the felde.'
'Syre,' sayd rowland, 'speke noo more of it, for it is
not longe on you / but *that* we had be almost shamed. 20
Ye dyde grete foly whan ye iousted wyth reynawd / for
if he had slayn you, or take, the werre had be ended
that hath lasted so longe' / I leve now here to speke of
charlemagne & of rowland his newew³ / and retorne to 24
speke of reynawde & of his bredern, and of mawgis
theyr cosin, and of their folke.

Charlemagne
orders his men
to retreat,
and returns to his
host.

Roland reproaches
the Emperor for
trying to fight
Reynawde.

CHAPTER XV.

¶ How after that reynawd, his bredern, &
mawgis had dyscomfyted charlemagn after 28
that thei had rescued rychard / that ripus
wold have hanged at montfawcon / went
agen vpon hym and pulled doun his pavy-

¹ mounalban, *orig.* ² Fol. X. vi.

³ et de ses gens, F. orig. A. i.

lion, and bare away wyth them the egle of
golde that was therupon, wherof the kyng
was full sori for it, soo that he wolde have
4 taken agen his crowne in to the handes of
hys barons / seyng that he wold not be
noo more theyr kyng / by cause that they
had faylled hym, and had habandouned
8 hym for the four sones of aymon / And
sayd to theym / that they shold crowne
reynawde therwyth, soo sholde he be their
kyng, ¹For thei loved hym better than they
12 dyde him; And how oliver sayd to charle-
magn / that he shold take agen his crowne,
and that he shold yelde hym mawgis that
he had taken as he robbed the pavylion, for
16 he abode there alone; And how charle-
magne toke agen his crowne / and was
right glade of the pryse of mawgys that he
hated² so moche /

20 **H**ere sheweth the histori, that whan reynaude, the
sone of aymon, sawe that the kyng charlemagn
was goon agen to his ooste / he made his baner to ryde
before hym / and rayled his folke togyder / And whan
24 he had mounted the mountayn of mountfawcon / he
called his folke, & sayd to them / ‘My frendes, put
yourself in ordynance, & take on your waye towarde
mountalban / and I, my bredern & mawgis, shall come
28 behynde / For I fere me leest the frenshemen, that
ben so wroth that we have dyscomfyted them so,
shall folowe for to hurte vs yf they can / and yf they
doo / we shall better suffire the payne than our folke /

Reynawde orders
the greater part
of his folk to
return to
Montalban,

¹ Fol. X. vi. back. ² hasted, *orig.*

I wolde not for noo good that rowlande & olivere
 sholde moeke wyth vs, nor that thei sholde fynde
 vs in dysaray.' 'By my soule,' sayd alarde / 'brother
 reynawd,¹ ye speke well & wysely.' And thenne their 4
 folke put theymselfe in ordenauce. and thei abode
 behinde tyll that their folke had passed balencon /
 And whan the moost parte was passed, he² toke iii.
 thousand men of the best of his folke, & sayd to 8
 thother, 'goo your wayes to montalban, For I wyll goo
 assayl the kyng charlemagne in his pavylion, what
 so ever it hap of it / And soo shall I shewe³ his folke
 what I can doo / and that I am a man for to seke 12
 hym, and not he me.'

while he with
 three thousand
 men assails the
 Emperor's
 pavilion.

Whan reynawd had sayd this, he cam to the
 water of Balencon / and passed over ¹wyth
 his thre thousande men¹ / And they rode soo longe⁴ 16
 that they came to the oost of Charlemagn / that was
 wroth more than mesure requyreth, ⁵by cause that he
 had loste the feeelde ¹agenste Reynawde.¹ And whan
 Reynawd sawe the pavylion of Charlemagne / he sayd to 20
 his bredern / and to all his folke / 'I pray you that ye
 governe you wysly' / 'Syre,' sayd richard ¹the hardy,¹
⁶'he that wyll be enhaunced in price / he oughte not to
 loke soo nyghe but he must ieoparde for to conquere 24
 worshyp.'⁶ and whan rychard had sayd so / he set
 hande to his swerde, & spored his horse wyth the
 spores. & went streyght to the pavylion of charle-
 magn, and cut of the cordes, & made it falle doun 28
 to the erthe wyth the egle of golde massy, that was
 of grete value. whan reinawd sawe this, he called
 mawgis, & sayd to him / 'Cosin, com hider / helpe

Reynawde goes
 straight to
 Charlemagne's
 pavilion,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. A. i. back. ² Regnault, F. orig.

³ luy et a ses gens, F. orig. A. i. back.

⁴ luy et ses gens, F. orig. A. ii. ⁵ Fol. X. vii.

⁶⁻⁶ Qui veult en pris monter Il ne doit regarder de si pres :
 mais se doit mettre a laventure pour conquerer honneur et
 pris, F. orig. A. ii.

me to bryng away this gayn' / 'syr,' said mawgys,
 'wyth a good wyll.' and they lighted a fote, & toke
 the egle of golde, ¹that was soo rishe that noo man
 4 wyste what it was worthe; ¹ & reynawd said to his
 folke / 'My lordes, smite now well, & feyn not your
 self / for he that beginneth a game, he ought to see an
 ende of it to his proufflyte, yf he can' / Who thenne
 8 had seen the folke of charlemagn arme theim & com
 oute of their tentes, & renne vpon the sones of Aymon,
 he wold have merveyllid / and it was pite for to see
 the grete slaughter that was doon there / whan mawgis
 12 had put the egle of golde in sure handes / he went
 agen to the paylyon of charlemagn, & he fonde the
 kyng, and sayd to hym / 'By my hede, sir emperour,
 ye have troubled vs sore a long while, but ye shal bye
 16 it full derely at this hour, your comyng in to gascoyn,
 & y^e dethe of my fader, the duke benes of aygre-
 mount / For I shall gyve to you suche a stroke that ye
 shall never make werre to vs nor to none other.' And
 20 with this he bare vp his spere for to have shoved
 it thurgh y^e brest of charlemain; but charlemagn
 abode not the stroke, but he torned hymself a side,
 & y^e spere entred in to the bed of the kyng well
 24 ii fote. And whan ²charlemagn sawe this, he was a
 ferde, and he beganne to crie 'moumtioye, saynt denys.'
 And thenne he sayd / 'Ha, fayr nevewe rowlande,
 where are you now?' Whan mawgis herde calle
 28 rowlande, he loked aboute hym, & sawe not reynawd
 nor his bredern / for thei had put theimself to the way
 to retorn home agen.

32 **O**ver long taryed mawgis in thost of charlemagn /
 for reynawd was all redy passed over balencon /
 and rowland & oliver were all redy com to the calling
 of charlemagn, sore afrayed / and whan mawgis sawe
 theym, he made noo lenger taryeng / but gaaff the

and with the help
 of Mawgis takes
 possession of the
 golden eagle.

The folk of
 Charlemagne
 attack them
 fiercely.

Mawgis attempts
 to slay the
 Emperor,

who calls on
 Roland to help
 him.

Mawgis finds
 that the Sons
 have gone,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. X. vii. back.

and tries to
follow them,

but is attacked by
the Emperor's
folk,

and is finally
overthrown by
Oliver,

spores to his horse, & went after reinawd as fast
as his horse myght renne. And whan he wold have
passed balencon, he met wyth a grete company of the
folke of charlemagn. and mawgys smote one of theym 4
soo harde in the sheelde / that he overthrewe bothe
horse & man to therthe; and after that he smote the
sone of mylen of puyll, so that he cleved his sheld
a sondre, & cast hym down to the grounde with a 8
wounde mortall / and thenne he cryed 'montalban,'
& sayd, 'Ha, fayr cosin reynawde, where be you?
socour me for god. For if ye lose me, ye shall have
harne therat.' And thenne mawgis thought well that 12
Reynawd was gooñ / This hangynge, came oliver thugh
the prees, & cam vpon mawgis, & smote him so harde
that it abode not nother for sheelde nor for courset of
stele, but he made hym a wounde in his brest, and 16
caste hym down to the erthe /

Whan mawgis felt hymself thus hurt & over-
throwen, he was ryght wrothe for it. Soo
rose he vp quy[c]kly vpon his fete, & toke his swerde 20
in his hande, ¹& dyde merveyllles of armes¹ / And
the nighte was very derke, that almost the one knew
not thother. and whan olyver saw mawgys defende
himself so well / he sayd to hym / 'I know not the 24
knyghte whom thou art; but, & thou yelde not thyselfe
to me, I shall ²now smyte of thy hede from the
sholdres.' 'what is thy name?' sayd thenne mawgis /
'for & thou be a good man / I shall yelde me to the, 28
& elles not, knyght.' 'my name is oliver of vyeune.'
Whan mawgis herde hym named, he knewe him well /
and sayd to hym, 'Ha, gentyll knyghte olivere, I
yelde me to you vpon your feyth, & vnder suche 32
a condycion that ye shall not deliver me to charle-
magn / for yf ye deliver me in his handes, I am deed
without remedy, & he shall make me deie shamfully as

who takes him
prisoner,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. X. viii.

a theef.' 'By my feyth,' sayd oliver, 'this wyll I not
do / for I dare not hide you from charlemagn. but
yelde you / & I promise you that I shall helpe you to
4 my power for to make your apoyntmente wyth the
kyng' / 'Sir,' sayd mawgis, '& I yelde me to you
vpon your trouth'¹ / and toke his swerde to him.
& oliver toke it, and after made hym to light vpon a
8 lityll horse, and brought hym to the pavyllion of
Charlemagn, where they fonde not the kyng, by cause
he was all affrayed, as ye herde afore / And whan oliver
sawe that he fonde not charlemain / he was sore a ferd
12 that mawgis shold scape from him thurgh his incan-
tacyons & wytehecraft, and sayd to hym, 'Mawgis, ye
knowe how I have taken you by armes, & that ye are
my prisoner / I wyll that ye gyve me your feyth truly
16 that ye shall not goo oute of wythin, wythout my
leve' / 'Sire,' sayd mawgys, 'wyth a good wyll' / and
thus he dyde swere this to oliver. And whan oliver
had taken the othe of maugys / he made hym to
20 be vnarmed / and made his wounde to be wrapped /
and gaaff hym a mantell vpon hym, & made hym to
lie vpon a bed / Now shall we leve a lityll to speke of
charlemagn, of oliver, & of mawgis / and shall shewe
24 of reynawd & his bredern, what thei dyde whan thoste
of charlemagn was moved / and how thei wonne the
egle of golde, that was of so grete value / & how
reynaud said to his bredern / 'lordes, lete vs se now
28 for to quyte vs wel / for it were not good for vs for² to
tary here ony lenger.' And thenne he made to wyth
draw his folke, and made theym put to the waye /
And as they wente / Rycharde sayd to Reynawd /
32 'Syre, we have goten a ryche proy, thanked be god /
For Charlemagne sha l be many a longe day wrothe
therfore' / 'Certes,' sayd Reynawde, 'fayr broder, ye
saye trouth; & also we have slayn a grete mayne

promising at the same time to plead his cause before the Emperor.

Oliver takes him to the pavilion of Charlemagne, who is not there;

he begs Mawgis to swear that he will not escape.

Mawgis swears this willingly.

Reynawde withdraws his folk from the battle,

and goes towards Montalban with the golden eagle.

¹ yrouth, *orig.* ² Fol. X. viii. back.

of his folke.' 'Ha, god,' sayd thenne alarde, 'where
is our cosin mawgys / For I see him not here.' 'Broder,'
sayd ryeharde / 'be not a ferde for mawgys / for I
beleve that he is goon to mountalban afore vs.' 'god 4
be wyth him where soever he be,' sayd reynawde,
'For he is ryght sage / and a noble knyght / I wolde
not for all the golde in the worlde that my cosin
mawgis had ony harme.' 8

¶ We shall leve a lityll to speke of Reynaude & of
his bredern, that are bounde to mountalban, glad of
their proy / And shal now speke of Charlemagn, that
was soo sore wrothe, as I have sayd afore. 12

Whan Charlemagn was from hys arneys, he felle
in a swoune for the grete aigre that he had of
that he had be thus dystressid / And whan he was
com agen to hymself, he sent for the duke Naymes, 16
the bisshop Turpyn, escouff the sone of oedan, for
Salamon of breten, Richarde of normandy, therle
Guidellon, & for Oger the dane. and whan thei
were all gadred togider, the kyng began to shewe to 20
them his *complayntes* in this maner, 'Lordes, I have
kepte & mayntened you vnder my tucyon the space of
XL¹ yeres ²& more,² that noo man hath not wronged
you of a peny / and ye have no neighbour that dare 24
aske you ony thyng. Now, me semeth, by cause that I
am now old, that I am but halfe a man, & yet not so
gode as I wold be / and I may not be a kyng without
you ; for whan ye faylle me, I am no kyng / ye knowe 28
well that ye have left me for love of reinawd / wherof
I am right sori, as ³I may well / for reynawd hath
taken me where I was habandonned of you, & he hath
chased me out of y^e felde ; certes, I am worse than 32
madde of this that ye have forsake me for reynawde /
And sith that it is thus wyth me / I seke not to lyve

Charlemagne
summons his
barons together,

and complains of
their infidelity
to him,
and says they
would rather
have Reynawde
for their king ;

¹ cinquante, F. orig. A. iii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Fol. Y. i.

ony lenger, nor to be kyng ony more / and now I take
 to you the crowne, to thende that ye shall gyve it vnto
 reynaude whan ye wyll, and that ye make hym kyng
 4 of Fraunce, For I wyll be no more your kyng' /

he offers to resign
 his crown.

Whan the xii peres of Fraunce & the other lordes
 herde Charlemagn speke so sorowfully, they
 were sore abashed, that there was noo man so hardy
 8 that durste saye one worde. And thone loked vpon
 the other & were ashamed. And whan the duk
 Naymes of bavyre vnderstode y^e wordes of Charle-
 magne / he put hymself forthe and sayd, 'Syr emperour,
 12 god forbede that ye shoold doo as ye say / for it were
 grete shame to vs all, & also to you. but I wote
 well that we have misprysed agenst you in that we
 have supported reynawd / but ye oughte to consider
 16 that we have doon / was by no malice, but for good
 entenyon / For we wende to have made the peas
 of the werre that hath endured so long / wherby many
 good true men are deed / but sith that we see that it
 20 playseth not you to make peas wyth the foure sones of
 Aymon / take agen your crowne, & be not wroth wyth
 vs / and we shall promyse you that we all shall serve
 you wel & truly / and that we shall take Mountalban
 24 or a moneth be paste, or elles¹ we shall deye all / and
 fromhens forthon he *that* shall spare the sones of
 Aymon shall be slayn of vs' / Thenne sayd the kyng
 Charlemagne, 'lete all this alone; I telle you for
 28 certeyn that I shall never be your kyng / but ye yekle
 to me Reynawde or Mawgis, the cursed thief / that
 hath mocked me soo oftē' / And whan Charlemagn
 had sayd this, he² entred wythin his pavyllion sore an
 32 angred. And thenne cam there oliver, that was sore
 abashed of that he sawe the king make soo evyll
 chere / and after, he sayd to charlemagn, 'Syre, wherof
 are ye soo sore angry' / 'by my feyth,' sayd the duke

Naymes speaks
 on behalf of the
 barons,

and justifies their
 conduct towards
 Reynawde;

he begs the
 Emperor to take
 back his crown,
 and vows that
 Mountalban shall
 be besieged.

Charlemagne says
 he will be their
 king no longer,

and goes to his
 pavilion in great
 wrath.

¹ ellis, *orig.* ² Fol. Y. i. back.

Oliver goes to the Emperor,

naymes, 'he hath shamed vs ; for he hath forsaken his crown & his royame.' 'Syr,' sayd thenne olyver, 'doo not soo, but take agen your crowne, & be our lorde ¹and our kyng.¹ And who dooth not your commaundement, ⁴chastyse hym in suche a maner that men take ensample therby' / 'Oliver,' sayd charlemagn, 'ye speke for noughte / for I wyll not doo it / but I have reynawde or mawgis dede or quycke' / 'Syre,' sayd olivere, ⁸'pardonne vs thenne / and I shall deliver to you mawgis or evyn.'

and promises to deliver Mawgis into his hands.

Charlemagne consents to take back his crown if Mawgis is delivered to him.

'**D**am̄p oliver,' sayd charlemagn / 'I am not a chyld wherof men oughte to mocke wyth / For ¹²I wote well that mawgys doubteth you of noo thyng' / 'Syre,' sayd olivere, 'yf ye wyll promyse me that ye shall take agen your crowne, & that ye shall kepe vs as ye have doon a fore tyme / I shall bryng hym ¹⁶now afore you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd charlemagn, 'yf ye doo it, and that I maye have hym at my wyll / (For I hate hym moost of all men in the world) I shall doo all that ye wyll desire of me / and also ²⁰I shall gyve you londes ynough that ye shall be contente of me. For yf mawgys were not, the four sones of aymon myghte not endure agenst me / for yf I had theym in pryson, and thoughe I had sworne ²⁴to kepe theym, yet shold ²that theef mawgis² stele theym awaye fro me.' 'Syre,' sayd oliver, 'I shall brynge hym to you wythoute ony doubte.' And thenne oliver went to his pavylion, & rowlande wyth ²⁸hym / and many other knyghtes, for to see mawgys. oliver sayd thezme to mawgis, 'Mawgys, ye must come to charlemagn.' 'oliver,' sayd maugis / 'ye have betraied me / but ³I wote well that charlemagn shall ³²be more curteis than ye have be / for he shall doo me noo harme / and lete vs goo to hym in the

Oliver tells Mawgis that he must come before the Emperor,

1-1 omitted F. orig. A. iv. 2-2 II, F. orig.

³ Fol. Y. ii.

name of god, whan ye wyll' / And theⁿe oliver leded and leads him to
 mawgis to charlemagn. and whan he was wythin the Charlemagne's
 pavilion, he went streyght to the kinge, & sayd to
 4 hym / 'Sire, ye have promysed me, that yf I brought
 mawgis, *that* ye sholde take agen your crowne, And
 that ye shold kepe vs to ryght as ye have doon a fore
 tyme' / 'Certes,' sayd charlemagn, 'it is trouth /
 8 and yf ye kepe your covenauⁿt, I shall doo that I
 have promysed you.' 'Now holde you, sir,' sayd
 oliver, 'here mawgis, that I deliver vnto you for
 to doo your playsur wyth hym, y^e whyche I have
 12 take & conquered bi force of armes.' Whan the kyng
 charlemagn sawe mawgys, he was so glad that noo
 man myght be more ; and after he sayd, 'by my feyth,
 now have I one parte of my desire. o, false theef
 16 mawgys, now I holde the / now shalt thou be rewarded
 of thi pride that thou haste shewed vnto me whan
 thou barest awaye myn egle of golde / and for all
 the good tornes & theeftes that thou hast doon in thy
 20 dayes! For many tymes thou haste angred me sore,
 wherof thou shalt be now payd after thy deservyng' /
 'Syr,' sayd theⁿe mawgis, 'ye shall doo wyth me
 what it playse you, for I am now in your handes /
 24 but I counseylle you for the best, that ye lete me goo,
 and that ye make peas wyth reynawde & wyth his
 bredern / for ye shall gete no thyng by my deth ; &
 my cosins ben suche that thei shall avenge it right wel
 28 by force of armes / and yf ye doo as I saye / ye shall
 have with you the flower of knyghthode of all the
 worlde' / 'Ha, thef,' sayd Charlemain / 'how ferfull
 thou art now / Certes, this that thou sayst shall avaylle
 32 the noo thyng' / 'Syre,' sayd mawgys, 'I am noo
 theef. Now canne I not doo noo thyng, sith that
 I am in your handes / And whan ye shal have put me
¹to dethe, ye shall doo me no more no thyng, and

and leads him to
Charlemagne's
pavilion.

The Emperor
with great joy
threatens Mawgis
with severe
penalties for his
enmity towards
him.

Mawgis says the
Sons shall revenge
his death,

¹ Fol. Y. ii. back.

and that
Charlemagne
shall be sorry
for the deed before
twenty-four hours
are past.

yet ye shall be sory for me or ever xiiii.¹ owres comen
at an ende' / 'Ribawde,' sayd charlemagn, 'speke not
soo boldly; for, and I can, thou shalt have an evyll
nyghte or ever thou escape me; nor the glotons, thy 4
cosins, shall not helpe the therfro, but *that* I shall
make the deye in dyspyte of all thy wytehe crafte
that thou canste doo.' ¶ Now we shall leve a lityll to
speke of charlemagne & of mawgis, and we shall speke 8
of the good knyghte reynawde, of alarde, guycharde,
and of the lityll rycharde hys brethern.

Reynawde and his
brethren arrive at
Montalban,
and are gladly
received by the
Lady Clare.

Whan Reynawd was departed from the oost of
charlemagn, ²as I sayd byfore² / he rode so 12
long that he came to mountalban, & his folke wyth
hym / And whan the lady wyste that her lorde came,
she came hym agenste / and said to him, 'Syre, ye be
right welcom / have ye deliverde rycharde' / 'ye, 16
vereli,' sayd Reynawd, 'god gramercy.' 'and blessed
be god,' sayd the lady. and thenne she wente to
rycharde, & kyssed hym more than ten tymes. and
there was a chere & a feest made ryght amyable / 20
And after they had made grete ioye / Reynawd began
to demaunde after his cosin / and the lady answerde,
'my lord, I knowe noo tydynges of him' / and whan
reynaude herde that, he was sore agast of it / and 24
toured hymself towarde his bredern, & sayd to
theim, 'My bredern, I praye you thāt we maye knowe
whether our cosyn mawgis is com or not / and goo
seke hym in his lodges / For happli he is goon for 28
to vnarme hym selfe.' And ineontynente guycharde
& richarde soughte hym at his lodges, & asked for
hym to two of his men, the whiche sayd that they
had not seen hym sith he was gon wyth theym. 32
And whan they herde that, thei were full sory, &
went agen to their broder reynawd, & tolde him how
they cowde not fynde hym / Whan reynawd vnder-

Reynawde asks
after Mawgis.

Guycharde,
and Richard look
for him,
but his men say
he has not
returned.

¹ xxiiii, F. orig. A. v. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

stode *that*¹ they had not fonde him / he began to make
 more sorow than yf all his bredern had be deed /
 and thenne, who had seen the grete mone that alarde,
 4 guycharde, & the lityll rychard made² for theyr cosin² /
 he wold have had grete pyte for to see theym, for
 thei pulled their heeres from theyr hedes, & scratched
 their visages³ / whan the good lady sawe the grete
 8 sorowe that reynawd her husband, & his bredern
 made, she felle doon in a swoun⁴ to thertl. I promyse
 you he that had seen that sorow, how herde herted
 that he were, cowde not have kepte hym fro wepyng.

The Sons sorrow
 grievously for the
 absence of
 Mawgis.

12 **A**fter that reynawd had thus made grete sorow, he
 refrayned hym-elf a lityll, & thenne sayd /
 ‘ha, my cosin maugys, well ye have stolen yourself
 from vs / and what shall we doo from hens forth,
 16 sith that we have lost you’ / Whan they had made
 theyr mone in this maner a long while / reinawde sayd
²to his bredern &² to his folke, ‘My lordes, I praye
 you that ye leve your sorowe, for by noo sorow the
 20 mater canne not be remedyed / I praye you recomforte
 yourselfe / for I wyll put me agen to the waye, for
 to goo to the woode of y^e serpent, for to speke wyth
 the abbot of saynt Lazare, to wyte yf he can telle
 24 vs ony tidynges; for my hert iudgeth me that a fore
 xxiiii houres I shall knowe the certeinte / and fare
 wel, my bredern, tyll I com agen.’ ‘ye speke well
 and wysely,’ sayd alard, ‘but we shall goo wyth you
 28 for to kepe you.’ ‘Certes,’ sayd reinawd / ‘ye shall
 not come one fote wyth me’ / And thenne reynawd
 went in to his chambre, and made hym to be armed,
 & came & lighted vpon bayard his good horse /
 32 and yssued out of mowntalban / the sheelde at the
 necke / and the spere in hande, & cam to baleneon /
 and passed over the water. and whan he was over

Reynawd begs
 his lordes to ceas
 their sorrow,

and says he will
 go to the Abbot
 of St. Lazare for
 tidings of his
 cousin.

He mounts
 Bayard,

and goes to the
 river Baleneon,

¹ Fol. Y. iii. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ moult asprement, F. orig. A. v. ⁴ swonn, orig.

where he finds
two pages
belonging to the
Emperor's folk.

the water, he fonde two laddes, that cam to water
theyr horses from the ooste of Charlemagne. Whan
the laddes sawe reynawd, that was soo grete / and
was all a lone / they sayd to hym / 'Syre, what 4
be you, that are a lone / ye seme to be a noble
man?' 'Chyldren,' sayd reynawd, 'I am of rypus
folke, that dyde scape whan the sones of aymon
hanged hym at mountfawcon.' And thenne he sayd 8
agen to theym / 'what dooth the valiaunt kyng
Charlemagn / soo it is souper tyme wyth hym.'
'syr,' sayd the laddes, 'the kyng is well mery, &
maketh good chere; and he hath forgotten all the 12
sorowe that he dyde make for your mayster rypus,
For men have broughte to hym mawgys, that he
hated soo moche' / 'Now telle me,' sayd reynawde,
'is mawgys deed?' 'Syr,' sayd the two laddes, 'he 16
is yet alive.' whan reynawd vnderstode that maugys
was a live, his herte lepte all in his bely for grete
ioye; and thenne he sayd, 'my fayr chyldren, blessed
mote you be, sith that mawgys is not deed / Now 20
I fere me not that he shall deye this daye.' All thus
as reynawd spake this, the laddes went theyr wayes /
and reynawd abode alone thynkyng at the ryver
side / and whan he had thoughte ynoughe, he said to 24
hymselfe / 'fayr god, what shall I doo / I wote not
now what shall I thynke or saye / for yf I goo
assaylle charlemagn atte his souper, the nyghte is
derke / and he shall wene that I have grete folke 28
wyth me / and he shall be a ferde to lese mawgys /
and thus he myghte kille hym anone. but sith
that I knowe somoche of hym, I shall tary tyll to
morowe; and yf he bryngeth hym thenne for to be 32
put to deth / I shall deffende hym wyth my power /
or elles² I shall deye wyth hym' / Here leveth the
history to speke of reynawd, that is at the ryvers side

The pages tell him
that Mawgis is
in the Emperor's
hands,
and still alive.

Reynawde
resolves to rescue
Mawgis on the
morrow.

¹ Fol. Y, iii. back. ² ellis, *orig.*

of balencon all alone vpon bayard / and retorneth to speke of charlemagn, kyng & emperour of fraunce.

CHAPTER XVI.

4 ¶ How the kyng Charlemagn wold have
doon hanged Mawgys incontynent after
that oliver had deliverde hym to hym /
but ¹thrughe the meane of the XII peres
8 of fraunce, that at the request of mawgis
were his surety for one nyghte oonly / he
dyde so moche that he scaped with his
honour, and acquytance of theym that
12 were his suretyes. And he broughte
wyth hym to mouztalban the crowne &
the swerde of the [kyng] Charlemagn that
same nyghte / and also the swerdes of all
16 the peres of fraunce, wherof themperour
was ryght sory ; and how the kyng charle-
magn sente worde to reynawd that he
sholde sende hym agen hys crowne & his
20 swerd, and all that maugis had borne
awaye wyth hym / and he shold gyve
him trews for two yeres / to the whiche
thyng reynawd graunted, wherof happed
24 many grete evylles afterwarde /

In this party sheweth the history, that whan charle-
magne sawe hym seased of mawgys, he called
rowlaude, oliver, ogyer the dane, the bysshop turpyn,
28 rycharde of normandy, guydellon of bavyere, & the
duke naymes, and sayd to theym / ‘My lordes, I

¹ Fol. Y. iv.

Charlemagne tells his barons to prepare a gallows, in order to hang Mawgis before supper-time.

Naymes counsels Charlemagne to wait until daylight for the death of Mawgis.

Mawgis pledges his faith to the Emperor not to escape,

praye you asmoche as I came, that ye doo make a grete galehous, for I am delibered that, afore souper, mawgis the grete thief shall be hanged by the necke¹ / for yf all the worlde had sworne the contrary, yet⁴ shal I not kepe hym to the daye were com.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke nymes, 'sith that it playse you that mawgys shall deye, ye shall make hym deye by a nother maner of wyse, yf ye doo after me' / 'And⁸ how thenne?' sayd charlemagn. 'Syre, I counseyll you that ye hange not mawgys by nyghte / for reynawde & his bredern shold mocke you / and thei shall saye that ye durste not make hym deye by daye¹² lighte for fere of theim. and therefore, sir, abyde tyll the day becom /²and thenne maye ye doo execusion vpon hym wyth worshyp.² And whan the tyme shall be com that ye wyll sende hym forth / sende many¹⁶ folke wyth hym / that and³ reynawd & his bredern com there for to⁴socour hym / that they maye be take / and hanged wyth hym' / 'Naymes,' sayd the kyng / 'ye mocke wyth me / for yf this thief scape²⁰ me / I am defamed' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgis, 'yf ye be a ferde that I shold goo awaye / I shall gyve you surety that I shall not goo'⁵ / 'Who is that,' sayd Charlemagne, 'that shall be thy suerty / is there²⁴ ory man in the worlde so hardy that dare take this?' 'Syr,' sayd mawgis / 'I shall finde ynowe, if it playse you.' 'now shall we see,' sayd Charlemagn, 'how ye shall fynde theym' / And thenne mawgis²⁸ loked abowte hym, and sawe the xii peres. soo called he olyver, and sayd to hym, 'Syr oliver, ye promysed me whan I yelded me to you / that ye wolde helpe me towarde charlemagne. Now I requyre you that ye³² wyll be my surety, yf it playse you' / 'wyth a good

¹ et estrangle, F. orig. A. vi.

²⁻² pour le faire pandre. F. orig. A. vi. back.

³ and = if. ⁴ Fol. Y. iv. back.

sans prendre congie de vous, F. orig. A. vi. back.

wyll,' sayd oliver, 'vpon my liff & my goodes I shall
 be your surete' / 'and ye, syre rowlande,' sayd mawgis,
 'shall ye not be also for god, my surety / and ye,
 4 duke naymes; and ye, ogyer / and ye, escouf; and ye,
 bysshop turpyu / and ye, damp rycharde of nor-
 mandye; and ye, guldellon of bayyere / I praye you
 all that ye wyll be my surete, for the love of the good
 8 knyght reynawd' / 'Mawgis,' sayd thenne the duke
 naymes, 'wyll ye promyse to vs vpon your feyth that
 ye shall not go from vs wythout our leve' / 'ye,' sayd
 mawgis, 'vpon my feyth' / And thenne came the
 12 duke naymes wyth the other peres of fraunce byfore
 the kynge charlemagne, and sayd to hym, 'Syre, we
 wyll be surete for mawgis, vpon our lives and vpon
 our londes that we holde of you, that he shall not goo
 16 away wythout your leve, and also of all your company /
 & we shall deliver hym agen to you to morow in the
 mornyng¹ for to doo wyth him what ye wyll.'¹ 'My
 lordes,' sayd the kynge / 'sith that ye wyll be his surete /
 20 I remyse hym in to your keypyng, by suche a condycion,
 but² that I have hym to morowe in the mornyng³erly,
 ye shall lese all your londes, And ye shall never maye
 retourne in to douce Fraunce agayne' / 'Syre,' sayd
 24 oliver, 'we graunte it as ye have sayd' / 'Lordes,'
 sayd the duke naymes, 'sith that this is doon / lete vs
 goo recomforte mawgis / For he is well sory' / 'Lordes,'
 sayd thenne mawgys to theym again, 'Sith that ye
 28 have doon me one good torne / doo me a nother /
 I praye you gete me some mete / for I am yll a
 hungred.' Whan Charlemagn vnderstode mawgis
 speke / he loked vpon hym, and sayd to hym all
 32 lawghyng / 'And shalt thou ete?' sayd Charlemagne /
 'ye,' sayd mawgis, 'yf I canne have ony mete.' 'Now
 here,' sayd Charlemagne, 'what it is of this devyll

and asks the
 twelve peers of
 France to go
 surety for him.

Naymes makes
 Mawgis promise
 not to escape
 without their
 leave,

and the peers all
 swear to be surety
 for him.

Mawgis asks for
 food,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² but = except.

³ Fol. Y. v.

here that asketh for mete / and soo lityll a terme he
 hathe to live. For and I were in his plighte / I sholde
 not mowe have corage for to ete.' 'Syre,' sayd the
 duke naymes, 'ye saye yll / For who that hath eten 4
 well, he is better at his ease / wherof I praye you, that
 ye lete hym have some mete.' And thenne the kyng
 washed his handes for to goo to souper, and sayd,
 'where shall mawgis be for to ete?' 'Syr,' sayd 8
 rowlande / 'he shall be well by you.' 'Nevewe,'
 sayd the kyng, 'ye saye right well, For here shall we
 be sure of hym / and I had thoughte for to doo soo /
 For I sholde not dare truste hym to be by none other 12
 man.' And thenne the kyng was set atte the table /
 For as longe as the souper lasted, he durste not ete nor
 drynke / leest that Mawgys sholde werke witchcrafte
 vpon hym / but mawgis ete ryght well, For he had a 16
 goode appetyte to his mete / And whan oliver sawe
 that, he beganne to lawghe, and shewed rowlande, and
 after sayd to hym / 'Have ye seen how the kyng
 durste not ete all this souper / for fere that mawgys 20
 shold werke wytchecraft vpon hym' / 'Surely,' sayd
 rowlande, 'it is true.' After souper ¹Charlemagn called
 his stywarde / and sayd to hym / 'stywarde, I praye
 you brynge me XL.² torches, and that they brenne al 24
 the nyghte' / 'Syr,' ³sayd the stywarde³ / 'I shall doo
 your commaundement.' And whan Charlemagne had
 ordeyned this, he retorned hym towarde Rowlande /
 and sayd to hym, ' 'Fayr nevewe, I praye you that ye 28
 and oliver, and all the xii peres of Fraunce, that ye
 wyll wathe to nyghte wyth me for to kepe this thief
 mawgys. and make an hundred men to be armed /
 that shall whatche wyth vs. and make the playe at 32
 the tables & at the chesses⁴ / to thende that none of

and goes to supper
 with the Emperour
 and his barons.

The Emperour
 fears that Mawgis
 will work witch-
 craft upon him;

he commands the
 XII Peers to
 keep watch over
 Mawgis all night.

¹ Fol. Y. v. back. ² treute. F. orig. A. vii.

³⁻³ omitted. F. orig.

⁴ Et aussi a tous jeux a celle, F. orig. A. vii. back.

vs falle a slepe / And also make a thousande knyghtes
to make gode watche wythoute / to the ende that
yf mawgys sholde escape vs, they sholde take hym
4 agayne' / And whan Charlemagne had ordeyned this /
he set hym down vpon his bed / and he made mawgys
to set down by hym / And of that other parte, Row-
lande, Oliver, Ogyer the dane / and all the xii peres
8¹ rounde aboute the bed¹ / 'Syre,' sayd thenne mawgys,
'where shall I slepe' / 'what saye ye?' sayd Charle-
magne, 'wyll ye slepe?' 'ye, syre,' sayd mawgys,
full fayne / 'yf it playse you to suffre me' / 'By my
12 soule,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye shall have evyll rest
here, For ye shall not slepe as longe as ye be a live /
For ye shall be hanged tomorowe atte the spryngyng
of the daye.' 'Syre,' sayd mawgys / 'ye doo me
16 grete wronge. Wherfore have I gyven you surete,
but oonly that I maye have my ease for soo longe as I
have for to live / Other suffre me to take my reste,
and that I maye slepe / or elles² holde quyte my
20 suretees' / 'Certes, false theef,' sayd charlemagne, 'all
this shall not avayll the / For I wyll that thy suretes
goo quyte / and dyscharged / But therefore ye be not
oute of my handes' / And thenne he made to be
24 broughte a grete payre of yrens, and fetred hym wyth
theym, bothe hys fete togyder, And³ gare the cheyn
to be fastened harde at a pyller. and wyth all he
gaaff hym a grete coler of yren abowte his necke /
28 wherof the kynge kepte the key hymselfe. And
whan mawgys was arrayed of this facyon, Charlemagne
sayd to hym / 'By my soule, mawgis, ye shall not
escape me now' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgys, 'ye mocke
32 well with me. But I telle you now byfore the xii
peres of fraunce, that I shall see mountalban or it be
to morowe pryme.'

Mawgis enquires
of the Emperour
where he shall
sleep.

Charlemagne
fastens irons
upon the hands
and feet of
Mawgis,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² ellis, *orig.*

³ Fol. Y, vi.

and would have slain him,
but Roland pleads for his life.
Charlemagne says he will hang Mawgis to-morrow.
Mawgis makes a charm, and sends them all to sleep.

Whan Charlemagn vnderstode this that mawgys sayd to hym / he trowed to have wexed mad all quycke. Soo he stode vp & set hande to his swerde, and cam to maugys all wrothe for to have 4 smyten of his hede. But whan rowlande sawe that, he auanced hym & sayd to the kynge / ‘Syr, for god, mercy / for yf ye slewe hym / we ben all shamed for evermore. Syre, ye ought not to take hede to that he 8 sayth to you / For that that he sayth / he sayth it like a man *that* is in dyspeyre. And how myghte that be that he sholde escape you as ye holde hym nowe?’ ‘verely, my neuwe, I wote not how / but that he here 12 a fore tyme hath soo often mocked me / maketh me to doubte of hym / but at all aventure I shall leue hym in peas tyll to morowe that he shall be hanged’ / ‘Sir,’ sayd Rowlande, ‘ye saye well. Thenne all they that 16 were there beganne to playe at the tables¹ & atte the chees,¹ and many other games. And whan [it] came that they had played longe, they beganne all to have grete luste to slepe / And whan mawgys sawe that, he made 20 his charme. And whan he had made it / they beganne all to fall in a stronge slepe; and charlemagne hymselfe slepte soo harde that he fell backwarde² vp on his bed. And whan mawgys sawe that Charlemagne was soo 24 faste a slepe / and all the twelve peres of Fraunce,¹ and all the company of theym¹ / He beganne to³ make a nother charme / that was of suche vertue that his feters that were on his fete, and the coler and the cheyn 28 of yren, felle all to the grounde a sondre; ⁴and thenne mawgys rose vpon his fete / and sawe Charlemagn, that slept so well grovelinge wyth his hede a wrye / and he toke thenne a pelow, and righted vp his hede with. 32 And thenne he vngirded him, toke Ioyous his swerde,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² bakewarde, *orig.*

³ Fol. Y. vi. back.

⁴ Et quant maugis vist ce il sault en pieds, F. orig. A. viii.

and gyrde it abowte hym / and after he wente to Row-
land / and toke from hym durandall his good swerde /
and after he toke hawteclere from olivere, and cortyne
4 from ogyer / And after this he went to the couffres, and
toke there-out ¹all the treysour of Charlemagne, & wente
wyth all this streighte to mountalban. And whan
mawgis had taken all this / he toke an erbe, and robbed
8 Charlemagnes noose & his lippes wyth it / and vnghosed
him / and after he shoved hym wyth the fynger / and
sayd to hym, 'awake, syre emperour! I promysed you
yesternyghte that I sholde not go wythoute I sholde
12 take leve of you / ²farewell, I goo now²' / And whan he
had sayd this, he wente oute of the pavyllion, and set
hym to the waye towarde mounzalban. And whan
Charlemagne vnderstode that mawgis had sayd to hym /
16 he rose vpon his fete soo wrothe that men cowde be no
more / and called vpon his xii peres that he cowde not
awake. And whan he sawe that, he bethoughte hym-
selfe of an herbe that he had broughte wyth hym from
20 beyonde the grete see / and toke it and robbed wythall
the nose, the mouth, and the eyen of rowlande / and
in like wyse to all thother xii peres of fraunce / and
incontynente they were awaked / and rose vpon theyr
24 fete sore abashed / and whan they were all awaked /
they beganne to loke one vpon a nother, And the firste
that beganne to speke was the duke Naymes, that sayd
to the kynge, 'Where is Mawgys?' 'By my soule,'
28 ³sayd charlemagn, 'ye shall deliver hym me agen / for ye
have lete hym goo wylfully / For yf ye wolde have suffred
me to have hanged hym yesterdaye, I had be otherwyse
ridde of him.' 'Rowlande,' sayd olivere, 'sawe ye hym
32 goo hens' / 'Naye, by saynt denys,' sayd rowlande.
'I saw hym well goo,' sayd Charlemagne / 'Syre,' sayd
rowlande, 'ye oughte thenne to have tolde vs of it, For

He takes Charle-
magne's sword,
and the armour
of Roland and
Oliver,

then robs the
Emperour of his
treasures,
and departs to
Montalban.

Charlemagne
awakes, and dis-
covers the flight
of Mawgis;

he arouses the
XII Peers and
Roland.

¹ la couronne et le tresor, F. orig. A. viii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. ³ Fol. Y. vii.

Roland discovers
the loss of his
sword,

he shold not have escaped soo' / And in sayenge this,
Rowland loked at hys side, & he sawe not durandall
his swerd / wherof he dyde caste a grete syghe. And
thenne charlemagne sayd to hym, 'Nevewe, where is 4
your swerde / by my hede, I knowe well that the theef
mawgys hathe bewytched vs / For none of vs hath his
swerde / ¹and / also he hath my hosin wyth hym,¹ now
hath he well mocked vs / 8

and all the peers
sorrow over the
subtilty of
Mawgis.

Whan the xii peres of fraunce saw that they had
lost all theyr good swerdes, they were ryght
sory for it, more than ony man can saye. And after,
rowlande sayd, 'by my feth, mawgys hath wzonne a grete 12
gayne, whan he bereth awaye thus our swordes / For
they ben more worthe than is all parys / And whan
Charlemagne perceyved that his cofres were open, he
wente anone and loked in, and he was sore an angred / 16
whan he founde not his crowne, nor the best parte of
his treysur / wherof he made grete sorowe, and after
sayd, 'Ha, false¹ theef mawgis, full lityll I have geten
of the & of thy takynge!' And who thenne had seen 20
the sorow that the xii peres of fraunce made, wolde
have had noo luste to lawghe. ¶ Now shall we telle
you a lityll of mawgys, that went as fast as ever he
cowde towarde mountalban / And he came to passe 24
over the water of Balencon, atte that place where Rey-
nawd was full hevy / and full of sorowe / by cause
he knew noo certeyn tidynges of mawgis / but whan
mawgis had passed over the water / bayard smelled 28
hym & began ²to crye, and came towarde Mawgys /
wolde Reynawde or noo. And whan mawgys sawe
Reynawde, he knewe hym well, & sayd to hym, lawgh-
ynge / 'Knyght! what be ye that rydeth at this tyme 32
of nyghte' / and Reynawd sayd to hym, 'ye know
well that I am your cosin Reynawde, y^e sone of
aymon' / and thenne he lighted from bayarde / and

Mawgis comes
to the river
Balencon, and
finds Reynawde
there, in great
grief for him.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. A. viii. back. ² Fol. Y. vii. back.

cam to mawgys, & kyssed hym by grete love many
 tymes, and thenne sayd to hym / 'Fair cosin, thanked
 be our lorde that I see you deliverde from the handes
 4 of Charlemagn' / 'By my feyth,' sayd mawgys, 'ye
 forgate me well behynde.' 'Cosyn,' sayd reynawde,
 'by my soule, I cowde not doo therto, for I have be
 here sith yesterdaye evyn. And I promyse you that I
 8 was delibered for to have socoured you, or elles to have
 deyed wyth you.' 'My cosin,' sayd mawgys, 'I thanke
 you! light vpon your horse, and lete vs goo to mount-
 alban.' Whan reynawde was vpon his horse agen, he
 12 sayd to mawgys, 'My cosyn, what is it that ye have
 laden?' 'Cosyn,' sayd mawgys, 'it is the crowne of
 Charlemagne / and his swerde Ioyous / durandall, the
 swerde of rowlande / and the swerdes of all the xii
 16 peres of fraunce' / 'cosyn,' sayd reynawd, 'ye have
 wrought wel, god gramerci; but of the swerde of ogyer,
 me dysplayseth' / 'Cosyn,' sayd mawgys, 'I have doon
 it all wyfully, to thende *that* the kyng sholde marke
 20 therby none evyll / and that he were not apeched of
 treyson.' And thenne he shewed hym all the caas / and
 the maner that Charlemagne had holde hym / 'cosyn,'
 sayd reynawde, 'ye dyde ryght well' / And whan he
 24 had sayd thys / they went on theyr waye towarde mount-
 alban. And they mette in theyr waye alarde, guychard,
 and the lityll rycharde, that came rydyng / makyng
 grete mone for doubte of Reynawde. and whan rey-
 28 nawd saw them com, he sayd to them / 'Whether go
 you, my fayr bredern' / 'sir,' said thei, 'we went
 sekynge after you.' 'Ye have founde me,' sayd Rey-
 nawd, 'And I have fonde our cosin mawgys' / And
 32 whan they vnderstode this tydynges, they were ryght
 gladde, & thanked our lorde of it. And after, Alarde
 sayd to mawgys / 'Fayr cosin, where became ye that
 ye cam not wyth vs agen?' 'Alarde,' sayd mawgys,

They meet
joyfully,

and Mawgis
shows Reynawde
all the swords
he has taken,
and the crown
of the Emperor.

They ride towards
Montalban,
and meet the
three brethren
on their way.

Mawgis relates
his adventures
to them,

‘whan rycharde was entred wythin the paylyon of
charlemayn, and had take the egle of golde, I taried
wythiñ the paylyon for to slee charlemagne, And it
lacked but lityll *that* I slewe hym / and whan I trowed 4
to have comen after you, I fonde a grete rouwte of
knyghtes that arested me / and so I defended me of all
my power. And thenne came olivere of vyenne, that
overthrewe me down; and I yelded me to him for his 8
prysoner / the whiche deliverde me to Charlemagne,
that wold have made me to be hanged shamfully, but,
lord, I thanke you / I have doon soo moche that I am
escaped.’ ‘Cosin,’ sayd alarde, ‘it is well happed to 12
you’ / whan they had devysed longe ynoughe / they
went to mountalban, where they made grete fest / whan
they were com there, it is not to be asked yf the good
lady clare was well glad, For incontynent she dyde to 16
be made redy dyverse metes for the dyner. And whan
they ¹had eten, they went to rest / for they were wery,
²& speycially reynawd & mawgis wold fayne have slept /²
And the nexte daye they wente to here theyr masse 20
at the chyrche of mountalban / and whan the masse
was doon / Reynawde called mawgis his cosin & his
bredern, and sayd to theym, ‘Lordes, shewe me the
boty that ye gate yesterdaye.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd rycharde, 24
‘gladly, syth it playse you’ / And thenne he toke the
egle, that was of golde massi / and of precyous stones,
and gaaff it to Reynawd. and whan Reynawde saw that
that gyfte [was] so ³riche / he was glad of it / bycause 28
of y^e grete valure of it / reinawd called mawgis, & sayd
to hym / ‘cosyn, what shall ⁴we doo with this egle’ /
‘My cosyn,’ sayd mawgys, ‘me semeth that ye oughte
to put hym a bove vpon the apple of the grete towre ²of 32
this castell,² to thende that charlemagn & all his ooste
maye see it.’ ‘By my soule,’ sayd reynawd, ‘ye saye

and how Oliver
took him before
Charlemagne.

The Sons, with
Mawgis, all feast
joyfully at
Montalban.

Richard shows
Reynawde and
Mawgis the
golden eagle
which they
captured from
Charlemagne,

¹ hay, *orig.* ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. B. i. back.

³ reihe, *orig.* ⁴ Fol. Y. viii. back.

well.' And thei toke the egle, & made it to be borne
 vpon the high tower of montalban. And whan the
 sonne dyde shyne vpon this egle / it casted soo grete a
 4 lighte that it myghte be seen v myles thens / And
 whan Charlemagn & his folke apperceyved it, they were
 ryght sory for it & an angred /

and they set it
 upon the high
 tower of the
 castle.

8 **W**han Charlemagn¹ the grete emperour¹ sawe that
 the four sones of aymon mocked hym thus /
 he called to him rowlade & olivere, and all the other
 peres of fianuce, & sayd to them, 'Lordes, it is sore
 mysshaped tyll vs sith we came in this londe of gas-
 12 cogn / for I have loste my crowne, & ioyous mi² swerde,
 & myn egle of golde, that was of soo grete value as ye
 all knowe / and ye all have lost your goode swerdes,
 wherof we ben well shamed / and also we have ben
 16 chased from the felde shamfully / Now have well y^e
 four sones of aymon shamed vs all, through that false
 thief mawgys. wherfore, my fayr lordes, I complaine
 me vnto you, praying that ye wyll helpe me to avenge
 20 me vpon theym; for they have doon you shame, as well
 as to me' / The^{ne} sayd the xii peeres / 'sire, we be
 redy for to doo all that ye wyll.' 'I wyll,' sayd the
 kyng, 'that ye ogyer / also the duke naymes, and ye
 24 bysshop turpyn, & ye escouff, the sone of oedoñ, that
 are of the kindred of reynawde / that ye goo to mount-
 alban, and soo telle to reynawde, to his bredern &
 mawgis, that they delyver me agen my crowne / Ioious
 28 my swerde / and myn egle of golde / and the swerdes
 of you all / And I shall gyve [t]hey^m trews for two
 yeres. And I shall doo all myn oste to retorn agen
 in to frauce' / 'sir,' answerde oger, 'I shall wyth a
 32 good wyll do³ your commaundement / but I fere me of
 reynawd that he wyll kepe vs prisoners' / 'Ha, ogyer,'
 sayd Charlemagn, 'ye fere hym but lityll.' Whan the

The Emperor
 perceives how the
 Sons mock him,

and complains of
 their conduct to
 his peers,
 whom he calls
 upon to help him
 against them.

He sends Ogier
 and Naymes to
 Montalban,
 to demand from
 Reynawde his
 crown and trea-
 sure, and promises
 to grant him
 peace for two
 years.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. B. i. back.

² bonne espee, F. orig. B. ii. ³ Fol. Z. i.

The Barons
depart, and reach
the gate of
Montalban.

barons herde the commaundement of the kyng, they
made no taryeng, but lighted on horse backe and rode
to mountalban. And whan they were com to the
drawbrydge, the porter that kepte warde vpon the gate 4
sayd to theym / 'Lordes, what be ye?'¹ 'my frende,' sayd
Ogyer / 'we are of the folke of Charlemagn / goo your
waye to Reynawd, and telle hym that the duke naymes,
the bysshop turpyn, escouffe the sone of oeden, & 8
ogyer the dane wold speke wyth hym' / 'My lordes,'
sayd the porter / 'I shall goo to hym Incontynent; and
thenne he went to Reynawde, & shewed hym howe
foure knyghtes were at y^e gate that wolde speke wyth 12
hym. 'what ben they?' sayd Reynawd. 'My lord,'
sayd the porter, 'they tolde me that thone is called the
duke Naymes, that other the bysshop turpyn / and a
nother escouff the sone of oedon / ²and the fourth² is 16
named ogyer the dane.' Whan Reynawd herde this,
he stode vp, & sayd to his brethern / 'My lordes, here
come four valiaunt knyghtes & wyse / I beseche you
that we shewe to theym that we ben noo children for 20
to be rokked a slepe' / 'Cosin,' sayd mawgis, 'ye speke
well & wysly / Me semeth³ it were good that we sholde
knowe wherfore they com, or they entre, to thende that
we may best answeere to theym.' Thenne they wente 24
to the gate / and made the brydge for to be lete down
And whan it was down, Richard yssued oute first vpon
the brydge / and went agenst theym, & made to theym
grete honour,⁴ & sayd to theym, 'My lordes, ye be 28
right welcom! this castell is at your commaundement /
For I holde me soo sure of my brother Reynawd, that
I dare offre it to you' / 'Cosyn,' sayd the messagers,
'gramercy' / And thenne Reynaud avauzced himselfe, 32

The porter
announces their
arrival to
Reynawde,

who goes forth
with his brethern
to meet them.

Richard welcomes
them with great
honour,

¹ qui estes devant ce pont, F. orig. B. ii.

²⁻² et aultre, F. orig.

³ se dist regnault, F. orig. B. ii. back.

⁴ et si les salua, F. orig. B. ii. back.

and saluted theym honourable / and after toke ogyer
 by ¹the hande / and he hym / and the other thre he
 broughte to the dongeon / where they were receyved
 4 honestly by the lady clare, the wyff of Reynawde /
 And whan Reynawd had receyved theim, he made
 them to set vpon a benche; and thenne he sayd to
 theym, 'Fair lordes, I praye you that ye wyll telle vs
 8 wherfore ye be com, For ye com not wythoute a grete
 cause' / 'Ye knowe well, syr Reynawde,' sayd ogyer,
 'that all we that ben here have ever loved you wel /
 And I promyse you, yf it had be at our wyll / ye sholde
 12 have had goode peas wyth the kyng charlemagn; but
 many tyme he hath rubrayd vs therof² / ³Ye must knowe
 that your cosin mawgis hath shamed vs all / For we were
 his surete to charlemagne, vpon oure ooth to deliver
 16 hym at his wyll. And the sayd mawgis is come hither
 wythout our leve agenst his promyse; and that worse
 is / he hath robbed the crowne of the kyng charle-
 magne, & his swerde / and all⁴ the swerdes of vs all
 20 twelve peres / Wherfore charlemagne sendeth to you
 worde by vs that ye see here / that ye deliver hym
 agen his crowne / the egle of golde, and all our
 swerdes / And he shall gyve you trews for ii yeres, and
 24 he shall doo retorne all his armee in to fraunce' / After
 that oger had sayd this, Mawgys stode vp & spake by
 leve of reynawd,⁵ and said, 'Lordes, ye ben right wel-
 com in this castell of mountalban⁶ / And yf it playse
 28 you, ye shall not speke noo more of this mater now,
 and ye shall abyde this nyghte wyth vs / and to
 morewe ye shall have an answeere of that ye have
 sayd' / 'Reynawd,' sayd thenne ogyer, 'wyll ye kepe
 32 that mawgys hath sayd?' 'ye, wythout fawte,' sayd

and they are well
 received by Lady
 Clare.

Ogier delivers
 his message to
 Reynawde.

Mawgis begs the
 Barons to defer
 the matter until
 the morrow,
 when they shall
 receive an answer.

¹ Fol. Z. i. back.

² que nous sommes tieulx *que* vous, F. orig. B. ii. back.

³ Regnault, F. orig. ⁴ aussi, F. orig.

⁵ et de ses freres, F. orig. B. iii.

⁶ et a tres grant joye receux, F. orig. B. iii.

Ozier consents
to remain a night
at the castle.

reynawd¹ / ‘Sythe that it playseth you,² we shall abyde
for the love of you.’ And thenne mawgis went to the
stywarde of Mountalban / and devyseyd hym the metes /
wherof the ³knyghtes of Charlemagne sholde be feested 4
wythall, and tolde that they sholde be well served /
what soever it costed. ‘and see that the grete cuppe be
borne afore the duke naymes / the whiche I dyde con-
quere at reyns.’ ‘My lorde,’ answerde the stywarde, 8
‘doubt not ye shall well be served at my power.’ And
thenne mawgys came agen.⁴ And whan Reynawde sawe
hym come, he called hym, & sayd to hym / ‘my cosyne,
I praye ye see that we be well served.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd 12
mawgys, ‘I have purveyd for it all redy’ / And [whan]
reynawd vnderstode hym, he was glad of it / and beganne
to devyse wyth the folke of Charlemagne right honestly
and of many thynges. And whan he thoughte that 16
the mete myghte be well redy, he and his bredern toke
the four knyghtes, and brought theym to the hall to
theyr mete. And whan they were there, Mawgys made
theim wasshe / and thenne he toke the duke naymes 20
and made hym sit down / and my lady clare nexte hym.
And he made sit down the bysshop turpyn & reynawd,
and thenne ogyer & alarde / and after guycharde &
escouf the sone of Oedon / and thenne the lityll 24
rycharde. And whan they were all set atte the table /
the metes of the fyrste cours were broughte to the
borde, and thenne the other one after a nother by goode
ordenaunce & fayr. And to seye the trowth, they were 28
well and honourable served,⁵ and of many & dyverse
servyses of royall metes⁵ / And after that they had well
eten atte theyr ease / the duke naymes called reynawde,
and sayd to hym, ‘Goode cosyne, I pray you that ye 32
wyll delibere your self for to gyve vs a good answer

Reynawde takes
them into the
hall, where they
are entertained
royally,

and honourably
served.

Naymes requests
Reynawde to give
his answer to

¹ omitted, F. orig. B. iii. ² se dist ozier . . . F. orig. B. iii.

³ Fol. Z. ii.

⁴ devers les aultres dont il estoit party. F. orig. B. iii.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. B. iii.

of that ye have herde of vs' / 'Lordes,' sayd reynawde, 'I shall doo it in soo moche that the kyng shall have a cause to be contente of me, For I shall doo
 4 all that he wyll for to have peas & his love wythall / and that ¹for the love of the other, my lordes, that be here now.' And thenne ²Reynawd made to brynge the swerde of Charlemagn, and the swerdes of the twelve
 8 peres / and also the crowne & the egle of golde. And whan Ogyer sawe this, he beganne to lawghe, and sayd / 'By my soule, Reynawd, ye had here a fayre gayne yf ye had kepte it.' And whan Rychard sawe that his
 12 brother wolde deliver the egle of golde / he began to saye / 'By saynte palle, my fayr brother, ye shall not doo soo / ye shall not delivere agayne that I have wonne well and truly by force of armes' / 'Broder
 16 Rycharde,' sayd Reynawd / 'lete me doo, I praye you.' 'I wyll not,' sayd Rycharde, 'by my soule / for Charlemagn hymselfe smote me whyle that I was prysoner wythin his pavylion full shamfully ³wyth a staff'³ /
 20 'Lordes,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'lete this a lone, And take we that Reynawde gyveth to vs in thanke, for he hath doon ynoughe.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the bysshop turpyne, 'he dooth soo.' And thenne they toke
 24 the crowne of Charlemagne & all theyr swerdes; And whan thei had theym / Ogyer sayd to Reynawde, 'My cosin, I counseyll you that ye come wyth vs, and alarde [and] guycharde⁴ shall abyde here for to kepe your
 28 castell' / 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'I feere me to sore that the kyng wolde make me to be kylled owtrageously' / 'Come on hardly,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'For we shall lede you well and surely; For syth that ye shall
 32 be wyth vs / ye ought not to fere noo thyng' /

Charlemagne's demand.

Reynawde consents to the conditions of Charlemagne,

and delivers up the crown and golden eagle to Ogyer.

Richard is very angry with Reynawde for his concessions to the Emperour.

Ogyer asks Reynawde to come with him to Charlemagne.

¹ pour l'amour de vous et de tous les aultres messeigneurs qui icy sont. Et a celle heure regnault, F. orig. B. iii. back.

² Fol. Z. ii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ Richart et Maugis, F. orig. B. iii. back.

Reynawde con-
sents,

‘Lordes,’ sayd thenne Reynawde, ‘I shall doo your
commaundement vndre your assuryng.’

and they all mount
their horses.

Whan Reynawde was accorded for to goo wyth
the duke Naymes / and wyth the bysshop 4
turpyñ, wyth ogyer the dane, and escouff the sone of
Oedon, they lighted all vpon their horses; and Rey-
nawde mounted vyon bayarde & armed hym / And in

Alarde accom-
panies them.

lyke wyse dyde Alarde / And whan the duchess Clare 8
sawe that Reynawde her lorde wold goo ¹wyth the
folke of charlemain / she cam byfore them / and
kneled down byfore theym, & sayd to theym / ‘My
lordes, I thanke you moche of the favour that ye dyde 12
shewe ²to my broder rycharde & ²to mawgys / now
agayne I beseche you that ye wyll have reynawde for
recomended, my lorde & my dere husbonde, the whyche
ye lede wyth you’ / ‘Madam,’ sayd ogyer, ‘have noo 16
doubte that reynawde shall have ony harme / For

The Duchesse
entreats the
Barons to protect
her husband.

we sholde not suffre it for noo thyng, for to lese bothe
lyff and goodes’ / And thenne they put theym to the
waye for to goo thens / and reynawd toke ten knyghtes 20
wyth hym for to bere hym felishyp / Whan they
were come to the ryver of balencon, thei soughte after
the passage, and passed over / And whan they were
all over, Ogyer begann to saye / ‘Lordes, ye wote 24
well all is of eyyll courage agenste reynawde, wherfore
I doubte me of hym that we have broughte here wyth
vs / I counseylle that we knowe fyrste the wylle of
Charlemagn or ever he see reynawd’ / ‘Ogyer,’ sayd the 28
duke naymes, ‘ye speke well & wysly; we shall goo
speke, ye & I, to charlemagn, and reinaude shall abyde
here tyll we com agen.’ ‘Lordes,’ sayd thenne rey-
nawd, ‘I shall doo that ye counseylle me / but I 32
praye you holde me that ye have promysed me / that is,
that ye shall kepe my body & my lymmes from harme.’
‘Reynawd,’ sayd the duke naymes / ‘We shall rather

Ogyer promises to
shield Reynawde
from all harm.

¹ Fol. Z. iii. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. B. iv.

deye than that ye sholde have ony harme.' And
 thenne he and ogyer toke the waye towarde y^e oost of
 Charlemagn / and reynawde abode¹ wyth the bysshop
 4 turpyn & wyth the sone of oedon. Now herken of
 pynabell, a spye that longed to charlemagn / Wyte it
 that the sayd spye was at the ryver side of balencon
 wyth this felishyp / whan the wordes afore sayd were
 8 spoken / whan the spye had wel vnderstonde all the
 conclucion / he stele hymself fro the company, & rode
 a good pas as he myght in y^e world, & cam to charle-
 2 magn, to whom he sayd in this maner / 'Syr, I brynge
 12 you tidynges wherof ye shall be right glad' / 'my
 frende,' sayd charlemagn, 'thou arte welcom. I praye
 you telle me what tidynges ye bryng' / 'Wyte it, syre,
 that I have lefte Reynawd & alarde his brother at the
 16 ryver side of balencon, wyth the bysshop turpyn & escouff
 the sone of oedon / and the duke naymes & ogyer are
 comyng towarde you for to aske leve yf thei shall
 bryng them to you wyth surete' / 'Is it trouth?'
 20 sayd charlemagn. 'ye, wythoute fawte,' sayd pynabel.
 'By my soule,' sayd the kyng, 'I shall rewarde the
 for it ryght well; but kepe wel that ye shewe not
 this to noo man vpon thy liff, for I shall put therto
 24 a good remedy.' And thenne he beheld aboute him
 and saw oliver, & sayd, 'Oliver, incontynent & wyth-
 oute ony deleye / take two hundred knyghtes well
 horsed & well armed / and lede them at the ryvers
 28 side of balencon / where ye shall fynde reynawde &
 alarde / and see that ye take them & bryng them
 hether. and yf ye doo this, aske of me what ye wyll /
 and ye shall have it.' And thenne sayd oliver, 'sire, I
 32 shall well doo your commaundement.'³ and thenne he
 toke with hym ii hundred knyghtes, as charlemagn
 had ordened hym, and toke his waye towarde the ryver

Naymes and
 Ogier ride
 towards the host
 of Charlemagne,
 while Reynawde
 remains with
 Bishop Turpin
 and Escouff.

A spy steals
 away from Ogier's
 company,
 and goes to the
 Emperor, whom
 he tells that
 Reynawde and
 Alarde are at the
 river Balencon.

The Emperor
 commands Oliver
 to take two hun-
 dred men,
 and go to Balen-
 con, and bring
 Reynawde and
 Alarde back with
 him.

¹ tout seul, F. orig. B. iv. ² Fol. Z. iii. back.

³ comandement, orig.

of balencon / Now god thurgh his pyte save the good
 knyghte Reynawde & alard his dere broder / For they
 ben in grete perell of theyr lives. This hangyng, that
 oliver was goon towarde the ryver of balencon / the 4
 duke naymes & ogyer came to thoost / and lighted
 afore the pavyllion of the kyng, & went in / And whan
 they sawe the kyng¹ they made him the reverence¹ / but
²he said noo worde to theim² / whan oger³ sawe the 8
 countenance of y^e kyng^e,³ he sayd to him / 'Sir, what
 semblaunt is this that ye shewe to vs? I mervyll me
 gretly that ye make vs soo evyl chere, seen that we
 com fro thens where ye have sende vs / that was,⁴ to 12
 mountalban / where we have spoken wyth reynawd the
 sone of aimon, the whiche is all togyder redy for to doo
 all that your playsur is, and so he hath deliverd vs
 agen your crowne & all our swerdes / as for your egle, 16
 ye shall have it whan ye wyll.' 'Oger,' sayd thenne
 charlemagn / 'what have ye doon of reinawd / for I am
 sure that ye have brought him with you' / 'syr,' sayd
 oger, 'it is trouth vereli, we have brought him wyth vs 20
 vpon our feyth for to take suretees of you of the trews
 that ye have graunted hym.' 'By saynt denys,' sayd
 Charlemagn, 'I wyll not therof; for if I can have him
 ones in my handes, all the golde in the worlde shall not 24
 save him, but I shall make hym deye a shamfull
 deth' / 'Sir,' sayd oger / 'what saye ye? I mervelle
 me gretly of that ye have sayd' / 'damp^e emperour,'
 sayd thenne the duke naymes, 'soo grete a kyng as ye 28
 be, oughte never to have said suche wordes⁵ as ye now
 have vttred wyth your mouth⁵ for the value of half
 his royame / ha goddis, swete syr, gyve not to yourself

Naymes and
 Oger come to the
 pavilion of
 Charlemagne,
 but he will not
 speak to them.

Oger enquires
 of him why he
 is wrathful with
 them.

Charlemagne asks
 him what he has
 done with
 Reynawde,

and vows he will
 have him slain.

¹⁻¹ Ogier salua charlemaigne moult honnorablement, F. orig. B. iv. back.

²⁻² le roy charlemaigne, ne luy reudit point son salut et ne luy repondit ung seul mot, F. orig. B. iv. back.

³⁻³ vit ce, F. orig. ⁴ Fol. Z. iv.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. B. v.

soo grete a blame / and yf ye doo this that ye saye /
 I promyse you that I, ogyer, the bysshop turpyn, &
 1 the sone of oedon, we shall yelde you evyll for evill,
 4 and yet we shall save reynawd at our power, soo that
 ye shall not doo him harme / sith that we have
 brought hym vpon our feyth' / 'Now shall we see,'
 sayd charlemagn, 'how ye shall conne helpe hym' /
 8 'Syr,' sayd oger, 'yf ye do to vs ony owtrage or
 dishonour, I promyse you we shall forsake the homage
 & the feyth that we owe to you / and we shall doo the
 worste that we can agenst you & agenste your royame' /
 12 We shall now presently speke a lityll of oliver, that
 was goon to balencon for to take reynawd & his
 broder / Wyte it that whan Oliver² was com atte the
 ryver side of balencon, It happed as by fortune that
 16 the sayd Oliver overtoke reynawde soo nyghe, the
 whiche was on fote, that he cowde not have leyser
³for to mount vpon bayarde / and whan reynawde saw
 that he myght not lighte vpon his horse by cause
 20 that oliver had overtaken him soo sore, he was sore an
 angred of it, that almoste he wexed mad all quycke /
 And thenne he torned him towarde the bysshop turpyn
 & towarde escouf, & sayd to them, 'Vasaylles, ye
 24 have betrayed me falsly, & I wolde never have beleved
 it / wherin ye have doon grete synne & grete evyl.'
 'Syre,' sayd the bysshop turpyn, 'I swere to you
 vpon my feythe *that* herof we never knewe noo thyng,
 28 ⁴nor never thoughte it,⁴ & I promyse you *that* we shall
 live & deye wyth you' / and wyth this reynawde
 torned towarde oliver, & sayd to hym, 'Oliver, maye
 ye yelde me agen the goodnes that I shewed to you⁵ in
 32 the playne of valcolours / I knowe that one eurtiesie
 requyreth a nother; For whan ye were to the gronde

Naymes says
they will defend
Reynawde with
all their power.

Oliver finds
Reynawde at the
river-side of
Balencon.

Reynawde accuses
the Barons of
treachery.

¹ escouf, F. orig. B. v. ² de vienne, F. orig. B. v.

³ Fol. Z. iv. back. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. B. v.

⁵ quant mon cousin maugis vous abactit es plains de vaulx
de colleurs, F. orig. B. v.

Roland approaches, and tells Reynawde that he is betrayed.

Ogier follows Roland, and swears that no harm shall befall Reynawde.

Oliver advises that they should take Reynawde before Charlemagne, and beg him to make peace with the Sons.

caste, I deliverde you your horse agen, and holpe you to lighte vpon hym agen.' 'Syr,' sayd oliver, 'it is trouth that ye saye / and I promise you that I am right sory that I have founde you now here, For I 4 knowe noo man in the worlde that wolde doo to you ony harme / but I wold be wroth wyth hym.' This hangynge, that reynawd & oliver spake togyder / there cam rowland, that was departed from the ooste after 8 oliver, for to helpe him to take reynawd / And whan he was nygh, he began to crie, 'Ha, ha / Reynawde, by my soule ye be now taken & betrayed!' And whan he had sayd this, there was ogyer behynde hym, 12 that had followed hym wyth the poynte of the spere / the whyche sayd to hym, 'By my hede, syre Rowlande, ye shall doo noo harme to Reynawde / For the duke naymes and I have broughte hym hether 16 vpon our feyth for to take the suretees of the trews that we have gyven to hym in the kynges behalve, as ye knowe he had charged vs to doo. And I telle you, syre Rowland, yf ye doo to hym ony harme, 20 ye shall doo it to 'vs.' 'Ogyer,' sayd Rowlande / 'ye shall now be an evyll suretee for hym.' 'Rowlande,' sayd Ogyer, 'I make myn avow to you, that yf ye sawte Reynawde, we four² that ben here shall helpe 24 hym agaynste you' / 'Rowland,' sayd thenne Olyvere, 'I praye you that ye lete Reinawde in peas / For I promyse you he dyde ones to me a curteyus torne, and a grete playsure / And now I wyll rewarde hym 28 for it, yf it playse you / and I shall telle you what we shall doo. We shall lede Reynaude byfore Charlemagne. And we shall praye hym that he treateth hym courtesly, And we shall parforce ourselfe to make hys 32 appoyntement. 'Lordes,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'Olyver hath spoken honestly. I counseylle that we lede reynawd to fore Charlemagne, for to see what he

¹ Fol. Z. v.

² omitted, F. orig.

4 wyll doo of hym / And I swere god, yf he wyll doo
 ony owtrage to Reynawde, we shall not suffre it, for
 to deye for it / and we shall helpe hym to save hym-
 selfe, to our power' / ¶ After all thyse wordes, they
 toke them selfe on their waye / for to lede Reynawde
 to Charlemagne.

8 **W**han Rowlande and olyver had broughte Rey-
 nawd in to the pavylion of the kynge Charle-
 magne, Wyte it that the duke Naymes, the bysshop
 Turpyn, Ogyer the dane / also Escouff the sone of
 Oedon, wente never one fote from Reynawde / But
 12 whan Oliverre wolde have presented Reynawde to
 Charlemagne / Ogyer avaunced hymselfe / and sayd
 to the kynge in this maner / 'Syre, ye knowe how ye
 dyde sende vs four that ben here a fore you, in
 16 your message to Mountalban, for to telle vnto Reynawd
 as ye had charged vs / To whome we dyde shew in
 your behalve, that yf he wolde deliver to you agayne
 your crowne, ¹and the swerdes that Mawgys had borne
 20 wyth hym, and the egle of golde, ye sholde gyve hym
 trews for two yeres, and that ye shold doo tourne
 your ooste in to Fraunce agayne. Wyte that Rey-
 nawde hath doon all that we have requyred hym of in
 24 your behalve / And we have broughte hym wyth
 vs vndre your sauff conduytte / and soo we take hym
 vndre our charge that he sholde have noo more harme
 than we sholde. Notwythstandynge, ye have made
 28 hym to be taken / the whyche thyng we wolde
 never have thoughte that ye wolde have doon it /
 Seen that here ben your crowne and your swerdes /
 and the egle of golde ys at your playsure whan ye
 32 wyll have it. And, moreover, we promysed hym that
 yf ye dyde to hym ony harme / that ye sholde do
 it to vs as well as to hym. And I promyse you, yf
 ye doo to hym ony harme / ye shall be gretely blamed

The Barons with
 Reynawde enter
 the presence of
 the Emperor.

Oliver speaks to
 Charlemagne on
 behalf of
 Reynawde.

and tells him, that
 he will regret any
 evil done to him.

¹ Fol. Z. v. back.

for it of all the worlde / But and yf ye wyll werke
honestly here in, and like a true emperour ¹and a
kyng,¹ for to kepe that nether ye nor we be not
blamed for it, sende Reynawde agayne to mountalban 4
wyth this that he hath taken to vs / And whan he
shall be therin agayne / doo to hym the worste that
ye canne' /

Charlemagne
refuses to listen
to Oliver,

'Ogyer,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye speke for noughte, 8
and all your felawes also / For I shall not doo
soo; but I shall doo after my owne wyll, though
ye all had sworne the contrari. And soo shall I
not do of Reynawde as I dyd of the false theef 12
Mawgys' / And whan Charlemagne had sayd thus, he
toured hym towarde Reynawde, and sayd to hym,
'Reynawde, Reynawde, I holde you now / Certes
I shal soo kepe you that ye shall not deceyve me,² 16
as dyd mawgis / ³For I shall make you anone to
be smytten / and cutte in smalle peces, ⁴and thenne
brente all to powder.'⁴ 'Syre,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye
shall not doo soo / and god wyll' / 'Ogyer,' sayd 20
Charlemagne / 'wyll ye deffende agenste me my
mortall enmye' / 'Syr,' sayd ogyer, 'I wyll not
defende your enmyes agenste you / but I promyse you
that I shall defende my trouthe agaynste all men.' 24
'Syr,' sayd thenne Reynawd, 'what is your playsur
that I doo / ye have called me traytour / wyte it that
I was never suche / nor noo man of my linage /
nor I know not in the worlde that sayth that I have 28
be a traytour / or *that* I have doon ony treyson
agaynste you / but that I shold fyghte in the qu[a]rell
agenste hym, body to body.' 'By my feyth,' said
Charlemagne / 'I shall make it to be proved vpon you 32
bi force of armes' / 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'ye speke
now as a kyng, and here is my gage that I gyve,

and vows that
Reynawde shall
be slain without
mercy.

Reynawde pro-
tests his inno-
cence of all
treason towards
the Emperour,

and says he will
fight any man to
prove the truth of
this,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² ne enchanter, F. orig. B. vi.

³ Fol. Z. vi. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. B. vi.

sayeng that I am as true a man as ony that is in
 all the world / and in like wyse all thei of my
 linage' / Thenne Charlemagn sayd to hym / 'Yf ye
 4 gyve me seurtes / wite that I shall take vp your gage,
 and not elles'¹ / 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'I shall fynde
 surete ynoughe.' Thenne he tourned hym & sawe
 ogyer / and sayd to hym / 'sire ogyer, come forthe,
 8 and ye duke naymes, and also the bysshop turpyn,
 and ye escouff the sone of Oedon / be my suretees, I
 praye you / for ye oughte to be soo / Ye knowe that
 I dyde never vntrewth' / 'Reynawd,' sayd the duke
 12 naymes, 'we shall be suerte for you wyth a good
 wyll' /

finding surety in
 the four Barons.

Thenne sayd Reynawde, 'syre, here ben my suretees
 that I take you / are ye contente of theym' /
 16 'Ye,' sayd charlemagn / 'I aske no more' / 'Syr,'
 sayd thenne Reynawde, 'who is that shall make the
 bataylle' / 'by my feyth,' sayd Charlemagn, 'myself
 shall it be' / 'Syre,' sayd rowlande / 'ye shall not doo
 20 so, & ²playse you / For I shall fyghte for you my
 selfe.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawd, 'ordeyn in your place
 suche as it shall playse you.' and whan he had sayd
 this worde / bayarde was taken agen to reynawd,
 24 the whiche lighted vpon & went towarde mounthalban.
 and wyth him went oger the dane, the duke naymes,
 & escouff the sone of oedon, and togider alarde, that
 had be taken as reynawde. And whan thei were
 28 com nygh mounthalban / guychard, rycharde, & mawgis
 sawe theim com, & came theim agenste / and whan
 rycharde sawe reynawde / he asked of him how he had
 doon / 'by my feyth,' sayd reynawde, 'we were not
 32 welcom / For the kyng knewe that we were at
 balencon, where oger had left vs, and he sent anone
 oliver & rowlande for to take vs and were overtaken
 so sodenly that we cowde not lighte vpon our horses;

Charlemagne
 accepts these
 terms.

Reynawde with
 the Barons return
 to Montalban,

and recount all
 their tidings to
 the brethren.

¹ ellis, *orig.*

² Fol. Z. vi. back.

and we were broughte to charlemagn / and I promyse
 you he is a cruell man, fulfilled wyth all cursednes' /
 And thus recounted reynawde to his brethern all that
 ye have now herde a fore / 4

The Sons all feast
 merrily at Mont-
 alban,

That nyght reynawd & his company made good chere
 at mountalban, & made the folke of charlemagn to
 be wel feested by the lady clare, his wyff, right honour-
 able / and after thei had souped wel, they went to bed 8
 for that nyght; and whan the mornyng was com, that
 everi man was vp / reynawde & his felishyp went to
 here masse in the chapell of saynt nycolas, and reynawd
 offred iiii marke of golde / And whan the masse was 12
 doon, Reynawde and all his barons asked after theyr
 armes for to arme them. Whan thei were well armed,
 reynawde toke leve of his wyff afore all the company ;
 and thenne he called to hym his bredern & mawgis / 16
 and sayd to them, 'My lordes, I leve this castel in
 your proteccyon & sauff garde / and I recomende you
 my wyff & my chyl dren / for now I goo fight wyth the
 best knyght of y^e worlde, ¹now I knowe not what shall 20
 betyde of me; wherfore I prai you that ye wyll kepe
 well this castell / for I promyse you, yf I deye, ye shall
 have nede of it. here is oger that shall com wyth me,
 & the duke naymes also / for thei ben my suretees to 24
 the kyng charlemagne.' 'By my soule,' sayd alarde,
 'ye speke for nought / for we shall goo wyth you, &
 we shall bere you company where somever ye goo, and
 soo shall we see the batayll / and how ye shall be mayn- 28
 tened in your right / and yf ye have nede of helpe, ye
 shall fynde vs redy to your socours.' 'By saynt paul,'
 said oger the dane, 'alarde hath spoken wysely' / and
 whan reynawd sawe this, he called mawgys, and sayd 32
 to him / 'My fayr cosin, I praye you that ye wyll
 abyde here, and that ye will kepe all well, sith that my
 bredern wyll com wyth me.' 'Reynawde,' sayd mawgys,

and in the morn-
 ing Reynawde
 arms himself for
 his approaching
 battle with
 Poland.

The brethren vow
 to accompany
 Reynawde,

and Mawgis is
 left to protect the
 Castle.

'I shall doo as it playseth you / and I promyse you that
 mowntalban shall have noo harme thrughe my de-
 fawte' / Whan regnawd had ordened all well / he toke
 4 on incontynent his waye in the feliship of his bredern,
 & of the barons afore sayd. And whan they came
 there,¹ as the bataylle shold be doon, Reynaude lighted
 a fote, & taryed after rowland. ¶ Here levethe the
 8 history to speke of reynawd, of his brethern, & of
 thother barons that were in the company of the sayd
 reynawd, And retorneth to speke of rowland, how he
 & reynawde made their bataylle² thone agenst thother /

CHAPTER XVII.

12 ¶ Here sheweth how reynawde faught agenst
 rowland, the whiche he conquered by the
 wyll of god, & broughte hym to mowntal-
 ban, wherof charlemagn was full hevy &
 16 wroth / and also how mawgys bare the
 empereur Charlemagne to mowntalban vpon
 bayard all a slepe, and delivered hym to
 reynawd in a bed / ³where reynawd laye³ /
 20 and how mawgis after this went away, &
 toke thabyte of a heremite, & left his kins-
 men, & lived pouerli, for he wold not let y^e
 peas of reynaud to ⁴Charlemagn / For the
 24 werre hath lasted long ynoughe.

Now sheweth the tale, that whan rowland saw the
 day, he rose fro his bed, & wente, after he was

¹ au pin de montfaucon, F. orig. B. vii. back.

² et comment leurs armes furent faictes et comment le chāp
 fust devise ne a quil demoura a la fin des armes, F. orig. B. vii.
 back. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. ⁴ Fol. Z. vii. back.

redy, to here masse / and offred a riche yefte vpon the
 awter / and whan y^e mas was doon, rowland asked after
 his harneis for to arme him; and whan he was wel
 armed, he lighted a horsbacke quickly, and thenne 4
 charlemagn sayd to him / 'Fair neuwe, I commende
 you to god, that he lede you to a good waie, & kepe you
 fro deth & fro prison / for ye know that reynawd hath
 right vpon us / and we doo to hym wronge / wherfore I 8
 wold not for the halfe of my royame that ony harme
 cam to you for it' / 'syre,' sayd rowland, 'it is to late
 for you to repent now, for sith that ye knowe ye were
 in the wronge / ye sholde not have accepted the bataylle 12
 that ye have enterprysed; but sith it is so that the thing
 is com so ferre forthe, I can not leve it / but if it were
 to me grete shame; now helpe me god if it playse hym
 thrughe his merci' / Whan rowland had sayd thise 16
 wordes, he toke on his waye for to goo to the pintre of
 mountalban, ¹where as the bataille of reynawd & of hym
 sholde be made¹ / And whan he was nygh mountfawcon /
 he saw reynawd, that awated after him ¹at the sayd 20
 tree¹ / And incontynente he began to crie vpon him, 'by
 god, reynawd, this day shall ye have ado wyth me; & I
 promyse you, that whan ye shall goo fro the felde, ye shal
 never doo faites of armes agenst me, nor agenst no other.' 24
 whan reynawd herde rowland crie so / he cam agenst
 hym, & sayd to hym / 'sir rowland, it becometh not to
 suche a knyghte as ye be, for to threte me thus; & I tell
 you that I am here redy;² and yf ye wyll batayll, ye 28
 shall have it incontynent' / 'reynawd,' sayd rowland, 'I
 am not com here for peas / but kepe you fro me, & ye
 shall doo as a wyse man' / 'Rowlande,' sayd reynaude,
 'beware of me, for I am sure *that* I shall bryng doun 32
 the ³pride of you, that is soo grete.'

Roland prepares
 for his fight with
 Reynawde.

He approaches
 Monfaucon,
 where he finds
 Reynawde await-
 ing him.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Si vous voles paix vous laures a moy . . . F. orig. B. viii.

³ Fol. Z. viii.

Whan reynawde had sayd that worde, he spored
 bayarde wyth the spores, and cam agenste
 rowlaunde, and rowlaunde agenst reynawd / and they
 4 gaaff to eche other soo grete strokes at theyr brestes
 that they brake bothe their speres all to peeces ; and
 wyth the rennyng that they made agenste eche other,
 they recounted the one the other so harde wyth theyr
 8 sheeldes that reynawde muste nedes falle down to the
 erthe / wyth his sadle bytwene his thyes / ¹by cause of
 the gyrtes that brake a sondre¹ / and rowlaunde lost hys
 styropes wythall. And whan reynawde sawe hymselfe
 12 a grounde / he rose vp ryght quyckly, and lighted agen
 vpon bayard with oute saddle / and cam vpon rowland
 wyth his swerde in his hande, and gaaff him so grete a
 stroke that rowland felt hym selfe sore greved wythall /
 16 and whan he sawe that reynawd had stonyed hym so
 sore / he set hande to durandall his good swerde / and
 ranne aspreli vpon reynawd / And whan reynaude sawe
 hym come / he went right fiersly vpon rowland / and
 20 thenne beganne the bataylle to be harde / and sore
 cruell bytwene theym two / And I promyse you they
 lefte not one pece of theyr harneys hole / nether vpon
 thone nor vpon the other / ¹but it were all to brosten &
 24 beten a sondre¹ / in somoche *that* the barons that loked
 vpon them² had grete pyte of thone & of thother. whan
 the duke naymes had beholde a longe while of this
 wonderfull batayll, he began to crie as lowde as he
 28 coude, sayeng in this manner / ‘ Ha, kyng charlemagn,
 ye are over cruel / for thrughe your cruel malice ye put
 to deth II. of the best knyghtes of the world / wherfor,
 ye shall ones abie or longe.’ Whan reynawde saw that
 32 neyther of them two coude not overcom the other, he
 sayd to Rowland, ‘ Yf ye byleve me, we shall lighte down
 a fote bothe, to thende that we kyll ³not our horses /

The battle begins
between the two
knights.

Reynawde is
unhorsed,

but quickly re-
mounts, and
smites Roland
severely.

The fight con-
tinues with great
fierceness.

Naymes calls on
the Emperor to
part them.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² thein, *orig.*

³ Fol. Z. viii. back.

The knights
determine to fight
on foot, for fear
their horses
should be killed;

the combat is
then renewed,

but neither knight
can overcome the
other,

and they both
fall down from
weariness.

The Emperor
prays God to
deliver Roland
from this mortal
combat

For yf we slee theym, we shall never recover none
suche nor soo good.' 'Ye saye well,' sayd rowlande /
'and I am soo contente' / And thenne they descended
a fote vpon the medowe. 'Rowlande,' sayd reynawd, 4
'now are we per to per / Now it shall be seen whiche of
vs two shall be mayster of the place' / And wyth this
they ranne the one vpon thother as proudly as it had
ben two lions. who that had seen thenne the grete 8
strokes and the dangerous that they gave to eche other /
he sholde have sayd that there had be never suche two
knyghtes in all the remenaunt of the worlde. whan
rowlonde sawe that he cowde not wynne reynawd, he 12
came to hym, and toke hym wyth a full arme / and so
dyde reynawde hym. in lyke wyse in maner of wraste-
lynge togyder a grete whyle / wythout that the one cowde
cast down the other by noo waye / And I promyse you 16
that a man sholde wel have goon a myle or ever they
lefte eche other goo, whan they were cowpled ones
togyder / And at the laste, whan they sawe that the
one cowde not caste down the other / they lete eche 20
other goo, the one here, and the other there, for to take
theyr brethe / For they were right very, and sore
traveyllled so moche that almoste they / myghte not
stonde no lenger / and theyr helmes, sheeldes / and 24
theyr armes were all to-cut & broken, and the grounde
where they foughte thus was all to stamped ¹and beten
wyth theyr fete¹ / as men had beten corne there vpon.²

Whan Charlemagn sawe that the one cowde not 28
overmayster the other, and how they were
bothe evyll arayed / he was sore a ferde for his newew
rowlande / And thenne he kneled down vpon his knees,
& heved his handes togyder towarde hevyn, & began 32
to saye³ / 'Good lord, glorious, *that* made worlde, see,
hevyns, and thert^h / and deliverde the holy vyrgyn

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. B. viii. back. ² vopn, *orig.*

³ en plorant, F. orig.

¹margarete from the bely of the horryble dragon / and
 Ionas from the bely of the fysshe / I besече you also
 that ye wyll deliver my nevewe rowlonde from this
 4 bataylle mortall, and sende me suche a token wherbi I
 mai departe thise two knightes from eche other, to the
 honour of the one and of the other.' Whan alarde,
 gycharde & rychard sawe their broder so wery, they
 8 were a ferde of his persone. And thenne they began also
 to praye god that he wolde kepe theyr brother Rey-
 nawd fro deth & from pryson / And whan they had made
 theyr praiers / our lorde, for the prayer of Charlemagne,
 12 shewed a fayr myracle / for he made ryse soo grete a
 clowde, & so thyeke, that they myghte not see eche
 other / Thenne rowlande sayd to reinawd / 'where are
 ye goon, reynawd / other it is nyghte, or elles I can not
 16 see never a whit' / 'Noo more do I,' sayd reynaude,
 'verely' / 'Reynawde,' sayd rowlande / 'I praye you doo
 to me a curteys torne, and a nother tyme / I shall doo
 to you asmoche for you, yf ye requyre me therof.'
 20 'Syr rowlande,' sayd reinawde, 'I am redy for to doo
 all that ye wyll requyre me of, soo that my honour be
 saved' / 'Gramerci, reynawde, of that ye haue graunted
 me / Wyte that the thyng that I wyll desire of you is
 24 this, that ye brynge me wyth you to mountalban.'
 'Syr rowlonde,' sayd reynawde, 'yf ye wyll doo this /
 I shall be right glad therof / By my feyth² I shal goo
 there wyth you wythoute ony fawte, yf it playse
 28 you' / 'Syr,' sayd reynawde, 'god of his goodnes yelde
 you the worship *that* ye wyll now doo to me / for I
 have not deserved it unto you.' 'Syr reynawde,'
 sayd rowlande / 'Wyte that I do this bycause that I
 32 knowe well that ye be in the right, ³and that ye
 fyghte in a goode quarell³ / and I am in the wronge' /
 And whan rowlande had sayd this, he receyved his

Alarde and Guy-
charde also pray
for their brother's
safety.

A miracle is
manifested for the
prayer of the
Emperor,
and a cloud hides
the combatants
from each other.

Roland begs Rey-
nawde to take him
to Montalban,

because he has
done wrong to
fight with him.

¹ Fol. A.A. i. ² se dist rolant, F. orig. C. i.
³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. C. i.

The cloud then disappears, and the two knights mount their horses.

sighte, and sawe as he dyde ¹a fore, and thenne he sawe vylaunche his good horse, and he lighted upon hym / and in like wyse reynawde vpon bayarde / And whan charlemagne sawe this, he was sore abasshed, 4 and began to calle & crye, 'Lordes, lordes, now see! I wote not what I sholde saye / for reynawd ledeth rowland with hym. Now shall I see yf ye shall lete hym goo.' whan charlemagne had spoken thus / he 8 cam to his horse, and lighted vpon him / and he began to crie / 'Now shall I knowe who ben my frendes.' whan the barons of fraunce herde charlemagn speke thus, they spored theyr horses, & ranne after reynawd / 12

Charlemagne calls on his folk to pursue the two knights.

Whan ogyer saw Reynawde come wyth rowland that he broughte wyth hym, he was right glad, and he came agenst reynawde, and sayd to hym / 'Syre, ye have well wroughte this day that ye have taken 16 suche a proye' / 'Ogyer,' sayd reynawde / 'I promyse you rowlande hath lete hymselfe to be taken wyth his good wyll.' 'Thanked be god of it,' sayd the duke naymes. 'Reynawd,' sayd oger, 'goo your waye to 20 mounthalban; and the bysshop turpyn, the sone of oedon, & I shall retorne agen / and we shall tary charlemagne that foloweth after you, and we shall doo so moche that ye shall be well at mounthalban or they 24 overtake you' / 'Ogyer,' sayd rowlande, 'ye saye well / and I thanke you of your curtesie' / Whan they had thus shortly spoken togyder / reynawde & rowlande rode soo faste that they came to mounthalban / It is not 28 to be asked yf rowlande was well feested at mounthalban; I promise you it is not possyble to feste a prynce better nor more honourable than he was at mounthalban / This hangyng, ogyer was come agenste 32 kyng Charlemagne / and he dyde so moche by his fayr langage, that he helde the kyng / tyll that he thoughte that reynawd & rowlande myghte be well at moun-

Ogyer promises to delay the Emperor while Reynawde and Roland ride towards Mounthalban.

¹ Fol. A.A i. back.

talban by that tyme / And whan he had doon soo, he
 spored ¹his horse, and wente to mountalban after the
 other / Where as he myghte well goo wythoute to be
 4 vnbrayed for it / for he was one of y^e suretes of
 reynawde, as ye have herde / and whan charlemagn
 sawe this, he folowed hym vnto the gates / And whan
 he was come to the gate of mountalban / he began to
 8 crye wyth a hie voys, ‘Bi god, reynawd, this that ye
 have doon shall avaylle you lityll, for ye shall never
 have peas wyth me as longe as I am man a live.’ And
 whan he had sayd this, he retorned him fro the gate /
 12 and said to oliver that was there wyth hym / ‘Oliver,
 goo lightly to moun**t**bendell, and bring here all my
 oste / for I will besege all this castell.’ The**me** sayd
 oliver, ‘I shall goo there wyth a good wil, but, & playse
 16 you, ye shall com wyth me, for I promyse you, if ye
 come not there yourself, they shall not come hether for
 me.’ ‘The**me** shall I goo there myselfe.’ and thus toke
 charlemain his waye towarde moun**t**bendell, where his
 20 ooste leye. Whan his folke sawe him come, they went
 agenst hym, & began to saye to hym, ‘Sir, what have
 ye doon wyth rowlande?’ ‘lordes,’ sayd charlemagn,
 ‘rowland is goon to mountalban / but I commaunde
 24 you all, that incontynent, wythout delay that my sege
 be transported all rounde abowte moun**t**alban / and ye
 damp oliver, shall bere the oriflan / and damp rycharde
 of normandy shall lede our oost.’ Whan charlemagn
 28 had commaunded all this, there was none that sayd
 agenst it / but set theymselve to bringe down the tentes
 & pavylions / ²and to trusse & lede their bagages² / and
 caryed all to moun**t**alban /
 32 ³**R**ycharde of normandy went wyth twelve⁴ thousande
 men to balencon, to kepe the passage of the ryver

Charlemagne follows the knights to Mountalban,

and vows he will never make peace with the Sons again;

he commands all his men to lay siege to the Castle.

Richard of Normandy keeps the passage of the

¹ Fol. A.A. ii. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. C. ii.

³ Quant tout lost fut trouffe . . . F. orig. C. ii.

⁴ dix, F. orig. C. ii.

river, while all the
host of Charle-
magne assemble
before Mountalban.

tyll al the ooste were over the ryver. This hangynge,
charlemagn had putte hymselfe a fore, for to see where
he myghte best pitche his tentes and his pavyliions /
for to kepe sege royall ¹afore the castell of Mountalban. 4
And whan all the ooste was come afore mountalban,
the kyng made Incontynent his pavylion to be set vp
byfore the grete gate / And whan all the ooste was sette /
the nyghte watche of the grete towre came to mawgys / 8
and sayd to hym / 'Syr, wyte that charlemagne is come
wyth his oost / and he hath put his pavylion byfore the
mayster gate' / 'Is it true?' said mawgis. 'ye, with-
oute fawte,' sayd the watche / 'Now care not for it,' 12
sayd mawgis / 'for charlemagn seketh his dommage;
and he shall have it soner than he weneth' / Thenne
went mawgys to reynawde / And shewed hym how
charlemagne was come wyth all his oost.² And whan 16
reynawd herde this, he wente to rowlande, and sayd to
hym / 'Syre, ye muste wyte that charlemagne your
vncler hath leyde sege afore vs / but I promyse you that
yf it were not for the love of you / I sholde shewe 20
hym *that* that he hath not doon well.' 'Reynawde,'
sayd rowlande / 'I thanke you moche; but one thyng
I wyll telle you / save your correctyon. Me semeth
that I oughte to sende to myn vncler, the duke Naymes, 24
Ogyer the dane / and also the bysshop Turpyne, that
shall shewe to hym in this maner / Syre emperour,
wyte that Reynawd, for the love of you, ³wyll not gyve
noo yrens to your nevewe, nor he³ wyll not put hym in 28
pryson, but he maketh hym as goode chere as he dooth
to hys owne selfe / And that more is, Reynawde, his
bredern / and mawgys doo presente theymselfe ⁴for to
gyve theym and theyr castell vnto your handes⁴ / soo 32
that theyr lives be saved' / 'Ye speke well and wysely,

Mawgis tells Rey-
nawde how the
Emperor has
come with all his
host.

Roland sends a
message to
Charlemagne,

that Reynawde
and Mawgis will
deliver themselves
to him, if he will
save their lives.

¹ Fol. A.A. ii. back.

² et luy sestoit louge devant la maistresse porte, F. orig. C. ii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴⁻⁴ de eulx rendre a vostre volente, F. orig. C. ii.

syre rowlande,' sayd reynawde / 'and soo I am reddy to
 doo as ye wyll have it.' 'Rowlande,' sayd the duke
 Naymes, 'I dare not goo to hym; ye maye well ynoughe,'
 4 sayd Rowlande / 'for ye be not hated of the kynge.'
 'Duke naymes,' sayd Ogyer, 'we shall goo ¹to Charle-
 magne,¹ yf ye ²wyll doo after me' / And they accorded
 that they two sholde goo togyder to the kynge, for to
 8 shewe vnto hym as Rowlande had devysed / And whan
 thise two prynces / ¹the duke Naymes and Ogyer,¹ were
 come to the pavyllion of Charlemagne, they³ saluted hym
 reverently,⁴ and the duke Naymes spake to hym in this
 12 maner of wyse: 'Syre. emperoure, your nevewe Row-
 lande recomendeth hym humbly to your goode grace /
 the whiche Reynawde kepeth wythin mowntalban for
 his prysoner not vnkyndely, but he maketh to hym as
 16 goode chere / ⁴and as grete honour he bereth vnto hym,⁴
 as he were his owne brother and his soverayne lorde;
 and all this he dooth for your love / And demaundeth
 of you peas,⁴ if it playse you for to graunte it to hym,⁴
 20 by suche maner that he shall gyve you mowntalban /
 and the egle of golde, and he shall lete goo Rowlande
 at his liberte wythoute raunsom. And also he shall
 yelde hymselfe to you / and his brethern in likewyse /
 24 and also Mawgis, for to doo your wyll wyth theym /
 sauff theyr lives / And they shall promyse you, yf theyr
 servyse playseth you, that they shall serve you agenst
 all men, wyth all their power and puyssaunce / soo
 28 that ye shall have cause to thanke theym for it.'

Whan Charlemagne vnderstode thise wordes / he
 shoke all for grete angre / And beganne to
 saye to the duke Naymes, and to the other that were
 32 come to hym, 'Flee out of my pavyllion, evyll folke! I
 merveylle me how have ye durste come here wythin.
 And I telle you that Reynawde shall have noo peas

Ogyer and Naymes
depart with the
message,

and present them-
selves before
Charlemagne;

they deliver the
message.

The Emperor is
so wrath that
he commands
Naymes to fly
from him.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. A.A. iii.
³ thee, *orig.* ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. C. ii. back.

The Barons return
to Montalban.

wyth me, but yf I have mawgys, for to doo my wyll of hym.' Whan the barons vnderstode charlemagne that spake thus / they came oute of his pavylion, and toke noo leve at hym / but returned Incontynente to moun- 4 talban / Whan they were come there, Rowlande and ¹Reynawd asked theym how they had doon wyth Charlemagne. 'Lordes,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'it is no force to be asked after it / For Charlemagne wyll not 8 doo it, but yf men take to hym Mawgys, for to doo his wyll of hym' / ²'Lordes,' sayd Reynawd,² 'I am sory for it / I merveyll how Charlemagn is soo harde herted ; and I make myn a vowe to god / he shall not have 12 Mawgys, thoughe I sholde deye for it' / After these wordes they wente to theyr mete, and Mawgys made theym to be served plenteously and worshyppfully. And whan they had souped, the beddes were heeled, and 16 they wente anoone to bed / And whan Reynawde wolde goo to his bed / he called to hym Mawgys, and sayd to hym / 'Cosin, I praye you that ye doo make good watche to nyghte / For ye knowe that our lives lieth 20 ther vpon.' 'Syre,' sayd mawgys, 'feere not for to slepe well / ²and reste yourselfe.² For I promyse you thys castell shall be well kepte by goddys grace' / And whan all the barons were a bed / Mawgys wente to the 24 stable ³and, saddled bayarde / and thenne he lighted vpon hym / and he cam to the gate, and sayd to the porter, 'My frende, open the gate, for I muste goo oute a lityll / and abyde me here / for I shall come agayne soone' / 'Syre,' 28 sayd the porter / 'I shall doo soo wyth a good wyll' / Thenne wente oute Mawgys streyghte to the pavylion of Charlemagn / And whan he was come there, he beganne to make his cherme / and broughte a slepe all 32 they that were in the oost. And whan he had doon soo / he wente to the bed of Charlemagne, and toke

Reynawde begs
Mawgis to keep
watch during the
night.

Mawgis goes to
the pavilion of
Charlemagne,
and there works
a charm upon the
Emperor,

¹ Fol. A.A. iii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. C. ii. back.

³ de regnault, F. orig. C. iii.

hym in his arnes / and broughte him vpon bayarde /
 And whan he had doon soo / he wente his wayes whom he carries
 asleep to Mont-
 alban;
 agayne to mountalban / and broughte Charlemagne
 4 wyth hym. ¹And whan he was come there agayne, he
 toke Charlemagne from bayarde,¹ and bare hym in to
 his chambre / and layd hym in ²his bed. Whan all
 this was thus doon, He toke a torche and fyred it /
 8 and pyched it bytwene the strawe and the bedsted /
 soo that it helde faste evyn byfore the vysage of
 Charlemagne / And after, he wente to the chambre of
 Reynawd, and sayd to hym, ‘Cosyn, what wolde ye
 12 well gyve that sholde deliver Charlemagn in to your
 handes’ / ‘By my soule,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘I have noo
 thyng but that I sholde gladly give it, soo that I
 myghte have hym here wythin this castell of mountal-
 16 ban.’ ‘Cosin,’ sayd Mawgys / ‘wyl ye promyse me
 that ye shall doo to hym noo harme of his body /
 nother your brethern, nor none of yours / and I shall
 putte hym into your handes evyn anoone’ / ‘Cosyn,’
 20 sayd Reynawde, ‘I promyse³ you that vpon my feyth.’
 ‘Nowe come wyth me,’ sayd mawgys. And thenne
 mawgys broughte reynawde in to his chambre / and
 shewed hym Charlemagne that was in his bed, and he shows the
 Emperor to Rey-
 nawde,
 24 slepte; and after he sayd to hym, ‘My cosyn Reynawde,
 now ye have here Charlemagne, kepe hym soo well
 that he scape not you’ / And whan mawgys had
 delivered Charlemagn to Reynawde / he came to the
 28 stable where he had put bayarde, And toke some
 strawe and robbed his backe wythall, and his hede /
 and thenne he kyssed hym all wepynge, and toke leve
 of hym / And after, he wente and toke the palster and
 32 the cloke, and came to the porter, and gaff hym all his
 other raymentes that he wered afore / and went out of and then issues
 out of the Castle.
 mountalban /

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. C. iii. ² Fol. A.A. iv.

³ proimyse, *orig.*

¶ Now levethe the history to speke of Reynawde /
and of Charlemagne a lityll / and shall shewe of
mawgys, that lefte all his kynred and frendes, ¹and
became an heremyte.¹ 4

CHAPTER XVIII.

¶ How after that mawgys had delivered
Charlemagn in to the handes of Reynawde
his ²cosyn, he wente wythoute ony leve from
mountalban / in to a woode beyonde the ⁸
ryver ³of Dordonne in to an hermytage /
where as he lived like an heremyte a
poure liffe, for to doo penaunce for his
synnes. 12

Now sheweth the history, that whan Mawgys had
delivered Charlemagne for prysoner vnto Rey-
nawde, he wente oute of mountalban wythoute the leve
of Reynawde, and wythoute the knowledge of ony of the ¹⁶
castell / excepte of the porter. And wyte it, that the
sayd maugys wente soo longe that he came to the ryver
of Dordonne / and passed over the water in a bote / And
whan he was over, he entred in to a wylde foreste / and ²⁰
walked wythin it tyll it was none. And whan he had
goon ynoughe thoru[g]h the woode / he behelde a side /
and sawe a lityll hylle / and vpon it a lityll howse in
maner of an heremytage⁴ / he wente to it, and founde ²⁴
the place ⁵devoute and playsaunte⁵ / For a fore the gate
sprange a quycke fontaine. And mawgys wente in to
the chapell / and kneled a fore an ymage of our lady

Mawgis goes over
the river Dor-
dogne,

and finds a little
hermitage in a
wood;

he enters,
and prays,

¹⁻¹ et sen ala hors de *montauban* habitue moult pourement,
F. orig. C. iii. back.

² bon cousin, F. orig. ³ Fol. A.A. iv. back.

⁴ *Quant il cogneut que se estoit ung hermitage* . . F. orig.
C. iii. back. ⁵ moult plaisant, F. orig.

1 that was there¹ / and prayed our lorde that he wolde
 pardonne hym his synnes / And as he was there mak-
 ynge his prayer / a devoeyon toke hym so grete / that
 4 he made his avowe to god that he sholde dwell in that
 place, and that he sholde serve there from that daye
 forthe on, and that he sholde ete none other but suche
 wykde herbes as grewe in the woode. And thenne he
 8 prayed our lorde that Reynawde and his bretherne
 myght have peas wyth Charlemagn. And whan
 mawgys had doon his prayer / he rose vp, and cam
 oute of the chapell / and toke the saddle from hys horse,
 12 and the brydelle / and so lete hym goo to the grasse /
 and wente agen to the chapell² / ¶ But here leveth
 the hystory to speke of mawgis, that was become an
 heremyte, And retourneth to shewe of ³Reynawde and
 16 of his brethern, that had Charlemagne for theyr
 prysoner / wythin theyr castell of mountalban.

vowing to remain
 there and become
 a hermit.

CHAPTER XIX.

¶ How the barons of Fraunce that were atte
 Mountalban / were sory that they cowde
 20 not awake the emperoure Charlemagne that
 Mawgys had broughte a slepe thrughe his
 arte⁴ / But whan the tyme of the charme of
 mawgis was passed, the kynge awoke by
 24 hymselfe, And he founde hymselfe at mount-
 alban / he sware that he never sholde make
 peas wyth Reynawde as longe as he was
 prysoner. And how Reynawde lete hym
 28 goo agayne to his oost vpon his horse

¹ qui estoit moult devoete, F. orig. C. iv.

² pour faire ce quil auoit en pensee, F. orig. C. iv.

³ Fol. A.A. v. ⁴ et apourte a Montauban, F. orig. C. iv.

bayarde / wherof Reynawde repented hym
afterwarde ryght sore. For soone after
that, charlemagn dyde besege mountalban
of so nyghe / that he famysshed Reynawde 4
and his bretherne wythin, wyth his wyff
and chyl dren.

Reynawde asks
counsel of his
brethren, what
they shall do with
the Emperor.

Richard counsels
that he shall be
hung immedi-
ately.

Reynawde coun-
sels for peace with
the Emperor.

In this party sheweth the history, that whan mawgys
had delivered Charlemagne in to the handes of 8
Reynawde / and that he was goon as ye have herde,
Reynawde ealled to hym his brethern / and sayd to
theym / ‘Come hether, my fayr brethern / telle me
what we shall doo wyth Charlemagne, that we holde 12
now in our handes / Ye knowe how longe that he hath
dommaged vs / and hath doon to vs grete harmes wyth-
oute reyson ; wherfore me thynketh that we oughte to
avenge vs vpon hym, sith that we have hym.’ ‘Sire,’ 16
sayd Rycharde, ‘I canne not saye what ye wyll doo of
hym. But, and ye wyll beleve me, he shall be hanged
forthe wyth / For after he were deed / there nys no
man in all Fraunce that we sholde feere ony thyng’ / 20
Whan reynawd vnderstode the counseyll¹ that rycharde
his brother had gyven hym, he loked doun towarde
therthe, and began to ²thynke sore / And whan Rycharde
sawe hym muse soo, he asked him what he thought / 24
and yf he cared who shold doo execucyon vpon the
kyng / ³‘For,’ sayd Richard³ / ‘ye shall not lacke for
that, for none other⁴ shall hange him but myself / and
that I shall doo evyn a noone / yf ye wyll deliver hym 28
vnto me.’ After these wordes, reynawd ryghted hys
hede vp, and sayd, ‘My bredern, ye know well that
cha[r]lemayn is our soverain lorde / And of thother parte,
ye see how rowland, the duk naimes, oger the dane, the 32

¹ counseyll, *orig.* ² Fol. A.A. v. back.
³⁻³ omitted, F. *orig.* C. iv. back. ⁴ ether, *orig.*

bysshop turpyn, & also escouff the sone of oedon, are
 wythin for to make our poyntment wyth Charlemagn /
 for they know well that we ben in the right, & the
 4 kyng in the wrong. And thus yf we kylle hym, be it
 with ryghte or wyth wrong, all the worlde sholde renne
 vpon vs; nor never, as longe as we lyve, we shall not
 be wythoute werre.' And whan reynawd had sayd this /
 8 alard spake in thys maner / 'Broder, ye have spoken
 wysely; but ye see that we canne not have peas wyth
 Charlemagne by noo wyse. Me semeth that we
 oughte to aske it of hym ones for all; and yf he wyll
 12 not / lete vs kepe hym prysoner'¹ / 'Brother,' sayd
 guycharde, 'ye saye well, but my herte telleth me
 that he shall never make peas with vs nor love vs' /
 'Lordes,' sayd rycharde, 'me semeth that we have a
 16 goode hede of Reynawde oure broder, thanked be our
 lorde / the whiche hath governed vs right well hereto /
 Lete hym shyfte with the kyng as he wyl, and that
 that he wyll shall be doon' / 'By my feyth,' sayd
 20 Alard, 'Richarde speketh well' / And whan they were
 all accorded to that / that Reynawde sholde doo,² the
 foure brethern wente to the chambre where Rowlande
 was,² to whom Reynawde spake in this wyse, 'Syre
 24 Rowlande, aryse, I praye yor that ye wyll sende for
 Ogyer, the bisshop Turpyn, and for³ all other that be here
 wythin⁴ of the folke of Charlemayne;⁴ For I wyll telle
 you one thyng' / And whan Rowlande sawe Rey-
 28 nawde⁴ and hys bretherne⁴ atte that tyme of the nyghte
⁴ come in to hys chambre,⁴ he was mervyllled. Never-
 theles he sente for all his felawes / as Reynawde had
 tolde hym / And whan they were all come, Reynawde
 32 stode up and sayd / 'Lordes, ye ben all my frendes,

Alard advises
 that they should
 demand peace
 from Charle-
 magne, or keep
 him prisoner.

The Sons all go to
 the chamber of
 Roland,

¹ le sans le faire mourir par telle maniere que jamais ne nous fasse guerre ne ennuy. F. orig. C. iv. back.

²⁻² Ilz laisserent le roy en dormir et alerent en la chambre de rolant, F. orig. C. iv. back.

³ Fol. A.A. vi.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. C. iv. back.

god gramerey and you / wherfore I wyll not hyde no
 thyng from you / Ye muste knowe that I have here
 wythin a prysoner / by whom I shall have peas, and all
 myn herytaunce agayne.' 'Reynawde,' sayd Rowlande, 4
 'I praye you tell me what he is; For here is noo man /
 but that wolde fayne ye sholde doo well.' 'By my
 soule,' sayd Reynawde, 'it is the grete emperour
 Charlemagn, to whome all Fraunce belongeth.' And 8
 whan Rowland vnderstode these tydynges, he was sore
 merveyllled of it, and sayd, 'Reynawde, ye telle me
 now a wondrefull thyng / How have ye taken myn
 vncle soo lightly? ¹ telle me, & playse you, how ye had 12
 hym here wythin / have ye taken hym by force of
 armes?' 'Naye, verely,' sayd Reynawde ² / 'telle me
 thenne how, I praye you,' sayd Rowlande. 'Wyte it,'
 sayd Reynawde, ² 'that I wote not how mawgys my 16
 cosyn dyde to nyghte / but wel I wote that he hath
 broughte the kynge here wythin, ³oute of hys pavylion, ³
 and hathe layd hym in a bed / in a chambre, where he
 is now fast a slepe.' 20

and Reynawde
 relates to them
 the capture of the
 Emperor.

Roland is sore
 abashed at these
 tidings.

Whan Rowlande and all his felawes herde these
 tydynges, they were gretly abashed ⁴ / how it
 myghte be that mawgys sholde brynge the kynge there /
³'I merveylle moche herof,' sayd the duke naymes ³ / 24
 'For ye knowe well that the kynge made hym selfe to
 be kepte bothe nyghte and daye well sure.' 'Lordes,'
 sayd thenne oger / 'all this hath doon our lord for the
 love of reynawd, by cause he setted hym all to ⁵mis- 28
 cheeff ³agenst Reynawde, ³ and that the werre hathe
 lasted to longe, the whiche shall now be left, wherof I
 thanke god for my parte / For many goode knyghtes

Ogier says this
 has happened
 because the war
 has lasted too
 long.

¹ Car de le auoir pris en bataille ne en champnē son ost et pavillon oncques ne fut si recreant, F. orig. C. v.

² richart, F. orig. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ Seigneurs dist le duc naymes biez fait nostre seigneur a ceulx quil luy plaist, F. orig. C. v.

⁵ Fol. A.A. vi. back.

have loste theyr lives for it' / And whan Ogyer had
 sayd thus / Reynawde toke Rowlande and the other /
 and broughte theym, alwayes spekyng, vnto the cham-
 4 bre, where Charlemagne laye so faste a slepe that they
 cowde not awake hym for noo thyng that they cowde
 doo to hym, For mawgys had chermed him soo harde /
 And whan the barons sawe the kynge soo harde a
 8 slepe / ¹they wondred full sore vpon it, and ¹they were
 greteyly abasshed on it. Thenne spake rowlande fyrste,
 and said, 'Reynawde, where is mawgys that hath
 wroughte soo wel to nyghte? I praye you lete hym
 12 come here / and that he awake myn vncle Charlemagne
 oute of his slepe / And whan he shall be awaked, we
 shall all falle atte his fete / and shal crye hym mercy /
 And soo I praye you² that thoughe yf ye holde myn
 16 vncle in your handes / that ye wyll not be the powder
 for it in your wordes.' 'By my feythe, syre Rowlande,'
 sayd Reynawde / 'I wyll that ye knowe / I sholde
 rather deye than that I sholde saye to my soverayne
 20 lorde a fowle worde; But I shall put me, my goodes,
 and all my brethern to his wyll / to the ende that it
 wyll playse hym to graunte vs peas wyth hym / And
 I wyll goo fetche Mawgis to you / thier to doo wyth
 24 hym what ye wyll' / And thenne Reynawde wente and
 soughte Mawgys, the whyche he cowde not fynde /
 wherof he was full sory / And whan the porter wyste
 that Reynawde soughte after mawgys, he came to hym
 28 and sayd, 'Syre, ye seke hym for noughte, for he wente
 hys wayes oute ryghte now' / 'And how knoweste
 thou of it?' sayd Reynawde. 'Syre, wyte it that this
 nyghte he made me open the gate / and he wente oute
 32 vpon ³your horse bayarde / And he had not / taryed
 longe whan he broughte a grete man and a bygge vpon

The Sons with all
 the barons enter
 the chamber of
 Charlemagne,
 who still sleeps.

Reynawde goes
 forth in search of
 Mawgis.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. C. v.

² pour dieu et pour lamour de moy, F. orig. C. v. back.

³ Fol. A.A. vii.

The porter tells him that Mawgis has gone from the castle and has not returned again.

the horse necke afore hym / ¹and wente in, I wote not where¹ / And soone after he came agayne vpon a nother horse / and he had clothed himself pourly. And thenne he made me to open the gate, and he wente out, and he ⁴ came not sith agayne. And all this is trouthe that I telle you.'

Reynawde weeps tenderly for his cousin,

and tells the barons of Mawgis's departure.

Richard bemoans the loss of Mawgis,

and would have slain Charlemagne,

Whan Reynawd had vnderstonde these wordes, he was soo wrothe that he wyste not what to saye ⁸ nor doo ; For he knewe well by hymselfe that Mawgys was goon his wayes, by cause he wolde noo lenger abyde the wrathe of Charlemagne.² Thenne beganne Reynawde for to wepe full tendrely for his cosin that ¹² was thus goon / And all wepyng, he came agayne to the barons / and sayd to them how Mawgys was goon awaye wythoute his knowledge,³ wherof he was soo wrothe and soo sori that he wente almoste oute of his ¹⁶ mynde. And whan Alarde, Guychard / and Rycharde had well vnderstonde this, they beganne to make grete moone / and sorrowed full sore. And thenne Rycharde beganne to saye, ' Ha, my fayr cosyn Mawgys, what ²⁰ shall we doo from hens forthon, sith that we have loste you / We maye well saye that we ben dyscomfyted, For ye were our salvacyon, our socours / and our hope, our counseyll, our refute, our deffence / and our guyde / ²⁴ For it is not yet longe agoo that I sholde have deyed an evyll deth yf I had not be socoured thorughe your helpe / Alas ! all the hevynes that ye bere of the wrathe that Charlemagn hath agenst you, cometh oonly by vs' / ²⁸ And whan he had sayd soo, he knacked his teeth for angre, and sayd / ' We ben now well all loste, syth that we have loste Mawgys.' And wyth this, he sette hande to his swerde, and wolde have slayne Charle- ³² magne ; ⁴ but Reynawde drewe hym a syde, And the duke

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. C. v.

² ne estre en sa mala grace, F. orig. C. v. back.

³ knowleche, orig. ⁴ Fol. A.A. vii. back.

Naymes and Ogyer sayd thenne to hym, ‘Rycharde,
 Rycharde / refrayne your courage / For it were not well
 doon for to kylle a man that slepeth ; And also, afore
 4 that we shall departe hens, we shall sette all attone,
 and god wylle.’ ¶ Shortely to speke, Oliver and the
 duke naymes spake soo fayr to Rycharde, that they
 made hym promyse theym that he shokde doo noo
 8 harme to Charlemagne / Nevertheles Rycharde lefte
 not to make grete sorowe for his cosyn¹ mawgys that
 he had loste ; For all theym that sawe hym make soo
 grete mone, had pite to see hym. It was not merveylle
 12 yf Rycharde made sorow for Mawgys, For I promyse
 you he had grete nede of hym not longe after, And soo
 had all hys brethern / as ye shall here /

16 **A**lle thus as the four sones of Aymon made theyr
 mone for the love of theyr cosyn maugys, The
 duke Naymes beganne to speke / and sayd in this wyse :
 ‘ By god, lordes, ye doo not well for to make soo grete
 sorow !² I praye you leve this hevynes / And lete vs
 20 begynne to speke of your peas that muste be made
 wyth the emperour charlemagne, that an ende maye be
 had of this werre that hathe endured soo longe ’ / ‘ By
 god,’ sayd Rowlande, ‘ ye be passynge slowe thervpon.
 24 And also we muste fyrste have hys merci, or ever we
 move ony thyng of the peas / For ye wote well that
 I left him by cause that peas shold be made ’³ / ‘ syr,’
 sayd the duke naymes, ‘ ye speke wysely and well / but
 28 how shall we speke wyth hym wythoute Mawgys were
 here / we can not awake hym / And but yf god reme-
 dyeth it / we shall never speke wyth hym.’ But all
 thus as the barons speke in thys wyse, The charme
 32 that Mawgys had sette vpon Charlemagne was come

but Reynawde
 restrains him.

Naymes begs the
 Sous to restrain
 their sorrow for
 Mawgis,
 and consider how
 peace may be
 made with
 Charlemagne.

¹ cosym, *orig.*

² car je ne vis jamais riens gagner en perte que lon fasse
 pour en demener dueil, F. orig. C. vi.

³ qui a trop dure, F. orig. C. vi.

The Emperor
awakes,

and is wrath when
he finds himself
at Montalban;

he swears not to
make peace with
the Sons.

Richard demands
of him how he
dare threaten
them, seeing he is
their prisoner.

at an ende,¹ and the strength of it² was passed¹ / And
sodeynly Charlemagne beganne to move his body, and
arose anone vpon his fete / and ryght sore abasshed,
loked all a bouthe hym / And whan he sawe that he was 4
atte mountalban, in the subgetyon of Reynawde the
sone of Aymon / he was sore an angred / and made
suche sorrow for it / soo that all they that were there,
trowed that he had be mad,¹ and from hym selfe.¹ And 8
whan hys wyttes were come to hym agayne, he knewe
well that mawgys had doon it to hym, and sware that,
as longe as he were man on live, he sholde make noo
peas tyll that he were oute of mountalban / and that 12
men had broughte mawgys to hym³ / And whan
Rycharde vnderstode this that Charlemagne sayd, he
beganne to saye in this wyse / 'How the devyll dare
ye thus speke / syre, ye see well that ye be our 16
prysoner / And yet ye threten vs / I make to god myn
a vowe and to saynte peter, were not that I have pro-
mysed / that I shall not doo to you noo harme atte
this tyme, I sholde stryke the hede from the body of 20
you' / 'Holde your peas,' sayd Reynawde, 'lete the
kyng say his wyll, ¹ye are over besy in your wordes¹ /
And lete vs all pray hym that he wyll pardonne vs,
For the werre hath lasted to longe; cursed be he that 24
beganne it / For grete evylles and harmes are happeth
therby' /

Reynawde was wyse and well taughte for to styлле
thus hys bretherne, to whome he sayd / 'My 28
lordes my brethern, yf it playse you / ye shall come
wyth me / for to crie mercy to our sovereyne lorde the
kyng Charlemagne.' 'Reynawde,' sayd alarde / 'we
shall doo all that ye wylle.' 'By my feythe,' sayd the 32
duke naymes, 'My lordes, ye doo wysely, and I pro-
myse you that all goode shall come to you therof' /

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. A.A. viii.

³ pour en faire sa volente, F. orig. C. vi. back.

Theⁿne reynawde and all his bretherne, and Rowlande,
 and oliver, and Ogyer the dane, the duke Naymes, the
 1 bysshop Turpyn / and Escouf the sone of oedon / be-
 4 gaunne all to falle on theyr knees byfore the emperour /
 And Reynawd spake fyrste / and sayd in this maner
 of wyse : ‘ Noble emperour, have mercy of vs ! for I and
 my brethern, we yekle vs vnto you for to do your
 8 playsure of vs / and your wyll be so that our lives be
 saved / And there is noo thyng but that we wyll doo²
 it for the love of you, if it playse you to graunte vs
 peas wyth you. And for that pyte and pardonne that
 12 god gaaf vnto mary magdalene whan she wasshed his
 fete in the house of Symeon / goode syre, have pyte of
 vs ! And yf it playse you not to pardonne me / atte
 the leest pardonne my brethern, And take theym agen
 16 their londes / and I shall gyve you mountalban, and
 bayarde, my good horse ; And soo shall I goo in to the
 holy londe, I and Mawgys, where we shall serve to the
 temple of our lorde.’ And whan Charlemagne herde
 20 reynawde speke thus / he blastred all for angre / and
 sayd, ‘ by that goode lorde that made me / yf all the
 worlde speke to me therof / yet sholde I never consente
 me to noo peas / but I have mawgis in my handes for
 24 to doo my wyll vpon hym.’³ ‘ Alas,’ sayd thenne rey-
 nawde / ‘ now have I herde that worde bytyng, wherof
 I am all dysperate / For I shold rather lete my selfe
 be hanged / than that I sholde consente to the deth
 28 of mawgis my good cosin ; For he hath not deserved
 towarde vs that we sholde betraye him / but rather he
 were worthy by reysen for to be lord above vs’ /
 ‘ Reynawd,’ sayd thenne charlemagn / ‘ thynke not,
 32 thoughe I am your prysoner, that ye shall make me
 doo ony thyng agenst my wyll.’ ‘ syre,’ sayd rey-
 nawde / ‘ wyte it that myn entent is to meke my selfe

The Sons, with
 Roland and the
 other barons,

plead for mercy
 and peace from
 Charlemagne.

The Emperor will
 not consent to
 peace until Maw-
 gis is delivered
 to him.

¹ Fol. A.A. viii. back.

² dooo. *orig.*

³ a celle fin que je luy face tout detrancher, F. *orig.* C. vii.

towarde you / for I have lever that we suffre wrong of
 you, than ye of vs / now tell me, sir, how I shall deliver
 you mawgis, *that* is our liff, hope, socours, our com-
 forte, our sheelde, ¹our spere, and also our swerd / our 4
 brede, our wyne, and oure flesshe / also our refute, our
 mayster, our guyde / and our defence in all places /
 wherby, syre, I telle you, that yf ye had all my brothern
 in your prison / and that ye sholde make them to be 8
 hanged, and that mawgis were wythin my power &
 wyth me / yet wold I not yelde hym vnto you for to
 quyte wythal my bredern. And also I swere you, vpon
 my feyth, that I wote not where he is goon : god wote 12
 it.' 'Ha,' sayd the kynge charlemagne, 'goddys curse
 have he / for I am sure he is here wythin you' / 'he is
 not,' sayd reynawd, 'I take it vpon my baptyse' /
 And thenne reynawde torned hymselfe towarde row- 16
 lande & the other barons, & sayd to them / 'Lordes,
 I beseche you for god, that it wyll playse you to praye
 our sovereyne lorle the kynge, that he wyll have mercy
 of me & of my brethern / to thende that peas maye be 20
 had in fraunce, yf it playse him' / And thenne naymes,
 that was knelinge vpon hys knees / and that herde that
 reynawde had sayd, & wyst well that he spake but
 wel, sayd to themperour in this wyse / 'Sire, I praye 24
 you that ye wyll not be dy[s]played of that I shall telle
 you / ye knowe, sire, that I am surete for reynawde /
 and soo is ogyer the dane; but me semeth that we
 oughte now to be dyscharged therof / ²sith that ye be 28
 here present wythin his castell; ² but a nother thyng I
 wyll telle you / me thynke that ye ought to take that ³
 therle reynawd proffereth to you, or that ony more
 harme come to you therof; and so helpe me god, ye 32
 shall doo well / And all they of your courte shall be

Reynawde replies
 that he would
 sooner all his
 brethren were
 hung than Maw-
 gis given up to
 Emperor.

Naymes fall on
 his knees before
 Charlemagne,

and begs him to
 accept the condi-
 tions of Rey-
 nawde.

¹ Fol. B.B. i.

²⁻² comment savez, F. orig. C. vii. back.

³ belle offerte, F. orig. C. vii. back.

gladde of it' / And whan the barons herde this that
 naymes had sayd to the kyng, they spoke all & sayd,
 'Syre, doo that the duke naymes hath tolde you, for
 4 he hath gyven you goode counseyll and true; And yf
 ye doo it not, ye shall come to late for to repente you
 of it.¹'

² **W**han Charlemagn vnderstode this that the duke
 8 naymes had sayd to hym, he was right wrothe
 for it / For hys herte was soo harde astonyed wyth grete
 angre, that he tooke noo hede of good counseyll; And
 he sware by saynt Denys of fraunce that he sholde not
 12 doo it for noo man / but yf he had fyrste mawgys in
 his handes, for to doo hys wyll over hym. And whan
 reynawde herde these wordes, he bluste red in his face
 for angre, and rose vp from knelyng, his brethern & all
 16 the other barons also. And thenne reynawde said to
 rowlande & to all the other lordes that were there /
 'Syre, I wyll well that charlemagne knowe my wyll
³& myn entente³ / the whiche I shall shewe afore hym
 20 vnto you. Wyte it, that sith I can fynde noo mercy in
 hym / I praye you that ye wyl not blame me fromhens
 forthon yf I seke my right, For I shall seke it in all
 the maners that a true knyghte oughte to doo' / And
 24 whan Reynawde had sayd this, he tourned hym towarde
 the kyng / and sayd to hym / 'Syre, ye maye goo hens
 whan it playseth you / for by my soule ye shall have
 noo harme of me now / for ye be my soverayne lorde ;
 28 ⁴and wyth good wyll⁴ we shall be in good peas wyth
 you' /

The barons of fraunce that were there, wondred sore
 of the grete kyndenes of reynawd / Thenne sayd
 32 the duk naymes, 'have ye herde the grete humylite of
 the noble knyghte reynawde?' 'By my soule,' said

Charlemagne
 swears he will
 never accept these
 terms of peace.

Reynawde gives
 the Emperor his
 freedom.

¹ Et de ce faire vous prions, C. vii. back.

² Fol. B.B. i. back. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴⁻⁴ Et quant dieu plaira . . . F. orig. C. viii.

rowlande¹ / 'reynawde saythe mervyllously / ²I wolde
 not have trowed that he sholde ever have fared soo
 fayr wyth charlemagne² / And whan rycharde vnder-
 stode that / that his broder reynawd had sayd, he spake **4**
 in this wyse: 'Broder Reynawde, I holde you mad.
 what wyll ye doo / ye see that we have in our handes
 this vengable kyng / the whiche we maye kille, or elles
 suffre hym to live; & yet he is set so sore to pryde, **8**
³that he wyll doo no thyng that his good counseyll
 telleth hym / but he thretneþ vs alwayes more &
 more / and ye wyll lete hym goo thus away. Surely,
 brother, yf he scapeth vs soo, he shall yet angre vs **12**
 right sore; and I promyse you, yf he had vs as we now
 have hym, he sholde make vs to deie shamfully; not
 all the golde in the worlde sholde not save vs therfro /
 And therefore I telle you that ye doo grete foly to lete **16**
 hym goo thus awaye / For, & ye wyll, ye shall now
 make our peas; but me semeth ye seke none other but
 your deth / Wherof I pray god, yf ye suffre hym thus
 to goo awaye / that he maye make you deye a shamfull **20**
 deth' / And whan reynawde herde his broder speke
 soo, he was wrothe, & sayd to hym in angre / 'holde
 your peas, brother / for he shall goo his wayes quyte /
 wyll you or noo; and the peas shall be made ⁴whan he **24**
 wyll,⁴ & no soner it shal not be, ⁵for there vnto he
 shall not be compelled of me⁵ / and go you hens from
 me / ⁵for your grete wordes dysplayseth me⁵ /

Whan reynawd had sayd this / he dyd call a **28**
 gentylman of his, to whom he sayd / 'goo
 lightly, wythoute ony taryenge, to the yoman of myn
 horses, and byd hym bryng me my horse bayard, For
 I wyll that my soverayn lord ryde vpon hym vnto his **32**
 oost, for he rode never vpon no better horse.' And

Richard is very
 angry at the
 escape of the
 Emperor,

and fears they
 will all be slain.

Reynawde orders
 Bayard to be
 saddled for
 Charlemagne,

¹ olivier, F. orig.

²⁻² Je ne leusse jamais cuide, F. orig. c. viii.

³ Fol. B.B. ii. ⁴⁻⁴ quant dieu plaira, F. orig. C. viii.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. C. viii.

whan rycharde herde this, he went fro thens all swell-
 ynge wyth angre as a fiersfull lion, bycause he knewe
 that Charlemagne shold goo soo / And wyte it, that
 4 the kynge charlemagne herde & vnderstode well all
 thise wordes, but he durste not saye noo thyng /
 soo sore he fered the fiersnes of the yonge rycharde.
 This hangynge, cam there agen the gentylman that was
 8 goon for bayard, whiche he brought wyth hym. And
 thenne Reynawd toke his good horse Bayard,¹ and
 came to Charlemagne / and sayd to hym / 'Syre, ye
 may lighte whan it playse you, and goo atte your
 12 lyberte / for to ²comforte your folke / whiche I am
 sure / ben full sory for the takynge of you' / And when
 charlemagn saw this, he lighted anone vpon bayarde,
 and went oute of mountalban for to goo to his oost /
 16 And reynawde conveyd hym to the gate of mount-
 alban. and whan the kynge was goon, he made the
 gate to be shet anone. And the frensheman that
 sawe their kynge come agen, they were ryght glad /
 20 and receyved hym worthely. and after, they asked
 hym how it went wyth him, and yf he had graunted
 the peas / 'Lordes, it is well wyth me, god gramerci /
 but of peas I have made none, nor never shall as longe
 24 as I am man a live, for noo man that shall speke
 to me of it / but yf I have the traytour Mawgys,
 for to doo wyth hym my wyll' / 'Syr,' sayd some
 of his barons, 'how have ye be deliverde?' 'by my
 28 feyth,' sayd charlemagn, 'Reynawd hath deliverde
 me agenst the wyll of his bredern, all quyte at my
 liberte.' 'Syr,' sayd the barons, 'have ye not seen
 rowlande, oliver, the duke naymes, the bysshop
 32 turpyn, ogyer the dane, nor escouf the sone of oedon?'
 'ye, surely,' sayd charlemagne, 'but they have all
 forsake me for the love of reynawd; wherof, bi that
 god that hynge vpon the crosse, yf I can have them

who mounts upon
 him and departs
 from the castle.

The Frenchmen
 welcome him
 gladly.

¹ par le frein, F. orig. C. viii. back. ² Fol. B.B. ii. back.

agen, I shall shewe theym that they have not doon well.' and whan he had sayd thus / he lighted from bayarde, & made hym to be brougte agen to reynawd / And whan reynawd sawe bayarde, that 4 charlemagn had sent hym agen, he called rowland & his felawes, & sayd to theym / 'Fayr lordes, I knowe well that ye be not in the grace of the grete kyng charlemagn / for the love of me / but I wyll not 8 *that* ye have mawgre for me nor for my brethern / and therfor, fayr lordes, I quyte you all quarells that I maye laye vpon you and gyve you leve to goo whan it playse you.' And whan the duke naymes 12 vnderstode the kyndnes of the hert of Reynawde, that was ¹soo noble / he thanked him highly, and kissed & enbraced him for grete love / and wolde have kneled doun afore hym / but reynawd wold not suffre hym / 16 *Thezue* the duke naymes began to saye, 'lete vs thynke to goo after the king charlemagn your vncler / sith it playseth reynawd to gyve vs leve.' 'naines,' sayd rowland / 'how can we doo this / shall we leve 20 reynawde, the whiche ye see myn vncler wyll dystroye wrongfully?' 'Syr,' sayd the duke naymes, 'here me, yf it playse you. I counseill that we goo hens / and whan we shall be afore charlemagn / we shall 24 aske hym how reynawd dyde deliver hym; for yf we speke to hym of peas, he shall be wrothe wyth vs; but whan he shall remembre the grete goodnes & curtesi of Reynawde / his herte shall be molified / 28 and it can not be but he shall doo to hym som grace & favour / for he shall knowe well² that hys hert is overgrete / ³and that he hath doon to reinawd grete wrong'³ / 'Certes, sir naymes,' sayd the barons / 'ye 32 speke wysly, and ye gyve right good counseylle' / And

Reynawde allows
the barons to
depart,

and Naymes pro-
mises to promote
the cause of the
Sons with the
Emperor.

¹ Fol. B.B. iii.

² quil a grant tort et trop dur cuer, F. orig. D. i.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. D. i.

when they were accorded to the counseille of the
 duke naymes / Rowlande asked after his horse, and
 eche of the other barons also. And whan they were
 4 redy for to lighte on horsbacke / there cam my lady
 clare, the wyf of reynawde, that kyssed rowlande,
 oliver, & all theother barons. and after, she sayd
 to them in this maner: ‘Lordes that be here present,
 8 I beseeche you in the name of god, & for his blessed
 passyon, that it playseth you for to purchace the
 peas of my lord reynawde / and semblably of his
 brethern, towarde the grete kyng charlemagn. Ye
 12 knowe, my lordes, that the kyng doth to my lord
 grete wronge, and also ye know the grete curtesie
 & the kyndnes that my lord my husbonde hath
 shewed vnto Charlemagn / and well ye wote that
 16 yf my lorde had not be / his brother richarde wolde
 have stryked the hede fro the body of hym’ /
 ‘Madam,’ ¹sayd the duke naymes, ‘doubte not / For
 and god be playsed, the peas shall be made wythin thise
 20 thre dayes.’ And thenne they lighted all on hors-
 backe / and the brethern of reynawde conveyed theym
 to the gate. and reynawde taryed after theym vpon
 the brydge / and whan they were come to the sayd
 24 bridge / Reynawde sayd to theym, ‘My lordes, I
 comende you to god / I maye no lenger goo wyth
 you / prayeng that ye wyll have me in your remem-
 braunce.’ Thenne all the peres of franuce that were
 28 there began to wepe tenderly / ²and toke their leve
 of reynawde, the noble knyghte² / and after they toke
 their waye towarde the oost of charlemagn. And
 whan themperour sawe theym com, he called to hym
 32 his barons, & shewed them they that were comyng /
 And whan the barons sawe theym, they mervyllled

Lady Clare begs
 the barons to
 intercede with
 Charlemagne for
 peace towards
 her husband.

The Barons take
 leave of Rey-
 nawde with much
 sorrow.

¹ Fol. B.B. iii. back.

²⁻² en luy commandant a dieu disant regnault dieu vous
 begnie. Et si vous aye en sa garde, F. orig. D. i.

gretly, & had grete fere, for they wist not what it was / but [Gu]ydellon the erle sayd / 'By god, we have recoverde rowland & his felawes.' 'Ye,' sayd charlemagne / 'goddys curse have they!' This hangyng, 4 rowlande & his felawes cam tofore charlemagne / and lighted a fote / and incontynente they kneled humbly afore the kyng / and thenne the duke naymes began to speke fyrste, & sayd, 'Noble emperour, we are come in 8 your presenee for to crie you mercy, besechyng you for god that it wyll playse you to take vs vnto your good grace, for we have doon noo thyng agens you / but *that* it was for your wele. But sith that we 12 have knowen that your wyll was not to have peas / we have forsaken Reynawd & all his brethern; nor never, whyle we ben a live, they shall have noo socours of vs' / 'Lordes,' sayd Charlemagn, 'I par- 16 donne¹ you; but I telle you, yf we tary here longe styll / we shall have lityll gaynes therby. wherfore, I praye you that we goo assawte mounthalban bothe by daye & by nyght, by suche maner that he be taken of 20 vs incontinent, and they all *that* ²ben in it broughte to deth.' 'Syr,' sayd the duke naymes, 'ye sai well / but and yf ony mysfortune happeth to vs, as it hathe doon here a fore tyme, I promyse you it shall be to 24 you grete dommage; and me semeth it were moche better to have peas than for to contynewe the werre.'

And whan the barons of fraunce herde this that the duke naymes had sayd to the kyng / they 28 began to crye wyth an highe voys / 'Syre emperour / we praye you that ye wyll doo this that naymes counseyllith you, For he gyveth you good counseyll.' Whan Charlemagne herde the crye that his folke 32 made to hym, he came to the duke Naymes, that was kneeling afore hym / and toke hym vp / and in like wyse his newew rowlande, & all the other, and sayd to

¹ pardonue, *orig.*² Fol. B.B. iv.

Roland and the other barons kneel before the Emperor, and Naymes implores for pardon,

and vows that they will never succour the Sons.

theym, 'My lordes, ye knowe that I have parlonned
 you wyth ry[g]ht good wyll / but I wyll well that
 ye know, but yf ye kepe yourselfe from helpynge of
 4 my enemyes mortall / I shall angre you vpon your
 bodies ; For I hate theym so moche, that yf I shold
 abyde here all my liff / I shall dystroye theym.' And
 wite it, that Charlemagne was glad that he had
 8 recovered his neuwe rowlande & his other peres ;
 how be it, he made no semblaunt of it. And he sayd
 yet agen / that he shold never departe from his seege
 tyll that he had taken mountalban & alle the four
 12 sones of aymon / wherof he shall doo sharpe iustyce,
 and shall doo breune mawgis the false traytour /
 'Syre,' sayd rowlande, 'I promyse you that mawgis
 is not wythin mountalban / for he fereth you somoche
 16 that he dare not abyde you, leest ye shokle make hym
 to be hanged, by cause he dyde stele you so falsly
 oute of your oost.' 'Ha, god,' sayd Charlemagne,
 'whaz shall I see that I have hym for to doo my
 20 wyll of him, For thenne the sones of aymon sholde
 soone be agreed with me.'

Charlemagne pro-
 mises to grant
 the request of
 Naymes ;

but vows he will
 take vengeance
 upon the Sons
 and Mawgis.

Thenne whan the kyng charlemagn had devysed
 longe ynoughe, he gaff leve to all his barons for
 24 to goo agen in to theyr tentes for to see theyr folke.
 And whan the morow cam / all the barons came agen
 to charlemagne / and whan the kyng sawe them
 togyder wythin his pavyllion / he was therof gladde /
 28 and spake to theym thus / 'Lordes, I have beseged
 mountalban as nere, as ye see ; and I am not disposed
 for to parte bens, nother for colde, for hete, nor for
 hungre, vnto the tyme that I have taken hym by
 32 fyne force / the whiche thyng shall be lyghtly doon /
 for I am sure that thei shall wauat vytaylles wythin /
 And worse is for them, thei have lost the traytour
 mawgis, whiche was theyr hope and comfort. wher-

He tells his folk
 of his intention
 of starving the
 Sons into sub-
 mission.

¹ Fol. B.B. iv. back.

fore, I saye that they can not holde it longe agenst my power.' whan the barons herde that charlemain thretened reynawde soo sore / there was none of theym but they were sory for it / for the moost parte 4 of them loved reynawde, for the worthynes & the kyndnes *that* was in him. Thezne spake the duke naymes, & sayd to themperour, 'Sir, ye say *that* they of mountalban be dyspurneyd of mete, and that 8 ye shall not departe fro the siege tyll that ye have taken the castell, & that is a thyng that shall be doon lightli. but I promyse you, yf ye tary to their vitaylles be doo, ye shal lie here lenger than ye wene 12 of / Wherefore, sir, I beseche you, syr, that it wyll playse you to byleve my counseyll, yf it semeth you good / fyrst take hede to the curtesy that reynawde hath doon to you; for ye wote well that yf he had 16 not be, his brother Rycharde sholde have slayn you / al the gold in the worlde sholde not have saved you / Item, thinke also in the grete mekenes that he hath alwayes shewed to you / also for the grete trust 20 that he hathe had in you / he lened you his good horse bayard, that hath no matche in all the world / sir, yf ye overthynke wel al, ye shall ¹fynde that noo man dyde never to none other soo grete curtesie as 24 reynawd hath doon to you. and of that other parte, he & his bredern ben suche knyghtes, as everi body knoweth / I swere to you, sire, by all halowen, that or ever ye shall take mountalban, Reynawde & his 28 bretherne shall bere to you suche *dommage*, wherof ye shall be wroth. And yet ye oughte well to take hede how we waist & dystroye the countrey & the feldes, and grete good ye doo dispende / whiche 32 for your honour were better to be employed vpon the sarrasins, than vpon the four sones of aymon / for the sarrasins ben now in rest, makyng grete ioye for

The barons are very grieved when they hear the Emperor's determination,

and Naymes remonstrates upon the injustice of the war,

and says it were better to employ their arms upon the Saracens than

¹ Fol. B.B. v.

the cause of this werre / and they do wel, For werre continue so cruel
a war.
hath lefte them / and it is come among ourself so
horrible & soo cruell, that many noble and worthy
4 knightes ben deed therof.'

The kyng charlemagn was sore abashed / whan
he herde the duke naymes speke so, and it
moved his blode full sore, & becam pale as a white
8 cloth for the grete wrathe that he had at his herte,
and casted a side his sighte angrely vpon the duke
naymes, & sayd to hym by grete wrath, 'Duke In great anger the
Emperor replies,
naymes, by the feyth that I owe to that blessed lady
12 that conceyved the sone of god in her virgynyte / that
if ther be ony man soo hardy to speke more to me of
accorde to be made wyth the four sones of aymon,
I shall never love him, but I shall angre hym on his
16 body / For I am not disposed to make peas with them that nothing
shall make him
consent to peace
with the Sons,
for noo thing that can be sayd / but I shall hange
them what soever it cost me, or I departe from this
siege.' Whan the barons herde charlemagn speke thus
20 proudly / they were sore merveylled of it / and lefte
to talke of this matere. But whan oger sawe that
all the barons helde them styлле, he began to saye to
the kyng charlemagn / 'Cursed be the hour ¹that
24 reynawd suffred not rychard to smyte of your hede /
for ye had not thretened him soo now' / And whan
charlemagn herde that oger sayd to him / he bowed his
necke, & loked dou[n]warde all pensifull ; & sin he said,
28 'now, lordes, make you redy, and see that every man
fall to his armures / for I wyl now gyve assaute to
mountalban' / And whan the frenshemen herde the
and commands
the assault to be
made upon
Montalban.
commaulemente of the kyng, they made noo tary-
32 enge, but went & armed theymsel. And whan they
were all redy, they cam in good ordynauce, and
broughte ladders & other instrumentes wyth them ²for
to sawte wythall the castelle,² & engynes for to breke

¹ Fol. B.B. v. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. D. iii.

doun the walles, and presented theym byfore charlemagn for to acomplisse hys wyll / and whan the kyng sawe theym soo well appareylled, he commaunded theym to goo sawte the stronge castell of 4 Mountalban.

Reynawde commaunds his men to arm themselves.

And assone that reynawd saw his enmyes com, he called his broder alard, & sayd to him, 'Broder, I pray you take bondy, my good home, & blowe in it 8 strongly / to thende that our folke arme theymself whan thei here it, for here comen the frenshemen for to sawte vs.' Whan alard vnderstode the *commaunde*ment of reynawde / he toke bondy, and blewe in wyth 12 soo grete a wynde thre tymes, that all they of the castell herde it / and were all abashed wyth; and wythoute ony taryeng they went & armed theymself, and lightly gate vpon the walles for to defende the 16 castell. Nevertheles, the frenshemen came nere, & entred in to the dyches as hogges doon in a myre / and dressed vp their ladders to the walles / But wyte it, that they of wythin the castelle beganne to 20 deffende so strongly with castynge of stones, that thei *dommaged* sore the frenshemen, so that many of them lay deed within ¹the dyches; for reynawd & his bredern dyde there so grete faytes of armes that no body 24 myght endure their strokes / who had seen the poure duches & her yong children at that sawte brynge stones to reynawd & to his bredern vpon the walles, he wolde have had pyte of it / For the two yonge 28 sones of Reynawde sayd to their vncles / 'holde our vncles these stones / for they ben grete ynoughe.' Suche defence made they of moun^talban, that they overthrewe theym that were vpon y^e ladders to the 32 botom of y^e diches, all deed & sore wounded / and whan the kyng charlemagne sawe this, he was wrothe, for he knewe the^me well that he sholde never take

The Frenchmen assault the castle tierceley,

but are driven back.

¹ Fol. B.B. vi.

moumtalban by force, nor also the noble knyghtes
that were wythin it / as Reynawde & his bredern /
 And therefore he made the trompet to be blowen /
 4 to calle his folke abacke, wyth so grete *angre* that Charlemagne
 withdraws his
 toik,
 he was almost mad / and whan the frenshemen herde
 blowe the retrete, thei were glad, for thei were
 shrewdly handled; and I promyse you that charle-
 8 magne lefte suche a company deed wythin the dyche
 that he long after was / full sory for it

Whan Charlemagn & all his folke were wyth-
 drawn agen / he began to swere saynt denys and vows he will
 furnish the Sons
 within their
 castle.
 12 of fraunce that he shold never departe thens tyll he
 had famysshed Reynawde & his bredern¹ wythin the
 castell of moumtalban / and thenne he *commaunded*,
 that a fore every gate of the castell shold be layed two
 16 hundred knyghtes / for to kepe, that noo body myghte
 in nor oughte / but he shold be take / And whan
 reynawd sawe that, he kneled down vpon his knees,
 and heved vp his handes towarde heven, & sayd, ‘Good
 20 lord, that suffred deth on y^e crosse, I beseeche you that
 ye wyll graunte vs that grace *that* we mai have peas
 with charlemain & save our lives.’ and whan richard
 herde the prayer of reynawd, he toke hede to it, & sayd,
 24 ‘Brother / I promyse you yf ye wolde have beleved
 me, we ²sholde now have be in good reste & peas / For
 Charlemagn wolde have be glad therof for to save his
 liff / Ye knowe that our cosyn mawgys broughte him
 28 not here for none other cause to be our prisoner / but
 to the entent that we sholde make our peas; but ye
 wolde not take hede to it / whan we myghte have had
 our wyll; and I promyse you we shal not now doo as
 32 we wolde.’

Richard rebukes
 Reynawde for not
 having made
 terms with Charle-
 magne when he
 was their
 prisoner.

Themperour charlemagn abode soo long at the siege
 afore moumtalban / that they that were wythin it

¹ et tous ses gens, F. orig. D. iii. back.

² Fol. B.B. vi. back.

Great famine
prevails in Mont-
alban,

and the men
die daily in the
streets.

Richard grieves
because he did
not slay Charle-
magne,

had grete nede of vytaylles / for he that had ony mete,
he hyd it incontynent. and soo grete scarstee of vitaylles
was there wythin a while, that men cowde gete there
noo mete for golde nor for silver / ¹And many other fell 4
doun at grounde here, & there soo feynt for hungre,¹ that
it was grete pyte for to see / for the derthe was there
soo grete, that thone broder hydde his mete from the
other / and the fader fro the childe / and the childe fro 8
ye fader, & fro the moder / And shortly to speke, I
promyse you, that the pour folke deyed for hungre by
the stretes / and with this, was soo grete stenche wythin
mowntalban of the deed were there, that noo man cowde 12
endure it. And whan reynawde sawe this, he was sory
for it. and the^{ne} he dyde do make a grete charnell,
wherin he made all the deed bodies to be buryed. And
whan richarde sawe so grete mortalite wythin the castell 16
of mowntalban, thrughe cause of the grete derth that
was there / and sawe his broder reynawd in so grete
distresse / he cowde not forbere / but he said to hym,
'by god, my broder now gooth it worse than ever it 20
dyde! it had be moche beter if ye had byleved me /
For yf ye wolde have suffred me to slee the kynge
Charlemagne / we sholde now not have be in this
myscheef and grete poverté that we have now / nor 24
your folke had not deied for hungre as thei doo' / and
the^{ne} he ²began to wepe tenderly / and sayd, 'Alas!
why doo I complayn other? I myghte well complayn
myselfe, sith that I must deye, & be put in to the 28
charnell as the pourest of vs all. Ha, mawgis, my fayr
cosin / where be ye now? ye faylle vs at our nede; for
& ye were here wythin wyth vs, we shokde not be
famyshed for hungre / and also we shokde not doubté 32
moche the kyng charlemagn; for I wote well that ye

¹⁻¹ Et commença le pays a lentour a defaillir de viures,
F. orig. D. iv.

² Fol. B.B. vii.

sholde gete vs vitaylles ynoughe to live vpon, for vs &
our men / and now we muste deye for hungre, as the
wulff sholde vpon a see / for charlemagne hateth vs
4 more than he dooth the sarrasins. And therfor it is not
for vs to wayte after pyte of hym / for he is over cruell
a kyng vpon us' /

and complains of
his hardness and
cruelty.

8 **C**harlemagn,¹ by the reporte of som folke / knew the
grete derthe & scarste of vytailles that was wythin
mountalban / wherof he was right glad / and called to
hym his folke / and sayd to theym, 'Lorles, now can
not reynawde escape / but he shall soone be taken &
12 hanged / and the false richarde drawn at an horse
taylle / and alarde & guycharde also, and theyr worthy-
nes shall be lityll worthe to theym.'

16 **A**nd whan the kyng charlemagn had sayd thise
wordes, he sent for all his peres & barons / and
whan they were all come wythin his pavyllion / he was
glad of it, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, thanked be god
that I have brought mountalban so lowe, that reynawd
20 & his knyghtes have no more vitaylles in it / and now
they shall yelde theymselfe at my wyll, mawgre their
teeth, for the moost parte of theyr folkes ben deed for
hungre / and yet [they] deyen dayly, and ye must wyte
24 I wil that reynawde be hanged & his bredern also, but
first I wyl that Richarde be drawn atte an horse taylle /
And soo I charge you that none of you be so harly to
move my wyll to the contrary. For I wyll that it ²be
28 doon as I saye' / Whan the duke naymes, rowlande,
oliver, oger, the bysshop turpyn, & escouff the sone of
oedan, that were there, herde the kyng speke thus, thei
were right sory, for the love of reynawde & of his
32 bredern / and loked down, & sayd no worde at al, for
fere that they shold be shent of the kyng / and oger
wyth grete peyne kept his eyen fro wepyng, leest
charlemagn shold not perceyve his sorowfull herte.

The Emperor
rejoices over the
distress in the
castle.

His barons grieve
for the sore plight
of the Sons.

¹ Charleamgn, *orig.* ² Fol. B.B. vii. back.

Here ye ought to wyte that, duryng the tyme that
 charlemagn laye at the sege afore mountalban
 persecutyng the four sones of aymon, Reynawde, alarde,
 guyehard, & Rycharde / aymon their fader helde the 4
 party of the kyng agenste his children, for he had
 promysed hym to doo so / as ye have herde above / but
 wyte it, that whan he herde how the emperour thretned
 his children, how be it that he had forsaken theym, he 8
 was wrothe for it / for he knewe well, if his children
 deyed soo he sholde never have ioie after that. For
 what soever werre he made agenst theim, he loved
 theim kyndly, as the fader oughte to love the childe, 12
 for ¹nature maye not lie. And therefore he toke soo
 grete sorow, whan he herde of his sones that they were
 thretned to be hanged, that he almost fell down deed to
 the grounde ; and of the grete sorow that he had, cowde 16
 not kepe himself, but he sayd / ‘Syr emperour, I be-
 seeche you that it wyll playse you to bryng my chyldren
 to right / For thoughe I have forsake them / yet are
 thei my sones of my body begoten’ / ‘holde your peas, 20
 aymon,’ sayd charlemagn / ‘for I wyll that it be so
 doon of theym / For reynawd dyde slee my newewe
 berthelot, that I loued so moche.’ And after he torned
 hymself, & sawe the barons that spake thone to thother, 24
 & sayd to them / ‘Lordes, leve your musyng ! for I tell
 you for a trouth, that I shall not leve to doo herin my
 wyll, for no man *that* speketh / ye wote wel it is iij yere
 goon sith we beseged this ²castel first, and ever sin have 28
 layen here, where we have lost many of our folke /
 wherfore I commaunde you, *that* eyther of you doo
 make engynes for to bryng down this grete towre & all
 the remenaunt also / For wyth suche maner we shall 32
 abashe them gretly / and ye, my newew rowland, ye
 shall doo make of the engynes vii. and oliver shall doo
 make vi. the duke naymes iiiii. the bysshop turpyn &

Duke Aymon is
wroth with the
Emperor for this
treatment of the
Sons,

and in great
sorrow implores
Charlemagne to
forgive them.

The Emperor will
not listen,

but in anger
commands his
barons to make
engines for the
assault of the
castle.

¹ nature, *orig.*

² Fol. B.E. viii.

oger the dane other iiii.' / 'and ye duke aymon,' sayd
 ye kyng charlemagn, 'ye shall make thre' /
 'How shold I now doo this, good lord,' said the^{me}
 4 **H**aymon, 'for, sir emperour, ye knowe well that
 they be my chyl dren, nother truantes nor knaves / but
 be the best knyghtes of the worlde / and soo I tell you,
 syr, that yf I sawe theym deye / I shold forgoo my
 8 wyttes for angre.' And whan charlemagn herde aymon
 speke thus, he was wroth, & began to gnawe on a staff
 that he helde in his hande, & after sayd / 'By that god
 that made me, yf there be ony of you *that* gaynsayth
 12 my wyll, I shall stryke of his hede wyth my swerde' /
 'syr,' sayd the duke naymes, 'angre not your selfe / For
 that that ye have *commaunded*, shall be doon incontin-
 16 ment of charlemagne / thei went their waye for to do
 make the engynes that the kyng had *commaunded*, the
 whiche were anone made redi, and these *engynes* were
 for to cast grete multytude of stones / And as sone that
 20 thei were made, thei were set for to cast agenste moun-
 talban, and in [a] short tyme they *dommaged* it full
 sore / and soo I promise you that wythin the castel
 were made grete cryng of wimen & of children / and
 24 for fere of the stones, thei went & hid them vnder the
 grounde; and so thei of mowntalban *endured* this
 mischeff aslong as thei had ony morsell of mete / And
 I ensure you that there was soo grete derth & soo grete
 28 mortalite that men wyst nomore where to laye the
 deed / For the ¹charnell was all full / Alas, who had
 seen soo yonge bachelers / that for feintnes went lenyng
 vpon their staves through mowntalban for lacke of mete /
 32 he wold have had grete pyte / For a fore that the castel
 was beseged, they were so strong & soo myghty that
 none cowde have overcom them; but they were the^{me}

The barons obey
 the Emperor,
 and the engines
 are filled with
 stones and cast
 against Mont-
 alban.

¹ Fol. B.B. viii. back.

soo feble that they felle where thei wente, musselinge
in the grounde as hogges.

Reynawde sor-
rows for his folk,

and deplores
the absence of
Mawgis.

And whan reynaude saw the grete pyte that was
amonge his folke, he had of it grete sorow, bicause 4
he myght not put noo remedy thereto; and the^{me} he
began to say in himselfe, ‘O good lord, what maye I
now doo / now I see well *that* my wytte avaylleth me
noo thyng / for I wote not where to seke vytaylles / 8
Alas god! where may maugys be now, that he knowe
not my grete nede, & the outrage that Charlemagne
doothe to vs’ / And whan the good lady Clare sawe her
lord reynaude, that complayned hymself soo piteusly / 12
she began to saye vnto hym in this wyse, ‘Forsooth,
my lord, ye do not well for to dyscomfyte yourselfe soo
sore / for ye discourage vs all wythin; moreover, I
promyse you that here ben yet wythin moo than a 16
hundred horses / I praye you lete one of them be kylled,
and ye, myselfe, & our poure children shall ete of it, for
it is more than thre dayes agoo that they nor I ete ony
thing that dyd vs good / and whan she had sayd this 20
she fell douⁿ in a swoume at the fete of reynaude her
husbonde, for grete feblenes for lacke of mete. And
whan reynawde sawe her fall, he toke her vp anone in
his armes, and after *that* she was come agen to herself / 24
she sayd, all wepynge / ‘Alas, dere lady mary, what
shall I poure wretche doo, for all my herte faylleth
me / And almoste wyll my soule departe, all soo sore
is my body famysshed. Alas, my chyldeⁿ, who 28
sholde ever have wende that ye sholde have deyed for
hungre’ /

The Duchess
counsels Rey-
nawde to slay one
of their horses
for them to eat.

Reynawde departs
to the stable,

Whan Reynawde sawe the grete dystresse wherein
hys wyff was, he had grete pyte of her, and 32
the teeres began to falle over the chekes of him, and all
wepyng he wente to his stable / and there he made a
horse to be slayn, the whiche he made to be dressed for

¹ Fol. C.C. i.

mete to hys folke / but I promyse you that horse flesshe
 lasted not longe afore theym / For they were men ynow
 to ete it vp lightly. And here ye must knowe that all
 4 the horses that were wythin mountalban were in lyke
 wyse eten one after a nother except four, that is to
 wyte, bayarde, & the horses of the thre brethern of
 Reynawde, the whiche four horses they wolde not ete
 8 by cause they wolde not be a fote / And whan Rey-
 nawd sawe that there was noo more thyng that they
 myghte ete / he called his bredern, & sayd to theym,
 'Fayr bredern, w[h]at shall we doo? we have noo more
 12 fode to take vs to, but oonly our four horses that are
 lefte vs alive. Lete vs doo kylle one of theym that
 our folke maye ete wyth vs. 'By my hede,' sayd
 richard, 'that shal not be myn / and yf ye have lust
 16 to it, lete yours be slayn / for ye shall not have myn.
 And yf ye have grete myscheef, ye be well worthy /
 For thrughe your pryde we are brought in this plighte /
 by cause that ye lete goo the kyng charlemagne; for
 20 and ye had byleved me, this grete myshappe had not
 befall vs' / This hangyng, came the lityll Aymon, the
 sone of Reynawde, that sayd to rycharde in this maner,
 'Holde your peas, myn vncle / for that thyng that may
 24 not be amended / men oughte to lete it passe in the
 best wyse; For it is to shanfull to reherse that / that
 is passed; but doo as my fader commaundeth you / and
 ye shall doo well. For ye doo not well to angre him
 28 soo as ye doo; and thoughe he hath myssel of his
 entente, he hath boughte it dere ynoughe, as well as we.
 Yf the kyng charlemagn hath adommaged you long, it
 may ¹well hap that god shall helpe you, or ought long,
 32 yf it playse hym; and I byleve certeynly that he shall
 doo soo / for the kindeness that my lorde my fader
 dyde shewe vnto charlemagne, whan he had hym here,
 can never be loste, as I wene.'

and orders a
 horse to be slain
 for food.

All the horses
 are then killed
 except four.

Richard will not
 have his horse
 killed,

and complains of
 the folly of Rey-
 nawde.

Aymon, Rey-
 nawde's son,
 rebukes his uncle
 for speaking thus.

¹ Fol. C.C. i. back.

Richard embraces
him, and gives
leave for his
horse to be slain.

Grete pyte had richarde of his neveve whan he
herde hym speke thus wysly / and toke hym
betwene his armes, and kissed hym all wepyng / and
thenne he said to reynawde / 'Broder, commaunde my 4
horse to be slayne whan it playseth you / and gyve
som comforte therwithall to this folke, and to my lady
your wyff, & to my yong neveys, ¹your children¹ / For
my lityll neveve that is here, hathe well deserved to 8
ete of it / for the good counseyll that he hathe gyven
to me now.' 'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'lete be slayne
whyche ye wyll of the thre / for it were to grete
adomme yf bayarde sholde deye; and also I tell you 12
that I had lever deye my selfe, than that bayard sholde
be slayne / 'Broder,' sayd guychard,² 'ye saye well;'
and anone the horse of richarde was kylled & dressed
to their mete / ¹and soo in lyke wyse was doon wyth 16
the horses of y^e two other brethern; ¹ and full savourly
it was eten / And whan reynawd sawe that there was no
mete more, he wist not what he sholde doo, for he was
more sory for his bredern, & for his wyff, ¹& his chil- 20
dren¹ / than he was for hymselfe; and began to say in
this wyse / 'Alas, what shall I do? I am vaynquyshed
& overcome wythout ony stroke. It had be better for
me that I had byleved my broder rychard, for I had 24
not be now in the myserye & grete nede where I am in
atte this hour / Now I see well that charlemagne hath
chased me soo moche that he hath betrapped me wythin
his gynnes / wheroute I can not scape; and I knowe 28
well that I oughte not to be complayned / for I have made
myself y^e rodde wherwith I am beten; and yf I sholde
repente me therof, it shold proufite ³noo thyng, for I
com to late for to do so.' whan rychard saw his broder 32
reynawde make suche sorowe, he knewe well his mynde,
& was right sory for hym, so that he shoke all for

All the horses
are eaten except
Bayard.

Reynawde be-
wails his sad fate,
and that of his
people.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig.

² Richart, F. orig.

³ Fol. C.C. ii.

sorow, and wüst not what he sholde say. For if reynawde wolde have had of his owne flesshe, rychard wolde well have given hym of it, yf he myght have be
 4 comforted therwith / ¹Thezme spake guycharde, that
 other broder, & sayd, ¹ 'My ²good² bredern, what shall
 we doo / we shall yelde ourself, ³or elles deye here for
 grete rage of hungre³ / and we maye noo more fromliens
 8 forthon / ²but oonly wayte after deth² / ' What saye
 ye, ²broder guycharde?' ² sayd reynawd; ' wyll ye yelde
 your selfe to the most cruell king of the worlde⁴ / for
 he shold make vs all to be hanged shamfully. Yf ony
 12 pyte cowde be founde in hym, I wold yelde me gladly ;
 but there ys none in him, and therfor I am delivered
 that we shall not yelde us to him / we shalle rather ete
 my children, & after our bodyes / But alwayes yf ye wyll
 16 ete bayarde, I am therof content for to passe the tyme
 forthon, for I have ofte herde saye that a day respyte
 is worthe moche.' But, nevertheles, what soever he
 sayd / he had no courage to ete bayarde / for it was all
 20 his socours / ' Broder,' sayd alard, ' I counseille that
 we ete bayard, rather than we shold yelde vs in to the
 handes of charlemagn / for he is to cruell, nor he shall
 never have mercy of vs.' And whan reynawde sawe
 24 that they wolde ete bayarde his good horse, he toke for
 it suche a hertly sorowe that he almoste fell in a swoone
 to therthe ; but he toke togyder his strengthes, & stode
 vpryghte, and began to saye / ' Fayr bredern / what
 28 wyll ye doo / wyll ye ete bayarde, my noble horse, that
 soo ofte hath kepte vs from deth, and from perell
 mortall / I praye you, that a fore ye slee hym / that ye
 slee me / For I may not see hym dey ; and whan ye
 32 have slayn me / slee hym hardely. And yf ye wyll not

Guycharde proposes that they should yield themselves to Charlemagne.

Alarde advises that they should eat Bayard.

Reynawde says he would rather die than kill his horse.

¹⁻¹ Quant il ent este une grant pïesse en celle detresse il dist a ses freres. F. orig. D. vii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³⁻³ puis que nous ne savons plus que faire, F. orig. D. vii.

⁴ et au plus orgueilleux, F. orig. D. vii.

doo¹ soo, I forbede you, in as moche as ye love me, that ye touche not bayarde. For he that shall hurte hym / shall hurte me.' And whan the duchesse herde Reynawde speke thus, she wiste not what to doo / theme 4 she sayd to hym in grete wrathe, 'Ha, gentyll duke debonayr / and what shall now doo your pour children / wyll you that they deye for hungre, for fawte of your horse? For it is thre dayes passed that they ete ony 8 mete; shortly shall theyr lives come atte an ende / myn also / For my hert clevech me in my body for fyne force of hungre. And soo shall ye see me deye presently / but yf I have socours' / Whan the children 12 herde the moder speke thus, they sayd to Reynawde, 'Goode fader, for goddys love deliver your horse! For he shall deye as well for hungre / And it is better that he deye fyrste than we afore hym.' And whan alarde 16 guycharde and Rycharde herde theyr newewes speke thus, rycharde spake / and sayd to his brother, 'Ha, gentyll duke, for god suffre not that your children nor my lady, your wyffe, deye for hungre, and we also.' 20 And whan Reynawde herde his brother Rycharde speke so to hym, his herte tendred with all ryght sore / and felle to wepe, and sayd / 'My fayer bredern, syth that it playse you that bayarde shall deye, I praye 24 you go and slee hym' / And whan they were all accorded that bayarde sholde be slayn² and eten,² they wente streyghte to the stable / where they founde bayarde / that casted to theym a grete syghe / And 28 whan Reynawde sawe that, he sayd he sholde rather slee hymselfe / than that bayarde sholde deye / that many tymes hathe saved hym from deth / And whan the chyldren had herde this / they retourned agayne to 32 theyr moder wepyng, and all deed for hungre.

Thenne whan Reynawde sawe that hys chyldren were goon / he wente to bayarde, and gaff hym a

The Duchesse rebukes her husband,

and says they will all starve if Bayard lives.

Reynawde relents, and tells his brethren to slay Bayard.

Reynawde, when he sees Bayard, will not have him slain;

¹ Fol. C.C. ii. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

lityll hey, ¹ For he had none other thyng to gyve hym.
 And thenne he came to hys brethern, and founde Alard
 holdyng Aymon his nevewe that wepte / and Rycharde
 4 helde Yon, and Guycharde the duchesse, that in his
 armes was swouned, and sayd to theym / ‘Alas, for god
 mercy, I praye you take in you corage tyll nyghte.
 And I promyse you that I shall doo so moche, that we
 8 shall have mete / and god wyll.’ ‘Brother,’ sayd Alarde,
 ‘we muste suffre it, wyll we or not’ / Soo longe abode
 the knyghtes that the nyghte came / and whan it was
 come / Reynawd sayd to his brethern / ‘My brethern,
 12 I wyll goo speke to our fader / for to see what he shall
 saye to me / and yf he shall lete vs deye for hungre’ /
 ‘Brother,’ sayd rycharde, ‘I wyll goo wyth you, yf it
 playse you, and ye shall be the more sure that I be in
 16 your company.’ ‘My brother,’ sayd the good knyghte
 Reynawd, ‘ye shall not so. For I will goo there alone /
 and yf I brynge you not mete, I shall thenne deliver
 you bayarde.’ and whan Reynawd had sayd this, he
 20 made hymselfe to be well armed, and lighted vpon
 bayarde, and well secretly went oute of mountalban,
 and came to his faders pavylion / the whiche he knewe
 well / For he had aspyed it from above the grete towre
 24 while it was day. And it happed so that he founde
 his fader aymon out of hys pavylion all alone, wayt-
 ynge yf he myghte by ony way vnderstonde some tyd-
 ynges pryvely of the castell / And whan reynawde
 28 sawe his fader / he sayd to hym, ‘What arte *thou* that
 goo now at this tyme of the nyghte all alone?’ And
 whan aymon herde hym speke, he knewe hym anone,
 & was righte glad / but he made of it noo semblant /
 32 and sayd to hym / ‘but what art you thiself, that goost
 at this owre so hie mounted.’ Whan reynawd herde
 his fader speke, he knewe hym well, & sayd to hym,
 ‘Syr, for god have merci vpon vs / for we deye ²all for

he promises to
get them meat,

and proposes to
go to his father
that night.

He mounts
Bayard,

and goes to the
tent of Aymon.

Aymon recognizes
his son,

¹ Fol. C.C. iii.

² Fol. C.C. iii. back.

and Reynawde
prays him to
succour his folk.

hungre! and all our horses ben all redy deed & eten, and soo we have nomore but bayarde, that shall not deye as longe as I live / For rather I sholde lete me be slayn / For to me & to my brethern 4 he hathe often saved our lives. Alas, fader, yf ye will not have merey on vs, have mercy of my yonge children!’

Aymon declares
he cannot help
him, because of
his oath to the
Emperor.

‘**H**a, fayr sone,’ sayd aymon / ‘I canne not helpe 8 you of no thyng / but goo your waye agen / for I have you forsworne, ye wote it well / and therefore I wolde not doo agenste myn othe for all the good in the worlde / and my herte is right sory that I maye not 12 helpe nor gyve you socours.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd reynawde, ‘you speke yll / sauff your reverence. For I promyse you, yf ye gyve vs noo socours, that my wyff, my children, my brethern, and myself shall deye for rage 16 of hungre, or ever thre dayes ben passed / For it is all redy more than thre dayes, that none of vs ete ony mete / and so I wote not what I shall doo / Alas, ye be our fader, soo oughte you to comferte vs / For I 20 wote well, yf the kyng have vs, he shal make vs all to be hanged, and deye shamfully, whiche were not your worshyp; wherfore, fader, ye oughte not to faylle vs, yf the lawe of nature is rightwys / My fader, for god 24 have pyte & mercy vpon vs, and holde not your courage agenst your pour children for it were grete eruelte; and also ye knowe well that charlemagne dooth to vs grete wrong, for to persecute vs as he dooth’ / Whan Aymon 28 herde reynawde speke thus, he had grete pyte of hym / and was soo sory *that* almoste he felle down in a swoune to the erthe. and after he began to beholde his childe reynawde;¹ & sore wepyng, he sayd to hym / 32 ‘Fayr sone, ye have sayd trouth that the kyng dooth you grete wrong / and therfor a lighte fro your horse, & entre wythin my pavylion, and take what it playse

Reynawde still
implotes him to
have pity on
them.

Aymon gives
Reynawde leave
to take what he

¹ reynawrd, *orig.*

you / for noo ¹thing shall be sayd nay to you / but I will from his
 shall not gyve you nothyng, for to save my othe' / And pavilion.
 whan reynawd herde his fader speke soo, he descended
 4 a fote, & kneled byfore him / and sayd 'an hundred
 gramercies, dere fader' / and thenne he entred wythin
 the pavylion of his fader, and laded bayard wyth Reynawde lades
 brede, & wyth flesshe, both salt & fresshe / and wyte Bayard with
 8 it that bayard dyde bere more than x other horses shold provisions,
 have doon. And whan reinawde had well laded bayarde
 wyth vitaylles, he toke leve of his fader, & went agen and returns to the
 to mountalban / it is not to be asked what welcom Castle.
 12 reynawd had of his bredern, of his wyff, & of his men /
 and wyte it that whan they sawe hym brynge soo
 moche vitaylles / thei swouned all for ioye to the
 erthe / And whan reynawd sawe this, he wende thei
 16 had ben deed for hungre. Soo began he to make grete
 sorowe, & not wythoute a cause / and while that rey-
 nawd sorowed & made grete mone, his bredern began
 to com agen to theimselfe, his wyff, & also his two
 20 children. And whan reynawd sawe theym all vpon
 their fete, he was glad, & presented to theym mete for
 theym, & for his folke. and thei thenne made grete They all feast
 ioye, & ete their fyll at their ease / And whan they had joyfully at Mont-
 24 eten well, thei went to slepe, except reynawd, that alban.
 wold kepe watche himself. And on the morne whan
 the day was com, they rose & went to here masse / and
 after the masse was doon, they fell to their mete agayn,
 28 and ete all that was left over, evin of that reynaud had
 brought. and whan the next nyght was come, aymon,
 that cowde not forgete his children / made his stywarde Aymon calls his
 to com byfore hym, & sayd to him / 'ye knowe how I steward.
 32 have forsworne my chyldren / wherof I am sory that
 ever I dyde soo; but it is sayd, that at the nede the
 frende is knowen / I lete you wyte that my children
 ben yonder wythin in grete poverte & mysease, and

¹ Fol. C.C. iv.

how be it that I have forsworne theim / I oughte nor
 maye ¹not faylle theim / we have thre engynes that
 charlemagne hath made me doo make for to hurt with
 my children, wherof we have *dommaged* theim asmoche 4
 as we myghte / now must we helpe theym after their
dommage / And I shall telle you how : see that ye put
 wythin the engynes brede & flesshe, bothe salt & freshe,
 in grete plente in stede of stones / and lete this be cast 8
 in to the castell, for yf I shold deye myself for hungre,
 I shall not fayll theim aslong as I have wherof to helpe
 theim / and also I repent me full sore of the harme
 that I have doon to them / for all the worlde ought to 12
 blame me therof wyth good right, ²and we ben in the
 wronge.' 'Sire,' sayd the stiwarde, 'ye saye well / for
 ye have doon so moche agenste theim, that all the
 worlde blameth you therof / but incontynente I shall 16
 doo your *commaundement*' / And thenne the styward,
 went & made the thre engynes to be fylled wyth
 vitaylles, & after, he badde the governer to caste theim
 in to mountalban / And ye must wyte that many of 20
 thoost blamed aymon sore, that he made his engynes
 to be caste agenst his children / for they wende it had
 be stones. And whan the nyght was passed, & that
 reynawd was vp / he went here & there wythin the 24
 castell, and founde foyson of vitaylles that his fader had
 cast / wherof he was ryght glad, & sayd / 'Good lord,
 blessed be you / now see I well that they that have their
 truste in you, can not fare amys.' and thenne he called 28
 his bredern, his wyfe, ³& his children,³ & sayd / 'My
 bredern, ye see how our fader hathe pite of vs' / And
 thenne he made the vitaylles to be gadred vp, & put in
 a sure place / and soo they ete therof at theyr ease, for 32
 they had well grete nede therof, for they were so sore

and orders him
 to fill three
 engines with food
 and let them be
 cast into the
 Castle.

The steward
 obeys his com-
 mand.

Reynawde in the
 morning dis-
 covers all these
 provisions, and
 is very grateful
 to his father.

¹ Fol. C.C. iv. back.

² Car mes enfans out le droit, F. orig. E. i.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

an hungred that it was grete pyte / And wyte it that
aymon made cast so moche vitayll within mountalban,
that thei of within had ynoughe for thre monethes
4 wyth good governaunce.

¹ **N**ow we must vnderstonde that charlemagne had
some knowledge howe the olde duke aymon had
gyven vytaylles to hys children, wherof he was sore an
8 angred, & made aymon to com incontynent afore hym,
& sayd to hym, 'aymon! who maketh the so bolde to
gyve ony mete to myn enemyes mortall? I know well
all thy wyles / thou mayst not excuse thyself; but by
12 the feyth that I owe to god I shall avenge me soo well
are nyght, that yf I may, ye shall lese your hede for it' /
'Syr,' sayd the duke aymon, 'I wyll not denye it; for I
telle you truly, yf ye shold make me deye, or be brente
16 in a fyre, I wyll not faylle my chi[l]dren aslong as I
maye helpe them. ²For my children be no theves, tray-
tours, nor no murdrers, but they ben the moste valiaunt
knyghtes of the worlde, & the truest.² and wene not you
20 to slee my children in suche maner! ye have to long
wrought your foly if it wold suffyre you' / Whan charle-
magne herde aymon speke thus / he was angri wyth it,
and for grete wrathe he loked as fire, & almoste he
24 smote aymon. And whan the duke naymes sawe this,
he avaunced hym forthe, & sayd / 'Sir, sende home
aymon, for ye have kept hym here tolong; ye ought
well to vnderstonde *that* aymon wyll not see his
28 children to be destroyed, and therfor ye ought not to
blame him nor smyte hym;' after that charlemagne
herde the duke naymes speke, he sayd to hym /
'Naymes, sith that ye have iudged it, ye shall not be
32 gaynsayd;' and thenne he torned hym towarde the
duke aymon, & sayd to hym / 'Now goo forth oute of
myn oost / for ye have doon me more *dommage* than
prouffyte' / 'sire,' sayd the duke aymon / 'I shall

Charlemagne dis-
covers Aymon's
gift to Reynawde,

and denounces
him wrathfully.

Aymon swears he
will not fail his
children.

Naymes counsels
the Emperor to
send Aymon to
his home.

Aymon is dis-
missed.

¹ Fol. C.C. v.

² Damps roy, F. orig.

He recommends
his children to the
Peers,

and vows venge-
ance on those
who shall harm
them.

The Castle is
again furnished,

Reynawde fears
they will all die.

Alarde prays that
Bayard may be
slain.

gladly doo your *commaundement*' / And anone he went
& lighted on horsbacke, and after sayd to the peres of
fraunce, 'Lordes, I praye you all that ye wyll have my
children for recommended / for they ben com of your 4
blode, and lete the kyng¹ see well to / For yf he make
my children to deye by suche grete vengeance as he
hathe sayd / yf I sholde be-come a sarrasyn, and dwelle
in affryque all the dayes of my liff, I shall stryke of his 8
hede ; for none other gage I wyll not take' / And whan
aymon had sayd thus, he went oute of the ooste in to
fraunce to his countrey, well hevvy by cause he lefte his
children in soo grete poverte / And Charlemagne, that 12
sawe aymon goo thus quyte, and that he had gar-
nysshed mountalban of vytayllis, he was full angry for
it / Soo studyed he vpon this a longe while / and whan
he had studyed longe ynoughe, he was soo sory that 16
none myghte be more / and retourned hymselfe towarde
his barons / and sayd, 'Lordes, I *commaunde* you that
ye breke all our engynes / For by them I have myssed
to have the castell of mountalban.' And In[con]tynente 20
the barons made breke the engynes, as the kynge had
commaunded / And by all thus Reynawde abode a
longe while in good peas, but theyr vytaylles began
sore to mynysshe / And whan Reynawde sawe that / 24
he was sory / and beganne to complayne in hymselfe,
and sayd, 'Good lorde, what shall I doo / I knowe that
atte longe rennyng we shall not mowe holde, and soo
shall charlemagn have noo mercy of vs, but he shall 28
make vs deye. Alas, mawgis, where be you? For yf
ye were wyth vs, we sholde doubte noo thyng, nor I
sholde not suffre this grete distresse that I have' / All
thus as Reynawde complayned hymself / thenne came 32
alarde, that was so feble, that wyth peyn he myghte
stande vpon his fete, and sayd to Reynawde / 'Rey-
nawde, for the love of god make bayarde to be slayne /

¹ Fol. C.C. v. back.

For I maye noo lenger live wythoute mete / nother yet
my brethern.'

4 **T**henne whan reynawd herde his brother alarde
speke thus / he was right sory for it, & toke his
swerde, & went ¹to bayarde for to slee him / And whan
bayarde saw reynaude, he began to make grete ioye /
and whan reynaud sawe the chere that bayarde him
8 made / he sayd to him, 'ha, bayarde, goode beest / yf
I had the herte for to doo the harme, I were welle
cruell.' and whan yonnet, the yonger sone, herde that /
he cryed to his fader, 'sir, wherfore tary ye, that ye
12 slee not bayard, sith he must deye, for I wexe madde
for hungre / and so I tell you, yf I have not shortly
som fode ye shall see me dey afore your eyen / and yet
my moder & my broder also / for we may no lenger
16 live thus, soo harde we ben famyshed' / And whan
reynaude herde his sone speke to hym soo, he had
grete pyte of hym / & grete sorowe in his hert / and
soo he had of bayard that chered hym somoche.
20 Thenne wyst not reynawd what he sholde saye nor
doo, and soo began to thynke a longe while / And
whan he had bethought himself longe ynoughe / he
advysed hym how bayarde shold not deye. And
24 thenne he called after a basin, and made baiard be
leten blode moche / and after he had lete him blode
ynoughe, reynawd stopped the vayne, & gaff the blode
to alarde for to be dressed; and whan it was soden,
28 they ete all a lityll therof, whiche gauf them grete
sustenaunse. And to say the trouth / reynawd & his
folke were well four dayes wythout ony other fode.
And whan came to the fifthe day, that thei wold haue
32 baiard lete blode agen / he was soo feble that he cast
noo blode at all. and whan the duches sawe that, she
began to wepe tenderly, & sayd / 'Sire, for god, sith
that he gyveth no more blode, lete him be slayn / and

Reynawde goes
to Bayard, who
makes signs of
joy when he sees
him.

Reynawde cannot
slay his horse,
but sends for a
basin, and draws
his blood instead,

which his folk
eat.

¹ Fol. C.C. vi.

soo shall ete your pour children of him, that deyen for grete hungre, & I also' / 'Madame,' sayd thenne reynawd, 'I wyll not doo so / For bayarde hathe borne vs goode company in oure liff, and so shall he do tyll 4 thour of our deth, for we shall dey alle togyder.' And ye oughte to knowe that Reynawd¹ and his company were brought soo lowe / that they wayted none other but deth / the whiche was theym nyghe ynoughe, whan 8 an olde man that was amonge them, cam & sayd to reynawd, 'Sir, what shall it be / I see that you & mountalban shall be distroyed / but in you is not the fawte, for it hath be well defended aslong as ye myght, 12 as it apereth, and syth *that* I see ye may nomore doo / come after me, & I shall shew you a waye, where thrugh we shall well all goo out wythoute ony danger / and I wyll well *that* ye knowe mountalban was ones made, & 16 shit afore ye dyde make it / and the lord that buylded it first, lete make a waye vnder the erth, that bryngeth folke vnto the wode of the serpent; and I was a yong childe whan that way was made, and I know well 20 where it lieth / doo dygge where I shall shewe you, and ye shall fynde it wythout ony fayll, and thus shall we goo fre wythout ony danger' / whan reynawd herde thise wordes, he was so gladdde of it that none myght 24 be more / so that he forgate his hungre withall, & sayd, 'O fayr god, that all made, blessed be you! Now have I founde that I desired; for I shall goo to ardeyn, whiche I ought to love dere.' and thenne he toke the 28 olde man by the hande, & made hym to bring him to the² place where he sayd / and there he made to be dygged in therth, & founde y^e waye that the olde man said / wherof he was right glad / and thenne he went 32 to the stable, & put the saddle vpon bayard, & after brought him to the weye / but wyte it that bayard was soo feble that he scante cowde goo the pase. And

An old man tells Reynawde of a passage out of the Castle, whereby they can save themselves by flight.

He shows the men where to dig for the passage.

Reynawde saddles Bayard,

¹ Fol. C.C. vi. back.

² the *repeated* in text.

theñne reynaude, his wyffe, his bredern, his children, & the remenaunte of his folke, put theimself to the way vnder therth, so that noo creature a live abode wythin
4 the castell.

and with his wife and children, and the remainder of his folk, goes through the passage.

Grete plente of torches made reynawd to be fired,¹
that they myght see the beter wythin y^e cave as
thei went, and he ²ordened his forwarde of that few
8 folke that he had / and wente forthe in good orden-
aunce wyth his baner ãisplayed / and he with his
bredern made the reregarde³ / And whan they had goon
a longe while thurgh the cave, that was wyde &
12 large, reynawd made his folke to tary, & sayd to his
bredern / ‘mi bredern, we have doon evyll / For we
have lefte behynde vs kyng yon in the pryson / certes
I sholde lever deye than that I shold leve hym soo /
16 for he sholde deye there for hūgre as a famysshed
woulfe / and that were to vs grete synne.’ ‘By god,’
sayd richard, ‘he hathe well deserved it, for ⁴of a man
that is a traytour, men oughte not to have pyte’ /
20 ‘Broder,’ sayd reynawde, ‘ye saie yll.’ and thenne he
retorned again, & cam to the prison where the kyng
yon was / whiche he toke out & broughte wyth hym.
And whan the duchesse sawe her broder the kyng
24 yon com, she sayd to hym / ‘Ha, broder, ye are right
yll come to me / for all the harme that we have
suffred, cometh thurgh cause of you / I am sory that ye
be not deed rotyn wythin the pryson, for ye have well
28 deserved it.’ ‘Madame,’ sayd reynawde, ‘lete that
alone, I praye you, for he shall not dey if I maye, For
I have doon to hym homage, wherfore I ought to obey
hym. and how be it he hath wroughte full yll agenst

After they have gone some time Reynawde discovers the absence of King John;

he returns, and brings John out of the Castle prison.

¹ quant luy et ses gens furent dedens la cave, F. orig. E. iii.

² Fol. C.C. vii.

³ Quant Regnault eut bien ordonne sa besongne ilz se mirent a la voye par dedens la cave qui estoit graude et plantureuse, F. orig. E. iii.

⁴ yf. orig.

vs, yet shall I never be forsworne agenst hym' / whan
his bredern herde him speke thus / they sayd to hym /
'broder, ye speke well & wysly, and ye doo that ye
ought to doo / nor ye shall never be rebuked of vs for 4
it; doo therin as it playseth you' / And after these
wordes thei went on their waye /

The knights find
themselves in the
woode of the
serpent.

Reynawde's
son swoons
from hunger.

His father
comforts him by
promises of food.

So longe went these knyghtes, that thei cam oute of
the cave, and founde theymself at the woode of 8
the serpent, evyn at the sprynge of the daye / and
assone as thei were issued oute of the sayd cave, thei
were glad / bycause that they were soo scaped fro
charlemagne. Yonnet thenne, the lityl sone ¹of Rey- 12
nawd, swouned there for grete hungre / And whan
Reynawd sawe that, he was right sory for it / and toke
hym vp and sayd / 'Fayr sone, I praye you be a
good chere, for we shall have soone mete grete plente' / 16
And whan he had sayd this, he toke his other sone
aymon in his armes, & recomforted hym moche / and
whan reynawd had doon soo / he loked about hym,
& knew wel where they were. and he sayd to his 20
brethern / 'Lordes, me semeth that we ben nygh the
hermytage of my good frende bernarde.' 'sire,' sayd
alarde, 'ye saye trouthe, but what shall we doo?'
'Broder,' sayd reynawd, 'I counseill for the moost 24
profytable that we goo there / and we shall abyde there
tyl the nyght be com / and thenne we shall take our
way towarde ardeyn; for I counseill not that we goo
by day / and also it can not be but the hermyte shall 28
have some mete whiche we shall gyve to my wyff, &
to my children' / 'Broder,' sayd alarde, 'by my feyth
ye speke wel.' and thenne they put theimself to the
waye / and they had goon but a lityll that they founde 32
the hermytage; but as they wente all thurgh the
woode, they departed thone fro the other as wylde
bestes, etyng the herbes and the gresses as it had be

They all go
towards the
monastery,
and on the way
eat wild herbs
and apples,
because of their
great hunger.

¹ Fol. C.C. vii. back.

apples or peeres, so grete hungre they had. And whan Reynawd sawe this, he was sory, & called theym agen, & sayd, 'Lordes, ye doo not well for to separe thus the
 4 one from the other, For it myghte lightly tourne vs to
 dommage / I praye you that every man calle other, &
 gadre yourself togyder / and lete vs goo in to the
 hermytage / For we shall fynde there bernarde, that
 8 shall make vs good ehere, I wote it well'¹ / And whan
 they were come there / Reynawde knocked at the gate /
 And whan bernarde herde it / he cam anone, and sawe
 Reynawde and hys folke / wherof he was ryght gladde /
 12 and came and kyssed Reynawd. And after he sayd
 vnto hym / 'Fayre lorde, ye be ²ryght welcome / of
 whens come you / and how is it wyth you?' / 'My
 frende bernarde,' sayd thenne Reynawde, 'Wyte it that
 16 I have lefte myn herytaunce by fyne force of hungre,
 and soo I goo to Ardeyne³ / For I canne none other-
 wyse doo atte this tyme / And I pray you that yf ye
 have ony mete, that ye, for godys sake, wyll gyve it to
 20 my wyffe / and to my children, For they ben soo sore
 famysshed that they dey for hungre, but yf they have
 some mete.'

Reynawde gains
 admittance at the
 monastery,
 where he finds his
 friend Bernard,
 who joyfully re-
 ceives him.

Whan Bernarde⁴ vnderstode thise wordes of Rey-
 24 nawde, he had of hym grete pyte / for the
 dystresse wherin he sawe Reynawde & his folke / And
 of the other parte, he was gladde whan he wyste that
 they were scaped oute of the dangeours of Charle-
 28 magne / and anone he wente to the duchesse, & sayd
 to her / 'Madame, ye be right welcome / I praye you
 doubte noo thyng, For ye be arryved in a good
 place / for to take your reste atte your ease' / And
 32 thenne he wente in to his chambre, and broughte oute

Bernard is grieved
 for the sufferings
 of the Sons;

¹ quant regnault eut se dist chescun se ralia ensemble et sen vont vers hermitage, F. orig. E. iv.

² Fol. C.C. viii.

³ dordonne, F. orig.

⁴ larmite, F. orig.

he sets bread
and wine before
them.

brede and wyne / and all suche as god had sente
hym / And after he sette hym besyde Reynawd, and
sayd to hym / 'Lorde, take a worthe suche vytaylles
as god hathe gyven to me! there they ben / I shall 4
gyve you mete in dyspyte of Charlemagne' / 'Gramercy,
syre,' sayd Reynawd / 'here ben good tydynges for
vs; but whan the nyghte is come, we shall goo to
Ardeyne.¹ For I doubte sore that Charlemagne shall 8
aperceyve that we ben departed / For yf god graunte me
that I may bryng me and my company to Ardeyne / I
shall not sette a rotyn appull for all the power of
Charlemagne / for I shall well deffende me agaynste 12
hym.' 'Syre,' sayd the heremyte, 'ye saye well / I praye
god that he wyll fulfille your wyll.' All that daye
soiourned Reynawd and his folke wyth Bernarde the
heremyte / the whiche served and ²comforted them of 16
all his power. and also he gaf of the otis of his asse
to bayarde,³ as moche as he myght etc. And whan the
nyghte was com, Reynawd wolde departe / and bade
fare well to the heremyte. and whan the heremyte 20
saw that they wold goo awaye, he founde the meanes
that they had thre horses, wherof the duchesse had
thone / and the children had the other tweyne / And
thus reynaude wyth his felishyp went on theyr waye 24
so long that they cam to ardeyne.¹ And whan they of
the cyte wyst that their lord was com, that they had
desired so longe / they were well glad, & cam agenste
hym in fayr company, and receyved hym honourable / 28
and conveyd hym vnto the fortresse. and after they
went & made feest thourghe all the towne / like as
god had descended there, ⁴for grete ioye that they had
of theyr lord reynawd.⁴ And whan the barons of the 32
londe wyst that theyr lord reynawd & his bredern were

Reynawde says he
shall defy Charle-
magne when he
reaches Arden.

At night they all
take farewell of
Bernard,

and set forth for
Arden.

The people of the
city welcome
them gladly.

¹ dordonne. F. orig.

² Fol. C.C. viii. back.

³ qui estoit si rescru. F. orig. E. iv. back.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

come to ardeyn,¹ they were glad / and cam soone [to]
 see hym / and to hym they made reverence / But here
 levethe the history to speke of reynawde, of his bredern,
 4 his wyff & his chyldren, that were in ardeyn¹ well at
 ease / for they grete hungre was ceassed / and shall
 retorne to speke of charlemagn & of his xii peres /
 for to shewe how he entred in to mountalban, after
 8 that reynawd was departed.

CHAPTER XX.

¶ How Charlemagn, after that he had be-
 seged moumtalban, and had famysshed
 reynawd & his brethern / knewe that they
 12 were goon, and had habandouned the
 place,² and were goon to Ardeyne,¹ He
 wente there and beseged theym agayn,
 But or ever he had pyghte his siege,
 16 Reynawde / and his bredern made an
 yssue vpon hym and hys folke, and slewe
 many of theym, And toke prysoner Richard
 the duke of normandy.³ &c./

20 ⁴ **I**n this party sheweth the history, that whan Charle-
 magne was at the siege / byfore moumtalban, sore
 an angred that he cowde not take Reynawd ne his
 bredern / Nowe it happed on a daye that Charlemagn
 24 rode nighe the castell for to wyte how they bare
 theymself withiñ moumtalban. And whan he was
 nyghe,⁵ he loked vp to the walles, and sawe no body

Charlemagne
 rides towards the
 Castle of Mont-
 alban, where he
 sees no one on the
 wall;

¹ dordonne, F. orig.

² luy et ses freres sa femme et ses enfans par dessoubz
 terre, F. orig. E. iv. back.

³ pert de france dont charlemagne fut moult dolant, F.
 orig. E. v. ⁴ Fol. D.D. i. ⁵ du chastel, F. orig.

that was there / as they were wont to be / And whan
 he saw that / he was abasshed of it, and came agen to
 his pavyllion / and sent incontynent for all his barons /
 and whan thei were come, he sayd to theym / ‘ Lordes, 4
 it is well nyghe eyghte dayes a goo / that I sawe noo
 body vpon the walles of mountalban / wherfore I
 beleve that alle they of it be deed.’ ‘ Syre,’ sayd the
 duke naymes, ‘ it were good that men wyste the trouth 8
 of it / sende thider, syre, yf it playse you’ / Whan
 charlemagn herde this, he lighted anone on horsbacke /
 and all his barons wyth him, and went to mount-
 alban / And whan they were come to the gate / they 12
 made semblant to gyve a sawte to the castell / but
 reynawde was to ferre for to defende it¹ / and thenne
 Charlemagn wende verely that Reynawde & all his had
 been deed for hungre & grete distresse / and he made 16
 to be broughte there a longe ladder, and righted it to
 the walles. And incontynent rowlande mounted vp²
 first of all / and after him ogyer, olivere, & the duke
 naymes. And whan they were vpon the walles, they 20
 behelde wythin, and they saw nother man nor woman,
 and soo they went down from the walles / and yede &
 opened the gate / and made charlemagn to come in, &
 all his folke / But wyte it that Charlemagne wente in 24
 as angry as ony man myghte be. And whan he was
 wythin & founde noo body / he was sore merveyllled,
 that he wyste not what he shold say nor doo. Soo went
 he vp to the dongeon, & he fonde there noo ³body / 28
 wherof he was more merveyllled than he was a fore,
 and thenne he began to saye / ‘ Bi my soule, lordes,
 here is grete merveylles, & well the devylles werke /
 wyte it that Reynawde is goon, & all his bredern, and 32
 all his folke also, and all this hathe doon that theef

he thinks all the
 people are dead.

The barons mount
 the walls,

and open the gate
 for the Emperor
 to enter.

¹ Quant Charlemaigne vit ce que nessun ne se apparissoit pour le chastel deffendre, F. orig. E. v.

² vs, *orig.*

³ Fol. D.D. i. back.

mawgys, that hathe ben here wythin / for it can none
otherwyse be.'

4 **A**fter that Charlemagne had sayd thise wordes / he
begañ to walke wythin the castell, sekyng all
aboute to see yf he myghte fynde reynawd or ony of
his brethern. And soo longe he went thus here &
there, that he founde the waye there as they wente
8 oute / and whan the kyng charlemagne sawe the cave,
he was sore abasshed wyth it / and called ogyer the
dane, & sayd to hym, 'Ogyer, here is the waye where
thruge the traytours are goon awaye; and all thys
12 hath doon me mawgis / For he hathe made this cave
in dyspyte of me, Wherof he maketh my herte to
breke in my bely.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes /
'ye blame mawgys; but thys cave sheweth not that
16 it hathe be vnmade this hundred yeres passed / and I
telle you for certeyn that sarrasins made it fyrste.'
Whan charlemagne herde thise wordes, he began to
smyle wyth an angry face / and cursed theym that
20 made the cave / and was mervyllously an angered,
For he knew wel that reynawd & all his company were
goon oute at the same hole / and soo he was dysmysed
of his purpose. he sayd thenne to his folke, 'Now
24 goo lightly in, and seke where this hole brynge men
vnto, for I shall not be at myn ease tyll I knowe it' /
And whan rowlande vnderstode charlemagne / he put
hymself wythin the cave / and made lighte a grete
28 mayne of torches for to see in it. and after rowland
wente with grete plente of frenshemen, that folowed
hym / And thei wente soo longe tyll they came at
thende of the cave, and founde ¹theymsel in the wode
32 of the serpent / And whan rowlande was come out of
the cave / he loked about for to know where they
were, but he cowde not hymself knowe it. and
thenne he sayd to hys folke, 'Lordes, me semeth that

Charlemagne
seeks for the Sons
in the Castle,

and discovers the
passage under-
ground;

he curses those
who have made
the cave,

and commands
his folk to dis-
cover where it
leads.

Roland goes
through the cave
with his men,

and finds himsel
in the wood.

¹ Fol. D.D. ii.

for to goo ony forder for to seke after reynaud / it were but foly, for he knoweth well the countrey, and we wote not where to goo' / 'Syre,' sayd his felawes, 'ye saye well ; therefore lete vs retourne to charlemagn 4 your vncle, for to telle hym what we have founde wythin this cave.'

Whan rowland & his felawes were accorded, they returned that way that they were come. 8 And whan ye kynge sawe theym come oute agen / he asked of theym what they had founde, and yf they had founde ony yssue to goo oute of the cave / 'Syre,' sayd rowland, 'ye, wythout faylle / Wyte *that* reynawd 12 & his folke are seaped you / and they have bayarde wyth them / for here ye maye see the path' / And whan the kynge charlemagne knewe the trouthe, how reynawd & his company were goon, he was soo gretly 16 an angred that none myght be more / and the same hour he sent his messagers in all his londes & countres, for to wyte yf he myghte vnderstonde ony tydynges where reynawd & his bredern were become. And 20 whan he had doon this, he commaunded that his osteshold dyslodge / and that they shold come all to mountalban. And whan the barons herde the kynge, they dyde his commaundemente / and cam all to 24 mountalban, & lodged theym as wel as they cowde / and abode there well six dayes, makyng grete ioye that reynawd & his brethern were thus expelled out of it. And as the barons were devysing wythin mountalban, 28 there came a messenger to fore charlemagne, and salved him as to hym apperteyneth / and to hym he sayd in this wyse, 'Syre, wyte it that I have seen Reynawd, Alard, guyehard, ¹& Rychard, ledyng grete ioye wyth 32 grete company of knyghtes / kepinge a grete courte wythin the cyte of ardeyne² / Where as reynawd gyveth grete gyftes to every one, and I am sore

Roland relates to the Emperour how Reynawde and his folk have escaped.

All the host of Charlemagne lodge themselves in Montalban.

A messenger brings tidings of the Sons in Arden.

¹ Fol. D.D. ii. back.

² dordonne, F. orig.

merveilled where he hath gotten soo grete tresour.
 And also is there wyth hym the kyng yon of
 gascoyn / and that more is, I telle you for certeyn,
 4 that Reynawd hathe made a grete assemble of folke
 for to deffende him agenst you, yf ye goo in ony wyse
 for to assaylle hym' /

The kyng was moche angry whan he herde hys
 8 messenger / soo sware he by saynt denys he
 sholde never lie in noo bed tyll he had beseged
 ardeyn¹ / And whan he had sayd soo, he commaunded
 to his barons that every man sholde trusse his bag-
 12 gage / and that they sholde take on theyr way streyghte
 to ardeyn¹ / And whan the barons herde charlemagn
 speke soo, they toke on theyr waye wythoute any more
 taryeng,² towarde ardeyne² / and rode soo longe tyll that
 16 they came to mountargweyll / that was not ferre from
 ardeyne¹ / For men myghte see from thens the steples
 of the towne. There was lodged the oost of charle-
 magne that nyghte / but I proymse he dyde doo make
 20 good watche, for doubte of the four sones of aymon.
 And whan the daye was come / charlemagne dyde set
 his folke in good ordenaunce / and wyth his baner dys-
 played they rode towarde ardeyne¹ / And whan rey-
 24 nawde wyste that charlemagn was come for to besege
 them wyth in ardeyn,¹ he began to swere that he
 sholde not lete him beseged, as he had doon wythin
 mountalban. For rather he wolde fyghte wyth charle-
 28 magne / And yf it maye soo falle that he come in his
 handles, he shall not have pyte of hym as he had to fore
 tyme, by cause he had founde hym soo cruell, and
 wythoute pyte / 'Brother,' sayd thenne Rycharde, 'now
 32 I see you speke like a knyghte / and by the feyth that
 I owe vnto you / I promyse you that, or ever charle-
 magn shal besege vs, I shall slee moo than a[n] hundred

The Emperor
 determines to
 besiege the city

The Frenchmen
 assemble near
 Arden.

Reynawde swears
 he will not be
 besieged again.

¹ dordonne, F. orig. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Fol. D.D. iii.

Richard vows to slay more than a hundred of the Emperor's folk.

of his folke. And, but yf god faylle vs / we shall doo suche a thyng that shall be to the grete hurt and dysplaysure of hym / wherof he shall be sori all the dayes of his liff / For he is not manered like a gentyll mañ / 4 For the more that he is prayed / the lesse he dooth.' 'Brother,' sayd alarde,¹ / 'ye speke well & honestly, And I shall conne you thanke for it aslong as I live.'

Reynawde summons his folk, and issues out of the city.

Ye oughte to wyte that whan reynawd sawe that 8 charlemagne come for to besege hym wyth a grete puyssaunce of folke / he was noo thyng abashed wyth it. But² he made incontynente bondy, his good home, to be blowen / and made his folke to be arryved 12 redely, that were in grete nombre, and made theym yssue oute of the cyte / And whan his armye was assembled in the feeldes / it was a noble thyng for to see. And thenne he ordeyned his bataylles by good or- 16 denaunce as a wyse fyghter / And after that he had doon soo, he called his brethern, and sayd to theym, 'My fayr brethern, this daye is the daye that we shall deye, or elles doo soo moche that we shall brynge the 20 werre atte an ende / Wherfore, I praye you that every of vs shewe hym selfe a goode knyght; for in you is all my truste. And soo I promyse you that I have lever deye worthily in bataylle, than for to be hanged sham- 24 fully as a theffe. My brethern, I praye you come alle nyghe me / for I wylle that we ben the firste that shall smyte vpon our enmyes.' 'Brother,' sayd alarde, 'we shall doo your commaundement / doubte ye not of it / 28 and goo forth whan ye wylle' / And whan they were soo agreed, Reynawde dyde chuse an hundred of the beste knyghtes of his felawship, and sayd to theym, 'Sires, I praye you that ye wyl be with me in the 32 firste bataylle, and ye shall doo me grete honoure.'³ 'Syre,' sayd the knyghtes, 'we shall gladly doo your

He charges his brethren to fight valiantly, as it is better to die in battle than be hung shamefully;

he chooses 100 knights for his body guard,

¹ par la foy que je vous doy, F. orig.

² Bnt, orig.

³ Pol. D.D. iii. back.

commaundemente, and we shall not leve you as longe
as liff is in vs; and so we thanke you of the grete
worshyp that ye doo to calle vs in your company.

4 For we knowe well that we can not fare amys as longe
as we be wyth you.'

Whan Reynawd had ordeyned well his bataylles /
he made none other taryeng / but went the
8 formost of all, the sheelde atte the necke / and the
spere in the fyst, and was mounted vpon bayarde, that
behelde proudly about hym, makyng grete noyse /
And thenne reynawd gaff hym the spore / and wente
12 fayr vpon the folke of charlemagne. And whan charle-
magne sawe bayarde comyng, that made so grete bruyte /
and reynawde vpon his backe that came in soo fayr
ordenaunce / he was sore abashed of it / and sayd in
16 hymselfe / 'O, goode lorde / and where the devyll have
all redy had the four sones of Aymon so many folke as
I see here now wyth theym? I byleve it is some
devylles werke; for I had not lefte many wyth theym
20 late a goo. And now reynawde is soo puyssaunte that
he fereth me noo thyng. But I promyse god, all this
shall not avaylle hym / but I shall doo iustyce vpon
hym & his bredern or oughte longe' / And thenne he
24 made his bataylle to be sette in ordenaunce in the beste
wyse that he cowde / and lighted on horsbacke for to
come fyghte wyth reynawde / And whan the duke
naymes sawe that Charlemagne was soo madde that
28 he wolde go fyghte wyth Reynawde, he wente to hym
and sayd / 'Syre, Syre, what ys that ye wylle doo? I
promyse you it were grete foly for to fyghte wyth thise
folke / and it were better that ye sholde make peas
32 with Reynawde / For I am sure that Reynawde shall
doo all that ye wyll commaunde hym. And I telle
you well, that yf we fyghte wyth theym, that ye shall
¹see many knyghtes to traylle theyr bowelles thourghe

and, mounting
Bayard, rides
towards the
Emperor's folk.

Charlemagne
fears for his men
when he sees
the forces of Rey-
nawde.

Duke Naymes
counsels the
Emperor to make
peace with the
Sons.

¹ Fol. D.D. iv.

the feeldes / wherof it shall be grete harme to the one party / and to the other. And suche shalle the losse be, that it shall not be recovered agayne' / 'Naymes,' sayd the kynge Charlemagne, 'lete this alone / For I shall doo none other wyse, for no man that liveth. I sholde rather lete me to be dysmembred.' And whan the duke Naymes had vnderstonde his wordes, he was full sory of it / and lefte his spekyng therof. And from that hour, Charlemagne delibered hymselfe for to fyghte / and always he rode forthe in grete wrathe.

Charlemagne refuses his advice in anger.

And whan Reynawd sawe that the two oostes were approached sore nyghe, thone the other / as to hande and hande, he sayd to his brother Rycharde, ¹that was nexte hym,¹ 'I wylle goo speke wyth the kynge Charlemagn, for to wyte of hym yf he wyll pardonne and take vs vnto his grace. For yf he wolde doo soo / I sholde doo enteerly all his wylle & playsure, as to our soverayne lorde' / 'By god, brother,' sayd thenne Rycharde, 'ye be not worthe a botelle of heye / For the herte is all redy faylled in your bely' / 'Goo forthe, myschaunte,' sayd thenne Reynawde / 'thou wote not what thou sayste, For I wylle goo there; noo man shall kepe me therfro / and yf he refuseth the peas whan I shall axe it of hym, I shall make myn a vowe to god that I shall nevermore requyre hym therof' / 'Brother,' sayd Alarde, 'ye saye well and wysely, goo there hardely / and doo therein your wylle' / And thenne Reynawde made none other delaynge / but he smote bayarde wyth the spores, and wente incontynente towarde the kynge Charlemagne, and sayd to hym, 'Syre, for god mercy suffre, yf it be your playsure, that we have peas and accorde wyth you / that this werre that hathe lasted solong maye fynysse, and that your wrathe be putte awaye from vs, yf ²it playse you / and I shall be redy to doo all that ye wyll / and also I shall

Reynawde determines to speak to the Emperor, and demand his forgiveness;

he presents himself before Charlemagne, and pleads for peace.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. E. viii. ² Fol. D.D. iv. back.

gyve you bayarde my good horse.' Thenne sayd the
 kyng to hym / 'goo fro me, false gloton / the devyll
 sped the / for all the worlde shall not conne kepe the,
 4 but that I shalle slee the.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'ye
 shall not doo soo / and god wylle / for I shall defende
 me well / And wyte it, sith that it is com to this / ye
 shall not be spared of vs / but we shall do the worste
 8 that we can.' 'Smyte, knyghtes,' sayd the kyng / 'I
 shall never prayse you yf this evyll gloton scape me
 now' / and whan reynawd sawe this / he sayd, 'Syr
 kyng of fraunce, I defye you!' and forthwyth he
 12 spored bayarde / and ranne wyth his spere vpon a
 knyghte / whiche he smote soo harde in the breste,
 that he overthrewe hym deed to therth. And after that
 he wente agen to his folke. And whan Charlemagne
 16 sawe this, he cryed wyth an hie voys, 'smyte, knyghtes!
 now shall they be dyscomfyted' /

The Emperor
 insults him
 wrathfully,

and calls on his
 knights to slay
 him.

Reynawde returns
 to his folk.

Thenne whan rowlande herde the kyng charlemagne
 crye thus / he spored after reynawde, and many
 20 other knyghtes also / but they overtoke hym not /
 Whan rycharde sawe his brother come, he cam hym
 agenst / and sayd to him, 'Brother, what tydynges
 brynge you / shall we have peas or werre?' 'Broder,'
 24 sayd reynawde, 'lete vs doo the best that we can, for
 peas we shall not have' / 'Brother,' said themne richard,
 'god blisse you for the tydynges that ye brynge! for I
 thinke to doo this daye suche a thyng wherof charle-
 28 magn shall be angry' / 'Brother,' sayd reynawde, 'I
 praye you that ye shewe yourselfe vertuous & stronge
 agenste our enmyes.' Whan the kyng charlemagne
 sawe that it was tyme to set vpon, he called hastily the
 32 duke naymes, & sayd to him / 'Naymes, holde my
 oryflam, and thynke to smyte well and valiauntly as a
 worthy knyght ought to doo at ether hande in keping
 1 my worshyp, and herof I praye you hertly' / 'Syre,'

Roland spurs
 after Reynawde
 with many other
 knights,
 but cannot reach
 him.

Charlemagne
 commands
 Naymes to fight
 worthily.

¹ Fol. D.D. v.

sayd the duke naymes, 'ye nede not for to praye me, for I am bounde to doo the same, but it greveth me that ye have not doon otherwyse / that is, that ye sholde have graunted to the peas; for the werre hathe lasted 4 to longe.' 'Naymes, I commaunde you that ye speke nomore therof to me / for while I live they shall have noo peas wyth me.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes, 'I am sorry for it / Now lete see what ye shall doo / for I 8 goo to bataylle firste of all; and loke that ye folowe me yf ye wyll, for I shal put me in suche a place, wherof ye shall be sore merveylled, and not wythout a cause / for there nys noo man so oolde / but he sholde soone 12 gete hete there wythin a lityll while. Now folowe that wyll!'

Whan Reynawd sawe the oryflame of fraunce com / he broched bayarle wyth the spores, and ranze 16 among the thickest, and smote a knyghte soo harde that he cast hym down deed to the erthe / And after, he torned hym towarde his folke, and chered them honestly, and thenne he went agen vp on his enmyes, 20 and of theim he overthrewe foure, one after a nother, and vpon the fyfte¹ he brake his spere² in to many peces, & hurted hym right sore² / and anone he set hande to his swerde, & smote a knyghte wyth vpon his helme soo 24 strongly, that he cleved hym to the teeth / and forthwyth he smote a nother² wyth suche strengthe² that he made fle the hede fro the body of hym / And after he had doon these two strokes, he cried 'ardeyn'³ as hie as 28 he cowde, for to reioysse his folke. And whan he had cryed soo / he sayd to theym / 'Now vpon theym, goode knyghtes / For this daye we shall avenge the grete shame that charlemagne hathe doon to vs soo 32 longe wythout ony reyson.' And whan alarde, guycharde, & Rychard herde reynawd speke thus / they

Reynawde cheers on his folk, and fights fiercely in the battle;

he crys on high 'Arden,' calling on his knyghts to drive back their enemies.

¹ quartrisme. F. orig. E. viii. back.

²⁻² omitted. F. orig. E. viii. back. ³ dordonne, F. orig.

ranne vpon their enmyes by suche ¹a maner that eche
of them overthrew vii knightes at that enpraynt. who
that had be there than, he sholde have seen grete faytes
4 of armes doon of the four sones of aymon / For after
that they were ones assembled togyder / the folke of
charlemagn myght not endure a fore them / For rey-
nawd & hys bredern went smytynge at eyther hande,
8 and felde theyr enmyes down sterke deed as bestes /
soo that the moost parte of them were slayn or dis-
comfyted /

The Sons repulse
the Frenchmen
with great
slaughter.

12 **W**han the kyng charlemagn sawe the grete damage
that the foure sones of aymon bare to hym /
he was right sore an angred for it. And wyth grete
wrathe he went & ranne vpon the folke of reynawd, &
smote a knyghte soo vengably that he cast hym down
16 deed to the erthe / and brake his spere all in peces.
And after, he toke his swerde in his hande, wherof he
dyde merveylles of armes / so moche that his folke
praysed hym for it, for he bare hymself there valiaunt
20 & stronge / And wyte that this merveyllous bataylle
was soo cruell that it was grete pite for to see.

Charlemagne
rides towards the
folk of Reynawde,
and fights with
marvellous
strength.

C It is trouthe that rowlande was a ferde for his vncl
charlemagn, that he sholde be overthrown, whan
24 he saw hym in the presse, wherfor he went anone nyghe
hym / and soo dyde oliver, ogyer, & all the xii peres, for
to kepe that he sholde have noo harme. And wha
the grete bataylles were assembled one agenst thother,
28 ye sholde a seen there a sharpe & a hevy bataylle, so
that it was pyte for to see / for sin that rowland, oliver,
& all the xii peres of fraunce were com in the medle /
they begann to make soo grete slauhter of the folke of
32 reynawd, that they made theym leue the place / and
wha reynawd & his brethern saw that, thei medled
them so sharpely amonge the frenshemen that every
man made them way ; for they raught no man / but

Roland fears for
the safety of his
uncle Charle-
magne ;

the XII peers
surround him,

and fight so
valiantly that the
folk of Reynawde
give way before
them.

¹ Fol. D.D. v. back.

thei threw hym deed to therthe, somoche that there was no thing but trembled a fore them. ye ought to wyte, *that* fro thour of prime vnto thoure of ¹none, endured this mortalle bataylle / that none wyste who ⁴ sholde have the better of it / But whan none was passed, the folke of Reynawde began to wythdrawe theymself, for they myghte nomore. And for to saye the trouth, yf the folke of reynawd wythdrewre theym / ⁸ they were not to be blamed for it / for charlemagn had foure tymes more folke than reynawde, besides the twelve Peres that were suche knyghtes as men well know / But this that the Folke of reynawd dyd, was ¹² for the good ensample that they sawe in reynawde & in his bredern / And whan the noble knight perceyved that his folke wythdrewre theymself, he came to him that bare his standarle, & sayd to him / ‘My frende, ¹⁶ ryde towarde ardeyn² in the wysest wyse that ye can, for this day we have foughte right sore / and it is tyme that we goo reste ourself.’ ‘Sire,’ sayd the knight, ‘I shall well doo your *commaundement*.’ and incontynent ²⁰ he toke his waye towarde ardeyn.² And thenne reynaud called his bredern, & sayd to theym, ‘lete vs be behinde ³for to kepe our folke,³ for otherwyse we are lost’ / ‘Brother,’ sayd rycharde, ‘doubte not / for as longe as ²⁴ god gyveth life to you & to bayarde, we nede not fere noo thyng’ /

The Sons with-
draw towards
Arden.

Whan charlemagn sawe that reynawd & all his company was goon / he cried wyth a hie ²⁸ voys, ‘now after, lordes, after! for now ben they dyscomfyted’ / But this worde ³of Charlemagne³ was cause that many a worthy knyghte loste his life / For suche dyde folowe after Reynawd that payd derely for ³² it, For Reynawde and his brethern slewe moo than an hundred that folowed after theym / And wolde Charle-

Charlemagne calls
on his men to
tollow them,
For which cause
many a knight is
slain by Rey-
nawde and his
brethren.

¹ Fol. D.D. vi. ² dordonne. F. orig. F. i.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. F. i.

magne or noo, Reynawde and his bretherne entred
 agayne wyth theyr folke wythin Ardeyn.¹ And ye
 muste knowe that Rycharde, the brother of Reynawde,
 4 iousted wyth Rycharde, the duke of Normandy, by the
 2 gate of Ardeyne,¹ as they wolde have entred in / And
 there the duke was overthrowen, the whiche was taken
 prysoner by Rycharde the brother of Reynawde / and
 8 broughte hym in to the cyte, mawgre the folke of
 Charlemagne / And whan Reynawde and all his folke
 were wythin Ardeyne,¹ he made the gates to be shitte /
 And after, went and dysarmed theym for to take some
 12 ease / For they had well nede therof.

Richard, Duke of
 Normandy, is
 taken prisoner by
 the Sons.

Ye oughte to wyte, that whan Charlemagn saw
 that the four sones of Aymon had saved theym-
 selfe, and that they had taken Rycharde the duke of
 16 normandy prysoner, that was one of the twelve peres /
 he was so angry that noo man canne be more / For he
 feared sore leste Reynawde sholde make to deye
 rychard of normandy. and whan he saw that he
 20 myghte doo none other, he commaunded that the cyte
 sholde be beseged of all sides ; the whiche thyng was
 incontynente doon as he had commaunded / And
 thenne sware charlemagne, that he sholde never leve
 24 his siege vnto the tyme *that* he had taken the cyte,
 and the four sones of Aymon to be hanged shamfully /
 ‘Syre,’ sayd Rowlande, ‘ye knowe that I am he that
 moost hath hurted the four sones of aymon, nor
 28 never I spake to you of peas bytwene you & theym /
 but fro hens forth reyson commaundeth me that I
 sholde speke & move therunto / Syre, ye know well
 that it is a goo XV yeres & more that ye have werred
 32 wyth the foure sones of aymon, and we had alwayes
 the worse of the werre / and not without cause / for
 reynawd & his bredern are valiaunt knyghtes, nor they

The Emperor
 fears that Duke
 Richard will be
 slain ;

he commaunds
 the city to be
 besieged.

Roland counsels
 for peace with
 Reynawde,
 as the war has
 lasted xv. years ;

¹ dordonne, F. orig. F. i. ² Fol. D.D. vi. back.

be not to be lightly brought to dyscomfyture¹ / And I
 promyse you, if ye had werred solong vpon the sarra-
 syns, as ye have doon on the four sones of aymon, ye
 shold have be lord of the moste parte of them / 4
 whiche had be to you more worship & les damage.
 & wors is, ye know how richard of ²normandy, one of
 the beste knyghtes that ye had, is taken; and yf
 otherwyse it happeth to hym than well, it shall be to 8
 you grete dyshonour and blame, For therof ye shall
 see all fraunce in a rore & trowble / but yf ye put
 som remedy therto;³ and I telle you, yf I were in
 the cas that Reynawd is in, I sholde slee hym / Syth 12
 that I myghte have noo peas wyth you / Wherfore,
 syre, yf ye wyll byleve me, for your honoure & for
 your prouffyte, ye shall sende worde to Reynawde,
 that he deliver you agayne Richarde of normandy 16
 all armed vpon his horse, and ye shall make peas
 wyth hym. and I promyse you, syre, he shall doo it
 gladly wythall that ye wyll commaunde hym / and
 soo shall all his brethern also.' 'rowland,' sayd 20
 thenne the kynge / 'wylle ye saye ony thyng more' /
 'Naye, syre,' sayd Rowland. 'And I swere you vpon
 my feyth,⁴ that the four sones of Aymon shall never
 have peas wyth me / and soo I telle, that I fere me 24
 not for Richarde of normandy, For Reynawde sholde
 rather put oute bothe his owne eyen than that he
 durste doo to Rycharde ony harme vpon his body' /
 And whan the barons herde Charlemagn speke soo / 28
 the teres began to falle doun from theyr eyen, for
 grete feere that Rycharde of normandy, theyr pere,
 sholde have ony harme / After all these thynges, Rey-
 nawd & his bredern were within ardeyne,⁵ makynge 32

he advises Charle-
 magne to ask for
 the deliverance of
 Duke Richard on
 terms of peace.

The Emperor
 declines all
 conditions
 of peace,
 and vows Rey-
 nawde will never
 dare to hang the
 Duke.

¹ comment lon cuide, F. orig. F. ii.

² Fol. D.D. vii.

³ Car le dit richart de normandie a moult de grans amyx
 et parente, F. orig. F. ii.

⁴ dist Charlemaigne, F. orig. F. ii.

⁵ dordonne, F. orig.

grete ioye / And after they were all oute of theyr
 harneys, Reynawd ordeyned good wache vpon the
 walles of the cyte. And thenne he made come the
 4 duke Rycharde of normandy a fore hym, and sayd to
 hym in this maner / 'Duke Rycharde, ye know well
 that the kyng dothe grete wronge for to trouble vs soo
 as he hath doon, and yet dooth wythout ony resonable
 8 cause / And therfor I tell you for certeyne / but yf ye
 make vs to have peas, thynke not to live ony lenger /
 For I shall doo smyte of your hede, and ¹your body to
 be hewed in four quarters' / 'Syre,' sayd the duke
 12 Richarde of normandy, 'I am in your dangeour, soo
 may ye doo of me your playsure / Ye have taken me
 by werre / and none otherwyse. yf ye doo to me
 otherwyse than ye ought of ryght of werre / ye shall
 16 have dishonour for evermore / And soo I wyll well
 that ye knowe, that as longe as I live / I shall not
 faylle charlemagne for noo fere of dethe' / Whan
 Reynawde herde Rycharde of normandy speke thus,
 20 he refreynd a lityll his wrathe; and thenne he com-
 maunded that he shold be put in yrons wythin his
 chambres, and that he sholde be well kept & curtesly,
 and that he be well served of that apperteyneth to his
 24 estate / Thenne was the duke Rycharde all thus in
 prison / but he was well served of all goode metes; and
 he had good company for to playe to what game that
 he wolde. And also the good duchesse clare dyde
 28 visite hym often, and recomforted hym with her fair
 langage /

Whan charlemagne had beseged the cyte rounde
 aboute, and sawe that by noo sawtynge he
 32 myghte not gete it / he dyde doo make grete engynes
 for to caste stones in / But what somer that he
 dyde, Reynawd & his bredern, and also his folke
 yssued oute often, as well by nyghte as by daye, vpon

Reynawde tells
 Duke Richard he
 will be slain,
 unless Charle-
 magne puts an
 end to the war.

Duke Richard is
 treated courteous-
 ly as a prisoner of
 war.

The Emperor
 devises great
 engines for the
 assault of the city.

¹ Fol. D.D. vii. back.

the folke of the kyng Charlemagn / and dyde hym grete *dommage* / For reynawd toke noo man but he kepte him for prisoner / for to see yf he myghte have peas wyth charlemagn by meanes of theim. and 4 whyle that charlemagn had layd his siege thus afore ardeyne¹ / the kyng yon of gascoyn fell sike a bed of a grete sikenes / and² shrofe him of all his sinnes / prayenge god to have pyte & mercy on hym / and 8 after he had be long sike, he deyed / god pardonne his soule! And wyte that reynawde made hym to be buried worshipfully, as to a king perteyneth / but ther was no man *that* wept³ for hym / For all they of 12 the cyte hated hym, by cause of the grete treyson that he had doon to the four sones of Aymon. Now levethe the history to speke of this matere, and retorneth to speke of mawgys, that was in his hermytage, 16 that served our lorde wyth good herte, somoche that he had forgotten Reynawd, his bredern / and his frendes.

King John dies within the city, and is buried honourably as a king.

CHAPTER XXI.

¶ How mawgys, he beyng in his hermyt- 20 age / came hym a wylle by a vysion that he had by nyghte in his slepe / for to goo see reynawd & his bredern,⁴ And how he mette wyth ii marchauztes, that vii 24 theves had robbed in a wood, of whiche theves the sayd mawgys slewe fyve / and deliverred to y^e marchauztes all their good agayn / And after this he wente to ardeyne¹ 28 for to see reynawd & his bredern /

¹ dordonne, F. orig. F. iii. ² add *orig.* ³ Fol. D.D. viii.

⁴ Au matin se mist a chemin, F. orig. F. iii.

Now sheweth the history, that whan mawgys was
 in his hermytage, and had watched soo long
 aboute his prayers to god, he felle a slepe¹ / and him
 4 semed in his slepe that he was at mounstalban, & sawe
 reynawd & hys bredern, that cam agens hym, and made
 their complaynte to hym of charlemagn, that wolde take
 fro them the goode horse bayarde / but reynawd had
 8 hym fast by the brydle / and wolde not lete it goo /
 And wyte it, that mawgys had soo grete sorowe in his
 dreame, that he awoke wythall all wrothe, and arose
 on his fete incontinent / And thenne he sware our
 12 lorde he sholde never ceasse to goo / tyll he had seen
 reynawde and his brethern, his good cosyns / And
 whan mawgys had sayd soo, he made none other
 taryenge, but he shet the dore of his chapell, and toke
 16 his wede & his staffe, and wente on his waye all soo
 sone as he myghte / And abowte the hour of noone
 he founde hymselfe in a grete woode / where he
 founde two men, that wente makynge evyll chere² and
 20 grete sorowe / and whan mawgis sawe theym, he cam
 to theym, & sayd, 'God be wyth you' / and one of
 them answered & sayd / 'certes, god is not wyth vs /
 but rather the devylle; For vnhappy was that hour
 24 that ever we cam in to this wode; for we ben vndoon
 for ever' / 'Goode sires,' sayd mawgys, 'what eyleth
 you that ye speke so' / 'Good man,' sayd the one of
 the two, 'a lityll byfore you are theves, that hathe
 28 robbed vs of our clothe,³ and have sleyn one of our
 felawes / by cause he spake to them angrely' / Whan
 mawgys herde thise pour marchantes speke thus, he
 had grete pyte of them, & sayd to theym / 'my
 32 frendes, come wyth me / I shall praye the theves, in
 our lordes behalfe, that they wyll deliver you agen
 your goodes / and yf they wyl not doo it, I shall

Mawgis, while in
 his hermitage,
 dreams of Rey-
 nawde,

and vows he will
 go to him.

He finds himself
 in a wood,
 and sees two
 merchants who
 are in great
 sorrow;

they tell Mawgis
 that thieves have
 robbed them,
 and slain one of
 their men.

¹ en son oratoyre, F. orig. ² Fol. D.D. viii. back.

³ que nous pourtions vendre, F. orig. F. iii. back.

Mawgis says he
will fight the
robbers;

the merchants
mock him,
seeing his poor
appearance.

Mawgis encoun-
ters the thieves,

and demands
them to restore
their stolen goods.

be wroth with them / and soo I shall fyghte wyth
theym aswell as I can / wyth my staff, for to wyte yf
theyr hedes ben softe or harde.' Whan the mar-
chantes herde mawgis saye soo / they began to loke 4
vpon hym, yf they cowde knowe hym; ¹but they
myghte not knowe what he was ¹ / Thenne spake to
hym one of theym in this maner / 'and what devyll
is that ye say? ² *thou* art but a man alone all naked, 8
& thei ben all armed / and also ye can scantly heve
vp your staff.' 'Lete this fole alone,' sayd that other,
'see ye not how his eyen goo in his hede.' and
thenne they sayd to mawgys, 'Broder, goo thy wayes, 12
and lete vs in peas / or elles I shall gyve the suche a
stroke wyth this staff that thou shalt fele it well' /
and whan mawgis sawe the marchante speke thus to
hym, he sayd / 'Broder, thou doost not well to speke 16
to me so / for by force thou can not gete oughte of
me' / And thus departed mawgys fro the marchautes,
& went his way somoche that he overtoke the theves,
& sayd to them, 'lordes, god save you / I pray you 20
tell me why ye take away y^e goodes fro these mar-
chantes : ye know wel *that* it is not ³yours / Wherefore,
I praye you, lete them have agayne theyr marchan-
dyse, and god shall conne you thanke' / Whan the 24
theves herde mawgis speke to theym thus / they were
angri for it, And behelde vpon mawgis from over the
sholder, as he had be a sarrasyn / Thenne spake the
mayster of the theves, ⁴& sayd to mawgys / 'Goo thy 28
waye, hourson / or elles I shall gyve the suche a
stroke wyth my fote that I shall breste the herte
wythin the bely.' And whan mawgis herde this, &
knewe that the theeves fered nother god nor his 32
moder / he was right an angred / And heved vp his

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. F. iii. back.

² Ils sont sept et . . . F. orig. F. iii. back. ³ Fol. E.E. i.

⁴ qui estoit de mauuaise part, F. orig.

palmers staffe, & smote the mayster thief wythall
 vpon his hede soo strongly, that he caste hym doun
 deed to the grounde. And whan thother theves sawe
 4 their mayster deed / they ranne all vpon mawgys for
 to have kylled hym / but mawgys areched them so
 wyth his staffe, that he slewe fyve of theym wythin a
 lityll while / and thenne the other tweyne beganne to
 8 flee away thurgh the wood. And whan mawgys
 sawe that they forsoke the place, he followed them
 not / but cryed vpon them, 'Ha, false theves, tourne
 agen for to deliver your thefte where ye toke it.'
 12 And whan the marchantes herde mawgys crye thus,
 they came Incontyuent towarde hym / and they
 founde that the theves that had robbed theym were
 deed / And thenne they sayd the one to the other,
 16 'here is a good pylgryme! I wene it is my lorde saynt
 martyne.'

He slays
 five of them,
 and the others
 fly from him
 through the wood.

Whan the marchantes sawe this that mawgis hadde
 doon, they were ryght gladde of it / Soo came
 20 they to warde mawgys, & kneled byfore hym, & cryed
 mercy of that they had sayd to hym. 'Lordes,' sayd
 mawgys, 'yf ye gaff me grete wordes, soo dyde the
 theves moche more, For they called me "rybawde,
 24 truaunt, & hoursone;" but they have boughte it right
¹dere, as ye may see,¹ and I am ryght sorry that two of
²theym are scaped from me. Stonde vp thenne, & take
 wyth you your goodes agen / and god be with you! but
 28 I pray you, telle me, or ye goo, yf ye wote not where is
 charlemagn'³ / 'Syre,' sayd the marchantes, 'We wote
 well that charlemagn hathe taken mountalban / but we
 promyse you he hath not yet taken none of the four
 32 sones of aymon;⁴ for they were goon oute wyth theyr

The merchants
 kneel before
 Mawgis, and
 crave his pardon
 for having mocked
 him.

Mawgis enquires
 of them about
 Charlemagne.

¹-1 omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. E.E. i. back.

³ si vous en savez ne se Il a pris montauban et les quatre
 filz aymon qui estoient dedans, F. orig. F. iv.

⁴ ne les gens, F. orig. F. iv.

The merchants
relate to him
how Charlemagne
lays siege to
Arden.

Mawgis goes
through the host
of the Emperor,
and arrives at
Arden;

he finds the Sons
at supper;

folke thorough a cave vnder the erthe, that they founde
vnder the walles of the castelle, vnto the cyte of
ardeyn,¹ where as they ben now / And charlemagn hathe
layd their his siege afore theym / and wylle not make no 4
peas wyth Reynawd² nor wyth his bredern² / ' Certes,'
sayd mawgys, ' I am sori for theym, for they ben good
knyghtes & true.'³ Whan mawgys vnderstode that
charlemagne had beseged Reynawd within ardeyn¹ / he 8
comended the marchautes to god, and toke his waye
toward ardeyn;¹ and soo moche he wente, that he came
in to the ost of charlemagn, and went streyght towarde
the cyte, and made semblaunt to be sore feble / for he 12
went lenyng vpon his staff / And whan the folke of
charlemagne sawe mawgys goo thus / thei loked sore
vpon hym, and sayd the one to the other / ' that pyl-
gryme is like to goo ferre / he can not stonde vpon his 16
fete' / ' By my othe,' said a nother, ' it myghte well be
mawgys, that is soo dysguysed for to dyseeve vs' / ' It
is not soo,' sayd thother / ' mawgys is not a live' / And
while that they devysed thus togyder, mawgys cam nere 20
to the wycket of the gate, and founde the meanes that
he gate in anone / And whan he was wythin ardeyn,¹ he
wente to the palays / where he founde Reynawd, & the
duchesse his wyffe, and bothe theyr children, aymonet 24
& yonnet, and ther vncles, his cosins, with a grete
meiny of noble knyghtes, that were all at theyr mete.
Whan mawgys had loked a while vpon theym / he
lened agenste a pyler that was in² the myddes of the 28
halle² afore reynawde. Thenne began he to loke agen
vpon his fayr cosins, that he loved so moche above all
thynges of the worlde. And whan the maryshall of
the halle sawe mawgis, wenyng to hym that it had be 32
a pour hermyte / he commaunded that he sholde be

¹ dordonne, F. orig. F. iv. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. F. iv.

³ les quatre filz aymon, F. orig.

⁴ Fol. E.E. ii.

served of his dyner, for goddys sake¹ / And whan
 mawgys sawe the mete that was broughte him / he sayd / he is given food
 as a poor pilgrim.
 ‘ My lordes, I beseche you, for the love of god, that ye
 4 wyll playse you for to bryng me som broun brede & water
 in a treen dyshe / and thus I shall be served as to me
 apperteyneth, For I dare not take none other mete’ /
 And whan the stywarde ²of reynawde² sawe that / he
 8 made him anone to be brought all that he wold have /
 Thezme toke mawgys the broun brede, & made soppes
 in water³ / and ete of it wyth goode apetyte. And
 whan reynawd sawe this poure man afore hym, that Reynawde per-
 ceiving his poor
 appearance,
 12 lived soo pourly, and was soo lene & so pale / he had
 of hym grete pyte / Soo toke he a dysshe that was
 before hym, that was full of venyson / and sente it to sends him
 venison off his
 own table,
 hym by a squire of his, that presented it to him, saieg
 16 thus, ‘holde, goode man, the duke sendeth you this’ /
 ‘ God yelde hym,’ sayd Mawgys. and thenne he toke
 & set the disshe afore hym, but he ete noo thyng of it. but Mawgis will
 not eat it.
 And whan reynawd sawe that, he was gretly merveylled /
 20 and sayd to hymselfe / ‘God, who is that goode man
 that liveth soo harde a lif? yf he were not soo lene, I
 sholde saye it were myn cosin mawgys⁴ / but a nother
 thyng sheweth me that it is not he / For he wolde
 24 not hyde hymself from me in noo wyse.’

Reynawd behelde styll mawgys somoche, that he
 lefte his mete for to loke vpon hym / And whan
 the tables were take vp / and that everi man had eten
 28 at his ease, they wente to their warde to defende the
 towne as they were wouute to doo / in their harneys.
 And whan Reynawd saw ⁵that every man was goon /

¹ Et que on luy appourtast et pain et vin aussi de cher a grant plante la quelle chose fust Incontinent faicte ainsi que le seneschal lauoit commande, F. orig. F. iv. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ dedens ung anap de bois, F. orig. F. v.

⁴ qui nous a fait souffrir maintes detresses, F. orig. F. v.

⁵ Fol. E.E. ii. back.

Reynawde goes towards Mawgis after supper, and asks him whether he is his cousin or not.

Mawgis reveals himself, to the great joy of Reynawde.

Mawgis tells him he has vowed to live poorly all his life.

and that there was noo body wythin the hall for whom he wolde leve to saye his wyll, he wente to mawgis,¹ & sayd to hym, 'goode hermyte, I pray you, for the reverence of that god that ye serve, that ye tell me yf 4 ye be mawgis or noo / for ye are well like hym' / Whan mawgis herde reynawde speke thus to him / he cowde hide himselfe noo lenger, and sayd all on hie / 'Cosin, I am mawgis without doubt / I am com to se you, and 8 I am glad that I see you, & also all your bredern in good plight.' And whan reynawd vnderstode that it was his cosin that he loved mooste of all the men in the world, and that had kept him dyverse times from perell 12 & dangeur / he had not be soo glad yf men had gyven hym the halve of all the worlde / Soo went he & kyssed him more than a C. tymes, & after he sayd to hym in this maner : 'fayr cosin, I praye you that ye wyll doo of 16 this cope that ye were vpon you / For my eyen can not see you thus poorly arayed.' thezme answerde mawgis to him, & sayd / 'My cosin, be not dysplayseed of that I shall telle you / ye must wyte, that I have made my 20 vowe to god, that I shall never ete but alonly brede & wyldre herbes, & that to my drynke I shall take none other but water / and that I shall never were, the dayes of my liff, none other clothes but suche as this is ; for I 24 have gyven myself vtterly to serve & love our blessed sayour & his glorious moder, for to bryng my soule to salvacon in the blisse that ever shall laste.'

Whan Reynawd herde his cosin mawgys speke 28 thus, he was in a thoughte whether it was mawgis or noo, For he cowde not knowe hym well, by cause he was soo sore apayred of hys persone, And began to loke well vpon hym agen. And he sholde 32 never have knowen hym, yf it had not be a lityll liste that he had by his right eye. And after that ²he had

¹ et luy nust ses bras au col, F. orig. F. v.

² Fol. E. E. iii.

very knowlege of him / he made grete ioye for hym.
 And he prayed hym agen / sayenge in this wyse /
 'fayr cosin, I praye you for the love of the feyth that
 4 ye owe to me, that ye wylle telle me the trouth of that
 I shall aske you.' 'Syre,' said mawgis, 'I shall telle it
 you gladly' / 'Cosin,' sayd reynawde, 'I wolde wyte
 where ye have be, ever sith that ye wente fro me / and
 8 from whens ye come now' / 'Syr,' sayd mawgys, 'sith
 it playse you to wyte of my livynge, I shall shewe it
 you wyth a goode wylle. Ye ought to knowe, my fayr
 cosin, for certeyn that I have made myselfe an hermyte,
 12 and I have lefte the worlde for to serve hym that made
 me, & the blessed virgyn mary, ¹his moder,¹ for to have
 pardonne of my sinnes that I have doon in my life /
 For I have don many grete evylles agenst my creatour /
 16 and by me are deed so many folke, wherof I knowe
 that our lorde is gretly wrothe agenst me' / After that
 Reynawde had herde mawgis speke thus / he had so
 grete pyte on hym that the teres felle alonge his chekes
 20 fro his eyen for love of his good cosin. And thenne he
 called his bredern, & sayd to theym / 'come hither, my
 brethern, and ye shall see your cosin mawgis' / And
 whan alarde, guchard, & rycharde herde thyse
 24 wordes / their hertes rose in their belies for ioye, and
 ranne all to mawgys, & kyssed hym full swetely / And
 whan the duchesse wyste that mawgis was com, she came
 anone there as he was, and kyssed hym / wepyng full
 28 sore ¹for ioye that she had to see hym¹ / And thenne
 cam there Aymonet & Yonnet, that made grete ioye,
¹and welcomed hym¹ / And thurgh all the cyte was
 anone knowen the comynge of the valiaunt mawgys /
 32 wherof many folke came to see hym. But he was soo
 chaunged / and soo apayred, that it was pyte for to see.
 Thus was Reynawde well glad of the comynge of his
 goode cosyn / And after that ²they had made grete ioye

Reynawde asks
him to relate his
history since he
left them.

Mawgis says he
has become a
hermit.

Reynawde calls
his brethren,

who receive
Mawgis gladly.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig. ² Fol. E. E. iii. back.

Reynawde orders
rich clothing for
his cousin.

Mawgis will not
have any but such
as befitte a
pilgrim;

he says he shall
leave them again
soon,

and go to the
Holy Land.

Reynawde is very
grieved for his
cousin.

a longe whyle / Reynawde called his brother Rycharde,
& sayd to hym / 'Brother, goo fette anone a goode
gowne for our cosin mawgys, and lete hym be brought
a payr of shone that ben wyde ynoughe, for I know 4
well that his fete ben sore' / and thenne he sayd to hys
wyffe / 'Lady, aryse / and fette hym suche linnen as he
nedeth' / 'Syre,' sayd she, 'he shall have of the beste
ynoughe anone.' And whan mawgys herde this worde, 8
he sayd to Reynawde, 'Syre, I telle you truly, that I
have sworne that I shall never were shone, nor linnen
clothes abowte me / But doo to me, if it playse you, to
gyve me a newe sloppe and a large hode, a palster well 12
yrende, & a male / and therwyth ye shall well contente
me; And thenne I shall comende you to god / and I
shall goo my waye. For I am not comen here but only
for to see you / wherof my desire was sore sette vnto' / 16
Right sory was Reynawde whan he herde mawgys say
soo, in somoche that almoste he was swoninge for sorowe
'Reynawd,' sayd thenne mawgys, 'leve your sorowe,
For I have gyven myselfe to god vtterly, for to brynge 20
my soule to blysse of heven / And soo wylle I goo to
the holy londe, for to serve to the temple of Iherusalem,¹
and for to vysite the holy sepulere of our lorde / And
whan I have doon so, I shall come agen to see you,²and 24
god spare me my liffe.² And thenne I shall goo agayne
to myn hermytage / and shall live there as a beest wyth
rootes & wyth wylde herbes, as I dyde byfore that I
came here' / Whan Reynawde herde this, he was sory 28
for it / and sayd to mawgys in this wyse / 'Fayr cosyn,
for god, take wyth you a gode horse, and money
ynoughe / For ye shall have all thys of me' / 'Holde
your peas,' sayd mawgys / 'I wylle not therof / for whan 32

¹ trois ou quatre ans. Et si dieu me donne la grace que
Je puisse la venir Je mectray toute ma poine pousse servir,
F. orig. F. vi.

²⁻² omitted. F. orig. F. vi.

I have brede / it is to me ynoughe / For all my hope is
in god / to whome I praye that I maye come agayn hole
and ¹sounde' /

4 **A**fter all thise thynges thus sayd, Mawgys prayed
Reynawd that he wolde make haste to make
hym be deliverde suche thynges as he had desired of
hym. And Reynawde dyde soo, syth that he myghte
8 not make hym to take none other thyng wyth hym /
And whan the morowe came / and that mawgys had his
newe sloppe and his hode / he toke his palster, and his
newe male that reynawde had gyven hym / he wente &
12 herde masse / and after the masse / he toke his leve of
every one, and wente on his waye. And reynawde con-
veyed hym vnto the wyket of the gate of the cyte,
and kyssed him; and in like wyse dyde all his brethern /
16 and also the duchesse clare and her chyldren / And
whan they had all kyssed mawgys, he comended theym
to god / and wente oute of the towne, and wente forth
the ryght waye. But he was not ferre goon, whan he
20 was advyronned rounde abowte hym wyth the folke of
the kynge Charlemagne / And the one sayd to the
other, 'here is the heremyte that we sawe yesterdaye,
but he is now better clothed than he was atte that
24 time / It myghte be well mawgys, the cosin of reynawd,
that hathe mocked vs dyverse tymes.' 'Certes,' sayd
the other, 'It is he verely: lete vs slee hym / and we
shall doo wel' / 'we shall not,' sayd some / 'For this
28 man semeth to be an hundred yere olde / It can not be /
but that he muste be a goode man, and it were synne
to doo hym harme' / All thus as thise folke said thise
wordes, Mawgis herde all that they sayd, and hekle his
32 peas, But wente on his waye styлле thorughe the ooste
withoute ony lettyng of ony man. ¶ Here leveth the
histore² to speke of mawgys, that wente in to the holy
londe, And retorneth to speke of Charlemagne, that had

Mawgis departs
on the morrow.

The folk of
Charlemagne
wonder if it is
Mawgis,

although he looks
so old.

Mawgis departs
safely through
the host.

¹ Fol. E.E. iv.

² hisstore, *orig.*

besegeð ardeyn¹ / by cause that reynawd & his brethern were wythin.

CHAPTER XXII.

¶ How reynawde wolde doo hange rycharde of normandy, by cause he myghte not have⁴ peas wyth the kynge charlemagne / And how the twelve peres requyred Charlemagne to make peas wyth reynawde.³ And how they lefte charlemagne by cause he⁸ wolde not make peas / And how he sente worde to theym that they sholde come to hym agen, And he sholde make peas wyth reynawde /⁴ 12

In this party sheweth, that the kinge Charlemagne was at the siege afore ardeyn¹ sore an angred, that he myghte not knowe how rycharde of normandy dyd. Soo sent he for all his barons for to com to hym ; and 16 whan they were come in his pavylion, he sayd to theym / ‘ Lordes, I see well that it gooth yll wyth me, by cause I see that Reynawde hathe not sente me agen rycharde of normandy / and he myghte well have deliverde hym 20 fre & quyte, and have sende hym vnto me, for all the harmes that he hathe doon to me.’ ‘ Uncle,’ sayd rowland, ‘ I merveylle gretly of that ye saye. Ye shewe well to vs that ye be wythout counseylle. By the 24 feith that I owe to you / I promyse you ye shall never see rycharde of normandy / but if ye pardonne reynawde & his bredern. Dyverse tymes he hathe meked hymseife vnto you / and hathe be alwayes redy to fulfyll 28

Charlemagne complains of Reynawde's treatment of Duke Richard.

Roland implores the Emperour to make peace for the sake of the Duke.

¹ dordonne, F. orig. ² Fol. E.E. iv. back.

³ pour auoir leur compaignon le duc richart de normandie a la quelle chose charlemaigne respondit quil non feroit riens dont Ilz furent si mavis quil le laisserent, F. orig. F. vi. back.

⁴ Iroit oultre mer son pain querant, F. orig. F. vii.

your playsure / and ye wylle not take hym to your
 grace. Be not thenne mervyllled yf Reynawde shewe
 now some dyspyte agenste you. For, and ye consydre
 4 well the grete curtesy that he hathe doon vnto you,
 namely, whan he had you atte hys wyll wythin moun-
 talban, and that he delivered you, and suffred you goo
 quyte & free from hym atte your libertee, ye sholde
 8 doo for hym otherwyse than ye doo. But syth that
 Reynawde seeth that he maye not fynde noo mercy in
 you / he wylle not lese his ¹curtessye, But he shall doo
 the worste that he caune / as ye maye well pereyceve
 12 the experyence of it every day / For he dommageeth vs
 dayly, and kepeth his prysoner the beste knyghte that
 ye had / that is, Rycharde the duke of normandy / the
 whiche I wene be deed by this tyme.' 'Nevewe,' sayd
 16 the kyng Charlemagne, 'I promyse you that Reynawde
 hath not put hym to dethe / But he kepeth hym well
 atte his ease & wyth grete honoure.' 'Syre,' sayd
 thenne the duke Naymes, 'syth that the wordes ben
 20 come to this, I must telle you my minde.² Syre, yf
 Reynawde bereth you dommage / ye canne not blame
 him for it / For he hathe prayed you soo many tymes
 humbly that ye wolde have mercy on hym / And ye
 24 wolde never here hym / But ye have alwayes shewed
 your self the moost prowde kynge of the world agenste
 hym, and the moost angry; and ye wylle byleve noo
 counseylle. And soo I telle, yf Reynawde hathe not
 28 made to deye Rycharde of normandy, he is the
 kyndeste man of the worlde / But I byleve better that
 he is deed than otherwyse; For noo man here canne
 telle whether he be deed or a live.'

32 **W**han the kynge Charlemagne herde the duke
 Naymes speke thus / he knewe well that he
 tolde hym trouth / Soo beganne he to syghe sore / and

Charlemagne will
 not believe that
 Duke Richard
 will be slain.

Naymes also
 counsels the
 Emperor to make
 terms with Rey-
 nawde :

¹ Fol. E.E. v.

² quil me semble estre vray, F. orig. F. vii.

all the Barons
appeal to him.

Charlemagne
orders three of
his Barons to go
to Arden and tell
Reynawde to yield
up Duke Richard
and Mawgis.

The Barons
depart, bearing
olive branches in
token of peace.

to thise wordes came forth the bysshop Turpyn &
Ogyer the dane / that sayd in this maner / 'Syre, wyte
it verely that Naymes telleth you trouthe / For Rey-
nawd hathe a goode cause to be angry wyth you.' 4
And whan Charlemagne herde his barons speke thus /
he was all abasshed of it / And called the duke
Naymes, the bysshop Turpyn, Ogyer the dane / and
Escouff the sone of Oedon, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, 8
I praye you goo to Ardeyne¹ / and telle Reynawde in
my behalve, that he wylle sende me Rycharde of nor-
mandy / And ²whan he hathe doon soo / that he
delyver Mawgys in to my hande, ³for to doo my wylle 12
of hym³ / And thenne he shall have peas wyth me⁴ all
the dayes of my liffe' / 'Dere syre,' sayd the duke
naymes, 'ye sende vs for noughte / For I wote well
that mawgys is goon from Reynawde / it is thre yeres 16
passed and more / And yf Reynawde wolde deliver
hym / he maye not / For he knowe not hymselfe
where he is' / 'Naymes,' sayd the kynge / 'ye shall
atte leste here what Reynawde shall saye to you / And 20
ye shall also knowe how Rycharde of normandy dooth' /
'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes, 'sythe that it playse
you that I shall goo, I am well contente / but I praye
our lorde that we maye retourne agen hole and sounde 24
of our persones / wythoute to be dyshonoured' / Whan
the barons sawe that Charlemagne wolde that they
sholde goo to Ardeyne¹ for to doo his message, they
durst not saye there agenste / And so they wente 28
theder anone,⁵ and eche of them bare in his hande a
branche of an olive tree in token of peas / And whan
they came to the gate, they founde it open for theym /

¹ dordonne. F. orig. ² Fol. E.E. v. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ et si luy rendray sa terre et tiendray ses deux enfans
auecques moy, F. orig. F. vii. back.

⁵ et ne cesserent jusques a ce quilz furent a dordonne, F.
orig. F. vii. back.

For Reynawde had seen theym come fro fer.e. Wherefore he commaunded that the wycket sholde be open. And whan the barons sawe the lityll gate open / thei
 4 went in to the towne / and came to the palays / And whan Reynawde wyste that they were come within the palais, he wente and layd hymselfe down on a bed wyth his legges crossed, and sware god & his moder
 8 that he sholde not praye Charlemagne of noo thyng, For he had doon hym to grete harme. For thrughe the kynge charlemagne he had lost his goode cosin mawgis, & mountalban / that he loved somoche. This
 12 hangynge, cam there the messagers of kynge Charlemagne a fore Reynawd / Whan the duke Naymes, that was the formeste, sawe Reynawde, he saluted hym honourably.¹ ²And after, he sayd to hym / ‘Syre Reynawde, the kynge sendeth you worde by vs / that ye sende
 16 hym agayn Rychard the duke of normandy / And more over, he sendeth you worde, that yf ye wylle deliver hym mawgis, ye shall have peas wyth hym all the dayes
 20 of his liffe / And he shall delivere you agayne all your londes. And he shall kepe bothe your children in his courte wyth hym, & shall make them knyghtes wyth his owne handes’ / ‘My lordes,’ sayd Reynawde / ‘ye
 24 be ryght welcome to me, as the knyghtes of the worlde that I oughte to love beste. But I merveylle me gretely of charlemagn / that sendeth me thise wordes ; for every man knoweth well that I have not mawgis / But by
 28 hym I have loste hym / And wolde god that I had here Charlemagne, as well as I have Richarde of normandy / And yf he wolde not graunte me peas wyth hym / I promyse you he sholde leve his hede for a
 32 pledge / Soo sholde I be thenne avenged of all the grete harmes and dommages that he hathe doon to me /

They enter the palace,

and salute Reynawde, giving him the message from the Emperor.

¹ et puis luy dist, Sire dieu soit avecques vous et vous gard de mort et de prison, F. orig. F. vii. back.

² Fol. E.E. vi.

syth that I have be made knyghte of hym / Lordes, I wende that Charlemagne had be more curteys than he is. For yf I had wyste that he wolde have be soo felle vpon me ¹and my brethern,¹ I sholde well avenged ⁴ it vpon hym / But it is to late to repente me that I dyde not doo / Wherefore, that ye voyde oute of my paleys, and goo telle your kynge that I have not mawgys / But I have loste hym for hym / and also ⁸ yf I had hym he sholde not have hym / And by cause I have thus loste my goode cosyn mawgys for hym / I shall make tomorowe Richard the duke of normandy to be hanged vpon the cheef gate of this ¹² cyte, in the dyspyte of hym; for no lenger respyte he shal not haue of me, how be it that he is of my linage. & I telle you / com nomore here / nor no man of Charlemagne / For I promyse you, I shall stryke of ¹⁶ the ²hedes of as many as shall come from hym to me, ³wythoute ony fayle.³

Reynawde replies that he has lost Mawgis through the cruelty of Charlemagne, therefore he shall hang Duke Richard next day.

Whan ogyer the dane sawe Reynawde soo angry, and that he answerde soo proudly, he mer- ²⁰ veylled sore / And drewe hymselfe by Reynawde / and sayd to hym / 'Fayr cosin, I praye you that ye wylle shewe to vs Rycharde of normandy / to the ende that we maye telle Charlemagne that we have seen hym.' ²⁴ 'Ogyer, I have well vnderstande you,' sayd Reynawde, 'but ye shall never see hym afore that I have hanged hym. And yf Charlemagn be angri wyth me for it / lete him avenge it yf he canne / ¹for I defye hym & all ²⁸ his power;¹ and goo you hens anone! For, by my soule, yf ye abyde here ony lenger, it shall repente you full sore' / And whan the barons sawe that Reynawde was soo fervently wrothe / they durst noo lenger tary there, ³² but toke leve of hym / and wente oute of the cyte / and

Ogyer asks to see the Duke,

Reynawde refuses until he shall see him hung.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig. ² Fol. E.E. vi. back.

³⁻³ car puis que lon este en folie lon la doit maintenir, F. orig. F. viii. back.

wente lightly to the ooste of Charlemagne that awayted
 after theym. Whan the kynge sawe the barons come,
 he sayd to theym, 'Lordes, ye be welcome / what
 4 tydynges brynge you? have ye not seen Rycharde of
 normandy?' 'Syre,' sayd the duke naymes / 'Rey-
 nawde dooth you to wyte, that aslong as he maye
 ryde vpon bayard / ye shall not have mawgys / for he
 8 hathe loste hym by you / And for vengauce to be
 taken of the same / Reynawd sendeth you worde by vs,
 that he shall hange tomorowe rycharde of normandy
 vpon the gret gate of his towne; and thus shall be doon
 12 of all your men that he shall take. and yet he sayeth
 more / yf he had you aswell as he hathe rychard of
 normandy / that yf ye wolde not graunte hym peas, ye
 sholde leve with hym your hede for a pledge.'¹ Whan
 16 rowlande herde the wordes *that* naymes had reported
 to his vnele charlemagne / he sayd / 'Syre, be not dis-
 plaised of *that* I shall telle you / me semeth that ye
 shall ²never see the duke Rycharde; and all for your
 20 pryde. Syre, we fynde in holy serypture that god
 curseth the frute that never is rype / thus shall it be
 by you, that never wylle rype, nor condescende to noo
 peas wyth the four sones of aymon, the best knyghtes
 24 of the worlde / that so many tymes have praied for it
 humbly & full pyetously / Wherfore I swere to you
 vpon all halowes, that yf the duke rycharde be hanged /
 ye shall lose honour & worship all your lif dayes.'
 28 Whan charlemagne herde his nevewe rowlande speke
 thus, that sayd *that* rycharde of normandy sholde be
 hanged, he was soo myschevously an angred, that he
 gnewe the nayles of his handes / for grete wrathe / And
 32 ye oughte to wyte that charlemagne was soo angry atte
 that tyme / that yf he had had ony maner of staffe in
 his hande / he wolde have gladly smyten rowlande /

Duke Naymes
 relates to Charle-
 magne how Rey-
 nawde will hang
 Duke Richard,
 and all who fall
 into his hands.

Roland tells the
 Emperor that for
 his pride the
 Duke will be
 slain.

¹ ne aultre chose nen prendroit, F. orig F. viii. back.

² Fol. E.E. vii.

Charlemagne
replies
that Reynawde
dare not hang
the Duke.

But whan he saw that he myght not accomplishe his wylle / he called his barons / and sayd to theym / ‘Lordes, ye wene to make me a-ferde wyth your wordes / I am no childe for to be thus abasshed / and 4 soo I swere you by my feythe, that yf Reynawd were soo hardy to doo ony harme vnto richarde of normandy, I sholde hange hym wyth myn owen handes / he & all his linage, that none sholde be lefte a live’ ¹ 8

Ryght sore wrothe was the kyng charlemagne whan he herde telle that reynawde wolde make Rycharde the duke of normandy to be hanged / But whan ogyer herde charlemagne swere thus, that sholde 12 hange all the linage of Reynawde / he cowde not absteyne himself, but that the teres felle doun fro his eye; and thenne he sayd to the bysshop turpyn, ‘Syre, what thynke you by our kyng, that sayeth by his grete 16 pryde that he shall hange vs all; for all *that* he dothe, procedeth but of *enuye* & pride / but god sende me deth yf I care for his wrathe! for if reynaud hathe not lied to vs, he shall ²doo be hanged to morowe rycharde 20 of normandy in suche a place where as Charlemagne shall mowe see hym hange wyth his eyen’ / This hanging, the duke naymes sawe that the kyng was angry, and he sayd to hym / ‘Syre, wyte it that we all be 24 sore abasshed, that ye threte vs of one parte, & reynawd of the other / And I merveille me not of reynawde, for he is soo wrothe, for by cause that ye have made hym lose mawgys, that noo man myghte be 28 more / And I promyse you, for grete angre he shall make rycharde of normandy to be hanged; and as to you, nanly, he wolde stryke of your hede yf he had you in the cas that he hath rycharde now / and yf he 32 hangeth rycharde, what maye we doo therto / that ye threten vs somoche therefore / wherfore I counseyll all my

Duke Naymes
again remon-
strates with the
Emperour for his
conduct towards
the Sons,

¹ ne Il ne se sauroit eschapper en espaigne qui este tant grant, F. orig. G. i.

² Fol. E.E. vii. back.

felawes that are of the linage of reynawd, that we goo
 our wayes, and that we lete you shyfte of the werre of
 the four sones of aymon' / 'By god,' sayd thother peres
 4 of fraunce, 'naymes speketh well, ¹and he gyveth vs
 good counseylle' / ¹

and is so
 wroth that he
 advises the
 departure of the
 Barons from the
 war.

Thenne whan Charlemagne sawe his barons soo sore
 moved / he wyste not what he shold doo, but
 8 gaff them leve to wythdrawe theym selfe vnto the
 morowe, ¹that they sholde retorne to him; ¹ and he
 hymself went to his bed / but al nyghte he coude not
 fall a slepe / but wentled in his bed without ony rest /
 12 and wyst not what to doo / and whan the daye cam, he
 rose from his bed, and sent for all hys barons. And
 whan thei were come, he sayd to them, 'Lordes, what
 shall we doo of reynawde, that wylle hange the duke
 16 rycharde of normandy afore myn eyen?' 'Syr,' sayd
 thenne the duke naymes, 'for noughte seketh one
 counseyll, that will not put it to effecte / why aske ye
 counseyll, sin that ye wylle doo noo thing but after
 20 your owne hede / but, & ye wylle byleve me, I swere
 you on my feith *that* all good shal com therof / Sir,
 make peas with ²reynawde, and ye shall have the duke
 rycharde / and also ye shall have the good love of all
 24 your men / for there is none but he is wery of the
 werre / and they have raison.' 'Naymes,' sayd the
 kyng, 'I wylle not doo it! holde your peas therof, for
 that shall be the last worde that ever I shall saye' /
 28 'Syre,' sayd rowland / 'by my soule ye doo grete wrong /
 for yf ye suffre the good duke rycharde to be hanged,
 that somoche hathe loved you & doon grete honour, it
 shall be to you grete shame; and soo I swere to you vpon
 32 all halowes, that yf I see hange rycharde of normandy,
 I shall parte out of your oste fro your servyse / and I
 shall goo soo ferre that ye shall never have helpe of
 me' / 'Rowlande,' sayd oliver, 'wene not that I shal

The Emperor
 gives his Barons
 leave to withdraw.

Next day he asks
 them what he
 shall do for Duke
 Richard.

They all advise
 him to make
 peace with the
 Sons,

and declare they
 will depart if he
 will not consent
 to end the war.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. E.E. viii.

abyde after that ye are goon / for the kyng dooth grete
 wronge to reynawde our cosin' / Full sore an angred
 was the kinge to here thise wordes ; but he helde the^{me}
 his peas, & sayd never a worde. And wyte it, all thoost 4
 was moved by cause thei fered sore leest reynawde shold
 make rycharde of normandy to be hanged / for he was
 wel beloved of the folke of charlemagn / & also he was
 of a grete kynred & a noble linage. 8

This mornyng, the^{me}, reynawde that was wythin
 ardein,¹ after that he had herde his masse / he
 called his thre bredern, & sayd to theym, ' My bredern /
 It gooth full yll wyth vs that we can have noo peas 12
 with charlemagn / but sith it is thus com / by the
 feyth that I owe to the olde aymon, oure fader, I shall
 angre him ryght sore / For I am sure, yf he had vs in
 his handes, he wolde vtterly dystroye vs wythout pyte / 16
 And therefore I am dysposed for to doo the worste that
 I can agenste hym. For now, afore his eyen, I shall
 hange y^e duke Rycharde of Normandy / For I am well
 sure that Charlemagne shall wexe fyre angry for it, 20
 whan he shall see hym' / ' Broder,' sayd alarde, ' I
 praye you, as moche as ²I can, that ye wylle not ³doo
 as ye saye, For I shall hange hym myselfe yf ye wylle.'
 ' brother,' sayd reynawd, ' I wylle wel.' ' Now com- 24
 maunde,' sayd alarde, ' that the gibet be dressed all hie
 vpon the gate, that charlemagn & all his oost may see
 him.' Shortly to speke, reynawd dyde doo make the
 gybet in suche a place that charlemagne myghte see it 28
 as well as he had be by / And wyte it, that rowlande
 was the firste man that perceyved it / and whan he
 sawe this, he began to crye as hie as he myghte /
 ' Syre, sire ! now see how they wylle hange the duke 32
 richarde wyth grete shame / alas, he hathe shrewedly
 employed his tyme in your servyse, And now he is full

Reynawde pre-
 pares to hang
 Duke Richard ;

the gallows is
 prepared in sight
 of the Emperor's
 host.

¹ dordonne, F. orig. ² Fol. E.E. viii. back.

³ omitted, F. orig.

yll rewarded for it / and also it is a shrewed ensample
 to all them that serve you !' 'Alas,' sayd oliver, 'now
 shall the goode duke rycharde be hanged wyth grete
 4 shaine, for I see the gybet righted vp' / 'Holde your
 peas,' sayd charlemagne, 'they doo all this but for to
 make me abasshed, and that they myghte have peas
 wyth me ; but for all this, thei shall not have it / and
 8 soo I promyse you they dare doo hym noo harme of
 his body.' Thus recomforted charlemagne hymself,
 wenyng that reynawd had not durst hange the duche
 richarde. This hangynge, rowlande,¹ that had the thyng
 12 at herte, behelde alwayes towarde the towne, and sawe
 that men ryghted the ladder to the gybet / thenne sayd
 he to oliver,² 'Ha, oliver,² true felawe & good frende,
 yonder I see the ladder that is set vp all redi for to
 16 hang richarde of normandy / full yll he hathe bestowed
 his good servyse wyth charlemagne.' 'Syre oliver,' sayd
 rowland, 'ye saye well trouthe, god save Richarde !'

Rolant laments
 over the fate of
 the Duke.

After that the ladder was ryghted to the gybet
 20 **A**bove, vpon the hyghe gate³ of ardeyne³ / Rey-
 nawde called ten of his folke / and sayd to theym,
 'Galantes, goo fet me the duke rycharde / For I wylle
 that he be hanged Incontynente.'⁴ 'Syre,' sayd they
 24 'we shall doo your commaundement.' And they wente
 in to the chambre wh[e]re the noble duke of normandy
 was / and founde hym playng atte the ches wyth
 yonnet, the sone of Reynawd / and thenne thise men
 28 toke hym, and sayd / 'Syre duke, com forth ! for Rey-
 nawde hathe commaunded that ye shall be hanged
 incontynent.' Whan the duke rycharde of normandy
 herde thise felawes speke thus to hym, he loked vpon
 32 theym over the sho[l]der / and wolde not answer to
 theym, but sayd, 'my fair yonnet, hast you for to

Reynawde tells x
 of his folk to fetch
 the Duke ;

they enter his
 chamber where
 he is playing
 chess with
 Johnnet,

and commaund
 him to come with
 them.

¹ oliver, F. orig. G. ii. back.

² Rolant, F. orig. G. ii. back. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ Fol. F.F. i.

playe, for it is tyme that we goo to dynere' / And whan
 these galantes sawe that rycharde of normandy answered
 noo worde vnto theym / they began to take hym on
 everi side, & said to hym / ' Aryse vp, duke rycharde / 4
 for in dyspyte of charlemagn that loved you somoche,
 ye shall be hanged now' / Whan the duk rycharde saw
 that these sergauntes had hym thus by the arme / and
 helde in his hande a lady of yvery, wherwyth he wolde 8
 have gyven a mate to yonnet / he wythdrew his arme,
 & gaff to one of the sergauntes suche a stroke wyth it
 in to y^e forhede that he made him tomble over & over
 at his fete. and thenne he toke a roke, & smote a nother 12
 wythall vpon his hede that he all to broste it to the
 brayn. and after that, he smote another of theim wyth
 his fiste so grete a stroke that he breake his necke, and
 felle deed to therthe / And whan the other sawe theyr 16
 felawes thus arayed, they began to renne awaye. And
 whan rycharde sawe theym goo, he cryed to them :
 ' Fle, rybawdes, goddys curse have you / come not here
 again' / And whan he had said soo, he sayd to yonnet, 20
 that was all abasshed / ' Playe well, my childe / for ye
 shall be mated / I trowe these truauntes were dronken,
 that thus wolde have had me awaye, but I have well
 gyven them their parte.' And whan yonnet herde 24
 him saye so / he durst not speke agenst¹ it, by cause he
 sawe hymselfe soo sore an angred / but played wyth his
 roke that he sholde not be mated / but he myght not
 save the mate / Whan the duke rycharde had mated 28
 yonnet, he called a yoman that was there / and sayd
 to hym / ' Goo, take these carles that lien here deed,
 and caste them oute at the wyndowes' / The yoman
 dyde incontynente his commaundement. For he durst 32
 doo noo thyng there agenst, for doubtte he sholde
 have fare as the other, that he had seen slayen in his
 presence /

The Duke slays
three men,

and the rest
escape hastily.

Duke Richard
finishes his game
of chess with
Johnnet,

then orders the
dead bodies of
Reynawde's men
to be thrown out
of the windows.

¹ Fol. F.F. i. back.

Alarde was the same tyme oute of the castell, and
 awayted that rycharde were brought to hym, *that*
 he mighte goo hange hym / and he saw how the deed
 4 were cast downe oute of the wyndowes of the towre /
 wherof he was wrothe, and wente to reynawde, & sayd
 to hym / 'Syre, I knowe that the duke rycharde wylle
 not lete hymselfe be take. and ryght dere it shall coste
 8 or he be broughte to the gybet / see how he hathe slayne
 your men / and how he hath caste theym oute atte the
 towre at the wyndowes' / 'Brother,' sayd reynawde,
 'the duke rycharde is to be doubted in his takyng /
 12 lete vs goo to the helpe of our folke, for elles they ben
 in daungeur of their lives' / And thus as they wolde
 have goon / they that he had sente for to take rycharde
 came there vnto hym. and whan they saw reynawde,
 16 they sayd to hym, 'By god, sire, the duke rycharde
 shall not be take wythoute grete stryfe, For he hathe
 slayne thre of our felawes / and whan we saw that / we
 fledd awaye, and lefte hym playeng wyth your sone
 20 yonnet.' Whan reynawd vnderstode this / he was
 ryght angry for it, and sware by all halowes, that yf he
 had not peas that day wyth charlemagne / rycharde of
 normandy sholde not scape hangyng, what somever it
 24 sholde hap therof / And whan he had sayd these wordes,
 he went towarde the towre where richard¹ was / and his
 bredern went wyth him / for thei wold not leve him.
 and also XL men well armed, for to take the duke
 28 rycharde, yf he wolde defende hymself / whan reynawd
 was come to the gate of the towre, he made it to be
 opened, & went in, and whan he was wythin, he sayd
 to the duke rycharde, 'Vassall, why have you slayn my
 32 men?' 'cosin,' sayd richarde, 'now here me, if it
 playse you / It is trouth that X rybawdes cam here
 ryght now / and layd hande vpon me; and they sayd,
 that ye had thus commaunded theym / whiche thyng

Alarde complains
of this treatment
to Reynawde.

The men arrive
from the Duke,

and tell Reynawde
how three of them
have been slain.

The Sons all
depart in anger
for the chamber of
Richard.

¹ Fol. F.F. ii.

I cowde not byleve. For, & ye had sayd soo, it sholde have be spoken outrageously. soo made I theim to flee oute of this chambre in grete haste / and slewe of theim I wote not how many, be cause I myghte not absteyn 4 me¹ / and yf it semeth you that I have doon amys, soo take ye amendes vpon me. But I wyll wel, that ye wite that I wolde not have don to you suche a shame as ye have doon to me, yf I had had you as ye have me. 8 reynawde, yf I have doon amys in ony maner / I am redy to make amendes for it / but ye knowe it is no reyson that no carle shall iudge suche a man as I am / for that longeth to a kyng, to a duke, or to an erle. the 12 custume is suche ye wote it well / Yf the kerles have harme² / be it that have medled theym wyth it, none ought to blame me therefore' / 'By god, rycharde,' sayd the^{ne} reynaud, 'ye shall saye what ye wyll, but trust 16 me yf I have not this daye peas wyth charlemagne, I shall make you to be hanged in suche a place where that charlemagn may see you'³ / And whan reynawd had sayd this, he made richard to be take / and made 20 his hande to be bounde fast, and after sayd to him, 'I telle you, on my feyth, that if I have not this daye my peas wyth charlemain, that for no prechinge that ye can make, nor for noo man of the worlde, I shall not 24 leve, but I shall make you deye a shamfull deth.' 'By my⁴ soule, reynawd,' sayd richard, 'I fere me not that ye shall doo that ye saye, for ye dare not doo it as long as charlemagn is a live' / Whan reynawde herde the 28 duke richard speke thus / he was so wrothe that he loked all blacke in the face for angre / and the^{ne} he said to richarde, 'by that god that made me, ye shalle soone knowe what I dare do, & whether I am cowarde 32

Duke Richard defends his conduct.

Reynawde declares he shall be hung unless peace is concluded with Charlemagne;

¹ Puis les fis jecter hors de sceans par ses fenestres, F. orig. G. iii. back.

² harmt, *orig.*

³ et si ne vous pour donner ayde ne secours, F. orig. G. iii. back.

⁴ Fol. F.F. ii. back.

or hardy' / And thenne he made hym to be brought
 whereas the galohous were righted / and the^{ne} he
 sayd to hym / 'Ryehard, I wyl that of two thynges¹ ye
 4 chose thone yf ye lust / that is, that ye make me have
 peas with charlemagn, or elles that ye helpe me agenst
 him / and, but yf ye doo this / wyte that I shall make
 you hanged & strangled, and I shall not leve you for
 8 all this that ye be of my linage. And yf ye wylle
 take my parte agenste the kyng Charlemagn, ye shall
 be deliverde forthwyth.'² ¶ 'By god, reynawd,' sayd
 the^{ne} rycharde, 'now have I herde you speke like a
 12 childe / wene ye that I shall do *that* ye saye for fere of
 deth? certes, nay. for the kyng charlemagn is my
 sovereyn lorde, and of him I holde myn herytage / and
 thoughe he dothe wronge to leve me here / I oughte
 16 not to faile hym therefore³ / But, & ye wylle do well /
 lene me a messenger, the whiche I shall sende to charle-
 magn & to his barons, for to wyte yf he be disposed
 for to lete me deye here shamfully.' 'By my feyth,
 20 rycharde,' sayd reynaud, 'ye speke now wysely' / and
 the^{ne} he called one of his folke, & sayd to hym,
 'Goo & do that rycharde of normandy shall telle you.'
 'My frende,' sayd rycharde to the messenger, 'ye shall
 24 goo to charlemain, & tell him on my behalve / that I
 praye hym as to my sovereyn lorde, *that* yf ever he
 loved me, that he wylle pardonne reynaude. And I
 shall take vpon me to make amendes for hym / yf he
 28 hathe in ony thyng mysdoon agenste hym / as the
 twelve peres of fraunce shall iudge him / And yf he
 wylle not doo soo, that he⁴ wylle loke hederwarde /
 And he shall see me hange shamfully / Of that other
 32 parte, ye shall saye to rowland, & to all my felawes,

he has Duke
Richard brought
to the gallows.

Duke Richard
asks for leave to
send a messenger
to Charlemagne.

Reynawde grants
his request,

and Richard com-
mands the mes-
senger to pray the
Emperor for peace
with the Sons,

¹ thtnges, *orig.*

² car puis apres feray grant dommage a charlemaigne se vous me volez ayder de tout vostre pouvoir, F. orig. G. iv.

³ mais le tort quil aura de moy il le trouvera au jour du Jugement, F. orig. G. iv.

⁴ Fol. F.F. iii.

and tell Roland
and the 12 Peers
that it will be
unworthy of them
to let him be
hung.

The messenger
goes to Charle-
magne and
delivers his
message.

Roland implores
the Emperor not
to suffer Duke
Richard to be
hung:

that yf ever they loved me, that thei wylle shew to charlemagn that it shal be a grete shame to hym, yf he suffreth that I deye thus shamfully' / 'syre,' sayd the messenger, 'doubt not, I shall doo your message well' / 4
After these thynges thus sayd / the messenger wente oute of the towne to the oost of charlemagn, the whiche he founde¹ full of thought / And whan he sawe him / he made hym reuerence / and after sayd to hym, 'Syre, 8
² wyte it that richarde the duke of normandy recomendeth hym humbly to you / and prayeth you as hertly as he can, & as to his sovereyn lorde, that yf ever ye loved hym, that ye wylle shewe it now / for he mystreth 12
well of it / For yf reynawd have not peas this daye, torne your sighte vpon yonder gate, after that I am com home agen / and ye shall see him hange shamfully' / And whan the messenger had sayd this to the 16
kyng / he loked abowte him, and sawe the twelve peres / and sayd to theim, Fyrst to rowlande / and after to the other / 'Lordes, the duke rycharde prayeth you, rowlande, and all ye in generall, that yf ye ever 20
loved hym, that ye wylle praye Charlemagne that he wylle make peas wyth reynawd, or otherwyse he is deed without mercy' / And whan rowlande herde this, he spake fyrste to the kyng, and sayd, 'Syre, for god I 24
praye you / suffre not that ye be blamed. Ye knowe well that how the duke rycharde is one of the beste knyghtes of the worlde, and he hathe best served you at your nede. For god, sire, make peas wyth rey- 28
nawde / for to recover suche a knyght as is the duke rycharde of normandy / for grete shame it were to you for to lete hym thus deye.' And whan the duke naymes, and the bysshop turpyn, ogyer, escouffe, the 32
sone of oedon / and olivere of vyen herde ³Rowlande

¹ en son pavillon, F. orig. G. iv.

² dieu vous saul aussi la belle compaigne, F. orig. G. iv. back.

³ Fol. F.F. iii. back.

speke soo, They beganne to saye to the kynge / 'By
 god, sire, yf ye wylle not make peas with reynawd for
 to recover our felawe the duke Rycharde of normandy /
 4 ye shall lose moche by it / For wythin shorte tyme ye
 shall see your londe dystroyed afore you' /

all the 12 Peers
 plead likewise
 for Richard's life.

Whan Charlemagne sawe that his peres were thus
 moved for love of Rycharde of normandy /
 8 and that they accorded all for to make peas / he wende
 for to have goon oute of his mynde / And sware by
 grete wrathe as a man mad, that Reynawde sholde never
 have peas with hym / but yf he had mawgys to doo his
 12 wylle wyth hym. And whan he had sayd so, he tourned
 hym towarde the xii peres of fraunce, and sayd to theym,
 'My frendes, take noo fere for Rycharde of normandy /
 For Reynawde sholde sooner lete to be drawe one
 16 of his eyes oute / than he sholde do him ony harme
 or shame' / 'Syre,' sayd the bysshop Turpyn / 'ye are
 besyde your selfe / For ye see all redy that Rycharde is
 iudged to dethe' / 'Bysshop,' sayd Charlemagne, 'ye
 20 speke well folyshly. Knowe ye not well that Rycharde
 of normandy is of the linage of Reynawde. I promyse
 you he dare not doo hym harme by noo maner' / 'By
 god, syre,' sayd Oliver, 'ye have well payed vs by
 24 your sayenge. Why dare not Reynawde hange the
 duke Rycharde? For I knowe somoche by him that,
 yf he had you as he hathe Rycharde / He durste well
 hange yourselfe and all vs.' 'Syre Oliver,' sayd the
 28 messenger / 'I swere you on my feyth, that Reynawde
 ceased not all this daye to praye the duke Rycharde that
 he wolde forsake charlemagne / and he sholde save his
 life, wherof the duke Rycharde of normandy wolde doo
 32 noo thyng / but spake grete wordes to Reynawde.' And
 whan the messenger had sayd thus / he sayd to the kynge,
 'Syre, gyve me leve to goo, of it playse ¹you, and telle
 me what I shall saye to rychard of normandy from you.'

Charlemagne, in
 great wrath,
 swears he will not
 make peace un-
 less Mawgis is
 delivered up to
 him.

The messenger
 asks leave to
 return.

¹ Fol. F.F. iv.

Charlemagne sends him back without an answer to his appeal, and will not believe that Reynawde dare hang the Duke.

‘Frende,’ sayd Charlemagne, ‘ye shall telle hym on my behalve, that he put noo doubte in noo thyng, For Reynawde shall not be soo hardy to doo hym ony harme.’ Whan the messenger, that was a wyse knyght, 4 vnderstode charlemagne, he cowde not absteyn hymselfe, but he sayd to hym / ‘Syre emperour, ye be overproude; but I promyse you that reynawde setteth lityll by your pride / and I make you sure that alarde 8 wayteth well for my comyng agen / For he wolde not take a hundred thousande pounce for to leve rycharde, but that he sholde hange hym his owne handes’ / And assone as he had sayd soo / he went his wayes wyth- 12 oute ony leve takyng of the kyng, streyghte to ardeyn.

The great wrath of the Peers, because of the anger of Charlemagne.

Whan the xii peres sawe the messenger goo wyth an ill answeere / they were full sory for it. ‘Ha, 16 godys,’ sayd oger, ‘how the devyll the kyng is felle, & harde of herte / that wylle nother peas nor concorde / I am well sure that his pryde shall be cause of a shamfull dethe to rycharde.’ ‘Oger,’ sayd rowland, ‘ye saye 20 trouth, but, & I see him hang, god never helpe me at my nede yf I abyde after it wyth charlemagne whiles I live’ / and whan he had sayd soo, he went to thother peres, & sayd to them, ‘Lordes, what shall we doo / 24 shall we lete thus rycharde be hanged? our felawe, one of the best knyghtes of the worlde, & moost hardy / for thrughe his prowes he is there as he is. Never noo fowle worde issued oute of his mouth / alas, we shall 28 now see hym hange wyth grete shame. certes, yf we suffre it, we ben shamed for ever.’

Roland determines to leave the service of the Emperor;

Rowland,¹ as a man dysperate, cam thenne to the kyng all wrothe, & sayd to hym in this maner / 32 ‘Syr, by my soule, I goo now oute of your servyse wythout your leve.’ and after he sayd to oger, ‘Oger, what wyll ye doo / wyll ye com ²wyth me / and leve

¹ Roluand, *orig.* ² Fol. F.F. iv. back.

this devyll here / For he ys all beside hymselfe ¹ / ‘ By
 my hede, rowlande,’ sayed ogyer, ‘ ye saye trouthe / I
 shall never in my liffe abyde wyth hym / but I shall
 4 go gladly wyth you where ye wylle. And I shall not
 leve you for no man in the worlde / syth that he
 suffreth that suche a valiaunte man shall deye, as is
 the duke Rycharde of normandy, that he loved somoche.
 8 He sholde soone doo soo by vs / for he is a man that
 hathe in him nother love nor pyte.’ And whan Olyver
 of vyenne vnderstode these wordes, he stode vp / and
 sayd / ‘ Lordes, I wylle goo wyth you / I have dwelled
 12 here to longe.’ ‘ And I also,’ sayd the duke Naymes /
 and like wyse Escouff the sone of oedon / And whan
 the byshop turpyn sawe this / he casted a grete sighe,
 and sayd, ‘ By my feythe, Charlemagn, It is evyll to
 16 serve you / For of gode servyse ye doo yelde an evyll
 rewarde / as it is well seen now by the duke Rychard
 of normandy, that hathe served you so well and so
 truly / And yf I dwelle any lenger with you, I praye
 20 god punyssh me for it.’

Thenne whan Charlemagne saw his peres that were
 soo sore moved wyth angre agenste hym / he sayd
 to theym / ‘ Lordes, have noo doubte of noo thyng /
 24 For the duke Richearde shall have no harme.’ ‘ Syre,’
 said the duke naymes, ‘ ye doo grete wronge for to saye
 soo / for a fole never byleveth ²tyll he fele sore.² wene
 you to make vs foles wyth your wordes / We see the
 28 galohous made vp for to hange our felaw / wherfore I
 tell you that a mischef take me if I dwel wyth you any
 lenger.’ whan the duke Naymes had sayd soo, he went
 oute of the pavyllion of charlemagn, and in likewise all
 32 the peres of fraunce wyth him / and went in to his
 tent, the whiche he made to be pulde down inconty-

Ogier also threat-
 ens to leave him,

and other of his
 Peers,

because of his
 treachery to the
 good Duke.

All the Peers
 depart from the
 host of Charle-
 magne,

¹ Pour ce que luy avons tant obey et tant de fois prie et
 pour ce il sen tient si fier et si orgueilleux, F. orig. G. v. back.

²⁻² tant quil a pris, F. orig.

ment / And whan they of the oost of Charlemagn sawe
that, they were sore ¹affrayed. And ye oughte to wyte
that they were so sore moved wythin a lityll while,
that there abode in the oste of charlemagn not one 4
baron nor knyghte, but oonly the pour simple gentyl-
men / and comyn people. Whan Rowlande sawe this,
he wente on his wayes wyth the other peres / And
wyte it, atte that hour the oost of Charlemagne was 8
made lesse than it was afore by XL thousande men.

which is reduced
by XL thousand
men.

Reynawde, that was vpon the hyghe gate of Ardeyn,
sawe soo grete nombre of folke comyng togyder /
soo called he to hym the messenger, that was but comen 12
fro charlemagn / and sayd to hym in this maner /
'Come here, messenger, telle me what Charlemagne
hathe sayd to you.' 'Syre,' sayd the messenger, 'wyte it
that ye have myssed of peas / For Charlemagne wylle 16
noo thyng of it, But he sendeth you worde by me, that
ye be not soo hardy (vpon the eyen of your hede) to doo
ony harme to the duke Rycharde of normandy' / And
whan he had sayd this / he tourned hym towarde the 20
duke Rycharde, and sayd to hym, 'Syre duke, now
maye ye knowe how moche Charlemagne loveth you /
Wyte it for certeyn that ye gate nother helpe nor
soocours of hym ; and for the love of you, Rowlande and 24
all the other peres of fraunce ben full sore an angred
wyth hym. For ye maye perceyve it well by their tentes
that ben pulled down / And soo I am sure that the
moost parte of the oost shall departe for the love of 28
you / And soo shall not abyde there, but oonly the erle
Guynellon and his linage / For theyr tentes ben ryghted,
and all thother broughte down' / Whan reynawde wyste
that the frenshmen were angri wyth Charlemagn for the 32
love of the duke rychard of normandy / he chaunged
his corage, and cowde not kepe hym from wepyng.
And after he tourned hym towarde Rycharde of nor-

The messenger
relates to Rey-
nawde Charle-
magne's answer
to him.

Reynawde relents
of his conduct
towards the
Duke,

¹ Fol. F.F. v.

mandy, and sayd to hym, ¹‘for god, my cosin, I praye
 you to pardonne me the grete shame that I have doon
 to you’ / ‘Reynawde,’ sayd Richarde, ‘I blame you
 4 not, for I wote well ye can not doo therto / For the
 grete pryde & cruelnes of Charlemagn is causer of all
 this.’ Whan reynawde had cryed mercy to the duke
 Rycharde / he vnbounde him ; and alarde & guycharde
 8 cam to helpe him / for they were all glad that richarde
 was deliverde / notwythstandynge afore that they were
 dysposed for to make hym deye shamfully / And whan
 they had doon, Reynawd sayd / ‘cosyn rychard, lene
 12 vpon this walle, and we shal loke what charlemagn
 wylle doo’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd the duke rycharde, ‘ye saye
 wel, lete vs see it’ /

and craves his
 pardon.

The Sons rejoice
 over the release of
 Richard.

16 **W**han Charlemagn sawe that his barons went
 awaye as it is sayd / he was sory for it, that
 he wexed almoste madde all quycke for angre, and helde
 a demye launce in hys hande, the whiche beganne to
 gnawe wyth his teeth, so angry he was. And whan
 20 his wrathe was a lityll goon / he called a knyghte, and
 sayd to hym / ‘Now lighte on horsback lightly / and
 ryde after rowlande & after the other barons, & telle
 them in my behalve, that they com speke wyth me,
 24 and I shall be demened as they wylle theymsel / and
 that I shalle pardonne reynawd yf they wylle come
 agen to me.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd the knyghte, ‘blessed be
 god, that hath brought you to this mynde.’ And
 28 thenne this knyghte toke an horse, and rode hastely
 after the twelve peers of fraunce.² And whan Rey-
 nawde, that was wyth the duke rychard vpon the gate
 of ardeyne, appereyved this,³ he sayd to the duke of
 32 normandy / ‘cosin, I see come a knyghte⁴ oute of the

Charlemagne
 sends a knight
 after his Peers to
 beg their return.

¹ Fol. F.F. v. back.

² si royement quil sembloit que la terre deust fendre
 dessouz les piedz de son cheval, F. orig. G. vi. back.

³ chevalier qui cheuavehoit si royement, F. orig.

⁴ moult vistrement, F. orig.

pavilion of charlemagn / I byleve that he gooth to the
 twelve peres of Fraunce for to make theym to retourne
 agayne / I wene we shall ¹have this daye peas, and god
 byfore' / 'Syre,' sayd Richard,² 'ye shall have peas 4
 mawgre all them that letteth it / I oughte to love
 derely my felawes that ben cause to kepe me from
 dethe / and also to have peas.' Wyte it that the knyghte
 rode so faste that he overtoke Rowland / and all the 8
 other peres, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, the kyng
 sendeth you worde by me that ye wylle retourne
 agayne / and he shall pardonne reynawde for the love
 of you / And for goddys love come lightly / For he 12
 never lefte wepyng syth that ye wente your waye from
 hym.' 'Naymes,' sayd Rowland, 'lete vs retourne
 agayn / For I hold the peas made / wherof this
 sorowfull werre shal faylle that hathe lasted soo 16
 longe.' Whan the duke Naymes herde Rowlande saye
 soo / he was glad of it, and Ioyned his handes towarde
 heven, and sayd / 'Good lorde Ihesus, blessed be the
 tyme that it hathe playسد for to tourne the corage of 20
 our kyng / and that this vnhappy werre is broughte
 atte an ende.' And whan the duke naymes had sayd
 this / they retourned agayn towarde charlemagn.

The knight
 delivers his
 message,

and they all go
 back to Charle-
 magne.

Reynawde per-
 ceives their
 return,

and hopes that
 peace may be
 accorded with
 them.

And whan reynawd apperceyved that the twelve 24
 peres wente agayn to Charlemagne / he sayd to
 the duke Rychard of normandy, 'Cosyn, the barons
 retourne agayne / I by-leve that the peas shall be made,
 and that we shall mowe well goo soone at our liberte. 28
 now shall reynawd may say that I & my bredern ben
 at his *commandement* / and shall be as longe as we
 ben men an live.' Well gladdere were the barons on the
 one parte / and of the other, By cause that god had 32
 suffred that the peas sholde be made / And whan
 charlemagn sawe his barons come agen, he went agenste
 theym & sayd / 'Bi god, my lordes, ye are welle full

¹ Fol. F.F. vi. ² Reynawde, *orig.*

of grete pryde *that* ye make me to be com peisible
 1 wyth reynaud¹ agenst my wyl; ye knowe *that* I have
 hated him somoche *that* I maye not see him,² but I
 4 shall be angry by cause of his pryde that is soo grete.
 Wherefore, yf ye wylle that I make peas wyth him, I wyll
 that he goo into the holy londe pourly clothed on fote /
 And soo I wylle have his horse bayarde. And I shall
 8 retourne agayne to his bretherne all their livelode oute
 of my handes. Therefore, yf thus he wylle doo / I shall
 falle to peas, and accorde wyth him, and elles not. For
 I make myn a vowe to god that I shall never do other-
 12 wyse therin / than I telle you now. And therefore loke
 well whiche of you shall doo this message.' 'Syre,'
 sayd the duke Naymes / 'I shall goo to Reynawde
 wyth a good wylle / yf it be your playsure that I goo
 16 to hym.' 'Naymes,' sayd Charlemagne / 'It playseth
 me well' / And thenne Incontynent the duke Naymes
 rode to ardeyne³ / And whan Reynawde saw hym come,
 he knewe hym well / and wente hym agenst / and soo
 20 dyde the duke rycharde / and all the brethern of Rey-
 nawde / Whan the duke Naymes sawe the noble
 barons come agenste hym, he lighted from his horse
 anone / and wente and kyssed theym all, and after he
 24 had doon soo, he sayd / 'Reynawde / Charlemagne
 sendeth me to you with his gretynge' / 'God yelde
 hym,' sayd Reynawde / 'Now have I that I have
 desired soo longe / Naymes, shall I have peas?' 'Ye,'
 28 sayd the duke naymes, 'vndre a condycyon / whiche
 I shall telle you. It is that ye must goo pourly clothed,
 and beggyng your brede for goddys sake in to the
 holy londe, and soo shall ye leve bayarde wyth charle-
 32 magne / And this doon ye shall have peas / And he
 shall gyve agayn your heritages to your brethern.'
 'Duke Naymes,' sayd Reynawde, 'ye be ryght welcome /

Charlemagne dic-
 tates to his Peers
 his terms of peace
 with Reynawde.

Duke Naymes
 rides to Arden
 with the tidings
 of peace;

he delivers his
 message to Rey-
 nawde,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ² Fol. F.F. vi. back.

³ dordonne, F. orig.

who promises to fulfil the Emperor's commands.

Duke Naymes and Richard rejoice over his concessions.

Roland admires the goodness of Reynawde, who will sacrifice himself for his brethren and his folk.

Naymes presents Bayard to the Emperor;

he tells him how well Duke Richard fareth.

And I promyse you that I am redy to doo the commaundement of the kyng. And yf he wylle have of me ony thyng more by ony wyse, I shall in every poynt fulfille his wylle if it be possyble / ¹for me to doo 4
it / Now shall I be a goode trewaunt / for I can well aske brede whan me nedeth' / Whan the duke Naymes herde Reynawde speke thus, he was well gladd of it, and so was the duke Rycharde, that they sawe the 8
noble Reynawd agreed to the wylle of Charlemagne / soo moche as for to be-come a poure begger for to have peas. And after that Reynawde was thus accorded herto, he went into his stable and toke bayarde, and 12
deliverde hym to the duke Naymes / and thenne he toke his baner, and bare it on high vpon the highe towre in token of peas. And whan Charlemagne sawe the baner of Reynawde, he shewed it to rowlande / 16
'Ha god,' sayd Rowlande / 'how meke is Reynawde, and good of kynde, to have made peas in this maner of wyse. Blessed be Ihesus that hathe gyven hym that wylle for to goo now a fote, wherof I playne hym 20
sore' / 'Rowlande,' sayd ogyer / 'Reynawde is a lambe full of mekenes / and in him are all the gode condycions that a knyghte oughte to have.' This hangynge, came there the duke naymes that broughte bayarde 24
wyth hym / and presented hym to charlemagne / and sayd to hym / 'Syre, Reynawde is redy for to doo all that ye have commaunded hym / and he shal departe to morow yf ye wyll, syth your playsure is soo.' 'I 28
wylle well,' sayd charlemagne / 'but telle me where is the duke Rycharde, For I wylle knowe it.' 'Syre,' sayd the duke Naymes / 'wyte that the duke Rycharde fareth well, and is abyden wyth Reynawde / for he 32
wylle conveye hym whan he gooth' / And wyte that reynawde, thys hangynge, made grete chere wyth his folke at his ease, and after sayd to theym / 'Lordes /

¹ Fol. F.F. vii.

I beseeche you be not sory that I goo / for I have made
 this peas more for you than for me. I praye you that
 ye holde well togyder till I com agen.' And whan he
 4 had sayd this to theim / he wente to his chambre, &
 'vnelothed hymselfe from his goode raymentes / and
 caste vpon him a pour mantell, and a payer of bygge
 shone wel clouted / and made be broughte to hym a
 8 palster well yrened for to bere in his hande. And ye
 muste wyte that the duke rycharde was styлле wyth
 hym, to whome reynawde commended his wyfe and hys
 chylidren / and all his brethern / And that he wolde
 12 praye the kyng that he sholde have theym for re-
 comended / And whan he had arrayed hymselfe so he
 came towarde the halle to the duchesse hys wyfe.

Reynawde clothes
 himself in poor
 garments,

and commends
 his wyfe and
 children to the
 care of Duke
 Richard.

Whan the noble duchesse clare sawe her husbonde
 16 soo arayed in his beggers clothyng / she toke
 suche sorowe for it that she felle down in a swonne to
 the erthe as she had be deed. And whan reynawde
 saw her falle, he ranne for to take her vp / and after
 20 sayd to her, 'Lady, for god take it not soo sore at your
 herte / For I shal soone come agen, and god byfore /
 And wyth you shall my brethern abyde that shall serve
 you as theyr lady / And soo I telle you that I am so
 24 glad of the peas, that me semeth that I am come agen
 all redy / Madame, my dere wyfe, I praye god kepe
 you from all evylles' / And with thys he kissed her
 full swetly / and thenne he toke on his waye. And
 28 whan the duchesse sawe hym go, she toke for it soo
 grete sorowe that she swouned agen / and abode thus a
 longe while, that all her gentylwymen wene she had
 ben dead / And after she was come agen to herselfe
 32 she made grete mone for her lorde reynawde. For she
 scartched her face / and pulled her heres from her hede
 for grete sorow / And whan she had made soo moche
 sorowe / she sayd, 'O gode husbonde reynawde, whos

The Duchesse
 swoons with
 sorrow at her
 husband's
 departure;

and mourns his
 loss with great
 grief.

¹ Fol. F.F. vii. back.

like is not in all the worlde of goodnes / god be wyth
 you / For I wote wel that I shall never see you.' And
 whan she had sayd these wordes she went in to her
 chambre, & toke all her noble raymentes & caste them 4
¹ in a fyre; and whan they were all brente, she toke a
 poure smocke, and caste it² abowte her / And sayd she
 sholde never were no other clothes tyll she sawe her
 lorde husbände agen. 8

The three Sons
 with Duke
 Richard convey
 Reynawde on his
 way to the Holy
 Land;

he begs them to
 return and com-
 fort the Duchess.

After that reynawd had taken leve of his wyfe / he
 departed. the duke rychard, his bredern, and
 his folke conveied hym a grete waye / alwayes spekyng
 that it was pyte to here / and whan reynawd thoughte 12
 that they had goon ferre ynough with him, he torned
 him towarde theim, & sayd, 'Lordes, I praye you
 humbly that ye retorne home agen / for aslong as ye be
 wyth me I am not at my ease / goo your waye in the 16
 name of god, & recomforte my wife the duchesse, that
 wepeth so sore. & to you, my bredern, I comende hier
 & my children also.' Wyte it that whan reynawde had
 sayd this / there was none that cowde take leve of him, 20
 soo full of sorowe they were / except alarde, that sayd
 to him, 'My dere broder, I praye you hertly that ye
 come shortly agen / for your departyng is so hevy to
 me that I trowe I shall deye for sorow' / and whan 24
 alard had sayd soo, he enbrased his brother, & toke leve
 of hym, makyngre grete sorow. and so dyde rycharde
 of normandy, to whome reynawd sayd / 'my cosin, I
 comende you ones my wyfe agen, & my children / and 28
 all my bredern, For they ben of your blode; well ye
 knowe it.' 'Reynawd,' sayd the duke rycharde / 'I
 promyse you, & swere as a knyghte, that I shall helpe
 & deffende theym agenst all men except agenst the 32
 kyng; and doubt not for theym, for thei shall want noo
 thyng.' ¶ Now levethe the history to speke of Reynawd,
 that went to the holy londe arayed as ye have herde /

Alarde embraces
 him in great
 sorrow.

Duke Richard
 vows to protect
 and befriend the
 Sons until Rey-
 nawde returns to
 them.

¹ Fol. F.F. viii. ² hit, *orig.*

And retorneth to speke of hys brethern, how they came
to the kynge Charlemagne / wyth the duke rycharde of
normandy /

CHAPTER XXIII.

4 ¶ How after that reinaude was departed fro ar-
dein¹ to make his viage beyonde see clothed
pourli as a pilgrim,² asking³ his mete for god
sake, the duke of normandy toke alarde,⁴
8 guycharde, & rychard / and brought [t]hem
wyth him to charlemagne / whiche receyved
them honourably / and toke vp his siege /
and went agen to parys. But whan he came
12 to the cite of lege, vpon the ryver of meuze /
he made bayarde to be caste in it / with a
mylle stone at the necke of hym. But
men sayen that baiard scaped oute / and
16 that he is a live yet in the forest of ardeyn.

In this party sheweth the history, that whan reynaude
had put hymselfe to the waye as ye have herde /
Richarde of normandy & his brethern came agen to
20 ardeyn,¹ full sory⁵ for reynawd⁵ / where as they founde
the good duchesse clare, that made grete sorowe⁵ for
her lordes departynge.⁵ And whan they were come agen
there / the duche richard toke the duchesse by the
24 hande, and began to recomforte her / and soo many
fayr wordes he sayd vnto her that she slaked a lityll
her sorowe / and after this, the duke rycharde sayd to
the brethern of reynawd in this maner / ‘ Lordes, goo
28 make you redy, and we shall goo to charlemagn.’ ‘ Sir,’
sayd the thre brethern / ‘lete vs, whan it playse you.’

Duke Richard and
the three brethren
return to Arden.

The Duke com-
forts the poor
Duchess.

¹ dordonne, F. orig. ² pilgrim, orig.

³ Fol. F.F. viii. back.

⁴ baiart, F. orig. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

and thenne they went, & toke on the beste clothyng
that they had; And I promyse you they were thre
fayr knyghtes. and after they were well appareylled /
they mounted eche of theym vpon a palfrey of hye 4
price, right fayr, without ony armes / And for to speke
shortely, they issued oute of ardein,¹ & cam to the
pavylion of charlemagn / and whan the kyng sawe
them, he was right glad, Soo commaunded all his 8
barons that they sholde goo agenste them / 'Ha, god,'
sayd rowland / 'now comen the thre brethern well
sory / certes, they haue a cause / for they have loste
theyr helpe, socour, & hope. Now I see that the duke 12
richard cometh with them / wherof he dooth wel / for
he is their kinneman.'

²Ye oughte to wyte that the thre bredern of rey-
nawde came to the pavylion of charlemagne 16
welle honestly arayed. and whan they were afore the
kyng, thei kneled humbly at his fete / and alarde speke
firste, & sayd / 'Syre, reynawd our broder recomendeth
him humbly to your good grace, and salveth you as his 20
soverayne lorde / and he sendeth you Rycharde, the
duke of normandy, whiche ye see here; and soo he
prayeth you that ye wylle have vs for recomended / for
he hathe taken his waye towards the holy londe for 24
taccompyshe your commaundement.' 'Frende,' said
the kyng charlemagn, 'ye be ryght welcom / Syth
that it playseth our lorde that we shall be frendes, I
shall doo for you, and shall brynge you all to honour, 28
as it aperteyneth to suche knyghtes as ye ben / And yf
god wylle bringe reynawd sauf agen from his vyage, I
shall holde hym as dere as I doo myn owne newew
rowlande / for he is replenyshed wyth grete worthynes' / 32
'Syre,' sayd rycharde, 'god brynge hym agen!' Whan
the kyng had thus spoken wyth the bredern of rey-
nawde / he cam to the duke richarde of normandy, &

The Sons and
Duke Richard
depart for the tent
of Charlemagne;

they all kneel
before the
Emperor, and
Alarde tells him
how Reynawde
has departed for
the Holy Land.

Charlemagne re-
ceives their tidings
graciously;

¹ dordonne, F. orig.

² Fol. G.G. i.

1 kissed him more than X tymes / and whan he had
 feested hym ynoughe, he sayd to hym / 'Duke
 richarde, I praye you that ye wyll telle me what
 4 pryson gaaff you reynawde, and what metes for to
 ete?' 'Syr,' sayd the duke of normandy, 'by the
 feyth that I owe to god & to you, I had better pryson,
 & was more at my ease, than ever knyght was, for I
 8 was served of the same that reynawd was / and som-
 tyme better; and soo I promyse you, sire, that the
 gentyll duchesse, his wife, made me grete chere and
 good company wyth her two fayr children / Sir, I
 12 beseche you, yf ever ye love me, that ye wylle worshyp
 Alarde & his brethern, yf it playse you, For they have
 doon to me grete honoure / And they¹ have gyven me
 grete yeftes / And yf it playse you, ye² shall have the
 16 goode duchesse and her children for recomended,
 for she is the humblest lady of the worlde / and the
 moost wise' / 'Rycharde,' sayd charlemagn, 'wyte it
 that I shall not faylle theym aslonge as life shall be in
 20 my body / and whan the children of reynawd shal be
 in age for to be made knyghtes, I shall dowbe theym
 to it myn owne handes wyth grete worshyp / and god
 spare me liffe, and soo shall I gyve theym landes
 24 ynoughe for to mayntene theyr astate' / 'Gramercy,
 sir,' sayd the duke rycharde / 'and god yelde you!'

and kisses Duke Richard with much fervour.

Duke Richard implores the Emperor to befriend the Duchess Clare and her children.

The Emperor promises to make the sons of Reynawde knyghts in due time.

28 **W**han they had devysed all ynoughe of the
 thynges afore sayd, the kynge charlemagne
 commaunded that he sholde be dyslodged; and anone
 his commaundement was doon, and thenne every man
 put hymself to the waye towarde his country. And
 whan the kynge sawe that it was tyme, he mounted on
 32 horsbacke, and toke on hys waye towarde the eyte of
 lege / and whan he was come in lege, he lodged hym
 vpon the brydge of the ryver of meuze. and whan the
 mornynge was come / he made be broughte afore hym

Every man preparat to depart to his own country.

¹ thye, *orig.*

² Fol. G.G. i. back.

the goode horse of reynawd, bayarde / And whan he
 saw hym he began to saye in this wyse / 'ha, bayarde /
 bayard / thou hast often angred me, but I am come to
 the poynt, god gramerey for to avenge me / and I pro- 4
 myse the thou shalt now abyte it full dere the tourment
 & felony that I have often tymes had by the.' And
 whan the kynge had sayd so / he made a grete myl-
 stone to be fastened at the necke of bayarde / and 8
 thenne made hym to be caste from the brydge down in
 to the ¹water / And whan bayarde was thus tumbled in
 the ryver, he sanke vnto the botome of it. And whan
 the kynge sawe that, he made grete Ioye, and soo sayd, 12
 'Ha, bayarde, now have I that I desired, and wysshed
 soo longe / For ye be now deed, but yf ye drynke oute
 all the water' / And whan the frenshe men ²sawe the
 grete cruelnes of Charlemagn, that avenged himselve 16
 vpon a pour beest, they were yll contente / And thenne
 spake the bysshop Turpyn, and sayd / 'Ogyer of dan-
 marke, what thynke you by charlemagn? he hathe well
 shewed atte this tyme a grete parte of his grete felony' / 20
 'sire,' sayd ogyer, 'ye saye trouth / he hathe doon to
 grete foly for to make dey suche a goode beest as this
 horse was' / 'Syr,' sayd oliver to rowlande / 'Charle-
 magne is now woxen all folisshe' / 'ye saye full trouth,' 24
 sayd rowland, 'I perceyve it full well' / and for to say
 the trouthe, there was none of the twelve peres, but
 he wepte for love of the good horse bayarde / But who-
 somever was sory for it / charlemagne was glad of it. 28
 Ye oughte to know that, after that bayarde was cast in
 the ryver of meuze / he wente to the botom, as ye have
 herde / and myghte not come vp for by cause of the
 grete stone that was at his necke, whiche was horryble 32
 hevvy / and whan bayarde sawe he myght none other
 wyse scape, he smote soo longe and soo harde wyth his
 fete vpon the myll stone that he braste it / and came

Charlemagne
 orders Bayard to
 be thrown into
 the river Meuse
 with a great stone
 fastened at his
 neck.

The Frenchmen
 sorrow over the
 fate of the gallant
 horse.

Bayard contrives
 to break the stone
 round his neck,

¹ reviere de muse, F. orig. H. ii. ² Fol. G.G. ii.

agen above the water / and began to swimme / soo that
 he passed it all over at the other side. And whan he
 was come to londre, he shaked hymselfe for to make
 4 falle the water from hym, and began to crye hie, and
 made a merveyllous noyse / and after, began to reanne
 so swyftely as the tempeste had borne hym awaye /
 and entred in to the grete foreste of ardeyne. And
 8 whan the kyng charlemagn sawe that bayarde was
 escaped, he toke soo grete sorowe for it, that almoste he
 lost his wytte for angre ; But all the barons were glad
 of it. Thus, as ye have herde, escaped bayarde oute
 12 of the handes of Charlemagne / And wyte it for very
 certain that the folke of that countrey sayen / that he
 is yet a live wythin the wood of ardeyne. But wyte it,
 whan ¹ he seeth man or woman, he renneth anone awaye,
 16 soo that noo body maye come nere hym / And after all
 thyse thynges, the kyng Charlemagne, as angry as he
 was, departed from meuze, and wente in to a chapell
 that was nyghe / and called to hym all his barons, and
 20 gaaff theym leve to goo in to theyr countreys, wherof
 they were ryght gladde / For they were sore desyrynge
 for to see theyr wyves, theyr chylidren, and theyr
 londres ² /

and swims to
land;

he escapes into
the forest of
Arden,

where the folk of
the country say
he lives now,
and will not allow
either man or
woman to ap-
proach him.

CHAPTER XXIV.

24 ¶ How Reynawde³ founde mawgys his cosyn,
 as he wente by the waye for to accomplishe
 his vyage to the holy sepulere, in the coun-
 trey of Constanstynoble / And how thei
 28 wente together to Iherusalem / whiche the

¹ Fol. G.G. ii. back.

² mais a tant laisse le compte a parler de charlemaigne et de ses barons et retourne a parler du noble regnault qui este en son voiage pour aler aultre mer, F. orig. omitted in Caxton.

³ fust departy de dordonne de ses freres de sa femme et enfans en moult grans regretz et lamentacions pour aler oultre mer acomplir son voiage ou saint sepulere il . . . F. orig. H. ii. bk.

admyralle of perse had taken by treyson
vpon the crysten. But reynawde & his cosyn
mawgys dyde somoche wyth the folke of the
countryside, that the cyte Iherusalem was gotten 4
agayne by the crysten people.

Reynawde departs
for the Holy Land,

and arrives at
Constantinople;

he lodges with a
holy woman, who
tells him another
pilgrim is there.

Reynawde finds
that the pilgrim
is Mawgis,

and the cousins
embrace each
other.

Now telleth the histori that, after that reynaud was
departed from ardeyne¹ for to goo in to the holy
londe, he wente soo moche by his iourneys that he came 8
to Constantynoble, and lodged hym in an holy womans
howse / whiche served hym as well as she cowde / and
gaffe hym suche mete as god had gyven to her / And
after, she washed his fete as she was wounte to doo to 12
other pylgrymes / And whan this good woman had
doon soo / she toke Reynawde by the hande / and
broughte him into her owne chamber / and sayd to
him / ‘Good man, ye shall lie here, for in my other 16
chambre ye maye not be / for there is a poure pylgym
that is sore syke.’ ‘Dame,’ sayd reynawde, ‘lete me
see that pylgryme that ye speke of, whiche is soo
syke.’ ‘wyth a gode wille,’ sayd the poure woman, 20
‘ye shall see hym. For I promyse ²you there is grete
pyte in hym.’ And thenne she toke reynawde by the
hande, and brought hym to the pylgryme that was in
his bedde / And whan reynawde sawe hym, he knew 24
wel that it was his cosyn mawgys, wherof he was ryght
glad; soo beganne he to speke to hym / and sayd /
‘Frende, how is it wyth your persone?’ And whan
mawgis herde reynawde speke to hym, he lepte oute of 28
his bedde, as he never had be seke, and enbrased reynawde
more than twenti tymes, and after sayd to hym,
‘Cosyn, how is it wyth you / and what adventure
bryngth you here in this poure clothyng that ye have 32
on / telle me, yf it playse you / have ye had peas wyth

¹ dordonne, F. orig.

² Fol. G.G. iii.

the kynge Charlemagne?' 'Cosyn,' sayd reynawde /
 'ye, by suche a maner as I shall telle you.' And thenne
 he rehersed hym all the maner as ye have herde above /
 4 and all the treaty that he had wyth Charlemagne¹ /

Reynawde tells
 him of his treaty
 with Charle-
 magne.

Whan mawgys vnderstode the wordes of Rey-
 nawde, he was ryght gladde of it / And thenne
 he embraced agayne reynawd, and sayd to him, 'I am
 8 now hole, for the gode tydynges that ye have broughte
 to me, And therefore I am dysposed to goo wyth you /
 and doubt not we shall not dey for hungre / for I am
 mayster for to begge² brede'³ / And the goode woman
 12 sawe that thyse two pylgrymes made so grete feest the
 one to the other, she thoughte it myghte none other-
 wise be but thei were of grete linage, and that they had
 had some grete a doo togyder, and she sayd to theym /
 16 'Fayre lordes, I see that ye knowe well eche other / wher-
 fore I pray you telle me what ye be / and from whens
 ye come.' 'Goode woman,' sayd mawgys, 'syth that ye
 wylle knowe of our beyng / I shall telle you a parte
 20 of it / Wyte it thenne that we ben two pour gentylmen
 that are banysshed oute of fraunce, Soo muste we goo
 in suche habyte as ye see in to the holy⁴londe; and we
 ben cosins germain / and we shall doo our vyage togyder,
 24 yf it playse god.' And whan the lady,⁵ that gode woman,⁵
 vnderstode this / she had grete ioye / Thenne made she
 to brynge theym mete ynoughe / and wyne / Mawgys,
that syn so long had dronken noo wyne, dranke some
 28 *that nyghte for love of Reynawde.* Shortly to speke,
 none myghte say nor thynke how grete fest made the
 two cosyns to eche other. And whan the daye was
 come, Reynawde & mawgys arose / and toke leve of
 32 the holy lady, and put theymselfe to the waye. And

Mawgis says he
 shall journey with
 him to Jerusalem.

The woman of the
 house brings the
 Pilgrims meat
 and wine,

and they feast
 together joyfully.

¹ sans laisser ung seul mot, F. orig. H. iii. ² bedge. *orig.*

³ Et moy se dist regnault seullement que je aye fain, F. orig.
 H. iii.

⁴ Fol. G.G. iii. back. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. H. iii. back.

Reynawde and
Mawgis arrive at
Jerusalem;

they see a great
host surrounding
the city,

at which they
marvel greatly.

They inquire the
cause of it from
an old man.

The old man
replies that the
Christians besiege
Jerusalem,

which has been
taken by the
Admiral of Persia
through treason,

wyte that somoche wente the two pylgrymes by theyr
iourneyes, that they came nyghe the cyte of Iherusalem,
and were but a lityll myle fro it / soo that they myght
see well the temple and the towre of davyd, and the 4
moost parte of Iherusalem. And whan mawgys &
reynawde sawe that, they were ryght gladd of it / and
yelded graces vnto god that he had suffred theym to
come soo nyghe the holy cyte. Whan they had doon 8
thus theyr prayers / they wente on theyr waye for to
have goon wythin Iherusalem; But they were goon
but a lityll whan they sawe a grete oost abowte the
cyte, evyn afore the towre of davyd / Where were many 12
pavylions of the crysten, that were there for to fyghte
with the admyrall of Perce, that by force helde the
cyte of Iherusalem / Reynawde dyde tary whan he
sawe the oost that was afore the cyte, and sayd to hys 16
cosyn mawgys, ‘Cosyn, what folke is yonder, as ye
thynke / for it semeth a grete oost a fore Iherusalem /
are thei sarrasyns or crysten? what saye you?’ ‘Surely,’
sayd mawgys, ‘I canne not telle, and I am sore mer- 20
veylled what it maye be’ / Thus as reynawde and
mawgys spake togyder / there cam an olde man rydyng¹
that way that came from the oost. And whan reynawde
sawe hym ²he wente hym agenste / and sayd to hym / 24
‘God save you, gode man / telle me, and playse you,
What be they afore the holy cyte; are they crysten or
sarrasyns?’ ‘Pylgryme,’ sayd the olde man, ‘they ben
crysten that have beseged Iherusalem / and canne not 28
take it / but ye maye well goo wythoute parell’ / ‘Now
telle me,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘who is wythin Iherusalem’ /
‘Wyte it,’ sayd the olde man, ‘that the admyrall of
perce hathe taken it by treyson.’ ‘And how hathe he 32
taken it by treyson?’ sayd reinawde. ‘Wyte,’ sayd
the olde man, ‘that the admyrall arrayed hym as a
pylgryme, and many of his folke wyth hym / and wente

¹ sus ung rousin, F. orig. H. iv. ² Fol. G.G. iv.

in to the cyte one after a nother / And whan they were
all wythin, they blewe an horne ryght hyghe, and set
hande to theyr swerdes / and foughite strongly, soo that
4 they were maysters of the cyte or ever the kynge
thomas cowde be armed, nor his folke / the whiche
cowde not save theymselfe wyth suche fewe folk / as
was lefte hym a live / ¹but he was taken prysoner¹ / and
8 anone all the cuntry rose vp, and have beseged the
cyte as ye see ; and I truste wyth the grace of god that
the cyte shall be take shortly' / 'Now telle me,' sayd
reynawde, 'yf they of the cyte come oute often vpon
12 the crysten.' 'Ye,' sayd the olde man, 'for they ben
moche folke wythin ; and the thyng that most greveth
vs, is that our folke have noo hede nor noo lorde. And
ye wote well that folke that have noo hede nor noo
16 lorde can doo but lityll goode' / And whan reynawde
herde this worde, he began to smyle, and after he sayd /
'Fare well, goode man / we wylle goo there for to see
what shall happe of it' / And whan he had sayd soo,
20 he toke on his waye wyth his cosyn mawgys / and
ceassed not tyll they were comyn wythin the oost /
And whan they were come there / every man loked
vpon reynawde, that was soo fayr a pylgrym, ¹and so
24 talle a man.¹ And reynawd loked here ²and there / and
wyste not where to put hymselfe. Thenne he advysed
hym, and sayd to mawgys / 'My cosyn, we must see
that we have a lityll reede or some other thyng / for to
28 make vs a lodges there at one corner of the walle' / and
whan reynawde had sayd so / mawgys ceassed not tyll
he had made a lityll lodges / This hangyng, that they
made theyr lodges / thadmyralle of Perce yssued oute
32 of Iherusalem wyth well thre thousande fyghtyng men /
And entred in to the crysten oost towarde saynt stevyns
chirche.

and the King
Thomas taken
prisoner,
whose folk sur-
round the city.

Reynawde and
Mawgis go into
the host of the
Christians,
who regard them
with surprise.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig.

² Fol. G.G. iv. back.

And thenne whan the good erle of rames, & walleran
of fayete, & geffrage of Nazareth sawe that, they
ranne anone to theyr harneys. And I telle you that
therle Iaffas of rames was soone armed, sooner than 4
thother, and incontynente he ranne vpon the turkes /
and began to crie 'Iaffa' as hie as he cowde / and
smote vpon the persans / and dommaged them sore,
for he was a valiaunt man in armes. And whan all 8
they of the oost were armed / thenne began there a
bataylle of the one parte, and of the other, ryght cruell /
Thenne came there¹ geffrage of nazareth / whiche entred
amonge the thyckest of the sarrasyns, and began faste 12
to smyte theym deed² to the erthe / Shortly to speke,
this batayll was ryght grete & mortall / for there were
many speres broken, & many sheldes cloven; and of
the one parte and of the other, many men overthrown 16
to the grounde. And ye oughte to wyte that³ waller-
aven of fayete smote there deed mani a panym,⁴ soo
that it was wonder to see his faytes of armes / for noo
persante durste abide afore hym / And whan the admyr- 20
alle sawe this / he sayd to hymselfe / that he sholde
never set noo thyng by hymselfe / but he sholde
avenge vpon geffray that soo tourmented his folke.⁵
And anone he toke a spere in his hande / and went 24
agenste geffray / And whan⁶ geffraye sawe that, he
ranne asprely vpon hym / and thei gafe eche other
suche strokes in their sheeldes, that bothe theyr speres
flewe in many peeces⁷ / and wyth this cours was thad- 28

Earl Geoffrey
 fights the Per-
 sians valiantly,
 and many are
 slain.

The Admiral
 fights with
 Geoffrey,

¹ le conte de rames monte sus ung destrier. F. orig. H. iv. back.

² ainsi comment loupz les brebiz. F. orig. H. iv. back.

³ geoffroy de nazareth, F. orig. H. iv. back.

⁴ et de turez, F. orig.

⁵ Amiral de perse eust moult le cuer dolant de ce quil veoit que geoffroy luy faisoit a luy et a ses gens, F. orig. H. iv. back.

⁶ Fol. G.G. v.

⁷ si se en contrerent si grans conps lung contre lautre quil enconuint tomber lamiral, F. orig. H. iv. back.

miralle overthrowen from his horse to therthe, but
 geffraye of nazareth abode in the arsons of his saddle /
 And whan the admyrall sawe hym on the grounde, he
 4 was angry for it / soo rose he vp lightly, & set hande
 to his swerde, and made grete semblau^{te} for to deffende
 hymself. and whan geffraye of nazareth sawe thys /
 he torned hym towarde thadmyralle, & smote hym so
 8 grete a stroke with his swerde vpon his helme, that he
 astonyed hym / And whan geffray sawe that he made
 no defence / he bowed his body towarde hym, and toke
 the admyrall by the helme, & wolde have broughte
 12 him awaye / And whan thadmyralle sawe that he was
 take, he cryed ‘Perce’ as lowde as he myghte, soo that
 his folke herde hym, & rau^{ne} there as he was / and
 deliverde hym from the handes of geffray, and set hym
 16 vpon a horse, & brought him wyth theym / whan
 thenne reynawd sawe that the bataylle was soo cruell,
 he sayd to mawgis, ‘Alas, cosyn, yf I had my harneys,
 I sholde goo gladly socour our folke, for it is that thyng
 20 that I have moost desired / as that I myghte bere armes
 agenste the sarrasins’ / ‘Thenne,’ sayd mawgys to hym,
 ‘ye are not wyse to say so / ye wote how we ben
 traveyllid of our pylgrimage / and that it is tyme that
 24 we rest vs a lityll / And also the werre shall not be
 ended soo soone / but that ye may prove yourselfe in
 armes afore the holy cyte ¹of Iherusalem be wonne¹ /
 wherfore I pray you rest yourselfe this nyghte / and to
 28 morowe, & god byfore, we shall be fyght our enmyes /
 for I have delibered that I shall be noo hermyte aslonge
 as we ben togyder, but I shall helpe you wyth all my
 power. But one thyng I telle you, that never whyle
 32 I live, I shall cast noo charme ²more, for I have pro-
 mysed it god, & all the sayntes, to whom I pray to
 kepe me therfro / but I telle you *that* I love you so
 hertly, that if I sholde be dampned / yet shold I com

who throws him
from his horse;

his folk rescue
him and set him
again upon his
horse.

Reynawde wishes
to join the battle,

but Mawg s dis-
suaues him.

Mawgis vows
never to work
with charms
again.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. H. v. ² Fol. G.G. v. back.

Reynawde laments over the loss of Bayard and his good sword.

out of my hermytage for to socour you yf ye had nede' /
 'My cosin,' sayd reynawde, 'I thanke you of your good
 wyll / and I knowe well ye saye trowth, that we have
 mystre of reste / but I can not kepe myself / but I 4
 must goo to batayll¹ / Alas, that I have not bayarde, &
 flamberde my good swerde / for I shold do thys daye
 that god shold comme me thanke of it' / Ryght sory was
 reynawde that he had nother horse nor harneys for to 8
 helpe the crysten folke.

The Admiral withdraws his men into the city,

the Christians chase them, and slay many at the entrance of the city.

Thys hangyng, that reynawd & mawgys spake to-
 gyder, therle of rames, geffray of nazareth, &
 walleraven² made grete slaughter of the turkes & of 12
 the persans. And whan thadmyrall sawe this,³ he
 withdrewe his folke agen in to the cyte of Iherusalem /
 For he myghte noo lenger suffre the grete harme and
 hurte that the crysten made hym / And whan the 16
 crysten sawe that the sarrasyns were dyscomfyted /
 thei chased theym sharply / and slewe so many of
 them that none canne telle the nombre / And thenne
 therle Iaffras, that was a worthy knyghte & a wyse / 20
 he wente to the gate of saynt stevyn / and kepte him
 there wyth his folke. And whan the turkes came for
 to save theymself wythin Iherusalem / therle Iaffa
 went agenst them / and kept the passage that they 24
 myght not entre at theyr ease wythin the cyte / and
 there agen were many of theym slayne. And whan
 the admirall saw that, he was an angred for it, and
 toke a nother way to the cyte, towarde the gate foere / 28
 and it happed thenne that the turkes passed afore the
 lodges of reynawd, and by the grete prees & stampyng
 of their horses y^e lodges of reynawde was broken and
 marred / Wherof reynaude was angry. 4Thenne Rey- 32
 nawde loked abote hym / and founde noo thyng for

¹ en nulle guise, F. orig. H. v. ² conte de Jaffes. F. orig.

³ Il en fust moult dolant . . . F. orig. H. v.

⁴ Fol. G.G. vi.

to fyghte wythall / but a forke that susteyned vp
 their lodges / that was grete & stronge. And he toke
 it anone with bothe his handes, & mounted vpon a
 4 walle that was bi the waye; and as the turkes passed
 by, he layed vpon them wyth that grete staff / and
 smote them down two & two at ones, as swynes. and
 to say the trouthe / reinaude being thus vpon that
 8 broken wall, slewe moo than a hundred of theym as
 they passed bi hym. And whan mawgys sawe that
 reinawde dyde soo well / he toke his palster & cam
 vpon the wall by hym, and began to smyte wyth both
 12 his handes soo grete strokes / that they that he raught
 felle deed to the grounde. While that reinaude &
 mawgis dyde thise faytes of armes, cam there therle of
 rames & geffray of nazareth, that followed after the
 16 sarrasyns wyth all dyligence, Whiche sawe the grete
 quantyte of deed sarrasins / that reinawde & mawgys
 had slayen vpon the way by their prowes / in so
 moche that almoste men cowde ryde nomore that way,
 20 for the grete hepe of turkes that lay deed there,
 wherof the sarrasins were sore abasshed.¹ the^{ne} the
 erle of rames shewed to geffray of nazareth the grete
 slaughter that the two pilgrymes had doon,² & mer-
 24 veylled of him that helde the forke, that he was soo
 grete & soo valiaunt a man / and in like wyse that
 other that helde the palster, that was not so grete.
 ‘See,’ sayd he, ‘how the way is covered abowte theym
 28 wyth this cursed folke; I byleve *that* they ben
 felawes.’ ‘Ha, goddis,’ sayd geffray / ‘I merveylle
 what folke they are. I byleve that god hathe sente
 theym to vs for our savyng / or elles they ben over
 32 hardy fooles, seenge that they ben all naked / and fere
 not the deth.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd the erle of Rames / ‘What
 so ever they ben, they doo like worthy men. God

Reynawde seizes
 a fork, which lies
 near, and makes
 great slaughter of
 the Turks as they
 pass;

Mawgis joins him
 and fights fiercely.

The Earls marvel
 over the prowess
 of Reynawde and
 Mawgis;

and wonder at
 their strange
 appearance.

¹ que sus les mors, F. orig. H. v. back.

² sur le chemin, F. orig. H. v. back.

all mighty kepe theym from hurte, danger,¹ and from
 2 evyll combraunce / For they have well greved our
 ennyes; And I shall never be at myn ease tyll that I
 have spoken wyth theym, for to wyte what folke they 4
 be / and fro whens they come.'

Grete was the chaste that the erle of Rames,
 geffraye of Nazareth, and walleraven³ made
 after the turkes & persans, For ryght grete slaughter 8
 they made of theym or they were wythdrawen wythin
 Iberusalem / For they lefte not the chaste tyll they
 were wythin the gate foree / Whan reynawde sawe
 that all the sarrasyns were passed / he caste after theym 12
 his grete staffe / for he cowde doo no more to theym.
 And after he bethoughte hym / and descended from
 the walle / and sayd he wolde not lese his forke, and
 fet it agayn / for it sholde serve for to make his lodgys 16
 as it dyde byfore. This hangynge, the erle of Rames
 came from the chasinge agayne / and soughte the two
 pylgrymes for to speke wyth theym / and he founde
 theym where they were makynge of theyr lodges / 20
 Thenne he behelde theym well, and sayd no thyng.
 And whan he sawe that they were soo grete and
 so well shapen / pryncypally reynaud / for he wauanted
 noo thing, he lighted from his horse and toke theym 24
 by the hande, and made theym to sitte beside him /
 Whan they were set, the erle sayd to Reynawde /
 'My frende, I praye you telle me trouthe of that I
 shall aske you / By the feyth that ye owe to the 28
 temple where ye purpose to goo, telle me your names,
 and what ye be, and of whens ye come / and why
 ye goo soo pourly arrayed.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde,
 'syth that it playse you to wyte of our beyng / and 32
 of our name / I shall telle it you wyth a goode wylle /
 Now wyte it that I am called reynawde of mount-

The Earl of Rames
 advances towards
 the Pilgrims,

and takes them
 by the hand;

he asks Reynawde
 who he is,
 and why he is
 thus poorly clad.

¹ dargeur. *orig.* ² Fol. G.G. vi. back.
³ et le conte de Jaffes, F. *orig.* H. vi.

alban, but charlemagn hathe casted me therfrom wrong-
 fully. the duke aymon is mi fader, & am now com-
 in to ¹the holy londe for to serve our lorde agenste his
 4 enmyes, for thus hathe commaunded me doo, Charle-
 magne, my soverayn lorde / whan I made peas wyth
 hym. And that worse is, I muste nedes come thus
 pourly arrayed, as ye see, beggyng my brede where
 8 soo ever I goo or come / where agenst I wolde never
 goo for to have peas' / Whan the erle of Rames
 vnderstode reynawde, he was gladd of hym / and
 heved vp his handes toward hevyn / ²and thanked
 12 god² / and after sayd / 'O, noble knyghte Reynawde
 of mountalban, the beste knyghte of the worlde, take
 here my homage / For I gyve myselfe vnto you, and
 all my goodes' / And whan reynawde sawe this, he
 16 sayd to the erle of rames, 'Stande vp / for ye prouffer
 me owterage' / 'By god,' sayd the erle, 'I shall never
 aryse tyll ye have graunted me a thyng.' 'Syre,'
 sayd reynawd, 'I graunte it you wyth a goode wyll,
 20 and wyth gode herte' / 'Gramerey,' sayd the erle /
 and thenne he stode vp and sayd to reynawde, 'Is
 it trouth that ye have peas wyth the grete kyng
 charlemagne / Alas, where ben your brethern, the
 24 worthy knyghtes / and mawgys your cosyn, in whome
 ye have soo grete truste, and your goode horse
 bayarde?' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde, 'wyte that I had
 peas wyth the kyng Charlemagne of the werre that so
 28 longe hathe lasted, by suche maner as I shal tel you /
 that it is, that I muste come here in suche clothyng as
 ye see vpon me. and here is mawgys my cosyn, that
 is comen heder wyth hys free wyll / for he is not
 32 constrayned therto / for the kyng charlemagn weneth
 he be deed longe a go, and my brethern ben abyden
 wyth my wyffe & my children, For the kyng hathe
 retourned all our livelode vnto them agayne' / And

Reynawde relates
 to him his
 history.

The Earl offers
 homage to Rey-
 nawde,

and enquires after
 his brethern and
 Mawgis.

Reynawde tells of
 the hard con-
 ditions imposed
 on him by Charle-
 magne.

¹ Fol. G.G. vii.

²⁻² omitted. F. orig.

The Earl rejoices
over the coming
of Reynawde,

as he may save
King Thomas.

whan the erle vnderstode the trouthe of all, he was ryght gladde of it / soo that he beganne to crye wyth¹ a highe voyce, ‘Ha, duke Reynawde of mountalban / how gretely be you welcome here to vs / as the moost⁴ valiaunte knyghte of the worlde / blessed be the good lorde that hathe conduytte you hether / And I praye you for god that ye receyve my homage / so shall ye save the worshyp of the kyng² thomas, that is now prysoner there wythin the cyte² / for and ye be our capytayne and our hede / I put noo doubt but we shall soone take Iherusalem, And thus shall the kyng³ Thomas be delivered³ oute of the handes of the false sarrasyns³’³ /

There came all the barons of Surry, that were full gladde of the comynge of reynawde of mountalban, to whome they made grete reverence, and feested¹⁶ hym ryght highly. And shortly to speke, they all prayed hym to be theyr lorde / and hede captayne / and that he wolde guyde theym as therle of Rames had doon afore / And whan reynawde sawe that all²⁰ the barons of Surry desyred & prayed hym so sore for to receyve theyr homages, he sayd vnto theym / ‘Lordes, syth that it playseth you for to doo me this grete honour / I take it, sauff alwaye the ryght of²⁴ kyng² Thomas / whyche is your soverayne lorde.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd the barons, ‘we wyll have it thus’ / And thenne he receyved theyr homages / and whan he had receyved theym / the erle Rames kneled byfore hym,²⁸ and sayd, ‘Syr, I wylle that ye gyve me now that thyng² that ye have graunted me.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd Reynawde, ‘say what it is / and ye shall have it.’ ‘Syr,’ sayd therle of rames, ‘it is that ye wylle woushesauff³²

Reynawde accepts
the proffered
homage of the
Barons of Surrey.

¹ Fol. G.G. vii. back.

² a ses felons mescreans le quel Il ont prins despuis que sommes cy-devant, F. orig. H. vii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

to be lodged in my pavylyon, and that ye spende none other good but myn / And yf ye wylle gyve any thyng / I shall deliver it to you / and I shall gyve
 4 you six of my knyghtes for to serve you¹ / ‘Good erle of rames / gramerey of the worshyp *that* ye doo to me² / thenne the ³erle toke Reynawde by the hande, and broughte hym in to his pavylion / and made hym
 8 to be served as his soverayne lorde. And whan all the barons had conveyed Reynawde to the pavylion of the erle of Rames, they toke leve of hym, and wente agayne in to theyr pavylyons / and thanked god that
 12 he had sente theym suche a knyghte⁴ and soo valiaunte a man to be theyr capytayne and theyr lorde⁴ / And thenne, whan the erle of rames sawe that all the barons were goon to theyr pavylyons, he made to be
 16 broughte there many good horses & fayr palfrays, and ryche raymentes of dyverse colours, furred wyth ryche fures, and all maner of good harneys / for the werre ; curaces, and ryche helmes / and noble swerdes / and
 20 grete plente of plate, bothe of fyne golde & of sylver ; and all thys he presented to reynawde / But he wolde take noo thyng but onely a complete harneys for his body / and a swerde that he chose there amonge all,
 24 and an horse. And all the remenaunte he made to be dealed to the poure knyghtes⁵ that had mystre of it⁵ / and whan the erle of rames sawe that Reynawde had taken but one horse, one harneys, & one swerde / he
 28 sayd vnto him / ‘ Syre, for god take on you a nother raymente / for ye wote well it apperteyneth not to suche a man as ye be for to goo clothed as ye doo.’
 ‘ Syre,’ sayd reynawde / ‘ pardonne me & it please
 32 you / for I shall never were none other rayment but

The Earl leads Reynawde to his tent, and serves him honourably ;

he orders horses and rich garments to be brought to him.

Reynawde only takes a set of armour and a horse, the rest he divides between the poor knights.

¹ de tout leur pouvoir, F. orig. H. vii.

² de si beaux dons car Il ne sont mye a refuser, F. orig. H. vii.

³ Fol. G. d. viii. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig. H. vii.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. H. vii. back.

this that I have now on / tyll *that* I have kyssed the
 holy sepulchre wherin god was put after that he was
 broughte down from the crosse' / 'Syre,' sayd thenne
 the erle, 'doo as ye wyll' / And thenne he wente 4
 to mawgys, & sayd to hym, 'I praye you put awaye
 this cap & this hode / and take other raymentes' /
 'Syre,' sayd mawgys thenne, 'I praye you be not
 dysplayd / yf I fulfyll not your desyre at this time, 8
 for I tell you that I have promysed¹ that I shal were
 no ²other clothe as longe as I live, ³but suche as the
 same is'³ / Thenne whan the erle sawe that Reynawde
 nor mawgys wolde not take none other raymentes for 12
 noo thyng that he cowde saye vnto theym, he was
 sory for it. And thenne he made the tables redy for
 to goo to souper / And whan they had souped, the
 erle Rames called walleraven of ffayet, and geffray of 16
 nazareth⁴ / and sayd to theym, 'Now thynke for to doo
 well, syth that god hathe sente to vs suche socour'⁵ /
 And whan the barons herde the erle speke thus / they
 answerde, 'we shall doo our beste, by the grace of 20
 god' / And thenne every man wente to his pavyllion,
 and made grete plente of torches to be fyred, soo that
 it was merveilles of the light that was in the oost /
 and every man began to daunce & disporte theymselfe 24
 abowte theyr tentes & pavyllions a longe while, ⁶for
 ioye of the comynge of reynawde⁶ / And whan the
 turkes that kept the towre of davyd saw the grete
 light that was in the oost of the crysten / thei were 28
 all merveyllid of it. Thenne some of them went &
 shewed it to theyr mayster & lorde / And whan thad-

Mawgis refuses
 to accept rich
 clothing from the
 Earl.

The Christians
 light their torches
 and dance,

rejoicing over the
 arrival of Rey-
 nawde.

¹ a nostre seigneur, F. orig. H. vii. back.

² Fol. G.G. viii. back. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. H. vii. back.

⁴ et le conte Jaffez, F. orig. H. vii. back.

⁵ que de regnault et de maugis. Et me semble que en
 lonneur de dieu nous devons faire ceste nyxt chescun en sa
 texte grant lumiere de sierges en louaut dieu du secours *qu'il*
nous a envoye. F. orig. H. vii. back.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted, F. orig. H. viii.

myrall herde the tidynges / he began to erye hie, &
 said / 'O machomet, what eileth now that vnhappy
 folke that make soo grete feest / I byleve that they
 4 ben as the swāne is whan he shall deye, for I am sure
 they shall one of thise dayes be all slayn / and ther-
 fore thei make so grete ioye.' And whan barbas the
 admyrall had sayd this, he sware by machomet, afore
 8 all his barons, that he shold make an yssue on the
 morowe for to hewe all the cristeyn in peeces. 'Syr,'
 sayd an olde paynim / 'beware your flesshe well of a
 grete kerle that is there newe come amonge theym, the
 12 whiche bereth a grete forke in his hande / For yf he
 hit you, ye are but deed. I am well sure that all they
 of thoost make this ioy for *that* lorden' / 'I know
 hym not,' said thadmyrall to y^e panym, ¹ but and I
 16 can hit hym wyth my branke of stele / I shall make
 hym leve his grete hede behynde hym for a pledge
²tylle he cometh agen² / for he is naked, and therefore
 he maye not endure agenste me.'

The Admiral
 swears to subdue
 the Christians on
 the morrow.

20 **W**han the kynge Thomas, that was there prysoner,
 sawe the grete feest & the ioye that the
 crysten made, he wyste not what he sholde thynke /
 but sayd to hymselfe / 'Ha, goddys, what have now
 24 my folke that they make suche a noyse / and suche a
 sporte / Alas, doo they not remembre me / I byleve
 better ye than nay, for the feest that they make now is
 for somewhat.' Wyte it that they of Rames & of
 28 Iapphes / and of all the countrey aboute Iherusalem,
 whan thei sawe the grete lighte, they wende that the
 eyte had be sette a fyre; and some were sore a ferde
 leest thoost had a doo. Thus was all the countrey
 32 abasshed / but they that were in the oost cared but
 lityll for it / And whan they had sported theymselfe
 ynough, they ordened the watche / and after went to
 reste. And whan the daye was come, the barons rose

King Thomas
 marvels over the
 mirth of his host;

he grieves lest his
 men should have
 forgotten him.

¹ Fol. H.H. i.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. H. viii.

The Barons rise early next day and salute Reynawde as their captain.

The Admiral issues forth from the city.

Reynawde and Mawgis assemble their folk together, and exhort them to fight valiantly.

The Admiral advances towards the Christian host.

and wente to the pavyllion of reynawde / whiche was vp & redy. and they salved hym reverently / and after sayd vnto hym thus / ‘Syre, what thynke ye that we must doo? shall we assaylle the cyte or noo’ / 4
 ‘Lordes,’ sayd the duke reynawde / ‘me semeth that it were goode for to gyve to it a sawte, For we have grete avantage a fore hande, for he *that* shall deye in the sawtyng of the holy cyte, he shall be saved wythout 8
 doubte.’ whyles that the barons devysed thus togyder for to gyve a sawte to the cyte / the admyrall of perce made to open the gate foree, and yssued oute of the towne wyth ten thousande fyghtyng men well armed / 12
 And whan reynawd & the barons of surry knewe it, they ranne to theyr harnais / Reinawde was armed incontynente / and toke his helme & his swerde, and lighted vpon his horse that therle of Rames had given 16
 him. And whan reynawde was on horsbacke / mawgys armed hym also / and mouzted on horsbacke, and began to crye, ‘Barons of surry, be not dysmayed in noo wise / for I promyse god I shall never retourne 20
 to be hermyte, yf the turkes be not dyscomfyted & overthrowen’ / And after he had said soo, he wente to geffraye of nazareth, & sayd to hym / ‘Baron, kepe you by reynawde; for yf all thother knyghtes in the 24
 feliship were suche as ye be, barbas sholde be dyscomfyted or none.’ and whan all the barons were all armed & well on horsbacke / thei ordeyned theyr bataylles as well as they cowde. And the^{me} came 28
 thadmyrall barbas, that smote in to thoost of the cristen. The fyrste bataylle of the sarrasyns was conduytted by a kynge / that had to name margarys, that was lorde of the towre of Talles, whiche was 32
 ryght cruell, and bare in his armes a dragon pyctured wyth an horryble figure.

¹ Fol. H.H. i. back.

Whan the kynge margarys sawe it was tyme to
 smyte vpon the crysten / he spored his horse
 wyth his spores & ranne agenst reynawde / And whan
 4 reynawde saw him come / he sayd to therle of rames,
 'here cometh one to seke his dethe wyth grete hast;
 ye have don me grete honour, but this kynge shall
 have dyshonour for your love at the first' / And whan
 8 reynawd had sayd this / he spored his horse / and
 ranne agenst margarys so harde that nother shelde nor
 quyras coude not save hym, but he shoved his spere
 thurgh the breste & overthrewe sterke deed to the
 12 grounde / and whan reynawde had gyven that grete
 stroke, he sayd, 'Goo thy waye to helle, the devylle
 spede the, and bere felishyp to thy predecessours *that*
 went there afore the!' and after, he put hande to the
 16 swerde, & smote another sarrasyn¹ soo harde thurgh the
 helme that he clove him to the teeth / and forth withal
 he raughte a nother² vnder the bavere soo that he made
 his hede to flee fro the sholders / And whan he had
 20 slayn thise thre, he cried, 'moutalban / ³vpon thise
 paynyns!'³ And whan mawgis herde him / he put him-
 self amonge the turkes soo courageusly / that the fyrste
 that he encountred he sent hym down in to helle, and
 24 *thenne* toke his swerde in his hande & dyde merveylles
 of armes⁴ / soo *that* he slewe soo many turkes that
 reynaude & the barons merveylled gretly. *thenne* sayd
 reynaude to therle of rames, 'what saye you by my
 28 cosin mawgys / sawe you ever soo good an hermyte' /
 'By my soule,' sayd therle, 'he is to be comended /
 blessed be the wombe that bare him, & thour that ye
 ben come in to this londe / for now I am wel sure that
 32 Iherusalem shall be recovered, and the kynge Thomas
 deliverde oute of prison, ³wyth the grace of god'³ /

Reynawde slays
King Margary;

he cries on
'Moutalban,'
and fights the
pagans bravely.

Earl Rames com-
mends the courage
of Mawgis;

¹ sarrasyns, *orig.*

² Fol. II, H. ii.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. I. i.

⁴ et lors commença a frapper a destre et a fenestre, F. orig. I. i.

Whan therle of rames had sayd this to reynawd / he
 spored his horse wyth the spores, & smote a turke suche
 a stroke that he made thyren of his spere to apere at the
 backe of hym, that felle deede to therth / and after he 4
 toke his swerde in his hande, & began to crie ‘ rames ’
 as hie as he cowde, sayeng, ‘ Barons, smyte now a goode,
 for the persans shall be now vturli discomfyted / yf
 god kepe the valiaunt reynaude of mowntalban & his 8
 valiaunt cosin mawgys / Now is thour come that the
 traytour barbas shall fynysse his life, that thus betrayed
 the holy eyte of Iherusalem by his false wytte.’ The^{ne}
 dyde sette on the barons of the londe, whiche began to 12
 make merueylles of armes agenst the sarrasins / Who
 had seen that tyme reynawde & mawgys, how they
 made waye to theym that cam after theym, he wold
 have merueylled gretly / For I promyse you none durste 16
 abyde afore them, were he never so hardy or valiaunt,
 but he was slayn of theym. After reynawde & mawgys
 was therle of rames, geffraye of nazareth, & walleron of
 fayete¹ wyth their ²folke, and they made merueylles of 20
 armes agenst their enmyes. and whan the sarrasins
 sawe that thei cowde not abide the grete *dommage* of
³that the cristen³ bare to them / they put theymself to
 flight towarde the eyte / ⁴ 24

he calls on his
 Barons to smite
 the Saracens
 hardly.

The Saracens fly
 towards the city
 discomfited.

Whan thadmyrall barbas saw that his folke were
 discomfyted, he was angry / for it, and sayd /
 ‘ hoursons ! why do ye flee thus away / knowe ye not
 that I am your lorde, that shall defende you agenst 28
 this vnhappy cristens / Where is margarys becom that
 I see hym not ? ’ ‘ sire,’ sayd one of the sarrasins, ‘ he
 is deed at the first iousting that he made ’ / and whan
 thadmyrall herde this, he wende to have gon out of his 32

The Admiral
 hears of the death
 of King Margary,

¹ et le conte de Jaffes, F. orig. ² Fol. H.H. ii. back.

³ que regnault et maugis, F. orig. I. i. back.

⁴ pour avoir garison. Et disoient que a mahomet ne
 pleut quilz actendissent le grant villain. Car il les mectoit
 tous a mort, F. orig. I. i. back.

wyt, and sayd, 'who is that hath borne me soo grete
 harme as to slee the noble kyng margarys / Is it not
 the grete kerle with the forke' / 'ye, sir,' sayd his
 4 folke / 'for he is called the best knyghte of the worlde /
 and also he hath brought this daye to deth many of
 your men with his handes' / Moche sori was thad-
 myrall for the dethe of margaris, and swore the god
 8 mahom that he shold perse the hert in his bely / And
 whan he had made this othe, he gaaf the spores to the
 horse, & put himselfe to the medle / and the first he
 recountred was walleron of faiete, to whom he gaff
 12 suche a stroke through the sheekle that he made his
 spere hede to apere oute at the backe of hym, & slewe
 him deed to therth. And whan thadmyrall had gyven
 that stroke, he put hande to his swerde & shoved him
 16 amonge the thyckest / crieng 'perce' as hie as he
 cowde / and sayd, 'barons! smyte vpon this vnhappy
 cristen, for now shall they be discomfyted.' And
 whan therle Iaffas & geffray of nazareth sawe *that* thad-
 20 myralle fared soo fowle wyth the crystens / they put
 theym in to the prees amonge the sarrasins, and there
 was grete slaughter made of bothe partyes; but at the
 laste the crystens had ben shredly handled yf Rey-
 24 naude and mawgis¹ had not come lightly there / Rey-
 naude, that sawe this harde batayll, shoved himself
 among the thickest, as a wolfe amonge a flokke of
 shepe, and smote a persante that was cosin to thad-
 28 myrall / that had to name Orrende, & gaffe him suche
 a stroke wyth his swerde / that he made his hede to
 flee well a spere lengthe from his body, wyth helme &
 all / And after he smote a nother that was newew to
 32 malbon / soo that he slew both horse & man² with one
 stroke² / To say the trowth, reynaude made there soo
 grete merveylles of armes, that all the paynyms were
 sore abashed / for he had his shelde caste behynde

and vows venge-
 ance against
 Reynawde;

he makes great
 havoc among the
 Christians.

Reynawde and
 Mawgis socour
 their folk,
 and slay great
 numbers of the
 enemy.

¹ Fol. H.H. iii.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig. I. ii.

his backe, & helde the rayne of his horse aboute his
 arme, & helde his swerde wyth bothe his handes, and
 habandonned hys body, smityng mervyllous strokes
 on ether side vpon y^e sarrasyns, soo that he smote noo 4
 stroke but he slewe ¹a turke or ¹a paynym / And whan
 thadmyralle sawe the grete greeff *that* reynawd bare to
 his folke, he sware his god appolin / he sholde never
 ete mete tyll he had slayn the grete vylayne / 'Syre,' 8
 sayd the^{me} the kyng alebrondy to him, 'I pray you
 leve this enterprise, for I telle you for very certeyn
 that yf ye goo afore him he shall kille you wyth one
 stroke.' The^{me} sayd thadmyrall to hym / 'yf I had 12
 now a good guysarne in my hande, he sholde as lityll
 endure myn efforte as shold a boye / For & I brynge
 hym not down / I shall never requyre to bere any
 armes more, nor to ryde vpon ony horse more' / 16

The Admiral
 swears to conquer
 Reynawde when
 they meet.

Moche cruell & harde was the medlinge² / mawgis
 was there that made grete occysion fro thone
 side & fro thother. And whan reynawd saw mawgis
 that dyde so well, he was glad; and so smote he a turke 20
 vpon his helme suche a stroke / that he cloved his hede
 in two peeces / and soo he smote a nother at the sides
 so that he cleved all his rybbes / and cut all togyder a
 sonder his body / and after this he smote a ³nother soo 24
 that he hewed his hede clene of, and one of his armes;
 and whan he had slayn thise thre wyth one enpraynt,
 he cried, 'mouⁿtalban,' sayeng, 'smyte, barons / for the
 sarrasins, both turkes & persans, ben deed & over- 28
 throwen / and thynke to avenge your lord thomas /
 whiche is soo excellent a kyng.' And whan thad-
 myrall barbas herde erie 'mouⁿtalban' / this worde
 abassed hym more than ony other thyng / for he 32
 knew well the^{me} that he that his men called 'the grete

The Christians
 fight so valiauntly
 that no men can
 withstand them.

The Admiral
 hears the cry of
 'Montalban,'
 and knows who
 fights against
 him;

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. L. ii.

² dune part et daultre, F. orig. I. ii.

³ Fol. H.H. iii. back.

earle ¹wyth the forke¹ was the valiaunt reynawd of
 mowntalban / of whome he had herde speke of many
 tymes afore that / and that he was the best knyght of
 4 all the worlde / and whan he knew this / he wolde full
 fayn have be agen in perce; and the^{ne} he toke his
 waye anone towarde the eyte as a man discomfyted ¹&
 overthrowen¹ / and drewe to the gate foere for to have
 8 gon in to it² / but the valiaunt erle of rames pursued
 hym so nygh that he suffred hym not goo at his wyll /
 And whan thadmyrall sawe that he was soo sore pur-
 sued / he was aferde to be take / and soo smote his
 12 horse wyth his spores, & gate into the eyte wyth grete
 payn, and lefte all his folke behynde, ¹& saved himself;¹
 but the moste parte of his men were there slayn³ / And
 whan reynawde wyst that thadmyrall of perce was soo
 16 scaped / he was ryght sory for it; and the^{ne} he loked
 abowte him, & sawe there a grete peece of tymbre that
 had XV fote of lengthe / he lighted down a fote and
 toke the balke and trussed it vp afore hym vpon his
 20 horse necke, as lightly as it had be som peece of welowe.
 Thenne he sayd to them that had victory as wel as he,
 ‘Lordes, folow me yf it playse you.’ ‘wyth a good
 wyll,’ sayd the barons / ‘for we shall never leve you
 24 nother for deth nor for liffe.’

he retires towards
the city;

but is pursued by
Earl Rames;

he regains the
city, but many of
his folk are slain.

Reynawde calls
on the Barons to
follow him:

Now wyll I telle you why Reynawd dyde take
 the balke a foresayd / Ye oughte to wyte / that
 Reynawd ⁴bethought well that thadmyrall barbas sholde
 28 not make the gate to be shet after hym / for love his
 folke shold com in that were out, and therefore bare
 reynaude the grete balke or beme, to the ende that yf
 he founde the gate open, he sholde put it vnder the

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² pour soy garentir de regnault, F. orig. I. ii.

³ Car regnault et mangis et le conte de rames et geoffroy de nazareh et le conte de Jaffes en tirent si grant destruction que peu eschappa, F. orig. I. ii. back.

⁴ Fol. H. H. iv.

porte colisse, that it sholde not be shet lightly agen. And after he had bethought himself therof, he went on his waye ¹wyth the cristens¹ as fast as they cowde renne toward the gate ²of Iherusalem² / where thadmyralle ⁴ had saved hymself / and whan he came there, he sawe the gate open, wherof he was glad; soo toke he thenne his beme, & put it vnder the port colisse / soo that it myght not be lete down / nor the gate cowde not be ⁸ shet nother. But ye maye well knowe that reynawd dyde not this wythout grete traveylle, for there was so many bodyes both quyeke & deed in his waye / that he myght not well helpe hymself; but one thyng ¹² helped hym well; for whan the sarrasins sawe hym, they were soo ferde of hym that they made hym waye / and fled all afore hym.

Whan the noble knyght³ reynaude sawe that the ¹⁶ porte colisse was well faste vpon the beme that he had brought there, wythout ony taryeng he put hande to his swerde and put himselfe wythin Iherusalem. And whan he was in, he began to crye as hie as he ²⁰ myght / ¹mountalban, ²mountalban! the cyte is wonne² / and made there soo moche of armes that mawgys, the erle of Rames / ²and many other barons² gate in by fyne force / And whan the sarrasins sawe that the crystens ²⁴ were wythin the cyte / they putte themself so to flighte, and hydde theym wythin the houses / where as they myght, for to save theyr lives / and alwayes reynaude was at the gate for to kepe thentre / They that were ²⁸ vpon the grete towre ⁴of davyd,⁴ cryed fast to the other sarrasins that they sholde shet the gate / sayenge that yf the grete lorden entred ⁵wythin they sholde be all lost / And whan reynawde sawe that a grete parte of ³² the cristens were wythin Iherusalem, he sayd to maw-

he takes a large beam and lays it under the port-cullis, so the gate of the city cannot be shut;

he enters Jerusalem, followed by the Barons and Mawgis.

The Saracens hide themselves through fear.

¹⁻¹ luy et tous les aultre barons, F. orig.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ knyght, orig.

^{4 4} du portal, F. orig. l. iii.

⁵ Fol. H.H. iv. back.

gis / 'Cosyn, kepe well this passage, and I shall goo at
 a nother gate for to make it open' / 'Cosyn,'¹ sayd
 mawgis, 'goo your waye hardely / and doubte noo
 4 thyng / I shall well kepe this path.' Thenne departed
 reynaude, acompanyed wyth many valiaunt cristens,
 and went vnto a nother gate, whiche he founde wel
 garnysshed wyth panyms; but reynawd, thurgh his
 8 prowes, put them anone to flighte, and gate the gate
 open. Thus as ye here was doon / for all y^e sarrasins
 lost their lives / and was recovered agen the cyte of
 Iherusalem / thurgh the grete prowes of the noble
 12 Reynawde of mountalban / And whan thadmyrall sawe
 this / he wende to have wexen mad all quycke, and
 fared as he had be oute of his wytte, and cursed his
 goddis mahomet² & appolin,² and pulled his heres of his
 16 berde,² and rente all his raimentes,² and³ / after he sayd /
 'By apollo, sovereyn god, yf thomas helpe me not to
 save my life / I shal make him to be slayn in con-
 tynent.' and thenne he sent for the kyng thomas, &
 20 sayd vnto hym, 'Kynge thomas, ye must chuse of two
 thynges thone / that is, that ye must save my liff that
 I maye go to perce agen wyth two⁴ of my men in my
 felishyp, or elles ye to be now cast oute of this wyn-
 24 dows down' / Thenne sayd the kyng thomas / 'and
 playse you, ye shall have pacyence that I may speke
 wyth my folke.' 'goo on,' sayd thadmyrall, 'to theym
 at this wyndow, For neo ferder ye shall not goo, and
 28 deliver you lightly' / Thenne wente the kyng thomas
 to the wyndowes, and sawe reynawde of mountalban
 & mawgys come, that cam all the formest for to sawte
 the towre of davyd / where he was prysoner to the
 32 admyrall / And whan he sawe reynawde & mawgis
 the formest of all, he knewe them⁵ not / and loked

Reynawde depart
 for another gate
 of the city which
 he gains.

The Admyrall
 curses his evil
 fate,

and vows to take
 revenge on King
 Thomas;

he tells the King
 that unless he
 will protect him,
 he shall be thrown
 from the wyndowes
 of the tower.

¹ Sire, F. orig. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig. I. iii.

³ Quant Il eut asses demene son dueil Il dist, F. orig. I. iii.

⁴ troisesme, F. orig. ⁵ Fol. H.H. v.

ferder / and sawe therle of Rames behynde theym,
 whiche he knewe not well / and the^me he aspyed
 geffraye of nazareth,¹ wherof he was glad whan he saw
 hym, and the^me he began to erie / ²‘Lorde of naza- 4
 reth,² loke vp to your kynge that is here prisoner ; thad-
 myrall barbas sendeth you worde, that yf ye lete hym
 not goo sauff in to his countree & royaume of perce
 wyth two of his men with him / he shall cast me now 8
 doun oute of this wyndowes’ / The^me answerde to
 hym therle of rames / ‘ha, good kyng, god save you /
 ye wote well that a good man ought not to make ony
 lie. It is trouthe *that* yesterday we made our governer 12
 & maister of that lord that ye see here afore vs / whiche
 is the best knyght of the worlde, and to him ye must
 showe your nede, for wythoute hym / we maye noo
 thyng.’ And whan the kyng thomas vnderstode this 16
 tidynge, he wexed almost out of his wyt for sorow /
 by cause he wende none other but he shold dey an
 evyll deth. the^me sayd he to the erle of rames in
 grete angre, ‘Ha, erle of rames / have ye betrayed me 20
 soo / that ye have made a nother lorde than me.’
 ‘Syr,’ sayd therle to hym agen, ‘doubte noo thyng,
 for we have doon soo / your right & honoure is alway
 saved in this behalve ; nor ye shall not lese noo thyng 24
 of your owne / for the good knyght hath ynoughe in
 fraunce, and ye must knowe that he hathe taken this
 cyte, he & his felawe ; and take noo suspicion of him,
 nor of vs / for I am sure he shall doo evyn as ye wylle 28
 yourself / for he is here for none other cause but for
 to deliver you / for assone as he shall have visite the
 holy sepulere of our lorde, he shall goo agen to fraunce.’
 The^me sayd the kyng thomas / ‘lordes, how is the 32
 knight named?’ ‘Syr,’ sayd therle of rames, ‘he is
 called Reynaude of mountalban / the sone of the duke

Thomas appeals
to Geoffrey of
Nazareth, who
is within the
city;

he fears he will
perish when he
hears of a strange
knight in com-
mand of his folk.

Earl Rames
assures him of
Reynaude's
fidelity.

He tells him who
Reynaude is,

¹ et le conte Jaffes, F. orig. I. iii. back.

²⁻² Seigneurs, F. orig.

aymon, and the beste knyghte of the worlde. For he
 is suche a knyghte that the grete kyng Charlemagn
 myght never greve him / and yet ¹have they mayn-
 4 tened the werre XV.² yeres ³& more,³ thone agenst
 thother / and soo hath he doon soo many noble & grete
 faytes of armes duryng that werre, that the renomnee
 therof is flouen over alle the worlde' / 'Erle of rames,'
 8 sayd the kyng / 'I pray you that ye will tell him in my
 behalve, thys that I have said ³to geffray of nazareth.'³
 'sire,' said therle, 'with right good wylle I shall doo
 soo.' And thenne he went to reynawde, and shewed to
 12 him all that the kyng had sayd. 'lordes,' sayd reynawde,
 'we shall not doo soo / but lete vs sawte the
 towre / for at the worst fall / we shall alwayes well
 have that apoyntment that thadmyrall asketh / And
 16 soo I telle you, yf we sawte well / the towre shall be
 lightly wonne by force of armes / and we shall deliver
 the kyng thomas at our owne wylle / and soo shall we
 slee barbas that thurgh treyson toke the cyte.' 'sire,'
 20 sayd therle rames / 'we shall doo your commaunde-
 ment / doubte not of it.'⁴ Thenne commaunded reynawde
 that the tower sholde be sawted of all sides, and
 made ⁵grete plente⁶ of ⁵ladders to be righted agenst it,
 24 and he hymselfe began first to clime vp, with his shelde
 for to cover him with; and after hym went mawgys,
 & thenne therle of rames / and after them geffray of
 nazareth, & well thirty⁷ knyghtes more; ⁸and men with
 28 crosbowes & other archers abode byneth for to shote
 vpwarde / where they sawe the sarrasins loke out⁸ / and
 whan thadmyrall sawe reynawde that wold have com

and how even
 Charlemagne
 could not conquer
 him.

King Thomas
 sends his appeal
 to Reynawde
 forthwith.

Reynawde com-
 mands the tower
 to be assaulted,

and is the first
 to mount the
 ladders.

¹ Fol. H.H. v. back. ² .XVII., F. orig. I. iii. back.

³⁻³ omitted, F. orig. I. iii. back.

⁴ Moult estoit regnault preudomme car Il ne voloit point de mauvais plait . . . F. orig. I. iv.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig. ⁶ plente, *orig.*

⁷ .XX., F. orig. I. iv.

⁸⁻⁸ Le viel conte de Jaffes demoura au bas avecques les archiers et arbalestiers, F. orig. I. iv.

The Admiral
fears for his
safety;

he seizes King
Thomas,

and vows to cast
him from the
tower unless Rey-
nawde will grant
him a truce.

The Barons beg
Reynawde to save
their king.

Reynawde com-
mands the
Admiral to leave
King Thomas,
and then he shall
be allowed to
return into Persia.

in to the towre, he was sore a ferde / soo wüst he not
what he sholde doo, but razne to the kyng thomas &
caught hym by the neck, & sayd to hym / 'By apollo,
thou & I shall lepe both atones oute of this wyndowe' / 4
'sire,' sayd the kyng / 'kyll not yourself nor me also /
for I shall make the sawte to ceasse' / 'I wyll well that
ye doo soo,' sayd thadmyrall / 'but ye shall com with
me' / Soo toke him by the [neck¹] & had him to the 8
wyndow, and sayd all hie, 'Reynawd of mountalban, I
shall angre you / For I shall cas²te the kyng thomas
doun yf ye pardonne me not / and I shall slee myself
wyth him, for I maye well deye after suche a kinge' / 12
And whan the duke reynawde sawe that the kyng
thomas hyng thus / the hede douzwarde, ³all redy for
to fall³ / he had grete pite of hym, and sayd to him-
selfe / 'Ha, good lorde, what shall I doo / for if I leve 16
the sawte it shall be grete shame / for the towre is
almost taken / and of the other parte it shall be grete
mysshap yf the good kyng thomas take dethe for it.'
Thus, as reynawd was vpon the ladder thynkyng what 20
he myght best doo / all the barons of the londe began
to crye to reynawde, 'swete sir, for god suffre not that
our kyng lese his liff⁴ / soo it were grete shame to vs &
to you also.' 'Lordes,' sayd reynawde, 'by the feyth 24
that I owe to my bredern & to my cousin mawgis, I
wolde not that the kyng sholde take deth for me' /
and whan he had sayd so / he cam doun fro the ladder,
and after cryed to thadmyrall / 'Leve the kyng thomas 28
& doo hym no harme / for ye shall be delivered bi
suehe a covenannt that ye and your two⁵ men shall goo
on fote in to perce, & ye shall leve here all your goodes.'
'By mahom,' sayd thadmyrall, 'I wyll not doo soo / 32
but shall ride on horsbacke, I & my ii⁵ men / and so

¹ Jambes, F. orig. I. iv. Neck in Copland Ed.

² Fol. H.H. vi. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ si honteusement. F. orig. I. iv. back.

⁵ troys, F. orig. I. iv. back.

shall ye gyve me saufeconduyt vpon your feyth, and yf
 ye wylle not doo thus, I shall lete fall down the kyng
 thomas.' 'Admyrall,' sayd reynaude, 'that ye aske, I
 4 graunt it to you vpon my feyth / for ye have wyth
 you suche a pledge that ye shall not be touched at this
 tyme for me.' thadmyrall was ryght glad whan he
 herde reynaude speke thus; so drew he vp the kyng
 8 thomas agen, & sayd to hym, 'kyng thomas, ye shall
 goo quyte fro me;' and theñe he went down wyth
 the kyng / and opened the gate / and wente oute, he
 & his two¹ men / There was made grete ioye bitwene
 12 the king thomas and Reynawde, And after, of all the
 other barons of ²surre / and the grete thanks that the
 kyng dyde to reynaude & to mawgis are not for to be
 named; and the langage that was bytwene them are
 16 to longe to be recounted. After this, thadmyrall toke
 his saufeconduyt & went his waye towarde perec. Here
 of hym is made none other mencyon. and after he was
 goon / the kyng thomas, reynaude, & wyth all thothre
 20 barons went togyder in to the towre / and whan they
 were com vp / the kyng thomas kneled afore rey-
 naude. 'sire,' sayd reynaude, 'ye ought not to doo
 soo.' 'Yes, verely,' sayd the kyng / and whan rey-
 24 naude sawe that / he wexed red for shame, & toke vp
 the kyng³ / and theñe the kyng colled him & sayd,
 'Blessed be our lorde, that brought you in this londe,
 For ye have socoured Iherusalem the holy cyte / ⁴&
 28 brought myselfe out of the sarrasins handes⁴ / Now tell
 me, & playse you, yf ye have made peas wyth charle-
 magn the grete kyng of fraunce / that hath doon you
 soo grete hinderauce.' 'sire,' sayd reynaude, 'ye /
 32 and by cause of the peas I am com here / beggyng my
 bred, & pourli arayed⁵ / and whan the king thomas

King Thomas and
 Reynawde meet
 joyfully after the
 departure of the
 Admiral.

King Thomas
 professes his
 gratitude towards
 Reynawde,

¹ troys, F. orig. I. iv. back.

² Fol. H. H. vi. back. ³ par la main . . . F. orig. I. iv. back.

⁴ et moy oste de prison, F. orig. I. iv. back.

⁵ comme voyez, F. orig. I. v.

and vows to
reward him for
his services.

herde him speke, he had grete pyte of hym / and sware
by the holy sepulcre that he sholde araye hym honour-
ably, as to hym apperteyneth, for to retourne ¹in to
fraunce¹ / after that the kyng had said this worde, they ⁴
cam down fro the towre of davyd for to go to the holy
sepulcre. And ye oughte to wyte that they made grete
feest thurgh the cyte of that was soo be-fall /
Therme went they all to the holy sepulcre / for to ⁸
yelde thankes to our lorde of the cyte, that was re-
covered fro thandes of the sarrasins.² And whan all
this was doon, the barons of surre toke leve of the kyng,
of reynaude, & of mawgis / and after went every man ¹²
to his place in theyr countrey / And the kyng toke
reynaude & mawgis / and broughte them to his palays /
where he fested them a hundred dayes honourably.
³And this hangyng, he shewed theym all the countrey ¹⁶
¹about Iherusalem ;¹ and whan reynawde had sported
him ynoughe wyth the kyng thomas / he wolde departe
for to goo agen in to the marches of fraunce / And whan
the kyng sawe that, he gaff to reynawd many riche ²⁰
yeftes / as horses / silkes, golde and silver / and many
other thynges in grete plente. and ye oughte to wyte
that mawgis wolde take noo thyng / nor chaunge his
hermytes araye in no wyse, but arayed hym agen as a ²⁴
pilgryme & bare fote, wherof reynawd was sory / The
kinge made a shyp be redy honourably atte the haven
of Iaphes.⁴ Reynawd, full tenderly wepyng, toke leve
of the kyng & of his barons / and entred in to the ship / ²⁸
And wyte it, that by fortune of wedryng, they were
well eyght monethes vpon the see⁵ / and at last they

Mawgis and
Reynawde are
feasted honou-
rably by the king,

who gives them
many rich pre-
sents before their
departure for
France.

Thomas takes
leave of them
with much
sorrow.

¹-¹ omitted, F. orig. I. v.

² felons payens, F. orig. I. v.

³ Fol. H.H. vii.

⁴ pour enmener regnault. Quant tout fust prest le bon roy thomas convoya regnault jusques au port de Jaffes. Et aussi le conte rames et geoffroy de nazareth qui estoient bien dolans du departement de regnault. Quant ilz furent au port de Jaffes . . . F. orig. I. v.

⁵ sans pouvoir prendre terre, F. orig.

toke lond at a towne called palerne; and whan they had taken lond / reynaude commaunded that y^e ship shold be vulade / and all thus as they vuladed the 4 ship, the kyng of palerne / ¹whiche was called simon of puyll,¹ loking out at a wyndow of his castell² / the^{ne} sayd to theym *that* were about hym / ‘I see yonder in the haven a ship setteth her gode a londe, and it can 8 not be but there must be som grete man in it / for I see horses that ben had out, & grete riches / I can not say what it may be, but it were pilgrymes.’ The^{ne} he commaunded a horse for to be made redy, for he 12 wolde sporte hymselfe to the haven side.³

After eight months⁴ on the sea they reach Palerno.

King Simon of that town perceives the ship arrive,

and goes down to the port;

The valiaunt kyng simon of puyll, wythout ony more taryenge / came to the see syde⁴ wyth many a noble knyghte in his company / And w[h]an he was 16 come to the haven / he founde reynawde, that was come a londe. and assoone as the kyng sawe him / he knewe him well / wherof he was right glad / And also reynawde knewe well the gode kyng Symon. 20 Soo the^{ne} embraced they eche wyth other, ⁵made grete chere thone to thother / ‘Reynaude,’ sayd the kyng, ‘ye be ryght welcom / I pray you com lodge in my castell, for thadmyrall barbas is entred in my londe, & 24 wasteth it dayly. I fought yesterday wyth hym / but he drove me out of the feelde shamfully, & dyde grete harme to my folke. and I am sure he shall come to besege me tomorow; and I had thoughte to have 28 sende for socours towarde charlemagn / but sith *that* god hath brought you here / I fere not the kyng, ¹nother his admyrall¹ of percee’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd reynawde, ‘I make you sure I shall helpe you wyth all my

he meets Reynawde, whom he knows, and welcomes gladly.

Simon tells Reynawde how his land is wasted daily by the Persian admiral.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² et vist comment lon dechargeoit la nef. Lors dist a ung chevalier qui la estoit le quel se appelloit Symon de pueille et a ceulx qui entour luy estoient . . F. orig. I. v. back.

³ pour congnoistre que ce feroit pour le loger avecques luy, F. orig. I. v. back.

⁴ sus son cheval . . F. orig. ⁵ Fol. H.H. vii. back.

Reynawde vows
to help him
against the
Admiral.

A knight ap-
proaches the king,
and announces
the arrival of the
Admiral before
Palermo.

Reynawde arms
himself for the
battle,

and Mawgis also.

power. and if thadmyrall come tomorow, he shall not mysse of batayll, for I shall never ete brede tyll I have dyseomfyted him.¹ The^{me} the kyng simon brought reynawd to his palays / where he made him 4 gode chere / and thus as simon ²fested reynawde² / cam there a knyghte that was called ymes / that sayd to the kyng simon, ‘Sir, thadmyralle of perce³ is come byfore palerne wyth soo grete folke that all therth 8 is covered wythall.’ whan the kyng vnderstode these tydynges, he was sory for it, & reynawde g’ad. The^{me} sayd reynawde to the kyng, ‘sire, I pray you be not abasshed of noo thyng, for this day shall ye be 12 avenged, and god before, & the holy sepulere, fro whens I cam but late.’ and whan the kyng herde reynawd speke so, he made be cryed that every man sholde arme himself.⁴ and whan reynawde sawe that, he sent 16 for his harneis, and armed hym / and sware the body of god he sholde doo greef to thadmyrall that daye / sithe that he had founde hym agen. and whan mawgis saw reynawd wolde arme him for to fight, he sayd 20 to him / ‘My cosin, I am yet dysposed for your love to bere armes, for I cowde not suffre you in dangeour.’ And whan the kyng simon herde mawgis speke so, he said him grete thanke / and went & abraeed hym, & 24 after sayd / ‘By my soule, here is a good hermyte / For ⁵whan it was nede, he put well hande to the swerde’ / ‘sire,’ said reynaude, ‘ye saye well trowth / and I promyse you men shold fynde in the worlde but 28 fewe suche knyghtes as he is one’ / After all these thynges sayd / every man toke his harneys; and the kyng all armed went to mawgis, & sayd all laughyng,

¹ mal entra oncques en peulle luy et ses gens, F. orig. I. v. back.

² le roy de peulle faisoit grant feste pour lamour de regnault, F. orig. I. v. back.

³ nomme barbas, F. orig.

⁴ et fist esmouvoir la ville, F. orig. I. vi.

⁵ Fol. H.H. viii.

‘ My frende mawgis, I pray you that ye wyll here
 my standarde this day ’¹ / ‘ syre,’ answerde mawgis, ‘ yf
 ye take me it, I promyse you I shall have it in suche
 4 a place that ye shall swete or ever ye shall com to me.’
 And whan the kyng herde mawgys speke so, he was
 right glad therof / and thenne he toke him his baner.
 And whan mawgis had it in his hande, he sayd to the
 8 kyng / ‘ sire, now folowe me that wyll / for this day
 shall thadmyrall be dysecomfyted, yf it playse god’ /
 And whan mawgis had said soo / he gaffe the spores to
 his horse, & put hymself amonge the sarrasins as a
 12 lion. Reynaude followed him nyghe, & recounted a
 persan, whom he smote wyth his spere soo grete a
 stroke that he made hym tomble deed to the grounde,
 2 wherof thother were sore abasshed ;² & after he put
 16 hande to his swerde, & shoved himself in to the gretest
 prees, and smote on eyther side of hym vpon the
 persans soo mervyllouse strokes that they were gretly
 mervylled wyth it, for all they that he hit / he
 20 brought them to their endyng / and whan thadmyrall
 sawe the grete efforte of armes that Reynawde made
 agenste his folke, he sayd to a nevewe of his *that* was
 by hym / ‘ By mahom, I sawe not yesterlaye that
 24 grete man of armes / nother he that bereth now the
 baner ²of symon² / from whens the devyll are they com
 that soo gretly greveth vs / I see wel they be som
 straunge knyghtes / I am alle redy soo ferde of them
 28 that all the blode in my body trembleth.’ This hang-
 yng, the king simon & reynawd made grete slaug[h]ter
 of sarrasins³ / But whan thadmyrall sawe that his
 folke⁴ bare themself soo yll, he wyst not whether he
 32 wolde flee or abyde / Thenne cam reynaude brekyng

King Simon asks
 Mawgis to bear
 his standard,
 to which he will-
 ingly consents.

The battle begins,
 and the Persians
 suffer terribly.

The Admiral
 cannot discover
 who the strange
 knights are who
 fight so bravely ;

¹ car a meilleur chevalier que vous ne la scauroie vailler,
 F. orig. I. vi. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Et Illecques eut vue merueilleuse meslee d'une part et
 daultre . . . F. orig. I. vi, back. ⁴ Fol. H.H. viii. back.

he hears Reynawde call on Mountalban, and knows against whom he is fighting.

the prees / that cryed as lowde as he cowde 'moumtalban' / And whan thadmyrall herde that crie / he was soo sore a ferde that he wyst not whether to goo, but said, 'by machone & by appolin, I byleve that this 4 devyll helpeth himself wyth som devilyr, For I lefte hym in Iherusalem, and now he is here.'¹

Thenne whan thadmyrall barbas knew that he that made soo grete greeff to his folke, was reynawde² 8 of moumtalban / he shoke all for fere, & sayd to his nevewe, 'By machomet my god, we have doon yll to come here for to make werre agenst the kynge simon, sith that he hath this devyll reynaude of 12 moumtalban; for his like is there not in all the world of knyghthode. now wold I be well in my ship in the myddes of the see / for if I abyde him, he shall make an ende of me.' 'Syr,' sayd his folke, 16 'have noo doubte of that grete vylayn / For & he come ones in our handes, he shall not lightly scape vs.' 'lordes,' sayd thadmyrall / 'ye wote not what ye saye; ye know not the grete prowes of reynawde; for & 20 we were ten tymes moo folke than we ben / yet sholde not we endure agenst him. and therfore, by the feyth that I owe to machomet, I wylle abyde here noo lenger.' And whan he had sayd these wordes / he 24 tornd the bridell / and assone as he myghte, fled towarde his galleys, and all his folke after hym. And whan reynaude sawe that the paynyns were discomfyted, he began to crie / 'after, mawgis, after / for the 28 truauntes³ are dyscomfyted.'³ And whan he had sayd so, he put himself to the chase, and the kyng simon after him / and went castynge doun sarrasins as bestes / And wyte that they slewe soo many of 32 theym⁴ / that men shold not bileve the nombre / but

The Admiral flies hastily to his ship,

pursued by Reynawde and Mawgis, who

¹ ou je lay trouve par mon peche et sommes en voye de estre perduz se mahom ne nous ayde, F. orig. I. vi. back.

² reynaude, orig. ³⁻³ sont tous mors, F. orig. I. vii.

⁴ autant quilz peussent estre es gallees . . . F. orig. I. vii.

they cowde not take thadmyrall, ¹for he was the
 formest¹ / cannot overtake
 him.

²**B**arbas, thadmyralle of Perse, whan he founde
 4 hymselfe saved in his ship / he began to loke a
 londe, & sawe the grete *dommage* that reynawd &
 mawgis made of his folke / for all the shores of the
 see were full of sarrasins slayne, wherof he had grete
 8 sorowe. Soo began he to pulle his heres of his berde / He bewails the
 evil fate of his
 men, who are
 nearly all slain.
 and cursed thour that ever he was borne / Reynawde
 cam to the shores, & sawe thadmyralle was saved /
 wherof he was full sory, & wust not what he sholde
 12 doo more to him / but he made to be cast boltes of
 wilde fyre in to the galley of the admyrall, soo that he
 brent the moste parte of it / and barbas was fayne to
 entre in to a nother shyppe. And ye oughte to wyte
 16 that all the sarrasins that bode a londe, lost their lives /
 Whan the kyng Symon saw that he was to his above
 of hys *enmyes*, he was ryght glad of it / soo ranne he
 & embraced reynawd, & after sayd to hym / 'Rey-
 20 nawde, I knowe well that I am kyng by your prowes /
 for & ye had not be, thadmyralle barbas had dystroyed
 me, and had made an ende of me / wherfore it is
 reyson that ye be rewarded for it / And therfore,
 24 reynawd, I make you lorde of all my goodes & King Simon offers
 Reynawde his
 land and all his
 goods as a reward
 for his bravery,
 which is refused
 by him.
 of all my londe' / thenne sayd reynawd, 'Syre, I
 thanke you moche of your good wylle / For we be not
 that have dysecomfyted the sarrasins. It was god, &
 28 none other, for we be not soo puyssaunt, I & mawgis,
 for to doo it wythout hym' / And whan they had
 thus spoken togyder a longe while at the see side /
 the kyng toke reynawd wyth the one³ hande, &
 32 mawgis wyth thother / and went towarde the cite.
 And whan they were com there / the kyng made
 the gayn to be broughte, and presented it to rey-

¹⁻¹ *se sauvast dedens sa nef, F. orig. l. vii.*

² Fol. l.l. i. ³ *tone, orig.*

A great feast is then held in the town to the honour of Reynawde and Mawgis.

The two knights take leave of the king and his barons,

and journey to Rome, where they confess to the Pope;

they then depart for Arden, where they are joyfully welcomed by all the people there.

nawd & to mawgys / wherof reynawde & mawgys
 wolde take no thing, but gaf it to the pour knyghtes /
 and incontynent mawgys toke agen his hermytes
 wede / ¹The^{ne} began the feest to be the ²grete¹ ⁴
³for the victory that god had gyven theim / The chere
 that the kyng made to reynaude in his paleys is
 not for to saye, for it was grete. and for to make
 shorte tale / Reynawd was honourably feested the 8
 space of four dayes / And thenne he wolde departe /
 and asked leve of the kyng / wherof the kyng was full
 sory / by cause he wold byde no lenger. and whan
 he saw that he wolde goo, he gaff hym many fayr ¹²
 yftes, and made his shyp to be garnysshed wyth
 moche good vytaylles. And whan this was doon /
 Reynawd toke leve of the kyng simon⁴ & of his
 barons / and the kyng conveyed reynawd to the ship. ¹⁶
 And whan he came to the partyng / the kyng simon
 kyssed reynawd,⁵ sore wepyng / and after went agen to
 palerne / and reynawde dyde doo hale vp saylle, &
 toke the see / and ceassed never tyll he came to rome. ²⁰
 and there they toke londe, and he & mawgis went &
 confessed theym to the pope. and whan thei were
 confessed / they retourned agen in to the shyp / and
 toke theyr waye towarde fraunce / Shortly to speke, ²⁴
 they dyde soo moche by theyr iourneis, that they cam
 to ardeyne about none. and whan the peple of ardeyn⁶
 wyst that reynaude & maugis were comyng, they were
 never soo glad / and went to alarde, & sayd, ‘wyte ²⁸
 that your broder reynaude, our lorde, is come / and
 also mawgis, your cosin, hole & sounde / ⁴thanked be
 god!’⁴

1—1 Puis apres la feste commença et les dances et tous autres esbatemens par toute l’acite . . . F. orig. I. vii. back.

² there in *Copland*.

³ Fol. I.I. i. back.

⁴ omitted, F. orig.

⁵ et puis maugis, F. orig. I. viii.

⁶ dordonne, F. orig. I. viii.

And thenne whan alarde & his brethern herde
 these tydynges of theyr broder reynaude that
 was come, they had almost swoned for grete ioye that
 4 thei had, and anone wente to the gate of the towne
 agenst their broder / but they founde hym that he
 was alrede wythin the towne / and whan they sawe
 hym / they ranne hym agenst. and alarde embraced
 8 him fyrst, wepyng / and after kyssed hym by grete
 love; and in like wyse dyde guycharde & richarde /
 and thenne they kyssed mawgis, their good cosin /
 And whan thei had thus ¹welcomed him, they went
 12 togyder in the paleys / and whan they were there /
 alarde sayd to reynaude, 'Fayre broder,² telle vs how
 ye have founde our cosin mawgis.' 'Broder,' sayd
 reynawde, 'I found him in constantyn noble by
 16 fortune.' and thenne he began to reherse vnto theym
 alle his adventures that he had sin he becam pyl-
 gryme / and whan he had tolde all / he loked on his
 broder alarde in his face, & sawe he³ was pale, whiche
 20 gaff him susspectyon, & sayd / 'Fayr broder, how is it
 with my wyff & my children? I mervylle me moche
 that I see theym not here' / 'broder,' sayd alarde,
 'have noo doubte for them / for they ben hole &
 24 sounde at moutalban / and wyte it, that sith your
 departyng we have doo repayre agen the towne / and
 have doon garnysshe the castell wyth vitayll ynoughe /
 for fere of werre, yf ony thyng had happed vs amys.'
 28 And thenne whan reynawde herde good tidynges of
 his wyff & his children, he was right glad of it; and
 soo he kneled down and thanked god of it.
 32 **W**han reynaude knew that his wife & his children
 were well, it recomforted hym moche / and
 began to make good chere; but whan he sawe that his

The 3 brethren
embrace Rey-
nawde and
Mawgis,

and lead them
into the palaes.

Reynawde relates
all his adventures
to them,

and then asks
after his wife and
children.

Alarde tells him
his children are
safe at Moutalban.

Reynawde is
comforted at
these tidings,

¹ Fol. I.I. ii.

² vous soyez le tresbien venu . . . F. orig. I. viii.

³ ehe, orig.

but seeing how
sad his brothers
look, he enquires
the reason.

brodern made noo grete ioye,¹ he merveilled moche /
soo torned himself towarde alarde that sighed sore, &
sayd to hym, 'Broder, I awayte for to here som hevvy
tidynges; I trowe that that ye have tolde me is not 4
trouthe; and yf ye telle me not how is it of all, I shall
goo fro myself / and therefore I pray you tell it me,
for I wyl knowe it' / And alarde sawe that reynawde
helde hym so short, he began to wepe full tendrely, 8
and the^{ne} said vnto hym / 'Sire, sith that it playse you
that I telle you the trouthe / I shall doo soo / Wyte it
that my lady, your wiff, is deceassed oute of this worlde
2 vnto god.² For ever sin that ye departed, she ceased 12
not her sorowe for no thyng that we cowde doo or
shew ³vnto her / And thenne she cast all her clothyng
in to a fyre, & wolde never were vpon her / but a sory
mautell & a smocke; and soo longe she wept & 16
sorowed, day & nyght, that she deyed at last / wherof
I am sory for it, for she was the goodlyest & fayrest
of all the worlde.' Whan reynaude vnderstode these
wordes, he swouned doun to therth for grete sorow that 20
he toke at his hert of the deth of ²the good duchesse
clare,² his wyfe / and whan he was come agen to hym-
selfe, he began to wepe, and sayd, 'Ha, kynge charle-
magne, how well maye I hate you, for by you have I 24
lost my wyff / for she is deed by cause she see that ye
chassed me out of fraunce wyth soo grete shame as to
make me goo a fote / begging my brede like a trewauzt /
but I know well that my sinnes ben cause of all this.'⁴ 28
And whan reynaude had made his mone / he sayd to
alarde, his broder / 'fayr broder, I pray you come &
shewe me the tombe where my wyff is begravene?'
'broder,' sayd alard, 'wyth a gode wille I shall doo 32

Alarde tells him
of the death of his
wife,

who sorrowed so
much for her
husband's absence
that she died.

Reynawde asks
to be shewn his
wife's tomb.

¹ mais faisoient macte ehiere . . F. orig. I. viii.

²⁻² omitted. F. orig. ³ Fol. I. I. ii. back.

⁴ A dout qui *eut* fust liez maugis ne fust pas joyeux. Si
fust si marry quil ne scauoit que faire, F. orig. I. viii. back.

soo.' And thenne he broughte him to the chirehe
 where his gode wyfe the duchesse was buryed / And
 whan reynawde came there / he swouned thre tynies
 4 vpon her tombe ; and whan he was come agen to hym-
 self / began to make grete sorow / for he rented his
 clothes & pulled his heres / And whan he had sorowed
 longe / he sayd, as a man replenysshed wyth sorowe,
 8 'Ha, god, what a pilgryme I am ! I byleve there is
 none in the worlde more vnhappy than I am. Now
 see I well that I have lost all my ioye & my com-
 forte / sith that I have loste the fayreste lady of the
 12 worlde, & the goodliest'¹ / And as he was spekyng
 these wordes / came there his children / aymonet &
 yonnet, that kneled byfore theyr fader. And whan
 reynawd sawe theym knelinge a fore hym, he wende
 16 his herte sholde have breste. Soo toke he them vp,
 and kyssed theym by grete love, all wepyng, and after
 2²sayd to them, ' My fayr children, see that ye be good
 men / for I fere me that ye shall mysse me soone.'
 20 and whan reynawd had said this to his children, he
 began to make more sorow than he had doon afore, &
 soo dide mawgis. Thenne began y^e sorowe thrughe all
 the towne right grete, and lasted x dayes without
 24 ceasse / and whan cam to the xiii.³ daye / Reynawde
 toke his waye towarde mountalban / that was almost
 as well peopled as it was or the werre beganne / And
 mawgys habandonned never reynawd whersomever he
 28 went, but he went alwayes on fote in his hermytes
 aray / and as they went thus to mountalban / the
 bredern of reynawd & his children went on fote for to
 bere company to mawgis their eosin. And whan they
 32 of mountalban knewe the comyng of their lorde / they
 were right glad of it / and made all the stretes for to

Alarde takes him
 into the church,
 where they
 mourn over the
 loss of lady
 Clare.

The people of
 Arden mourn for
 ten days,
 and then Rey-
 nawde and
 Mawgis depart for
 Mountalban.

¹ que oneques fis dieu ne men seet ne gre ne grace. F. orig. l. viii. back.

² Fol. l. l. iii.

³ onzieme jour, F. orig. l. i.

They are received
with great joy by
the inhabitants,

be hanged wyth fayr clothes;¹ and they cam agenste hym all togyder, makyng grete ioie / and made hym grete reverence, and welcomed him honourably / and reynawde receyved them gladly, & made them good 4 chere / For at that tyme he dyssymuled his sorowe that he had at his hert, bycause he sholde not discomforte his folke, that soo grete ioie made for his comyng there. And also they of mountalban welcomed mawgis 8 honourably / by cause they loved hym of olde very well. And therne they brought reynaude, makyng grete ioie, vnto the castell / and whan reynaude founde hymselfe wythin his castell of mountalban, he was glad 12 of it, and came to a wyndow & loked down in to the towne / and saw *that* it was as well pepled as ever it was / and had mervylle of whens somoche peple was com there for to dwelle; & he was right glad of it / for 16 he wende never to have seen mountalban in that plight ²as it was byfore the werre began.² ³After that the feest was ended, reynaude called his bredern, & said ⁴vnto them / ‘Lordes, I holde me distroyed for love of the 20 gode duchesse / whiche I have loste, wherof I am right hevy for it, for love of the grete goodnes that I have knowen in her / I make my vowe to god, that never while I live I shall never mary agen.’ ‘cosin,’ sayd 24 mawgis / ‘ye doo well / but I praye you recomforte yourself / for ye knowe well that a thyng *that* maye not be amended must be lefte alone’ / ‘cosin,’ sayd reynawde, ‘ye saye well / and I sha’ll doo soo’ / Whan 28 reynawd, his bredern, & mawgis had doon grete chere that daye at mountalban, mawgis on the morow next toke leve of his cosins, & went agen to his hermytage; and

who bring Rey-
nawde into the
Castle.

He calls his
brethren, and
makes a vow that
he will never
marry again.

Mawgis takes his
departure next
day,

¹ et de plusieurs riches draps tant de foye que de laine, F. orig. L. i. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Et pendant ceulx de montauban demenoient grant feste merueilleusement mais regnault ne pouvoit faire bonne chiere pour chose quilz sceussent faire, F. orig. L. i.

⁴ Fol. l.l. iii. back.

whan he wolde departe / he sayd to reynaud, ‘ Cosin, remembre you well, that for you are dede soo many folke / for whom ye be beholden to pray god that he wyll
 4 have mercy on their soules’ / and whan mawgys had sayd soo / he toke his waye, & wolde not suffre no body to conveye him ; and he dyde somoche by his iourneys that he came to his hermytage / where he lived a holy
 8 life ; for after he was com agen to his hermytage / he ete never but herbes & rotes of the wode ; and in this maner of wyse lived maugis the space¹ of vii. yeres, that he sawe nother man nor woman / And whan it cam to
 12 the viii. yere, the good mawgis deceassed fro this worlde / aboute ester. Thesu for his pite pardonne his soule ! ¶ Here leveth the history to speke of mawgis, whom god pardonne, and tourneth to speke agen of
 16 reynaud, of his bredern, and of his children, how they were made knyghtes.

and goes back to his hermitage ;

he lives in solitude, eating only herbs and roots for the length of vii. years, when he dies as a holy man.

CHAPTER XXV.

¶ How reynaude sent his two sones to the kyng charlemagne moche honourably / for
 20 to be made knyghtes at paris.

In this party sheweth thistory / that after that mawgis was returned to his hermytage, Reynawde was ever after sory for hym & also for his wyffe. But he
 24 ²recomforted hymselfe aswell as he myght wyth his bredern. A longe while abode reynaude wyth his bredern, makyng as good chere as he cowde / and wyte it, that about that tyme deyed tholde duke aymon,
 28 whiche lefte grete goodes to hys children. But shortly to speke, reynaude departed & gaaff all his goodes, as well that that he had of his owne / as that was fallen bi the deth of his fader aymon, vnto his bredern, ex-

The old Duke Aymon dies and leaves a rich inheritance to his children.

¹ spade, *orig.*

² Fol. LI. iv.

Reynawde dwells
a long time at
Montalban teach-
ing his sons to
bear arms
worthily.

He tells them it
is time they were
made knights by
Charlemagne,

and promises to
send them to
Paris in a week's
time.

cept oonly that he reteyned for hymself ¹the castell &
towne of¹ mountalban / and founde the wayes that thei
were all maryed noble & richely. Who that sholde
speke of the bredern of reynaude & of theyr dedes, it 4
were to longe to be recounted. Reynawd themne dwelled
longe at mountalban wyth his children / whiche he
endoctryned & taughte in all good & vertuous maners
aswell as he cowde, and norysshed theym tyll that 8
they were men / and cowde bere both sheelde and spere.
And vpon a daye he had theym to the feelde on hors-
backe / and made to be brought there speres & sheeldes
for to assaye theymselff / and toke wyth hym xx. 12
knyghtes / whom, whan thei were comen in the feelde /
he made his children to iouste wyth / And ye ought to
wyte that the two sones of reynaude iousted aswell as
thoughe they had be hauytyng the werre x. yeres & 16
more. And when reynawd saw that they dyde so wel,
he called theym afore hym / and afore the knyghtes, &
sayd to them / 'My fayr children / thanked be our
lorde / ye ben talle men, and well made of body / It is 20
now tyme that ye were made knyghtes; wherfore I
wyll that ye goo serve the kynge charlemagn, our
soverayn lorde / whiche shall make you knyghtes. For
of more noble hande ye can not be dowbed to the noble 24
ordre of knyghthode.' 'Syr,' sayd aymonet / 'we are
redy to fulfille your wylle in every thyng that ye com-
maunde vs' / 'fader,' sayd yonnet, 'ye saye well to vs /
for it is tyme that ²we folowe the werres; but sith it is 28
your playsure to sende vs to charlemagn, we must goo
there honourably / but it can not be wythout grete
cost' / 'My sone,' said reynaude, 'care not for the cost /
for we have good ynoughe / gramercy our lorde, for 32
to bring you there acordyng to your astate; and I promy-
se you / I shall sende you there or I be vii. nyghte

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. L. ii.

² Fol. I.I. iv. back.

elder, as honourabli as ony went thider sin my tyme' /
 'fader,' sayd the children / 'we are redy to goo whan
 it please you' / Whan reynaude had said this to his
 4 children, he went home agen to mowntalban well ioy-
 full of his two sones that proved so well; and whan
 he was wythin his castell, he called his stiwarde &
 said to him / 'Stywarde, I commaunde you that ye
 8 araye my chylidren honorably & richely of dyverse
 maners of clothyng, ¹& of thinges that longeth to
 them¹ / for I wyll sende them to ye court of the kyng
 charlemagne, for to be made knyghtes of him / and see
 12 that they goo as honestly ²as ony went thider this xx.
 yeres² / 'My lorde,' sayd the stiwarde / 'I shall well
 doo your commaundement, sith that it plaiseth you /
 for ye have ynoughe clothes full riche of your owne of
 16 diverse colours.'

he orders his
 steward to pre-
 pare rich clothing
 for his children.

Whan the stiwarde herde the commaundement
 of his mayster / wythout ony tarieng / he dyde
 right well alle that was commaunded him by reynaude /
 20 for he made to be redy many palfreys & coursers well
 barded & covered wyth riche clothe of golde, wyth
 belles of silver & gylte in grete plente / and purveyd
 for two goode harneyses all complete / ¹for speres &
 24 swerdes, & for all suche other thynges as aperteyneth¹
 for the two yong bachelers. Shortly to speke, it was
 not possyble to aray better two yonge squyres than the
 ii. yonge sones of reynaude were by the purvyauce of
 28 his stiwarde / and whan all thinges were redy / he
 brought them bfore his maisters.³ And whan reynaude
 sawe this, he was glad, & sayd, 'by god, ⁴stywarde /
 I comne you thanke / that ye have purveyd so well
 32 for mi children.' and reynawd made V.C knyghtes

The two young
 sons of Reynawde
 are honourably
 arrayed.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

²⁻² quil en y ala jamais point, F. orig. Z. ii. back.

³ a regnault son maistre. F. orig. Z. ii. back.

⁴ Fol. L.I. v.

and v. hundred
knights are in
readiness to
accompany them
to Paris.

Reynawide
charges his sons
to spend their
money honestly,

and to treat
all women
courteously,
so shall they be
praised of men.

He tells Johnnet
to honour and
reverence his
brother as his
elder.

well redy to bere company to his sones. And whan
they were all redy, reynaude caled his sones, & sayd to
theym / ‘ my fare sones, ye be well apoynted / thanked
be god, and here is a fayr bende of noble men to bere 4
you feliship / And therefore ye shall now go to the
court of charlemain our grete kynge, whiche shall make
you grete chere & honour for my love. my chyl dren,
ye be of hie linage & right noble, and therefore beware 8
that ye doo noo thing agenst your noblenes / ne that
myght retourne to ony shame to me nor to your
linage / and I *commaunde* you vpon the feyth that ye
owe to me, that the monei that I delver to you now / 12
ye dyspende it honestly, and spare not to doo good
therwyth to pour gentylnen & yonge bachelers ¹that
wold fayn com to worship¹ / and whan ye have all
spended it honestly / sende to me for more, and ye 16
shall have ynoughe ; and above this, I charge you that
ye serve god alwayes afore ony thing that ye have a
doo ;² and that ye speke no worde fowll out of your
mouth to no ladi nor to damesell / worship your better, 20
& love your neyghbour, and soo shall you be praysed
of every man. Moreover, I charge you that ye live
frendly togyder as ii bredern ought to doo / and to you,
yonnet, my fayr sone / I *commaunde* you that ye bere 24
honour & reverence to your³ broder / for he is your
elder / that know ye well.’

Thenne sayd yonnet, ‘ fader, be you sure I shall
serve my dere broder as I wold doo you / that 28
are my lorle & my ¹dere¹ fader.’ ‘ By my feyth, fayr
sone,’ ¹sayd reynaud¹ / ‘ yf ye doo soo, ye shall be
praysed for it,⁴ whersomever ye com or goo. But yet
one thyng I forbede you / that ye speke not to moche, 32

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² je vous sa recommaunde les pouvres crestieus, F. orig. Z. ii.
back.

³ chier, F. orig.

⁴ toute vostre vie, F. orig. Z. iii.

for yf ye doo the contrary / the frenshemen shall
 saye / that ye be not like in condycions to your
 parentage'¹ / 'Fader,' sayd the ²children, 'we have
 4 suche a trust in our lorde god that he shall kepe vs
 from all thyng that is contrary to his wylle, and that
 we shall soo governe vs / that ye shall gladly avowe
 vs for your children / and all they of the court of
 8 charlemagne shall love vs, but yf they wylle do
 wrong' / And whan reynaude herde his children speke
 soo, he was right glad therof, and drewe them aside,
 & sayd vnto theym / 'My fayr children, ye goo now
 12 in to fraunce / remembre well hereafter all whiche I
 shall telle you now / Ye must knowe that there ben
 in the court of the kynge charlemaine a grete linage
 of folke that never loved vs but litill, the whiche are
 16 of grete power / thei be of maunte / I charge you that
 ye nor goo nor com wyth theym / for noo thing that
 they can telle you / and if they hurt you by ony
 wyse, see *that* ye revenge yourself wysly, and shew
 20 them that ye be the sones of reynaude of mount-
 alban' / 'Fader,' sayd the children / 'doubt not we
 shall not suffre that ony outeraige be doo to vs, yf we
 maye.' 'Fayr children,' sayd reynaude / 'knele afore
 24 me' / and they kneled anone byfore their fader; &
 Reynawde gaff them his blessinge, and after kissed
 theym wepyng many tymes, & gaaff theym leve / and
 after torned him towarde his knyghtes, & sayd, 'My
 28 lordes, I commende to god, & praye you that ye tende
 well my children / and suffre not that ony wrong be
 doon to them to your power / for ye know well that
 we ben hatred in fraunce; and I pray you gyve them
 32 alwayes good counseyll / and that they be alwaies
 courteys, gentyll, & liberall of their goodes / for a
 prince covetous was never praised.' and whan reynaud

They promise
 their father to
 obey all his
 commands.

Reynawde warns
 them against his
 enemies that
 they will meet
 at Charlemagne's
 court;

he gives them his
 blessing,
 and takes leave of
 them, weeping
 sadly.

¹ car jamais nous ne sermonoyent volentiers, F. orig. Z. iii.

² Fol. l.l. v. back.

had sayd this, he wythdrew him sore wepyng ¶ Thus levethe thystory to speke of reynawd & of his bredern, and retorneth to shew of his children, that were goon to the court of the kyng charlemagn. 4

CHAPTER XXVI.

¶ How after that the kyng¹ charlemagn had receyved full swetly the sones of reynawd, thei fought with the sones of folques / and discomfited them in thile of our lady, 8 wythin paris, bycause thei had layd treison vpon reynaud their fader / for cause that he had slayn folques in the playn of valcolours /

Now sheweth the tale, that after that aymonet & 12 yonnet were departed² fro their fader, thei rode somoche by their iourneis / that they cam to paris / and lodged them by the paleys / And whan thei were lodged / the ii children clothed themself honestly, & 16 all their folke / and thezme thei went wyth their feliship, holdyng eche other by thandes, to the paleys³ / And whan the barons of charlemagn sawe com the two bredern so richely arayed, & suche a goodly feliship 20 of knyghtes after them, they mervylled gretly what thei myght be / so sayd thone to thother / 'here be bredern / and they must be of som hie linage' / The 24 barons thezme folowed theym / whan they mounted to the palays / And they entred wythin the grete halle, where they founde the kyng charlemagn / that devysed with som of his barons; and there was the duke 28 naymes, richard of normandi, salamon of breten, ogyer

Aymonet and
Johmet arrive at
Paris,

and go to the
palace.

The barons
wonder whose
sons they are
accompanied by
so many knights;

they follow them
into the palace,
where Charle-
magne is seated
with many of his
barons;

¹ Fol. I.I. vi. ² de montauban. F. orig. Z. iii. back.

³ Et devez scavoir quilz ressembloient bien enfans de prince, F. orig. Z. iii. back.

of denmarke, therle ganellon / and also constans & rohars / whiche two hated reynaud of mountalban right sore, for they were the sones of foulques of morillon, that Reynaud had slayn in the playne of valcolours, when he ¹& his bredern¹ defended them so well at the roche mountbron / Thise ii. bredern, constans & rohars, had grete name in the courte / but 8 their hertes were full false / and the kynge charlemagn loved them well for their prowes & grete knightehode / Wyth charlemagn were also many other grete pryncis & barons / wherof the boke maketh noo 12 mencyon, ¹For it were to longe a thyuge to be recounted¹ /

Thenne whan the ii bredern, ¹the sones of Reynawd of mountalban,¹ were com in to the hall / they 16 sawe the kinge among his barons. soo went they vnto hym, & kneled doun afore hym, and kyssed his fete / and the/one aymonet spake first, & sayd / 'Syre, god gyve you good liff & longe / and kepe from evyll all 20 your noble company / Syre, we are com to you for to have thordre of knyghthode / ¹yf it playse your gode grace to give it vs¹ / for of noo better hande than is yours we can not have it; wherfore, sir, we beseche 24 you humbly for god, & for the love of our fader, that it wille please you to reteyne vs in your servyse vnto the tyme ye gyve the sayd ordre of knyghthode' / 'Who ben you,' sayd the king, 'that speke thus?' 'sire,'¹ sayd 28 aymonet¹ / 'we are the sones of reynawde of mountalban'³ / And whan the kyng charlemagne vnderstode that they were the sones of reynaude,⁴ he rose vpon his fete lightly, & receyved them honourably, and after 32 sayd vnto them, 'My children, ye be right welcom / and how fareth your fader?' 'sire,' sayd the children /

amongst them Constant and Rohart, the sons of Foulques, who are enemies of Reynawde.

Aymonet and Johnnet kneel before the Emperor,

and beg for the honour of knight-hood from his hand;

they tell him they are the sons of Reynawde.

Charlemagne then receives them with joy, and

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. I.I. vi. back.

³ a qui dieu doit bonne vie, F. orig. Z. iv.

⁴ de montauban, F. orig.

enquires after
their father.

‘he dooth well, thanked be god / and he recomendeth
him right humbly to your good grace, besechyng you
that ye will have vs for recomended / and we have left
him at mountalban / but he draweth now sore to age.’ 4
‘Thus gothe the worlde, my children’ / sayd the kyng,
‘every man muste take in it an ende.’ Moche glad was
the kyng charlemagne of the comyng of the two sones of
reynawd,¹ and right gladly he loked vpon theym for the 8
love of their fader ; for the more he behelde them, and
the more fayrer he founde theym, & better liked theym,
and well he loved them, bycause they were like the
fader ; and whan he had loked vpon them ynoughe / 12
he sayd to his barons / ‘Lordes, if the children wold
forsake their fader / they cowde not, for never children
were more like to him / than they ;’² and whan he had
sayd soo, he torned toward³ the children / and said to 16
them / ‘Fayr children, ye shal be made knyghtes at
all tymes whan ye wyll / for the love of your fader,
my good frende / and I shall gyve you moo londes than
your father hathe, and for love of you / I shall make an 20
hundred knyghtes more wyth you, for ye ben of suche
a stocke come / that ye ben worthy to be honoured,
praised, & holden dere’ / And thenne whan the duke
naymes, rowlande, & olivere that came there, & all the 24
other peres of fraunce saw that they were the two sones
of reynawd of mountalban, they were ryght glad of it /
and thenne every man kyssed theym by grete love, and
asked theym how reynaude & his bredern dyde / 28
‘Lordes,’⁴ sayd aymonet,⁴ ‘what are you that be so glad
of our comyng’ / ‘children,’ sayd the duke naymes /
‘we ben all you[r] kinnemen.’ And thenne the duke
naymes tolde them all their names / and whan the 32
children knewe what they were / thei meked theymsel

The Emperor
promises to
make them
knights, and
grant them a
larger portion of
land.

The peers rejoice
over the arrival of
Reynawde's sons,
and embrace
them with great
gladness.

¹ de montauban, F. orig.

² Et cuyde quilz feront une fois bonnes gens se ilz vivent
leur cage, F. orig. Z. iv.

³ Fol. I.I. vii.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

byfore them honestly; and after, yonnet sayd to them /
 'Lordes, our fader greteth you well, and prayeth you
 that ye wylle have vs for recomended as your kynnes-
 4 men.' And the^{ne} whan the barons herde the two
 children speke soo wysly / they were glad of it, &
 also of their comynge. But the ii. sones of foulques of
 moryllon were full sory & wroth for it. 'bi my soule,'
 8 said constans to his broder rohars, 'the fader of thise
 two children slewe our fader / wherof the hert in my
 body swelleth highe for angre that I see them here;
 nor my eyen can not loke vpon them'¹ / 'broder,' sayd
 12 rohars, 'nor I nother, by my trouth / but I counseyll
 not that we fyghte wyth them not here, for it were
 foly. But lete vs awayte a tyme & place covenable /
 for sith that they shall dwelle here / we shall avenge vs
 16 vpon them' / 'Broder,' sayd constans, 'lete vs doo
 one thing that I shall telle you / whiche is easy for to
 doo, that ye shal call thone of treyson, & I thother,
 saieng² that theyr fader slewe our fader by treyson.
 20 And also we shall prove that their fader wrought
 treyson agenst the kinge charlemagn' / 'Broder,' sayd
 rohars / 'ye speke well: we must suffre a while tyll we
 see how they shall bere theimself in court / for & they
 24 doo any otherwyse than they ought to doo, we shall
 mow kille them, & be not blamed for it.' After this
 doon / ye ought to knowe that the children of reynaude
 of mounthalban / bare theimself full honestly in court,
 28 for all y^e barons loved them dere, save only the two
 sones of foulques of morillon, wherof aymonet & yonnet
 perceyved it right well / and spake not wyth them /
 nor haunted them not. It was grete merveylle of the
 32 grete yeftes that³ the sones of aymon³ gaff to the barons
 & gentylnen of the court charlemagn, as were fayr

The two sons of
 Foulques are
 envious at the
 reception ac-
 corded to the sons
 of Reynawde,

and vow to
 revenge the death
 of their father by
 accusing Rey-
 nawde of treason.

The sons of Rey-
 nawde give costly
 gifts to the barons
 and gentlemen of
 the court, and

¹ Et si ne feray jamais liez jusques je naye ung occis, F. orig. Z. iv. back.

² Fol. I.I. vii. back.

³⁻³ les enfans de regnault, F. orig. Z. v.

horses, & harneys, & many clothes of silke of dyverse colours / and in likewyse they gaff to the ladyes & gentilwymen fair gownes of clothe, of gold, & of silver. And of thother part they kept a grete astate 4
& goode hous to all pour gentylnen & esqyres / and dyde somoche good *that* they were gretly praysed of every man / What sholde I telle you more / the children of reynaude dyde somoche in the court of the 8 kyng charlemain, that of all the worlde they were loved / and pryncipally of the kyng charlemagn / Whan the kyng sawe that they behaved theym soo well & so wysly in his court / he was ryght glad of it, 12 soo loved he them moost of ony yong knightes of his court, and made them his keruers afore him / And the^{ne} whan the ii sones of folques sawe that the kyng loved them so moche, they were full angry / in somoche 16 that they wexed mad all quycke for it / and soo sware by grete angre that they shold slee them, or ever they sholde goo from the courte. It happed soo that on wytsondaye evyn, as the kyng was atte Parys, and wolde 20¹ kepe open court, and there were aymonet & yonnet wyth thother barons in the hall / This hanging, aryved there a knyghte of almayn, that presented to the kyng a fayr knyff, after the facyon of the londe. the^{ne} called 24 the kyng yonnet, & gaaff it hym by grete love / and whan yonnet had receyved this yefte of the kyng, & as he sholde have goon to his place agen, he shoved constans wyth his elbow agenst his wyll; and whan constans sawe that yonnet had doon soo / he had grete dyspite at it / and sayd, 'what is this? must there be somoche set bi thise two boyes, the sones of a traytour / whiche ben not worthe a roten apple / and thys one is 32 all redi becom soo proude that he hath now shoved me wyth his elbow by grete envy & pryde.' moche other langage constans sayd by yonnet, whiche he

are greatly praised by all assembled there.

The Emperor loves them for their good behaviour, and makes them the carvers of his dishes.

Charlemagne presents Johnnet with a handsome knife; returning to his place Johnnet pushes Constant,

who for this offence wrathfully calls him the son of a traitor.

¹ Fol. I.I viii.

ought not for to saie. And whan yonnet herde that constans had called him the sone of a traytour / he was sore an *angred*. So cam he to hym, & sayd, ‘constans, ye have lerned a fowle crafte / that ys, that ye can speke shrewdly wythoute a cause lawfull. why for I have herde that ye have called me & my broder the sones of a traytour / and that the kyng knowethe well that our fader slewe yours by treyson / wherof I wylle ye wyte that ye lie falsly / but your fader dyde assaylle our by treyson / as a traytour / come of the linage of traytours. But god wold not that my fader sholde deie soo, nor myn vncles. My fader slewe your fader, it is trouthe; but it was in his defendyng of his body / and he dyde *themne* as a noble knyghte / as he is / and yf ye be soo hardy that ye wylle mayntene that he dyde it by treyson / here I cast now my gage afore this noble companye / sayeng that ye have lied falsly / ¹save the reverence of the kinge, and of his felishyp.¹

Johnnet advances towards Constant,

and tells him he lies in calling his father a traitor;

he throws down his gage before the assembly.

Thenne whan the kyng charlemagn sawe that none of the barons sayd noo thyng of the striffe of yonnet ²and of constans / he was angry for it, & sayd / ‘Constans, ye doo grete wrong for to saye that I & the twelve peres of fraunce knowe well that reynaude of mountalban slewe your fader by treyson. holde your peas,’ sayd charlemagne. ‘For yf ye knewe well how the matere is, ye sholde not speke of it / wherefore I *commaunde* you, in asmoche as ye fere to angre me, *that* ye make amendes to yonnet of that ye have sayd / or elles voide incontyent my court & my royaume / for ye have trowbled all my courte / wherof I am not contente.’ And whan rohars herde this that the kyng charlemagn had sayd to constance his broder / he was angry, and soo rose on his fete and sayd, ‘Sire, I am redi for to prove vpon aymonet that his fader slew our fader by treyson, and here is my gage’ /

Charlemagne rebukes Constant for his accusation against Reynawde,

and commands him to apologize to Johnnet for his words.

Robart rises and throws down his gage, stating his willingness to fight Aymonet.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. I.I. viii. back.

‘Rohars,’¹ sayd Charlemagne, ‘here ye take a wronge waye, and it shall be to you over late whan ye shall repente it.’ whan aymonet & yonnet vnderstode thyse wordes / they kneled afore charlemagn, & sayd to 4
 him / ‘Sir, for god we pray you right humbly that ye take the gages that rohars hath cast / for wyth goddys grace we shall well defende our fader of the treyson / that they put vpon him.’ ‘Children,’ sayd the kyng / 8
 ‘sith it playse you that I take them / I shall doo soo’ / and thenne the kyng charlemagn toke the gages / and constans avauuced hymself & sayd / ‘Sire, we vnderstode that we shall fyght two & two, thone 12
 agenst thother.’ ¶ whan the kyng charlemayn had taken the gages of bataylle of constans & of rohars, he asked theym who shold be their seurtes? thenne lept forth the traytour guenellon, berenger, escouff of moril- 16
 lon, lion of pignabell, and gryfon of haute braunche / the whiche sayd vnto kyng charlemagn, ‘Syre, we wyll be suretes for constans & rohars, for they be of our linage’² / ‘Lordes,’ sayd charlemagn, ‘I take them you 20
 to kepe; And I charge you to brynge theym agayn to the ³court whan tyme shall be.’ ‘Syre,’ sayd the suretees, ‘we shall doo as ye commaunde vs.’ and whan the kyng had receyved the suretees of constans 24
 & of rohars / aymonet & yonnet came forth / and sayd in this manere / ‘Syre, here ben our gages, how that we will defende that our fader slew never foulques of moryllon by treyson.’ ‘Children,’ sayd the kyng 28
 charlemain, ‘ye speke well / but I must have surete of you, as I have of⁴ ye other party / yf I wyll doo reyson’ / Thenne lept forth rowland, oliver, the duke naymes of bavyre, ogier of denmarke, richarde of nor- 32
 mandy, & escouff the sone of oedon, whiche sayd to y^c

The sons of Reynawde beg the Emperor to accept their gages.

Charlemagne consents to the battle taking place.

¹ Constans, F. orig. Z. vi.

² Si ne leur devons faillir. F. orig. Z. vi.

³ Fol. K.K. i.

⁴ cf. orig.

kyng / 'Syre, we ben suretees for the sones of reynaude / and we shall present theym to you at the daye of bataille' / 'Sire,'¹ sayd the kyng charlemagn, 'it
 4 playseth me well; but the children of reynaude ben not yet knyghtes as ye knowe, but by the feyth that I owe to god, they shall be to morowe,² and thenne we shall sende our lettres to reynawd, that he come for to
 8 see the bataylle of his children / for this daye fourthy dayes I devyse it.' Whan came at theyyn, the kyng charlemain made be called his stywarde, & sayd to hym / 'Goo, and brynge me to morowe the sones of
 12 reynaude / for I wylle that they ben tomorow named knyghtes / and see that they ben well honourde / for I wylle doo this for the love of their fader; and pourvey soo that thei have eche of theim a good courser,³
 16 and gode harnais ⁴mete for their bodyes'⁴ / Whan the stywarde herde the *commaundement* of the kyng charlemagn / he dyde well the tenour therof / and whan the mornynge came / the stywarde brought aymonet & yonnet
 20 well apoynted / and in there company all suche other as the kynge ⁴for their love⁴ wolde make knyghtes⁵ that daye / And whan they were afore the kyng, aymonet & yonnet requyred thordre of knyghthode / to whome
 24 the kyng gaff it wyth good hert, and in like wyse to the ⁶other for love of them; and thenne was a grete feest made that daye / And whan the feest was / fynysshed / charlemagn toke a messenger / whiche he sente to reynaude of mountalban, and sent him worde that he sholde come to the court wyth gode company / for his children were called of treyson / by the sones of foulques of morillon, sayeng, that he had slayen their

The Emperor promises to make Aymonet and Johnnet knyghts next day;

he orders his steward to bring them to him on the morrow,

and see that they have good horses and amour.

After Reynawde's sons are knighted a great feast takes place. A messenger is sent to Montalban with commands for Reynawde to come to Paris to see his sons fight.

¹ Seigneurs, F. orig. Z. vi. back.

² de ma main, F. orig. Z. vi. back.

³ ou parlefroy, F. orig. Z. vi. back. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted, F. orig.

⁵ Lesquelz il auoit fait veiller celle nuyt en leglise de nostre dame, F. orig. Z. vi. back.

⁶ Fol. K.K. i. back.

fader by treyson / and how his children had caste their gages, sayeng that they had lied falsly.¹

Thenne whan the duke reynawd² herde these tidinges that charlemayne sente hym, he merveylled of it **4** sore. Thenne sent he for all his bredern by his letters that they sholde com to him in armes, for it was nede / And whan the bredern of reynaude vnderstode these tydynges / wythout ony tarieng they came to **3**their **8** broder at³ mountalban / And whan reynaude sawe them, he was glad / and kyssed theym, thone after the other / and after, he tolde theym all that the kyng charlemagn had gyve him to knowe; and whan the **12** bredern of reynaude vnderstode it / they merveylled of it. ‘Broder,’ said richarde, ‘doubte not / for the mater shall come better than ye wene of / by the grace of god / I counseyll that we goo to the court of the kyng **16** charlemagn. For whan we shall be there, we shall soone vnderstode the kynges mynde, and what his wylle is towarde you; and I promyse you yf he hath doon ony wrong to our newewes, ³your children³ / god **20** never have mercy on my soule / but I shall slec hym / what happye therof.’ ‘Broder,’ sayd reynawde, ‘I wylle well that we goo to parys; and whan we shall be there / we shall well vnderstode how the kyng charlemagn **24** bereth hymself towarde my chyl dren.’ ‘Brother,’ sayd alarde / ‘ye speke well & wysly / and me semeth after myn advyse that we ought to goo thider wythout ony long taryenge.’ And thenne whan they were therto **28** acorded, ⁴they departed from mountalban wyth right a noble company / and so moche they rode by their iourneis that they cam to the cite of parys. And whan they were comen there, all the xii. peres of fraunce knewe **32**

Reynawde sends for his brethren when he hears these tidings of his sons, and tells them to come with him to Paris.

Alarde advises that they should set forth immediately.

They arrive in Paris,

¹ *Comment gens traictres extraitz de traictres par droicte lignee*, F. orig. Z. vi. back.

² *de montauban*, F. orig. Z. vii. ³⁻³ omitted, F. orig.

⁴ Pol. K K. ii.

anone of their comynge, and went agenst them / and
 brought wyth theym aymonet & yonnet, and receyved
 reynawd & his bredern wyth grete ioye & honour /
 4 And thenne whan reynawd saw his two fayr sones, he
 sayd to them in this wyse / 'My children, now shall
 it be seen yf ye be my sones or noo; for and ye be my
 children / ye shall avenge me of that grete shame
 8 that thise traytours put vpon me without a cause.'
 'Fader,' sayd the children, 'doubte not therof / for &
 they were ten agenst vs / yet shall we overcom them
 12 that ye be as true a knyghte as ony is in the worlde' /
 And whan the kyng charlemagn knewe the comyng of
 reynawd, that was come so well acompanyed, he was
 glad of it / and sent worde to reynawd that he shold
 16 come to hym, the whyche thyng reynawd dide / And
 whan the kyng saw hym, he made him good chere, and
 with good hert / and also to his bredern / And whan
 reynawd had be with the kyng a longe while, he toke
 20 leve of hym, & went to his lodges agen / And whan he
 was there, he called his bredern & his chyldren, &
 sayd to them / 'My sones, come hider / telle me how
 the kyng charlemain bereth hymself towarde you, and
 24 what he sayeth of this quarell that ye have vnder-
 take / I must knowe the trouthe of it' / 'Fader,' said
 the children, 'wite it that the king charlemagn loveth
 vs moche / and he entreteyneth vs above all other
 28 honourabli / for the love of you that he loveth right
 moche, as he sayeth.' And thezme thei tolde him
 how he had made them knyghtes² / and how he sus-
 teyned their quarell agenst the traytours and all other.
 32 ³ **W**hen reynawde and his bredern herde the chil-
 dren speke thus / thei were glad of it / for

and are joyfully
welcomed by the
xii. peers.

The Emperor
sends for Rey-
nawde,
and receives him
graciously.

Reynawde asks
his sones how they
have been treated
by the Emperor.

They tell him
how good Charle-
magne has been to
them.

¹⁻¹ omitted. F. orig.

² moult honorablement, F. orig. Z. vii. back.

³ Fol. K.K. ii. back.

they doubted lest charlemagn wolde have faren yll
 wyth theym / And whan reynawde of mountalban
 wyst that the¹ kyng had borne himself soo well towarde
 his sones, he sayd that he sholde serve hym evermore **4**
 as his soverayn lorde / And on the morowe² reynawde
 went to see the kyng at his risynge from his bed, &
 thanked hym moche of the grete worshyp that he had
 doon to his children. Thenne sayd Charlemagn to **8**
 hym, 'Reynawde, ever sin that I sawe that ye dyde
 my *commandement* with good wylle, and that ye
 were obeyeng to me / I dyde cast all my angre from
 me, & all the evyll wylle that I had agenste you / **12**
 and I wylle that ye wyte that I am well yours, and
 shall be aslonge as I live in this worlde, for I take³ you
 for one of my best frendes³ / And whan Reynawde
 herde the debona'ite⁴ & the kynde wordes of the kyng,⁴ **16**
 he cast hymself to the fete of hym / and in likewise
 dyde all his bredern, and thanked hym moche / and
 wyte that reynawde & his bredern abode in paris wyth
 grete ioye⁵ & playsure⁵ vnto the daye of the bataylle **20**
 that shold be of his children / And this hangyng, rey-
 nawde had doon make good harneys for his children,
 and had pourveyed two goode horses for theym /

Reynawde next
 morning thanks
 Charlemagne for
 his kindness
 towards his
 children.

The sons of
 Aymon then
 dwell happily
 in Paris.

On the day of the
 battle the sons of
 Foulques appear
 before Charle-
 magne.

Whan the daye of the bataylle was come, the **24**
 children of foulques of moryllon cam & pre-
 sented them afore the kyng redy for to fyghte. And
 whan the kyng sawe theym / he sayd to theym /
 'Children, ye have had evyll counseyll⁶ to callenge the **28**
 sones of reynawd of mountalban as ye have doon.⁶ For I
 am sure it shall repente you / but thys is not the fyrste
 iawte that your linage hathe doon / nor it shalle not
 be the laste / I fere me of it.' And whan ther'e **32**

¹ grant, F. orig. ² au matin, F. orig. Z. vii. back.

³⁻³ pour m'en amy, F. orig. Z. vii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ de Charlemaigne, F. orig. Z. vii. back.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

⁶⁻⁶ de faire ung si fort appel, F. orig. Z. viii.

ganellon and all they of the linage of foulques of morillon herle the ¹kyнге speke soo, they were so gretely abashed / that they wyste not what they
 4 sholde doo / but kepte all theyr peas, and answerde noo worde. And thenne sayd constans to the kyнге,
 'Syre, we praye you for god that ye wylle telle vs the place where we shall fighte agenste our ennyes'² /
 8 Thenne stode vp the duke naymes of bavyre / and sayd / 'Syre, constans speketh well ; ye must devise
³the place, and where they shall fyghte two agenst two / or one agenst a nother alone.'³ 'Naymes,' sayd
 12 the kyнге / 'I wylle that ye Iudge this matere' / 'sire,⁴ syth that it playse you soo / I shall bespeke it wyth a goode wylle. ⁵Syre,' sayd the duke naymes⁵ /
 'me semeth / because that constans hathe callid the
 16 sones of reynaude ⁶to batayll bothe for one matere⁶ / that they oughte to fyghte two agenst two / and all foure togyder.' 'Syre,' sayd reynawde / 'the duke naymes sayth ryght well'⁷ / 'By my feythe, reynaude,'
 20 sayd the kyнге charlemagne / 'and I graunte it soo / but I wylle that the bataylle be made in the Isle of
 our lady wythin saveyne, to morowe in the mornynge' / And whan kyнге charlemagne had sayd thus / the
 24 barons toke leve of hym / and eche of theym wente to their lodgys, and reynawd also, the whiche toke his two sones wyth hym. and the two sones of foulques of moryllon wente also wyth theyr frendes.⁸ Whan
 28 reynaude & his bredern had souped / and had made goode chere / he made brynge harneys ynoughe, and made alarde & rycharde / and his two chyldren,

Constant asks Charlemagne where they shall fight.

The Emperor fixes the place in the Isle of our Lady.

¹ Fol. K.K. iii.

² et comment nous devons faire cest assavoir se nous combatrons deux contre deux ou ung contre ung, F. orig. Z. viii.

³⁻³ que lon doit faire, F. orig. Z. viii.

⁴ dist le due naymes, F. orig. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

⁶⁻⁶ traictres sans riens nommer et rohars lautre, F. orig. Z. viii.

⁷ et juge leaulment, F. orig. Z. viii.

⁸ et parens, F. orig.

The four brethren
and Reynawde's
children arm
themselves.

¹aymonet & yonnet,¹ to be armed. And thenne he
made to be shewed to aymonet & to yonnet how they
sholde defende theymselfe of theyr ennyes, and in
what maner they sholde assaylle theym / And whan ⁴
this was doon / reynaude dyde sende his chyldren to
saynte vyctor, and the traytours went to saynt germayn,
²for to watche ³that nyghte.² And whan the daye
came, a bysshop, that was of the linage of constans & of ⁸
rohars, sange masse afore his eosins ; and the bysshop
turpyn sayd masse a fore the sones of reynawd⁴ /
whiche was wyth theym at saynt vyctor / and also the
twelve peres of fraunce / And whan the yong knyghtes ¹²
had herde the masse, they came all in their harneys to
the palays byfore the kyng charlemagn / And whan
the kyng sawe theym / he called his nevewe row-
lande, & oliver, the duke naymes of bavere, & richarde ¹⁶
of normandy, and sayd to theym, 'Lordes, ye ben
all my men. I commaunde you vpon the trouth that
ye owe to me, that ye goo kepe the feelde by suche
maner that my honoure be saved bi it, and that ye ²⁰
kepe to every man his ryght / For by the feith that I
owe to god / yf there be ony man soo hardy that wylle
doo ony owtrage / I shall angre hym ryght sore /
Wherfore I wylle that ye passe the water of sayne ²⁴
in to the ysle wyth the fyghters, and that ye bere
wyth you the halowes for to make theym swere ther-
vpon, afore they shall entre in to the feelde / that they
goo to it all in goode quarelle truly.' 'Syre,' sayd the ²⁸
barons / 'we shall doo your commaundemente, and
also we shall kepe therein well your honour / for we
ben bounde therto.' 'Lordes,' sayd the kyng charle-
magn, 'ye speke well,⁵ but ye muste take gode hede ³²
well to all / For there shall be grete folke gadred of

Bishop Turpin
says masse before
them next morn-
ing.

The Emperour
commands his
peers to keep
good order during
this battle,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. ²⁻² des prez, F. orig. Z. viii. back.

³ Fol. K.K. iii. back. ⁴ de montauban, F. orig.

⁵ et loyaulment, F. orig. Z. viii. back.

the one parte / and of the other / wherfore I fere me
 that some medlynge shall hap amonge theym / For
 rohars is full of grete treyson, and all his frendes, I
 4 know it well. And of the other parte / Reynawd &
 his brethern are right puyssaunt & wyse / and have
 grete power wyth theym, and they wylle not see
 theymselfe wronged. and namely, Richarde the broder
 8 of reynawd / For & he be ones angry / he spareth
 1 nother kyng nor erle. And therefore I fere hym
 moost of all the other, for he wolde ones have slayn
 me / I am yet wel remembred therof / Of reynawde I
 12 doubte noo thyng / for he is in every thyng reson-
 able.² ‘Syre,’ sayd the duke naymes, ‘be not dys-
 mayed of noo thyng, for we shall kepe well your
 ryght & your honour wythoute to doo³ ony wronge to
 16 ony body’ / This hangyng, the children of foulques of
 moryllon went to the sayd isle / where as the kyng
 charlemagne had tolde theym that they sholde fyghte /
 And whan they were passed over the ryver in to the
 20 ysle wyth theyr horses, they bounde theym / and
 thenne they set theymselfe down vpon the fayr grasse /
 waytyng after theyr aduersary. Now here what
 the traytours had ordeyned / Ye oughte to wyte that
 24 while the kyng charlemagne had spoken wyth his
 barons ⁴as ye have herde,¹ Berenger, and locke, & gryffen
 of haute branche dyde put theymself in a busshe /
 nyghe by the sayd isle of our lady / and had proposed
 28 that yf the sones of reynawde had the beter of the
 feble agenst the two other sones of moryllon / that
 themne they sholde yssue oute vpon theym wyth a
 ryght grete nombre of folke, for to slee theym sham-
 32 fully.

for fear there
 may be too much
 fighting among
 the various
 companies of
 knights.

Duke Naymes
 counsels the
 Emperour to fear
 nothing, for they
 will keep good
 order.

The treacherous
 barons meanwhile
 put themselves in
 ambush to slay
 Reynawde's sons
 if they should be
 victorious in the
 battle.

Whan themne reynawde sawe that it was tyme
 that his sones sholde goo to the isle for to

¹ Fol. K.K. iv. ² et bien amesure. F. orig. Z. viii. back.

³ dooo. orig. ⁴ omitted, F. orig.

accomplisshē theyr bataylle / he called aymonet, and
 sayd to hym / ‘Come hyder, fayr sone. ye be the eldest /
 and therefore ye oughte to be honoured a fore the yonger
 brother. holde, I gyve you flamberde, my goode swerde / 4
 by the whiche ye shall take vengauce of thise tray-
 tours / For ye ben in the right / and they in the
 wronge.’ ‘Fader,’ sayd aymonet, ‘ye may be in a
 surete that ye shall see thys daye suche a thyng that 8
 shall be to your hertes ioye, for ¹we shall brynge the
 traytours to theyr shamfull dethe / ²and it please god ² /
 And whan reynaud herde his sone soo valiauntly speke,
 he was glad / and kissed hym / and thenne he gaff hym 12
 his benedyctyon / and in lyke wyse to yonnet. And
 whan he had don this, he broughte his brethern & his
 children to y^e isle of our lady. And whan they were
 over, he & his bredern came agen towarde the kyng / 16
 But as they wolde have goon / there came a messenger
 that ascryed to reynaud as lowde as he mighte / ‘Rey-
 nawde, haue mercy on thy children / For yf thou see
 not well to theym they be lost / Wyte that gryffen of 20
 haute braunche is embusshed wyth a grete nombre of
 folke by the isle for to slee thy chyldren’ / And whan
 reinawde vnderstode thise wordes, he blusted rede in
 his face all for *angre* / and said / ‘Ha, swete fraunce / 24
 that it is grete *dommage* that ye maye never be wyth-
 out traytours’ / And whan he had sayd this / he called
 his brother richarde / and said to hym, ‘Fair broder,
 goo wythout taryeng / and arme yourself / and doo 28
 arme all our folke, and thenne brynge theym to the
 isle, and yf the false traytour gryffen of hautbraunche
 come for to greve my children, slee hym incontynent.
 and whan ye be there, doo that ye may be seen of 32
 bothe partyes / And for god kepe well, yf the sones of
 foulques of moryllon have the better, that ye helpe not

Reynawde gives
his famous sword
to his eldest son;

he blesses both
his children,
and brings them
into the Isle of
our Lady.

A messenger tells
Reynawde of the
plot being laid
against his sons.

He orders his
brother Richard
to take his folk
armed into the
isle, to protect his
children.

¹ Fol. K.K. iv. back.

²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

in noo wyse my children, but lete them deye yf it
 come soo. For it were grete dyshonour for us yf ye
 dyde otherwise' / 'Broder,' sayd rycharde / 'lete me
 4 alone therof / our worship shall be saved by the grace
 of god. For I wolde not helpe if it came soo, for all
 the goode of the worlde / For all our live dayes we
 sholde be rebuked for it, and all our linage also' / And
 8 whan rychard had sayd soo / he departed fro his
 brothern / and went & armed hym & all his folke /
 and ¹thenne thei lighted on horsbacke, and went anone
 there as reynaude had sayd. This hangynge, went
 12 reynawde² to the kynge in hys paleys / and whan the
 kynge sawe him / he sayd to him, 'Reynawd, ye be right
 welcom.' 'Syre,' sayd reynaude / 'god encrease your
 honour' / And whan charlemagn saw not rycharde
 16 wyth his brethern, he toke some susspectyon of him, &
 sayd to reynaude, 'Where is your broder richarde, that
 he is not here wyth thother?' / 'Sire,' sayd reynaude,
 'he is goon there as I have sent hym, but take noo
 20 susspectyon at all for hym' / 'nomore I doo not,' sayd
 Charlemagne, 'as longe as ye be alive; but we must goo
 vpon the towre of sayne for to see the bataylle of your
 children' / 'lete vs goo there, sire,' sayd reynaude,
 24 'whan it playse you' / Thenne went they vpon the
 towre, and wyth theym the bysshop turpyn, salamon of
 breteyne, ogier the dane, guydellon of bavere, & many
 other barons.

and from thence
 to the Tower of
 Seine with
 Charlemagne and
 many of his
 barons.

28 **T**hus as the kynge charlemagn was goon vpon the
 towre for to see the bataylle / he loked, & sawe
 come³ the broder of reynaud / and a grete company of
 men armed / and whan charlemain sawe hym he knewe
 32 hym well / for he bare his owne cote of arnes. and
 richarde had doon soo, for bi cause he sholde be
 knowen / And whan charlemagne sawe this / he was

¹ Fol. K.K. v. ² a paris, F. orig. M. i. back.

³ richart, F. orig. M. ii.

The Emperor asks Reynawde why Richard is gone to the battle-field with so large a company of armed men.

all abasshed of it / and thenne he called reynawde, & sayd to hym, ‘What wylle ye doo, reynaude? wille ye dishonour me? have ye forgotten all redi your trouthe?’ ‘Syre,’ sayd reynaude, ‘nay, save your reverens / but I 4 wylle serve you & worshyp you as my soverayn lord’ / ‘whi,’ said the kyng charlemagn, ‘is rycharde goon in to the isle of our laly wyth soo grete felishyp for to breke the felde? of the whiche thyng / I shall 8 be dyshonoured’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd reynawd, ‘have noo doubte therof / for I take god to surete & waraunt that knoweth alle ¹thynges / that rycharde shall doo no thyng that shall torne to your dishonour ne to noo 12 damage to you / and I shall telle you why my broder rycharde hathe put himself in armes. ye must wyte that the traitour gryffen of haute braunche is embussed vnder saynt marcell in a garden, with a grete nombre of 16 folke armed / that wyll breke your felde for to slee my children / And therefore hathe my broder rycharde armed him for to socour theym yf nede be / and yf ye see that rycharde doo ony thyng agenst your wylle & com- 20 maundement / here I am that vpon me take the vengeance’ / ‘Is it trouthe,’ sayd charlemagn, ‘that gryffen hathe doon soo as ye saye’ / ‘ye,’ sayd reynawd, ‘verely / for I wolde not telle you otherwyse’ / Ryghte angry 24 was charlemagne whan he herde that reynawde had tolde hym / Thenne he sware god, & all his sayntes / that yf he myght take gryffen of haut braunche / that he sholde make him to be hanged, and all his folke wyth 28 him. He called thenne salamon & the erle of poytees, & gnydellon of bayere, & said to theym, ‘Lordes, make me anone a thousande knyghtes to be armed / For I wylle goo in to the isle for to see the pryde of 32 thise traytours. And I swere you by saynte Iames, yf I maye, they shall doo me noo more dyshonoure; and yf I can fynle theym / they shall abyte it full derely’ /

Reynawde informs Charlemagne of the traitor's plot against his sons.

Charlemagne swears to revenge this treacherous deed;

he orders a thousand knights to be armed to accompany him into the isle to see the battle.

¹ Fol. K.K. v. back.

‘Syr,’ sayd reynaude, ‘ye speke like a kyng.’ The barons thenne dyde that the kyng charlemagn had sente in to the isle, saw rycharde wyth his folke in 4 armes¹ / And whan rowlande sawe² that they were armed / he was not well contente wyth it, and sayd to the other barons that were come wyth hym for to kepe the feelde, ‘What wylle rycharde doo / blame have the 8 kyng yf he take not vengau^{nce} vpon reynaude of that they have doon agenst his *commandement*.’ ‘by my feyth,’ sayd oliver & the duke naymes, ‘ye saye well’ / Thenne sayd ogyer / ‘lordes, I promyse^{3 4} that Reynawd 12 knoweth noo thyng of that that rycharde dooth’ / Thus as the peres of fraunce were spekyng of that richarde was come to the feelde⁵ in armes,⁵ Gryffen yssued out of his busschement wyth his folke, by cause 16 he was a ferde that richarde wold greve the children of foulques of moryllon. And whan rowlande saw him / he cried to hym with a hye voys, ‘By god, traytour, this shall not avaylle you, for afore that ony stroke be 20 gyven of theym, they shall make theyr othe / and ye shall abyge full derely that ye have doon.’ Right sory was rowland whan he sawe the fowle treyson that gryffen wolde have broughte abowte / This hangyng, 24 cam there charlemagn wyth a grete company of folke well armed, and whan he sawe rowland, he sayd to hym, ‘Nevewe, why doo ye suffre the outrage that the sones of foulques of morillon wolde doo to the children 28 of reynawd of mountalban / I blamed reynawd / by cause his broder had armed him, but I knowe now well

Richard enters the field, also Griffon issues out of his ambush.

Roland is very wrath at the treachery of Griffon.

¹ or avez vous bien dist. Passes vous mesmes en lisle et qui fera outre vostre commandement quil soit pugny a la rigueur tellement que ung chescun y preigne exemple. Lors les gens du roy *sen* alerent sus lisle ainsi que le roy lauoit commande la ou Ilz trouverent richart qui estoit mis en tel lieu que chescun le pouvoit bien voir, F. orig. M. ii.

² richart qui estoit en armes, F. orig. M. ii.

³ sur ma foy, F. orig. M. ii. back. ⁴ Fol. K.K. vi.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted, F. orig.

that they had reyson.' 'Sir,' sayd roulande, 'none can beware of traytours' / 'nevew,' sayd charlemagn, 'ye saye trowth / but by the feyth that I owe to god, I shall make theym all to be hanged in dyspyte of all theyr 4 linage, onoly for the treyson that they have doon this daye' / 'by god, sire,' sayd rowlande, 'ye shall doo well.' And thenne cam there reynawd vpon a palfrei wythout swerde; and whan rouland sawe hym / he sayd 8 to hym, 'Sir reynaude, is it your wille that richarde your broder is come hither in armes' / 'sire roulande,' sayd reynaude / 'ye verely / For noo thyng that I have doon shall not be hyd from you. Ye have now seen 12 the treyson that the traytours wolde have wroughte agenst my children / And therefore whan I knewe theyr falshode / I commaunded my brother Rycharde that he sholde put hymselfe shortly in armes wyth my men, 16 for to socour them if the traytours ¹came theym vpon. And yf ye thynke that Rycharde or I have doo amys in ony thyng, soo lete the kynge make iustyce of it' / 'By my soule,' sayd rowlande, 'nother you nor your 20 broder be not to be blamed / but ye have doon as good knyghtes sholde doo / And I promyse you that your enmyes shall be this day broughte to shame & confusion' / 24

Whan Rycharde of mountalban sawe charlemagne / he knewe well that he was come for to kepe the feelde, and that the traytours sholde not conne doo ony thinge to his nevews / Soo sayd he to his folke, 28 'lete vs take of our harneys, For sith that the kynge is here hymselfe, we nede not to wayte here noo more' / Thenne wente rycharde & his folke, and dysarmed theym / and whan rycharde had doon soo / he 32 lighted agen vpon his horse / and came agen over the ryver of sayne, swymmyng vnto the forsayd isle.²

Reynawde advances riding on a palfrey;

he tells Roland why Richard carries arms for the protection of his children.

As soon as Richard sees the Emperor advance with so many folk, he and his men disarm themselves.

¹ Fol. K.K. vi. back.

² la quelle chose vist charlemaigne, F. orig. M. iii.

and whan he was on londe, he spored his horse / and
 made hym to lepe thre or four lepes afore the com-
 pany / and thenne he cam streyghte afore the kyng,
 4 and made to hym reverens honourably / Whan the
 kyng sawe richarde / he sayd to hym / 'and ye,
 richarde, wylle ye dishonoure me / that are come in
 armes for to breke my feelde?' 'Syre,' sayd rycharde,
 8 'save your grace, for I never thoughte it / but wyte it
 well for certeyn, that yf griffen of haute braunche had
 come for to greve myn nevewes, I wolde have made
 his forhede for to swete. Syre, ye be our soverayn
 12 lorde, so oughte ye to mayntene & kepe vs / and soo
 shall I telle you a thyng afore al your barons, that yf
 ye hyleve the traytours of Mauzt / ye shall ones
 repente it / I am well apayed that ye / [&] your twelve
 16 peres have seen the treyson of griffen of hautbraunche,
 how he wold have slayn myn nevews' / 'Ha, bi god,'¹
 sayd charlemagne, 'ye saye trouth, he is ²well worthy
 to be blamed. and I telle you they that shall be over-
 20 come shall be hanged / nor shall not be saved for none
 of theyr linage' / 'Sire,' sayd rycharde, 'it playseth
 me well, but I telle you that yf I sholde deye / I
 sholde never suffre my nevews to be wronged' / 'By
 24 my hede,' sayd the kyng / 'ye shal see that I shall do
 reyson to every party / For I shall bryng theym
 togyder / lete god helpe the ryght!' Thenne whan
 charlemagne had sayd soo / he wente to the two
 28 chyldren of foulques of moryllon / and sayd to theym /
 'Now, lordes, hyghe you of that ye have to doo / goo
 and swere vpon the halowes, that iustly ye entre in
 this quarell' / 'Syre,' sayd they, 'we shall doo it
 32 wyth ryght good wylle / for the children of reynawde
 ben deed, but yf that they confesse / that their fader
 slew our fader by treyson.' Thenne spake the bysshop
 turpyn, and sayd / 'lordes, come hither / and swere

Charlemagne
 rebukes Richard
 for bearing arms.

Richard excuses
 his conduct,

and vows he will
 always defend
 his nephews
 against all
 traitors.

The Emperor
 commands the
 sons of Foulques
 to swear that they
 enter into this
 quarrel in good
 faith.

¹ richart, F. orig. M. iii.

² Fol. K.K. vii.

vpon the halowes / and see to that ye forswere not
yourself / For he that forswereth hymselfe shall be
overthrowen¹ / ²noo doubtte therof² / whan the bysshop
turpyn had sayd this, the two sones of foulques of 4
moryllon kneled down afore thalowes / and sware that
reynawde of mountalban had slayn theyr fader by
treyson / and after they had made theyr oth, they
kyssted the halowes / and offred two besans of golde / 8
and thenne wente & lighted vp on their horses. And
thus as they lighted / they were to nye eche other, soo
that thone hurted the other soo harde that thei felle
doun almoost bothe to the erthe. And whan reynawde 12
sawe this, he sayd to thother barons, 'here is an evyll
token; I byleve that they ben forsworne.' Thys
hangyng, came the chyldren of reynaude, that kneled
afore the halowes, & swore that the two sones of 16
foulques had lied falsely all that they had sayed / And
thenne they putte theyr handes vpon ³the halowes /
and offred a ryche gyfte. and the bysshop turpyn
gaaff theym the benedycyon / and in like wyse the 20
kyunge charlemain / and all the other barons / and
thenne of reynawde / and of his brethern / And after
they wente & mounted vpon their horses lightly.

Whan the foure champanyons were vpon theyr 24
horses, they made none other taryeng / but
gaaff the spores to their horses, and ranne the one
agenste thother, & smote eche other in their sheeldes
so sore that the speres flew in peces wythout that ony 28
of theym felle to the grounde. And whan they had
broken theyr speres, they set hande to theyr swerdes /
Thenne aymonet, that helde flamberde in his hande,
sayd to yonnet his brother / 'I praye you, brother / 32
thynke to doo well / For yf ye helpe me, they shall be
vtterly shamed & dyscomfyted, as traytours as they

They take their
oath before
Bishop Turpin.

Reynawde's sons
also take their
oath

and receive a
blessing from
Bishop Turpin
and the Emperor.

The four cham-
panyons begin the
battle.

Aymonet begs his
brother Johnnet
to fight valiantly.

¹ et mort, F. orig. M. iii. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Fol. K.K. vii. back.

ben' / 'Broder,' sayd yonnet, 'doubte not / for I
 shall never faylle you to the dethe; and also we
 oughte to recomforte vs / For we ben in the right /
 4 and they ben in the wronge' / Whan the two brethern
 had spoke ynoughe, they went bothe atones vpon
 theyr ennyes / wyth theyr swerdes in their handes.
 And thenne aymonet overtoke constans wyth flamberde
 8 his swerde / and gaaff hym suche a stroke that the
 swerde slided vpon the vyser / and kut it and his nose
 a sondre. And whan aymonet sawe the nose of his
 enmye falle to the erthe, he mocked hym, and sayd,
 12 'By god, constans / it is worse wyth you than it was
 afore, for ye shall never be wythout a mocke for
 that, that this stroke hath doon to you / Flamberde
 that slewe your fadre / and soo shall it doo you, & it
 16 playse god.' And whan rohars sawe that his brother
 was so sore wounded, he ranne vpon yonnet / and gaaff
 hym soo myghty a stroke vpon his ¹helme / soo that yf
 it had not be of goode stele, he had slayne hym
 20 wythoute faylle / This hangynge, aymonet ranne agayne
 vpon constans / and gaaff hym suche a stroke vpon his
 helme / that he made hym to bowe his backe vpon
 the sadle / and for the grete myghte of the stroke
 24 the horse muste nedes falle down vpon his knees / and
 smote his mussell in to the erth / And whan the
 horse felte that stroke, he rose lightly vp agen all
 afrayed / and began to renne thurgh the medowes
 28 magre of his mayster, as madde, nor constans had not
 the myghte to rule hym / by cause he was amased &
 astonyed of that stroke / that he had receyved / And
 thenne aymonet & yonnet wente both vpon rohars,
 32 and beganne to fare fowle wyth hym. And whan
 rohars sawe hymself soo sharply handled / he began
 to crye wyth a hie voys, 'Broder! where be you? shall
 ye lete me thus to be slayn falsly?' Constans, that

Aymonet over-
 takes Constant,
 and gives him a
 grievous wound,

and vows that his
 father's sword
 shall slay him;

he brings the
 horse of Constant
 to the ground;

the animal is so
 frightened that
 he flies through
 the field with his
 master.

¹ Fol. K.K. viii

ranne thorough the medowe, was comen agen to hymself, and apeased his horse a lityll, herde his broder crye / Soo came he agayn to hym / and smote aymonet vpon his helme a grete stroke; but the helme was 4 goode, and dommagid hym not / And whan constans sawe that he had not slayne aymonet wyth his stroke / he wende to have goon oute of his wytte; and of the other parte, he saw the place that was all covered 8 wyth the blode of his broder / soo wyst not constans what to doo / For aymonet gaaffe hym soo moche to doo.

Johnnet meanwhile takes Rohart by the helmet, and would have strangled him if Constant had not returned and rescued him.

Thys hangyng, yonnet toke rohars by the helme, and 12 wolde have strangled hym bi fyne force / But whan constans saw that / he spored his horse wyth the spores, and shoved hym bytwene rohars & yonnet, soo that it was force to yonnet to lete goo his prise, wolde 16 he or noo / And whan aymonet sawe that constans had delivered rohars from the handes of yonnet / he wente, and ranne vpon constans, ¹and smote him wyth flamberde vpon his sheelde soo harde *that* he made of it 20 two peces / Shortly to speke / the children of reynawde hasted someche the ii. sones of foulques of moillon that thei began to lese place, and were soo wery / that they asked none other / but to rest theimself / But 24 aymonet & yonnet had none other wylle but for to fight styl / and I telle you for certein, that they were all iiiii. soo sore wounded that they loste moche blode, for thei had fought longe² / and whan constans had soiourned 28 a lityll / he cam vpon aymonet, & gaffe him suche a stroke,³ soo that he made him a grete wounde / but no deed wounde. And whan aymonet saw hym so wounded he gaff constans soo grete a stroke vpon the ere, that he 32 bare it away wyth all the iawe bone / whan charle-

All the four champions are badly wounded;

¹ Fol. K.K. viii. back.

² sans eulx repouser ne les ungs ne les aultres. F. orig. M. iv. back.

³ sus lespaulle . . F. orig. M. iv. back.

main saw that grete stroke, he myght not forbere /
 but he sayd / 'By god, now is he worse arayed thanne
 he was byfore / for the two sones of foulques of morillon
 4 ben shamed & confuse.' 'Syre,' said reynaud, 'thei
 have well deserved it / for thei have forsworne theym-
 self falsly.' This hangyng, yonnet went vpon Rohars /
 and gaff him so grete a stroke vpon his helme,¹ that he
 8 brake it, and made his swerde to entre in his hede a
 fynger depe / Wyte it that the bataille lasted longe
 thone agenst the other. and it happed that by force of
 fightyng / thone agenste the other / they were fight-
 12 yng two & two togyder, well a bowe shot from eche
 other / and soo made they two bataylles. For aymonet
 fought agenst constans, and yonnet faughte agenst
 robars, whiche was sore greved, for yonnet had brought
 16 him to therthe / and whan yonnet sawe that he had
 brought down rohars / he said that it were shame to
 fight with hym on horsbacke agenst hym on fote, soo
 lighted he down for to fyght wyth rohars / But whan
 20 he had habandouned his horse / Incontynent, the sayd
 horse ranne to the horse of rohars, ²and wold have
 strangled hym / and whan charlemagn saw that, he be-
 gan to lawghe wyth it, & sayd / 'By my feyth, we have
 24 iii. bataylles; but I see well that yonnet hath broughte
 rohars soo lowe that he maye noo more.'³ Whan rohars
 sawe that he myght nomore endure the grete strokes of
 yonnet / he began to crye, & sayd, 'Ha, fayr broder
 28 constans / where are ye that ye com not & helpe me
 that are soo good a knyght, and that toke first the
 quarell in hande / wherof it goth full evyl wyth vs.
 For yf ye socour me not now, I shall deye incontynent' /
 32 and whan constans herde his broder crye thus / he left
 aymonet / and went toward yonnet / for to helpe his

but the sons of
 Reynawde fare
 the best.

Rohart cries to
 his brother for
 succour,

¹ helme. *orig.*

² Fol. L.L. i.

³ mais va en recullant, car il ne peult plus souffrir les grans coups que yonnet luy donne, F. orig. M. v.

but Constant is
so badly wounded
he can hardly
fight any more.

broder / but wyte it well that he went not very sounde
from aymonet / for he had made him moo than xx.
woundes / and whan constans was com to his broder,
incontyneant, he ranne vpon yonnet with his horse. 4
And whan aymonet sawe that / he began to crye after
constans, & sayd / 'By my soule, he baptysed you full
yll that named you constans. For I sawe never more
cowarde than ye be that soo renneth awaye for fere of 8
me' / and whan he had sayd soo / he ranne after for to
socour his broder yonnet. And whan he was come
there / he went a fresshe vpon constans / and constans
vpon him / the whiche gaff him a grete stroke vpon his 12
helme, but the stroke slided vpon the horse, & slew hym
wyth all / And whan aymonet sawe hym a gronde /
he righted hym quye[k]ly, & smote constans vpon his
helme, & it was soo harde that flamberde cowde not 16
entre in it, and y^e stroke slided vpon the viser / and
brest it, and a grete parte of his visage, soo that the
teeth were seen playnly, and wyth that felle the stroke
vpon the horse necke / soo that he kut it in two / ¹and 20
soo felle thorse deed to the erth¹ /

Aymonet's horse
is slain by
Constant,

who also loses his
horse.

Store abashed was constans ²whan he sawe his horse
slayn.² and thenne aymonet sayd to him / 'By
god, false ³traytour, now shalt you deye / ye dide yll 24
whan ye called ever my fader of treyson, whiche is as
true a knyghte as is ony in all the world / but now is
the daye come that ye shall aby it full dere.' And
whan reynaude herde his sone speke thus / he was right 28
glad of it, and thanked god therof hertly / and whan
aymonet sawe constans vpon his fete agen, he went him
vpon / and hasted him right sore with grete strokes, so
that constans had no power to strike one stroke more / 32
but he wente abacke here & there for to eschewe the

The two knyghts
then recommence
their fight on
foot.

¹-1 et constans cheust a terre moult felonneusement mais
incontinent se releva au mieulx quil peust, F. orig. M. v.

²-2 omitted, F. orig.

³ Fol. L.L. i. back.

strokes of aymonet / And whan constans sawe that, he
 wyste noo more what to doo, he cast his sheelde to
 therthe, and toke aymonet by the wast for to wrastle
 4 wyth hym. And whan aymonet sawe this he was not
 aferde of it, for he was strong & lighte / soo toke he
 constans by the helme, and drewe it towarde hym wyth
 suche myght / that he pulled it from the hede of him.
 8 And whan constans sawe hym so sore handled / he
 cried vpon his broder rohars, & sayd, ‘ ha, broder, socour
 me, for I have noo power for to defende myself’ / Whan
 rohars herde his broder calle thus / he was full sory
 12 that he myght not helpe hym, for he had loste soo
 moche blode that he myght not well stande on his fete,
 but alwayes he forced hymself somoche / that he came
 vnto his broder constans / and wende for to have smyten
 16 aymonet from behynde, but he dyde not, by cause
 aymonet sawe hym come, and went & smote hym suche
 a stroke¹ that he felde hym to the erthe / And thenne
 went agen vpon constans / and gaaff hym suche a stroke /
 20 that ²he smote almoste his lefte arme of.² Thenne be-
 gan constans to cry, & sayd / ‘ ha, fayr broder, socour me,
 or elles I am deed’ / ‘ Broder,’ sayd rohars, ‘ I can gyve
 you nother socours nor helpe, for I am myself nere
 24 goon’ / And whan charlemagn sawe this, he sayd, ‘ by
 god, now are deed the sones of foulques of moryllon by
 theyr ³false wyt.’ ‘ Syre,’ sayd ogyer, ‘ ye oughte not
 to recke / for they mayntened a false quarell.’ ‘ ye
 28 saye trouth,’ sayd charlemagn. ‘ Now their falshode
 apereth well.’ Whan reynaude saw that his chyldren
 were to their above, he was right gladde of it / but soo
 was not ganellon / for he was soo angry for it, that he
 32 became as blacke as a moure. Thenne called the said
 ganellon, berenger, hardoeke, henry of lion, & pygnabell

Constant calls to
his brother to
help him.

Rohart advances,
but is again
struck down by
Aymonet.

Reynawde
rejoices over the
victory of his
children.

¹ parmy les espaulles . . F. orig. M. v. back.

²⁻² quil luy trancha tout le visaige, F. orig. M. v. back.

³ Fol. L.L. ii.

of moryllon, & sayd to theym, 'Lordes, now be we all dishonoured / for the sones of foulques of moryllon are dyscomfyted. I wo'de fayn socour theym yf I durste / but I fere to sore the kyng that is there wyth grete 4 pyussance' / 'Syre,' sayd hardres or hardocke / 'woo is me for it / but we can not doo none other thyng as for this tyme, therefore we must refreyne our wrath, and shewe a good face / to thende that noo medling 8 falle not vpon vs / and lete vs abyde tyll tyme come / that we may avenge vs herof.'

The kindred of Foulques vow to revenge themselves upon Reynawde's sons.

This hangyng, aymonet sawe that he had smyten constans a deed wounde / soo was he right glad 12 of it. 'By god, broder, ye have doon yll that ye have slain this false traitour / for I wold have slain hym myn owne handes; but sith ye have brought it soo ferre, make an ende of hym atones, & I shall goo 16 slee rohars' / 'Broder,' sayd aymonet, 'ye speke well, now goo slee thone & I the other, for thus oughte men to do wyth traytours' / Thezre ranne the two bredern vpon theyr ennyes that leye on grounde / that is to 20 wyte, vpon constans, to whom he sayd all on hie, by cause all they that loked vpon sholde here it / 'Telle me, constans, false traytour / why dyde ye calle my fader of treyson, wythstandyng that men know well that he 24 is one of the trueste knyghtes of the worlde / And that he slewe your fader in his body defendyng / where as your fader had purchaced for to have slayn him by treyson. ¹Now telle me your falshode, and confesse 28 your treyson afore the kyng / ²or elles I shall now cut your throte' ² / 'Aymonet,' sayd constans, 'for god have mercy on me / For I yelde me to you' / and thenne he toke hym his swerde / And whan aymonet had 32 the swerde of the sayd constans / he toke hym vp and broughte hym afore the kyng charlemagn, to whom

Aymonet and Jolmet run upon their enemies to slay them.

Aymonet commands Constant to confess his falsehood, or he will kill him instantly. Constant yields himself to Aymonet, who presents him to Charlemagne.

¹ Fol. L.L. ii. back.

²⁻² ou autrement vous estes mort, F. orig. M. vi.

he sayd, 'Syre, holde this traytour, & doo wyth hym
 as reyson requyreth' / and whan charlemagn sawe this,
 he was glad of it, & sayd to aymonet, 'Frende, ye
 4 have doon wel your devour, I can no more aske of
 you / and wyte it that whan thother is vaynquyshed /
 I shall gare them bothe to be hanged.' 'Syre,' sayd
 aymonet / 'doo your wylle wyth theim' / And whan
 8 he had sayd soo, he went agen to his broder yonnet
 for to helpe hym, holdynge his swerde in his hande ¹all
 blody wyth the blode of constans,¹ & said to rohars /
 'By god, false traytour, ye shal deye here anone' / and
 12 wolde have smyten hym / but yonnet *that* sawe that /
 sayd to his broder / 'Fayr broder, slee hym not / nor
 touche him / but goo your way & rest yourself, for I
 wyll conquere hym by my self, as ye have doon
 16 yours' / 'Broder,' sayd aymonet, 'ye saye yll / for it
 was ordeyned that we sholde eche helpe other.' and
 whan yonnet saw that his brother wolde nedes helpe
 agenste his wylle, he sayd vnto hym, 'Fayr broder, I
 20 make myn a vowe to god / yf ye touche rohars I shal
 never love you' / 'broder,' sayd aymonet, 'ye saye not
 well, but I shall forbere me sith it playse you soo;
 but I promyse you, yf I see you in dangeour, I shall
 24 helpe you yf ye sholde slee me' / 'Broder,' sayd
 yonnet, 'I wylle well.' And thenne aymonet wyth-
 drewe him a lityll a backe, and thenne ranne yonnet
 vpon rohars / that rose vp agen for to defende hym-
 28 selfe / thenne gaaffe yonnet to hym soo grete a stroke
 vpon the sholder / that the arme wyth the sholder bone
 felle clene of to the grounde,² and his swerde wythall.
 whan yonnet had gyven that stroke / he put his swerde
 32 agen to the sheth, & said to rohars, 'Thou false ³tray-
 tour, thou must now confesse wyth thy owne mouth
 that reynawd my fader is noo tratour⁴ / but he is one

Aymonet then
 goes to the
 succour of
 Johnnet,

but Johnnet will
 not allow him to
 touch Rohart.

Johnnet wounds
 Rohart again,

and then orders
 him to retract the
 words which he
 spoke against
 Reynawde.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. L.L. iii.

³ strāytour, orig.

⁴ tratoiur, orig.

of the truest knyghtes of the worlde, and yf you wylte not doo soo / thou shalte deye incontynent' / and whan he had sayd soo, he toke rohars by the helme & pulled him to hymwarde so harde that he drew it fro his 4 hede, and began to smyte hym with the pomell of his swerde vpon the bare hed¹ / And whan rohars sawe that he was soo shrewdely handled / he began to crye, & sayd / 'good lorde, have mercy on my soule, for I 8 know well that it is doon wyth my body.' And whan constans herde his broder saye soo / he began to wepe, for he cowde none other doo / and whan yonnet / saw that rohars wolde not forsake that he had said / nor 12 wolde not crye him mercy, he smote hym wyth his owne swerde soo harde that he toke awaye thone legge from the body of hym, and thenne he put his fote vpon hym and sayd, 'Now anone, false traytour, confesse 16 your falshode / or elles ye be now deed,' to the whyche thyng rohars answerde not; and whan yonnet sawe that / he smote hym the hede of / Whan aymonet sawe that his broder yonnet had sleyn rohars / he was glad 20 of it / and went to hym and sayd, 'Broder, ye have doon valiauntly / lorde gramercy, that ye have slayn soo this traytour' / the two bredern toke eeche other by the hande & went to charlemagne, to whom aymonet 24 sayd in this wyse, 'Syre, like it you that we have doon / for we be redy for to doo moche more for you yf ye commaunde us.' 'Fayr sones,' sayd charlemagne / 'ye nede not to doo more, For ye have doon 28 ynough / for constans is overcome / and rohars deed / Now goo reste yourselve / and see that ye have goode² leches for your woundes / And I promyse you that I shall doo³ wyth the traytours as it perteyneth.' And 32 thenne charlemagn commaunded that constans shold behanged / and the body of his broder by him / and

Rohart will not answer him, so he is slain finally by Johnnet.

The two brothers ask Charlemagne if they have fulfilled his commandment.

The Emperor receives them graciously, and orders Constant to be hung with the body of his brother.

¹ de moult grans coups. F. orig. M. vi. back.

² godde, orig.

³ Fol. L.L. iii. back.

whan the kyng had gyven this *commandement*, constans was anone taken, & the body of his broder, and were drawn at horses taylles byfore all their linage /
 4 and thenne were hanged as they had well deserved.
 whan they were hanged, charlemagne sayd, 'Lordes,
 wyte *that* I wold not for a grete thyng that it went
 otherwyse.' wyte it that whan ganellon sawe hange the
 8 ii. sones of folques, that were his nevews / he was sore
 an angred for it, that he almost had lost his wit /
 The^{me} called he hardres, berenger, & malger, that wyste
 more falshode than luecyfer, henry of lion, pynabell, &
 12 geffray, men that never dyde good, & sayd to them,
 'Lordes, ye see how charlemagn hath doon to vs grete
 dyshonour, for he hath doon hange our kynsmen sham-
 fully / but we shall see yet the day that this shame
 16 shall be avenged.' he sayd truth, the traytour, For
 he betrayed afterwarde the xii peres of fraunce / and
 made them all deye at the bataylle of rouncevals.

After these thynges above sayd, reynaude of mount-
 20 **A**lban sawe that his children had vaynquessed
 the children of foulques / he was right glad of it, &
 thanked moche our lord god therof / the^{me} he & his
 brethern went to them and asked how they dyde /
 24 'fader,' sayd the children, 'we do right wel, lorde
 gramery' / The^{me} alarde & guycharde behelde their
 woundes, wherof they were glad / This hangyng, cam
 there charlemagn; & the children cam him agenst, and
 28 kneled afore hym. the^{me} charlemagn asked them,
 'children, how is it wyth you? be ye sore wounded' /
 'Syr,' sayd the children, 'it is well with vs, thanked
 be our lorde & you / we shall soone be hole' / The^{me}
 32 the kyng sent for all his leches, & sayd to them that
 they shoulde ¹loke the woundes of aymonet & of yonnet,
 the whiche thinge they dyde without ony tarieng / and
 after they sayd to the kyng that they made noo doubt

Reynawde is very thankful for the victory of his children.

The Emperor sends for his own physicians to cure Aymonet and Johnnet of their wounds.

¹ Fol. L.L. iv.

Reynawde stays
in Paris until his
children are well.

They all take
leave of Charle-
magne, and
depart for
Montalban.

Reynawde shares
his possessions
between his two
sons,

of them, & that they sholde be soone hole. And after
that the iustice was doon of the sones of foulques of
moryllon, Reynawde abode in paris till his children
were hole / and whan thei were hole, they wente to y^e 4
palays to see the kyng charlemagn, the whiche made
theym good chere, and gaff them many fayr yeftes,
as ben castelles & fortresses of grete name. Thezme
reynaude & his bredern asked leve of the kyng / and 8
he gaff it theym agenst his wylle, and prayed them
that they wold com see hym agen / 'sire,' sayd rei-
nawde / 'we shall doo gladly your commaundement' /
Whan reinaud had taken leve of the king, & also his 12
bredern & children, they toke on their waye towarde
mountalban / and they dyde so moche by their iourneis
that they cam to bourdeus / And whan reynaud had
rest him a lityll, he called his children afore his bredern, 16
& said to them / 'my children / here what I wylle
saye to you / I ordeyn at this tyme that yonnet shall
have arden¹ for his part, & aymonet mountalban / for it
is not long agoo sin I herde saye that god sayd / that 20
the tree that bereth fruyt shall never deye. wyte it
that I have offended god gretyly / and me semeth that
the tyme is now com that I sholde amende myself,
for I fere sore my pour soule / wherfore I shall doo my 24
devour for to yelde it agen to that blessed lorde *that*
made it after hys ymage.' and whan his bredern herde
speke thys, they knewe well what he wolde doo / and
therfore they began to make grete sorow / And whan 28
reynaud sawe that, he sayd to theym, 'forsothe, sires, ye
are not wyse to make suche sorowe, for ye know not yet
what I wylle doo / see ye not that I am yet wyth you,
wherof are ye abashed / be not ye ryche ynough / 32
there is nother of you / but may kepe a thousand
²horses in his stable / Of the other parte, thoughe I am
now hole of my body / thanked be our lorde / yet

¹ dordonne, F. orig.

² Fol. L.L. iv. back.

wylle I gyve in my life to my children their parte /
to the ende that they fall not in discorde after my
dethe; and therefore I wylle that eche of you know
4 fromhens forthon what he shall have.' And whan
reynawde had thus ordeyned for his children / yonnet
departed from his fader¹ wyth his blessinge¹ / and wente
to arleyn,² where they of the londe receyved him to be
8 their lorde, & made to him fewt & homage / And after
that yonnet was gon, reinawd & his bredern wyth
aymonet went to mowntalban / and whan they of
mowntalban sawe their lorde / they were right glad, &
12 receyved him honourably. And whan the feste was
passed, Reynawd commaunded all his subgettes that
thei sholde make their homage vnto his sone aymonet /
and whan al this was doon, and that nyghte was come /
16 every man went to bed / And thenne reynawde entred
his chambre & walked in it tyll it was mydnyght
passed. thenne reynaude vnclothed hymself all naked /
and toke a cote of sory russet vpon his flesshe wythout
20 ony shert, and therupon a grete mantell of the same.
And thus arayed, barefote, and wythout ony wepyn, but
oonly a staaf in his hande for to defende him from the
dogges, yssued out of his chambre / and went oute of
24 y^c paleis / and came to the gate of the towne / and
made it to be opened / and whan the porter sawe his
lorde soo yll, & in soo pourly araye and barefote, he
sayd to him / 'Syre, alas, whether goo ye thus wyth-
28 oute felishyp, and soo yll apoynted? I wylle goo
awake your brethern, & my lorde your sone / for ye
be in grete dangeour of theves, by cause ye have
nother armour nor wepyn for to defende yourself.'
32 'frende,' sayd reynaude, 'lete alone / goo not there /
For my truste is in god, that he shall kepe me from
all dangeour. But thou shalte telle my³ bredern whan

so that there
shall be no
discord between
them after his
death.

Johnnet departs
for Arden,
where he is well
received.

Reynawde com-
mand all his
subjects to serve
Aymonet faith-
fully;

he then sets forth
that night poorly
clad like a hermit.

The porter strives
to prevent his
going,

but Reynawde
will not let him,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. M. viii.

² dordonne, F. orig. M. viii. ³ Fol. L.L. v.

thou seest theym tomorow, that I grete them well / &
 to my sone also / and that they thynke alwayes to do
 well / and that they love eche other as they oughte for
 to doo ; and soo telle theym that thei shalle never see 4
 me more as I trowe, For I goo to save my soule, yf god
 gyve me the grace to doo soo ; and soo shall I deye
 whan it playse god / For thrughe my cause are deed
 many a man, wherof I fele my pour soule greved sore, 8
 and therefore wyll I bere peyn on my body / for it
 doyng penaunce all the remnaunt of my life / and yf
 I may save my soule, I aske none other thyng' / And
 whan reynaude had sayd this, he loked on his fynger, 12
 & toke a rynge wyth a preeyous stone, whiche was
 well worth v.¹ marke, and gaff it to the porter, &
 sayd to him, ' My frende, ye be well rewarded of your
 servyse that ye have doon to me.' ' Syre,' sayd the 16
 porter, ' gramercy of this yefte / but alas, sir, ye put
 now all your countree in grete sorowe for your depart-
 ynge !' ² and the~~ne~~ he began to wepe right sore. This
 hangyng, went reynaude on his waye, thus arayed as ye 20
 have herde ; and as he wente / the porter loked ever-
 more after hym by the lighte aslonge as he myght see
 hym ; and whan he myght nomore see hym / he felle
 down in a swonne to the erthe, and was thus a longe 24
 while / And whan he was come agen to hymselfe, he
 made grete mone / and sin sayd / ' Ha, god, whether
 gooth now my lorde soo pourly arayed' / and after he
 had made grete sorow a longe while / he shet the gate 28
 agen, and went in to his house / And whan he was
 there, he loked vpon the rynge that reynaude had gyven
 hym, and knewe well that it was a ryche yefte / wherof
 he was glad. ¶ We shall leve here to speke a lityll 32
 of the valiaunt reynaud of mountalban, that gooth for

and charges him to tell his people on the morrow that he has gone from them for ever,

to do penance for the safety of his soul;

he gives the porter a ring,

and departs on his way.

The porter grieves sorely for his master.

¹ cent. F. orig.

² or nous est grant mal advenu car nous sommes du hault ou bas, F. orig. M. viii. back.

to save his soule, and to doo penaunce for his sinnes
thorughe the wodes lokyng downwarde / and we shall
speke of ¹his bredern / and of his sone aymonet /

CHAPTER XXVII.

4 ¶ How after that reynaud was goon from
mouztalban ² never for to retorne,³ his
bredern & his sone aymonet made grete
sorow / ⁴whan they knew of it / that he
8 had not take leve of theym.⁴

Now sheweth thystory / that whan the morowe
came, & that aymonet & his vncles were vp,
thei went to y^e chirche / wenyng to haue reynaud
12 there as they were wouⁿte. And whan they sawe him
not come to matynes, they merveyllled sore, and there
was com his chapeleyn for to saye matynes there wyth
hym / the whiche, whan he founde not his mayster in
16 the chirche / he was al abashed, & spered after him to
his bredern. ‘Syre,’ said alard / ‘I wene he be seke, for
god lete vs goo see how he dooth,’ and theⁿe they went
to seke him in his chambre, where they founde hym
20 not / wherof they wende all to have ben dysperate /
‘Lordes,’ sayd alarde, ‘now be we lost / for here ben
his gownes, his shertes, his shone, his swerde, & all his
armours; now is he goon fro vs / I see it well, in pour
24 araye: god be wyth hym!’ And as they were thus
makyng their mone / cam in the porter that made
grete sorowe for the love of his mayster reynawd / And
whan he was come in to the chambre, he began to crie
28 as he had be from hymselfe, & sayd, ‘Fayr lordes,

On the morrow,
when Aymonet
and his uncles go
to church,

they discover
the absence of
Reynawde.

Alarde deploras
his brother's
departure.

¹ Fol. L.L. v. back.

² en guise de pellerin . . . F. orig. M. viii. back.

³ apres ce quil eust departiz ses bien a ses enfans . . . F.
orig. M. viii. back.

⁴⁻⁴ quant ils sceurent quil estoit party, F. orig. M. viii. back.

The porter
delivers his
message to them.

what shall we do sith that we have lost our lorde? For he is goon his wayes wulwarde & barefote, wyth a sory staff in his hande / and he sendeth you gretynge by me, and prayeth you for god, that yf ever ye loved him / 4 that ye wyll worshyp eche other, & that everi man have his part as he hath devysed it / And he dooth you to wyte that ye shall never see hym, for he is goon to save his soule / and soo hathe he gyven me the 8 ryng of his fynger, that ye maye see here' /

The four brethren
and Aymonet
sorrow grievously
over the departure
of Reynawde.

¹ **W**han alarde, guycharde, & richarde, and aymonet herde thyse tydynges / they toke soo grete sorowe at hert that they felle down in a swoune to 12 the erthe. And whan they were come agen to theymselfe / they beganne to make a right grete sorowe, and so mervellouse, that he that had seen it / his hert had be full harde / but he sholde have wepte for pyte. 16 'Alas,' sayd alarde, 'my fayr brother reynawde / ye have lefte vs in moche grete sorowe. Certes it had be moche better for vs that ye had sleyn vs all / than for to have lefte vs in this wise / For fromhens forthe we 20 be noo thyng.' and whan he had sayd soo / he felle agen in a swoune. And whan he was com agen to himself, he pulled his heres of his berde, & scratched his visage² / 'Alas, my broder!' sayd richarde, 'how 24 shall we now live wythout you / Alas! now have we lost him bi whom we have had so grete honour in this worlde. alas, my broder! ther is not your leke vnder the cope of heven, that ever bare swerde, sheelde, or 28 spere / sith that we have lost you, we maye saye, farewell the ioye of this world' / And whan he had said soo, his hert swelled so that he lost his speche, so that he cowde not speke a good while after. Of 32 aymonet & of guycharde / what shall we saye / I promyse you, none can telle ne reherse half of the sorow that they made / so that it was grete pyte to

They all swoon
for grief at the
loss of their
brother.

¹ Fol. L.L. vi. ² moult ydeusement, F. orig. N. i.

beholde. Grete sorow was made of all four for the love
 of reynawd, that was goon as ye have herde / praynge
 our lorde to be wyth him, & to recomforte his bredern.
 4 But presently levethe the [h]istory to speke of alarde,
 guycharde, rycharde, & aymonet that were at mount-
 alban / making their mone / and retorneth to speke of
 reynaude, that was goon at his adventure / sekyng his
 8 brede for to save his soule.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

¶ ¹ How reynawde went to coleyn vpon the
 ryne, where he founde that men cdefyed
 the chirche of saynte peter. And ² there
 12 toke hym a wylle for to serve there the
 masons for the love of oure lorde / and
 dyde so / but at the last thother laborers
 had so grete envy by cause he dide better
 16 his devour than thei, & that he was better
 loved than they of the maisters, for the
 good servyse that he dyde / that they
 slew him, & put hym in a sacke, & casted
 20 him in the water of ryne. But bi the
 wylle of god / his body apered above the
 water, making grete myracles³ / soo that
 he was named a saynte that day that
 24 he was buried.

In this party sheweth thistory, that whan reynawd Reynawde
departs from
Montalban,
 was departed from mountalban / he toke his way

¹ Comment apres ce que regnault fust party de montauban pour son ame saulver, il ala a colougne . . F. orig. N. i. back.

² Fol. L.L. vi. back.

³ guerissant de toutes maladies . . F. orig. N. i. back.

and wanders
through the
woods,
eating nothing
but wild fruit.

He arrives at a
religious house,
where he is given
food by the
monks;

he journeys to
Cologne, where
the church of St.
Peter is being
built;

thorough the wodes, & went a long while that he ete
but apples & medlers wylde all that daye. and whan
the nyghte was com, he layd him down vnder a tree /
and as he wold slepe, he made the signe of the crosse 4
vpon him / and recomended to our lorde, & slept tyll
it was daye. and whan the daye appered, reynaude
rose vp & went on his waye thurgh the wode / and
went evermore through the travers of the wodes wel the 8
space of viii dayes / wythoute ony other mete / but
wylde frute. and soo longe he went by his iourneis
that he cam oute of the wodes / and incontynent
he fonde a hous of religyon, where he abode that 12
night / the monkes wold have gyven him mete /
but he toke no thyng but brede & water. and whan
the daye cam, he went on his waye / and dyde someche
day bi daye that he cam to coleyn vpon the ryn / 16
And whan Reynawde was come to the cyte / he fonde
the chirche of saynte peter a makyng / where were
many masons¹ ²& many laborers, that served them.²
And whan he sawe this / he went in to it, and kneled 20
byfore the hie auter / and made his prayers³ by grete
devoeyon / And as he was thus kneelinge full besely
aboute his orisons / It came sodenly in to his mynde
that ⁴he wold abyde there and serve the masons 24
for thonour of god & of saynt peter / And whan he
had made his praier, he rose, & began to loke the place
well, & vpon the werkmen that wrought there / and
sayd to hymself, that it was better to serve the masons⁵ / 28
than to walke styll in the forest amonge the wylde
bestes. And whan reynawde had bethought hym
well, he went to the mayster mason, & sayd to
hym / ‘Maister, I am a stranger, & have noo goodes 32
of the worlde / wherof I may live / yf it playse you

¹ de plusieurs sortes. F. orig. N. ii. ²⁻² omitted. F. orig.

³ a nostre seigneur, F. orig. N. ii. ⁴ Fol. L.L. vii.

⁵ au mostier de nostre seigneur, F. orig. N. ii.

I shall serve the masons of suche thynges as theim
 nedeth for their werke as a pour laborer nedeth' /
 And whan the mayster mason herde reynawd speke
 4 soo, and saw he was a tall man & wel made / he
 answerde to him swetly in this wyse / 'my frende, ye
 seme not to be yssued of a pour hous / for ye are
 more like a kyng than a mason ¹or laborer,¹ wherfore I
 8 dare not put you in werke by noo wyse, notwyth-
 standyng that ye be thus pourly arayed' / 'Mayster,'
 sayd reynaude, 'care not therefore, for & it playse you /
 I shalle serve you truly after my power' / 'My
 12 frende,' sayd the mayster of the werke, 'sith it playse
 you to doo soo / it plaiseth me ri[g]ht well / but I
 wyll not reteyn you for that pryse that I do knaves,
 for I shall paye you in consyence after the werke that
 16 ye shall doo' / 'mayster,' sayd reynaude, 'I am wel
 content.' Theinne the mayster mason said to hym,
 'my frende, goo helpe thise four that ye see there,
 that may not bere the stone / for thei be but
 20 truauntes' / 'mayster,' sayd reynaude, 'be not angri
 wyth the pour folke, for I wyll goo fetche it to you
 anone' / 'frende,' said the maister, 'peyn not yourselfe
 therto, for it is not in your puissaunce wythoute ye
 24 had more helpe than thilke knaves, For the stone is of
 grete weyght' / 'mayster, ²lete me alone,' sayd re-
 naude, 'I shall brynge it to you.'² and whan reynaude
 had said soo / he cast his mantell fro him & cam to
 28 the iiij men *that* helde ³the stone, & sayd to theym /
 'Lordes, & playse you / goo fet another stone, &
 I shall bere the same.' 'frende,' sayd the four men,
 'ye saye well yf ye can / and we wylle lete you doo
 32 wyth a goode wylle' / Theinne reynawd toke vp the
 stone, & charged it vpon his necke / and bare it vpon

he asks for
 employment
 from the master
 mason,

who willingly
 accepts his aid.

Reynawde is told
 to fetch a great
 stone which four
 other men cannot
 carry;

he takes up the
 stone with ease,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig. N. ii.

²⁻² vous aurez la pierre incontinent sans ayde daultroz que
 de moy si dieu plait et tous les sains, F. orig. N. ii. back.

³ Fol. L.L. vii. back.

and brings it to
the master mason,

the walle where it sholde be set / and whan thother laborers saw that, they were abasshed, & merveyllled gretly of it / and began to saye thone to thother, 'here is wonder ! fro whens may this devylle becom / we shall 4 never winne but lityll aslonge as he is wyth vs here.' And whan the mayster masons sawe reynaude bere soo grete a stone & soo hevy / he was glad of it ; and whan reynaude had brought the stone there as it sholde be 8 set, the mayster sayd to hym, 'frende, put not down the stone yet from you' / 'Syr,' sayd reynawde, 'I shall well holde it in my armes as longe as ye wyll.' the^{me} the mayster made the place redy there as the 12 stone shold be set. and whan he was redy / he sayd to reynaude, 'lete goo the stone, my frende, whan ye wyll / and blessed be god & thour that ever ye were borne.' and whan reynaude had set down the stone, 16 the mayster commaunded hym that he shold fette him mortar / 'wyth a good wille,' sayd reynaude. The^{me} came reynaude down, & laded of the mortar more than x. other men sholde have doon / and bare it to the 20 mayster mason, & sayd to hym / 'Mayster, care not for noo thing / for I shall serve you well of all thyng that ye nede, by the grace of god. and see *that* ye werke as fast as ye can / for I shall bryng you 24 more stones & mortar myself alone than ye shall comne occupye, but ye haste you well' / and whan the mayster mason herde reynaude speke thus / he was merveyllled, & sayd / 'By my soule, frende, yf ye doo 28 half that ye say, ye shall doo ynoughe.' the^{me} went reynaude agen, & brought vp so many stones that he made wyth it a grete hepe vpon the walles, ¹ynoughe for to occupye at ²ones all the masons that were there¹ / 32 and the^{me} reynawd sayd to theim / 'Fayr maysters, thinke to werke well / for whan these stones ben layd

who is astonished
at his wonderful
strength.

Reynawde fetches
stones and mortar,
doing more work
than x. men could
have done.

¹⁻¹ devant les maistres . . . F. orig. N. iii.

² Fol. L.L. viii.

& this moter occupied, I shall brynge you more.¹
 And whan the masons herde hym speke soo / thei
 began to saye amonge theym that the chirche of
 4 saynte peter had founde a goode laborer / and that he
 oughte to be well rewarded. 'By my feyth, mayster,'
 sayd reynaude, 'I care not for noo money' / and
 whan came at evyn that the laborers sholde leve
 8 werke & receyve their money, the mayster mason
 set hym down for to paye the laborers, whiche toke
 v.¹ peny a daye. thenne the mayster called reynaude,
 & sayd to hym / 'Com hider, my fayr frende, take here
 12 what it plaise you / for ye have served better than ony
 of thother' / thenne [Reynawde] put hymselfe forthe /
 and toke a peny, sore agenst his wyll / And whan the
 mayster sawe that, he sayd to hym / 'by the body of
 16 god, my fayr frende, ye shall have xx more / for elles
 my conseyence sholde becharged wyth your labour;
 & yf ye wyll werke, ye shal every daye have
 someche / for there was never soo good a laborer as ye
 20 be one.' 'Mayster,' sayd reynawde, 'yf ye wyll
 that I shall werke ony more / gyve me but one peny /
 whiche shal be for to bye brede for to susteyne wythall
 my body / for this that I doo / I doo it for the love
 24 of god, & for none other.' frende,' sayd the mayster,
 'I wyll not trouble you nomore; doo as ye wyll' /
 Thenne toke reynawde leve of the mayster mason, and
 went to the towne for to get hymself a lodgyng, &
 28 boughte a peny worthe of brede. and soo had he nomore
 to his souper but brede & a lityll water. And whan he
 had eten / he went & leyd him upon a lityll strawe
²for to take his rest *that* nyght.² and whan the day was
 32 com, reynaude rose yp & wente to his werke, & founde
 no body there / and *thenne* he wente to the chirche, &
 sayd his prayers afore an ymage of our lady. ³This

The master mason
promises to
reward him,

but Reynawde
says he does not
care for money,

and will only take
one penny when
the day's work
is over.

He only eats
bread for his
supper,

and goes to sleep
on some straw;

¹ viii. F. orig. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

³ Fol. L.L. viii. back.

hangyng, the masons cam for to goo to their werke ;
 and whan they were vpon the walle / they asked
 yf the stronge man were not come. ‘Mayster,’ an-
 swerde reynaude, ‘I am here ; wylle ye ony thyng?’ 4
 ‘frende,’ sayd thezne the mayster mason / ‘brynge vs
 stones & mortar.’ ‘sire,’ sayd reynawde / ‘I shall
 wyth a good wille, & that anone’ / Thezne fet he
 stones & mortar in grete plente / ¹and brought it vp 8
 vnto theim¹ / and I promyse you that reynawd laded
 more atones than xv. other dyde / And thus served
 reinawde the masons in the chirche of saynt peter at
 coleyn many dayes ; and every daye at evyn he toke 12
 his peny of the mayster, & nomore, for to bye hym
 brede with, as ye have herde / for he ete never but
 bred, & dranke water / Thus lived Reynawde there a
 longe while, servyng there the masons, as it is sayd, for 16
 the love of god & of saynte peter / and dyde so truly
 his devour, that thother labourers had grete envy
 at hym, for they were all set at nought for the love
 of hym of the masons / for the grete servyse that he 20
 dyde to theym / Sore an angred were thother laborers
 whan they sawe that they were all thus forsaken &
 all set aside, & sayd to eche other in this wyse / ‘By
 god, we ben dyffamed bi thys grete knave, that doth 24
 somoche labour / and therefore we be put a side of the
 maysters. the grete devyll broughte hym well here,
 for we shall never gete noo thyng aslonge as he is
 here, for he serveth all the masons alone of al that 28
 thei nede for to have, and thus we ben left alone.’
 thezne sayd one of theim / ‘My felawes, yf ye wylle
 byleve me / we shall slee him.’ ‘How saye ye
 that,’ sayd a nother / ‘ye wote well it is impossible 32
 to vs to doo soo, for he is horryble stronge / and if
 we set vpon hym, he shall kylle vs all.’ ‘frende,’ said
 he, ‘I shall tell you how we shall doo soo / See you

next day he
 works again for
 the masons,

and lives a long
 while at Colegne
 in this manner.

The other
 labourers are
 envious of him

because they are
 so inferior to
 him ;

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

yonder vawte by the grete hous? 'ye,' said thother / they take counsel
 'wyte it that *that* grete knave goth & slepeth ¹there / together to slay
 every nyghte whan we are goon home / And therefore, / him when he is
 4 yf ye wylle byleve me / we shall goo this nyght there / asleep.
 where he is a slepe / and we shall take eche of vs a
 pykeaxe, or elles an hamer / and therwith we shall
 dasshe the brayn out of his hede / and whan we have
 8 thus slayn hym / we shall put hym in a grete sacke,
 & shall cast him wythin the ryver / ²that is there
 nyghe² / and thus shall be nomore herde of hym' / and
 whan thother laborers herde this traitour speke, thei
 12 accorded all to his counseyle / and they dyde as they
 were purposed soner than they wende thei sholde have
 do / For at noone, whan the masons left werke & went
 to their dyner, the poure reynawd went & rested
 16 hymself vnder the vawt, where he was wonte to rest
 hymself every nyghte. And whan the traytours saw
 that, they cam to him that first had spoken the
 treyson, & toke him a grete hamer of a mason in
 20 his hande; ²and they spyed that reynawd was fallen a
 slepe. this traitour wyth the hamer went to reynawde
 softly,² & smote hym wyth the hamer well depe in to
 the brayn / And whan Reynawd felte the stroke that
 24 the traytour had gyven hym / he set his armes in
 maner of a crosse vpon his brest, & said in this
 maner / 'O, good lord Ihesu criste, have mercy on my
 soule / and wylle pardonne them that have broughte
 28 me to my dethe' / and whan he had sayd these
 wordes / the soule departed oute of the body. And
 whan the traytours had thus slayn reynawd, they
 put him in to a grete sacke, that they had ordeyned
 32 therefore / and the^{ne} they laded the carte wherein they
 brought the stones wyth the body of hym, and soo
 caryed hym to the ryver of rync, wherein they cast
 hym. And whan they had doon soo / they laded the
 and cast it into
 the river Rhine.

At noon the
 masons go to
 dinner, and
 Reynawde rests
 himself under
 an archway,
 and falls asleep.

One of the
 labourers
 approaches,
 and slays him
 with a hammer.

The other traitors
 then put his body
 in a sack,

and cast it into
 the river Rhine.

¹ Fol. M.M. i. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

carte wyth stones, & brought theym to the chirche werke as thei were wonte to doo / and as thei were by the way / thei met the mayster mason / that said ¹to theym / 'By my feyth, galantes, I conne you now 4 thanke, for ye mende yourselfe, For ye have doon grete dyligence sith dyner / that ye have laden soo many stones / and that ye ben soo ferre wyth theym to the werke warde' / 'Mayster,' sayd the traytours / 8 'mocke not wyth vs soo; but goo to your purse & gyve vs som drynkyng money' /

Sore merveyllled was the mayster, of that he sawe his laborers more dyligent than they were acustomed / 12 thezne the labourers began to say to the mayster of the werke / bi maner of a moeke / 'where is that grete lorden, that he helpeth not now / I holde hym goon wythout leve, by cause he myght not labour noo lenger / 16 For we herde saye / that he sholde never ceasse tyll he had founde hys wyfe agen.' And whan the maister mason herde that / he was sory, & sayd to theym agen, 'By my feyth, I hyleve that ye have chassed hym 20 awaye; but I promyse you yf I can wyte that ye have doon soo / It were better for you that ye were at Iberusalem' / 'Mayster,' sayd the laborers, 'ye maye well saye to vs what ye wille / but we dyde never saye 24 oughte to hym that sholde dysplayse hym' / and whan the noble reynawde was thus caste in to the river of ryne by the laborers of the chirche of saynt peter, ye must wite that he wente not to the botome of the 28 water / but wente harde above the water alonge the streme. And at that [hour] our lorde shewed for him a fayr myracle. For all the fysshe of the ryver gadred theym abowte the corps / and by the grete strenghte of 32 the fysshes it was taried, ²and went noo ferder with the² streme / by the wille of our lorde / And the grete fysshes put theymselfe vnder hym, and bare hym vpon

The labourers ask the master mason mockingly where the great lord has gone.

The master says they must have driven him away.

All the fish in the river support the body of Reynawde above the water.

¹ Fol. M.M. i. back. ²⁻² omitted, F. orig.

the water, soo that he apered to every mannis syghte /
And there the fysshes bare him soo vp vnto nyghte.

And whan the nyghte was come / apered abowte the
4 corps a grete quantityte of torches by ¹the vertue of our
lorde / and angelles that song there so melodyously,
that they that herde it wolde never have goon fro it.

A great quantity
of torches appear
round the body,
and angelles are
heard singing
sweetly.

And to saye trouthe / there was soo grete lighte abowte
8 the corps / that all they that saw it, wende that all the
water of the ryne had be a fyre / and whan the folke of
the cyte saw soo grete a myracle they ranne all thither /
bothe men & wymen & children / And also the arch-
12 byshop of saynte peter wente thither wyth all his colege
in a fayr processyon / syngyng by grete devocyon / and
taryed vpon the ryne / for they durste not goo noo ferther /
and they sawe the fysshes that bare vp the corps above
16 the water. And whan they that were there sawe that /

they were abasshed / ²and mervylled gretly what it
myghte be,² and beganne to saye the one to the other /
'God! what may he be, for whom our lorde sheweth so

The people of
Cologne marvel
at this strange
miracle.

20 fayr a myracle' / 'Lordes,' sayd the archebyssshop / 'I
shall telle you as myn avyse gyveth me / Wyte it that
it is the body of some saynte that our lorde wylle have
worshypped, that is come here from somewhere / whiche

24 god wylle not that he be loste / nor drowned in the
water / See ye not how the fysshes holde hym above
the water / by the vertue of our lorde' / Thenne the
byssshop commaunded that men sholde goo see what it

28 was, and anone folke went there wyth botes, and they
founde that it was the grete man that was one of the
labourers wyth the masons in the chirche of saynte
peter / And whan the mayster of the werke saw this, he

32 was gretly abasshed / and went to theim that had slayn
him, and sayd to theym, 'Ye hoursons, false traytours!
ye have slayn the good man / saye ye the trouthe / for yf
ye denye it, I shall prove it vpon you' / And whan the

The Archbishop
of the town orders
men to see what
this strange sight
can be; they
discover the
corpse of
Reynawde.

¹ Fol. M.M. ii.

² ² omitted. F. orig.

The labourers
own that they
slew him.

The Archbishop
condemns them to
do penance for
their sins.

The body of
Reynawde is
carried into the
church, and mass
is sung over it.

The corpse then
rises by itself,
and is carried
miraculously out
of the city,

laborers herde the mayster mason speke thus / they began al to crye, and said, ‘ By god, mayster / we have doon it withoute doubtte / for envye that we had atte hym. And therefore ¹lete vs be drowned, hanged, or drawn, or ⁴ what iustyse ye wylle / For we have well deserved to be punysshed’ / And whan the archebysshop herde the traytours soo speke, he began to wepe tendrely, and all college also. And the archebysshop was counseyllled that ⁸ he sholde lete goo the murderers at theyr adventure for to doo penaunce of their sinnes, the whiche thyng the archebysshop dyde wyth a goode wylle. Thenne was the body of reynawde broughte to londe, and was put ¹² vpon a carte for to bere hym to the chirche / whereas he was had worshipfully with fair processyon. And whan the corps was in the chirche, the archebysshop made hym redy for to synge the masse by grete devo- ¹⁶ cyon. And whan the serveye was doon, the archebysshop wolde have goon a processyon wyth the corps aboute the chyrche, and *commaunded* four lordes that were there that they sholde bere the corps / And thenne ²⁰ the barons wolde have don his *commaundement* / but whan they cam therto / they coude not move the corps / by noo strengthe that they coude put therto. Sore merveilled were the barons whan they saw that, and sayd ²⁴ to² eche other / ‘ Now may we well knowe that we be not worthy to touche thys holy corps. For we be wycked synners / wherfore lete vs go to shryve, and put ourself in good astate’ / And while they spake thus ²⁸ togyder / ³the corps rose vp of hymselfe / and was borne / noo man knoweth how, oute of the chirche in to the carte whiche anone moved / and wente his waye streyghte oute of the cyte, wherof they were all gretly ³² merveyllled.³ and whan the carte was oute of coleyn, he

¹ Fol. M.M. ii. back.

² till, *orig.*

³⁻³ le charret se partist tout seul par laid de nostre seigneur nondaultre et se mist a cheminer moult fort au devant de tout

went a pas all the hie waye. And whan the peple sawe that / they began all to wepe by cause the corps wolde not abyde / Thenne sayd the archebyssshop to theym /
 4 'Syres, now may ye well see that this is a holy corps, by the grete myrales that god sheweth by hym ¹now / and all this daye a fore vs all / wherfore lete vs goo after hym for to worshyp hym / For it were not well
 8 doon for to lete hym goo thus alone' / ' My lorde,' sayd the peple / ' ye saye well' / and thenne all the clerge & all the comen peple, lityll & grete, that myghte goo, folowed the corps.² And ye oughte to wyte, that in all
 12 the cyte of colen abode nother man nor woman / but went wyth the corps, and all the clergy folowed after, singyng in grete devoeyon. Soo moche wente the carte that he came to a lityll towne that is called croyne, and
 16 there he abode styll. And ye must wyte that our lord dyde shew there many fayr myrales for the love of the holy body / For all sike peple, of what siknes it was, that cam there for to worshyp the holy body / were
 20 hole incontyent / This happed of the noble knyghte Reynawde of mowntalban / as ye have herde. And ye ought to wyte that the renomme of the holy body was soo spred all aboute, that folke cam to croyne, where it
 24 abode,³ from ferre ways for to seke hym / and he made there so fayr myrales / that of all the royame,⁴ & of all almayn, folke drew theder. And somoche were worthe the offrynges / that were doon there wythin a short
 28 while / that of a litil chapell there as the body rested / whiche was of our lady, is now a royall chirehe & a grete.

the Archbishop and all the people following.

It stops at a little town called Croyne.

Great miracles are performed here; people are healed of all sickness through the holy corpse.

le peuple. Quant le clergie vist ce ils commencerent a plourer tendrement apres le charret qui sen aloit ainsi que ouy avez.

Vous denez scavoir que quant le charret se mist a cheminer quil passa devant la tombe la ou lon le voloit enterrer, mais il passa tout oultre que lon ne le peult arrester et sortie hors de la cite de coullongne, F. orig. N. v.

¹ Fol. M.M. iii. ² saint.

³ pour la volente de dieu, F. orig. N. v. back.

⁴ de France, F. orig. N. v. back.

The Archbishop
uncovers the face
of Reynawde,
that any who
come there may
know him.

And whan the holy body was abyden in this lityll
chapell, as it is sayd, where god made contynuelly
myracles / tharchebysshop of coleyn & all the clerge
cam¹ to the corps, and vncovered his visage, that every 4
body sholde see hym / that cam there, yf haply that
ony man or woman myghte knowe hym for to have his
name / for none cowde name him, but the holy corps /
But there cam noo man that cowde knowe hym. And 8
whan the archbysshop sawe that no body cowde saye
what he was / he was sory for it / for if he had knowen
his name, he wolde have put hym ²in a shryne of golde,
by cause of the grete myracles that he made dayly ; for 12
he made y^e deaf to here / the blinde to see / the lame
to go, & right mani *that* were dombe he made to
speke / and often tymes apered tapres of wexe brennyng
about the corps.³ ¶ Now shal ye here how the noble 16
reynaud was knowen / Ye oughte to wite that the
bredern of reynaul / that is to wyte, alarde, guychard,
& rycharde, were on a day vpon a *mountain* soo sory
that they cowde not comforte theymself / bycause they 20
cowde not here noo tydynges of theyr broder reynaul /
Therene cam a pylgrym forthby that salved the barons.
'Pylgrym,' sayd alard / 'fro whens come ye / yf ye
wote ony newes, telle it vs, I praye you' / 'Lordes,' 24
sayd the pylgrym, 'wyth a gode wylle I shall telle you
that I knowe. Wyte it that I com out of almayn,
from a towne that is called croyne, by colein vpon the
ryne, where I have seen many grete myracles doon of 28
god, for the love of a man that cam to the eyte but late
ago, the whiche was so grete / that every body sayth
there that he was a gyannt / and wyte ye, that whan he

A pilgrim appears
before Rey-
nawde's brethren
while they are on
a mountain griev-
ing over the loss
of their brother.

He relates to
them the miracles
he has seen at
Cologne.

¹ a croyne. Quant l'arcevesque vist que le corps estoit
delibere de demourer illecques il vit au corps . . . F. orig. N.
v. back.

² Fol. M.M. iii. back.

³ En celluy temps que l'arcevesque et tout son clergie gar-
doient a croyne le corps saint, ainsi que vous ay compte, F.
orig. N. vi.

cam there / that he sawe men make the chirche of saynt
 peter / soo dyde he presente there his servyse to the
 mayster mason, the whiche retheyned hym gladly /
 4 Shortly to saye, this grete man dyde wonder of berynge
 of stones & of mortar. For he bare more atones than
 XV.¹ other of the laborers that were there wyth him ;
 and he was all day wythout mete, saff at evyn / he toke
 8 a peny that he gate, for nomore he wold have for his
 labour a daye, and therwyth he boughte hym brede, and
 dranke none other to it but water / ²and thenne went
 to his rest vpon a lityll strawe vndre a grete vawte² /
 12 And ye must wyte that this grete man was well loved
 of the maysters masous of the sayd chirche, whiche
 wold often have gyven hym mete & wyne / and more
 mony. But he wolde never take noo thyng³ but a
 16 peny onoly by the daye for to bye hymself brede, as I
 tolde you afore / He served so well all the masons there,
 that they were more contente of hym alone / than of
 the other laborers. And whan the laborers sawe that
 20 they were soo lityll set by / for love of this grete man /
 they were sore an angred / and toke grete envy at him /
 and conspyred togyder for to slee hym shamfully / Soo
 dyde they aspye hym where he slepte vnder ⁴the sayd
 24 vawte⁴ / while the mayster masons were goon to dyner /
 And thenne one of theym came to hym with a grete
 hamer in his hande / and brayned him. thenne they
 put hym in a sacke, & caryed hym in a cart to the
 28 ryver of the ryne / where they cast hym / And wyte
 that whan they had doon soo / our lorde shewed there
 a grete myracle / For all the fysshes of the ryne assem-
 bled theym aboute the corps / and made it abyde in
 32 one place above the water. And whan the nyghte was
 com, angelles were herde there / that songe melody-

How a great man who worked there at the Church of St. Peter,

served the masons so well,

that the other labourers were envious of him and slew him,

casting his body into the Rhine.

¹ dix. F. orig.

²⁻² omitted. F. orig.

³ Fol. M.M. iv.

⁴⁻⁴ ung grant voutre sus ung peu de paille entredeux. F. orig. N. vi. back.

ously the servyse of the deed soo hie, that all they of
 the cite myghte here theym / and it semed that all the
 water about hym had be in a fyre of the grete light
 that was seen there / Thenne cam the archebysshop of 4
 colen wyth all his colege, & made the corps to be
 taken / and broughte in a carte vnto the chyrche.
 And whan he was there / tharchbyssshop sange masse /
 for this was in the mornynge. And whan the servyse 8
 was doon, the archebyssshop sayd to four lordes that
 were there / that they shokle take vp the corps for to
 have hym to his grave wyth fayre processyon / But
 thise foure barons cowde never move hym / from the 12
 place where he was. ¹But the corps, incontynent to
 every bodys sight, that was there was broughte in to
 the carte agayne / wyth the twynkeling ²of an eye,
 and sodeynly the carte departed¹ / and wente awaye a 16
 lone oute of the towne / as goode a pas as ten horses
 had drawn at it, whiche was sore agenste the wylle of
 the people, that wept full tenderly bycause it wolde
 not abyde with theym / But all they of the cyte / 20
 bothe lityll & grete, wente a processyon after it / vnto a
 lityll towne / where the corps of the grete man abode
 styлле, whiche is called croyne, in a lityll chapell of our
 lady / where he dooth now many a fayre myracle ; for 24
 I ensure you that all the sike that seke hym there be
 made hole / and retourne to theyr home in goode helthe.
 And soo have I lefte there the archebyssshop of coleyne /
 and all the clergy that hathe doo make of the offerynges 28
 that ben gyve there to thys holy corps, a fayr place / and
 a royall chirche / there as the sayd chapell of our lady
 was afore³ /

Whan alarde, guycharde / and rycharde herde the 32
 pylgryme speke soo / they beganne all thre to

How the body
 was miraculously
 carried out of
 Cologne,

and taken to
 Croyne, where
 great miracles are
 performed by it.

¹⁻¹ Et en ce faisant le charret sen partist dillecques tout
 a par foy . . . F. orig. N. vi. back.

² Fol. M.M. iv. back.

wepe full sore for pyte that they had of theyr brother
 Reynawde / for well they knewe it was he of whom
 the pylgryme spake / ‘Alas, my brethern,’ sayd
 4 rycharde, ‘now be we well dystroyed / and vudoon for
 ever; For I knowe well that it is our dere broder that
 we have soughte soo longe’ / Wyte it that the thre
 brethern made there soo grete sorowe, that it canne
 8 not be rehersed / And whan they had made this grete
 sorowe / they toke leve of the pylgryme / ¹and thanked
 hym,¹ and wente to make theym redy / and thenne
 toke theyr waye towarde croyne, by Coleyne on the
 12 ryne / And they dyde soo moche by theyr iourneys /
 that they came to Croyne / And lighted byfore the
 chirche, they and theyr folke / where they founde soo
 grete a flowynge and gaderynge of the people, and soo
 16 grete prese ²of folke, that wyth grete peyne they myght
 entre wythin the chirche. And whan the knyghtes
 were wythin, they wente nyghe the holy corps, that was
 vpon a fayr bere all vncovered, and sawe soo grete light
 20 abowte the corps as there had ben a hundred torches /
 The^{ne} went they as nyghe him as thei cowde for to
 loke hym in the face / and anone they knewe that he
 was their broder / and wyth that thei loked vpon hym,
 24 they felle down all in a swoune to therthe. And whan
 tharchbisshop sawe that, he was sore abasshed, & sayd
 to some of his colege / ‘Sires, I byleve that we shall
 soone knowe that we have desired soo longe / For I
 28 wene that thyse lordes knowe well this holy corps’ /
 This hangyng, were the thre bredern comen agen to
 theymselfe / and began to crye and fare as they had
 ben mad / the^{ne} sayd alarde, all wepyng in thys
 32 maner, ‘Alas, what shall we now caytyff knyghtes doo,
 pour of honour & of all wele, sith that we have lost
 our broder, by whom we were so sore doubted & dred /
 Alas, dere broder! who was soo hardy to laye honde on

The three
 brethren weep
 over the pilgrim's
 story, knowing
 that it refers to
 Reynawde.

They depart for
 Croyne,

and arrive at the
 chapel where
 the body of
 Reynawde rests.

They lament
 sorely over the
 cruel death of
 their brother.

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. M.M. v.

you? I byleve that he knew not your debonairte & kyndnesse / for he wolde not have slayne you so cruelly' / And the^{me} he turned him towarde his two bredern & sayd / 'My fayr bredern, we ought well to 4 be sory / sith we have lost our broder reynaude / that was all our hope, our trust, & eomfort.' 'Alas,' sayd rycharde, 'broder reynaude, why had ye ever that courage for to habandoune vs as ye dyde / seeng that 8 ye loved vs somoche. Alas, ye stale awaye yourself by nyghte / for to come amonge thandes of the murderers that have slayne you soo cruelly / Alas, they wyste not the grete dommage that is of your dethe!' 12 Whan the thre bretherne had wepte ynoughe, in grete sobbynges and lamentacyons for the love of theyr dere broder ¹Reynawde / they went and [kissed] the corps on the mouth, the one after the other; and wyth this 16 thei felle down agen in a swoune / And whan thei were come agen to theymsel^f / rycharde began to crye, & saye / 'Alas, fair bredern, now ben we lost for ever / For we shall no more be set by, nother doubted nor 20 drede more than children / wherfore I saye that we shold slee oursel^f / to the ende that we maye be wyth you, for we oughte not to live after your deth' / Wyte it that who had be there, he sholde have had an harde 24 hert, but he sholde have wepte for to see the thre bredern make theyr mone.²

Whan the archebyssshop and the burgeys that were there, sawe the grete sorow that the thre 28 knyghtes made, the good archebisshop³ came to theym, and sayd / 'Lordes, be ye not dysplayseed of that I shall saye to you! Syres, to my semynge, ye doo not well for to make soo grete sorowe, nor to discomforte 32 yourself so moeche as ye doo / but rather ye shold make

Richard says there is nothing for them now but death.

The Archbishop rebukes them for their lamentations,

¹ Fol. M.M. v. back.

² et non *sans cause*, F. orig. N. vii. back.

³ archebysshep, *orig.*

grete ioye / and be glad for your broder, that is a saynt
 in hevyn, the whiche hathe suffred martyrdom in the
 servyse of our lorde / wherof ye maye see that he
 4 rewardeth hym well for it. For ye see now byfore
 your eyen the grete myraeles that he dooth. wherfore
 I praye you that ye wyll recomforte your selfe. And
 telle vs, yf it playse you, what ye ben / and how is this
 8 holy body named, and what his name was whan he
 lived in this worlde / to the ende that his name be
 wryten abowte his tombe.' And whan his bredern
 herde the archebyssshop speke thus, they began a lityll
 12 to leve theyr sorowe / and thenne alarde, that was
 theldest after reynawd, sayd to hym, 'Lorde, sith it
 playse you to knowe what we be, & how this corps is
 called, I shall telle it you wythoute fawte / Ye muste
 16 wyte that this corps was called, ¹whan he was amonge
 us alive / Reynawde of mountalban, the ryght ²worthy
 knyghte; and [we three th³]at ben here are his brethern.
 And well I wote that ye have herle speke of the four
 20 sones of aymon / the whiche charlemagn the grete,
 kynge of fraunce, werred soo longe.' Themme whan the
 archebyssshop / and the people herde that they were the
 four sones of aymon / of the whiche all the world
 24 spake / and that the holy corps was the goode reynawde
 of mounzalban / the noble & valiaunt knyghte / they
 began al to wepe for pyte and for ioye / by cause they
 sawe all byfore theym the moost noble & worthyest
 28 knyghte of the worlde / that in his life was more to
 drede than ony man alive, that was deed in the servyse
 of our lorde / doinge penaunce. After that thise thre
 brethern had thus lefte a lityll theyr sorowe / they
 32 made their broder to be layd in his tombe, that was
 ryght ryche, that the archebyssshop had doon make /

and says they
 should rejoice
 that Reynawde
 has suffered
 martyrdom in a
 righteous cause;

he asks them
 from whence
 they come.

Alarde tells him
 they are the Sons
 of Aymon of
 Arden.

The people then
 sorrow grievously
 when they hear
 that the body is
 that of the valiant
 Reynawde.

The corpse is then
 entombed,

¹⁻¹ omitted, F. orig.

² Fol. M.M. vi.

³ [] from Ed. 1554, corrected. A piece cut out of
 Caxton's edition.

where the holy corps resteth yet at this daye / as
 evydently is knowen / and he is called saynt Rey-
 nawde the marter / The memory of hym was that tyme
 put in wrytyng auctentykly ; and every yere is there 4
 kepte for hym grete solemnyte & feest. And after
 the sepulturyng of the holy corps, the brethern wente
 agen in to theyr countree.

and every year a
 feast is celebrated
 in Reynawde's
 honour.

May all who read
 this present booke,
 continue their
 life in good works.

My fayr lordes thenne, that this present boke shall 8
 rede or here, we shall praye god & the glorious
 saynte Reynaude the marter / that he gyve vs grace to
 persevere / and contynue our liff in good werkes, by
 the whiche we may have at our endyng the liff that 12
 ever shall laste.¹

A M E N

¹ en gloire celestielle de paradis.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

(N.B.—A few proper names are registered in this Index, because they present features of Glossarial interest.)

- Abacke, 142/6, stepped back.
 Abasshe, 160/16, humble.
 Abasshed, 44/33, asbamed.
 Abbyt, 282/19, habit, dress, uniform.
 Abie the bargayn, 195/35, put up with it.
 Abode, 19/26, were made, became.
 Abote, 504/33, about.
 Abowte, 482/17, about, around.
 Abrode, 352/7, abroad.
 Absolucyon, 335/20, absolution.
 Absteyn, Absteyne, 474/14, 480/4, abstain, refrain.
 A busshe, 553/26, ambush.
 Abyde, 23/4, 63/6, stay; 203/24, remain.
 Abyden, 490/32, abide.
 Abyden, 507/33, 586/1, abiding.
 Abyde to, 42/4, remain with.
 Abye, 38/6, abide.
 Accomplysshed, 149/17, finished building (said of a castle).
 Accorded, 47/17, peace.
 Acoynted, 135/16, acquainted.
 Aequyte, 301/8, acquit.
 Acustomed, 582/12, accustomed.
 Admyralle, 498/1, commander-in-chief of an army. Later on in the story, the same Admyralle reappears at Palermo, where, being defeated, he and his army take to their galleys: so that, when at sea, he might well have been called an *admiral* in the modern sense.
 Adommaged, 427/30, damaged.
 A doo, 52/3, ado
 A doo, 194/29, 254/17, 499/15, to do.
 A donn, 291/29, brought down.
- A doynge, 163/7, in progress ("as the feste was a doynge").
 Adventure, 498/31, chance (or, *gy. mis-adventure*).
 Advyromed, 467/20, envired.
 Advysed hym, 501/25, gave himself advice, communed with himself.
 A ferde, 355/24, 453/22, fearful, in fear.
 A ferre way, 177/4, a great way ahead.
 Afflyctyons, 337/1, afflictions.
 A fole never byleveth tyll he fele sore, 485/26, apparently a proverbial expression.
 A foote, 35/10, 186/5, on foot.
 Afore, 19/8, 47/25, 90/26, 453/6, before.
 A fore hande, 512/7, beforehand (in a truly realistic sense, indicating that any one who joined in the assault on the holy city for its relief should, although he died, without doubt be saved).
 A fote, 232/29, 490/20, afoot, on foot.
 Afrayed, Affrayed, 142/5, 357/10, 486/2, afraid.
 A fresshe, 268/16, 564/11, afresh, anew, again.
 A fyre, 511/30, 583/9, on fire.
 Agast, 334/33, aghast, frightened.
 Agen, 189/10, again.
 Agenst, 230/10, against.
 A goo, 347/22, ago.
 A goo, 263/28, gone.
 A grounde, 45/1, 232/10, 564/14, unhorsed, on the ground.
 A horsebake, 26/28, on horseback.
 Al alonge, 18/32, exactly, truly.

- Al fayra, 177/25, all fair.
 Aliance, 202/34, lineage.
 All by nyghte, 164/9, at night.
 All halowes, 99/17, all saints; all hallowes, 168/18, all the saints.
 All in generall, 74/25, all of you.
 All mervyllled, 303/34, much marvelled.
 All other our, 341/22, all our other.
 All quycke, 17/28, alive; 544/17, quickly.
 All redi, 556/3; All redy, 341/28, already.
 All the faytte, 193/7, all the facts.
 All they, 420/13, all those.
 All to brused, 303/24, bruised.
 All tymes, 542/18, any time.
 Alle angry, 26/25, ever angry.
 Alle for angre, 174/16, with rage.
 Alle to hewen, 35/13, hacked about.
 Almayn, 42/7, German.
 Almesse, 121/16, alms.
 A londe, 145/30, 525/7, 529/4, on land.
 Alonge, 465/19, adown.
 Alonly, 464/21, always only.
 Alowe, 229/21, low.
 Alredy, 531/6, already.
 Also sone, 79/14, as soon.
 Alwayes of, 29/9, out of.
 Alwayes spekyng, 405/3, talking all the way.
 A makyng, 576/18, being built.
 Amazed, 561/29, mazed, dazed, bewildered, frightened.
 Amende hym, 46/24, make amends to him.
 A mendes, 347/7, amends.
 Amiable, 20/20, dutifully.
 Amys, 320/6, amiss.
 An angred, 38/3, 162/13, angry.
 And, 162/1, = and when: 269/18, if.
 And but yf ye doo, 253/32, but if ye do not.
 And we maye, 231/26, if we are able.
 An heygth, 200/10, on high.
 An hole, 129/19, a whole.
 An live, 488/31, alive, on life.
 Anone, 398/17, anon.
 A nother, 529/15, 551/11, another.
 Apayed, 559/15, assumed.
 Apayred, 267/30, 464/29, impaired, injured.
 Apayred, 117/2, apparelled, clothed.
 Apeased, 562/2, appeased, quieted.
 Apeched, 373/20, impeached.
 Apeerceyve, 442/9, perceive.
 Apere, 514/3, appear.
 Apered, 583/3, appeared.
 Apetyte, 463/10, appetite.
 Apoynted, 547/20, appointed, equipped, provided.
 Apoyntmente, 357/4, peace ("make your apoyntmente wyth the kyng").
 Appareyld, 74/25, furnished, fitted up.
 Appell, 74/16, Charlemagne's golden apple.
 Apperecyued, 79/16, 375/5, perceived, saw.
 Apple, 374/32. It seems to mean a round ball of stone set as an architectural adornment on the top of a tower.
 Apoyntemente, 384/33, peace, atonement.
 Appull, 442/11, Apull, 222/3, apple.
 Appyered, 69/16, 241/15, appeared.
 Arayed, 88/21, bespattered with blood.
 Arayed, 494/17, arrayed, dressed.
 Archeby-shop of that feeddes, 343/29, a satirical expression, seeming to mean that he of whom they spoke was then in hell.
 Arde/yn, 178/30, = Ardeyn = Ardennes.
 Ardeyne (also called in the French original Dordon), 16/22, Ardennes.
 Are, 351/12, 435/13, ere, before.
 Are, 563/29, art.
 Areched, 461/5, reach, catch, tackle.
 Armed of all peces, 232/13, completely armed.
 Arnee, 377/24, army.
 Armures, 419/29, armour.
 Armures of stele, 110/6, steel armour.
 Arneys, 358/13, harness.
 Arrested, 171/11, rested, sat down.
 Arreste myselfe, 200/35, rest myself.
 Arsons, 309/23, seat.
 As angry, 497/17, all angry.
 A sawte, 188/28, assault.

- Ascryed, 554/18, cried out.
 A seen, 453/28, have seen.
 A seven nyght, 204/8, a week.
 A side, 580/25, on one side.
 As longe that I am man on lyue,
 78/7, so long as I live.
 Aslong that lyf is in our bodyes,
 233/12, so long as life remains.
 As moche, 299/18, as lond.
 A sondre, 345/9, in sunder.
 Aspreli, 391/18, Asprely, 502/26,
 sharply.
 Aspyed, 431/23, espied.
 Assaye, 184/17, 536/12, essay. prove.
 Assayed of, 301/30, tried.
 Assaylle, 552/4, assail.
 Assemble 43/7, encounter, fighting.
 Fr. '*Assemblée* . . . the fight, coup-
 ing, or incounter of two armies.'
 —Cotgrave.
 Assone, 88/30, 203/34, as soon.
 Assured from their ennys, 149/18,
 need no more fear their enemies.
 Assurynge, 380/2, assurance.
 Astate, 115/19, 295/2, estate.
 A stonyed, 165/17, astonished. And
 well he might be, "qu'il luy fist
 chanceler les deus en la gorge."
 which Caxton omitted to trans-
 late.
 At, 69/14, 349/5, 496/8, to.
 At, 69/15, on (30/22, "hanged at a
 gybet").
 At a nede, 75/10, necessity.
 At an ende, 408/1, to an end.
 At an ende of, 22/1, make an end
 of.
 At another, 79/21, to another.
 At eyther, 453/7, on either.
 At his shelde, 229/24, by his shield.
 A thyng, 507/18, one thing.
 Atons, 82/33, at once.
 Atorned, 169/31, turned, changed
 the complexion of.
 Atte, 190/3, according to.
 Atte an ende, 430/9, to an end.
 Atte oo side, 146/7, on one side.
 Atte the grounde, 141/15, on the
 ground.
 Atte the herte, 217/16, at heart.
 At the first, 513/7, in the beginning.
 At this owre, 226/29, at this time,
 just now.
 A traverse, 179/22, behind.
- Attone, 227/1, 407/4, at one, re-
 conciled.
 Auctentykly, 592/4, authentically.
 Aventure, 86/33, adventure.
 Aughte answered, 18/12, said any-
 thing.
 Aulter, 156/22, altar.
 Auncyent knyghtes, 193/3, ancient,
 old knights, apparently, also,
 minstrels.
 Auler, 576/21, altar.
 Avantage, 233/5, advantage.
 Avanced hym-self, 546/11, came
 forward, advanced himself.
 Avaylle, 177/31, avail.
 Aventure, 370/14, adventure.
 Avow, 384/23, vow, pledge.
 Avowe, 539/6, own, vouch.
 Avyronned, 305/20, environed,
 surrounded.
 Awated, 390/20, awaited.
 A worthe, 247/2, at its worth (when
 death comes, we are quite pre-
 pared for it).
 A wrye, 370/31, awry, askew.
 Axe, 450/24, ask.
 Ayde, 327/20, aid.
 Ayen, 58/9, again.
 Ayeuste, 25/31, against.
 Aylleth, 226/32, aileth.
 Ayre, 26/3, Ayere, 96/31, Ayer, 295
 31, air.
- Bachelers, 193/25, bachelors.
 Backe of hym, 63/13, his back.
 Bagages, 395/30, baggage.
 Balke, 517/19, a piece of timber.
 Baner, 17/15, 490/14, banner,
 standard.
 Baptyisme, 410/15, baptism.
 Barbacanes, 149/15, barbicans, out-
 works? Fr. '*Barbacane* : f. A
 casemate; or a hole (in a parr-
 pet, or towne wall) to shoot out
 at; some hold it also to be a
 Sentries, Scout-house or hole; and
 therupon our *Chancer* vseth the
 word Barbican for a watch-tower,
 which in the Saxon tongue was
 called, a Bourrough-kenning.'—
 Cotgrave.
 Barded, 537/21, barbed, appareled,
 trapt. Fr. '*Bardé* . . . Barbed

- or trapped, as a great [war]horse.'
 —Cotgrave.
- Bare, 157/10, 453/12, 527/31, bore.
 Bare, 70/9, carried.
- Barefote, 571/21, barefooted.
- Bare of their armes, 226/22, without their arms.
- Bare vppe, 45/18, lifted up.
- Barle, 337/10, barley.
- Baronye, 219/21, barons.
- Base, 93/33, small.
- Bataylle, 31/13, Battayll, 270/15, Batayll, 526/2, battle.
- Bataylle mortall, 393/4, deadly battle.
- Bataylles, 40/8, battalions.
- Bavere, 513/18, beaver, face-guard of a helmet.
- Bayns, 129/4, baths.
- Bayted noo where, 36/11, halted nowhere.
- Be, 209/13, are.
- Be, 44/28, been (*sing.*).
- Be agen, 517/5, been again.
- Beaulte, 54/23, beauty.
- Be cause, 202/29, by cause.
- Becom, 578/4, be come.
- Bedeleym, 37/8, Bethlehem.
- Beest, 265/15, beast.
- Befyghte, 106/19, fight with.
- Begate, 273/7, begot.
- Begger, 315/21, 490/10, beggar.
- Begonne, 176/11, begun.
- Begraven, 532/31, buried, in the grave.
- Begyled, 177/32, beguiled.
- Behalve, 25/14, 76/19, 156/1, 470/10, behalf.
- Be happed, 33/3, has happened.
- Beheld, 381/24, Behelde, 237/29, looked.
- Behelde vpon, 460/26, looked upon.
- Beholde, 391/26, beheld.
- Be holde, 74/3, behold.
- Be in age, 495/20, be of age.
- Be in a surete, 554/7, be assured.
- Beime, 517/30, beam or balk of timber.
- Ben, 3/16, be (*pl.*).
- Ben, 336/13, are.
- Benche, 75/30, 377/6, seat.
- Bende, 538/4, band, train, company.
- Benefeyttes, 290/11, benefits.
- Ben none other thyng of it, 157/8, nothing would have come of it.
- Berdes, beards: fyrst berdes, 188/3, pryme berde, 191/17 (said of young knights only just bearded).
- Bere, 213/14, carry.
- Bere, 245/21, bear (a wild beast).
- Bereth, 570/21, beareth.
- Bere oute, 227/4, carry.
- Bere oute, 208/1, upho'd.
- Bere peyn, 572/19, inflict penance.
- Bering, 327/6, wearing.
- Besans, 560/8, bezants; gold coins named from Byzantium.
- Besechyng, 416/9, beseeching.
- Besege, 70/19, 395/14, besiege.
- Besely, 576/22, busily.
- Besemyng, 199/26, seemingly.
- Besethyng, 4/23, beseeching.
- Besines, 307/4, business.
- Bespeke, 551/13, bespeak.
- Beste, 234/2, beast.
- Bestes, 164/26, beasts, *or* oxen and sheep.
- Besy, 408/22, busy.
- Be take, 143/10, been taken.
- Bete, 320/6, beat.
- Beten, 391/24, beaten.
- Beter, 553/28, better.
- Betokenyng, 152/32, meaning, signification.
- Betrained, 224/23, 360/32, betrayed.
- Betrapped, 384/11, entrapped.
- Better, 65/25, richer.
- Betyde, 388/21, become.
- Betyng, 73/34, beating.
- Beynge, 499/19, *lit.* being = whom we are.
- Bi, 303/30, of.
- Bi suche maner, 61/24, in such manner.
- Bi the myddes, 304/5, in the midst.
- Blastred, 409/20, ? blew forth, broke out.
- Blindefelde, 331/8, blindfolded.
- Blisse, 451/26, bless.
- Bloode ranne me doune, 88/19, blood ran down me.
- Blowen, 69/34, blown.
- Bluste, 411/14, blushed.
- Blustred rede, 554/23, became red, blushed.
- Blynde, 226/11, blind.
- Blysse, 466/21, bliss.

- Boban, 193/26, sudden enrichment, uplifting. Fr. '*Bobans*: m. Riot, luxurie, wasting, vuthrifinnesse, excessive spending, superfluous or immoderat expence.'—Cotgrave.
- Bode, 529/16, remained.
- Body of hym, 42/9, his body.
- Body to body, 298/5, hand to hand.
- Boltes of wilde fyre, 529/12, engines of warfare, anticipatory of modern torpedoes.
- Bonde, 238/25, bound.
- Borde, 378/27, board, table.
- Bore, 113/34, boar.
- Borow, 215/18, borough, town.
- Boste, 242/6, boast.
- Bote, 400/19, 583/28, boat.
- Botell, 277/16; Botelle, 459/19; bottle, a bundle, truss. 'Ye be not worthe a botelle of heye' (a proverb).
- Botes, 315/3, boots.
- Botome, 496/11, bottom.
- Boty, 198/24, 374/24, booty.
- Bourdeyne, 114/24, Bourdon, 351/11, burden.
- Bourgeys, 27/24, Burgeys, 150/9, 590/27, burgesses. Fr. *bourgeois*.
- Bowelles, 243/27, bowels.
- Brake, 113/30, broke our line of battle, charged.
- Brake, 214/12, 256/6, broke.
- Brauke of stele, 28/24, 511/16; Braunk, 81/7, battle-axe. Fr. *Bran*, *branc*, *brand*, *épée*, *hache d'armes*. A.-Sax. *brand*.—Hippean.
- Braste, 173/13, 496/35, broke.
- Brayn, 581/7, brains.
- Brayned hym, 587/26, knocked his brains out.
- Breake, 478/15, broke.
- Brede, 442/1, bread.
- Bredern, 533/30, brethren.
- Breke felowshyp, 55/26, depart from one another.
- Brenne, 417/13, burn.
- Brennyng, 586/15, Brenynge, 136/21, burning.
- Brente, 19/28, 386/19, 492/5, burnt, burned.
- Breste, 451/13, breast.
- Breste of hym, 273/14, his breast.
- Bresten, 79/9, burst, broken.
- Brethe, 392/22, breath.
- Bretherne germayne, 17/10, kinsmen.
- Broched, 265/31, 452/16, pricked.
- Brochyng, 63/3, pricking.
- Broder, 36/4, 43/20, brother.
- Brosten, 391/23, burst, broken.
- Brothern, 410/7, brethren.
- Brought . . . to deth, 515/5, killed.
- Brom, 463/4, brown.
- Bruyt, 91/16; Bruyte, 21/11, 449/13, noise, commotion, disputation.
- Brigantes, 316/8; Brygauntes, 125/33 brigands.
- Bryngth, 498/32, brings, bringeth, brought.
- Bushement, 136/19, ambush.
- Busifall, 31/30, Alexander's horse Bucephalus.
- Bussynes, 137/27, pipes or straight trumpets. Fr. *busine*, *buzine*.
- But and, 511/15, but if.
- But & yf, 142/13, but if.
- But deed, 511/13, only dead (*i.e.* if he only touches you with his fork, you are dead forthwith).
- Buty, 143/27, booty.
- But yf, 496/14, unless.
- Buylded, 65/9, built.
- By, 232/17, be.
- By, 32/5, with ("thwerled his swerde by grete fyersnesse").
- By, 227/25, within.
- Bye, 167/26, buy.
- Byde, 530/11, abide.
- Byere, 29/27, coffin.
- Bygge, 232/6, 405/33, 491/6, big, large.
- By grete love, 230/25, of great love.
- Byheded, 75/1, beheaded.
- Byholden, 74/6, beheld.
- By hym, 298/3, of him.
- By hys pryde, 159/34, of, or from, his pride.
- Byleve, 418/14, 480/1, 559/14, believe.
- Byneth, 521/28, beneath.
- By no wyse, 235/20, on no wise.
- Bysshop, 172/31, 325/14, bishop.
- By suche, 453/1, in such.
- By suche a streyngthe, 43/12, with so much force.

- By suche a wyse, 42/15, in such wise.
 By suche wyse, 239/32, on such wise.
 By thanked, 72/9, be thanked.
 By there iourneys, 156/19, 548/30, on their travels, on their way.
 Bytwene, 523, 15, between.
- Caas, 297/9, case.
 Caled, 538/2, called.
 Calle, 566/23, accuse.
 Called of, 547/30, accused of.
 Challenge, 550/28, challenge.
 Cam, 442/27, came.
 Cam to hym agenst, 151/23, came to meet him.
 Came at theyvn, 547/9, the evening came.
 Came for, 70/19 (*for* redundant).
 Came to his above of it, 206/6, had the best of it.
 Capitayn, 292 14; Capytayne, 508/10, captain, commander.
 Carles, 478/30, churls.
 Carnall frende, 205/3, brother-in-law.
 Caste, 372/3, heaved.
 Casted, 55 4, 173/14, cast; 375/3, did cast; 485/14, heaved.
 Caste their gages, 548/1, thrown down their gages.
 Cause lawfull, 545 5, lawful cause.
 Cause why, 148/22, without any cause.
 Causer, 487/5, the cause.
 Ceasse, 459/12, cease.
 Cered, 173 28, waxt.
 Certente, 33/19, 363/25, certainty, truth.
 Challenge of you, 261/18, require of you.
 Chambrelayne, 211/29; Chambreleyn, 333/9, chamberlain.
 Chapeleyn, 573/14, chaplain.
 Charbokell, 74/14, carbuncle.
 Charboncle, 179/5, Charlemagne's carbuncle.
 Charged me of, 19/1, instructed me to do.
 Charme, 370/20, enchantment.
 Charnell, 422/14, burial-place.
 Chafed, 314/21, chafed, rubbed, chewed.
- Chauffed, 46/3, chafed, heated, fretted, vext.
 Chauffed, 339/17, 343/15, hot, heated, vexed, weary.
 Chayre, 152/4, chair of state, or pulpit.
 Checke, 350/23, check (in the game of chess).
 Chekes of him, 426/33, his cheeks.
 Chere, 26 7, cheer, fare.
 Chere, 83/16, cheer (*v.*).
 Chered theym, 452/19, made them good cheer.
 Cherme, 398/32, charm, enchantment.
 Chesses, 58/29, the game of chess; ches borde, 58/29, chess board.
 Cheysaunce, 104/27, mischance, bad outcome.
 Cheyn, 335 26, 369/25, chain.
 Chuse, 112/32, 519/20, choose.
 Chynne, 287/11, chin.
 Chyrche, 374 21, church.
 Clayme, 339 4, claim.
 Clene of, 516/25, clean off.
 Clime, 521/24, climb.
 Clothe, 510/10, clothes.
 Clothes, 175/19, rolls of cloth or silk.
 Cloued, 61/31, cleft.
 Clouted, 491/7, patched and nailed.
 Cloved, 231/33, cleaved.
 Clowdes, 302/18, clouds.
 Clowte, 282/33, cloth.
 Clymed, 244/29, climbed.
 Cofres, 372/15, coffers.
 Cole, 60/19, 209/17, coal. 'Becam blacke as a cole' = turned black in the face with anger.
 Colege, 583/12, college, all the members of the monastic establishment of the Cathedral of Cologne.
 Coler, 369/27, collar.
 Colle, 50/32, 64/5, embrace round the neck. Fr. *Collée*: f. A necke-imbracement, an imbracing about the necke; a greeting, or welcome, expressed by such an imbracement.—Cotgrave.
 Combrance, 19 15, 62 34, 217 3, hindrance, evil, mishap.
 Come, 173 7, comes.
 Comen, 41 21, 486/12, 507/31, come.

- Comende you, 492/28, commend to you.
- Commaundemente, 376/1, command.
- Commyssed, 58/15, committed.
- Complayne me, 17/11, complain.
- Complyn tyme, 46/1, Evensong, one of the old ecclesiastical divisions of the day equal to 9 o'clock P.M.
- Comyn, 195/6, 501/21, come (*pl.*).
- Comyn, 486/6, common.
- Conclusion effectuell, 151/16, effectual conclusion.
- Concordauns, 220/31, concord, treaty.
- Conduyt, 18/22, safe-conduct, guard.
- Conduytte, 508/7, Conduyted, 41/21, conducted.
- Condycion, 367/20, condition.
- Confuse, 563/4, in confusion.
- Comme, 30/34, 70/32, give.
- Comme, 282/23, know, learn.
- Comme doo soo moche, 61/9, be able to do so much.
- Conquested, 16/32, 132/30, conquered.
- Constantynoble, 498/9; Constantyn noble, 531/15, Constantinople.
- Contente, 545/31, contented.
- Contrefaytted, 172/24, counterfeited.
- Contynewe, 416/26, continue.
- Cope, 574/28, covering.
- Coppe, 38/11, cup.
- Corageus, 192/16, courageous.
- Cordueners, 173/21, cordwainer's, shoemaker's.
- Corven, 271/5, carved out.
- Corsettes, 79/10, steel corsets, breast and back armour.
- Coste, 130/4, 143/25, country.
- Cosyn, 498/25, cousin.
- Cote, 555/32, coat.
- Cote of mayle, 117/8, coat of mail.
- Coude . . . thanke, 26/24, gave. 'To conne thanke,' to give thanks.
- Coude, 80/12, could.
- Couffres, 371/4, coffers, strong chests.
- Counseyle, 43/20, advise (*v.*).
- Countrefayt, 315/1; Countrefayte, 115/13, counterfeited, changed, disguised.
- Courage, 432/25, heart, disposition.
- Fr. '*Courage* . . . the mind, will, humor, fancie, affection, disposition.'—Cotgrave.
- Cours, 378/26, course.
- Course of the horses, 168/14, horse-racing.
- Corset, 303/26, corset, doublet.
- Courtesli, 320/19, courteously.
- Courteys, 539/33, courteous.
- Covenable, 169/21, 543/14, convenient.
- Covent, 281/27, convent; but in this case applying only to *monks*.
- Cowardes of veri kinde, 295/11, ingrained cowards.
- Cowde, 191/12, could.
- Cowpled, 392/18, coupled, as wrestlers, with their arms round each other.
- Coyffe, 44/28, scull-cap: '*Coiff*, a close hood for the head.'—Fairholt. Fr. '*Coiffé*'; f. A coife, cowle, or cap, for the head.'—Cotgrave.
- Crafts, maner of, 150/10, handicrafts.
- Crafty men, 149/5, men of craft, handicraftsmen.
- Crake, 320/22, croak.
- Creatures humain, 23/31, human beings.
- Cristeyn, 511/9, Crysten, 511/22; Crystens, 515/20, Christians.
- Cronyikes, 3/7, chronicles.
- Croper, 267/4, crupper.
- Cruelles, 29/5, cruelty.
- Crusified, 336/18, crucified.
- Crystendome, 329/31, Christendom.
- Crystmasse, 83/12, Christmas.
- Culpe, 286/32, fault. Fr. '*Coulpe*': f. A fault, offence, trespasse, misdeed, or ill deed.'—Cotgrave.
- Curaces, 509/19, cuirasses.
- Cursidnes, 339/12, cursedness.
- Curstly dealed wythall, 257/31, hardly dealt with.
- Curtessye, 469/10, courtesy.
- Curtois, 38/33, courteous.
- Curtoysly, 75/28; Curtoysly, 146/2, Curtesly, 211/17, courteously.
- Custom, 480/13, custom.
- Cutted, 56/4, cut.
- Cyte, 301/18, city.

- Damoyssell, 144/2, damsel.
 Damoysselles, 27/18, damsels.
 Damp, 199/29, 201/19, 272/18, L.
Dominus, Sir or Lord.
 Dau pned, 256/13, 503/35, damned.
 Dangeour, 352/7, 457/12; Daun-
 geour, 218/12, 479/13, danger.
 Dawes, 194/31, birds.
 Dayned, 17/17, 53/33, 177/23,
 deigned.
 Day respyte, 429/17, respited day,
 or day of respite.
 Dealed, 143/27, divided, shared.
 Dealed to, 509/25, divided among.
 Debonairte, 550/16, good will.
 Deceasse, 244/17, die.
 Deceased, 227/5, deceased, dead.
 Deed, 111/29, 425/29, dead.
 Deed wounde, 562/31, death wound.
 Deef, 586/13, deaf.
 Defawte, 139/35, default.
 Defende, 546/27, prove.
 Defende theymselfe of, 552/3, de-
 fend them elves against.
 Defoyled, 266/6, stript of renown,
 overcome. ? Fr. 'Defueiller. To
 vnleau, to plucke the leanes
 from, to deprive of leanes.'—Cot-
 grave.
 Deffered, 301/22, deferred.
 Deid, 61/19, died.
 Delayng, 450/28, delay, delaying.
 Delibered, 157/27, deliberated, come
 to a decision.
 Delver yourselfe of, 208/27, get
 rid of.
 Demened, 487/24, demeaned.
 Demye launce, 487/18, a small lance.
 Departe, 242/10, separate.
 Departed, 540/13, gone awy.
 Departed, 308/22, 535/29, parted,
 separated.
 Departed well erly, 52/16, departed
 very early.
 Departyng, 492/23, departure.
 Deppeste, 115/11, closest, thickest.
 Derely, 454/32, 488/6, dearly.
 Dere syre, 470/14, dear sir.
 Dert, 187/31; Dertthe, 422/6,
 dearth.
 Deservyng, 336/24, deserts.
 Desire I not, 34/20, I do not desire.
 Desyryng, 497/21, desirous.
 Devocyon, 156/14, devotional im-
 pulse, desire. "Cam to hym a
 devocyon for to goo in pylgrym-
 age."
 Deuoyr, 72/20; Devoyre, 19/23;
 Devour, 567/4, devoir, duty.
 Deuysed, 41/32, arranged.
 Devyse, 547/9, appoint.
 Devysyng, 227/14, talking, chat-
 ting. Fr. 'Deviser. To com-
 mune, talke, discourse, conferre,
 deuse, chat, conuerse with.'—
 Cotgrave.
 Deyed, 406/25, died.
 Deyen, 438/1, die (*pl.*).
 Deyeng, 79/12, dying.
 Deyeth, 232/26, dieth.
 Digne, 3/16, great.
 Dishherited, 347/20, disinherited.
 D'spyte, 97/24, despite.
 Disworshippe, 324/14, dishonour.
 Do, 22/10, cause to be; "he shoul
 do hange hym," should cause him
 to be hanged, have him hanged.
 Do brene, 17/29, cause to be burnt.
 Doum, 82/10, dumb.
 Dommage, 28/28, damage, hurt,
 injury.
 Dommaged, 111/12, done gre't
 mischief to.
 Dongeon, 23/22, donjon.
 Donn, 132/24, got down.
 Doo all myn oste, 375/30, make my
 warriors.
 Doo dygge, 438/21, caused to be
 digged.
 Doo knowe, 72/22, cause to be
 known.
 Do : marchandyse, 177/32, trade.
 Doon, 317/16, 548/20, done.
 Doon, 420/18, do (*pl.*).
 Doon, 110/13, 189/1, given.
 Doo of, 464/16, do off.
 Doo of me, 26/33, do with me.
 Doo of hym, 56/7, done *with* him
 = 'all up with him.'
 Doo put, 90/24, cause to put.
 Doo repayre, 531/25, caused to be
 repaired.
 Doo sawte, 189/26, make assault.
 Doterd, 208/9, dotard.
 Doo theym nothyng, 248/6, do them
 no evil.
 Dooth me to wyte, 211/18, makes
 me to know.

- Doo to be caste donn, 185/8, cause to be cast down.
- Doo you to wyte, 89/27, cause you to know.
- Do pyghte, 73/30, cause to be pitched.
- Dores, 204/13, doors.
- Doubed, 31/25, dubbed.
- Doubte . . . of a strawe, 229/8, care a straw. (Doubte = fear.)
- Doubte of death, 18/10, in peril, fear of losing one's life.
- Doubted, 155/12, feared.
- Doubted in his takyng, 479/11, difficult to take him.
- Donce france, 191/18, 367/23, true, right France, nothing but France, *lit.* sweet France.
- Doungon, 96/4, dunjon.
- Douse, great, high, chief, 16/18.
- Douspyers, 203/19, the "twelve peers" of France.
- Douve, 53/3, dove.
- Dowbe, 495/20, dub.
- Dowbed, 163/5, dubbed.
- Drawe, 139/12, gone.
- Drawen, 66/4, withdrawn, gone away.
- Draweth now sore to age, 542/4, is getting old.
- Drawnen, 96/26, drawn.
- Dreme, 221/23, dream.
- Dressed, 420/19, placed, prepared, got ready.
- Drew after, 351/3, carried behind.
- Drewe alle, 27/11, all drew.
- Dronke, 93/8, drunk. The yeomen of the stable had supped, and "thei were dronke."
- Dronken, 478/22, drunk.
- Drynkyng, money, 582/10, money to buy drink with.
- Duange, 248/21, troubled, vexed. A.S. *dwīnan*, to dwine, pine or waste away; 'dwingen, to shrivel and dwindle (Eastern), *dwinglen*, Brome's Songs, ed. 1661, p. 183.' Hal. Gloss.
- Duche, 477/10, duke.
- Dure, 207/12, endure.
- Dute, 324/17, duty.
- Duytes, 150/6, duties, dues.
- Dyches, 65/15, 420/18, ditches.
- Dyd doo make, 182/26, made.
- Dyde, 57/27, 88/26, 327/9, did, performed.
- Dyde caste a grete syghe, 372/3, heaved a great sigh.
- Dydest, 226/7, didst.
- Dyde mysse, 90/15, missed.
- Dyde on, 31/23, put on.
- Dyde soo moche, 156/19; Dyde somoche, 342/7, 576/15, went so far, went so fast.
- Dyde so moche by their iourneis, 570/14, rode so fast on their way.
- Dyde tary, 500/15, tarried, stayed.
- Dyffamed, 326/22, 580/24, defamed.
- Dyffyaunce, 112/7, defiance.
- Dygne, 337/2, worthy.
- Dyner, 478/1, dinner.
- Dyverse, 467/25, divers.
- Dysaray, 354/3, disarrayed, unready.
- Dysarmed, 198/22, unarmed.
- Dysarmed hym, 91/11, took his arms away.
- Dysase, 277/31, disease.
- Dysavowed, 134/20, disowned.
- Dyseeyve, 462/18, deceive.
- Dyseoupled, 241/16, uncoupled.
- Dysease, 244/31, danger.
- Dysguysed, 314/26, 462/18, disguised.
- Dyshe, 463/5, dish, wooden bowl.
- Dysheryted, 134/19, disinherited.
- Dyspende, 538/13, spend.
- Dysperate, 245/24, 409/26, desperate.
- Dyspeyre, 370/10, despair.
- Dysplaysed, 464/19, 510/8, displeased.
- Dysplaysure, 30/19, displeasure.
- Dyspurneyd, 418/8, unprovided.
- Dyspyte, 161/22, 362/6, 478/5, despite.
- Dyssynuled, 534/5, dissimulated.
- Dystressed, 116/6, dis-train'd.
- Dystroied, 71/14; Dystroyed, 483/5, destroyed.
- Eche, 453/1, 547/15, each.
- Edefyed, 575/10, erecting, building.
- Edyfyed, 67/4, erected, edified.
- Eeles, 264/13, eels.
- Eest, 336/7, east.
- Eere, 136/12, ear.
- Efforte, 527/21, exhibition.
- Efte agayne, 252/9, often again.

- Egle, 355/3, eagle.
 Elder, 537/1, okler.
 Elles, 489/10, else.
 Elles where, 178/2, elsewhere.
 Embusshed, 554/21, ambushed.
 Emonge, 218/31, among.
 Embrased, 414/15, 492/25, embraced.
 Encrease, 214/28, increase.
 Endeavorde, 4/12, endeavoured.
 Endoctrined, 536/7, instructed.
 Endure, 511/19, stand.
 Endyng, 527/20, end.
 Enewred, 187/15, inured.
 Engynes, 457/32, war material,
 machines for casting stones.
 Enhabyte, 150/4, inhabit.
 Enlevyn, 125/9, eleven.
 Enmye mortalle, 64/26, mortal
 enemy.
 Enoynted, 169/29; Enmoyned, 35/
 27, anointed.
 Employed, 476/34, employed.
 Eupraynt, 453/2. Fr. 'Em-
 preinte: f. A stampe, a print . .
 a violent assault, a furious and
 forcible onset.'—Cotgrave.
 Enprynging, 4/14, printing.
 Ensampl, 477/1; Ensauuple, 295/
 17, example.
 Ensure, 329/23, assure.
 Entirely, 450/17, entirely.
 Entencyon, 359/17, intention.
 Entent, 409/34, intention.
 Enterprised, 21/34, undertaken.
 Enterprys, 54/13, enterprise.
 Entraylles, 251/30, entrails.
 Entre, 173/3, entrance.
 Entreteyneth, 549/27, entertaineth.
 Envyronned, 191/30, 227/18, sur-
 rounded, environed.
 Erbe, 371/7, herb.
 Ere, 562/32, ear.
 Erneste, 328/8, earnest.
 Eschewe, 564/33, evade.
 Escuse, 112/21, excus.
 Ester, 83/12, 535/13, Easter.
 Ete, 516/8, eat.
 Eten wyth, 52/34, eaten by.
 Ether, 451/34, either.
 Etyng, 440/35, eating.
 Euyll rest, 70/30, 'God gyue them
 euill rest,' = no peace.
 Euyll was to hym, 27/2, it was
 unlucky for him.
- Euyll, 73/35, even, close.
 Euyll, 53/20, evening.
 Ever, 17/20, always.
 Everyche, 186/16; Eueriche, 53/10,
 every.
 Euyll contente, 253/8, not well con-
 tented.
 Euyll daye gyve you, god, 107/3,
 God give you an evil eading.
 Euylls, 408/25, evils.
 Euyll, 500/12, even.
 Euyll, 243/7, evening.
 Euyll anone, 306/16, even now
 Expowne, 152/17, expound.
 Euyll, 99/8, 306/10, eyes.
 Euyll, 210/6, Euyll, 74/21, eight.
 Euyll, 226/26, 310/25, aileth.
 Euyll, 324/7, heirs.
- Facyon, 227/16, 351/11, 544/24,
 fashion, shape, manner.
 Falsed your feyth, 264/20, made
 false your faith.
 False wyt, 565/25, falseness, falsity,
 treachery.
 Falshode, 558/15, falseness, treach-
 ery.
 Falsli, 341/5, falsely.
 Famyssh, 74/27, starve out.
 Famysshed, 421/13, made him to be
 famished.
 Famysshynge, 21/25, famine.
 Fare, 478/34, fared.
 Fared soo fowle, 515/20, did so
 evilly.
 Fare fowll wyth vs, 42/2, do evil
 unto us.
 Fauce posternes, 190/31, false gates,
 or passages.
 Fawcons, 59/21, Fawcones, 192/25,
 falcons.
 Fauell, 33/21, dun. 'Fauveau: m.
 A dunne horse. Fauveau, yellow-
 ish, darke yellow, dunne, some-
 what fallow. Fauve, fallow,
 deepe-yellow, Lyon-tawnie, light-
 dunne.'—Cotgrave.
 Faughte, 99/22, fought.
 Fawcebraye, 77/27; Fawesebraye,
 149/15, a secret passage, or
 covered way.
 Fawte, 215/33, 550/31, fault: 110/
 35, falseness; 111/7, default.
 Faylle, 37/13, fail.

- Faylled, 75/10, failed.
- Fayne, 86/33, fine, good; 301/16, fain, willing.
- Fayr clothes, 534/1, goodly hangings; cloths and carpets hung from the windows, &c.
- Faytes, 4/7; Fayttes, 32/22, feats.
- Faytes of armes, 138/18, 453/3, feats of arms.
- Feere, 80/13, 398/21, fear.
- Feered, 455/18, feared.
- Feest, 499/12, feast, rejoicing; 175/27, sport.
- Feintnes, 425/30, faintness.
- Felawe myn! 301/26, my man!
- Felawshyp, 16/23; Felawshyp, 46/26, company, party.
- Felle, 267/22, 288/30, 565/18, felled, knocked down.
- Felishyp, 289/17, 512/25; Felishyp, 545/18, fellowship, following, company.
- Fell, 165/6; Felle, 30/17, wicked, cruel, fierce.
- Felony, 496/20, villainy.
- Ferder, 57/2, further.
- Ferdfull, 249/8, fearful.
- Fere, 481/12, fear.
- Fered, 149/13, feared.
- Ferfull, 361/30, fearful.
- Ferre, 60/27, far.
- Ferre ways, 585/24, far countries.
- Fery, 337/27, fayery, the fairy race, magic folk.
- Feste, 83/13, 163/7, feast.
- Fet, 477/22; Fette, 216/25, 466/2, fetch.
- Fete, 466/5, feet.
- Fete of hym, 550/17, his feet.
- Feters, 370/28, fetters.
- Fetred, 369/24, fettered.
- Fewte, 571/8, fealty.
- Feynte, 184/15, 249/2, faint (from loss of blood).
- Feysautes, 124/6, pheasants.
- Feyth, 99/12, 538/11, faith.
- Fiersly, 262/33, fiercely.
- Fiersnes, 413/6, fierceness, ferocity.
- Fifty, 108/1, fifty.
- Fishes, the miracle of the, in sustaining the body of Reynawde above the water, 582-583.
- Fissher, 264/13, fisherman.
- Flancardes, 79/10, flank or side armour. Fr. '*Flancars*: m. Side Lauges; armour for the flanks, or sides of a barbed horse.'—Cotgrave.
- Fleeng, 140/27, fleeing.
- Flewe theym quyeke, 157/31, flay them alive.
- Fleyen, 25/11 (slayne in ed. 1554), flayed, slain.
- Fleyn quyeke, 320/20, flayed alive.
- Fleyng, 232/26, flying.
- Flouge, 39/10, 262/5, flew, travelled.
- Flowen, 521/7, flown.
- Flowynge, 589/15, influx.
- Flyghte, 243/24, flight.
- Fole, 460/10, fool.
- Fole destestable, 331/31, detestable fool.
- Folie, 80/7, mischief, evil.
- Folisse, 171/5, foolish.
- Folke, 29/6, 224/25, attendants, followers, retinue.
- Foly, 21/34, silly enterprise.
- Folysly, 243/12, foolishly.
- Fonde, 67/20, 194/23, 363/1, found.
- Fontaine, 400/26, fountain, stream.
- For, 36/19, 301/20, from.
- For cause, 53/4, 540/10, because.
- For doubte to be blamed, 81/4, for fear he should be blamed.
- For nyce, 171/18, as asses. Fr. '*nice* . . . dull, simple.'—Cotgrave.
- For our sayvynge, 505/31, to save us, for our salvation.
- For prysoners, 90/6, as prisoners.
- For recomended, 170/20, 495/16, as commended or committed to your charge, under your care. '*Recommander* . . . to give one charge, to commit vnto the care, of.'—Cotgrave, 1611.
- For to = to; 18/4, "oughte for to doo"; 18/25, "come not for to serve"; 20/7, "for to tell."
- For to deye for it, 296/27, if I have to die for it.
- For to knowe, 193/6, to find out.
- For to light on horsbak, 74/20, to mount horse.
- For whi, 202/28, because.
- Forbanysshed, 79/32, disinherited, banished, dispossessed.
- Forbede, 244/14, 359/12, forbid.

- Forcened, 201/33. Fr. '*Forcené* . . .
 Mad, wood, frantick; raging,
 furious, out of his wits.—Cot-
 grave.
 Foreclosed, 289/11, foreclosed, shut
 off.
 Forder, 446/1, further.
 Foreby, 116/5, near.
 Forewarde, 40/12, the advance
 guard.
 Forfaytte, 32/29, default, forfeit.
 Forfote, 173/12, forefoot.
 Forgaaff, 336/19, forgave.
 Forgate, 259/3, forget.
 Forgate not, 51/19, did not forget.
 Forhede, 48/14, 478/11, 559/11,
 forehead.
 Forrest, 106/27, 137/13, 449/8,
 foremost.
 Forsayd, 558/34, aforesaid.
 Forsoke, 461/9, forsook.
 Forthby, 586/22, thereby, that way.
 Foster, 194/17, forester.
 Fote, 176/3, foot.
 Fote, 279/33, feet (" xv fote of
 lengthe" = fifteen feet in height).
Foot is still used, as 'six foot
 high.'
 Fouer, 109/9, four.
 Founded, 32/6, formed, made.
 Foundemente, 56/16, fundament.
 Founde the wayes, 536/2, made the
 arrangements.
 Fourth, 39/23; Fourthe, 27/8, 60/7,
 forth.
 Fourthe, 26/8, forth.
 Fourthi, 55/20; Fourthy, 547/8,
 forty.
 Fowle fall, 304/11, evil befall.
 Fowndered, 123/3, bedrenched.
 Fowndre, 140/3, give way, founder.
 Foynd, 43/25, thrust.
 Foyson, 187/4, 434/25; Foi-son,
 20/2, plenty, many, a great
 number.
 Fraunchyse, 283/12, service.
 Fraye, 62/11, fray.
 Fraye hym selfe, 33/18, not put
 himself in fear.
 Free knyght, 199/29, free-speaking.
 Frende, 498/27, friend.
 Frende carnall, 225/8, near kinsman.
 Frenshemen, 238/10, Frenchmen.
 Frenshyp, 83/11, friendship.
- Fro, 302/32, 486/13, from.
 Frohens, 140/1, from hence.
 Fromhens forthon, 350/24, from
 henceforth.
 From my behalve, 159/18, on my
 behalf.
 Frompeled his forhede, 48/14, made
 the wrinkles appear in his fore-
 head.
 Frutes, 336/28, fruits.
 Fulfylled wyth, 388/2, full of.
 Full made, 149/20, finished building.
 Full often, 35/17, many times.
 Furred, 199/14, furred, fringed.
 Fyaunced, 154/16, affianced.
 Fyfte, 452/22, fifth.
 Fyghte, 291/19, fight.
 Fyghte sore atte his herte, 125/19,
 to be troubled in his mind, by
 recollection of his shocking treat-
 ment of his sons.
 Fynde, 526/28, find.
 Fyne, 253/19, great.
 Fyne force, 518/23, 562/13, great
 force.
 Fynysshe, 514/10, end, finish.
 Fynysshed, 248/13, come to an end.
 Fyre angry, 476/20, as angry, as
 fierce and furious, as fire.
 Fyred, 510/22, fired, set alight.
 Fyred it, 399/7, set fire to it.
 Fyrste, 445/17, first.
 Fyssh, 393/2, 582/31, fish.
 Fysshes, 226/8, fish's.
 Fyste, 43/18, hand, fist.
- Gaaf, 32/35; Gaaff, 62/13; Gaff,
 143/29, gave.
 Gabbe, 338/29, speak mockingly.
 Gadre, 441/6, gather.
 Gadred, 168/12, 552/33, gathered.
 Gage, 218/28, defiance; 386/34,
 pledge.
 Galous, 334/21; Galohous, 331/22,
 gallews.
 Gare, 567/6, cause.
 Garnysshed, 87/25, supplied.
 Garnyssheng, 251/3, gathering.
 Gate, 374/24, got; 486/23, get.
 Gate the pryce, 308/7, won the prize.
 Gayn, 355/1, 529/34, booty, prize
 taken from the enemy.
 Gayne, 194/23, gain.
 Gaynsayth, 425/11, gainsayeth.

- Gentill, 19/10, noble.
 Gentyll, 495/10, gentle.
 Gentylwymen, 491/30, gentle-
 women.
 Gete, 452/13, get.
 Girde, 31/25, girded, girt.
 Gladder, 211/11, more glad, more
 pleased.
 Glayue, 82/25, glaive, blade. Fr.
 'Glaive: m. A Gleane, or Sword;
 also a Lance, or horseman's
 staffe.'—Cotgrave.
 Glotons, 63/19, 81/1, gluttons,
 blackguards. Fr. 'Glouton: m. A
 glutton . . . also a knave, rascal,
 filthy fellow.'—Cotgrave.
 Glystered, 93/14, glistened.
 Gnewe, 473/31, gnawed.
 Go, 586/14, walk.
 God byfore, 488/3, God leading.
 Goddys, 231/14, God's.
 Gode, 485/16, 499/8, 525/7, goods,
 cargo.
 God mercy, 450/31, God's mercy,
 or the mercy of God.
 God yelde you, 146/33, God keep
 you.
 Golde massy, 61/23, massive gold.
 Goo, 452/8, go.
 Goo agenste theim, 494/8, go against,
 to meet them (*i.e.* in a friendly
 manner, not as in war).
 Goo at, 519/1, go to.
 Goo fro myself, 532/6, go beside
 myself (*i.e.* lose my wits).
 Goo in pylgrymage, 156/14, go on
 a pilgrimage.
 Goo vpon, 25/23, attack.
 Good, 30/27, goods, good things.
 Good arraye, 29/17, a sarcastic way
 of speaking of a man whose head
 has been cut off.
 Good of kynde, 490/18, good by
 nature, naturally of a good dis-
 position.
 Goode gownes, 49/25, best clothes.
 Goon, 445/22, gone.
 Goon to sportynge, 193/10, gone
 sporting.
 Gooth, 270/6, 315/27, gooth.
 Goten agayne, 498/4, again taken.
 Gramercy, 82/30, 301/33, 'grand
 merci,' great thanks.
 Greef, 236/21, pain.
 Greefull, 251/29, grievous.
 Gresses, 440/35, grasses.
 Grete, 572/1, greet.
 Grete hall, 149/8, principal room.
 Grete luste, 157/8, great haste.
 Grete name, 541/7, high esteem.
 Grete occasion, 226/31, great cause.
 Grete peyne contynual, 28/32, long-
 continued trouble.
 Grete rage of hungre, 429/7, great
 pangs of hunger.
 Grete wordes, 412/27, big words.
 Gretnes, 232/9, greatness.
 Gretter gentilman, 208/30, better
 man.
 Greetinge, 489/25, greeting.
 Greureth, 76/22, grieveth, angereth.
 Greveth, 452/2, grieveth.
 Grovelinge, 370/31, grovelling.
 Gryeffe, 34/12, grief.
 Gryffon, 52/31, griffin, dragon.
 Grylled, 176/32, expanded.
 Guarisshe, 278/14, healed, cured.
 Fr. *gueri*.
 Guided, 281/18, guided.
 Guysarme, 516/13, a long weapon
 with a scythe and a spear at its
 head. See it figured in Fairholt's
Costume in England, ed. Dillon,
 i. 216.
 Guyven, 263/21, given.
 Gyaunt, 586/31, giant.
 Gybet, 30/22, Gybette, 96/21,
 gibbet, gallows.
 Gyfte, 246/18, gift.
 Gylte, 537/22, gilt, gold.
 Gylty, 286/6, guilty.
 Gymnes, 337/17, clutches; 428/28,
 snares.
 Gyrtes, 321/10, girths.
 Gyrthe, 197/15, part of the harness
 of a horse.
 Gyve him to knowe, 548/12, given
 him to understand.
 Gyueth, 69/30, forewarneth.
 Gyveth, 137/9, foretelleth.
 Habandonne, 336/27, abandon.
 Habandoned, 239/27, abandoned.
 Habylymentes, 53/11, habiliments.
 Habyte, 279/28, habit, dress.
 Had b, 456/5, had been.
 Had doo make, 70/5, had made.

- Had enuye vpon hym, 150/23, were envious of him.
- Had out, 525/9, taken out.
- Had theym, 536/10, took them.
- Hadde, 92/14, took.
- Hadde doo brynge, 56/28, had brought.
- Hale vp saylle, 530/19, haul up the sails.
- Halfe discomfyted, 228/30, half vanquished (because they had no arms with them).
- Halowes, 552/26, sacred relics.
- Halted sore, 177/9, was sore lame.
- Haltynge, 175/6, lamely.
- Halve, 464/14, half.
- Hamer, 581/6, hammer.
- Hanfull, 107/4, handfull.
- Hanged, 74/18, furnished ('whan the tentes wer all spred & hanged').
- Hangynge, 50/14, pending; —'This hangynge,' 71/13 (very frequently), Fr. *ce-pendant*, meanwhile, meantime. (After relating the doings of one set of his characters, the narrator leaves them alone, and goes on with the doings of another set.) Fr. '*Pendant cela* (adverbially), in the meane while, in the meane time, in the meane season.' —Cotgrave.
- Happed, 86/33, 504/29; Haped, 19/24, happened, came to pass, turned out.
- Happed of newe, 202/12, newly happened.
- Hardenes, 106/7, harshness.
- Hardly, 194/25, hardily, stoutly, quickly.
- Harneyscs, 44/4, armour, accoutrements, both of horses and knights.
- Hast, 477/33, haste.
- Haste the mete, 255/15, hasten, 'hurry up' the dinner.
- Hasted somoche, 562/22, harried, worried, so much.
- Hastly, 451/31, hastily, in haste.
- Hathe be, 468/28, hath been.
- Hated, 539/31, hated.
- Haubergeon, 42/24; Haubergen, 79/10, a coat of mail, a breast-plate, the diminutive of 'hau-berk.'
- Haue accorde, 51/10, have accorded, *i.e.* to have made peace between.
- Haue do made, 70/29, have caused to be made.
- Haunted, 543/31, acquainted.
- Hauntyng, 536/16, following.
- Hauoyre, 64/29, 71/23, goods, valuables.
- Have, 17/27, capture.
- Have be, 456/4, have been.
- Have me, 166/6, take me.
- Hede, 418/31, heed.
- Hede, 37/26, 403/16, head.
- Hede captayne, 508/18, commander-in-chief.
- Heded, 266/22, beheaded.
- Heder, 75/19, hither.
- Hederwarde, 481/30, hitherward.
- Hedles, 331/6, heedless.
- Heeled, 398/16, covered (with bedding, &c.).
- Heeres rise vp, 228/27, hair stands up.
- Helhelde, 229/17, beheld.
- Helde hym so short, 532/8, was so hasty with him.
- Helde syde, 238/4, took side.
- Hele, 278/5, heal.
- Helpeth hymself wyth, 528/5, applies himself to.
- Hens fourthe, 49/17, henceforth.
- Hensfourthon, 59/6, henceforth on.
- Her, 21/29, its; spoken of the castle of Aygremount.
- Heraukle, herawde, 203/16, 31, herald.
- Herbowrynge, 28/9, dwelling-place (*metaphor*).
- Here, 50/6, hear.
- Heremytage, 400/24, hermitage.
- Heremyte, 315/24, 467/22, hermit.
- Heres, 177/16, hair (referring to colour).
- Heres pulled, 62/10, hairs torn out of the head.
- Herke, 246/23, hearken.
- Herken, 90/21, hearken.
- Hermyns, 129/9, ermine.
- Herneis, 79/5, war apparel.
- Herte, 48/9, heart.
- Herte so fell, 205/31, such wicked hearts.
- Herte tendred, 430/22, heart became tender.

- Hertes, 124/5, harts.
 Hertes rose in their belies, 465/24.
 hearts rose in their bellies (*apparently proverbial*).
 Hertly, 451/35, heartily.
 Hertly sorowe, 429/25, sorrow at heart.
 Herytaunce, 404/4, inheritance, heritage.
 Hete, 417/30, 452/13, heat.
 Hether, 31/2, hither.
 Heved, 194/30, held.
 Heved vppe, 28/24, lifted up.
 Hevered, 122/4, heaved.
 Hevy, 532/3, heavy.
 Hevy, 114/15, censorious, bullying.
 Fr. '*Lourd* . . vnhandsome, vn-ciuile, vnmannerlie.'—Cotgrave.
 Hevy to me, 492/23, heavy on me.
 Hevyn, 112/29, 507/11, heaven.
 Hevynes, 99/9, 143/9, heaviness.
 Heye, 116/27; Hey, 431/1, hay.
 Hidous, 121/10, hideous.
 Hie, 3/14, 53/31, 431/33, 476/25, 476/31, high, loud.
 Hie roche, 73/8, high rock.
 Highe voys, 165/25, loud voice.
 Hiin vpon, 564/30, upon him.
 His body defendynge, 566/26, defending his body.
 His hert rored in his beli for ioye, 261/7, he was so overjoyed, that his heart beat furiously.
 His strokes cam right, 79/2, each stroke of his sword killed a knight.
 Hit, 29/29, it.
 Hode, 282/19, 466/12, hood.
 Holde here, 154/11, look here!
 Holde, 62/26, regain, recover.
 Holden, 70/33, bound.
 Hole, 46/14, 312/22, whole.
 Holpe, 110/34, 384/1; Holpen, 159/5, 271/24, helped.
 Honged, 215/32, hung, hanged.
 Hongre, 115/14, hunger.
 Hoote, 136/7, hot.
 Horns, 137/27, clarions.
 Horryble, 276/3, horribly.
 Horsis tayles, 73/19, horses' tails.
 Hosin, 372/17, stockings or socks.
 Hoursone, 61/25, whoreson.
 House of religyon, 280/22, 576/12, religious house.
 How, 363/10, however.
 How be it, 224/16, though.
 How somever, 174/27, howsoever.
 Humylite, 411/32, humility.
 Hungre, 433/16, hunger.
 Hurted, 78/20, 452/23, hurt, did hurt.
 Hurted, 560/11, hustled.
 Husbonde, 415/14, 491/15, husband.
 Hydde, 422/7, 518/26, hid.
 Hyghe, 486/10, high.
 Hyghe you, 559/29, hie, hasten, be quick.
 Hylle, 400/23, hill.
 Hym, 482/10, 503/3, himself.
 Hym demaunded, 40/26, demanded of him.
 Hym I beseche, 19/13, I beseech him.
 Hym shold yll betyd, 61/29, it should ill betide him.
 Hynge, 413/35, hung.
 Hyt, 48/3, it.
 I am borne, 316/32, I was born.
 I am mayster for to begge brede, 499/10. This is one of Mawgis's playful remarks that he was one of the best of beggars, and that if fair means did not procure the bread, then his staff did.
 I am not therto consentynge, 52/15, I do not consent thereto.
 I me complayne, 183/15, I complain me.
 'I nether prayse you nor doubte you not,' 27/3. This seems to be a proverbial expression.
 I shall maye, 181/24, I may, shall be able to.
 I wolde be reformed wyth rayson to, 159/26, I would reasonably conform to.
 Iape, 148/27, jape, play with, mock at.
 Iawe, 562/33, jaw.
 Ieopardie, 329/7, put in jeopardy.
 Ill be it, 17/19, albeit.
 Imprenable, 21/24, 160/9, impregnable.
 In, 210/20, into.
 In a good hour, 132/27, an auspicious time.
 In a scorne, 264/11, in scorn.

- In certayne, 22/12, certainly.
 In the crosse, 62/25, on the cross.
 In to the breste, 55/32, in the breast.
 Incontynente, 67/6; Incontynente, 24/26, forthwith, immediately, at once.
 Indygne, 152/27, unworthy.
 Inhumaynly, 54/15, inhumanly.
 Loye atte my herte, 33/9, apparently a proverbial expression for 'be easy in my mind.'
 Is abyden, 490/32, does abide.
 It is no more spoken of him, 227/5, no more is said of him.
 It semeth me, 21/32, it seems to me.
 It shall repente you, 550/30, you will repent it.
 Iustynge, 141/9, jousting.
 Iustyse, 584/5, justice.
- Kaytiff, 272/9, caitiff.
 Kechyn, 255/15, kitchen.
 Kepe, 453/26, guard.
 Kepe parlyamente, 202/6, hold counsel.
 Kepe the wayes, 116/4, play the highwaymen.
 Kepe well, 62/5, take care.
 Kepe you by, 512/23, keep close to.
 Keped, 157/9, kept.
 Kepeth, 302/24, hindereth.
 Kerles, 480/13, carls, churls, knaves.
 Keruers, 544/14, carvers (at the dinner table).
 Knacked, 406/29, gnashed.
 Knawe, 264/20, knave.
 Kneue, 549/13, heard of.
 Knowe the kyng, 87/25, let the king know.
 Knowledge, 465/1, knowledge.
 Knyff, 256/9, 544/24, knife.
 Knyghtehode, 294/10, knighthood.
 Knytted, 48/14, knit.
 Kyndenes, 411/31, kindness.
 Kyng overthrowen, 203/27, a term of reproach.
 Kynges name of Fraunce, 252/12, in the name of the king of France.
 Kynred, 400/3, kindred.
 Kyt, 267/23; Kytted, 350/2, cut.
- Laddes, 364/1, lads, pages.
 Lade, 109/5, laden, bestridden.
- Lady, 478/8, a chess term, meaning what is now called the queen. It is to be understood that, from the use to which the player put this lady, the 'pieces' employed in the game must have been of gigantic dimensions.
 Laked, 80/10, lacked.
 Lawghe, 172/25, language, speech.
 Lapped, 251/31, wrapt up, covered, i.e. put back his entrails into his stomach, and bound them in.
 Largenes, 143/30, liberality.
 Late a goo, 449/20, lately, a short time back.
 Lawde, 208/6, laud, honour.
 Lawghe, 372/22, laugh.
 Lawghe wyth it, 563/23, laugh at it.
 Layd a down, 291/28, laid low.
 Layde, 227/31, laid hidden.
 Layed, 421/15, laid, placed.
 Leches, 568/31, physicians.
 Ledded, 240/8, led, did lead.
 Leden, 81/2, deal with.
 Ledernes, 125/20, idleness, lethargy.
 Leest, 289/13, least.
 Legeaums, 348/3, allegiance.
 Leiser, 80/7, leisure.
 Leke, 574/27, like.
 Lended, 304/9, lent.
 Lene, 116/24, lean.
 Lene, 481/17; Lened, 418/21, lend.
 Lenge, 529/30, long.
 Lenger, 336/1, longer.
 Lengthe, 55/12, 335/16, lengthen.
 Lenyng, 320/30, leaning.
 Lepe, 258/31, leapt; 522/4, leap.
 Lepte, 337/3, leaped.
 Lese, 99/6, 522/23, lose.
 Lese place, 562/23, lose ground.
 Lese the pryce for age, 170/4, be reckoned younger than he is.
 Lesyng, 343/13, lying story.
 Lete, 172/32, left.
 Lete falle thyselfe, 302/25, let thyself fall.
 Lete flee, 192/25, let fly.
 Lete goo down, 91/10, let down.
 Lete renne theyr horses, 42/5, let their horses run.
 Lete you wyte, 73/6, give you to understand.
 Leten, 457/25, let.
 Letre, 214/16, letter.

- Letted, 269/14, 333/2, hindered, prevented, stopped.
 Lettyng, 467/33, hindrance.
 Leuer, 33/13, value, estimate.
 Leuer, 37/17, sooner.
 Leve, 481/15, leave.
 Leve, 298/17, take, accept.
 Levelt, 254/21, leaveth.
 Lever, 148/12, sooner.
 Leves, 116/23, leaves.
 Leye, 45/14, 395/20, lay.
 Leyed, 579/30, laid.
 Leyser, 229/5, 383/17, leisure.
 Liberte, 488/23, liberty.
 Liff, 142/16, life.
 Liff dayes, 473/27, days of life.
 Lifte, 182/23, lifted.
 Lifte, 233/17, left (side).
 Ligeaunce, 155/11, allegiance.
 Lighte, 291/12, lighted.
 Lightely, 488/12, quickly.
 Lignage, 166/10; lygnage, 166/30, lineage.
 Like it you that, 568/25, do you like that which.
 Like wyse, 485/13, likewise.
 Limmes, 72/28, limbs.
 Linage, 499/14, lineage.
 Lippes, 371/8, lips.
 Liste, 59/7, care to.
 Liste, 464/33, outgrowth, excrescence, tag of flesh. Fr. '*Liste* . . . a small square out-itting brow, or member of a piller. *Le mol de l'oreille*. The lug, or list of th' eare.'—Cotgrave.
 Litol, 177/27, little.
 Lityll, 400/23, little.
 Lityll myle, 500/3, short mile (proverbial expression).
 Lityll pase, 227/13, slow pace.
 Live dayes, 555/6, remaining days.
 Livelode, 489/8, livelihood, possessions.
 Lodges, 49/31, 174/34, lodgings, or tents; 501/28, a reed hut.
 Loke, 576/26, examine.
 Loke, 569/33, look after and heal.
 Loked, 315/11, looked.
 Loked a traverse, 179/22, looked behind.
 Loked ful angrely, 48/15, looked swollen up with anger.
 Lond, 525/1; Loude, 489/6, land.
- Longed unto, 193/5, belonged unto.
 Longeth, 480/12, belongeth.
 Lorden, 511/14, lurden, lout, low fellow.
 Lordeshyp, 90/4, lordship.
 Loued, 70/10, loved.
 Loughe, 230/25, laughed.
 Lounges, 241/15, lungs.
 Lowde, 503/13, lout.
 Lust, 481/4; Luste, 370/20, desire.
 Lyberte, 413/12, liberty.
 Lyers, 113/9, liars.
 Lyfte, 123/32, left.
 Lygthly, 89/33; Lyghtelye, 307/16, lightly.
 Lykened, 215/34, likened.
 Lynce, 24/23, lineage.
 Lynen, 220/9, linen.
 Lyon, 113/34, lion.
 Lystes, 167/33, race-courses.
 Lytyll, 133/6, little.
 Lyuered, 54/23, delivered over to.
 Lyvered, 214/15, delivered.
- Machomet, 511/2, Mahomet, now usually transliterated Muhammad.
 Machyned, 216/8, machinated.
 Mad, 55/27, made.
 Made a longe necke, 177/1, arched, or spread out his neck.
 Made accorded, 153/21, agreed upon.
 Made be called, 547/10, caused to be called.
 Made com, 203/16, caused to come.
 Made noo lenger dwellyng, 76/24, stayed no longer.
 Made noo grete ioye, 532/1, did not rejoice.
 Made of it two peeces, 562/20, cut it asunder.
 Made swere my good fader, 289/8, made my good father swear.
 Made theim way, 453/35, made way for them.
 Made to be redy, 62/23, made ready.
 Made to open, 512/11, cause to be opened.
 Magre, 86/14, Fr. *malgre*, in spite of; 86/16, damage.
 Magyke, 349/7, magic, necromancy, enchantment.
 Mahom, 515/8, Muhammad.
 Mai, 393/5, may.

- Maister, 265/27, master.
- Make as mani men for to *make* the warre, 22/3, *number* as many men to *carry* on the war.
- Make his berde to be cutte harde by the chynne, 186/2, shave him (*apparently proverbial*).
- Make the forwarde, 235/16, be in front.
- Make to hym, 26/8, to tell him.
- Male, 466/13, knapsack, bag. Fr. 'Male: f. A Male, or great Budget.'—Cotgrave.
- Malencolye, 38/10, melancholy.
- Maner, 486/13, 499/3, manner, matter, doings.
- Man of werr, 74/20, man of war, warrior.
- Maner of craftes, 150/10, handicrafts.
- Manly, 102/16, manfully.
- Manson, 178/27, common-man's son, a derisive title (*filz de proudomme*).
- Many of sheldes, 42/23, large number of shields.
- Marbell, 282/7, marble.
- Marchauntes, 458/24, merchants.
- Marches, 138/33, countries.
- Marre not, 140/32, do not endanger.
- Marter, 93/27, slaughter.
- Martyrdome, 164/14, trouble, torment.
- Maryshall, 462/31, marshal, seneschal; in modern parlance, master of the ceremonies.
- Masse, 325/18, ? mass, religious profession; not mace, or bishop's pastoral staff, now called a crozier.
- Massi, 374/26, massive.
- Masterles, 298/31, without masters.
- Masters gate, 76/33, the chief gate.
- Mate, 478/9, a chess term; it seems here to mean 'check,' and not 'mate,' as the game is now played.
- Mated, 478/22, checkmated.
- Matere, 253/9, matter.
- Mathe, 90/19, maketh, for 'made.'
- Matynes, 573/13, matins, early morning (3 A.M.) prayers, according to the old ecclesiastical regimen.
- Mantelles, 212/2, mantles.
- Mawgre, 229/1, in spite of. Fr. *malgre*.
- Maye, 26/27, 232/21, be able.
- Maye noo more, 563/25, may do no more, unable to do more.
- Mayles, 142/1; Maylles, 267/24, links. Fr. 'Maille: f. Mayle, or a linke of mayle, whereof coats of mayle be made.'—Cotgrave.
- Mayne, 357/35, 445/28, many, number, lot, mass. Cf. 'the main of them are fools.'
- Mayntene, 545/15, maintain.
- Mayntened, 358/22, maintained.
- Mayster theef, 461/1, chief of the thieves.
- Maysters masons, 149/4, master masons.
- Maystres strete, 94/5, principal street.
- Meane, 134/33, 219/25, means.
- Meddle, 22/14; Medle, 292/24, battle, fight.
- Medlee, 37/10, meddle.
- Medled, 43/5, mingled.
- Medlers wyld, 576/2, wild medlars.
- Medlynge, 289/1, fighting.
- Medowe, 392/4, meadow.
- Me dysplayseth, 373/18, it displeases me.
- Meete, 123/29, meat.
- Meiny, 462/26, many, train.
- Meke, 409/34, make meek.
- Meked hymselfe, 468/27, borne himself meekly.
- Mele, 124/2, meal.
- Melodyously, 227/11, melodiously.
- Men bryng, 74/22, men shall bring.
- Men make often a rodde for theym selfe, 97/11, a proverbial expression, apparently put into Charlemagne's mouth to belittle him, because he would set down all his misfortunes to the fact that he had knighted the Four Sons.
- Men of crafte, 27/25, handicraftsmen.
- Mery of you, 20/21, mercy on you.
- Merueylionse, 307/8, marvellous.
- Merueylle, 32/35, marvel.
- Merueylled, 36/33, marvelled.
- Merueylled hym selfe, 53/22, marvelled within himself.
- Mervelouse, 246/10, marvellous.
- Merely, 227/3, merrily.
- Mery, 102/8, merry.

- Messenger, 74/31; Mesenger, 287/32, messenger.
 Mete, 547/16, meet, sufficient.
 Mewed, 152/6, fastened with a peculiar string (said of a hawk).
 Mewle, 189/3, mule.
 Meyne, 316/6, men, followers.
 Meyne of knyghtes, 34/1, body or troop of knights.
 Mischeeff, 404/28, mischief.
 Misdoone, 20/34, done amiss.
 Mispryed, 359/14, done wrongly, erred, offended.
 Moche, 299/18, loud.
 Moche glad, 542/6, very glad.
 Moche honourably, 535/19, very honourably.
 Moche humbly, 212/17, very humbly.
 Moche sori, 515/6, very sorry.
 Moche worthyly, 45/23, very worthily.
 Moche wroth, 36/3, very angry.
 Mocke for that, 561/13, something to mock at.
 Mocyon, 290/15, motion, action of the mind.
 Moeved, 136/27, stirred, moved.
 Molyfied, 414/28, mollified.
 Moone, 111/28, 312/27; Moone, 29/33, moan.
 Moneth, 359/24, month.
 Montague, 90/26; Montayn, 145/13, mountain.
 Moo, 328/7, more.
 Mooste, 209/5, most, greater.
 More dred, 190/24, more dreaded.
 Morowe nexte, 146/5, next morning.
 Mortalle, 213/23, deadly.
 Mote, 364/20, might.
 Mountenaunce, 29/21, amount, value.
 Moure, 565/32, Moor (*i.e.* became as black as a Moor).
 Moved, 164/28, bestirred.
 Mow, 89/26, 162/10, be able.
 Mowes, 173/29, p. isterns.
 Muche longe, 21/17, for a long time.
 Murders, 435/18, murderers.
 Murtrished, 264/22, murdered, murdered.
 Mus urdes, 171/18, Fr. '*Musard* : m. A musar, dreamer, or dreaming fellow . . . a pauser, lingerer, deferrer, delayer . . . a man of no dispatch. — Cotgrave.
 Musike, 225/24, music.
 Musselinge in the grounde, 426/1, grubbing with their faces in the ground.
 Mussell, 561/25, muzzle, a horse's face.
 Mustres, 187/33, musters.
 Mysnyng, 425/25, complaint.
 Myddes, 160/26, 304/5, 528/15, midst, middle.
 Myght, 165/13, power, strength.
 Mykyl, 99/4, much.
 Myle, 35/4, miles.
 Mylle, 493/14, mill.
 Mylstone, 496/17, millstone.
 Mylte, 52/33, the spleen.
 Myn, 190/6, mine.
 Myu, 52/32, my (*pl.*).
 Mynysshie, 436/24, diminish.
 Myracle, 582/31, miracle.
 Myre, 420/18, miry, dirty place.
 Myschaunt, 72/24; Myschaunte, 125/27, wicked.
 Mysdoon, 481/28, misdoune, done amiss.
 Mysdyde, 344/23, did amiss.
 Myshap, 231/12, mishap.
 Myspryed, 59/26, 347/2, mistook, mistaken, erred.
 Myssayed, 174/17, missaid.
 Myssed, 486/16, missed.
 Mysshaped tyll vs, 375/11, ill-betided us.
 Mystre, *vb.* 129/14, 141/5, behove, supply need, help; Mystre, *n.* 504/4, need. Fr. '*Mestier* . . . need, lacke, necessitie, want, occasion for the vse, of a thing.' — Cotgrave.
 Mystruste, 219/33, distrust.
 Naeyon, 121/15, nation.
 Nage, 133/6, small horse.
 Nandy, 72/30, specially.
 Nature maye not lie, 424/13, nature is true to herself, *i.e.* the paternal instinct cannot be overcome.
 Naturell, 36/30; Natureill, 83/17, natural.
 Nayles, 473/33, nails.
 Ne, 25/22, nor.
 Ne, 168/18, never.

- Nere goon, 565/23, nearly dead.
 Nerer, 273/8, nearer.
 Netheles, 206/21, nevertheless.
 Never dayes of our lyues, 50/23, never again.
 Never dethe was so sore solde ne so dere boughte, 38/25 (apparently a proverbial expression), Never was such terrible vengeance taken, or misery caused, as was for the death of Lohier.
 Never in my dayes, 228/26, never before.
 Never wylle ripe, 473/22, never will become ripe.
 Nevew, 188/6, nephew.
 Newe, 63/26, newly.
 Newe tyme, 89/25, next spring.
 Nighed, 315/15, come nigh to.
 Nigromancy, 24/6, necromancy, enchantment.
 Noblesse, 44/12, nobility, noblemen.
 No moo but two, 239/13, no more than two.
 None, 400/21, noon.
 None, 454/3, the old ecclesiastical division of the day, viz. 3 P.M.
 None otherwyse, 457/14, not otherwise.
 Nosse, 371/8, nose.
 Norished, 172/18, brought up, bred.
 Norysshed, 114/26, 327/28, nourished.
 Nostrelles, 176/32, nostrils.
 Nother, 25/22, 60/25, 70/32, 217/12, neither.
 Net well atte ease of his persone, 216/19, uneasy in his mind.
 Noynted, 278/13, anointed.
 Noyntement, 169/29, ointment.
 Noyous, 227/18, difficult.
 Nye, 560/10, nigh.
 Nyggtte, 69/15, night.
 Nyghe was the sonne vnder, 45/35, the sun was well nigh set.
 Nygramancer, 277/20, necromancer.
 Nys noo, 452/12, is no.
- Obeyeng, 550/13, obedient.
 Obeyssauner, 33/31, obeisance.
 Obeyssaunte, 166/10, obedient.
 Oblacyons, 315/35, oblations.
- Occupyed, 579/1, used up.
 Occysson, 45/16, 82/1, slaught. r. Fr. 'Occision': f. An occision, killing, slaying, murthering, slaughtering.—Cotgrave. L. *occidere*, to kill; *occisio*, killing.
 Of, 20/21, 73/33, on.
 Of, 26/33, with
 Of, 49/25, off.
 Of, 74/20, for.
 Of, 210/6, by.
 Of, 369/29, in.
 Of a freshe, 110/23, again.
 Of a heygthe, 73/26, from on high.
 Of a longe whyle, 153/32, for a long time.
 Of all foure sides, 151/9, said of Reynawde, who was 'a noble gentylman of all foure sides.'
 Of ferre, 106/17, from afar.
 Of fro y^e sholders of hym, 81/7 from off his shoulders.
 Of heyghe, 62/4, on high.
 Of his behalve, 158/27, on his behalf.
 Of hym, 472/1, by him.
 Of length, 194/4, long.
 Of lighte, 106/6, lightly.
 Of newe, 288/24, afresh, again.
 Of ryght of were, 457/15, by right of war.
 Of that, 87/6, for that.
 Of whens, 158/15, 441/13, from whence.
 Offre, 298/17, offer.
 Offrynges, 585/27, offerings.
 'Often happeth evill for a good torne,' 265/14. This is quoted as a proverb, and seems to mean that in doing a good turn for any one, evil often happens to the doer.
 Olyue tree, 47/23, an emblem of peace.
 Ones, 64/16, once, at one time.
 On lyue, 29/11, alive.
 Onoly, 116/22, only.
 Ony, 116/5, 226/21, any.
 On you, 306/14, on your account.
 Oo, 113/13, 146/7, one.
 Oolde, 452/12, old.
 Oonly, 486/5, only.
 Oost, 69/14, host.
 Ootes, 116/21, oats.

- Operacyon of the duyll, 80/2, the devil's work.
- Oppynyon, 192/19 opinion.
- Or, 129/22, 269/5, before, ere.
- Ordenaunce, 195/15, ordinance, order.
- Ordened, 511/34, ordered, ordained.
- Ordeyned, 188/25 made ready.
- Ordeyned, 69/18, put under the leadership of.
- Or ever, 160/3, 301/15, before.
- Or ever a, 90/14, before a.
- Or euer it be a moneth, 74/27, before a month's time.
- Or evyn, 369/10, before evening.
- Or oughte longe, 449/23, before long.
- Oroyson, 226/19, orison.
- Oryllam, 451/33, banner: Oryflame, 41/17, the banner of Charlemagne.
- Othe, 112/6, oath.
- Other, 213/9, either.
- Other two, 220/13, two other.
- Otis, 442/17, oats.
- Overthrowe, 106/6, overthrown.
- Oughte, 125/13, owe.
- Oughte for to doo, 18/4, ought to do.
- Our, 545/10, ours.
- Oure, 55/31, hour.
- Ourselke, 78/15, ourselves.
- Overhwarte, 238/28, cross-ways, athwart.
- Over late, 546/2, too late.
- Overmayster, 392/29, overcome.
- Overronne, 177/20, overrun, beaten.
- Over subtyll, 171/2, very cunning.
- Overthynke, 418/23, think over.
- Overtoke, 460/19, overtook.
- Owen, 17/20, owe, *pl.*
- Owen, 474/7, own.
- Oweth, 173/33, owneth.
- Owre, 27/16, 70/6, hour, time.
- Owterage, 507/17, outrage.
- Oxeforde, 3/19, Oxford.
- Paas, 114/1, 174/23, 229/19, pace, step.
- Pacyence, 233/28, patience.
- Padde, 314/21, toad.
- Pagnymes, 164/27, pagans.
- Palays, 19/32; Paleys, 530/6, palace, castle.
- Palfrays, 509/16; Palfrei, 558/7, horses.
- Palfreyer, 257/17; Palfreyner, 257/15, the keeper of the palfrey.
- Fr. '*Palefrenier*': m. A Groome of a stable; a Horse-keeper.—Cotgrave.
- Palmer, 315/23, pilgrim.
- Palster, 399/31, 466/12, a pilgrim's staff, shod with iron.
- Pappes, 143/12, breasts.
- Parente, chambre of, 151/27, chamber lung with tapestry. Fr. '*Parent* . . Arras, Tapisserie, or any costlie Hangings.'—Cotgrave.
- Parentage, 123/10, parental care.
- Pareyll, 121/21, peril.
- Parforce, 133/24, by force.
- Parforce, 138/4, to make greater exertions than usual.
- Parfornysshe, 304/33, perform, finish.
- Parliamente, 136/6, speech.
- Parte of paradys, 297/27, hope of Paradise.
- Party, 115/27, 143/27, part.
- Parylle, 243/5, peril.
- Pase, 315/6, pace.
- Patrymony, 327/3, patrimony.
- Pauylyon, 73/30, tent.
- Payed, 483/23, paid.
- Payer, 491/6, pair.
- Paymente, 28/34, reward.
- Paynym, 17/2, pagan, infidel, misbeliever.
- Peas, 26/26, 47/24, peace.
- Pease, 207/19, appease.
- Peasible, 489/1, peaceably.
- Peces, 96/26, pieces.
- Peeres, 441/1, pears.
- Pelow, 370/32, pillow.
- Penuncell, 153/24, pennon.
- Pensifull, 419/27; Pencyfull, 120/21, pensive, thoughtful.
- Pentheco-ste, 16/3, Pentecost.
- Pepled, 150/11, peopled.
- "Perce!" 515/16, "Persia!" (a war-cry).
- Perced, 339/21, pierced.
- Perceyve, 224/27, perceive.
- Perdicyon, 224/13, perdition, destruction.
- Perell, 291/19, peril.
- Perell mortall, 429/29, mortal peril.
- Peres, 481/29, peers, lords.

- Persante, 502/20, Persian.
 Perse, 515/8, pierce.
 Personé, 498/27, person, body. The common phrase is, 'Frende, how is it wyth your persone?' = 'Friend, how are you?' (spoken to a man who is ill in bed).
 Perteyneth, 458/11, pertaineth.
 Per to per, 392/5, peer to peer = hand to hand, equal to equal.
 Pertryches, 124/6, partridges.
 Peryle, 226/19, peril.
 Peyn, 259/20, pain.
 Peyne, 116/24, 314/2, pain, peril.
 Peyne, 248/24, trouble, effort.
 Pighte, 191/11, pitched.
 Pintre, 390/17, pine-tree, fir-tree.
 Plaise, 509/31, please.
 Plaisur, 50/22, pleasure.
 Plane, 193/18; Playne, 195/31, plain (country).
 Payne, 490/20, compl. in.
 Playsant, 74/1, pleasant.
 Playse, 29/25, 303/20, please.
 Playsed them not well, 226/22, did not well please them.
 Playseth, 159/28, pleaseth.
 Playsure, 298/7, pleasure.
 Plente, 445/29, plenty.
 Plentuousse, 129/27, plentiful.
 Pomell, 169/25, pommel.
 Portcolisse, 149/15; Porte colisse, 518/1, portcullis.
 Postle, 272/6, apostle.
 Pouerli, 319/22, poorly.
 Pouff (pouffe in ed. 1554), 25/18, puff.
 Pour vnhappy, 270/19, poor unhappy [one].
 Poure, 139/31, poor.
 Poure estate, 49/30, evil condition, naked.
 Poure herte myn, 131/3, my poor heart.
 Pourest, 422/29, poorest.
 Pourvey, 547/14, provide.
 Powre, 117/19, 220/27; Power, 242/19, poor.
 Poynte me wyth, 239/18, point at me with.
 Poyntment, 403/2, peace.
 Poyttrell, 197/15, breastplate of the armour or harness of a horse.
 Praiers, 393/11, prayers.
 Prate, 320/22, talk.
 Prately, 282/7, prettily, neatly, deftly, that is, savagely.
 Praty, 150/1, piety.
 Praye, 200/2, prey.
 Praye god, 74/25, pray to God.
 Praysyng, 208/6, praise.
 Prechinge, 480/23; Prechyng, 235/1, preaching, speaking.
 Predecessours, 513/14, predecessors.
 Preeff, 161/2, proof.
 Precsse, 44/18, pressure.
 Pren, 23/32, preu.
 Presently, 287/4, at once, forthwith.
 Preu, 43/30, ? Fr. *preux*.
 Preue, 72/19, prove.
 Prince covetous, 539/34, covetous prince.
 Promytte, 32/27, 56/26, promise.
 Proteccyon, 388/18, protection.
 Prouesses, 72/23, prowess (*pl.*).
 Prouffer, 507/16, proffer.
 Prouffyte, 127/11; Prouffytte, 26/20, profit.
 Prove vpon, 545/34, affirm, make known.
 Proye, 164/12, prey, booty.
 Pru, 79/30, 197/6, preux.
 Pryce, 144/5, 175/23, prize.
 Pryme, 369/34, prime; the old ecclesiastical division of the day, meaning 6 A.M.
 Pryour, 382/6, prior.
 Pryse, 32/13, praise.
 Pryse, 577/14, price.
 Pucell, 144/10, damsel.
 Pulde, 485/33, pulled.
 Pynysshe, 485/20, punish.
 Pynysson, 30/24, punishment.
 Purchase this matere, 151/13, compass, carry out, follow up this matter.
 Purchaced, 232/15, purchased; 566/27, bargained.
 Purveyd, 378/13, 537/22, provided.
 Purvyauce, 537/27, providence.
 Put, 508/10, make.
 Putted, 176/22, put, got ready.
 Pictured, 512/33, pictured, painted.
 Pyetons, 45/15, 59/6, piteous, sorrowful.
 Pyetously, 473/25, piteously.

- Pykeaxe, 581/6, pickaxe.
 Pylgrymage, 156/15, pilgrimage.
 Pyller, 369/26, pillar.
 Pyller of marbell, 282/7, marble pillar.
 Pyn tre, 239/20, pine tree.
 Pytched, 399/8, fixed.
 Pyt, 236/34; Pytte, 327/18, pit.
 Pyte in hym, 498/22, ? cause for pity in you for his sore sickness, or like Fr. '*Pitié*, Pitié, ruth, compassion . . . charitie, kindnesse or tendernesse of disposition' (Cotgrave) in the pilgrim himself.
 Quarelle, 272/20, quarrel.
 Quicke, 19/18, 62/6, 320/20, alive.
 Quycke, 400/26, lively, running.
 Quycke & deed, 518/11, 'dead and alive' is the modern equivalent.
 Quayras, 241/32, 299/4, cuirass.
 Quayte, 210/16, insure.
 Quayte, 29/19, quit, free.
 Quayte, 268/16, quits, equal.
 Quayte, 412/23, quietly.
 Quayted, 143/25, quieted.
 Ranne hym agenst, 531/7, ran up to him.
 Rasour of whete, 187/28. Fr. '*Rasier de bled*. A measure containing about foure Bushels.'—Cotgrave.
 Rather, 63/31, sooner.
 Raught, 453/35, 505/12, struck.
 Raunson, 397/22; Raunsome, 144/21, ransom.
 Rayled, 353/23, rallied, gathered together.
 Raymentes, 492/4, raiment.
 Rayne, 516/1, reins.
 Rayson, 20/15, 225/7, 231/34, reason.
 Reconyssaunce, 218/11, recognizance.
 Recounted, 52/20, 72/7, 302/9, encountered.
 Recountre, 307/19, encounter.
 Recovered, 309/20, returned.
 Recreante, 109/17, worn out.
 Recoile, 81/27, recoil.
 Red, 211/11; Redde, 214/15, read.
 Redi, 477/15; Redy, 468/23, ready.
 Redoubted, 329/29, redoubtable.
 Redyly, 61/17, readily, easily.
 Reede, 501/27, reeds to build a hut with.
 Reest, 45/19, 229/21, the 'rest' for a spear.
 Reformed, 159/27, conformed.
 Refrayne, 407/2, refrain, restrain.
 Refreyned, 457/20, refrained.
 Refuce, 159/34, refuse.
 Refute, 406/24, refuge.
 Regulet, 325/19, ? unfrocked, turned out of the service of the Church. Lat. '*Regulatus Regulis seu lineis distinctus; rayé, réglé*. Ad regulam institutus, ordinatus; *réglé*.'—D'Arnis. '*Rayé* Rased, scraped, crossed, or cleane put out; also rayed, rewed, streaked, or skored all ouer.'—Cotgrave.
 Reherce, 214/23, reh arse, tell.
 Rehersed, 142/31, rehearsed.
 Reherse, 427/25, retell, recount.
 Re-ioysse, 452/29, rejoice, reanimate.
 Rekenynge, 264/31, reckoning.
 Rele, 198/21, 268/13, reel, stagger.
 Reled, 314/25, reeled, rolled.
 Release, 324/5, release.
 Reliques & hallowes, 112/28, sacred relics.
 Remedied it, 213/27, willed otherwise.
 Remedyeth, 407/29, remedies.
 Remenaunt, 150/27, rest, remainder.
 Remyse, 367/20, remit.
 Remysed, 270/26, committed, retained, kept. Fr. *Remettre* is 'also, to remit, forgiue, pardon, acquit, release, vnto.'—Cotgrave.
 Renne, 141/25, 478/17, run.
 Renne theym vpon, 77/21, run upon them.
 Renomme, 39/9; Renommee, 132/15, 292/19, renown.
 Rented, 533/5, rent.
 Replenysed wyth, 494/32, possessed of.
 Replenysshed, 533/7, possessed.
 Repreued, 65/30, 328/12, reproved, repented.
 Requyre, 450/25, seek for.
 Requyred, 547/23, requested.
 Reregarde, 292/4, rear guard.
 Resonnably, 297/6, reasonably.

- Respyte, 336/1, respite.
 Retehe to you, 234/4, reach you.
 Returned, 70/12, returned.
 Retourne, 301/15, return.
 Retrete, 421/6, retreat.
 Reyncs, 117/6, reins.
 Reyse, 156/6, raise.
 Reysedest, 336/15, raised.
 Reyson, 38/13, reason; 546/31, reasonably.
 Right a noble company, 548/29, a goodly host.
 Right now, 304/10, just now.
 Righted, 370/32, put right, put straight; 316/29, lifted.
 Righted vp, 477/4, put all ready, right and proper.
 Rightwys, 432/24, righteous.
 Robbed, 371/7, 399/29, rubbed.
 Roke, 478/12, a chess term, now called indifferently 'rook' and 'castle.'
 Rokked a slepe, 376/21, rocked to sleep.
 Rood, 113/13, rode.
 Rore, 456/10, roar. (Apparently proverbial: 'Ye shall see all Fraunce in a rore & trowble.')
 Rored, 261/7, made a noise ('his hert rored in his beli for ioye').
 Roten, 544/32, rotten.
 Rotes, 116/23, 505/9, roots.
 Rotyn, 439/27, rotten.
 Rought, 63/10; Roughte, 141/33, wrought.
 Roume, make hym, 79/19 give him, or leave him, room; give him a wide berth; keep out of his way. (The Four Sons don't want to fight their father.)
 Rousty, 117/4, rusty.
 Rouwte, 374/5, quantity.
 Rowme, 245/9, make room.
 Royame, 35/21, 68/7, realm.
 Rybawde, 173/4, rascal, rogue.
 Rybbes, 516/23, ribs.
 Ryden, 233/30, ridden.
 Ryghtnow, 332/17, just now.
 Ryght sore traueylled, 77/20, very weary.
 Ryghtwys, 207/17, right wise.
 Ryght-wyse, 20/13, lawful.
 Ryghtwysness, 111/33, righteousness.
- Rype, 473/22, become ripe, ripen.
 Ryvage, 221/21, bank, shore, water-side.
 Sadel, 257/33, saddle.
 Sadeles, 268/28, without a saddle.
 Sadylls, 117/5, saddles.
 Saeuge, 297/34, saying.
 Sage, 18/1, 298/3, wise.
 Said, 526/24, spoke, gave.
 Salettes, 42/24, light helmets for soldiers, first used in the 14th century. See cuts of them, from Hewitt's *Ancient Armour*, in Fairholt's *Costume in England*, ed. Dillon, ii. 356.
 Salued, 24/16, 47/27, saluted.
 Sapyn tre, 242/33, 323/20; Serpyn trees, 213/20. Fr. 'Sapin: m. A Firre tree.'—Cotgrave.
 Sarasyns, Sirasins, 16/8, 9; Sarra-sins, 127/4; Sarrasyns, 163/11, Saracens.
 Satysfye, 348/7, satisfy.
 Sauf, 29/20; Sauff, 103/2, 192/30, safe.
 Saufconduyt, 51/15; Sauf conduyite, 385/25, safe conduct.
 Sauff garde, 388/18, safeguard.
 Saullyer, 70/31, soldier.
 Save, 545/17, saving.
 Sawdours, 129/17, soldiers.
 Sawe thus, 42/13, thus saw.
 Sawmons, 264/13, salmon.
 Saw the day, 389/25, woke up.
 Sawtyng, 149/13, assault.
 Sawtynge, 253/20, 457/31, assaulting.
 Sayd, 162/15, spoken.
 Sayed, 560/17, said.
 Saye ou hardely, 146/15, speak out boldly.
 Sayen, 196/8, have said.
 Scante, 438/35, scarcely.
 Scantly, 460/9, scarcely.
 Scape, 62/5, 330/16, escape.
 Scaped, 53/1, escaped.
 Scarmysse, 87/15, skirmish.
 Scarmysshynge, 108/11, skirmishing.
 Scarstee, 422/2, scarcity.
 Scarched, 491/33, scratched.
 Scathe, 308/1, harm, injury. A.S. *scathan*, to harm, injure.

- Sased. 365/26, in possession of; 320/4, seized.
 Secretare, 210/8, secretary.
 See, 327/3, 423/3 sea.
 See his dethe, 228/9, see him put to death.
 Seen, 316/16, 382/11, se-ing.
 Sege royall, 396/4, royal siege.
 Seke, 498/29, sick, ill.
 Seke so moche, 157/24, go quickly and seek.
 Sekynge, 445/4, seeking.
 Semblaunt, 230/24, semblance.
 Semeth you, 480/5, seemeth to you.
 Sendall, 154/25, 'A thynne stuffe lyke sarcenette, and of a rawe kynde of sylke or sarcenett, but courser and narrower then the Sarcenett nowe ys, as my selfe canne remember.'—Francis Thynne, *Animaduersions*, 1599, ed. Furnivall, 1875, p. 41.
 Sende, 214/27, sent.
 Sendynge, 17/18, summons.
 Separe, 441/3, separate.
 Sepulture, 200/26, 317/1, sepulchre.
 Sepulturynge, 592/6, burying, burial.
 Sergautes, 478/10, sergeants.
 Sermon, 252/4, speech.
 Seryse, 325/5, service.
 Sesue, 16/10. ? (Fr. 'Sener, 1. faire signe; 2. guérir.'—Hippéau. Fr. 'Sesue: Synode, assemblée ecclesiastique. Voyez *Senne*.'—Rouquetfort. Fr. 'Sesue. The mother of wine, the white or mouldie spots which float on the top of old wine.'—Cotgrave.)
 Set, 377/6, sit.
 Satted, 245/23, 404/28, set, did set.
 Setteth lyttle by me, 20/4, doesn't think much of me.
 Set to your necke an halter, 233/23, put a rope round your neck.
 Seurties, 387/4, sureties.
 Shaked, 497/3, shook.
 Shall goe besyge, 17/26, will go and besiege.
 Shall wyll, 61/21, shall desire to.
 Shalt you, 564/24, shalt thou.
 Shamed, 377/14, made ashamed.
 Sharpe, 141/23, fierce.
 She, 136/27, it (applied to a city).
 Sheethes, 86/32, sheaths.
 Shelde paynted, 32/3, painted shield.
 Shelynges, 187/29, shillings.
 Shent, 423/33, punish, disgraced.
 Shertes, 49/32 shirts.
 Shet, 22/33; Shette, 72/31, shut.
 Shevered, 259/2, shivered.
 Shit, 335/25; Shutte, 312/18, shut, closed.
 Shoke, 161/12, trembled; 272/3, 528/9, shook.
 Shoke of, 217/5, shook with.
 Sholdre, 241/34, 356/27, shoulder.
 Shone, 466/4, shoes.
 Shorn as monkes, 279/31, shorn as monks.
 Shortly, 558/16, quickly.
 Shot of adventure, 221/31, chance shot.
 Shote, 521/28, shoot.
 Shotte of a bowe, 180/33, bowshot.
 Shoued, 54/2, ? shoved (in the sense which is now considered vulgar).
 Shreudely handlyd, 257/32, roughly handled.
 Srewedly, 421/7, harshly.
 Shrewedly, 476/33, evilly, badly.
 Shrove, 458/7, shrove, shrived.
 Shrynke his eeres, 257/25, shrink, draw in, his ears.
 Shryve, 335/10, shrive.
 Shyfte, 274/8, 403/18, deal.
 Shyfte hardely, 301/13, deal harshly.
 Shyp, 524/26, ship.
 Signyfycacion, 152/18, signification.
 Sike, 458/6, sick.
 Sikenes, 458/7, sickness.
 Silkes, 524/21, pieces of silk.
 Simple, 153/13, common, not of high lineage.
 Sin, 64/5, 225/17, since.
 Sithe, 68/1, since.
 Skynne of parchemente, 280/3, parchment skin.
 Slaked, 493/25, slackened, abated.
 Slaughte, 453/31, slaughter.
 Slanndred, 263/10, disgraced.
 Slayen, 505/18; Slayne, 504/26, slain.
 Sle, 18/29, 93/26; Sle, 230/21, slay.
 Sle him quyeke, 22/10, slay him alive.
 Slepe, 459/4, sleep.

- Sloppe, 466/12, a gown fit for a hermit.
 Slougthe, 117/28, sloth.
 Slyme, 336/26, slime.
 Smal, 188/12, short.
 Smalle lyuen clothes, 220/9, underlinen.
 Small people, 187/31, poor, common people.
 Smocke, 492/6, smock.
 Smot, 61/26, smote.
 Smote, 243/23, took.
 Smote hyn the hede of, 568/19, smote off his head.
 Smyt, 273/3, smote.
 Smyte, 231/28, smite.
 Smyten, 370/5, smitten.
 Sobbynges, 590/14, sobbings.
 Socoured, 159/5; Socourde, 278/33. succoured, relieved.
 Socoures, 40/30, succour, relief.
 Sodaynly, 56/8, suddenly.
 Soden, 437/27, seethed, boiled.
 Sodenly, 304/2, suddenly.
 Softe, 88/21, mild, quiet; 177/25, gently, slowly.
 So hardy, 74/20, be so disobedient.
 Solempnyte, 592/5, solemnity.
 Somer nexte comynge, 29/22, next coming summer.
 Somer, 280/20, sumpter horse, a baggage horse laden with provisions, *i.e.* he had not one with him.
 Sommeres, 100/26, 145/2, sumpters, forage carriers.
 Somoche, 299/12, so much.
 Somwhat, 511/27, something.
 Somwhat more to do thenne I wende, 74/11, something more to do than I thought for.
 Soner, 223/30, 320/20, sooner.
 Song, 583/5, sung or sang.
 Sonken, 177/2, sunk.
 Sonne, 341/28, sun.
 Sonne goon vnder, 63/32, the sun was set.
 Soo moche, 26/14, so great.
 Soper, 92/15, supper.
 Sopped, 92/17, supped.
 Soppes, 463/9, sopped bread.
 Sore an angred, 28/22, he was very angry.
 Sore apayred, 117/2, clad in sorry clothes.
 Sore badde, 247/10, very wicked.
 Sore charged for you, 209/9, had pressed on your account.
 Sore depe, 116/2, a great way; 227/22, very deep.
 Sore grete, 216/11, very large.
 Sore lade, 232/4, sore laden.
 Sore lene, 117/22, very thin.
 Sore vengable, 52/26, very revengeful.
 So requyre I to you the deth humbly, 34/19, Charlemagne thus prays to God for death.
 Sori, 81/13, 181/7, sorry.
 Sory, 571/19, sad.
 Souked, 143/13, sucked.
 Souldyours, 256/27, soldiers.
 Sounde, 564/1, whole.
 Sounded of the noyse, 55/30, the noise of the battle resounded all around.
 Souped, 551/28, supped.
 Souper tyme, 87/3, 364/10, suppertime.
 Soverayne, 216/26, sovereign.
 Sowne, 176/21, sound.
 Sowned, 217/1, sounded.
 So worthy, 225/26, such worthy.
 Sowre loue, 83/11, anything but a father's love.
 Sped, 49/21, prospered.
 Spede, 451/3, speed.
 Spekyng, 492/11, speaking.
 Spere went in peces, 141/11, spear broke in pieces.
 Spered, 573/16, enquired.
 Sperhawke, 152/6, sparrowhawk.
 Sperkled, 352/6, dispersed.
 Spoken to, 269/24, spoken for, *i.e.* in behalf of.
 Spored after, 451/19, spurred after.
 Spored hys horse terryble, 42/30, spurred his horse terribly.
 Spores, 31/23, spurs.
 Sporte, 525/12, go, ride.
 Sported, 524/17, disported, gone about with.
 Sported, 192/31, had sport with falcons.
 Spryngynge, 369/14, uprising.
 Spylle my selfe, 247/11, do myself more harm.
 Spyrites, 332/10, spirit.
 Stackke, 52/32, stuck.

- Stakerde, 302/11, staggered.
 Stale, 590/9, stole.
 Stamped, 169/24, bruised.
 Stampyng, 93/22, stamping, making a great row.
 Stele, 561/19, steel.
 Stel, 360/25, 417/17, steal; 381/9, stole.
 Sterke deed, 45/4, stark dead.
 Sterte, 328/13, started.
 Steryng, 94/4, staring.
 Stoocke, 542/22, lineage.
 Stode, 485/10, stood.
 Stomackes, 288/20, stomachs. But in this case the word seems to be used in a sarcastic sense: 'knewe their stomackes,' really meaning knew their minds.
 Stoure, 42/21, stir, noise.
 Stranged, 251/7, 324/8, strangled.
 Streame, 582/34, stream.
 Strengest, 208/23, strongest.
 Strengthened, 109/6, put forth his strength.
 Streyght, 156/21, 361/3; Streyghte, 62/20, straight.
 Striff, 111/27, 264/1, strife.
 Stronge, 370/22, sound, deep (sleep).
 Stryffe, 175/28, strife.
 Stryked, 415/17, struck.
 Stuff, 149/7, building material.
 Stycked, 48/8, stuck, said of Longinus who pierced the side of Christ.
 Style, 408/27, make still, quiet.
 Styrop, 197/31; Styrope, 296/31, stirrup.
 Stywarde, 31/13, 59/20, steward.
 Sualowe, 258/31, swallow (bird).
 Subgeetyon, 408/5, subjection.
 Subgettes, 25/15, 228/8, 571/13, subjects.
 Subtillest, 277/20, most subtle.
 Suche, 208/14, such people.
 Suche a thyng, 233/3, a wonderful thing.
 Suche a wyse, 28/5, in such manner.
 Suerte, 219/20, surety.
 Suffraunse, 116/12, distress.
 Suffyre, 43/21, suffer, bear, put up with.
 Sure, 311/21, safe.
 Surely, 330/15, securely.
 Suretees, 387/9, sureties.
- Suspectyon, 148/25; Susspectyon, 531/20, suspicion.
 Sustenansse, 437/29, sustenance.
 Sister, 144/1, sister.
 Susteyned, 549/30, sustained, maintained.
 Susteyned vp, 505/1, propped up.
 Swan that syngeth that yere that he shal deye, 225/27, the swan's dying note.
 Swanne, 511/4, swan.
 Swete, 527/4, sweat.
 Swete, 158/16, sweet: 'We ben of the swete Fraunce.'
 Sweted, 31/32, sweated.
 Sweetly, 540/6, sweetly.
 Swoninge, 466/18, swooning.
 Swonne, 491/17; Swoune, 80/11, 224/15, swoon.
 Swynes, 505/6, swine.
 Sybbe, 18/13, kindred, relationship.
 Syghe, 372/3, sigh.
 Syke, 294/16, sick.
 Syn, 19/5, since.
 Syngyng, 225/25, singing.
 Syre Peter, 209/30. This seems to be a synonym for a "secretary," like "Sir John" for a "priest."
 Syth, 32/15, sit.
 Syth, 66/8, 192/3, since.
- Tables, 368/33, the game of backgammon.
 Taccplysshe, 494/25, to accomplish.
 Take, 247/19, 374/2, 479/17, taken.
 Take, 136/29, put.
 Take, 546/20, give.
 Take an ende, 87/31, be ended, come to an end.
 Take kepe, 101/13, take care.
 Take the heed from the body of him, 19/22, a roundabout way of saying they would cut his head off.
 Take the liff fro me, 396/21, kill me.
 Take to theym, 228/4, given to them.
 Take wages, 216/14, take service.
 Taken lond, 525/2, come to the shore.
 Taken to you my men in your keynyng, 164/1, given my men into your keeping.
 Taketh us to mercy, 88/28, granteth us mercy.

- Tapres of wexe, 586/15, wax
 tapers.
 Tapyssery, 154/24, tapestry.
 Tare alle his heres, 34/16, tore his
 hair.
 Taries, 582/33, stayed.
 Tarieng, 69/13, waiting.
 Tarre, 78/3, tarry.
 Taryed, 18/31, delayed.
 Taverners, 150/14, tavern-keepers.
 Telled, 174/4, told.
 Tempered, 169/25, mixed.
 Tende, 539/28, tend, look after.
 Tendred, 430/22, became tender.
 Tenour, 547/18, meaning.
 Teres, 99/7, tears.
 Thabbot, 282/13, the abbot.
 Thacqytaunse, 112/6, the acquit-
 tance.
 Thactes, 4/7, the acts.
 Thadmiralle, 502/28, the admiral
 (*i.e.* commander-in-chief).
 Thalowes, 560/5, the hallows, *i.e.*
 sacred relics.
 Than, 453/3, then.
 Thandes, 524/10, 590/10, the bands.
 Thanked be god, 530/30, to God be
 thanks.
 Thanswere, 257/21, the answer.
 Tharchhysshop, 588/7, the arch-
 bishop.
 Tharsons, 345/2, the seat.
 That, 88/26, 136/9, what; 523/3,
 545/28, that which; 452/14, 515/
 25, who.
 That that, 218/30, that which.
 The, 72/21; ? ye = yea.
 The, 26/1 (thee in ed. 1554), 36/29,
 thee.
 The whiche, 546/18, who.
 Theder, 470/29, thither.
 Theftes, 361/19, thefts.
 Theff, 184/20; Theffe, 448/25, thief.
 Themperour, 70/27, the emperor.
 Thende, 74/25, 232/30, the end.
 Thentente, 207/2, the intent.
 Thentre, 95/7, 518/28, the entry.
 Ther, 85/5, their.
 Ther vpon, 398/21, thereupon.
 There agenste, 470/28, thereagainst.
 Therefro, 333/2, therefrom.
 There-out, 371/5, therefrom.
 Therle, 72/8, the earl.
 Theropon, 213/4, thereupon.
 Therth, 80/29, 336/26, the earth.
- Theves, 125/33, thieves.
 Theyvn, 547/9, the evening.
 They, 90/19, those.
 They two togyder, 301/13, the two
 together.
 Theym, 58/5, them, those.
 Theymselfe, 39/3, themselves.
 Thidderward, 287/28, thitherward.
 Thie, 303/3, thigh.
 Thile, 540/8, the isle.
 Thilke, 577/24, those.
 This during, 23/33, 53/35, ap-
 parently a variation of "This
 hanging." See Hanging.
 Thise, 78/5, these.
 Thistory, 111/20, the history.
 Tho, 292/21, those, them.
 Tho ther, 44/8, thother = the others
 = *les autres*.
 Thocasion, 111/22, 286/1, the oc-
 casion.
 Thoder, 233/6, the other.
 Thoffyce, 326/10, the office.
 Tholde, 152/33, the old.
 Thone, 233/11, the one.
 Thonour, 204/18, the honour.
 Thoos, 186/11, those.
 Thoost, 70/14; Thooste, 191/15,
 the host, the army.
 Thordre, 541/21, the order.
 Thorough, 173/17, 467/32, through.
 Thorse, 564/21, the horse.
 Therughe and therughe, 56/11,
 through and through.
 Thother, 42/26, the other.
 Thoughte, 206/10, anxiety, trouble.
 Thour, 513/30, the hour.
 Threde, 173/28, thread.
 Threte, 390/27, threaten.
 Thretynge, 19/30, 207/31, 279/15,
 threatening.
 Throte, 566/30, throat.
 Thrughe, 461/8, through.
 Thurste, 171/14, thirst.
 Thwerled, 32/4, twirled, handled.
 Thy, 236/6, thigh.
 Thyke, 103/33, thick.
 Thyren, 514/3, the iron.
 Thystoryes, 3/15, the histories.
 To, 159/15, from; 160/24, so; 83/
 25, 496/21, too; 50/4, with.
 To a knyghte, 163/6, a knight.
 To brost, 478/13, to burst.
 To bro ten, 79/11, burst, broken.
 To ent, 392/25, lewed.

- To day in the mornynge, 249/11, this morning.
- To fore, 186/24, 310/17, before.
- To hymwarde, 568/4, towards him.
- To sore, 566/4, to make angry.
- To stamped, 392/26, trampled.
- To the regarde, 27/31, in regard.
- To the werke warde, 582/8, towards the work.
- To their above, 565/30, had gained the victory.
- To warde, 461/20, towards.
- To wyte, 163/11, to know.
- Togyder, 47/3, together.
- Take, 145/10, captured.
- Take grete debate, 341/16, made much talk.
- Take hym, 566/32, took to him, *i.e.* gave him.
- Take hym selfe for to wepe strongly, 54/4, began to weep.
- Take on, 143/14, went on; 494/1, put on.
- Take the see, 530/20, put out to sea.
- Take theym the hande, 217/20, took them by the hand.
- Take togyder, 429/26, pulled together.
- Take up his hede, 249/33, lifted his head up.
- Take vp his siege, 493/10, raised the siege.
- Tomble, 478/11, tumble.
- Tonge, 283/16, tongue.
- Too, 274/33, toe.
- Toren, 62/11, torn.
- Torne, 168/19, 265/15, turn.
- Torned, 170/6, changed.
- Tormented, 502/23, tormented.
- Tourned, 486/20, turned.
- Tournement, 34/18, torment, trouble, tribulation.
- Towre, 479/4, tower.
- Trasfigured, 170/2, disfigured, disguised.
- Trase, 310/21, trace, track, trail.
- Trase, 238/30, trace.
- Trason, 51/14, treason.
- Tratour, 25/10, traitor.
- Travers, 576/8, diameter, cross-roads. Fr. *Travers* . . crosse, crosse-wise. *Traverse*: f. A cross-way, or by-lane, which leads out of the highway.—Cotgrave.
- Traveylle, 116/18, 518/10, trouble labour.
- Traveylled of our pylgrimage, 503/23, journeying as pilgrims.
- Traylle, 449/35, trail (*v.*).
- Trayson, 90/20, 189/32, treason.
- Traytorsly, 61/12, traitorously.
- Traytour approved, 287/31, approved traitor.
- Traytoours sarrasyns, 164/17, Saracene traitors.
- Traytte, 87/20, treaty.
- Trayueille, 70/30, cause much trouble or travail.
- Treen, 463/5, wooden: "treen dyshe" = dish or bowl made out of a tree.
- Trembleth, 527/28, trembles: "All the blode in my body trembleth."
- Trewaunt, 490/5, truant.
- Trewes, 142/9, truce.
- Treyson, 230/8, 373/21, treason.
- Treysour, 371/5; 'Treysur, 372/18, treasure.
- Triews, 106/18, truce.
- Tronpettes, 69/34, trumpets.
- Trotte, 280/1, trot.
- Trowth, 97/31, truth.
- Trowed, 43/27, thought.
- Troweth, 21/34, thinketh.
- Truauntes, 478/22, truants.
- "True blood may not lye," 248/25, *a proverb*. [ready.]
- Trusse, 395/30, 447/11, to make Trussed, 98/16, made ready; 517/19, placed.
- Truste, 166/33, trusting.
- Tryewes, 51/32, trews, promises of safety.
- Tryews, 166/6, truce.
- Turques, 348/14, Turks.
- Tuycion, 358/22, tuition.
- Tweyne, 442/23, twain, two.
- Two and two, 235/14, fight in pairs of two.
- Two & two at ones, 505/6, four at a time.
- Two tymes, 67/14, twice.
- Twynkeling, 586/15, twinkling.
- Twys, 46/32, twice.
- Tydynges; 193/13, tidings.
- Tymbre, 517/17, timber.
- Tyme forthon, 429/16, time to come.
- Tyme shall be, 546/22, at the proper time.

- Tyme ynoughe, 173/4, in time.
 Unarmed them, 87/2, took their arms off.
 Unto, 212/29, until.
 Valop, 229/21, wallop, gallop.
 Valure, 374/29, value.
 Valyaunte, 31/18, valiant.
 Valyauntes, 16/11, valour.
 Varienge, 203/29, varying.
 Va-sall, Vassayll, 172/20, 30, varlet.
 Vasseylles, 69/22, vassals.
 Vaunced, 273/2, 350/5, advanced.
 Vawte, 581/1, vault.
 Wayne, 437/26, vein.
 Waynquyshed, 428/22; Waynquyshed, 569/20, vanquished.
 Waysall, 25/15, vassal.
 Vengable, 412/6, revengeful.
 Vengably, 453/15, vengeancefully.
 Vengance, 59/30, vengeance.
 Venge, 244/16, avenge.
 Venyson, 463/14, venison.
 Veray certeyn, 60/13, the truth.
 Vereli, 224/22, verily, truly.
 Vertuous, 451/29, strong, powerful, valiant.
 Very frenshe, 191/18, nothing but French.
 Vitupere, 182/2, reproach.
 Vnbraied, 241/30, taken in umbrage.
 Vnbocled, 42/25; Vnbokled, 343/23, unbuckled.
 Vnbrayd vs, 377/13, taken umbrage at us.
 Vnder couerte, 77/29, under cover.
 Vnderstonde, 431/26, learn.
 Vndertake, 549/24, undertaken.
 Vndoon, 459/24, undone.
 Vnhappe, 38/24, mischance.
 Vnhappy, 194/7, unlucky.
 Vnhosed, 371/8, took off his hose or breeches. Fr. '*Deschausser* . . . to vnlose, or draw off hosen.'²—Cotgrave.
 Vnlade, 525/3, unload.
 Vnmayled, 79/10. Fr. '*Desmailler*. To vnlinke, vndoe, cut in peeces, or hacke to peeces, a coat of maile. *Desmaillé* . . . Vnmailed; vnlinked; vndone, cut in peeces, hacked vnto peeces, as a coat of maile.'²—Cotgrave.
 Vnstopped hys eyen, 306/10, took the bandage off his eyes.
 Vntreuth, 387/11, untruth.
 Vntrue, 63/6, untruthful.
 Voyde from our sighte lightly, 76/21, quickly begone from our sight.
 Voyde oute of my presence, 60/21, begone.
 Voys, 44/17, voice.
 Viturli, 514/7, utterly.
 Vyage, 155/18, voyage.
 Vygoriously, 263/14, vigorously.
 Vylayne, 516/8, villain.
 Vysage, 61/26, face.
 Vysages, 230/3, faces.
 Vyser, 561/9, visor.
 Vytaylers, 188/13, suppliers of victuals.
 Vytaylles, 74/23, victuals.
 Vytupered, 337/15, vituperated, reviled.
 Waast, 350/7; Wast, 565/3; Waste, 319/33, waist.
 Wages, 216/14, service.
 Waloped, 305/17, galloped.
 Wan, 303/13; Wanne, 318/32, won.
 Warde, 463/28, guard, station.
 Warraunted (wraunted in ed. 1554), 27/9, guaranteed.
 Was betyng a grete riuer, 73/34, a great river was beating.
 Was foree to yonnet, 562/16, Johnnet was forced.
 Was to his above, 529/17, had overcome.
 Wasse, 61/2, wash.
 Washed their woundes to them all, 278/12, tended all their woundes.
 Wasted, 19/28, destroyed.
 Wasteth, 525/24, destroyeth.
 Waye, 227/28, road.
 Waye crossed in four, 278/28, four cross roads.
 Wayte, 558/30, wait, stay.
 Wayte after pyte of hym, 423/5, wait for pity from him.
 Waytynge after, 553/22, waiting for.
 Wede, 459/16, garment, robe, cloak.
 Weke, 55/18, weak.
 Wele, 290/25, 416/12, weal, good.
 Well, 47/1, wi l.
 Well, 245/33, 501/32, quite.

- Well, 528/14, better.
 Well contente, 557/5, satisfied.
 Well defensible, 149/15, well to be defended.
 Well depe, 238/25, deeply.
 Well ferre, 176/26, far away.
 Well folyshly, 483/20, very foolishly.
 Well garnysshed, 106/5, well armed, prepared for any emergency.
 Well gladde, 490/7, very glad.
 Well greved, 506/2, well caused to grieve.
 Welle honestly arayed, 494/17, dressed very handsomely.
 Well lik, 177/15; Well like, 464/5, much like.
 Well like a beste, 234/1, most like a beast.
 Well nyce, 159/16, overmuch nice.
 Well rayson, 225/7, with reason; 231/34, good reason.
 Well shape, 232/9, well shaped.
 Well sure, 221/23, well assured.
 Well trouth, 159/1, good truth.
 Well wonte, 178/21, well used.
 Wel ye wote, 20/13, you know well.
 Welowe, 517/20, willow.
 Wene, 26/33, think.
 Wente hym agenste, 500/24, went up to him.
 Wente nyghe out of his wytte, 62/4, was beside himself.
 Went to their mete, 287/13, sat down to dinner.
 Wentled, 475/11, ? tossed about all night in his bed, not being able to sleep.
 Wepyn, 571/21, weapon.
 Were, 31/17, ? wene, 'think.'
 Were, 492/7, wear.
 Were not, 273/14, were not here.
 Were take, 73/15, was taken.
 Wered, 117/8, 399/33, wore.
 Werke, 582/8, work.
 Werof, 106/3, whereof.
 Werre, 72/15, make war.
 Wery, 161/33, weary.
 Weryes, 271/18, wearies.
 Werynes, 77/23, weariness.
 Wether, 91/30, whither.
 Wexe, 61/13, 476/20, wax, become.
 Wexed, 226/20, waxed.
 Wexen, 170/4, wax.
 We be not that, 529/26, it is not us that.
 Wedryng, 524/29, the weather.
 Weete, 226/20, wet.
 Whan, 153/10, even if.
 What we ben, 78/3, what we are.
 What wynde brought you hider, 162/21 (*apparently a proverbial expression*).
 Whatehe, 69/30, watch, guard.
 Where thrughe, 445/10, through which.
 Wheroute, 428/28, wherefrom.
 Whete, 187/28, wheat.
 Whether they are drawn, 66/4, whither they are gone.
 Whiche, 43/14, 512/1, who; 547/27, whom.
 Whiles, 33/7, whilst.
 Why for, 545/5, ? *pour quoi*, because.
 Whylte, 28/10, wilt thou.
 Whytsontyde, 184/2, Whitsuntide.
 Wilde fyre, 529/13, wild fire (a war term).
 Wisly, 333/4, wisely.
 Wit, 20/14, know.
 Wold he had, 301/17, would that he had.
 Wolde, 47/2, would; 479/28, should.
 Wonde, 143/10, wened, thought.
 Wonne, 238/1, won, procured.
 Woode, 28/22; Wood, 267/32, mad.
 Worde bytynge, 409/25, biting word.
 Worde fowll, 538/19, foul word.
 Worship, 329/26; Worshyp, 77/16, 495/12, honour.
 Worship your better, 538/20, honour your superiors.
 Worshypd, 315/34, worshipped.
 Worshypfully, 34/28, properly, honourably.
 Worsse shalle retourne vnto hym, 39/17, he shall be worsted.
 Worste dooth, 78/19, doth most harm.
 Worthe, 442/3; 'take a worthe,' ? take for what they're worth.
 Wote, 327/33, know.
 Wounde mortall, 356/9, mortal wound.
 Wounte, 215/19, 463/29, wont.
 Woushesauff, 508/32, vouchsafe.
 Woxen, 496/24, waxed.
 Wrangle, 34/15, wrung.
 Wrapped, 357/20, covered.
 Wrastle, 565/3, wrestle.

- Wrastled, 320/1, wrestled.
 Wrathe, 78/26, quickness.
 Wronge waye, 546/1, wrong course.
 Wroughten, 37/26, wrung.
 Wroth for it, 150/23, wroth on account of it.
 Wrothe to theym, 50/4, wroth with them.
 Wulff, 423/3, wolf.
 Wolwarde, 574/2. 'Woolward, in wool only, without linen, a dress often enjoined as a penance by the church of Rome.'—Schmidt, on 'I have no shirt; I go woolward for penance' (*Love's Labour's Lost*, V. ii. 717).
 Wycket, 471/2; Wyket, 467/14, wicket.
 Wylde, 401/7, wild.
 Wylde bores, 216/11, wild boars.
 Wyll fyghte, 174/2, in the habit of fighting (intending to imply that Bayard was a vicious horse).
 Wyll do knowe, 74/22, will cause to make known.
 Wylle, 458/21, desire.
 Wymen, 131/9, 164/13, women.
 Wyndowes, 519/24, windows.
 Wynne, 169/12, win, gain, carry off.
 Wyselli, 38/34, wisely.
 Wysest wyse, 454/17, wisest manner.
 Wysly, 539/19, wisely.
 Wysshe, 38/8, washed.
 Wysshe after, 242/8, wish for.
 Wysshed, 54/5, 496/13, wished.
 Wytchecliffe, 357/13, witchcraft.
 Wyte, 27/22, know.
 Wyte it for trouthe, 44/9, know it for the truth.
 Wyte vs of cowardnes, 78/4, deem us to be cowards.
 Wyth, 586/15, in.
 Wyth all, 241/34; Wyth alle, 37/10, withal.
 Wythdrawe, 352/12, withdrawn.
 Wythin, 357/16, within. 'Ye shall not goo oute of (= from) wythin,' = 'Ye shall not go outside,' *i.e.* 'Thou shalt not attempt to escape.'
 Wythout to make any noyse nor crye, 78/24, without making any noise.
 Wythout, 569/28. It means that
- though they fought so hard that their spears broke in pieces, *still* none of them fell off their horses.
 Wythoute to be dyshonoured, 470/25, without dishonour.
 Wythoute to doo, 553/15, without doing.
 Wythstandyng, 566/24, alsoabit.
 Wytsondaye, 544/19, Whitsunday.
 Wyttes, 408/9, wits.
 Ye, 64/7, 511/26, yea, yes.
 Ye, 17/2, 546/30, y^e = the.
 Yede, 444/22, went.
 Yeelde, 66/2, ? ailed; A.S. eilede.
 Yefte, 129/14, 153/3, 495/15, gift.
 Yelde, 74/32, 142/15, yield, yield up.
 Yelde, 495/25, shield, help. It occurs in the phrase, 'And God yelde you!'
 Yelled, 304/9, returned.
 Yelled graces, 500/7, heaved prayers of thanks.
 Yemen, 93/7, grooms.
 Yere, 271/24, year, time.
 Yet wel remembered, 553/11, still recollect.
 Yf it be longe of you, 50/23, if it be your fault.
 Yll, 173/9, evil.
 Yll a hungred, 367/29, sore hungry.
 Yll chere, 226/28, evil cheer.
 Yll contente, 496/17, not well satisfied.
 Yllumyned, 336/26, illumined.
 Ynke, 210/10, ink.
 Ynough, 111/21; Ynowe, 303/9, enough.
 Yoman, 123/27, 150/10, 478/29, yeoman.
 Yon, 82/11, John.
 Yong, 420/26, young.
 Yonglynge, 162/18, youngling, young man.
 You, 142/8, thou.
 Yougthe, 244/5, youth.
 Your hertes ioye, 554/9, joy of your heart.
 Yrefully, 230/21, full of ire.
 Yren, 369/27, iron.
 Yrende, 466/13, shod with iron.
 Yrens, 369/24, fetters.
 Yron, 136/7, iron.
 Yssue, 250/3, 446/11, issue, way out.
 Yuori, 61/22; Yvery, 478/8, ivory.

NAME INDEX.

[*Note.*—In the following pages the letter C. stands for CHARLEMAGNE, the King of France. The letter R. stands for REYNAWDE, Duke of Mountalban.]

Affryque (Africa), 436/8.

Alaffre upon the see, a province of Spain, 327/3. [? Algarve in Portugal.]

Alais, Alays, the watchman at Mountaynforde, 75/15.

ALARDE, THE SECOND SON OF AYMON, at the court at Paris, 16/24;—is knighted by C., 31/21;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 59/16;—he slays Thierry, 80/28;—he is right sorry to see their folk go back, 81/28;—he slays the Earl of Estampes, 84/24;—his horse wakes him, and thus reveals the treachery of Hermyer, 93/7, and he tells R., 'We ben betrayed!' 93/23;—he declares he will not separate from his brethren, 98/13;—he tells R. to cheer up, 99/12;—his horse is slain under him, 108/13;—he mounts Bayard behind R., 109/3;—he mounts Esmenfray's black horse, 110/16, and slays Sir Anfray, 110/20;—he is forced back by Aymon's folk, 110/32;—he counsels that they all should go and see their mother, and try to obtain service with some great lord, 118/11;—he counsels R. not to set his hand on Aymon, 126/22;—seeing Borgons slay one of R.'s men, he becomes wroth, and speedily fells a 'paynyin' sterke deed,' 138/12;—thinking that R. has been slain, he makes grievous moan, 139/13;—he rejoices much when he meets with R., 143/3;—he advises R. to seek permission to build the cast'e afterwards called Mountalban, 147/17;—he well advises R. concerning his marriage, 153/6;—he recommends R. to the care of Mawgis, 170/19;—he tells his followers to come out of their ambush, 179/28;—he tells his brethren to have no fear as long as R. can ride Bayard, 185/22;—he thanks King John for the gift of the scarlet mantles, 218/4;—he reminds R. how often C. had taken oath to bring them to a shameful death, and counsels that they should not carry out King John's instructions, 219/23;—he joyfully sings a new song when going to Vaucoloures, 225/21;—he questions R. wherefore he weeps, 226/25, and bids him bear out a good face, 227/4, advising him to join in the harmony, 227/7;—he discovers that they have been betrayed, 228/18;—thinking that R. has betrayed them, he induces Guycharde and Richard with himself to attack R., 230/4, but they speedily repent, 230/28;—he reproaches R. for having betrayed them, 230/32;—he advises that they should shrive themselves, 232/28;—he tells Guycharde that he had been well deceived for doubting R., 235/20;—he bewails when R. is overthrown, 236/8;—he wins a horse, and also a wound, 238/1;—he promises to help in the rescue of Guycharde, 239/25;—he deems it unwise to search for Richard,

243/3 :—he carries Richard to the top of the rock, 245/25 ;—he is angered because so many knights come against them, 246/4 ;—he advises R. to go to Mountalban to procure help, 246/23 ;—not wishing that the Frenchmen should be dismayed and run away at the coming of Mawgis, he advises that they descend to the bottom of the rock, and re-engage in the battle, 259/32, which is forthwith done, 260/7 ;—he tells R. not to be overhasty, for that Ogier had well helped them that day, 269/16 ;—he thanks Ogier, and advises R. to return and see how it is with Richard, 269/23 ;—his wounds are cured by Mawgis, 278/12 ;—he curses King John, and also Roland, if the latter omits to hang the former, 287/27 ;—he tells R. he will not go to help King John, 290/19, but relents and says he will never fail R., 291/31 ;—he meets with R., and asks him why he makes such sorrow, 310/24, is told of the capture of Richard, 310/27, and his sorrow therefor, 310/32 ;—he reproaches it to R. for coming to succour King John, 311/9, and counsellor's Guychard to cut off King John's head, 311/14 ;—he stays R. from going to C., 311/28 ;—he acquaints Mawgis of the capture of Richard, and how R. would go to C. to rescue him, 312/6 ;—he kisses Aymonet, and acquaints the Lady Clare of the capture of Richard, 313/15 ;—he advises his brethren to put themselves in ambush, 323/1 ;—he counsels R. that C. should be asked once for all if he will grant peace ;—if not, then detain him prisoner, 403/8 ;—he summons his folk to defend the castle, 420/12 ;—he counsels that Bayard should be killed for food, 429/20 ;—he beseeches R. to kill Bayard for the love of God, 436/33 ;—while waiting to hang Richard of Normandy, he sees the three dead bodies flung out of window, and acquaints R. thereof, 479/1 ;—he takes leave of R., begging him to come again shortly (the other brothers were too much cut up by sorrow to take leave of him), 492/22 ;—he comes before C., and tells him how R. has gone to the Holy Land, 494/19 ;—he tells R. that his wife and children are whole and sound, 531/23, but seeing that R. holds him so short, he recounts how the Lady Clare had pined away and died, 532/9 ;—he counsels that they depart speedily for Paris, 548/25 ;—he discovers the departure of R., and makes great moan, 573/21 ; he and his brethren are informed by a pilgrim of the great miracles being worked at Croyne, where the body of R. is honourably tended by the Archbishop of Cologne, 586/24—588 ;—he and his brethren, feeling sure that the corpse is that of R., make great sorrow and set out for Croyne, 589/11 ;—he explains to the Archbishop of Cologne that the corpse is that of **Reynawde of Mountalban** 'the right worthy knight,' 591/13.

Alebrondy, king, advises Barbas to let R. alone, 516/9.

Alexander the Great, his horse Bucephalus compared with Bayard, 31/30 ;—never was heard such history since his time as this, 68/2.

Almagne, Hughe of, taken prisoner by R., 346/10.

Almayne, Ponthus of, joins C. at Paris, 187/6.

Almaynes (Germans) at the Court at Paris, 16/19 ;—33/15 ;—43/4.

Alphas, the Earl of, placed in front of the second gate at Mountayneford, 77/3.

Amaney, 81/6, one of R.'s knights slain by Aymon, 81/6.

Anfray, Sir, one of Aymon's knights, slain by Alarde, 110/20.

Anguenon, the Earl of, slain by R., 237/13.

Ansom, the Duchy of, offered as a bribe to Salamon of Breton, 325/29.

Ansom, the Earl of counsels King John to yield the Four Sons to C., 205/19, and is slain by R., 231/32.

Anthony, the old Earl, traduces R., and advises King John to yield the Four Sons to C., 206/32.

Antony, the Earl, wounded by Richard, 309/17.

Appolin, the god of Barbas, 516/7. [It is not quite clear what god is here meant: can it mean Appollion? Further on, Barbas swears "By Apollo!"]

Ardeyne, 16/22, *see also* Aymon, and Dordon:—the great forest of, 65/5, where the Four Sons take refuge, 103/20;—the fight in, between Aymon and his Sons, 107—111.

Ardeyne, Margerye, Duchess of (wife of Aymon, and mother of the Four Sons), right gladly welcomes her husband and children, 36/13, advises R. to honour his king, and upbraids Aymon for departing from C., 36/31, counselling him to serve the king, 37/12;—she is grieved with R. for slaying Berthelot, and advises them to flee away, giving them her treasure, 62/15;—she weeps when she sees her husband, and tells him she knows not where the Four Sons have gone, 66/1;—she upbraids Aymon for fighting against their children, 114/18;—she is frightened when she sees her sons, and weeps for pity of them, 121, but recognizes and embraces them, 122;—she makes them and their three knights good cheer, 123;—she prays Aymon to let the Sons stay that night, 124/20;—she causes baths and clean raiment to be made ready for her sons, and clothes them in rich apparel, 129/1, advises them to go to Spain, 129/26, swoons when they set out, 130/29, and mourns grievously for them, but is comforted by Aymon, 131/3.

Ardeyne, the city of, the Four Sons come to, 120/1;—they set out therefrom with six hundred men, 131/1;—the Four Sons arrive at, after the abandonment of Mountalban, 442/25;—C.'s host arrives at, 447/23;—the battle near, 452—455;—R. and his folk retreat within the gates of, 455/2;—C. lays siege to, 455/20;—Mawgis comes to, 462/12, and departs from, 467/20;—C.'s messengers arrive at, 470/31, and depart from, 472/33;—great joy at, when R. returns from the Holy Land, 530/28;—it is given by R. to his son Yonnet, 570/19.

Ardocke, one of the treacherous barons ambushed in the Isle of Our Lady, 553/25.

Arles, conquered by Borgons, 132/22.

Armony, 187/9.

Aspes, otherwise called Myleyne, 70/2.

Aubeforde, Guyon of, one of C.'s peers, 69/22.

Aulbery, 80/18.

Avynyon (Avignon), Godfray the Earl of, joins C. at Paris, 187/3.

Aygreounte, description of the castle of, 21/20;—the battle at, between Duke Benes and Lohier, 27—29.

- **AYGREOUNTE, DUKE BENES¹ OF**, had not done the bidding of C., 17/9;—he, his son Mawgis, and his wife are unkindly spoken of by C., 17/19;—he is informed by a spy of the coming of Lohier, 19/32, of which he tells his folk, 20/3;—he rejects the good counsel of Sir Simon, 20/22, and also that of his Duchess, 21/5;—he will not make peace with C., 21/16;—the porter tells him of the arrival of Lohier, 23/8;—his speech to his barons, 23/23;—enraged at Lohier's threatening message, he answers that not only will he disobey the behest of C., but that he will destroy the land of France, 25/20, and tells Lohier that

¹ 'Benes' is the spelling all through this book, and is doubtless a mistake for 'Bevis.'

- to his own evil cheer he came to do his message, 26/7;—he than's Sir Water for his wise counsel, but bids him hold his peace, 26/24;—he waxes very wroth and calls on his barons to slay Lohier, 27/5;—he tells Lohier this day shall be his last, 28/16, cleaves him to the teeth, 28/26, and cuts his head off, 29/5;—he causes all Lohier's followers to be slain, except ten, whom he sends back to C., in charge of the corpse of Lohier, and with his message to C. 29/13;—his message is told to C., 33/30;—he hears of C.'s projected attack, 39/10;—he sets out for Troyes, 39/22;—he goes against the host of C., 41/27;—he slays Enguerran, 42/30, and Sir Walter Pyerelee, 44/13;—he jousts with Duke Richard of Normandy, and his horse is slain under him, 44/20, but quickly rising to his feet, he slays a knight, Sir Symon, 45/4;—he is horribly wounded, 46/11;—he adopts Nantuell's advice, 47/1;—he comes before C., begging pardon [and there were four thousand in his train 'alle bare fote & in theyr shertes'—what a sight i must have been!], 50/16;—swearing fidelity, and promising to do his service, he takes leave of C., 51/1;—he departs from Aygremounte to go to the court of C. at Paris, 51/19;—he is apprehensive of treachery through the vengeance of C., 52/26, and relates his dream, 52/30;—he commands his men to arm themselves, 53/8, and laments that C. is an untrue prince, 53/23;—he laments the absence of his son Mawgis, his brethren, and the Four Sons, 54/6;—his folk are beaten back by Earl Guenes, 55/5, but he defends himself as well as he could, 55/11, and slays Sir Helye, 55/27, but is unhorsed by Gryffon of Hauteffelle, 55/31;—he is treacherously slain by the Earl Guenes, 56/12;¹—his body is treated with indignity by Duke Gryffon, 56/17, and is put in a bier and taken to Aygremounte, 57/1, where it is reverently buried, 57/29.
- Aygremount, Myneus of, father of Ogier the Dane, 272/28.
- Aygremounte, the Duchess of, gives her husband good counsel, 20/29;—hears the news of her lord's death, and her grief therefor, 52/16.
- Aymanoy, cousin of Gerarde of Roussillon, killed at the battle of Troyes, 46/6.
- Aymery, the Earl, interferes in the quarrel between Ogier and Roland, 273/11.
- AYMON, THE DUKE OF ARDEYNE, at the court at Paris, 16/22;—is cousin-germain to Benes of Aygremount, 18/14;—he offers his service to C., 30/23, who commands him to send his sons to be knighted, 31/3;—being afraid of C.'s anger for the slaughter of Lohier by the Duke Benes, he and his sons depart from Paris, 36/1;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 59/15;—he complains to C. of the treason done to Duke Benes, but agrees to forgive it, 59/25;—he swears to C. that he will war against his sons, and leaving Paris, goes to Dordon, 65/24;—he relates to his lady the doings at Paris, and the reason why he has come seeking his sons, 66/6;—he is placed in front of the third gate at Mountayneford, 77/4;—he comes against R.'s army, and does much damage to it, 79/13;—he is stung by R.'s words, and suffers his sons to pass by him unharmed, 80/8;—he slays Amaney, one of R.'s knights, 81/6;—he is rebuked by R. for his harsh conduct, 83/7, and he retaliates that he is too old to do treason towards C., 83/25;—he again commences an attack on R.'s folk, 85/24, and his horse is slain under him by R., 85/27;—he is succoured by Ogier the Dane, 86/1;—when he is again horsed, he
- ¹ The Earl Guenes, who is mounted on a good horse, sees Duke Benes on foot, and acting uncavalierly (*i. e.* without waiting till he should be horsed again), takes him at advantage, and thus treacherously slays him.

pursues his children as a 'man wrothe and oute of his wyte,' 86/6, but his folk are put to flight by R., 86/14;—on returning to his own country, he falls in with his sons, 105/9, and seeks counsel of his lords, 105/11, which being withheld, he says he will do his own will, and sends two knights to defy Reynawde and his brethren, 105/32;—he spurs after his sons, 106/27, makes an outrageous speech to R., 106/34, and bringing his spear in rest, puts himself among his children 'lyke as they hadde ben strangers,' 107/10;—he loses half his men in the battle, 108/4;—he chases R. to the mountains, 108/6;—he is unhorsed by R., 108/26;—many of his knights are slain, and he grieves for Esmeufray, 110/28;—he makes moan and grieves for the state to which R. is reduced, 111/21, and taking the body of Esmeufray, he sets out for Paris, 111/32;—he comes before C., to whom he relates the recent events, 112/2, which C. doubting, 112/21, he offers to swear it on 'reliques and hallowes,' 112/28;—he perceives C.'s anger, and departs for his own country, 113/12, where he relates all his adventures to his wife, 113/18, to whom he acknowledges his fault, 115/1;—he is hawking upon the river when his sons arrive at Arleyne, 120/19;—he curses them, and tells them to go beg at another place, 124—125;—his heart waxes soft, 127/14, and he goes without, because he will not be forsworn against C., and tells his lady to give their sons whatever they desire, 127/32, and excuses his conduct to R., 128/13;—he parts amicably from his sons, promising for evermore to be their good father, 130/17;—he recomforts his duchess, 131/9;—he takes the part of C. against his sons, 424/4, but becomes wroth with C. when he threatens them, 424/9;—he beseeches C. to right the Sons, 424/17;—R. comes to his pavilion, begging for succour, 431/24;—he tells R. that he cannot help him on account of his oath to C., but bids him enter the pavilion and help himself, 432;—he bids his steward fill the three engines with food and cast it into Mountalban, 433/31;—C. threatens him with the loss of his head for relieving his sons, 435/9;—he tells C. that he will not fail his children so long as he can help them, 435/14;—he is dismissed by C. from his host, 435/33, and threatening C. if harm happens to his sons, he departs from C.'s host to his own country, 436/3;—he dies, leaving great riches to his sons, 535/27.

AYMONET, the elder son of Reynawde, is spurned by R. in his anger at King John's treachery, 285/5;—he rebukes his uncle Richard, and counsels him to submit to the will of R., 427/23;—he arrives at the palace of C. at Paris, 540/18;—he introduces Yonnet and himself to C., asking him to bestow on them the order of knighthood, 541/18;—he is knighted by C., 547/24;—he and his brother swear on the 'halowes' that the sons of Foulkes had lied falsely, 560/16, and the fight begins, 560/26;—he cuts off the nose of Constans, 561/9;—he is wounded by Constans, 562/30;—he cuts an ear and all the jawbone off Constans, 562/32;—his horse is slain by Constans and he slays that of Constans, 564/13;—he overthrows Rohars, 565/17;—he almost smites Constans' left arm off, 565/20;—he takes Constans prisoner, and brings him to C., 566/32;—he is applauded by C. as having 'doon wel' your devour,' 567/4;—he wants to assist Yonnet in despatching Rohars, but is not permitted by Yonnet, 567/11;—he compliments Yonnet on his valour, 568/21;—Mountalban is given by R. to, 570/19, and the folk thereof render homage to him, 571/14.

Balancon (Balencon), one of the rivers bounding Vaucoulores, 227/24;—Roland pitches his tent at, 191/20;—the battle at, 194—199;—other battles near, 298—307;—the meeting of Mawgis and the brethren at, 372/24;—Richard of Normandy keeps the passage over the river of, 395/32.

Banyere, Guydellon of, 40/10.

Barbas, the Admiral of Perce (? Persia), has treacherously taken the city of Jerusalem, 500/12;—he issues from Jerusalem into the besieging host, 501/31;—he engages in combat with Geffray of Nazareth, by whom he is overthrown, but is relieved by his folk, 502/24;—he withdraws his forces into Jerusalem, 504/14;—when he sees the great joy and feasting made in the Christian camp, he believes that 'they ben as the swanne is whan he shall deye,' 511/2;—he again comes forth from Jerusalem, and attacks the Christians, 512/11;—he reproaches h's followers for running away, and hearing of the death of Margaris, he furiously attacks Walleron of Faite, and kills him, 514/25;—he vows to slay the 'grete vylayne' R., but becomes abashed on hearing R. cry out 'Mountalban!' 516, and he takes his way to the city as a man discomfited, 517/6;—seeing that the Christians have retaken Jerusalem, he is very wroth and curses 'his goddis Mahomet and Appolin,' 519/12;¹—he goes to king Thomas, and tells him that he (Barbas) must be allowed to depart in peace, or that he (Thomas) must be instantly cast out of the window, 519.20;—seeing R. coming to assault the tower, he seizes king Thomas and threatens to cast him out of window, unless R. grants his terms, 522/9;—R. accedes to his terms, and he descends the tower, and with two of his followers goes out through the gate of the city, 523/3;—at Palermo he is afraid of the strange knights he saw not yesterday, 527/25;—he discovers who they are, and quickly takes to flight, 528.3.

Barnyers at the court at Paris, 16/20;—Bemygers, 33/14;—Banyers, 33/16;—Bernyers, 49.2.

Bason, the 'grete thief,' who aided C. against the treachery of the Twelve Peers, 327/17.

Banyers, at the siege of Mountayneforde, 77/14.

Bavyre, Guydellon, the Earl of, 292.16;—he withdraws Ogier from fighting Roland, 308.21;—he overthrows Richard from behind, 309.22;—he is ordered by C. to take and hang Richard, but refuses, 324/20.

BAYALD, Reynawide's wonderful horse, given to him by his cousin Mawgis, 31.28;—when he 'wyste hymselfe lade wyth two knyghtes, he strenghted hymselfe' accordingly, 109/5;—he could feed better with roots than other horses with hay and oats, 116/27;—he runs after Borgons' horse, and taking him by the mane, brings him back to Borgons, 141/26;—he upliffs his fore-foot and kills the 'Rybawde' who would have arrested the progress of R., 173/12;—his feet are bound up by Mawgis, so that he goes halting, 173—175;—he is mocked and jeered at by the assembled competitors, but being unbound by Mawgis, he speedily wins the race, thus securing C.'s crown for R., 175/7;—he resents being handled by Mawgis, but, being 'curstly dealed wythall,' he submits to the inevitable, 257/24;—he smells his lord, and runs to him carrying Mawgis on his back, 262.9;—he kneels before R., when

¹ There is something incongruous here, considering that Mahomet preached the existence of one only God. Indeed, the whole of the Jerusalem story seems quite out of place in the romance—the crusades against the Saracens not taking place till long after C.'s time.

- Mawgis alights, and he is mounted by R., 262/11;—he engages on his own account in a fight with Ogier's horse Brayford, 267 9, and also with Roland's horse Melantes, 303/1; he understands human speech, and awakens his master, 337 28;—he is embraced by the brethren, because he awoke them in time to deliver Richard, 340 23;—he smells Mawgis coming, and goes to him, 372 28;—he is bled, to provide food for the folk at Mountalban, 437 24;—he is delivered to Duke Naymes to be taken to C., 490 12;—he is cast into the river Meuse, with a millstone at his neck,¹ sinks to the bottom, breaks the stone with his feet, rises and swims over the river, and running as swiftly as the tempest, enters the Forest of Ardeyne, wherein, according to popular tradition, he still abides, 496, 497.
- Bayonne, Duke Guynarde of, upholds the conduct of R., 207 22;—he defies Sir Humarde, 208 7.
- Beaulaude, Sir Arnalde, slain by the Saracens, 16 16.
- Berarde the Bourgoyner, slays Simon of Bremois, 84 11.
- Berenger, 51 26.
- Berenger, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/16;—he ambushes in the Isle of Our Lady with treacherous designs, 553 25.
- Berenger, Sir Yvorye, slain by the Saracens, 16 16.
- Bernard, a Doctor (apparently a Ph.D., not an ordinary M.D.), expounds the dream of Godefraye of Molyns touching the marriage of the Lady Clare, 152/14.
- Bernard (*qq.* the same person as the forgoing), the hermitage of, 440 22;—he welcomes and succours R. and his folk, 441.
- Berne, Guynarde, the lord of, 202 29.
- Bermyer, Sir Lambreyght, 17 14.
- Berthlot, the nephew of C., engages R. to play at chess, 61 16, a quarrel arises, 24, and R. slays him with the chess-board, 31.
- Bethe (Bertha), the mother of C., 327/1.
- Bloye, C.'s army arrives at, 188 12.
- Bloye, Toyusselyne [*? Josceline*] of, slain by Earl Guines, 55 4.
- Bollon, Boullon, Bryllon, Walleran, Duke of, 40 10;—he slays a nephew of Duke Gerard, 43 24;—48 27;—at C.'s court at Paris, 59 12.
- Bollon, Sir Walleraunte of, slain by the Saracens, 16 16.
- Bondy, Bondy-re, the name of R.'s hunting horn, 216 25, 342 1.
- Bordeaux (Bordeaux), a city in France, where the Four Sons first meet with King John, 132 22;—the battle at, between King John and Borgons, 136—139.
- Borgoyns, Borgons, Bourgons, the Saracen, has conquered nearly all King John's territory, 132 28;—he marches from Toulouse to Bordeaux, and there put himself in ambush, 136;—he emerges from ambush, 137 26, and slays one of R.'s men, 138 7;—he and his folk flee from the battle, pursued by R., 139 4;—he is overtaken by R., 140 24;—he breaks his spear on R., 141 10, by whom he is overthrown and wounded, 141 13;—he fights on foot with R., and is severely wounded, 141 23;—he begs for a truce, and surrenders himself to R., who promises him his life shall be spared, 142 7;—he appeals to be delivered from prison, offering a rich ransom, 144 19;—he is ransomed, and with his folk goes to his own country, 144 34.

¹ Charlemagne perpetrates a little joke at Bayard's expense, which is perhaps worth noting. When Bayard was thus tumbled in the river, he remarks that his desire has been accomplished, 'for ye be now deed, *but ye be dryak once all the water.*'

- Courdelle, Geffroy of, slain by the Saracens, 25/4.
 Bourdelois, Sampson of, a knight who came to help R., 77/33.
 Bourgoyne, Bourgyne. Guyon, Guynon of, in command of a thousand knights, assists in Heryer's treachery on the Four Sons, 91/14;—he enters the castle of Mountaynford, slaying all he can find, 93/1.
 Bourgoyne, Sampson of, 35/5.
 Bourgoyne, the Duke of, placed in front of the second gate at Mountaynford, 77/2.
 Bourgoyns, at the siege of Mountaynford, 77/14.
 Bourgoyns, in C.'s army, 40/3.
 Bournoy, 169/11.
 Brayford, Broymorte, Ogier's celebrated horse, 45/26;—he engages in a fight with Bayard, 267/9.
 Breimoys, Simon of, slain by Berarde the Burgundian, 84/11.
 Bretayne, Salamon of, joins C. at Paris, 39/31, 186/25;—he weeps on seeing the combat between R. and Roland, 300/28;—he is commanded by C. to hang Richard, but refuses, 325/26.
 Bretayne, Salomon of, slain by the Saracens, 16/15.
 Bretons, at the siege of Mountaynford, 77/13.
 Brouseau, the isle of, 31/33.
 Broycarre, Mawgis's celebrated horse, 'the best that men wyste after Bayarde,' 276/15.
 Busifall (Bucephalus), the Great Alexander's horse, 31/30.
 Byheuse, a province of France, 132/6.

 Cedres, King, slain at Pampelune, by C., his armour given to R., 31/15.
 Champayne, the country of, 39/23.
 Champenoys, 33/15.
 CHARLEMAGNE, Emperor of France, 4/9;—holds court at Paris, 16/5;—his address to his barons, 16/31;—becomes angry with them, 18/17;—grieved to part from his son Lohier, 19/16;—his doubts as to the safety of Lohier, 30/13;—he knights the four sons of Aymon, 31/25;—again in fear for Lohier, 33/1;—receives the news of the fight at Aygremount, and the death of Lohier, 33/30;—his grief thereat, 34/15;—buries Lohier, 35/27;—receives news of the departure of Aymon and his four sons, and his anger thereat, 38/2;—determines to wreak his vengeance on Duke Benes, 38/14;—instructs his followers to prepare next summer, 39/4;—sets out for Aygremount, 40/8;—he goes to Troyes to succour Aubrey, 41/16;—fights with Gerarde of Roussyllon, 45/19;—Roussyllon, Aygremount, and Nantuell offer their allegiance to, 47/28;—he pardons the three Dukes, 49/7, who appear naked before him to express their thanks, 50/25;—holds a great court at Paris, 51/15;—endeavours to persuade his nephew Earl Guenes from acting traitorously towards Benes of Aygremount, 51/32;—again holds court at Paris, 59/7, and Aymon complains to him of the treachery done towards Duke Benes, 59/26, when they come to a mutual understanding that the death of Lohier is to be set off against that of Benes, 60/3;—but Reynawde expresses his hatred for him, 60/15, and he becomes as black as a coal for wrath, 60/19;—his nephew Berthelot slain by R., 61/31;—he commands Aymon to make war against his sons, 65/24;—he gains tidings of the Four Sons, 68/19;—he sets out after them, 69/13, and reaches Mountaynforde, 70/4;—his grief for the loss of Guyon, 71/17;—he swears to be revenged on R., 73/15, and commands his men to surround the castle of Mountaynforde, 73/28;

—the splendour of his tent, 74/14:—his message to R., 75/32, and R.'s answer, 76/8;—he commands that the castle be assailed, 76/31;—his grief for the death of Thierry, 80/30;—calls for help, 81/1;—commands his men to depart from the battle, 84/7;—he goes against R., and forbids him to go farther, 86/23;—he besieges the castle fourteen months, 87/14;—sends for more men to help him, 89/10, and seeks counsel of his barons, 89/17;—he adopts Hermyer's advice, 90/10:—laments his evil fate, 97/8;—he was glad when R. evacuated Mountaynorle, 100/32, and follows after the four brethren, 101/7;—is in danger of his life from R., 101/28, but is saved by Dame Hugh, 101/32;—he stops the pursuit, 102/20:—he orders his men to disperse, 104/11, and himself retires to Paris, 104/16, where he gives way to grief, for that he cannot avenge himself on R., 104/20;—he will not believe that Aymon had fought against his own sons ('for never raven ete his yonge byrdes'), 112/22, and becomes angry with him, 113/1;—he goes on a pilgrimage to Galicia, 156/19, and on the way back sees the castle of Mountaban, 156/27, and when he understands to whom it belongs, he becomes right angry, 157/17;—he commands King John to deliver to him the four brethren, 157/25;—he holds a council at Paris, 161/16, and receives his nephew Roland, 162/26;—he puts Escorfwede in prison, 166/35, and inquires after Roland, 167/5, for whose benefit he ordains a horse-race, 167/31, at which he is sore afraid that R. will appear, 171/1;—he comes to the field appointed for the race, and commands 'that noo novse nor noo stryffe were there made,' 175/27;—he offers to purchase Bayard off R. (who is disguised), 177/29, when the latter tells him he has been beguiled, 177/32;—he follows after R., offering him a truce, and begging for his crown, 169/29;—but R. only jeers at him, 179/4;—he seeks counsel of his barons as to how he may recover his crown, 181/23;—he causes preparations to be made for a seven years' siege of Mountaban, 182/31;—bids his followers be ready for the war by next Easter, 185/30;—he musters his army, 188/1, and gives the command to Roland, 188/7;—his message to R., 189/21;—he resolves to starve out R. and his brethren, 191/4;—and for that purpose closely invests the castle, 191/13;—when he sees the golden dragon on the high tower at Mountaban, he weens that Roland had taken the castle by force, 198/31;—he hears the news of Roland's defeat, 201/25, 'and thenne he sware saynte Denys by grete angre,' 201/33;—he causes a parliament to be held, 202/6;—he sends a herald to King John, bidding him send back the four sons of Aymon, on pain of wasting his land, 203/17;—his joy at the reply of King John, 211/12;—he sends letters to King John, and instructions how to carry out their traitorous proceedings, 211/30;—he details the particulars of the plot to Foulques of Moryllon and Ogier the Dane, 212/26;—his wrath when he hears that the Four Sons have escaped, 271/16, and hatred for Mawgis, 271/26;—he stops the quarrel between Roland and Ogier, 273/24;—is befooled by Mawgis, 315/16:¹—his joy when he sees that Richard has been made prisoner, 319/8, whom he threatens to torture and hang, 319/18, and smites him with a staff, 319/29;—he wrestles with Richard, 320/1;—he orders his peers, one

¹ This is a clever and amusing scene: the way in which Mawgis comes the old soldier over Charlemagne, culminating in the former (after much fulsome adulation) asking the latter to kiss his palmer's staff in return for the 'pardons' that he bestows on Charlemagne.

after another, to hang Richard, 324/1;—becomes very angry when all, even Roland, refuse to 'bringe his wyll aboute for to hang Rycharde,' 326/31;—he relates to his barons the story of his life, 327/1, and calls on another baron to 'goo hang that hourson Richard,' 327/32, but is refused and rebuked, 328/9;—he is deserted by the Twelve Peers of France, 328/15;—once more he tries to induce a baron to hang Richard, 328/26, and again is severely rebuked, 329/1;—he is further reproved by Duke Naymes, 330/6, and by Ogier the Daire, 330/25;—he pardons the Twelve Peers, 333/4;—he prevails on Ryms of Riplemonde to execute Richard, 333/9;—he goes after Ogier for fear he should slay Ripus, 342/31;—he fights with Richard, 344/29, and with R., 346/22;—he refuses R.'s terms of peace, 348/16, and demands that Mawgis be given into his hands, 348/29;—he refuses to listen to R., 349/31, and renews his attack, 349/33;—he falls into the power of R., who lays him on Bayard, 350/6, but is obliged to let him down, 351/22;—his pavilion is cast down by Richard, 354/28;—his attempted assassination by Mawgis, 355/20;—complains of the infidelity of his barons, 358/21, and offers to resign his crown, 359/1;—he consents to take back his crown if Mawgis (against whom again he expresses his deep hatred) is delivered to him, 360/17;—his joy when he sees Mawgis a prisoner, 361/13;—he is anxious to hang Mawgis before supper, 366/2, but consents to remand him till to-morrow on the surety of the peers of France, 367/18;—he derides Mawgis for wishing to eat (since 'soo lityll a terme he hathe to live'), 368/1, but at the same time is himself unable to eat, 'leest that Mawgys sholde werke witchecrafte vpon hym,' 368/14;—he commands his steward to keep lights burning all night, 368/23, and the Twelve Peers and a hundred armed men to keep watch over Mawgis, 368/28;—he jests with Mawgis for wishing to sleep, 369/9, and fetters him with 'a grete payre of yrens,' 369/24;—he is angered at Mawgis's speech, and would have slain him, 370/2;—he is thrown into a deep sleep by the enchantment of Mawgis, 370/23;—he awakes, and discovers the flight of Mawgis, 371/16, and arouses the Twelve Peers, 371/20;—he discovers that Mawgis had bewitched them, 372/6;—he perceives that the Four Sons mock him, 375/7, complains to his barons, 375/18, and sends to R. demanding restitution of his crown and treasure, 375/22;—he is informed by a spy of the coming of R., 381/11, and sends Oliver to fetch R., 381/25;—he becomes angry with Naymes and Ogier, 382/8, and he vows that R. shall die a shameful death, 382/24;—R. is brought before him, 385/7;—he refuses to listen to Ogier, 386/8, and threatens R. that he shall be 'cutte in smalle peces,' 386/18, but relents, accepting sureties from him, 387/16;—he commends Roland to God, 390/6, prays to God to part the two knights, 393/5, and a miracle is manifested in answer to his prayer, 393/12;—he sees Roland following after R., 394/4, spurs after them, 394/12, and comes to Mountalban, again threatening R., 395/7;—he returns to Mountbendell, 395/19, commanding his army forthwith to lay siege to Mountalban, 395/24;—he pitches his tent before the great gate, 396/7;—he receives Roland's message, 397/12, which makes him shake for anger, 397/29, vowing that he will not make peace unless he may do his will of Mawgis, 398/1;—he is again enchanted by Mawgis, 398/32, and carried to Mountalban, 399/3;—when he discovers that he is in the 'subgectyon of R.,' he is sore an angred, 408/6, and swears that he will make no peace, 408/11;—he is granted liberty by R., 411/25;—he holds his tongue because

'he fered the fiersnes of the yonge Rycharde,' 413/5;—he mounts Bayard and leaves the castle, 413/14;—he is received by his men with g'adness, 413/19, and tells them he has made no peace, 413/23, and explains how he was delivered, 413/28;—he returns Bayard to R., 414/3; he pardons Roland and the other lords, 416/16, and orders the assault on the castle to be renewed, 416/21;—he announces his intention of starving out the four brethren, 417/28, and becomes in great anger with Naymes for endeavouring to dissuade him therefrom, 419/10, again avowing that he will never make peace with them, 419/16;—he discovers that he will be unable to take Mountalban by force, 420/34, and orders a retreat, 421/3, declaring that he will furnish the brethren, 421/12;—he rejoices over the scarcity of victuals in the castle, 423/8, thanks God Mountalban has been brought so low, 423/18, and devises fresh indignities for 'yonge Rycharde,' 423/25;—he will not listen to the appeal of Aymon, 424/20, nor that of his barons, 424/25, but commands them to make engines 'for to bryng down this grete towre,' 424/31;—he discovers that Aymon had supplied his sons with food, 435/5, is very angry therewith, 435/22, and dismisses Aymon from his host, 435/33;—he rides to Mountalban, and not seeing any one, believes its defenders are all dead, 444/7, but entering the castle, he finds they are all gone, 444/32;—he discovers the underground passage through which they escaped, 445/8, and curses those who had made it, 445/19;—in great anger he sends everywhere for tidings of R., 446/19, and eventually learns that he is in the city of Arden, 446/34, whereat he is so 'moche angry' that he swears he will 'never lie in noo bed' till he had besieged the city, 447/7, and forthwith proceeds to do so, 447/22;—he is sore abashed when he sees R. in such good condition, 449/15, and still hopes to do 'justice upon him,' 449/22;—he uses bad language towards R., 451/2, and calls on his knights to slay him, 451/8;—he is right angry when he sees the damage done to his army by the Four Sons, 453/11, and taking his sword in his hand, he performs 'merveilles of armes,' 453/18;—he is 'so angry that noo man canne be more' when he sees the brethren have saved themselves and taken prisoner Richard of Normandy, 455/13, and swears that he will not leave the siege till he has taken the city, and hanged the Four Sons, 455/24;—he is angry at having no tidings of Richard of Normandy, 468/14, and sends to R. to yield up Duke Richard and Mawgis, 470/8;—his anger when he hears of the unpleasant position of Duke Richard, 474/9;—he gives his barons leave to withdraw, 475/8, but cannot sleep at night, 475/11;—he tells his barons that R. dare not hang Duke Richard, 477/8;—he again refuses to make peace, 483/11, and repeats that R. will not injure Duke Richard, 483/15;—he is deserted by the peers of France, 485/30, on which he sends after them, offering to make peace with R., 487/21;—he acquaints the peers with his conditions for the peace, 489/5, and sends Duke Naymes to inform R. thereof, 489/16;—his gracious reception of the *three* brethren and Duke Richard, 494/25, and his promise to look after the children of R., 495/20;—he raises the siege and departs from Arden, 495/28, and casts the good horse Bayard into the Meuse, 496/9, but the horse escapes, whereat he 'toke grete sorowe,' 497/9, and, angry as he was, he gives his followers leave to go to their own countries, 497/17;—he honourably receives the two sons of R., 541/31, makes them his carvers, 544/14, and gives Johnnet a fair knife, 544/25;—he rebukes Constant for bringing a false charge against

R., 545/23;—he accepts the gages of Johnnet and Aymonet and of Constant and Rohart, 546/8;—he knights R.'s two soks, 547/24, and sends to R. to come to the court, 549/29;—he makes R. good cheer, 549/17, and makes friends with him, 550/9;—he reproves the sons of Foulkes of Moryllon, 550/25;—he fixes the place of the battle, 551/21;—he commands that good order be kept at the battle, 552/17;—he becomes suspicious of Richard, 555/16;—he ascends the tower to see the battle, 555/28, and again is suspicious of Richard, 555/34;—his anger when he hears of the treachery of Gryffen of Hautbranche, 556/24;—he comes to the battle-field, 557/24;—he rebukes Richard, 559/5, and commands the children of Foulkes to swear that they enter the quarrel justly, 559/29;—he is glad when Aymonet has overcome Constant, 567/3, and commends the two brothers, 'for ye have doon ynough,' 568/27;—he orders that Constant be hung, and the body of his brother by him, 568/33, and expresses his satisfaction thereat, 569/5;—he appoints his own physicians to tend the wounds of Aymonet and Johnnet, 569/32, and they, with R. and his three brethren, take leave of him, 570/8.

CLARE, the Lady, sister of King John of Gascoyn, 144/1;—rejoices when she hears of the prowess of R., 144/11;—she is making 'a penouncell of a spere' for R. (but she durst not tell it), when King John informs her of the projected marriage of herself to R., 153/24, whereat she is right glad, 154/5, and the marriage presently takes place, 154/19;—she promises to take great care of the castle during R.'s absence, 168/35, and gladly welcomes him back, 180/17;—she welcomes King John, who repulses her, 215/20;—she affectionately receives R., 220/15, implores him not to go to Vaucououres, 221/10, and relates her fearful dream, 221/24;—she is very glad when R. and the brethren return, 285/14, but is cruelly repelled by R. in his anger against King John, 285/21;—she cries him mercy, and reminds him that she had tried to persuade him not to go, for that she misdoubted of the king her brother, 285/31;—through the mediation of his brethren, R. makes peace with her, 287/2;—she is glad to meet again with R., 313/3;—she makes great sorrow for that Richard has been taken prisoner, 313/25, and joy when she sees he is rescued, 362/17, and grieves at the absence of Mawgis, 363/9;—she beseeches the barons to protect R., 380/12;—she takes leave of Roland and the other barons, beseeching them to purchase peace with C., 415/7;—she counsels that the horses be slain for food, and swoons 'for grete feblenes for lacke of mete,' 426/13;—she and her sons beg R. to have Bayard killed for food, 430/5;—since he can give no more blood, she prays R. to slay Bayard, 437/34;—she is sorry her brother has not rotted in his prison, 439/24;—she recomforts Richard of Normandy, 457/28;—seeing her husband arrayed in beggars' clothing, she swoons, 491/15, and mourning grievously for him, she casts her 'noble raymentes' in the fire, and taking a 'poure smoke,' vows to wear no other clothes till his return, 492/1;—she weeps and sorrows so much that 'she deyed at last,' 532/16.

Clermout, the earldom of, offered as a bribe to Esconf, 327/31.

Cologne, the Archbishop and College of, make a procession to the miracle exhibited on the Rhine, 583/12;—he avows the body to be that of some saint, 583/22, and they discover that the body is that of R., 583/29;—he orders the murderers to do penance, 584/10;—he points out that the corpse is a ho'y one, by reason of the great miracles shown forth, 585/4;—he and all the people of Cologne follow the corpse, 585/9;—he

- uncovers the visage of the corpse, so that, if possible, it may be recognized, 586/4 ;—he tells R.'s brethren not to be displeased with him, but they do make too much sorrow, 590/30 ;—they should rather rejoice because now he is a saint in heaven, 591/1, and inquires of them how the corpse should be called, 591/14 ;—he and all the people, when Alarde has answered his question, begin to wepe for pyte and for joye by cause they sawe all by fore theym the moost noble and worthyest knyghte of the worlde, 591/21.
- Cologne, the city of, besieged by the Saracens, 163/9 ;—the battle at, between Roland and the Saracens, 164, 165 ;—R. arrives and works as a labourer on the church of St. Peter at, 576/16.
- Constans (Constant), a son of Foulkes of Morillon, possesses a false heart, 541/1 ;—he conspires with his brother to do harm to the sons of R., 543/7 ;—being accidentally shoved by Aymonet, he makes use of hard words, and calls him the son of a traitor, 544/30 ;—he is rebuked by C., and bidden to hold his peace, 545/22 ;—he asks C. to tell the place where the fight shall take place, 551/6 ;—he and his brother swear on the 'halowes' that R. had slain their father by treason, 560/5 ;—his nose is cut off by Aymonet, 561/9 ;—he wounds Aymonet, 562/30 ;—an ear and his jawbone are cut off by Aymonet, 562/36 ;—he kills Aymonet's horse, and Aymonet kills his, 564/13 ;—he surrenders himself to Aymonet, and is taken to C., 566/30 ;—he weeps when he hears Rohars pleading for mercy, 568/10 ;—he is drawn at four horses' tails, and then hanged, 569/3.
- Constantinople, R. arrives at, 498.
- Cortyne, Ogier's address to his sword so called, 268/1.
- Croyne, the town where the corpse of R. stopped, 585/15 ;—R.'s brethren come to, where they recognize his body, 589/17, and make great sobbings and lamentations, 590/14.
- Damp Rambault, tells Ro'land and Oliver what has happened at Balencon while they been bent on sport, 199/29.
- Dampe Hughe, slain by R., 101/32.
- Dordon, apparently synonymous with Ardeye, 20/27, 30/23, 31/22, 36/13, 38, 2. 59/15, 62/20, 64/3, 131/23.
- Dordonne, the name of one of the rivers bounding Vaucououres, 227/23.
- Donse Peres (the Twelve Peers) of France, assemble at the court at Paris, 16/18 ;—they have come with C. into Gascony, 203/19 ;—C. relates to them his former exploits, and warns them that they may meet the same fate as their predecessors, 327/11 ;—when they see C.'s assault on Escouf, they all leave him, 328/14 ;—(having had news that Mawgis is acquainted with the state of affairs), they come to C., and tell him they are willing that Richard shall be hanged, 332/27, and he pardons them, 333/3 ;—they listen to C.'s complaints and offer of resigning his crown, 358/20 ;—their amazement when they discover how finely they have been cozened by Mawgis, 371, 372 ;—their swords, etc., are returned to C.'s messengers, 379/7 ;—Richard of Normandy's message is delivered to them, 482/19 ;—they each in turn implore C. to make peace, if only to release Richard of Normandy, 482/32 ;—in great wrath and with angry bitter words to C., they all depart from him, 484/15 ;—the messenger tells them of C.'s resolve at last to make peace, and they all return again, 488/9 ;—they are disgusted with C.'s treatment of Bayard, 496 ;—they receive the Four Sons with great joy and honour, 549/1.
- Durandall, the name of Roland's sword, 282/16.

Dygeon (Dijon), Robert of, son of the Duke of Burgoyne, slain by R., 237/23.

Erglyshemenne (Englishmen) at the court at Paris, 16/19;—33/16;—at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/14.

Enguerran, lord of Peronne, slain by Duke Benes, 42/31.

Escorlawde, the Saracen, taken prisoner by Roland, and cast into prison by C., 166.

Escouf (Estorlawde, 318/14), Hector, the son of Oed n. 40/11, 45/11;—he is ordered by C. to hang Richard, and refuses, 327/26, whereat enraged, C. throws a staff at him, 328/12;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/33.

Esmenfray, one of Aymon's knights, advises him to keep faith with C., and a-sail his sons, 105/25;—he follows after R., 109/30, by whom he is forthwith slain, 110/6, and his horse given to Alarde, 110/10.

Fstames, the Earl of, 78/17, is slain by Alarde, 84/24.

Estborwgh in Almayne, 268/5.

Fawcon, Sir, slain by the Earl Guenes, 54/1.

Fawcon, the name of one of the gates of Mountalban, 258/7.

Fayete, Walleran of, kills many of the Persians, 502;—he is attacked and killed by Barbas, 511/11.

Feyry, the valley of, 65/6.

Flamberge (Flamberd, 300/17), the name of R.'s wonderful sword, 95/22;—R. gives it to his elder son, 554/4.

Flamynges (Flemings), 33/15, 40/2;—at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77/13.

Fletcher, the name of one of the gates of Mountalban, 215/17.

Foree, name of one of the gates of Jerusalem, 512/11.

Foulquet, Sir, slain by Ogier, 45/27.

Fryse, Goodebew of, 41/11.

Fryse, Leon of, 45/10.

Fryse, Sir Magon of, 245/33.

Galicia, *see* St. James in Gales.

Garner, one of C.'s peers, 69/23.

Garnyer, son of Gerarde, Duke of Roussyllon, 26/30.

—Gascoyn, Kyng Yon of (King John of Gascony), the Four Sons first hear of him, 132/10;—he rejoices at their coming, 134/25, and retains them in his service, 135/3;—he comes to succour R., fights valiantly, and gives great praise to R., 138/17;—he orders the chase after Borgons to be stayed, 139/15, and goes seeking for R., who was supposed to be amongst the slain, 139/23;—he tries to comfort R.'s brethren, and they all go in search of R., 140/6;—he and his party meet with R. after the latter has captured Borgons, 142/26;—he promises Borgons that no harm shall happen to him, 142/34;—he makes a great feast in honour of the Sons, 143/19, and causes the 'buty' to be dealt, 143/27;—he takes counsel of R. as to the release of Borgons, 144/26;—he grants permission to R. to build a castle, 146, and next day goes to examine the site, 147;—he is reminded by a knight that he runs some risk if he allows R. to build the castle, 147/19, and begins to hesitate, 147/31, but will not break his promise, 147/35, and confirms his gift to R., 148/29;—he goes to view the castle built by R., 149/20, and names it Mountalban, 150/2;—he gives the lordship of Valery to R., 150/20;—his

- barons, envious of R., tell him to beware of R., 150/22; but he tells them that R. will never think of treason, 150/30;—an old knight¹ counsels him to give his sister to R. to wife, 151/7, to which he agrees, and returns to Bordeaux, 151/12, where he receives R. with great joy, and taking him to the 'chambre of parments,' they play at chess, 151/24;—he hears Godfray's dream and Dr. Bernard's interpretation thereof, 152, and causes the marriage of R. and the Lady Clare to be accomplished, 153, 154;—he hears C.'s message delivered by Ogier, and his answer thereto, 158, 159;—he receives C.'s herald, and tells him to wait seven days, 204/4;—he relates C.'s message to his barons, and asks for counsel, 204/16;—he bewails himself because his barons have advised him to surrender R. to C., 209/4, and indites the letter of betrayal to his secretary, 209/30;—he receives C.'s letter giving the details how to carry out the treachery, 214/9;—he goes to Mountalban, but, full of his evil intent, forbears to salute his sister, 215/16;—the trumpets sounded in his honour arouse his guilty conscience, 217/3;—he feigns illness as an excuse for his cold reception of the Sons, 217/21, and puts the scarlet mantles on them, 218/3;—he tells them that he has made peace for them with C., and explains how they are to go tomorrow to Vauloures to render homage to C., 218/23;—he tells R. they must go to Vauloures mounted on mules only, and unarmed except their swords, 222/32;—he swoons four times when he sees the Sons depart, 224/15;—his folk comfort him, 224/25, but he is apprehensive of the vengeance of Mawgis, 225/6;—his name and dignity are rooted out for ever, 225/16;—he is informed by a spy of the disastrous ending of his treacherous designs, 278/19, and, bewailing his evil fate, resolves on becoming a monk in the Abbey of St. Lazare in the Wood of the Serpent, 279;—he arrives at St. Lazare, where the abbot 'made them monks in the devylles name,' 281/22;—he is taken prisoner by Roland, by whom he is scoffed at, placed backwards on a horse, and taken to Mountfalcon, 282/22;—he bewails his unhappy fate, and prevails on one of the knights to go to R. for succour, 283/4;—he is observed by R., 305/19;—he is abandoned by the fourscore knights his guards, 306/3;—he is unbound by R., and rebuked for his treachery, 306/10, and he begs R. to slay him, 306/19;—he is reproached by his little nephews, 313/7;—he gets left behind, in the prison at Mountalban, but is brought therefrom by R., 439/13;—he falls sick, dies, and is honourably buried, 456/6.
- Gascoyns, in C.'s army, 40/2;—they bless R. for going to the succour of King John, 290/29;—are considered to be cowards, 295/10;—they draw aside to see the combat between R. and Roland, 300/24.
- Gastynoy's, a province of France, 132/7.
- Gaydon, an assumed name of Mawgis, 316/32.
- Gefray, one of C.'s peers, 61/23.
- Gerard, Sir, one of Ogier's knights, is sent to Mountalban for succour, 253/31.
- Godfray, Sir, nephew to King John of Gascony, counsels his uncle not to act in such a manner as to bring dishonour on himself, 204/31.
- Godfraye, Duk; serves C. at dinner, 61/6.
- Godras, Godarde, Sir Peter, the secretary of King John, 209/30, pens King John's treacherous letter to C., 210/10;—he weeps when he reads

¹ This old knight was the author of the memorable saying, that 'R. is well a noble gentleman of all four sides.'

- of C.'s treachery, 214/16, and explains C.'s letter to King John, 214/26;—he weeps for pity when he sees the Sons go forth to their death, 255/5;—and tells the sad tale to Mawgis, 255/23;—he stays Mawgis from slaying himself, 256/10.
- Guenes, Guenelon, Ganellon, the Earl, nephew of C., suggests that he should waylay and slay Duke Benes, 51/28;—with four thousand men, he tarries in the Vale of Soissons for Duke Benes, 52/19;—he slays Reyner, 51/29, and Sir Fawcon, 54/1, and Toyusselyne of Bloye, 55/4;—he becomes surety for Constans and Rohars, 546/16;—he calls his kinsmen together, and points out to them the dishonour done to them by C., 569/13;—his treason at Ronnceva's foreshadowed, 569/17.
- Guithelym, Guetelym, the Sesne, overcome by Charlemagne, 16/9, and reduced to the Christian faith, 17/3.
- Guy, the Earl, joins C. at Paris, 39/32.
- GUYCHARDE, THE THIRD SON OF AYMOR, at the court at Paris, 16/24;—is knighted by C., 31/21;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 59/17;—he inquires of Earl Guyon, who are these folk? 70/26;—receiving a rough answer, he fights with Guyon and slays him, 71/1;—he regains Mountaynforde, and is commended by R., 71/28;—he relates his adventure to R., 72/1;—he counsels R. to go to Vaucoulores fully armed and mounted, 222/16;—he advises R. that they should cross the river, 232/16;—his faith in R. is restored, 235/25;—he is taken prisoner, and maltreated, 238/23;—his captors set him free, 240/10, and he is unbound by his brothers and set upon a horse, 240/23;—he does not mind for him self, but wants no damage to happen to R., 246/12;—he is sore wounded, and advises R. that they should surrender themselves, for which he is sharply rebuked by R., 249/1;—he regains his courage when he hears the words of Richard, 250/7, and implores Ogier to save R., 250/15;—he descends the rock with his brethren, to re-engage the French, 260/8;—his wounds are cured by Mawgis, 278/12;—he comforts the Lady Clare, 286/11;—he tells R. he will not go to rescue King John, 290/22;—he restrains R. from going to C. alone, 311/29;—he opines that C. will never grant peace, 403/13;—he counsels that they should yield themselves to C., 429/4.
- Guynard, the Earl, tells R. he was a fool to believe King John, and asks him whether he will yield or defend himself, 247/17;—he commands Ogier to join in the attack on the Sons, 252/12;—he is slain by Mawgis, 263/18.
- Gynemault, Anthony, taken prisoner by R., 85/14.
- Gyner, C.'s esquire, is slain by R., 83/31.
- Guyon, one of R.'s knights, overthrown by King Yon of St. Omars, 82/13.
- Gyronde (Gironde), the river, 145/12.
- Gyrounde, the name of one of the rivers bordering Vaucoulores, 227/22.
- Hardres, 51/26.
- Haton, a knight, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.
- Hautebraunche, Gryfon of, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/17;—he ambushes near the Isle of Our Lady with treacherous designs, 553/25;—he issues from his ambush, 557/14.
- Hauteflelle, Gryffoon, Duke of, unhorses Duke Benes, 55/33, and is himself unhorsed, 56/3;—he treats the body of Duke Benes with indignity, jeering at it the while, 56/14.
- Hawteclere, the name of Oliver's sword, 371/3.

- Hector, son of Oedon, 297/33;—he weeps on seeing the combat between R. and Roland, 300/28.
- Hector, the ancient Earl, advises King John to deliver the Four Sons to C., 208/13.
- Helye, Sir, slain by Duke Benes, 55/27.
- Henry, the Earl, 80/19.
- Hosy, the mount, where Sir Gerarde keeps watch against the coming of Mawgis (but this is a little counterplot of Ogier the Dane's contrivance), 254/4.
- Humalle the Breton, smites Richard, and is unhorsed by him, 309/19.
- Humarde, Sir, tells Duke Guymarde that he has lost his wit, 207/32.
- Huon, Earl of Mauns, slain by the Saracens, 16/15.
- Huon, *see* Mauns.
- Illande, 187/8.
- Iousser, the assumed name of Mawgis, 172/9.
- Ioyuse, the name of C.'s sword, 349/34.
- Isle of Our Lady wythin Savoyne, the spot selected by C. for the fight between Yonnet and Aymonet and Constans and Rohars, 551/21;—Constans and Rohars arrive at, 553/20;—Aymonet and Yonnet arrive at, 554/15;—C. and his company arrive at, 557/24;—the fight at, 560—568.¹
- Judas, King John compares himself to the traitor, 216/1.
- Jerusalem, King Thomas of, taken prisoner by the Admiral of Perce, 501/7;—when he sees the joy amongst his folk, he thinks they have forgotten him, 511/20;—the alternatives put to him by Barbas, 519/20;—he addresses Geoffrey of Nazareth, acquainting him with Barbas's terms, 520/4;—he is vexed when he hears that his barons have made R. lord over them, and accuses Earl Ruines of betraying him, 520/16;—he is placed in a perilous position by Barbas, 522/5, and Barbas takes his leave of him, 523/8;—the joyful meeting between him and R., 523/12;—he thanks R. for succouring Jerusalem, and honourably entreats him for some days, bestowing rich gifts on him, 523, 524.
- Jerusalem, Mawgis and R. arrive nigh the city of, 500/2, which they learn has been treacherously taken by the Admiral of Perce, and is now besieged by the Christians, 500/28;—the battle outside the city of, 502—506;—the second battle, 512—517;—it is retaken by the Christians, 518.
- Julius Cæsar's tower at Troyes, 41/3.
- Langon, one of C.'s peers, 69/23.
- Langres, Olet (Oedon) of, 48/27.
- Langres the province of, held by Escouf, the son of Oedon, 327/29.
- Lews (Lewis), a nephew of C., would have slain R.'s brother Richard, 288/27.
- Lezoune, taken by C.'s army, 192/7.
- Lion (? Lyons), Henry of, 565/33.
- Lion (? Lyons), the city of, offered as a bribe to Ogier, 325/4.
- Lohier, the eldest son of C., is commanded to go to Duke Benes with a

¹ The telling of this fight is done with great gusto by the chronicler; but his gloating over the gruesome details is not calculated to raise the reader's estimation of the characters of the knights as being much higher than that of the ordinary sanguinary savage.

threatening message, 18/21 ;—he departs, 19/15, bragging by the way, 19/20 ;—he notes the impregnability of the castle of Aygremonthe, 21/26 ;—his conversation with Sir Savare, 22/16 ;—he arrives at Aygremonthe, 22/33, and he and his folk enter the castle, 23/21 ;—he delivers his inflammatory speech to Duke Benes, 24/17, which is followed by another full of imprecations, 25/26, and then one of contempt, ‘I nether prayse you nor doubte you not,’ 27/3 ;—he slays one of the knights of Aygremonthe, 28/4, and, perceiving in what deadly peril he is, prays God for succour, 28/7 ;—he attacks Duke Benes, by whom he is slain, 28/17 ;—his body is sent back to C., 29/27 ;—the burial of, 35/27 ;—the great sorrow for the death of, 37/24.

Lombardes at the court at Paris, 16/20 ;—43/4.

Lombardy, C.’s return from, after fighting with the Saracens, 16/6.

Loyre (Loire), the river, crossed by the Four Sons, 132/8 ;—169/18.

Lyetary, conquered by Borgons, 132/31.

Malbon, a nephew of, slain by R., 515/32.

Mareyll, a Saracen, beheaded by R., 205/5.

Margarys, King, is slain by R., 513/1.

Mascon, the city of, offered as a bribe to the Earl Gnydellon, 324/25.

Mauns, Huon, Earl of, joins C. at Paris, 39/34 ;—45/7, 48/26.

Mauuscalx at the siege of Mountaynforde, 77. 14.

Maunte, the territorial name of the enemies of R., 539/16.

MAWGIS, son of the Duke Benes of Aygremonthe, and cousin to the Four Sons, threatened with death by C., 17/28 ;—is a great master of the science of Nigromancy, 24/6 ;—his gift of Bayard to R., 31/34 ;—hears of his father’s death, 57/19, and says that C. ‘shall abyge for it full derely,’ 57/33 ;—he recomforts his mother, promising to avenge his father’s death, 58/4 ;—he fights well in the fray that ensues from the slaughter of Berthelot, 62/13, and escapes with the Four Sons, 62/16 ;—his meeting with the Four Sons, 129/28 ;—he comes from Paris, having stolen three horses laden with gold, belonging to C., 130/7 ;—he advises R. to serve King John of Gaseony, 132/14 ;—he backs up Alarde’s advice about the building of Mountalban, 145/24 ;—he disguises Bayard and R., 169/24 ;—he deceives Duke Naymes, telling him that he is of Peron, and that R. is his son, 172 ;—he makes a bed for Bayard, and binds his feet so as to make him go halting, 173/27 ;—he rebukes R. for slaying the cordwainer, 174/27 ;—he mounts Morell, and goes with R. to the place appointed for the race, 174/31 ;—he unbinds the feet of Bayard, 176/24 ;—he leaves Paris, and meets R. on the way, 177/17 ;—he advises R. to attack C.’s army, 193/20 ;—he comes out of his ambush, and slays a number of Frenchmen at Balencon, 198/6 ;—he captures the golden eagle, 198/18, and sets it up on the great tower of the castle, so that both hosts may see it, 198/28 ;—his wrath when he knows the treachery of King John, 255/25 ;—he takes a knife to kill himself with, 256/8 ;—he causes all the soldiers in the castle to arm themselves, and acquaints them with King John’s treachery, 256/27 ;—he orders the ‘palfroyner’ to saddle Bayard, and he refuses, whereupon Mawg’s smites him with his fist and casts him to the ground, 257/15 ;—he saddles Bayard, after ‘dealing curstly’ with him, 257/33 ;—he departs from the castle by the gate Fawcon, 258/7 ;—he comes to Montbron, and bitterly upbraids Ogier, 261/17 ;—he wounds Ogier, 262/5 ;—he dismounts from Bayard, 262/12, and mounted on another steed he slays the Earl Gnyuarde, 263/16 ;—he encourages his followers, and bids

them not let Ogier escape, 263/23;—he is specially cursed by C., 271/23;—his address to R., in which he promises to make Richard whole and sound, if R. will help him to be avenged of C., 276/22;—being the ‘subtillest nygramancer that ever was,’ he incontinently cures the wounds of Richard, 277/17;—by the same means, he cures the wounds of the other three, 278;—he is eager for the fray, and tells R. he makes too long a sermon, 293/22;—he causes R. to remount, 304/18;—he inquires of the Sons the cause of their sorrow, 312/4, and dissuading R. from going to C., offers to proceed himself, 312/12;—he comes to Mountalban and disguises himself, 314/12;—he leaves Mountalban and reaches the tent of C. before the arrival of Ro’and, and he salutes C., praying God to keep him from treason, 315/5;—in his disguise he banterers C., and tells him how he had been set on by the Four Sons, and maltreated by Mawgis [himself!], 315, 316;—he gives C. half the pardons that he had ‘wonne in his vyage makyunge,’ 318/1;—he notes the coming of Richard, 319, and returns to Mountalban, 321/13;—he tells the Sons that C. has promised to hang Richard at Mountfawcon, and that they must go there to deliver him, 322/3;—he resumes his armour, and they all set out for Mountfawcon, 322/24, which they reach, and put themselves in ambush, 323/6, and they all go to sleep, 323/17;—he blesses God because Bayard had awakened them in time to rescue Richard, 340/24;—he slays the lord of Pyerreffrite, 345/32;—he enters the pavilion of C., whom he tries to slay, 355/13;—in returning he is attacked at Baleneon, where he slays Mylen of Puyl, 356/7, but is himself wounded and overthrown by Oliver, 356/13, and surrenders himself to Oliver, 356/31;—he is brought back to C.’s pavilion, and swears to Oliver that he will not attempt to escape, 357/8;—he tells Oliver that he has betrayed him, 360/31, and is led before C., 361/10;—he is threatened by C., 361/14, and he advises C. to let him go, and to make peace with R., 361/22;—he is sought for by the brethren at Mountalban, 362/26;—he promises the Twelve Peers not to go forth without their leave, 367/9;—he asks for some meat, 367/29, for which he had a good appetite, 368/16;—a goodly watch is ordered to be kept over him, 368/28;—he asks C. where he is to sleep, 369/9;—he is fettered to a pillar, and an iron collar placed on his neck, 369/23, but tells C. that he shall still see Mountalban before prime to-morrow, 369/32;—he makes his charm and causes C. and the Twelve Peers to fall asleep, 370/20 another charm, and the fetters fall off him, 370/27;—he then collects all their swords, and the treasure of C., 370/33, whom he awakens, and departs for Mountalban, 371/8;—he meets with R. at Baleneon, 372/25;—he shows the spoil to R., and explains why he had taken Ogier’s sword with the others, 373/13, and he relates his adventures in the pavilion of C., 374/1;—he advises that the answer to C.’s message be deferred till the morrow, 377/26;—he prepares a special banquet for the messengers, and they are honourably treated, 378;—he is informed of the designs of C., and tells R. thereof, 396/9;—he goes to the pavilion of C., and charming all the host asleep, he takes C. in his arms, he lays him on Bayard, and returns with him to Mountalban, 398/24;—he then puts C. in bed and informs R. of what he has done, and showing C. to him, bids him ‘kepe hym soo well that he scape not you,’ 399;—he then, after kissing Bayard, dons a hermit’s garb, giving his other raiment to the porter, and quits Mountalban, 399/28;—he crosses the Dordonne, and finding a hermitage in a wild forest, he makes his avow to God to dwell there, living on wild herbs, and then prays that there

- may be peace between C. and R., 400, 401;—he is sought after and lamented by R., who apprehends that he has departed because he will no longer abide the wrath of C., 405, 406;—he dreams about the Four Sons, sets out to see them, and on the way finds two merchants who have been robbed, 459;—he tells them that he will fight with the thieves, ‘to wyte yf theyr hedes ben softe or harde,’ 460/1;—he overtakes the thieves and slays five of them, 460/19, whereat the merchants exclaim, ‘Here is a good pylgryme! I wene it is my lorde St. Martyne!’ 461/16;—he inquires after C., 461/28;—understanding of the siege of Ardeyne, he goes straight there, 462/8;—he passes through C.’s host, but not without suspicion, 462/17;—he reaches the palace at dinner-time, 462/23, and being deemed a poor hermit, food is offered to him, 463/1, but he says he only wants brown bread and water, which is brought to him, 463/4;—he is suspected and discovered by R., 464/3, whom he acquaints with the particulars of his present life, 464, 465;—great joy is made over him by all the folk of R., 465/20;—he will not accept any of the luxuries provided for him, 466/9, and says that he is going to serve the temple of Jerusalem, 466/22, and takes leave of every one at Ardeyne, 467/13;—he again passes through the host of C., but at great risk, 467/20;—he is recognized by R. in the holy woman’s house at Constantinople, 498/25;—he is so rejoiced by R.’s good tidings that he becomes whole again, and they feast together, both leaving Constantinople on the morrow, 499;—he makes a ‘lityll lodges’ for himself and R., 501/29;—he advises R. to rest this night, and fight the Saracens to-morrow, and tells him that he will never more make charms, 503/21;—seeing the slaughter made by R. with the fork, he brings his ‘palster’ into use, 505/10;—he refuses the rich gifts that the Earl Rames would bestow upon him, 510/7;—he admonishes the barons of Syria, 512/19;—he performs marvels of arms, to the admiration of R., 513/21;—he offers again to bear arms, for he cannot suffer R. to be in danger, 526/21, and becomes King Simon’s standard-bearer, 527/2;—he recomfor s R. for the loss of his wife, 534/24;—taking leave of R., he returns to his hermitage, where he lives a holy life for seven years, and then ‘deceased fro this worlde aboute Ester,’ 525.
- May, the month of, when all ‘creatures humnain’ ought well to rejoice, 23/31.
- Melanke, Bawdoyn, lord of, slain by the Saracens, 25/5.
- Melantes, the name of Roland’s horse, 302/10;—his master would ‘kit of his hede,’ 302/23, and Bayard nearly breaks his thigh, 303/3.
- Melym, Myllon (Meun), Alrde and the others stay at, while R. and Mawgis go to the horse-race, 169/14, and they all meet again at, 179/27.
- Mobandes, the Earl of, relates the good deeds of R., and tells King John that he will be a traitor if he delivers the Four Sons to C., 206/11.
- Molyns, Godefraye of, counsels King John to give his sister to R. for wife, 151/8, and he relates his dream, 152/1.
- Mondydyer, Dron of, one of C.’s barons, 104/31.
- Montrolonde, Richard of, is ordered by C. to hang Richard, but refuses unless C. will accompany him, 328/24.
- Morell, the name of Mawgis’s horse, 170/10.
- Moroedon, the real possessor of Langres, 327/33.
- Morillon, Escouf of, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/16.
- MORILLON, Foullke, Fougues, Aoryfoulquet, Duke of, acquaints C. of the coming of Duke Benes, 51/25;—he rebukes Duke Benes for slaying

- Lohier, 53/18;—he advises that Mountaynford be forthwith assailed, 73/22;—he is placed in front of the 'masters gate' of Mountaynford, 76/33;—80/19;—he exhorts C. to make greater exertions against the Sons, 81/18;—he rais at R., and threatens him with death, 88/8, for which he is rebuked by R., 88/33;—he thinks R. is in his power, but R.'s disguise and the speech of Mawgis completely baffle him, 171, 172;—he is made acquainted with C.'s treacherous designs against R., and proceeds to Vaucoulores to carry them out, 212, 213;—he taunts R., telling him his best friend King John has betrayed him, and threatens to slay him, 233/25;—he refuses to entertain the proposals of R., 235/1;—he overthrows R., 236/4, but directly afterwards he is 'clove to the harde teeth,' and slain outright by R., 236/30.
- ount marter (Montmartre), the horse-race proclaimed at, 167/32.
- Mountalban, the first inception of the building of the castle of, 145/8;—details of the building, 149;—it is first called Mountalban by King John, 150/2, and is by him made free from dues for ten years, 150/6;—it speedily becomes well peopled, 150/12;—it is beheld and admired by C., 156/27;—the Sons depart from, in order to take part in the forthcoming horse-race at Paris, 168/27, and they all safely arrive home again, 180/16;—preparations are made by C. for a seven years' siege of, 182/26;—a spy arrives at, with news of C.'s projected attack, 184/23;—C.'s army encamps before, 188/19;—King John arrives at, bent on treachery, 215/16;—it is left by the Four Sons, who go on their perilous journey to Vaucoulores, 225/20;—Mawgis departs from, to the rescue of R., 258/7;—the Sons and Mawgis return to, 285/3, and a right great feast takes place there, 287/12;—the Sons again depart from, 291/33;—R., Alarde, and Gnycharde again arrive at, 312/23, but depart again from, to go to Mountfawcon, 322/23;—the Four Sons again arrive at, 362/13;—they again depart from, to try and find Mawgis, 363/32;—and again return to, with Mawgis, 374/14;—C.'s messengers arrive at, 376/3, where they receive courteous welcome, 376/23;—the castle is left by R. in the charge of Mawgis, 388/16;—R. returns to, with Roland, who is there entertained right honourably, 394/28;—C. comes to the gate of, and threatens R., 395/8;—it is again laid siege to by C., 395/23;—C. pitches his tent before the 'myster gate' of, 396/3;—the assault of, commences, 419/32—439;—the great dearth at, 422;—it is abandoned 'so that noo creature a live abide wythin,' 439;—C. discovers that it is deserted, whereat he is as angry as any man might be, 444;—it is occupied by C. and his barons, 446/24;—the Four Sons and Mawgis return to, 533/25, and are welcomed by the inhabitants with great joy, 534/1;—it is given by R. to his son Aymon, 570/19.
- Mount argweyll, some place near Ardeyne, 447/16.
- Mountaynford, R. builds the castle of, on the river Meuse, 65/9;—C.'s host arrives at, 70/4;—the first battle at, commences, 71/1;—description of the castle of, 73/32;—it is assailed by C. and before each of its three gates are placed sundry warriors, 76/31;—the various nationalities arrayed against it, 77/13;—its 'fawcebraye,' 77/27, from which R. and his folk issue without noise and fill upon the host of C., 78/24;—the second battle at, rages fiercely, 79/7, and a long description of it follows, 79—86;—R.'s forces return to, 87/1;—it is besieged for fourteen months, 87/14;—it is treacherously entered by Hernyer of Seveyne, 91/10, and he lets in Guyon of Bourgoyne, 93/1;—the treachery is made known through the 'somwhat proude' horse of Alarde making a noise and waking his master, 93/7;—the castle is set on fire, 94/16;—

- the third battle at, commences, 95, 96 ;—the castle is deserted by the Four Sons and their folk, 98/31, much to the grief of R., 99/7.
- Mountbandell, Mountbendel, C.'s tent at, 270/12 ;—Pygwade the spy arrives at, 280/18 ;—C. removes his pavilion from, when laying close siege to Mountalban, 395/19.
- Mountbron, the rock at, 198/1 ;—Richard flees to, 238/22 ;—the fight at, 249—269.
- Mountfacon, the 'pyn tree' of, 239/20 ;—Mawgis and the three brethren ambush themselves at, 323/6 ;—Richard is brought to the gallows at, to be hanged, 334/20 ;—the great fight between R. and Roland at, 390—393.
- Mountferrant, the Earldom of, offered as a bribe to Escouf, 327/31
- Mountlyon, one of C.'s towns, 69/14.
- Mountpeller, Guyon, Guy, Earl of, in the 'forewarde' of C.'s army, 69/19 ;—he gives a brutal answer to Guycharle's question, 70/26, and is forthwith slain by Guycharde, 71/1 ;—C.'s grief for his death, 71/15.
- Mountpeller (Montpelier), 65/13 ;—conquered by Borgons, 132/31.
- Muse (Mense), the river, 65/7.
- Myleyne, otherwise called Aspes, 70/2.
- Myllon, Duke, father of Roland of Bretayn, 162/24.
- Nantuell, Duke Dron of, had not done the bidding of C., 17/9 ;—comes to help Duke Benes, 39/13 ;—he goes against the host of C., 41/28 ;—he counsels his brethren to sue to C. for mercy, 46/18 ;—he refuses to go with C. into Gascony, 183/20.
- NAYMES, Duke of Bayyere, gives good advice to C. concerning Benes of Aygreounte, 17/32 ;—he tells C. to put no credence in dreams, 33/10, and not to fray himself till he knows the certainty, 33/18 ;—he recomferts C., and advises him to go against Duke Benes, 34/22 ;—38/22 ;—he counsels C. to accept the allegiance of Duke Benes and his brethren, 49/2 ;—69/24 ;—he goes with Ogier after Guycharde, 'but their labour was nought worthe,' 71/27 ;—he advises C. to send a message to R., commanding him to surrender Guycharde, 74/30, and he and Ogier forthwith depart for Mountaynforde, 75/12 ;—he delivers the message, 75/31 ;—having heard R.'s answer and defiance, they quickly return, 76/23 ;—he counsels C. to raise the siege of Mountaynforde, and resume it 'whan the newe tyme [next spring] shall be come,' 89/21 ;—he advises C. to cease from the pursuit of the Sons, 103/30 ;—he accompanies C. to Galicia, 156/13 ;—he counsels C. to remain quiet for five years, 162/6 ;—he highly extols the merits of Roland to C., and says he only wants a good horse, 167/6, to obtain which, he advises C. to proclaim a horse-race for a valuable prize, the winner of which is to be bought for Roland, 167/20 ;—he says that C. makes him look like a fool, 171/16 ;—he is deceived by the disguise of Bayard and R., 171, 172 ;—he advises C. to restrain his anger, and prepare to go against R. 'atte Candelmas nexte comynge,' 182/11 ;—he advises C. either to grant the request of R., or to starve out the castle, 190/18 ;—he advises C. to send messengers to King John ordering him to deliver up the Four Sons, 202/25 ;—he interferes in the quarrel between Ogier and Roland, sharply rebuking the latter for his great pride, 273/12 ;—he rebukes C. for striking his barons, 328/20 ;—he counsels C. to restore Richard to his brethren, to make peace with them, and induce them to become his subjects, 329/14 ;—this counsel not being acceptable to C., he proposes that Richard should be put in a deep prison and starved

- to death, 'and ye shall not be blamed yf ye doo soo'! 330/6;¹—he begs C. not to lay down his crown, promises him that Mountalban shall soon be taken, and that the Four Sons shall not be spared, 359/11;—he advises that Mawgis should be spared till to-morrow, and the Twelve Peers become surety for him and Mawgis, 366, 367;—he rebukes C. for his unseemly language, 382/27;—he advises the barons to accept Oliver's counsel, and that if any outrage is offered to R., they will help him, 384/33;—he goes to C., telling him how well Roland is treated by R., and offering terms of submission on the part of the Four Sons, 397/12;—he tells R. that C. will not listen unless Mawgis is delivered to him to do his will of him, 398/7;—he marvels at the capture of C., considering what strait watch he always kept, 404/24;—he counsels the Four Sons to cease bewailing Mawgis, and think of the peace to be made with C., 407/18;—he entreats C. to accept the terms proposed by R., 410/24;—he and the other barons wonder greatly at the kindness of R. in letting C. go scot free, 411/30;—he counsels the barons that they should go after C. and plead the cause of R. before him, 414/21;—he kneels before C., crying his mercy, and advising him to make peace, 416/8;—he again appeals to C. to make peace, 418;—he counsels C. to allow Aymon to return home, 435/25;—he again urges C. to make peace, 449/29;—he tells C. that he believes R. has caused the death of Richard of Normandy, 469/19;—he delivers C.'s conditions of peace to R., 471/15;—he tells C. that R. sends word that he will hang Richard of Normandy to-morrow, and moreover that he would also hang C., were he in his power, unless he made peace, 473/5;—he expostulates with C. for his angry threats, and counsels that all the kinsmen of R. go their ways, leaving C. to shift by himself, 474/24;—he tells C. that it is useless seeking counsel, since that he will 'do no thing but after his own head,' 475/16;—he rides to Ardeyne with C.'s conditions for the peace, 489/17;—he makes R.'s children to become acquainted with their kinsmen, 542/30;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/32;—he decides how the forthcoming fight is to be 'two agenst two and all foure togyder,' 551/17;—he tells C. not to be dismayed, for they will well keep his right and honour, 553/13.
- Nazareth, Geffray of, kills many of the Saracens, 502, and fights with the Admiral of Perce, whom he overthrows, 503/1;—King Thomas is glad at the sight of Geoffrey of Nazareth, and addresses his speech to him, 520/4.
- Nemours, Yzacar of, 40/10.
- Neron (Nero) of Rome, never made so great a treason as King John of Gascony, 279/11.
- Neuers, Neners, the Earl of, placed in front of the 'masters gate,' at Mountaynford, 77/1;—he is taken prisoner by R., 85/15.
- Nore (Noire), one of the rivers surrounding Vaucoulores, 227/24.
- Normandy, Rycharde of, joins C. at Paris, 39/29;—placed in the 'forewarde' of C.'s army, 40/9;—he is one of the guardians of the 'Oryflame,' 41/17;—he slays one of Roussillon's knights, 43/11;—he jousts with Duke Benes, and kills his horse, 44/20;—63/24;—he rejoins C. at Paris, 186/22;—he keeps the passage over the river Balencon, 395/32;—he is

¹ This advice, though seriously given, seems meant for a joke, for C. in reply tells Naymes, 'ye doo jape wyth me,' and that the necromancer Mawgis would not allow Richard to remain long in prison.

made prisoner by Richard, and carried into Ardeyne, 455/4;—he is threatened with death by R. unless peace is made, 457/10, to which he replies that he is a prisoner of war, and does not fear death, 457/14;—he is recomforted by the Lady Clare, 457/28;—ten of R.'s men are sent to fetch him to the gibbet, of whom he slays three, and the rest flee away, 477/21, and he causes the three dead carles to be thrown out of the window, 478/30;—he expostulates with R. for sending 'kerles' to take him, and assures R. that, if their cases had been reversed, he would not have done such a shame to R., 479/32;—he taunts R. that he dare not hang him as long as C. is alive, 480/25;—he is brought to the gallows, 481/1, and sends a messenger to C., entreating him to pardon R., 481/23;—the messenger tells him of the failure of his mission, and how the Twelve Peers have deserted C., 486/21;—he is released by R., who prays pardon for the great shame done unto him, 487/1;—he is entreated by R. to take care of his wife and children, 491/10;—he takes leave of R., 492/26;—he recomforts the Lady Clare, 493/23;—he recounts to C. how honourably he had been treated by R., and begs him to worship R.'s wife, children, and brethren, 495/5;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/32.

Normandy, Thiery of, taken prisoner by R., 85/15.

Normans at the court at Paris, 16/20;—33/14, 40/2.

Nycoll, Emery the Earl of, slain by R., 195/33.

OATHS, GREETINGS, AND BATTLE-CRIES:—

Alas, dere lady Mary! [*i. e.* the Virgin], 426/25.

And God confounde me! 171/20.

Ardeyn! Richard's battle-cry, 233/21.

Arme you, knyghtes! 136/25.

A thousande gramercys, 154/13.

Aygreounte! 42/34.

Aygreounte his banner! 45/6.

Balancon! Guycharde's battle-cry, 233/20.

Blessyd be the hour that ever ye were borne! 163/26.

By all halowen! 418/27.

By Apollo! 519/17.

By God omnypotente! 37/16.

By my soule! 379/16.

By myne othe! 188/22.

By St. Denis of France, 17/24.

By St. James, 556/33.

By St. Palle! 379/13.

By St. Peter of Rome! 311/31.

By St. Peter the postle! 272/6.

By St. Symon! 60/22.

By that God that suffred death and passyon! 23/25.

By the body of God! 579/15.

Godlys curse haue thou! 28/6 42/33.

God gramerey! 181/4, 277/34.

God gyve you good adventure! 133/17.

Goo thy waye to helle! 513/13.

Hourson cowarde kaytiff! 272/9.

Jaffa! 502/6.

Mountalban Cleremont! Mawg's's battle-cry, 263/22.

Mountalban! R.'s battle-cry, 233/19.

Mounteinforde ! 71/7.

Mountioye St. Denys ! 71/6.

O Machomet ! 511/2.

Pavereyment ! one of Alarde's battle-cries, 315/29.

Perce ! (Persia !), 503/13.

Rames ! 514/5.

Roussillon, Roussyllon ! 42/11.

St. Nycolas ! Alarde's battle-cry, 233/20.

The devylle sped you ! 326/28.

OGIER of DENMARK, does on the spurs of R. when made a knight, 31/22 ; — in the 'forewarde' of C.'s army, 40/11 ; — he is one of the guardians of the 'Oryflame,' 41/17 ; — he slays Ponson, 42/15, and Sir Foulquet, 45/27 ; — 69/23 ; — he goes after Guycharde, but is too late, 71/26 ; — he returns to C., and tells him of the strength of the castle of Mountaynford, 73/5 ; — he is placed in front of the 'masters gate' at Mountaynford, 77/1 ; — he prevents Aymon from being made prisoner by his sons, 86/1, and banters him on their chivalry, 86/3 ; — he encourages R., and tells him he will deliver his message to C., 87/32 ; — he accompanies C. to Galicia, 156/13 ; — he delivers C.'s haughty message and defiance to King John, 158/20, and rebukes R. for his inflammatory speech, 160/15 ; — he returns to C., and relates the saying of King John and R., 161/9 ; — he responds to Duke Naymes' assertion that they had been made fools of by C., 171/19 ; — he is left in charge of the camp at Balencou, 193/1 ; — he prepares to meet the host of R., 195/12 ; — he overthrows Richard, 197/4, but is himself speedily overthrown by R., 197/16 ; — he promises to do a good turn for R., 197/28 ; — he slays many of the Gascons, 198/4 ; — he is made acquainted with the details of C.'s treason towards R., 212/33, and, with Foulkes of Moryllon, goes to Vaucoloures to carry it out, 213/19 ; — he first spies the Sons coming to Vaucoloures, and prays his folk to do them no harm, 228/5 ; — he bids the captors of Guycharde to let him go, 240/6 ; — he tells the Sons they did as fools to believe King John, 246/2 ; — he will not fight against the brethren, but withdraws himself and his folk a bow-shot away, 248/5, and makes great sorrow for R., 248/16 ; — he orders the assault to be stayed, 250/24, and tells his cousins to rest and have breathing-time, 251/1 ; — to R.'s ungracious speech he retorts that for what he is now doing C. will give him no thanks, 251/18 ; — he tells the Frenchmen that he will help his cousins, 252/9, and prays that they may be left in peace, 252/19 ; — he threatens to smite off the head of any one who ventures to take any of the brethren, 252/27 ; — he sends one of his knights to fetch Mawgis to help the brethren, 253/31 ; — thinking that the brethren are about to surrender themselves, he tells them they are fools for abandoning the rock, 260/23, but he is warned by R. to escape, 260/32 ; — his great delight when he sees the host coming to the succour of the Four Sons, 261/2 ; — he is rebuked by Mawgis, 261/17, and is also wounded by him, 262/3 ; — he is unhorsed by R., 262/33 ; — he and his followers fly from the battle across the river Dordonne, 264/8, where he is chaffed by R. for running away, and bitterly assailed for his treachery, 264/12 ; — the Frenchmen also reprove him and depart from him, 265/3 ; — he laments his ill-fortune, and cries to R. that he wrongfully blames him, 265/16 ; — he recrosses the river, and made himself ready to joust all wet as he was, 265/31 ; — he tells R. that he will fight, and he had rather be slain than return in this manner to C., 266/7 ; — he is defied by R., and the combat takes place, 266/32 ; — both knights are unhorsed, 267/4 ; — he

goes to assist his horse Brayford, 267/15, and is wounded by R., 267/25;—he deals R. a stroke that makes him reel, 263/13, but seeing his brethren come, he flies from R. and again swims over the Dordonne, 268/22;—he promises to wait for R., 269/9;—he is thanked by Alarde, 269/23, and bestows a parting threat on R., 269/32:—he comes before C., to whom he relates the adventure at Vaucoulores, 270/26;—he is fiercely assailed by Roland, who calls him 'cowarde kaytiff,' 272/4;—he tells Roland that he lies falsely, and recounts his noble kinsmen, 272/18;—he tells Roland to beware of setting hand on him, 273/5;—he tells C. that there is no one who can accuse him of treason, and explains how he had not joined in the attack on the Four Sons at Montbron, but that in the future he will help them, 273, 274;—he promises to go with Roland after R., and derisively offers to lend him a rope if he has need of it, 281/13;—he prays God to grant Roland's request that he might find R., so that R. may take the pride out of Roland, 284/3;—he blesses God, and chuckles in his sleeve that now Roland has found R., 292/26, and turns himself round with a mocking speech to Roland, 293/1;—he is very pleased when R. unhorses Roland, 304/22;—he again mocks Roland about the superiority of R., 308/10;—he is ordered by C. to take and hang Richard, but refuses, defying C., 324/32;—he tells Naymes that he makes too long a sermon, and bids him argue no more with C., 330/24;—he and the other barons quit C.'s pavilion, 330/31;—he threatens any one who should be so hardy as to lead Richard to hanging, 331/3;—he goes to the pavilion where Richard is, whom he is minded to release, 331/7, and then rails angrily at him, 331/31;—he reminds Roland of his promise, 332/9, and is delighted to know Mawgis had been there, 332/23;—he calls Rypus of Riplemonde a coward for avenging himself at this time, 333/12;—he thinks Rypus is returning from hanging Richard, and swoons for grief thereat, but recovering, goes after Richard, who is arrayed in Rypus's armour, 342;—he argues with him, and discovering his identity, inquires after Rypus, 343;—he bids good-bye to Richard, and returns to C., giving his reason for not striking off Rypus's head, 344/2;—he comes with the other barons to Mountalban, 376/3;—he relates C.'s message to R., 377/9;—he advises R. to come to C., 379/25;—he promises the Lady Clare that no harm shall happen to R., 380/16;—he begins to doubt the wisdom of having brought R., and counsels that they shall discover C.'s intentions, 380/24;—he chides C. for his evil reception, since they have accomplished their mission, and also brought R. with them, 382/9;—he threatens to forsake C. if any outrage or damage is done to them, 383/8;—he comes after Roland to prevent him harming R., 384/12;—he relates to C. how the barons had conveyed his message to R., and that R. had performed all that was required of him, and yet C. had caused R. to be taken, and advises him to send R. back to Mountalban, and there do his worst against him, 385, 386;—he congratulates R. on having taken such a prize as is Roland, 394/15;—he tells R. to take his way to Mountalban, and he will do all he can to prevent C. from following, 394/20;—he does so much by his fair language that he holds the king till he thinks R. and Roland are at Mountalban, 394/32;—he deems the capture of C. to be a miracle ordained by God to terminate the war, 404/27;—he begs R. to show him Richard of Normandy, 472/22;—hearing C.'s threat to hang R. and all those of his lineage, he asks Turpin what he thinks of 'our kyng that sayeth by his grete pryde that he shall hange us all,' 474/9;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymouet, 546/32.

Olyvere (of Vienne, ? Vienna), 185/12;—he reminds Roland how they had taken Lezoune and Sernoble, 192/6;—he goes hawking with Roland, and is beside himself when he knows what has happened during their absence, 200/15;—he deals roughly with the Prior of St. Lazare, 282/6;—he praises R. as knowing more of war than any other knight, and relates his good qualities, 294/28;—he counsels Roland to fight with R., because he (Oliver) will be enemy to R. 'onely for his worthynes,' 298/10;—he causes Roland to remount, 304/21;—he takes Melantes' bridle, and stops Roland from going to finish the duel with R., 305/14;—he withdraws Roland from fighting Ogier, 308/20;—he wounds and overthrows Mawgis, 356/13, whom he takes prisoner, 356/31, and brings back to C.'s tent, 357/8;—he promises C. to surrender Mawgis to him before evening, 360/8;—he extracts a promise from C. to resume his crown, 360/17, and delivers Mawgis unto him, 361/10;—he laughs at C.'s evident dread of Mawgis, 368/18;—he goes to Balencon to take R. and Alarde, 381/34;—he overtakes R., who is afoot, 383/16;—he advises Roland to let R. be at peace, and taken courteously before C., 384/25;—he tells Roland he will not stay with C., after his (Roland's) departure, 475/35;—he tells C. that R. would have no more scruple about hanging C. than he has of hanging Richard of Normandy, 483/22;—he becomes surety for Yonnet and Aymonet, 546/31.¹

Originers, at the siege of Mountaynford, 77/14.

Orleauce (Orleans), a city in France, 132/7;—169/12.

Orreide, a cousin of Barbas, slain by R., 515/28.

Palerne (Palermo), R. arrives at, 525/1;—the battle at, 527.

Pampelune, the battle at, referred to, 31/15.

PARIS, C. holds a great court at, 16/5;—the jousting at St. Vyctor, near, 32/16;—assembling of C.'s forces at, 39/26;—C.'s court at, 51/19;—another great court held at, on the Feast of Pentecost, 59/8;—C. returns to, after the fighting at Mountaynford, 104/16;—C. departs from, to go on a pilgrimage to Galicia, 156/13;—C. returns to, and holds a great council at, 161;—R. and Mawgis arrive at, preparatory to the horse-race, 173/2;—the horse-race at, in a meadow by the Seine, 175—177;—Mawgis departs from, 177/17;—the gathering of C.'s subjects at, 183/4, 186/18;—great dearth at, 187/27;—C.'s army sets out from, 188/11;—R.'s two sons arrive at C.'s palace at, 540/18;—R., his brethren and sons depart from, on their return home, 570/13.

Paris, the Archbishop of, *see* Turpyn.

Pepyn, the father of C., 327/1.

Peronne, Enguerran of, 42/31.

Perron, 268/6.

Pignabell, Lion of, one of the sureties for Constans and Rohars, 546/17.

Poeteuyns, at the court at Paris, 16/20;—40/2;—43/4.

Ponson, a knight, slain by Ogier, 42/15.

Ponthus of Almayne, joins C. at Paris, 187/6.

Poyce, Godfray, the lord of, 202/30.

Poytees (? Poitiers), the Earl of, 556/29.

Poyters (Poitiers), a province of France, 132/9, where the Four Sons first hear of King John of Gascony, 132/11.

¹ On p. 477, line 11, Caxton by a *lapsus calami* has transposed the names *Roland* and *Oliver*, as shown in the footnote on that page.

Puyll, Mylen of, slain by Mawgis, 356/7.

Pyerelee, Sir Walter, slain by Duke Benes, 44/14.

Pyerretrite, Magon, alias Sampson, the lord of, slain by Mawgis, 345/32.

Pygwade, the spy, who had 'fifteen fote of lengthe, and wente as faste as any horse cowde trotte,' 279/32;—he goes to Mountbendel, and tells Roland of the flight of King John, 280/18.

Pynabell, the spy, tells C. of the arrival of R. and Alarde at Balencon, 381/5.

Rimbault, the free knyght, 199/29.

Rames, the Earl Jaffas of, kills many of the Turks, 502;—he bars the ingress of the Turks into Jernsalem, 504/20;—he speaks to the two pilgrims, wishing to know who they are, 506/27, and offers to pay homage to R., 507/13;—he rejoices at the coming of R., and begs him to be 'our capytayne and our hede,' 508/3;—he lodges R. in his own pavilion, and fully equips him with horses, raiment and arms, 509, and wants to do the same with Mawgis, 510/3;—he commends the great prowess of Mawgis, 513/29;—he tells King Thomas that he must address his speech to R., 520/10, and to have no doubt of R., 520/22;—he takes King Thomas's message to R., 521/10.

REYNAWDE, THE ELDEST SON OF AYMON. 16/24;—his stature, 16/28;—is knighted by C., 31/24;—his wonderful horse Payard, 31/28;—he jousts before C., 32/19, by whom he is much commended, 32/22, and whom he promises to serve truly, 32/26;—he leaves the court of C., with his father and brethren, 36/9, but returns there again, 59/15;—his indignant speech to C. for the death of Duke Benes, 60/10, and C.'s insulting answer, 60/21;—he cannot eat because of the shameful insult, 61/7;—he plays at chess with Berthelot, 61/21, they quarrel, 61/24, and he slays Berthelot with the chess-board, 61/31;—he escapes from the palace, 62/15;—he makes sorrow for his brothers, 62/32;—he slays three of the pursuing knights, and gives their horses to his brethren, 63/10—26;—he reaches Dordon, 64/3, and tells his mother the reason why he has left the court, 64/7;—he departs from Dordon and enters the forest of Ardeyne, 65/5, where he builds the castle Mountaynford, 65/12;—he welcomes his brother Guycharde, 71/32, whom he highly commends, 72/14, and then, addressing his folk, tells them that the time is come that 'everiche of us must preve hymselfe a good man,' 72/17;—he orders the gate of the castle to be shut and to draw up the bridge, 72/31;—he receives C.'s envoys, 75/28, becomes angry when he hears their message, 76/6, and with a scornful answer defies the king, 76/8;—he well defends the castle, 77/10, gives his followers good counsel, 77/17, and they issue forth from the castle upon the host of C., 78/23;—his wonderful feats of arms, 78/31;—he perceives his father in the battle, 79/16, and turns to another side, 79/21;—he reasons with Aymon, 79/26, and threatens him with injury if he does not repent, 80/6;—he sees C. and others coming, 80/20, and causes his men to be brought together, 80/21;—he rebukes Aymon for slaying one of his men, 81/9;—none can compare with him for 'so grete merveyll of arms,' 82/4;—he causes the horse of King John of St. Omers to be captured, 82/19, and gives it to his brother Richard, 82/31;—he again rebukes his father, 83/7;—he kills C.'s esquire, 83/31, and three hundred knights, 84/18;—he blesses his brother Alarde for slaying the Earl of Estamps, 84/29;—he puts the folk of the Emperor to flight, 85/12, and causes his own folk to withdraw, 85/19, but again encounters his father,

whom he unhorses, 85/28, and eventually he puts Aymon's folk to flight, 86/14;—he encounters C., to whom he makes reverence, 86/26, forbids his followers to lay hands on him, 86/30, and they enter into the castle, 86/34, where he again thanks Alarde for slaying Estampes, 87/6;—though closely besieged, he is not debarred the pleasure of the chase, 87/17, and at divers times he speaks with the followers of C., offering to give up the castle if he may have his life and goods safe, 87/20;—he excuses his conduct to Foukes of Moryllon, 88/11, whom he rebukes for unseemly language, 88/33;—he welcomes the traitor Hernyer of Seveyne, 91/30, whom he treats as a friend, 92/13, and whose treachery is speedily discovered, 93/10;—he prepares to defend himself, 94/1, but the castle being fired, he and his folk issue out at the fausebray, 94/28;—they enter a pit for fear of the fire, and defend themselves strongly, 95/1, but hearing the cry of his men who are being slain, they come out of the pit and join in the battle, 95/17, and he gives marvellous strokes with his sword, 95/22;—he accuses himself of cowardness for hiding, 95/32, and seeing the fire a little quenched, he shuts the donjon-gate, and has up the drawbridge, 96/5;—he causes Hernyer to be drawn and quartered, his body burnt, and the ashes scattered to the winds, 96/22;—he finds out that their victuals had been consumed in the fire, 98/3, and prepares to depart from the castle, 98/16;—he beholds the burning castle, whereof he takes great pity, 98/34;—he and his followers fight their way in the night through the host of C., 100;—he sets his forces in array, 101/12, and would have slain C., but Damppe Hugh intervenes, and receives the death-stroke, 101/28;—he does so much harm to the followers of C., that the latter stops the chase, 102/10;—he passes over the river, 103/1, and finds the pursuit has stopped, 103/4;—he goes to the forest of Ardeyn, 103/20;—he receives Aymon's messengers, and pleads for a truce, 106/16;—he expostulates with his father, 106/29, and receiving hard words in reply, 107/1, prepares for the fray, 107/14;—he is beaten for lack of men, 107/34, and flees towards the mountains, 108/5;—he overthrows Aymon, 108/26;—he makes four jousts, having at the same time Alarde behind him on Bayard's back, and kills each time, 109/9;—he never wearies or becomes weaker for all his exertions, 109/18;—he slays Esmenfray, 110/7, and gives his horse to Alarde, 110/10;—he is saved by a little river, 110/33;—his grief for the loss of his folk, 111/16;—his sufferings in the forest of Ardeyn, 116, 117;—he asks counsel of his brothers, 117/28, consents to return to their mother, 118/29, and departs the same night, 119/5;—he raises a doubt as to the action of their father, 119/17;—they enter Ardeyn, and make their way to the palace, 120/14, and wait till the arrival of their mother, 120/29;—they are recognized by the Duchess, 122/10, to whom he relates his misfortunes, 123/5;—he and his brethren and knights dine with his mother, 123/30;—they are cursed by Aymon, 124/26, and R. blames his father for his cruel treatment, 124/29;—his conversation and reconciliation with Aymon, 125—128;—his delight at sight of his father's treasure, of which he takes at his will, 129/11;—he meets with Mawgis, 129/31, and they all depart from Ardeyn, 130/31;—he and his followers pass through France, wasting the country, 132/4, go to Bordeaux, 132/22, and arrive at King John's palace, 133/11;—he talks with the steward at the gate, 133/16, and salutes King John, 133/31, to whom he offers his service, 134/1, which is willingly accepted, 135/4;—he causes his men to prepare to meet Bourgons, 136/30, promising success to the king, 137/5, and go s

forth foremost against the Saracens, 137/13, slaying the 'paynymes' as beasts, 137/24;—he pursues after Bourgons, 139/5, whom he overtakes, 140/93, and they fight, 141/7;—he dismounts because Bourgons had been unhorsed, 141/21, and finally takes him prisoner, 142/20;—he presents Bourgons to King John, 142/32;—he shares his portion of the booty amongst his followers, 143/29;—he counsels the king to ransom Bourgons, 144/29;—he requests permission to build a castle on a high mountain, 146, and next morning takes the king to see the place, 147/7;—his request is granted, 148/6, for which he thanks the king, and defends himself against a suspicion of treachery, 148/10;—he causes the castle to be built, 149, which is named Mountalban, 150/2;—he is described as 'well a noble gentyman of all four sides,' 151/8;—he goes to see King John at Bordeaux, 151/20, who plays with him at chess, 151/29, and offers him his sister Clare to wife, 152/34, to which he readily consents, 153/17;—he is affianced¹ to the Lady Clare, 154/16, and the marriage is forthwith solemnized, after which great feasting and jousting take place, 154, 155;—he recounts to Ogier the evils wrought against him by C., 159/23, to whom he sends his defiance, 160/11;—he sets out with his brethren for Paris, 169/6;—he is enchanted by Mawgis, so that he appears as if he had become only twenty years of age, 169/29, and in this disguise he befools Duke Naymes and Foulques of Moryllon, 171, 172;—he enters Paris and is recognized by a 'rybawde,' 173/4, upon whom Bayard lifts his forefoot, so 'that he braste the herte in hys bely,' 173/12;—he alights at a shoemaker's house, 173/21, by whom he is recognized and threatened, 174/10;—he slays the shoemaker, 174/24, and, mounting Bayard, departs from his lodging, 174/34;—he follows after C. and the barons to the appointed race-course, 175/14;—he is scorned and mocked at by the assembled knights, 175/32, and though his heart swelled high, 176/9, yet he cared not much of what was said to him, 176/19;—he encourages Bayard, 176/28, who overruns all the other horses, 177/20, and he takes C.'s crown, but the silver and the cloth he leaves alone, 177/21;—he tells C., 'Now have I well beguiled you, and I hold you for a child,' 177/31, and, giving the spurs to Bayard, 178/6, he passes over the Seine, 178/20;—he tells C. that he will sell the crown, and pay his knights withal, 179/4, and, meeting with Mawg's and his brothers, 179/24, 180/4, they all return to Mountalban, where, being right gladly received by the Lady Clare and the folk of the castle, he relates his adventures, 180/22;—he is informed by the spy of C.'s projected attack on the castle, 184/32, which he retails to his brethren, 185/16;—his reply to C.'s messengers, 189/31;—a spy informs him how Oliver and Roland have gone sporting, 193/11, whereupon he arms his men, 193/31, who issue from the castle, 194/12, and they all come to Balencon, 194/20;—he perceives that they are discovered, 195/20, and, spurring into the opposing host, he slays Earl Emery, 195/33;—he makes great 'occysion' of knights, 196/4, and calls after Roland and Oliver, 196/7;—he fights with Bishop Turpin, 196/14, whom he jeers at, 'it were better for you to be in some church to synge some masse,' 196/24;—he unhorses Ogier, 197/17, but restores him his horse again, 197/25;—his party discomfit the enemy, 198/13, and he deals out the booty, 198/25;

¹ The ceremony of affiancing, or betrothal, was generally in olden times, and still is in some countries, held to be of equal importance with, if not greater than, the ceremony of marriage.

—he returns from hunting, 216/9, and makes 'feest and joye' for the coming of the traitor King John, 216/25, whom he offers to tend right well, 217/26;—he consents to go to C., for which he is upbraided by Alarde, 219/21;—he takes leave of King John, and goes to 'the fayr lady his wyff,' 220/11, telling her that John has made his peace with C., 220/21;—he is implored by his lady not to go, 221/10, but he will not listen to her, 222/11;—he and his brethren (in accordance with King John's treachery), clad in scarlet mantles, with roses in their hands, and without any armour, take their way on mules to the plain of Vaucoulores, singing as they go, 225;—he prays to God for protection, 226;—he discovers the treachery, 229, and is upbraided by his brethren, 230;—he demands of the escort that they help him, 231/21, and slays the Earl of Ansom, 231/32;—his mule falls under him, 232/4;—he rebukes Foulkes of Meryllon for the treachery, telling him 'to doo as a gentylman oughte to doo,' 234/10;—he proposes certain terms of peace, 234/12, which Foulkes scornfully rejects, 235/1;—he and his brethren prepare to fight, 235/14, and they go amonst their foes, 235/30;—he is overthrown by Foulkes, 236/6, but quickly rising, he clove Foulkes 'into the harde teeth, and felde hym deed to the erthe,' 236/30;—he kills many dukes, earls, and knights, 237/21;—he is mad with anger when he sees that Guycharde has been taken prisoner, 239/4, and sets out to rescue him, making a 'grete noyse wyth his swerde amonge his ennyes,' 239/25;—he finds his brother Richard, 243/30, whom he causes to be taken up the rock by Alarde, whilst he and Guycharde 'rowme the waye,' 245/5;—his great feats of arms, 245/18;—he jeopardises himself as a man desperate, 245/23;—he tells Guyward and Ogier that he will never yield, 247/27;—he tells his brethren he will never yield, nor will he forsake them, 249/7;—he casts great stones on his enemies, 249/28;—he threatens to slay Ogier, 251/12;—he binds up the wounds of his brethren, 251/27, and gathers a heap of stones, 251/35;—he bewails the absence of Mawgis and Bayard, 253/5, and weeps for his brethren, 253/15;—he rests himself, 253/21, and sees Mawgis, mounted on Bayard, coming with his folk, 258/28, of which he informs his brethren, 259/5;—he takes Richard in his arms, and shows him Mawgis, 259/26;—he and his two brethren descend the rock, 260/12, and he counsels Ogier to flee, 260/32;—Bayard smells his lord, and ran mightily and kneeled before him, 262/9;—he arms himself, and leaps upon Bayard, 262/22, and runs upon Ogier, striking him to the ground, 262/32;—he causes Ogier to remount, 263/4, and bids him keep away, 263/8;—his sarcastic address to Ogier, after the latter had crossed the river in the general retreat, 264/12;—Ogier recrosses the river, and the fight is renewed, 266/33, and R. wounds Ogier, 267/25;—he again taunts Ogier (who had once more crossed the river), 268/29, and wishes himself to cross the river to again renew the fight, 269/12;—he returns to the rock Mountbron, 276/1, and falls into a swoon when he sees the sad state of Richard, 276/7;—he consents to do the bidding of Mawgis, 277/4;—he spurns his children, and upbraids his wife, for the treachery of her brother, 285/17, but, on the entreaty of his brethren, he makes peace with her, 287/11;—the message of King John is delivered to him, 287/18;—he recounts the story of his life, 288—290, and resolves to rescue King John, 290/17, for which he is thanked by the Gascons, 290/30, and for which purpose he makes preparations, 291/8, and arrives at the camp of Roland, 292/12;—he orders the plan of battle, 293/17, and prays 'everi

man doo his parte wyth all his power,¹ 293/30;—his brethren try to persuade him not to fight with Roland, 294/3, but he will not listen to them, 294/7, and goes before his host fully armed, 294/22;—he hastily approaches Roland, 295/28, alights on foot, 296/1, appealing for mercy, and offering terms of peace, 296/6;—he remounts Bayard, 296/30, and offers to engage in single combat with Roland, 297/17;—he puts himself ‘amonge the thickest of the frenshemen,’ 298/35, and crying ‘Mountalban!’ makes great slaughter of them, 299/9;—he fights with Roland, 300/22—304/16;—he receives the traitor King John, 305/19, whom he unbinds and reproaches for his treachery, 306/10;—he learns that Richard has been taken prisoner, 310/8, his grief thereat, 310/17, and he sets out to rescue him, but is restrained by his brothers, 310/27, and they return to Mountalban, 312/25;—he swears when Mawgis returns without Richard, 321/14, but is comforted by Mawgis, 322/14;—he sets out with Mawgis and his brethren for Mountfawcon, 322/24, they put themselves in ambush, 323/6, and, being very weary, fall asleep, 323/20, from which they are awakened by Bayard, 327/29;—he leaps to his feet, and sees Richard on the ladder, and quickly lighting on Bayard, he rushes to rescue him, 338/3;—he slays Ripus, and releases Richard, 339/26;—he encases Richard in the armour of Ripus, 340/8, and hangs the corse of the latter on the gallows, 340/13;—he tells Mawgis who it was that waked him, 340/22; he comes to the succour of Richard, 345/27;—he fights with C. (though unknowingly), 346/24, and, when he understands who it is, he withdraws, 346/33, blaming himself, 346/35, asking pardon of the Emperor, 347/10, begging for peace, 348/1, offering Mountalban and Bayard therefor, 348/3, and also he and Mawgis will go and fight against the Turks, 348/13;—he argues with C., 348, 349, but the latter will not listen, and renews the attack, 349/28;—he catches the king in his arms (because he would not smite him), and lays him on the neck of Bayard, 350/5;—he is attacked by Roland, 351/7, and lets C. fall down, 351/22;—he orders the greater part of his folk to return to Mountalban, 353/25, and himself going straight to C.’s pavilion, he cuts the cords thereof, making it fall down, 354/27, and, with the help of Mawgis, possesses himself of the golden eagle, 355/3;—he withdraws his folk from the battle, 357/29, and returns to Mountalban, 362/13, and inquires after Mawgis, 362/22;—he and his brethren grieve for Mawgis, 363/2, of whom he goes in search, 363/33, and learns that Mawgis is a prisoner in C.’s hands, 364/16;—he meets with Mawgis, 372/32;—he causes C.’s golden eagle to be set on the high tower of Mountalban, 375/1;—he honourably receives the envoys of the king, 377/1, and consents to his conditions of peace, 379/1;—he restores the peers’ swords, the crown and the golden eagle to Ogier, 379/6;—he consents to go to C., 380/1;—he abides with Bishop Turpin while Ogier goes to find out C.’s intentions, 381/3;—he fears that he is betrayed, 383/20, and accuses the Bishop of treachery, 383/23;—he requests Oliver to render him the courtesy he owes him, 383/32;—he is led to C., 385/5, and after some hot words from C., 386/17, a duel is arranged, 387/16, and he returns to Mountalban, 387/28, where he recounts the news, 387/32;—he makes a feast that evening, 388/5, hears mass in the morning, and takes leave of his wife and friends, 388/11;—he leaves Mawgis in charge of the castle,

¹ An early synonym of the saying, ‘England expects this day each man to do his duty.’

388/33, and departs for the place 'there, as the bataylle shold be don,' 389/6;—he meets with Roland, and they exchange mutual courteous speeches, 390/20;—the fight commences, 391/1, and is continued with varying fortune till Roland yields himself, 391—393;—he and Roland ride fast to Mountalban, 394/28;—he finds out the castle is besieged, 396/16, and adopts Roland's advice, 397/1;—he marvels at C.'s hard-heartedness, 398/11;—he shows C. (who had been brought thither by the magic of Mawgis) to his brethren, 402/10, and counsels that no harm shall be done him, 403/4;—he goes to Roland's chamber, and thither summons the other Frenchmen, 403/22, and explains to them the capture of the Emperor, 404/1;—he takes them to the place where C. lies fast asleep ('for Mawgys had cherned him soo harde'), 405/4;—he tells Roland that he will not say a foul word to his lord, 405/19, and goes in search of Mawgis, 405/24, for whom he weeps when he knows the cause of his departure, 406/12;—he pleads for peace with the Emperor, 409/6, and beseeches the peers of France to support his appeal, 410/17;—he tells Roland that since C. will not grant peace, he will seek his own right, 411/18, and tells the king that he may go hence, 411/25;—he is displeased with his brother Richard, 412/22;—he orders Bayard to be brought for C., 412/29, whom he conveys to the gate of Mountalban, 413/16;—when he sees that Bayard has been returned, 414/4, he gives the barons of France leave to go, 414/11, who courteously take leave of the Lady Clare, 415/4;—he accompanies them to the gate, 415/21, and commending them to God, 415/23, they take leave of him, 415/28;—he perceives the beginning of the second assault on the castle, 420/6, and performs great feats of arms, 420/24;—his prayer to God when he discovers C.'s intention of starving him out, 421/19;—his grief when he sees the piteous condition to which his folk are reduced, 426/3;—he orders a horse to be slain for food, 426/35;—after all the horses had been eaten, except those belonging to the four brethren, he advises them to let one of theirs be slain, 427/13;—he bewails his evil state, 428/22;—when it is suggested that Bayard should be eaten, 429/20, he prays that 'a fore ye slee hym, that ye slee me; For I may not see hym dey,' 429/30, but his heart becomes tender and he consents, 430/22, though when the crisis comes, he again says he would rather slay himself before Bayard is slain, 430/28;—he promises to get food for them, 431/5, proposes going to see his father, 431/12, and comes to his father's tent, 431/22;—he speaks to Aymon, 431/28, and tells him that they all die for hunger, 431/35;—he has permission from Aymon to take what he can find, 432/35, and, lading Bayard with bread and flesh, 433/7, returns to Mountalban, 433/11, where they all made great joy and eat their fill, 433/23;—he finds the victuals that his father had caused to be cast into the castle, 434/25, which begin 'sore to mynysshe,' 436/24, and he goes to Bayard to slay him, 437/5, but he has not the heart to do him harm, 437/9, on which his younger son rebukes him for delaying, 437/11, and after long thought, he 'made baiarde be leten blode moche,' 437/25;—he and his company are brought very low, 438/7, when an old man comes to him, and offers to show him a way out of Mountalban, 438/10, whereat he was so glad that he forgot his hunger, 438/24, and causing the entrance to be dug out, he and all his folk quit the castle, 439/1;—he returns and brings out the traitor King John, who had been left in the prison, 439/21;—they find themselves at the Wood of the Serpent, 440/8;—he advises his men not to separate, 441/3, and coming to the monastery, where he finds Bernard,

he begs food of him, 441/15 ;—he bids farewell to Bernard, 442/19, and, with his followers, comes to the city of Ardeyne, 442/25, and is well received by the citizens, 442/28 ;—when he perceives that C. would again besiege him, he swears he will not be besieged, but would rather fight with C., 447/23, for which saying his brother Richard praises him, 447/31 ;—he calls his folk together and they issue out of the city, 448/12, and he ordains his battles as a ‘wyse fyghter,’ 448/17 ;—he exhorts his brethren to show themselves good knights, 448/19 ;—he chooses a hundred knights to be with him in the first battle, 448/30 ;—mounted on Bayard, he goes upon the folk of C., 449/9, whom he approaches, and pleads for peace, 450/31, which not being granted, he says, ‘Syr Kynge of Fraunce, I defye you!’ 451/10, and after smiting a knight, he returns to his own folk, 451/13 ;—he slays many of the enemy and rejoices his folk, 452/16 ;—his folk give way before the Frenchmen, 453/32, and he orders the retreat into Ardeyne, 454/16, himself bringing up the rear, 454/22, slaying more than a hundred of the pursuers, 454/34, and when all were within Ardeyne, he made the gates be shut, 455, 10 ;—he causes the prisoner, Richard of Normandy, to be brought before him, 457/3, threatens him with death, unless peace is made, 457/9, and has him put in irons, but otherwise behaves courteously, 457/21 ;—he and his brethren often issue out of the city, 457/34, and take many prisoners, 458/2 ;—he begins to suspect that the ‘goode man’ before him is Mawgis, 463/22, of which when he is assured, ‘he had not be soo glad yf men had gyven hym the halve of all the worlde,’ 464/12 ;—he asks Mawgis to relate his story, 465/6 ;—he shows Mawgis to his brethren, whose ‘hertes rose in their belies for joye,’ 465/21 ;—he orders a fresh outfit for Mawgis, 466/1, and conveys him to the city gate, 467/14 ;—he sees come the messengers from C., 471/1 ;—his angry reply to them, 471/23, bidding them tell their king that he will hang Richard of Normandy on the morrow, 472/11 ;—he refuses to let Ogier see the Duke, 472/25 ;—he tells his brethren that he intends to hang Richard of Normandy, 476/11, and causes the gibbet to be dressed in the sight of C. and his host, 476/28 ;—he sends ten of his men to fetch the Duke, 477/21, of whom the Duke slays three, and the rest take to flight, 478/10 ;—he and his brethren go towards the tower where Richard was, 479/25 ;—his colloquy with Richard, 479, 480 ;—he has him brought to the gallows, 481/1, and tells him that he must either cause peace to be made, or be hanged, 481/3 ;—he bids one of his folk go to the Duke, and do what he is told, 481/21 ;—the messenger relates to him how C. will have no peace, 486/16 ;—he tells Richard how the peers have deserted C., 486/21, and craves his pardon for the shame done to him, 487/1, releasing him from the gallows, 487/7, and tells him to lean on this wall and see what C. will do, 487/11 ;—he perceives the messenger sent after the peers, 487/31, and their return to C., 488/24 ;—he goes to meet the messenger of peace, 489/19, and offers to do all—and more if necessary—that C. requires of him, 490/2 ;—he gives Bayard in charge to Duke Naymes, 490/12, and hangs his banner on the tower in token that he accepts the conditions of the peace, 490/14 ;—he arrays himself as a pilgrim, 491/5, and commends his wife and children to Duke Richard, 491/10 ;—he tries to soothe his lady, who had swooned, 491/20, ‘and theme he toke on his waye,’ 491/27, and takes leave of his brethren and Duke Richard, 492/14 ;—he departs for the Holy Land, and arrives at Constantinople, 498/9, where he meets with his cousin Mawgis, 498/25, to whom he rehearses the treaty of peace, 499/4 ;—he and Mawgis come

‘but a lityll myle fro’ Jerusalem, 500/2, and they see a great host about the city, 500/11;—he inquires who they are before the city, 500/25, and learns how it had been betrayed, 501;—he sees the cruel battle between the Christians and Saracens, and wishes that he had his harness, 503/18, and laments that he has not Bayard and Flamberde, 504/5;—he is angry when the Turks trample down his lodging, 504/32, and taking a fork ‘with bothe his handes,’ he smote them down two & two at ones, as swynes,’ 505/1; he is interviewed by the Earl Rames, to whom he relates his story, 506, 507;—he accepts the leadership of the barons of Syria, and accepts their homage, 508/23;—he is honourably entertained by the Earl Rames, and lodged in his pavilion, 509/1;—he is offered many valuable things, 509/16, but accepts only ‘a complete harneys for his body, a swerde, and an horse,’ 509/22, dealing the remainder to the poor knights, 509/24;—he advises the barons of Syria to assault the city, 512/6, but while thus devising, the Persians issue out, 512/12;—he instantly arms himself, 512/14, and they ordain their battles as well as they could, 512/28;—he slays King Margary, 513/10, and seeing the ‘mervaylles of armes’ performed by Mawgis, he asks Earl Rames if he ‘sawe ever so good an hermyte,’ 513/27;—he puts himself in the battle ‘as a wolfe amonge a flocke of shepe,’ 515/25;—he slays many of the Turks or Persians, 515, 516;—he picks up a great balk of timber, 517/17, which he puts under the porteullis of the gate of the city, so that it could not be shut, 518/7, and he enters Jerusalem, followed by the barons and Mawgis, 518/19;—he keeps the gate till a great part of the Christians are within the city, 518/32, and calls Mawgis to take care of this gate, while he goes to open another, 519/1;—he commands the tower where King Thomas is kept prisoner to be assaulted, 521/21, and is the first to climb up the ladders, 521/24;—seeing the perilous condition of King Thomas, he offers peace to Barbas, 522/28;—his meeting with King Thomas, 523/12, who entertains him honourably, 524/15;—he takes leave of King Thomas, and entering a ship, arrives at Palermo, 524/27, where he is welcomed by King Simon, 525/17;—he again makes great slaughter of the Persians, 527/12;—he is sorry when he finds that Barbas is safe aboard, 529/10, and he causes his ship to be burnt with ‘boltes of wyldre fyre,’ 529/4;—he is thanked by King Simon for his prowess, 529/20, and honourably entertained, and taking leave of Simon, he comes to Rome, confesses to the Pope, and finally reaches Ardeyne, 530;—his brethren swoon for joy when they see him, 531/3, and he relates his adventures, 531/15;—he is reconforted when he hears that his wife and children are well, 531/32, but observing the deception played on him by his brethren, he tells them he awaits to hear some heavy tidings, 532/3, and swoons for sorrow when the manner of the Lady Clare’s death has been rehearsed to him, 532/20;—when he sees her tomb, he swoons thrice, 533/3;—when he sees his children, he tells them to be good, ‘for fere ye shall mysse me so no,’ 533/19;—he takes his way to Mountalban, 533/25, where he is received with great joy, 534/2;—he vows never to marry again, 534/24;—he parts his inheritance amongst his brethren, 535/31, and married them all nobly and richly, 536/2;—he dwells at Mountalban with his children, endoctrining them in good and virtuous manners, and in the use of arms, 536/7, tells them it is time they were made knights, 536/20, and promises to send them to Paris come seven nights, 536/34;—he causes proper outfits to be prepared for his sons, 537, appoints five hundred knights to bear them company, 538/1, and giving them good counsel and his blessing, he

weepingly bids them farewell, 538, 539 ;—he is sent for by C. to come to Paris, 547'27, and calling his brethren to him, 548/5, they all arrive at Paris, 548/31, where they are joyfully received, 549/3 ;—he extols his sons, 549/5, and has an interview with C., 549/16 ;—his sons relate to him their adventures, 549/25 ;—he thanks C. for the worship done to his children, 550/6 ;—he and his brethren cast themselves at the king's feet, thanking him for the amity and concord that has been established between them, 550/16 ;—he instructs his sons how to conduct themselves in tomorrow's battle, 552/1 ;—he gives his good sword Flamberd to Aymonet, 554/4, and after blessing his sons, he brings them to the Isle of our Lady, 554/12 ;—he is made acquainted with the treachery of Gryffen of Haute-branche, 554/18, and orders his brother Richard to take measures to guard against its accomplishment, 554/27 ;—he returns to the palace of the king, 555/12, and tells him not to be suspicious of Richard, 555/20, and they and others go up the Tower of Seine, 555/23 ;—he acquaints the king with the reason why Richard has gone on with so great fellowship, 556/9, and this he repeats to Roland, 558/10 ;—he thanks God much when he perceives that his sons have vanquished the children of Foulkes, 569/19, abides in Paris till they are made whole of their wounds, 570/3, and taking leave of C., 570/8, they all depart for Mountalban, 570/13 ;—he rests at Bordeaux, and there calling his sons, gives Arden to Jonnet, and Mountalban to Aymonet, 570/17 ;—his brethren, foreseeing that he means to dedicate himself to the service of God, make great sorrow, 570/26, for which he rebukes them, 570/29 ;—he arrives at Mountalban, where he tells his subjects that they must pay their homage to Aymonet, 571/13 ;—then, laying aside his clothing, he dons the garb of a hermit, 571/18, and leaving the palace, comes to the town gate, 571/24, and bids the porter to tell his brethren on the morrow that he has gone to do penance to save his soul, 572/1 ;—he gives the porter a ring, and goes on his way, 572/12 ;—he wanders through the woods a long while, and finally reaches Cologne, where the church of St. Peter is being built, 576/18, and he obtains employment in carrying stones and mortar, 577, 578, and will only accept a penny a day to buy bread with, 579/20 ;—the other labourers become envious of him, 580/18, and they agree to slay him, 580/30 ;—he is slain next day as he slept with the stroke of a hammer, and feeling the stroke, his last prayer ere his soul departed from his body was that Jesus would pardon those who had brought him to his death, 581/21 ;—his body is put into a sack, and cast into the Rhine, 581/34, but did not go to the bottom of the water, 582/28 ;—all the fish of the river gather about the corpse, and keep it upon the water, 582/31, and torches appeared round it, so that the folk weened that the river was on fire, 583/4 ;—it is discovered to be the corpse of R., 583/29 ;—it is brought to land, and mass said over it in the church, 584/12 ;—the corpse rises up, and was borne out of the church to the cart in which it had been brought there, 584/28 ;—the cart containing the corpse proceeds in a miraculous manner followed by all the people of Cologne, till it comes to the little town of Croyne, where it stops, 585/15, and here our Lord worked many miracles for love of the holy body, 585/18 ;—the visage of the corpse is uncovered so that it may be recognized, 586/4 ;—his brethren hear from a pilgrim of the remarkable events, 586/24, and they weep for pity of R., 589/1 ;—they arrive at Croyne, and recognize their brother, over whom they sore lament, 589/13 ;—the corpse is entombed, he is called *St. Reynawde the flatur*, and the memory of him is put in writing, 590—592.

Renyer, one of C.'s peers, 69/22 ;—he is placed in front of the 'masters gate' at Mountaynford, 76/31.

Reyner, cousin of Duke Benes, slain by the Earl Guenes, 53/29.

Riplemonde, Rypus of, nephew of Foulkes of Morillon, commanded by C. to hang Richard, 333/5 ;—he willingly consents because Richard slew his mele at Balencon, 333/9 ;—he takes the oaths of the Twelve Peers that they will do him no hurt when he returns, 333/20 ;—he leads Richard forth to the gallows, 334/7 ;—arrived at Mountfaweon, he shows Richard the gallows, and tells him he will hang him with his own hand, 334/20 ;—he grants permission to Richard to repeat his orison (' wherof he dyd like a fole'), 336/5 ;—he is abashed when he sees R., tells Richard he is delivered, begs his mercy, and tells him to go down from the ladder, 338 ;—he is reprov'd by R. and Mawgis, 339/19, and slain by R. with his sword Flamberd, 339/26 ;—his body is stripped of his armour, and trussed up on the gallows with the halter round his neck, 340.

Rohars (Rohart), a son of Foulkes of Morillon, possesses a false heart, 541/1 ;—he conspires with his brother to harm the sons of R., 543/12 ;—being angry for C.'s reproach to his brother, he throws down his gage and offers to fight Aymonet, 545/33 ;—C. tells him he takes a wrong way, and it will be overlate when he shall repent it, 546/1 ;—he is severely wounded and unhorsed by Yonnet, 563/6 ;—he is overthrown by Aymonet, 565/17 ;—Yonnet cuts off one of his arms, and smites him on the bare head, 567/29 ;—he cries for mercy, which he does not obtain, 568/8, but loses a leg, and finally his head, 568/14 ;—his body is drawn at horses' tails and hanged with that of Constans, 569/3.

Rouncevals, the treason at the battle of, hinted at, 569/18.

Ronsellon, Ronsillon, Roussyllon, Duke Rycharde (also called Gerarde) of, had not done the bidding of C., 17/8 ;—comes to help Duke Benes, 39/13 ;—he is informed of the approach of C., against whose host he proceeds, 41/23 ;—he slays an Almayn, and raises his war-cry, 42/7 ;—he slays one of Ogier's men, 42/18 ;—he counsels Nantuell that they should turn back, 43/20, and sends to Duke Benes for aid, 43/28 ;—his nephew is killed by Walleron of Bollon, 43/24 ;—he is overthrown by C., 45/19 ;—he counsels that the fight be renewed on the morrow, 46/15 ;—he adopts Nantuell's advice, and sends messengers to C., lamenting the death of Lohier, and offering their allegiance, 47/1 ;—he recommends that they all take off their ' good gownes,' and go naked before C., crying him mercy, 49/24.

ROWLANDE OF BREPAYN (nephew of C.), first meets with C., 162/22 ;—he is made a knight, 163/6 ;—he offers to go and raise the siege of Cologne, 163/21 ;—he goes to Cologne, puts the Saracens to rout, and, taking prisoner Escorfawde, brings him back with himself to Paris, 164—166 ; he intercedes for Escorfawde, 166/28 ;—he advises C. to exile R., 182/3 ;—he is put in command of C.'s host, 188/6 ;—he jitches his tent at Balencon, 191/20 ;—he marvels at the strength of Mountalban, 192/1, and says that they will never be able to take it, 192/5 ;—he extols R.'s character, 192/16 ;—he goes hawking, 192/28 ;—he gets a hint of what has been done at Balencon during his absence, 199/29, whereat he is astounded, 200/12, and calls upon his barons for counsel, and, fearing the wrath of C., offers to go to the Holy Land, but is recomforted by Bishop Turpin, 200/34 ;—he returns to C.'s camp (with a hundred followers all afoot because they had lost their horses), and is so ashamed

that he remains hid in Duke Naymes's tent, for he dare look no man in the face, 201/4;—he sharply reproves Ogier, whom he calls a coward, 272/4;—he is 'wonderful wrothe' when he hears Ogier's rebuke, and advances against him to smite him, 273/1;—he is rebuked by Duke Naymes, and advised by C. to keep quiet, 273/12;—he tells Ogier that he shall be glad to meet R. mounted on Bayard, 274/30;—he is informed by Pygwade of the flight of King John, 280/18, and also of the whereabouts of the Four Sons and Mawgis, 280/30;—he thanks Pygwade, and tells him he deserves a great reward, 281/1;—he calls his knights to follow him and tells Ogier to go also, so that he may see the great prowess of R., 281/4;—he comes to St. Lazare, 'seeking,' he tells the Abbot, 'the falseste traytour of the worlde,' 281/24;—he deals roughly with the Abbot when the latter refuses to yield King John, 282/4;—he enters the cloister, finding King John on his knees before an image of the Virgin, 282/17;—he derides King John for the failure of his treachery, and blindfolding him, places him on a horse with his face to the tail, 282/23, and returns with him and his company to Mountfawcon, 283/33;—he espies the coming of R.'s forces, 292/15, and swears to Ogier that before evening it shall be seen who shall be master, 293/8;—he sets his battle in order, 293/15;—he asks his friends what they think of R.'s battle array, 294/26;—stung to the quick, because of the praise bestowed on R., he rushes against him, 295/19;—he tells R. he cannot accept the proposed terms of peace unless Mawgis is delivered to him, 296/24;—he comes to an agreement with R. for a single combat, and departs to take leave of his fellows, 297/24;—he tells Oliver and the others that R. has required to fight with him 'body to body,' 298/5, but his barons dissuade him from the single combat, 298/14, to which he agrees, 298/22, and shouting Mountjoy St. Denis! he commences the battle at Mountfawcon, 298/28;—he calls on R. to come to single combat, 300/13, the duel forthwith commences, 300/22;—he is unhorsed, 302/13;—in his wrath he would cut off Melantes' head, 302/24, and seeing how Bayard is dealing with Melantes, he turns to smite Bayard, 303/4;—he is mocked by R., 303/12, 29;—he cleaves R.'s shield, 304/4, and gibes back at R., 304/8;—he calls scornfully after R., 304/32;—he is withheld from going to the Wood of the Serpent with R. to finish the combat, 305/14;—his folk are discomfited, and all ashamed, 308/4;—he is mocked by Ogier, and runs upon him with his sword, but is stayed by Oliver, 308/10;—he fights with Richard, 308/30, and calls on him to surrender, 309/25;—he brings Richard to C. as a prisoner, 319/12;—he is prayed by C. to go and see Richard hanged, and offered therefor the city of Cologne, 326/8;—he refuses to do the bidding of C., prays the Twelve Peers not to take the charge on them, and threatens to forsake C. and serve under R., 326/14;—he vows to keep his promise to Richard, 332/13;—he attacks R. so fiercely that the latter has to let go of C., 351/5, but being himself attacked by R.'s brothers, he puts himself to flight, 351/24;—he reproaches C., 352/19;—he restrains C. from striking Mawgis, 370/6;—he and the other Peers are awakened by C., 371/19;—he comes to Balencon to take R., 384/10;

¹ With his usual bias, the chronicler has made R. put his sword Flamberd in the sheath, awaiting with his spear only the onslaught of Roland. The kinsmen of R., apparently deeming the contest to be unequal (with the exception of Ogier, who tells them that R. is no child to be made afraid so lightly as they trow), induce Oliver to remonstrate with Roland, who then, 'like as a curteys man,' did as he was told, and 'toke a spere' (pp. 300—302).

—he brings R. into C.'s pavilion, 385/7;—he offers to fight for C. against R., 387/19;—he prepares for the combat, and receives C.'s blessing, 390/2;—he arrives at the 'pintre' of Mountfaweon [here fortuitously printed Mountalban], and meets with R., and after the usual amenities have passed, the fight begins, 390/20, but eventually Roland surrenders to R., because he knows well that R. is in the right, and that he is in the wrong, 393/22;—he is entertained by R. at Mountalban in a princely manner, 394/27;—he is told by R. of C.'s designs against the castle, 396/18, and R. is counselled by him to send to C. stating how honourably he is treated, and that R. is willing to surrender the castle, 396/22;—he is awakened by R., who tells him to assemble the other barons of C., and when they are all come, R. tells them that C. is his prisoner, 403/23 whereat he is amazed, 404/21;—he views C., who had been 'chermed soo harde,' that he cannot be awakened, 405/4;—he marvels at the mansuetude of R., 412/1;—he is released by R., 414/6, and takes his leave of the Lady Clare, 415/5;—he comes before C., 416/5;—he tells C. that Mawgis has gone from Mountalban, 417/14;—he enters the secret way by which R. had gone from Mountalban, and reports the result to C., 445/26;—he counsels C. to make peace, 455/26;—he tells C. that he will not see Richard of Normandy until he makes peace with R., 468/22;—he tells C. that if Duke Richard is hanged, it will be all through his (C.'s) pride, 473/17;—he threatens C. that if the Duke Richard is hanged, he will quit C.'s service, 475/28;—he first espies the preparations for the hanging of Duke Richard, 476/30, and acquaints C. thereof, 476/32;—he supplements Duke Richard of Normandy's appeal to C. to make peace with R., 482/24;—he becomes surety for Yomet and Aymonet, 546/31;—he is not content when he sees Richard and his folk in arms, 557/4;—he cries out at the traitor Gryffon of Hautebranche, 557/17;—he tells C. that none can beware of traitors, 558/1;—he praises R. and Richard for acting as good knights should do, 558/20.

RYCHARDE, THE YOUNGEST SON OF AYMON, at the court at Paris, 16/24;—is knighted by C., 31/21;—he comes to C.'s court at Paris, 59/17;—he perceives the host of C. coming to Mountaynford, and tells his brother Gnycharde, 70/13;—he slays king Yon of St. Omars, 82/25, and captures his horse, 82/26;—he encourages R., 138/1;—he fears that R. is being chased, 179/30;—he is overthrown by Ogier, but quickly rises up again, 197/4;—his heart shakes for fear of betrayal, 228/25, and he rebukes R. for not taking the good advice offered him, 229/4;—he is the first to repent of having doubted R., 230/25;—he flees to the rock Mountbron, 238/22;—he slays many earls and knights, 240/31;—he is wounded by Gerarde of Valcome, whom he forthwith slays outright, 241;—he laments the absence of his brethren, and prays God to succour them, 242;—he is discovered by R., 243/25;—he recovers from his swoon, and counsels R. that they should go to the top of the rock, 244/24;—he asks R. to bind up his belly, so that he may help in the fight, 250/1; he is lifted up by R. to see the coming of Mawgis, 259/26;—he abides at the top of the hill because he could not move, 260/9;—his brothers and Mawgis lament over his evil condition, 276;—he is made whole of his wounds by Mawgis, 277/15, and inquires after Ogier and his folk, 277/32;—he is mounted on a horse, and they all return to Mountalban, 278/14;—he counsels his brothers to beg R. to pardon the Lady Clare, 286/18;—he tells his brethren that they shall do the will of R., 290/23; he fights as valiantly as R., and calls on the latter to give some of his

great strokes upon the Frenchmen, 299/16;¹—he fights with Roland, and is unhorsed, 308/30;—he is attacked by forty Frenchmen all at once, and his horse is killed under him, 309/12;—he is smitten by Humall the Breton, 309/19, and overthrown by the Earl Guydellon from behind, 309/22;—he yields himself to Roland, 309/27, and is set upon ‘a mewle,’ 310/1;—his servant acquaints R. with the case, 310/8;—he is brought before C. as a prisoner, 318/12;—he is derided by C., whom he sharply answers, 319/18;—he wrestles with C., and they both fall, 320/1;—whilst engaged in mutual reerimination with C., he turns and sees Mawgis, whereon he becomes sure of his life, 320;—he hears C. call separately on each of his peers to hang him, and also their refusal, 324—328;—he thanks the barons for travailing themselves for him, but advises them not to lose the grace of C., 331/18;—he is reproached by Ogier, 331/31;—he pardons Roland, 332/4;—he tells Ogier that he had seen Mawgis ‘ryghtnow,’ 332/16;—he is delivered to Rypus of Riplemonde, and led forth to execution, 334/4;—he begs Rypus to have pity upon him, 334/32;—he asks for a priest to shrive him, 335/9, and when the priest (‘som sayen that he was a bysshop’) came, he relates ‘many moo synnes than ever he dyd,’ and this was ‘for to lengthe the tyme,’ 335/12;—he receives absolution, 335/20, and asks Rypus for time to say an orison that he ‘dyde lerne in his youthe,’ 335/30;—he offers up his prayers, and then resigns himself to Rypus, 336;—he is perceived by his brethren, 338/3, and told by Rypus of his release, 338/18;—he is brought down the ladder by R., 339/31;—he puts on the armour of Rypus, 340/7;—he relates the goodness of the barons of France, and begs permission to show himself to Ogier before returning to Mountalban, 341/9;—he goes to the host of C., bearing the banner of Rypus, 342/5, which deceives C. and the barons, 342/14;—he makes himself known to Ogier, and tells him the fate of Rypus, 343/23;—he tells C. who he is, recounting the fate of Rypus, and defying him, 344/16, and they fight each other, 344/30;—he is unhorsed, but quickly aims such a stroke at C. that he kills his horse, 345/3;—he sounds his horn, and his brothers come to his succour, 345/20;—he cuts the cords of C.’s pavilion, making it to fall down, 354/27;—he is angry with R. for returning C.’s golden eagle, 379/13;—he counsels R. to hang C. forthwith, and offers to do the job himself at once, 402/16, but afterwards counsels that R. should do his own will in the matter, 403/15;—bemoaning the departure of Mawgis, he would have slain C., but is restrained therefrom by R., 406/20;—he admonishes C. to be more circumspect in his language, 408/15;—he considers R. to be mad and working great folly in releasing C., 412/5;—he retorts upon R. that he should have made peace with C., when the latter was their prisoner, 421/24;—he points out to R. how much better they had fared if his counsel had been followed, and grieves over their present distress, 422/20;—he tells R. that he will not have his horse slain for food, because it is R.’s great pride that has brought them to their present plight, 427/15;—but being rebuked by Aymonet, he consents, and his horse is slain and ‘ful savourly’ eaten, 428, and he is willing to yield up his own flesh if it would comfort R., 429;—he tells R. that now he speaks like a knight, and that he will slay more than a hundred of C.’s men, because C. ‘is

¹ Reynawde had apparently been dealing small strokes like those of the ‘lityll Rycharde,’ because he did not wish to be thought more of might than Richard, that is, in the choice, sly humour of the text, ‘Reynawde faughte not for to loke the better upon hym’ (*i. e.* Richard).

- not mannered like a gentyllman,' 417/32;—he makes a prisoner of Richard Duke of Normandy, 455/3;—he counsels R. to proceed to Paris, the better to know C.'s intention, and whether any wrong has been done to R.'s sons, 548/14;—he goes with his followers to the Isle of Our Lady, 555/10;—he is suspected of treachery by C., 556 1;—he disarms himself and followers, and coming to C., makes him honourable reverence, 558/31;—he shows C. how Griffen of Hautebranche would have wronged his nephews, and vows that he will never suffer them to be wronged, 559/7;—his grief at the departure of R., 571 24.
- Ryne (Rhine), the body of R. is cast into the river, 581 34;—the fishes of the, bear up the body of R., 582/31;—it seems to be afire owing to the miraculous light about it, 583/3.
- Salamon, King, the fair, serves C. with the cup, 38 11, 61/5.
- Saliene (also spelt Galiene), the 'love' of C., whom he wedded on the same day that he was crowned King of France, 327 5.
- Savary, a knight, advises Lohier to deal gently with Duke Benes, 21/31.
- Sawmore (Saunur), the Four Sons arrive at, 62/30.
- Sernoble, taken by C.'s army, 192 8.
- Serpent, the Wood of the, whither King John proposes to betake himself after the failure of his treachery, 279 24;—R. is on his way to, when he meets King John, 305/19;—the secret way between Mountalban and, is discovered to R., 438/16.
- Seveyne, Sayne, Hernyer of, promises C., on conditions, to yield him the Four Sons prisoners within a month, 90 1;—his request is granted, 90 8, and he proceeds to put his treacherous scheme in operation, 90/22;—he reaches Mountaynforde, and, pleading that he is pursued by C., is quickly admitted, 90 31;—he is made right welcome by R., 91/30, and tells lies about the condition of C.'s host, 92 1;—after supper, he is 'well and honestly brought to bed,' 92 22, but, 'as the false Judas,' he slept not, 92/24, and arising, he lets down the drawbridge, and slays the watchman, 92/30;—he lets in Guyon of Bourgoyne, 93 1, and then his treachery is made known to R., 93 24;—he sharply attacks R. and his brethren, who are in the pit, 95 5;—he is made prisoner, and dire retribution is taken on him as a traitor, 96—97.
- Simon of Puyll, the King of Palermo, sees R. arrive, makes great cheer with him, and tells him of Barbas, 525;—he thanks R., and offers him all his possessions as a reward, 529 19, and after honourably feasting and entertaining R., he takes leave of him, 539 16.
- Simon, Sir, a knight, gives Duke Benes good counsel, 20, 10.
- Soysson (Soissons), the Four Sons arrive at, 63 34.
- Soyssons, the battle in the valley of, between Earl Guenes and Duke Benes, 52—58.
- Spayne, Dyssers of, joins C. at Paris, 186/28.
- Spayne (Spain), was apparently then accounted a wealthy country, 170/22.
- St. Germaine of the medowes, near Paris, 31 28;—burial of Lohier at, 35/26;—Constans and Rohars watch in the church of, the night before the fight, 552/6.
- St. Gyle Tarasoon, conquered by Borgons, 132/31.
- St. James in Gales (Galicia). C. goes on a pilgrimage to, 156 14.
- St. John the Baptist, C.'s court at Paris on the feast of, 51 17.
- St. Lazare, the Abbey of, in the Wood of the Serpent, where King John proposes to take up his residence as a monk, 279 27;—the Abbot of, makes King John a monk, 281 23;—Roland and Oliver arrive at, where

- they are welcomed by the Abbot, 281/32, who is dealt savagely with by Roland, and the Prior also by Oliver, 282/4, and he and all his monks run away, leaving King John to his fate, 282/13.
- St. Marcell, where the treacherous barons ambush themselves, 556/16.
- St. Mychaell, Mount, R. is in a hurry to go to, naked in his 'smalle lynen clothes,' 220/9.
- St. Nycolas, the chapel of, at Mountalban, 221/33, 223/33.
- St. Omars, King Yon of overthrows one of R.'s knights, 82/11, but is himself slain by Richard, 82/25.
- St. Peter, the church of, at Cologne, in the building of which R. assisted as a labourer, 576/18.
- St. Quynutye, Engieran of, 42/31.
- St. Stevyns churche at Jerusalem, 501/33;—Earl Jaffras prevents the Turks from entering Jerusalem by the gate of, 504/20.
- St. Vyctor, near Paris, the jousting at, 32/16;—the church of, where the sons of R. watch the night preceding the fight, 552/6.
- Steyn, Sir, one of Roussillon's messengers to C., 47/26;—C.'s answer to, 48/17.
- Surry (? Syria), the Barons of, tender their homage to and elect R. for their 'hede capytayne,' 508/14;—they are exhorted by Mawgis, and await the onset of Barbas, 512/19.
- Simon, Sir, a knight, slain by Duke Benes, 45/4.
- Talles, the tower (? town) of, 512/32.
- Temple, the, at Jerusalem, 500/4.
- Thiery, Tyery, Thyerry, one of C.'s knights, slain by Alarde, 80/28.
- Toulouse (Toulouse), conquered by Borgons, 132/31.
- Tower of David at Jerusalem, 500/4, where King Thomas is kept prisoner, 519/31;—it is assaulted by R., 521/24.
- Tower of Sayne, where C., R., and the barons go to view the fight between Aymonet and Yonnet and Constans and Rohars, 555/22.
- Troye, Aubrey of, seeks aid of C., 40/30.
- Troye, Hector of, was not worth more than R., 127/28.
- Troye, Pyramus (Priam) of, never had better men to his children than are the Four Sons, 127/19.
- Troyes, the town of, 39/22, besieged by Duke Benes, 40/32;—the battle at, 41 *et seq.*
- TURPIN (Turpin), the Archbishop of Paris, 32/34;—he joins C. at Paris, 187/13;—is left in charge of Roland's forces at Balencon, 193/1;—he sees three ravens and three 'dawes' flying over Roland's pavilion, which he regards as an evil token, 194/27;—he sees the enemy come, and informs Ogier thereof, 195/2;—he fights furiously with R., 196/16;—he recomforts Roland, 200/29;—he relates to C. the disaster that has overtaken the force of Roland, 201/16;—he tells Roland that the approaching force is that of R., and they will have to fight, 292/21;—praises R. as a good guide, a valiant man, and a worthy captain, 295/13;—C. offers to make him Pope of Rome, if he will take and hang Richard, 325/14, but he refuses, 325/16;—he swears to R. that he has not betrayed him, and that he will live and die with him, 383/26;—he says mass before R.'s sons on the eve of their fight, 552/10;—he celebrates the ceremony of swearing on the sacred relics, 559/35, and gives the benediction to R.'s sons (this was apparently withheld from the sons of Foulkes), 560/20.

- Valcome, Gerarde of cousin of Foulkes of Moryllon, grieving over the death of Foulkes, perceives Richard, whom he so wounds that 'the guttes come oute of the body into his lappe,' 211, and he is immediately thereafter slain by Richard, 211/32.
- Valery, the lordship of, given to R. by King John, 150/20.
- Valoys (Valois), Berenger of, is requested by C. forthwith to hang Richard, but politely refuses, 324/1.
- Vaucoulores, the plain of, the spot appointed by C. and King John for the betrayal of the Four Sons, 212/5;—the Sons depart for, clad in scarlet, mounted on mules, bearing roses in their hands, escorted by the eight earls, and singing by the way, 224, 225;—they arrive at, and description of the place, 227/15;—the great battle at, 228—270.
- Vydelon, one of C.'s barons, 104/5.
- Vylaunche, the name of Roland's horse, 394/2.
- Water, Sir, a knight in attendance on the Lady Clare, 141/4.
- Water, Sir, a knight of Duke B. nos, counsels him to submit to C., 26/10.
- Wylliam the Englysse (William the Englishman), at C.'s court, 59/12.
- Ymes, one of Simon of Puyll's knights, 526/6.
- Yonnet, the younger son of R., is spurned by R. in his anger at King John's treachery, 285/5;—he asks R. why he tarries from slaying Bayard, 437/11;—he promises R. to behave to his brother as a younger son should behave, 538/27;—he arrives at the palace of C. at Paris, 540/18;—he receives a knife from C., and on going to his place, accidentally shoves Constans with his elbow, 544/26;—he reproves Constans for his unseemly language, tells him that he lies, and defies him, throwing down his gage, 545/3;—he is knighted by C., 547/24;—he gives Rohars a stroke so that the sword entered his head a finger deep, 563/8;—he unhorses Rohars, and himself dismounts, 563/16;—he will not call his brother to help him to slay Rohars, 567/13;—he cuts an arm off from Rohars, 567/29 and calls on him to acknowledge that R. was no traitor, 567/32;—he smites him on the bare head with the pomel of his sword, 568/5;—he cuts off one of his legs, again calls on him to confess, and finally smites off his head, 568/14;—Ardeyn is given by R. to, 570/19;—he takes his way there, and is received with homage, 571/8.
- Yves, Sir, slain by the Saracens, 16/16.

¹No names are given to the horses; but, like Bayard, Yonnet's horse runs after that of Rohars, and would have strangled it, at which C. begins to laugh, 563/22.





PR
1119
E5
no.44-45

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

